ROUTLEDGE INTERNATIONAL HANDBOOKS

The Routledge Handbook of Policy Tools

Edited by Michael Howlett

THE ROUTLEDGE HANDBOOK OF POLICY TOOLS

This handbook provides a unique, systematic and comprehensive overview from leading experts in the field of the policy-making tools deployed at all the phases of the policy process. It covers the fundamentals of both new and established policy tools – from regulation and public enterprises to subsidies and information campaigns, as well as new tools, such as social impact investing, nudges, crowdsourcing, co-production and new digital governance and data analysis techniques.

The book consists of nine sections with five corresponding to the major research emphases of studies on policy tools across the stages of the policy cycle (agenda-setting, formulation, decision-making, implementation and evaluation). These are accompanied by overviews of key research and concepts, a discussion of how different kinds of tools can be usefully combined in simple or complex policy portfolios or mixes, and a concluding section on future research directions. Consolidating the state of knowledge and uniting classic foundational material with recent advancements in theory and practice in one location, the handbook is a defining volume in this field.

The Routledge Handbook of Policy Tools is essential reading and an authoritative reference for scholars, students, researchers and practitioners of public policy, public administration, and public management, as well as those interested in comparative politics and government, public organizations and the use of policy tools and instruments in individual policy areas from climate change to public health.

Michael Howlett is Burnaby Mountain Professor and Canada Research Chair (Tier 1) in the Department of Political Science at Simon Fraser University in Vancouver, BC, Canada.

"Comprised of 44 chapters and featuring a line-up of distinguished international scholars, this excellent handbook is the best and the most comprehensive overview available of the policy tools approach in public policy research. This is why all university students, academic researchers, and policy practitioners interested in policy tools should read it."

Daniel Béland, *McGill University, Canada*

"This comprehensive volume provides definitive analyses of the critical connections between choosing appropriate policy tools and achieving desired policy outcomes. Michael Howlett has assembled a stellar cast of international scholars. They demonstrate the critical challenges of designing policy mixes for important problems, while taking account of evaluation evidence and changing political contexts. They provide new insights into how emerging problems are being tackled through new techniques such as big data analysis, behavioural psychology and co-production."

Brian Head, *University of Queensland, Australia*

"This excellent volume advances understandings of how combinations of policy tools manipulate both the substance and the processes of policymaking. It provides a great service to anyone interested in using tools as an analytical framework. And it will be welcomed by everyone who is concerned with better understanding how the policy process works."

Jenny M Lewis, *University of Melbourne, Australia*

"The handbook's combination of the policy tools approach with the stages where the tools are deployed in the policy process – e.g., agenda setting, policy formulation and policy decision-making – has never been this comprehensively, systematically and successfully carried out before in the literature."

Evert Vedung, *Uppsala University, Sweden*

"The study of policy instruments traditionally constitutes a central topic of policy sciences. In the last decade, the research on policy tools accelerated very significantly. This important and complete book takes research on policy tools to a new level by organizing and synthesizing a large volume of new findings and perspectives."

Arnošt Veselý, *Charles University, Czech Republic*

THE ROUTLEDGE HANDBOOK OF POLICY TOOLS

Edited by Michael Howlett

Routledge
Taylor & Francis Group
LONDON AND NEW YORK

Designed cover image: Shutterstock

First published 2023
by Routledge
4 Park Square, Milton Park, Abingdon, Oxon OX14 4RN

and by Routledge
605 Third Avenue, New York, NY 10158

Routledge is an imprint of the Taylor & Francis Group, an informa business

British Library Cataloguing-in-Publication Data
A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data
Names: Howlett, Michael, 1955– editor.
Title: The Routledge handbook of policy tools /
Edited by Michael Howlett.
Other titles: Handbook of policy tools
Description: Abingdon, Oxon ; New York, NY : Routledge, 2023. |
Series: Routledge international handbooks | Includes bibliographical references and index.
Identifiers: LCCN 2022005246 (print) | LCCN 2022005247 (ebook) |
ISBN 9780367757748 (hardback) | ISBN 9780367757809 (paperback) |
ISBN 9781003163954 (ebook)
Subjects: LCSH: Political planning. | Policy sciences. |
Public administration—Decision making.
Classification: LCC JF1525.P6 R68 2023 (print) | LCC JF1525.P6 (ebook) |
DDC 320.6—dc23/eng/20220623
LC record available at https://lccn.loc.gov/2022005246
LC ebook record available at https://lccn.loc.gov/2022005247

ISBN: 978-0-367-75774-8 (hbk)
ISBN: 978-0-367-75780-9 (pbk)
ISBN: 978-1-003-16395-4 (ebk)

DOI: 10.4324/9781003163954

Typeset in Bembo
by Apex CoVantage, LLC

CONTENTS

List of Figures *x*
List of Tables *xi*
Notes on Contributors *xiv*

PART I
Introduction **1**

1 What Is a Policy Tool? An Overview of the Tools Approach to Public Policy 3
Michael Howlett

2 The History of the Tools Approach in the Policy Sciences: Key Definitions and Problematics 19
Michael Howlett

3 Where Tools Are Deployed in the Policy Process: Policy Instruments and the Policy Cycle 36
Michael Howlett

4 The Need to Understand and Integrate Procedural and Substantive Tools 47
Achim Lang

PART II
Basic Concepts **59**

5 How Tools Work: Policy Instruments as Activators and Mechanisms 61
Giliberto Capano and Michael Howlett

6 What Tools Do: Policy Targeting and Behaviour 73
Michael Howlett

7 Portfolios of Policy Tools: Types of Policy Mixes 88
Michael Howlett and Pablo del Rio

8 Understanding Primary and Secondary Relationships Among Policy Tools in Policy Mixes 100
Michael Howlett, M. Ramesh and Azad Singh Bali

PART III
Agenda-Setting Tools **111**

9 Agenda-Setting Tools in Theory and Practice 113
Richa Shivakoti and Michael Howlett

10 Formal Agenda-Setting Government Tools: Periodic Evaluations and Reviews 125
Valerie Pattyn and Pirmin Bundi

11 Tools to Promote Popular Mobilization and Social Advocacy: Social Identities, Policy Programs, Careers, and Education 137
Johanna Hornung and Nils C. Bandelow

12 Consultation Tools and Agenda-Setting 149
Bert Fraussen

13 Tools for Managing the Media: Monitoring, Branding and Messaging 160
Alex Marland

PART IV
Policy Formulation Tools **171**

14 Policy Formulation Tools: New Perspectives 173
Elisa Helena Xiol Y Ferreira, Andrew Jordan and John Turnpenny

15 Indicators and Measures as Policy Tools 185
Markku Lehtonen

16 A Tools-Based Approach to Understanding and Optimizing Policy Advice in Policy Making 197
Jonathan Craft

17 Tools for Structuring Policy Advice: Commissions of Inquiry and Task Forces as Policy Formulation Instruments 208
Gregory J. Inwood and Carolyn M. Johns

18 Collaboration as a Policy Tool in the Policy Process 220
Saba Siddiki, Jonathan E. Beagles and Nicholas Oesterling

PART V
Decision-Making Tools **233**

19 Supporting Decision-Making Within the Policy Cycle: Techniques and Tools 235
Irene Pluchinotta, Katherine A. Daniell and Alexis Tsoukiàs

20 Scenario Analysis, Forecasting and Backcasting as Policy Tools 245
Martijn van der Steen

21 Formal Problem Structuring Tools and Multi-Criteria Decision Analysis 257
Mika Marttunen, Judit Lienert and Valerie Belton

22 Simulation Modeling as a Policy Tool 271
Bernardo Alves Furtado

23 Policy Experiments and Pilots as Tools for Decision-Making 282
Sreeja Nair

PART VI
Policy Implementation Tools **295**

24 The Organizational Tools of Government: The "Forgotten Fundamental" 297
Michael Howlett

25 Implementing Regulatory Policy: Regulatory Tools and the Use of Authority 316
Eric Windholz

26 Treasure Tools: Using Public Funds to Achieve Policy Objectives 332
Bronwyn McIlroy-Young, Daniel Henstra and Jason Thistlethwaite

27 Information as a Policy Tool: The Role of Government Communication 345
Michael Howlett

28 Non-State Market-Driven Tools: Capacity Challenges in Non-State Governance Contexts 356
Benjamin Cashore

PART VII
Policy Evaluation Tools **371**

29 Theoretical Framework for Public Policy Evaluation: Investigative Designs and Outcomes in a Global Setting 373
Lilian Ribeiro de Oliveira and Claudia Souza Passador

30 Policy Evaluation Instruments: Tools for Learning 389
Antje Witting

31 Tools in Internal and External Evaluations 401
Nihit Goyal and Michael Howlett

32 Administrative Procedure as a Tool for Participatory and Efficient Public Governance 413
Polonca Kovač

33 The Transformative Potential of Evaluation as a Policy Tool 426
Jill Anne Chouinard and Tamara Krawchenko

PART VIII
Selecting and Mixing Tools **439**

34 Policy Tools and (New) Governance Arrangements: Policy Mixes and Their Effectiveness 441
Michael Howlett and Jeremy Rayner

35 Measuring Policy Instrument Interactions in Policy Mixes: Surveying the Conceptual and Methodological Landscape 453
Moshe Maor and Michael Howlett

36 Policy Tools and the Attributes of Effectiveness: Spaces, Mixes and Instruments 466
M. Kerem Coban and Azad Singh Bali

37 Changing the Composition of Policy Mixes: Lock-in, Path Dependency and the Sequencing of Policy Tools 481
Michael Howlett

38 Changing Policy Tools on the Fly: Calibrating Policy Instruments 497
M. Ramesh and Michael Howlett

PART IX
The Future of Policy Tools **507**

39 The Future of Policy Tools: Past Trends and Current Directions 509
Sarah Giest, Ishani Mukherjee and Michael Howlett

40 Collaboration as the Future of Organizational Tools 523
Anka Kekez

41 Big Data, Artificial Intelligence and the Future of Regulatory Tools 534
Fernando de Barros Filgueiras

42 The Future of Financial Tools: Will Social Impact Bonds Yield Results? 546
Daniel Bromberg

43 The Future of Informational Tools With Big Data Informatics: Opportunities and Challenges for Evidence-Based Policymaking 559
M. Jae Moon and Sabinne Lee

44 The Future of Behavioural Tools in Public Policy 570
Stuti Rawat and Michael Howlett

Index *583*

FIGURES

1.1	A Spectrum of Substantive Policy Instruments	10
1.2	A Spectrum of Procedural Policy Instruments	10
3.1	The Five Stages of the Policy Cycle and Their Relationship to Applied Problem Solving	37
3.2	The Policy Cycle	38
3.3	An Example of the Range of Policy Instruments by Governance Mode and Stage of the Policy Cycle	43
5.1	The Mechanistic Process From a Policy Design Perspective	63
5.2	The Behavioural Expectations of Policy Tools	64
5.3	Examples of Specific Context-Related Mechanism Constraints	65
5.4	Examples of Individual- and Group-Level First-Order Mechanisms	68
5.5	Links in the Design Chain – Structural Level	70
9.1	The Full Range of Policy Instruments	115
11.1	PAF Typology of Agenda-Setting Policy Tools	144
13.1	Government of Nunavut Logo and Tagline	168
19.1	Policy Cycle Analytics Tools	239
21.1	Diverging and Converging Phases of Decision-Making and Stages in Building a Value Tree	259
25.1	Australia's Tobacco Control Regulatory Regime	326
29.1	Resolution Applied to Problems and Its Relationship to the Political Cycle	374
29.2	Conceptual Map of Public Policy Evaluation	382
30.1	Learner Types	391
42.1	Social Impact Bond Processes	548
44.1	The Annual Number and Share of Behavioural Studies from 1990 to 2016 in the Top Public Policy Journals	575
44.2	A Temporal Mapping of Behavioural Studies by Region	576
44.3	Word Cloud Based on the Most Frequent Terms in the Titles and Abstracts of Behavioural Studies in the Top Public Policy Journals	577

TABLES

1.1	A Taxonomy of Substantive Policy Instruments	7
1.2	A Resource-Based Taxonomy of Procedural Policy Instruments	9
1.3	A Model of Policy Instrument Choice	12
2.1	Hood's 1986 Taxonomy of Substantive Policy Instruments	24
2.2	A Resource-Based Taxonomy of Procedural Policy Instruments	30
2.3	A Simplified Taxonomy of Substantive and Procedural Implementation Tools	30
3.1	Implementation Tasks	40
4.1	Classification of Tools	52
5.1	A Resource-Based Taxonomy of Procedural and Substantive Policy Instruments	67
5.2	Behavioural Needs for Resource Effectiveness	67
6.1	Behavioural Needs for Resource Effectiveness	80
7.1	Basic Typology of Portfolio Designs	92
8.1	Attributes of Policy Mixes	103
8.2	Policy Components	104
8.3	Two Orders of Policy Tools	105
8.4	Procedural Tools in Health Care: Examples	106
8.5	An Improved Depiction of Policy Elements	107
9.1	Examples of Agenda-Setting Tools by Resource Used	118
10.1	Reviews as Policy Tools for Agenda-Setting	133
13.1	Social Media Engagement Delegated Authority Chart	167
15.1	Three Types of Indicators	188
15.2	Summary of Indicators as Policy Formulation Tools	190
16.1	Examples of Policy Instruments, Classified by Principal Governing Resources Used	200
16.2	Advisory Instrument by Audience, Function, and Policy Conjuncture	204
17.1	Commissions of Inquiry and Task Forces as Policy Instruments in the Policy Cycle	211
20.1	Forecasting Versus Foresight	247
21.1	List of Problem Structuring Methods and the References	258
21.2	The Pros and Cons of Stakeholder Analysis and Its Combination with MCDA	260

21.3	The Pros and Cons of Cognitive Maps (CMs)/Group Maps (GMs) and Their Combination with MCDA	261
21.4	The Pros and Cons of the DPSIR Framework and Its Combination with MCDA	262
21.5	The Pros and Cons of SWOT Analysis and Its Combination with MCDA	263
21.6	The Pros and Cons of Scenario Planning and Its Combination with MCDA	264
21.7	Level of Support Provided by PSMs to Different Aspects of Problem Structuring for MCDA	265
23.1	"Meaning"- and "Power"-Related Challenges for Using Experimentation as a Tool for Policymaking Under Uncertainty	289
24.1	Tasks Typically Undertaken by Government Agencies	299
24.2	Examples of Tasks Undertaken by Public Enterprises (Canada – Twentieth Century)	300
27.1	Examples of Policy Instruments, Classified by Principal Governing Resource Used	347
27.2	Five Stages of the Policy Cycle and Their Relationship to Applied Problem Solving	349
27.3	Four Categories of Government Communicative Tools	349
28.1	NSMD Governance: Key Features	357
28.2	Individual Policy Capacity Requirements for Identifying and Traveling Causal Pathways: Cross Cutting	360
28.3	The Dilemma of High and Low Certification Requirements, Time 1	361
28.4	NSMD Direct Pathway	362
28.5	Superseding = Creating a Learning Laboratory	363
28.6	Symbiotic Pathway for Addressing Gaps in International Agreements	364
28.7	Hybrid Pathway for Reinforcing Compliance With Government Standards	365
28.8	Key Features of Legality Verification as TBG	365
28.9	Dominant "Achilles' Heel" Individual Managerial Skills for Traveling NSMD Influence Pathways	367
29.1	Types of Evaluation According to Who Performs/Participates	378
29.2	Types of Evaluation According to the Problem to Which the Evaluation Is Responding	380
29.3	Connections Between Designs, Evaluative outcomes, Approaches and Types of Evaluation	380
29.4	Structuring Actions of Indicators and Evaluation Developed by National and International Organizations	383
30.1	Capacities of the Different Learner Types	394
33.1	Differences Between Collaborative and Technocratic Approaches to Evaluation	434
34.1	A Taxonomy of Eight Basic Policy Instrument Components of a Policy Mix	444
34.2	Typology of New Governance Arrangements According to the Relationships Between Goals and Means They Embody	446
34.3	Typology of NGAs According to Their Relationship With Existing Policies	446
34.4	Four Main Types of NFPs	448
34.5	Typology of NFP New Governance Arrangements According to Their Relationship With Existing Policies	449
37.1	Five Types of Relations Among Policy Measures	489

38.1	A Modified Taxonomy of Policy Components Following Hall	499
38.2	Hall's Trajectory of Paradigmatic Change	500
38.3	Vicious Policy Development ("Tinkering")	501
38.4	Virtuous Policy Development ("Patching and Learning")	502
38.5	Ostrom's Seven Kinds of Policy Criteria/Rules	503
39.1	Hood's 1986 Taxonomy of Substantive Policy Instruments	512
39.2	A Resource-Based Taxonomy of Procedural and Substantive Policy Instruments	512
40.1	Policy Tools and Reform Models: Tools' Potential for Collaboration	525
43.1	Various Definitions of Big Data	561
43.2	Simon's Decision-Making Process Model	563
43.3	Three Components of Causing Bounded Rationality	564
43.4	Adoption of Big Data and Overcoming Bounded Rationality	567
44.1	The Challenges of Behavioural Public Policy and Whether Behavioural Studies in Policy Literature Have Engaged With Them	578

CONTRIBUTORS

Azad Singh Bali is Senior Lecturer in Public Policy and holds a joint appointment at the at the Crawford School of Public Policy and the School of Politics and International Relations at the Australia National University in Canberra, ACT, Australia. Prior to the ANU, Bali held fellowships at the University of Melbourne and Murdoch University. His research and teaching interests lie at the intersection of social policy, public financial management and policy theory. His research has been published in *Policy & Society*, *Public Policy & Administration*, *Social Policy & Administration* and the *Australian Journal of Public Administration*.

Nils C. Bandelow is Full Professor and Head of the Institute of Comparative Politics and Public Policy (CoPPP) at TU Braunschweig. He is co-editor of the journals *European Policy Analysis* and *Review of Policy Research*. His current research interests include public policy and policy process research, with an emphasis on health and infrastructure policy.

Jonathan E. Beagles is an assistant professor of public administration and international affairs at the Maxwell School of the University of Syracuse. He is also a faculty research associate at the Moynihan Institute of Global Affairs and the Program for the Advancement of Research on Conflict and Collaboration (PARCC). His research focuses on the management and governance of international non-governmental organizations (NGOs) and faith-based organizations (FBOs) and their role in global governance. His research has been published in journals such as *The Journal of Public Administration Research and Theory*, *Perspectives on Public Management and Governance* and *Healthcare Management Review*. He is actively involved in the Association for Research on Nonprofit Organizations and Voluntary Action (ARNOVA) and the Public Management Research Association (PMRA).

Valerie Belton is a professor of management science, Strathclyde Business School, Glasgow, United Kingdom. She is an experienced academic, with over 30 years' experience of working in UK universities, including significant academic management roles. She has served as president of the International Society for Multicriteria Decision Making, the UK Operational Research Society and EURO, the federation of European Operational Research Societies.

Daniel Bromberg is an associate professor of public administration in the Carsey School of Public Policy and the Department of Political Science at the University of New Hampshire in

Durham, NH, USA. He is the director of academic programs for the Carsey School of Public Policy. Dan's research interests include government procurement, performance management and organizational accountability. Recent publications include *Gatekeepers: How Procurement Personnel Guard against Hybrid Accountability*, *Pay-to-Play: An Examination of State Laws* and *Body Worn Cameras and Policing: A List Experiment of Citizen Overt and True Support*.

Pirmin Bundi is Assistant Professor at the Institute of Public Administration (IDHEAP) of the University of Lausanne. Before joining the IDHEAP, he worked as a postdoc at the University of Bern and as a research assistant at the University of Zurich. He is a political scientist mostly interested in policy evaluation, comparative public policy and political elites.

Giliberto Capano is Professor of Public Policy at the University of Bologna, Italy. He specializes in public administration, public policy analysis, and comparative higher education. His research focuses on governance dynamics and performance in higher education and education, policy design and policy change, policy instruments' impact, the social role of political science, the policy impact of Covid-19, and leadership as an embedded function of policy making. His recent books are: *Changing Governance in Universities: Italian Higher Education in Comparative Perspective* (co-authored with M. Regini and M. Turri; Palgrave, 2016); *A Modern Guide to Public Policy* (coedited with M. Howlett, Edward Elgar, 2020); *Convergence and Diversity in the Governance of Higher Education* (co-edited with D. Jarvis, Cambridge University Press, 2020)**.**

Benjamin Cashore is Li Ka Shing Professor in Public Management at the Lee Kuan Yew School of Public Policy at the National University of Singapore. Previously he was professor of environmental governance and political science, where he also directed the Governance, Environment and Markets (GEM) initiative. He specializes in global and multi-level environmental governance, comparative public policy and administration and transnational business regulation/corporate social responsibility. His substantive research interests include climate policy, biodiversity conservation/land use change and sustainable environmental management of forests and related agricultural sectors. His geographic focus includes Southeast Asia, North America, Latin America and Europe.

Jill Anne Chouinard is an associate professor in the School of Public Administration at the University of Victoria, Victoria, BC, Canada. Her main research areas are in culturally responsive approaches to research and evaluation, participatory research and evaluation and evaluation and public policy. She is currently the editor of the *Canadian Journal of Program Evaluation*. In 2020, she released two books: *Culturally Responsive Approaches to Evaluation: Empirical Implications for Theory and Practice* (co-written with Fiona Cram) and an edited book, *Growing the Knowledge Base in Evaluation: The Contributions of J. Bradley Cousins* (co-edited with Isabelle Bourgeois and Courtney Amo).

M. Kerem Coban is an assistant professor, Department of Political Science and Public Administration, Kadir Has University in Istanbul, Turkey, where he works on public policy and administration, mainly with respect to monetary and banking policy.

Jonathan Craft is an associate professor with the Department of Political Science and Munk School of Global Affairs & Public Policy at the University of Toronto in Toronto, Ontario, Canada.

Katherine A. Daniell is a professor in the 3A Institute, School of Cybernetics and the Fenner School of Environment and Society at the Australian National University. Katherine's work focuses on the challenges of implementing collaborative approaches to policy and action for sustainable development. Katherine has published over 100 academic works, including four books, many on themes of collaborative governance.

Lilian Ribeiro de Oliveira is a professor of business administration at the Educational Foundation of Ituverava (FEI/FFCL) and at Universitary Center Barão de Mauá (CBM), Ribeirão Preto, Sao Paulo, Brazil. Her doctoral work was on the administration of organizations at the Faculty of Economics, Administration and Accounting of Ribeirão Preto at the University of São Paulo (USP), in where she is also a member of the Center for Studies in Management and Contemporary Public Policies.

Pablo del Río is Senior (tenured) Researcher and Head of the Environmental Economics Group at the Institute for Public Policies and Goods at the National Research Council of Spain (CSIC) in Madrid. He has worked for more than 20 years in the analysis of renewable energy support schemes and has 90 international publications in world-class journals.

Elisa Helena Xiol Y Ferreira is a doctoral candidate in the Department of Political Science at Simon Fraser University in Burnaby, BC, Canada. Her work focuses on policy analysis, mainly higher education policy in Brazil, and from a comparative lens. She is also currently working with the Quantum Algorithms Institute in British Columbia, to foster collaborations between government, academia and industry (her specialization) to build a talent pipeline for the application of quantum technology to real-world problems.

Fernando de Barros Filgueiras is a professor at the School of Social Science, Federal University of Goiás, Goiânia, Brazil. Professor of PHD Program in Public Policy at the National School of Public Administration (ENAP). Previously, he was a professor at the Department of Political Science at the Federal University of Minas Gerais (UFMG) and director of research and graduate studies at the National School of Public Administration (ENAP) in Brasilia. He works on public policies, governance, artificial intelligence, digital governance and new technologies in government. He is the author of *Governance for the Digital World: Neither More State Nor More Market* (Palgrave MacMillan, with Virgilio Almeida, 2021).

Bert Fraussen is an assistant professor in the Faculty of Governance and Global Affairs at Leiden University. His research agenda focuses on interest representation and lobbying, as well as how policymakers can ensure the effective and inclusive engagement of societal stakeholders in public governance. He also frequently provides workshops and masterclasses on these themes to civil servants and advocacy groups.

Bernardo Alves Furtado is a tenured researcher at Institute for Applied Economic Research (Ipea), a government think tank, and National Council of Research (CNPq) in Brazil, studying urban and regional public policies. His recent work involves contributions in the areas of complex systems and agent-based model building. He has a PhD in geosciences from Utrecht University (2009), co-tutored with a doctorate in economics from UFMG (2009). He is a full professor in the Masters in Public Policy and Development of Ipea. He has worked as a teacher, coordinator and deputy director.

Sarah Giest is an associate professor of data and policy at the Institute of Public Administration, Leiden University. She specializes in public policy analysis, focusing on policy instruments and capacity in the innovation, technology and sustainability realm. This includes, for example, the use of big data for public climate change efforts and the capacity of government to innovate in urban settings. Her interdisciplinary work has been widely published in public policy and public administration journals and her recent book is *The Capacity to Innovate*.

Nihit Goyal is an assistant professor at the faculty of Technology, Policy and Management, Delft University of Technology. His research interests lie in understanding, explaining and promoting policy innovation, primarily in the context of the sustainable energy transition.

Daniel Henstra is an associate professor of political science at the University of Waterloo. His research centers on the governance of complex policy areas, which involve multi-level, networked relationships among elected officials, public servants, stakeholders and the public. His work on climate adaptation, emergency management and flood risk governance has been published widely in public administration and public policy journals. He has more than 20 years of experience in applied policy analysis, including contract research for Global Affairs Canada, Health Canada, Infrastructure Canada, Natural Resources Canada, Public Safety Canada and others.

Johanna Hornung is Research Associate at the Institute of Comparative Politics and Public Policy (CoPPP) at TU Braunschweig. She is co-editor of the journals *European Policy Analysis* and *Review of Policy Research*. Her current research interests include public policy and policy process research, with an emphasis on health and infrastructure policy.

Michael Howlett, FRSC, is Burnaby Mountain Professor and Canada Research Chair (Tier 1) in the Department of Political Science at Simon Fraser University in Vancouver, BC, Canada. He specializes in public policy analysis, political economy and resource and environmental policy. His most recent books are *The Dictionary of Public Policy* (2022), *Policy Consultancy in Comparative Perspective* (2020), *Designing Public Policies* (2019) and *The Policy Design Primer* (2019).

Gregory J. Inwood is Professor in the Department of Politics and Public Administration and a member of the Yeates School of Graduate Studies at Toronto Metropolitan University. Dr. Inwood is the author of *Understanding Canadian Public Administration: An Introduction to Theory and Practice*, and his book *Continentalizing Canada: The Politics and Legacy of the Macdonald Royal Commission* won the CPSA's prestigious Donald Smiley Prize, awarded annually for "the best book published in a field relating to the study of government and politics in Canada." His co-authored book with Carolyn M. Johns and Patricia O'Reilly, *Intergovernmental Policy Capacity in Canada: Inside the Worlds of Finance, Environment, Trade and Health*, was also short-listed for the Donald Smiley Prize.

Carolyn M. Johns is Professor in the Department of Politics and Public Administration at Toronto Metropolitan University. Her research focuses on environmental policy, water policy, intergovernmental relations, policy implementation and public administration. She works on water policy issues and especially transboundary water governance in the Great Lakes region. Dr. Johns currently chairs the Geoffrey Bruce Fellowship Program in Canadian Freshwater Policy and is a member of the International Joint Commission's Great Lakes Water Quality Board.

Andrew Jordan is a professor of environmental policy in the Tyndall Centre for Climate Change Research at the University of East Anglia in Norwich, UK. His key research interests focus on the politics that emerge around attempts to govern climate change through processes of policy innovation, policy coordination and policy dismantling.

Anka Kekez is assistant professor at the Faculty of Political Science at the University of Zagreb, Croatia, where she teaches public policy, public management and qualitative methodology. Her research interests include policy implementation and service delivery, public management reforms, collaborative governance, meta-governance and clientelism. Recently, she has edited (together with Michael Howlett and M Ramesh, 2019) the book *Collaboration in Service Delivery: Promise and Pitfalls*.

Polonca Kovač is a full professor of administrative law at the University of Ljubljana. She is the (co)author of several edited books (e.g., *The Sound of Silence in European Administrative Law*, *The Laws of Transparency in Action*, *Commentary on the APA*) and numerous papers addressing good governance, public administration reforms and administrative and tax procedures. She is active in international networks, such as EGPA/IIAS, NISPAcee, ELI, ReNEUAL and EATLP.

Tamara Krawchenko is an assistant professor in the School of Public Administration and a member of the Institute for Integrated Energy Systems at the University of Victoria, Victoria, BC, Canada. Dr. Krawchenko has conducted comparative public policy research in over a dozen countries and has authored over 60 articles, books and reports on such topics as coastal climate change, rural development, transportation and transit governance and intergenerational equity. She has also worked for both the federal and provincial governments in Canada and for a number of research institutes and universities in Canada, Ukraine and Kyrgyzstan as a professor and researcher.

Achim Lang is Head of the Center for Local, Regional & Collaborative Governance at the Institute of Public Management (IVM) at the Zurich University of Applied Sciences in Winterthur, Switzerland. Before joining the IVM, he worked as a postdoc at the Universities of Konstanz, Cologne and Darmstadt. His key research interests focus on network governance of co-design and co-production in policy innovation processes as well as collaborative governance in the digital transformation of local and regional public administration.

Sabinne Lee is an associate research fellow at the Korea Institute of Public Administration (KIPA). Her recent research topics are mainly about the public management, crisis management, technology policy, e-government, environmental policy and incentive theory.

Markku Lehtonen is a researcher at the Pompeu Fabra University, Barcelona. His research focuses on role of expertise in governance, public controversies over especially energy sector megaprojects, and the role of trust and mistrust in policymaking. His recent publications include special issues published in 2022 on trust and mistrust in the nuclear sector (*Journal of Risk Research*) and sustainability of nuclear-sector megaprojects (*Journal of Mega Infrastructure and Sustainable Development*), as well as "The multiple faces of trust in statistics and indicators: A case for healthy mistrust and distrust," *Statistical Journal of the IAOS* 35(4): 539–548.

Judit Lienert is group leader of the Decision Analysis Cluster in the Department of Environmental Social Sciences at the Swiss Federal Institute of Aquatic Science and Technology in

Dubendorf, Zurich, Switzerland. Her research interests include multi-criteria decision analysis (MCDA), environmental decision-making, interdisciplinary approaches to integrating "hard facts" and "subjective values," problem structuring, elicitation of stakeholder preferences, behavioral aspects (behavioral operational research), dealing with uncertainty and transdisciplinary approaches to involving stakeholders in applied projects.

Moshe Maor is a professor of political science and Wolfson Family Chair Professor of Public Administration at the Hebrew University of Jerusalem. His current research interests focus on bureaucratic politics, public policy, comparative politics and Israeli politics and governance. He has published two books and five edited books, as well as numerous articles in peer-reviewed journals, including *European Journal of Political Research*, *Governance*, *Journal of Theoretical Politics*, *Journal of Public Administration Research and Theory*, *Journal of Public Policy*, *Policy Sciences*, *Public Administration*, *Public Administration Review* and *West European Politics.* Recently, he has developed the disproportionate policy perspective (*Policy Sciences*, 2017).

Alex Marland is a professor and head of the Department of Political Science at Memorial University in Newfoundland in St. John's, Newfoundland, Canada. His book *Brand Command: Canadian Politics and Democracy in the Age of Message Control* (UBC Press, 2016) won the Donner Prize for best public policy book by a Canadian and an Atlantic Book Award for scholarly writing, and his book *Whipped: Party Discipline in Canada* (UBC Press, 2020) was shortlisted for the Shaughnessy Cohen Prize for Political Writing.

Mika Marttunen works as a head of unit in the Finnish Environment Institute. He has applied multi-criteria decision analysis in more than 20 real-world cases. His current research interests relate to behavioral issues and biases in MCDA.

Bronwyn McIlroy-Young is a researcher and policy analyst. She received her undergraduate degree in knowledge integration at the University of Waterloo and a master of science degree in Resources, Environment and Sustainability from the University of British Columbia. Her research background is highly interdisciplinary; she has published in the fields of environmental communication, feminist philosophy, regulatory toxicology, climate change adaptation policy and environmental justice. Over the course of her research career, she has advised policy development at the municipal, federal, and international levels. Her more recent research has focused on the interface of science and policy around complex environmental problems where uncertainties are large and stakeholders have conflicting perceptions of risk.

M. Jae Moon is Underwood Distinguished Professor of the Department of Public Policy and Management as well as director of the Institute for Future Government at Yonsei University in Seoul, Korea. He co-chaired the Infectious Disease Study Group of the National Research Council for Economics, Humanities, Social and Sciences under the prime minister's office. He is an elected fellow of the National Academy of Public Administration (NAPA) and served as international director of the American Society for Public Administration and vice president of the Korean Association of Public Administration, as well as the Korean Association of Policy Studies. He specializes in digital government, public sector innovation, comparative public administration and public policy instruments.

Ishani Mukherjee is an associate professor of public policy in the School of Social Sciences, Singapore Management University, where she is also Lee Kong Chian Fellow (2020–2023). Her

expertise includes policy formulation and design, environmental and natural resource policy and management and policy tools for renewable energy and energy efficiency.

Sreeja Nair is an assistant professor at the Lee Kuan Yew School of Public Policy, National University of Singapore. Sreeja is an interdisciplinary policy researcher with a specialization in environmental policy and governance. She studies policy processes and tools of governments for designing policies under uncertainty, focusing on the interplay of science and politics. She is the author of *Rethinking Policy Piloting: Insights from Indian Agriculture* (Cambridge University Press, 2021) and co-editor of *Emerging Pedagogies for Policy Education* (Palgrave Macmillan, 2022). She is an Associate Editor for the *Australian Journal of Public Administration*.

Nicholas Oesterling is a PhD student in the Department of Public Administration and International Affairs at the Maxwell School of Citizenship and Public Affairs at the University of Syracuse. Prior to beginning his studies at Maxwell, he worked a research assistant for the University of Dayton Business Research Group (BRG), a research firm offering consulting services to businesses, governments and non-profit organizations. His work with BRG primarily focused on policy and program evaluation for local and regional initiatives seeking to improve access to, and the quality of, early childhood education.

Claudia Souza Passador is a sociologist and journalist. She is an associate professor in the Department of Administration, Faculty of Economics, Administration and Accounting, Ribeirão Preto, São Paulo University (USP) in Sao Paulo, Brazil. She is also coordinator of the Center for Studies in Management and Contemporary Public Policies in the Institute for Advanced Studies at the São Paulo University (GPUBLICIEA/USP) and a senior researcher with the FAO (ONU).

Valerie Pattyn is a tenured assistant professor at the Institute of Public Administration of Leiden University, affiliated to KU Leuven Public Governance Institute. Her current research program examines the demands for knowledge and advice of policymakers under conditions of uncertainty and complexity, the conditions fostering and impeding evidence-informed policymaking and the politics of policy evaluation.

Irene Pluchinotta is a senior research fellow at the Institute for Environmental Design and Engineering, University College London. She is a senior honorary research fellow at the Management Science Department of the University of Strathclyde. Her areas of expertise include decision analysis and system dynamics to support policy design and decision making in collaborative multi-stakeholder settings.

M. Ramesh is UNESCO Chair of Social Policy Design in Asia at the Lee Kuan Yew School of Public Policy at the National University of Singapore. Previously, he was the founding head of the Department of Asian and Policy Studies at the Hong Kong Institute of Education, professor of social policy at the University of Hong Kong and chair of the Department of Government and International Relations at the University of Sydney. He has also held teaching positions at the University of New England and Victoria University of Wellington. He is the editor of *Policy and Society* and associate editor of *Journal of Economic Policy Reform* and serves on the editorial board of several reputed journals.

Stuti Rawat is a post-doctoral fellow with the Department of Asian and Policy Studies (APS) of the Faculty of Liberal Arts and Social Sciences (FLASS) at the Education University of Hong Kong (EdUHK). Dr. Rawat's research focusses on sustainability and public policy. A secondary area of study for her is public trust and education. Dr. Rawat has served as a consultant for national and international organizations, including the World Bank, International Centre for Integrated Mountain Development, International Water Management Institute and the ASEAN Secretariat.

Jeremy Rayner is a professor at the Johnson-Shoyama Graduate School of Public Policy in Saskatoon, Saskatchewan, Canada, where he serves as the director of the school's Centre for the Study of Science and Innovation Policy and research lead of the Energy Policy Research Cluster. Dr. Rayner's research focuses on governance arrangements for complex policy problems, especially at the intersection of energy, climate change and forests.

Richa Shivakoti is senior research associate at the Canada Excellence Research Chair (CERC) in migration and integration program at Toronto Metropolitan University. Her research focus is on the governance of labor migration within Asia, especially on labor-sending nations and the impact of their policies on temporary migrant workers and their welfare. Previously, she was a research officer at Carleton University and a post-doctoral research fellow at Maastricht University and the United Nations University (UNU-MERIT) in the Netherlands.

Saba Siddiki is an associate professor of public administration and international affairs and a senior research associate in the Center for Policy Research at the Maxwell School of Citizenship and Public Affairs at the University of Syracuse. Her research focuses on policy design, collaborative policymaking, institutional theory and analysis and regulatory implementation and compliance. She has studied these topics in the contexts of food and environmental policy. Her research has been published in leading public affairs journals, including *The Policy Studies Journal*, *Journal of Public Administration Research and Theory*, *Public Administration Review* and *Public Administration*, among others. She is also the author or editor of multiple books, including *Understanding and Analyzing Public Policy Design* (Cambridge University Press). She currently serves as associate editor for *Policy Design and Practice*.

Jason Thistlethwaite is an associate professor in the School of Environment, Enterprise, and Development and associate director of Partners for Action at the University of Waterloo. His research focuses on disaster and climate change risk management, including evaluating effective governance, risk mapping, insurance and government risk transfer, local and municipal climate change adaptation and measuring socio-economic vulnerability. To inform this research, he has worked directly with business and government leaders in the insurance, banking, real estate, building, and investment industries. This research has been published in numerous academic and industry journals and is supported by government and private-sector funding.

Alexis Tsoukiàs is a research director at LAMSADE-CNRS, PSL University, Université Paris Dauphine. Former president of the European Operational Research Society (EURO), former director of the LAMSADE, founder of the algorithmic decision theory community and national coordinator of the Policy Analytics Research Network. He specializes in decision analysis, artificial intelligence and policy analytics.

John Turnpenny is an associate professor in the School of Politics, Philosophy, Language and Communication Studies and a member of the Tyndall Centre for Climate Change Research at the University of East Anglia in Norwich, UK. His research focuses on the relationship between evidence and public policy-making and, more specifically. on policy analysis tools, construction and deployment of scientific evidence, post-normal science and the boundary work of different policy actors. He takes a multidisciplinary approach to studying the politics of policymaking and is particularly interested in environment-, sustainable development– and climate change–related policy.

Martijn van der Steen is a professor of strategy and foresight at the Department of Public Administration at Erasmus University Rotterdam (EUR) in The Netherlands. He is also associate dean of the Netherlands School for Public Administration (NSOB) in The Hague and director of NSOB's think tank. He is also Extraordinary Professor at the School for Public Leadership (SPL) at Stellenbosch University in South Africa. His research interests include network management, public sector strategy and the use of forecasting and scenarios in policymaking.

Eric Windholz is Senior Lecturer in the Faculty of Law at Monash University in Melbourne, Victoria, Australia. Eric's research explores how regulation, public policy and the law intersect to inform regulatory regime design and implementation. He is the author of *Governing through Regulation: Public Policy, Regulation and the Law* (Routledge, 2018) and of numerous book chapters and articles.

Antje Witting is Research Coordinator at the Federal Institute for Research on Building, Urban Affairs and Spatial Development (BBSR) in Bonn, North Rhine-Westphalia, Germany. Previously, she worked as chair of regional planning at the Brandenburg University of Technology Cottbus. In the past 15 years, Dr. Antje Witting has contributed to policy analysis and advice on urban resilience building. Her published work explores institutional designs and social network attributes that drive or hinder individual and collective learning in this context.

PART I

Introduction

1

WHAT IS A POLICY TOOL?

An Overview of the Tools Approach to Public Policy

Michael Howlett

Policy tools or instruments are techniques of governance that are used to give effect to stated policy objectives. The new design orientation within the policy sciences has placed renewed emphasis on policy tools and their role in achieving stated policy goals. This chapter provides an introductory overview of policy tools and traces the evolution of the tools approach in policy sciences. It begins with the distinction between first- and second-generation scholarship on policy tools and highlights their implications. This is followed by an overview of recent theoretical and sector applications of the tools approach. The concluding discussion outlines avenues to further theorise the tools approach to public policy.

Introduction: Policy Tools in Theory and Practice

Policy instruments are techniques of governance which, one way or another, involve the utilisation of state authority or its conscious limitation in order to achieve government aims. Hence, they properly fall within the domains of both public policy and political science but since they also often affect the behaviour of individuals in society as they go about their daily tasks, fall within the realms of other fields such psychology, gender studies, sociology and economics, among others.

The policy alternatives which policymakers use are composed of different sets or combinations of the policy elements. As Linder and Peters noted, policy instruments are especially significant in policy designs and designing as they are the techniques or means through which states attempt to attain their goals. But tools are the subject of deliberation and activity at all stages of the policy process and affect both the agenda-setting and policy-formulation processes as well as being the subject of decision-making policy implementation and evaluation (Howlett 2005; Howlett et al. 2009).

Other terms have been developed in the field of policy studies to describe the same phenomenon, such as 'governing instruments', 'policy tools' and the 'tools of government', and while these sometimes are used to refer to different mechanisms and calibrations of policy means, they are more often used synonymously. And it is also the case that most policy objectives can, in theory, be accomplished by a number of instruments; in other words, most instruments are to some degree 'substitutable'. Thus, in theory, a government seeking to promote health care for the population could leave it entirely to the family to provide health services, with the

DOI: 10.4324/9781003163954-2

competence and availability of family members determining who gets how much and at what cost. Or the government might go to the other extreme and provide health services through its own administrative agency, paid for directly out of its general tax revenues, leaving no room for the market or other private organizations. In between the two extremes lie a range of other instruments, including exhorting the population to keep healthy, subsidizing those who are poor and regulating doctors and hospitals (Salamon 1989; Bemelmans-Videc et al. 1998).

Policy tools have a special place in the consideration and study of policy design and policy implementation, however, because taken together, they comprise the contents of the toolbox from which governments must choose in building or creating public policies. Policy design elevates the analysis and practice of policy instrument choice – specifically, tools for policy implementation – to a central focus of study, making their understanding and analysis a key design concern (Salamon 1981; Linder and Peters 1990). Instrument choice from this perspective is, in a sense, public policymaking, and understanding and analyzing potential instrument choices involved in implementation activity is policy design.

Early students of policymaking had fairly flexible notions of the multiple means by which governments can affect, or give effect to, policy (Dahl and Lindblom 1953; Kirschen et al. 1964; Edelman 1964; Lowi 1966). In his pathbreaking early works on public policymaking, for example, Harold Lasswell conceived the main instruments of politics as involving, among other things, the manipulation of symbols, signs and icons. Lasswell noted the extent to which governments could affect each stage of the policy process through such manipulations and argued that a principal task of the policy sciences must be to understand the nuances of these actions and their effects (Lasswell 1954, 1971; Doern and Phidd 1988).

By the early 1980s, at the urging of Lester Salamon and others, attention began to be focused on more precisely categorising policy instruments in order to better analyse the reasons for their use (Salamon 1981). Careful examination of instruments and instrument choices, it was argued, would not only lead to considerable insight into the factors driving the policy process and the characterisation of long-term patterns of public policymaking but would also allow practitioners to more readily draw lessons from the experiences of others with the use of particular techniques in specific circumstances (Woodside 1986).

In most cases, policymakers use a mix of instruments in order to try to achieve their desired ends. This raises the questions of: (1) why specific mixes exist at present and (2) whether and to what extent mixes can be designed to be optimally effective, or, to put it another way, what are the constraints and impediments blocking optimal or efficient instrument use?

Policy Tools Versus Implementation Tools

It is important to note that policy instruments exist at all stages of the policy process, with specific tools such as stakeholder consultations and government reviews intricately linked to agenda-setting activities, ones like legislative rules and norms linked to decision-making behaviour and outcomes, and others linked to policy evaluation, such as the use of ex-post, or after-the-fact, cost-benefit analyses.

Policy tools are thus, in a sense, 'multi-purpose' since, for example, regulation can appear in the implementation activities of several governance modes while some tools, like impact assessments, can also appear within several stages of the cycle. However, a regulation appearing within the implementation phase of a network mode of governance which mandates information disclosure, for example, serves a different purpose than a regulation found in a market mode which limits a firm to ownership of only a specific percentage of an industry. Similarly, consultations which take place in the agenda-setting stage of the policy process have a different purpose and

effect than those which take place after a decision has been made. While the general terminology may be similar, pains must be taken to distinguish these tools and activities in order to avoid confusion and errant efforts at instrument selection and policy design.

As mentioned earlier, policy instruments appear in all stages of the policy process, and those affecting the agenda-setting, decision-making and evaluation stages of the policy process are very significant and important in public management (Wu et al. 2010). However, most policy designs deal with plans for implementation, and thus, most visible sets of policy instruments are those linked to policy implementation in the first instance and to policy formulation in the second. In the first category, we would find examples of many well-known governing tools such as public enterprises and regulatory agencies, which are expected to alter or affect the delivery of goods and services to the public and government (Salamon 2002), while in the second, we would find instruments such as regulatory impact or environmental impact appraisals, which are designed to alter and affect some aspect of the nature of policy deliberations and the consideration and assessment of alternatives (Turnpenny et al. 2009).

Substantive Versus Procedural Policy Tools

The systematic study of policy instruments in the 1970s and 1980s quickly generated a large academic literature and resulted in new policy initiatives in areas such as pollution prevention and professional regulation, which marshalled existing knowledge of tool use in other areas to these new purposes (Hippes 1988; Trebilcock 1983). Studies in Canada and elsewhere generated useful taxonomies of implementation tools in particular (Tupper and Doern 1981; Hood 1986; Vedung 1997; Howlett 1991) and shed light on significant subjects such as the reasons behind shifts in patterns of instrument choices associated with the waves of privatisation and deregulation which characterized the period (Howlett and Ramesh 1993).

Much less attention was paid by analysts of this period to the systematic analysis of other kinds of tools, such as procedural ones, which featured at other stages of policymaking from agenda-setting to decision-making and evaluation (Howlett 2011). Although many early works defined 'policy instruments' broadly, so as to include a wide range of tools or techniques in these areas, by the 1980s, this larger set of tools had largely been forgotten or ignored in studies on the subject. In the 1990s, however, this neglect had been noted, and systematic treatments of procedural instruments began to emerge (Hood 1995, 1991; Dunleavy and Hood 1994; Riker 1986, 1983; Dunsire 1993a, 1993b, 1986) so that knowledge of both these types of instruments, their effects and the reasons behind their choices is now very much on par with that of implementation tools.

Basic Taxonomies of Policy Instruments

The key advantage which studies of policy instruments bring to policy studies is the limitation of policy outputs to only a few, manageable types, with variations in usage across different governments and policy sectors illuminated and susceptible to careful analysis and generalisation. This not only sheds light on policy dynamics and the reasons why certain tools are utilised and not others, but also aids policy practice in allowing lessons to be drawn about 'what works' and why.

Understanding implementation tools is thus key to policy design. One common type of implementation instrument alters the actual substance of the kinds of day-to-day production, distribution and consumption activity carried out in society, while the other focuses on altering political or policy behaviour in the process of the articulation of implementation goals and means. Substantive implementation instruments are those used to directly affect the production,

distribution and consumption of goods and services in society while procedural implementation instruments accomplish the second purpose.

This distinction is apparent in common definitions of governing instruments, although its significance is sometimes overlooked. Vedung, for example, has usefully defined policy instruments used in implementation activities as 'the set of techniques by which governmental authorities wield their power in attempting to ensure support and effect social change' (Vedung 1997). This definition can be seen to include both 'substantive' tools, those Hood (1986) defined as attempting to 'effect or detect' change in the socio-economic system, and those 'procedural' tools designed to 'ensure support' for government actions.

Substantive instruments are expected to alter some aspect of the production, distribution and delivery of goods and services in society. This is a large field of action since it extends not only to goods and services provided or affected by markets but also well beyond to state or public provision and regulation, as well as to those goods and services typically provided by the family, community, non-profit and voluntary means, often with neither a firm market nor a state basis (Salamon 1989, 2002), broadly conceived to include both mundane goods and services like school lunches to crude vices such as gambling or illicit drug use to more common individual virtues such as charitable giving or volunteer work with the physically challenged, and include the attainment of sublime collective goals like peace and security, sustainability, happiness and well-being.

Substantive implementation instruments can affect many aspects of production, distribution and consumption of goods and services regardless of their institutional basis. Production effects, for example, include determining or influencing:

1. Who produces it – for example, via licencing, bureaucracy/procurement or subsidies for new start-ups.
2. The types of goods and services produced – for example, through bans or limits or encouragement.
3. The quantity of goods or services provided – for example, via subsidies or quotas.
4. The quality of goods or services produced – for example, via product standards, warranties.
5. Methods of production – for example, via environmental standards or subsidies for modernization.
6. Conditions of production – for example, via health and safety standards, employment standards act, minimum wage laws, inspections.
7. The organization of production – for example, via unionization rules, antitrust or anti-combines legislation, securities legislation or tax laws.

Consumption and distribution effects are also manifold. Some examples of these are:

1. Prices of goods and services – such as regulated taxi fares or wartime rationing.
2. Actual distribution of produced goods and services – affecting the location and types of schools or hospitals, forest tenures or leases.
3. Level of consumer demand for specific goods – for example, through information release, nutritional and dangerous goods labelling (cigarettes), export and import taxes and bans and similar activities.
4. Level of consumer demand in general – via interest rate, monetary and fiscal policy.

In the case of substantive policy instruments, or those instruments intended to directly affect the nature, types, quantities and distribution of the goods and services provided in society, a

great deal of conceptual progress has occurred over the past several decades (Salamon 2002). Taxonomies, for example, have been provided by many authors, one of the most well known developed by Christopher Hood (1986; see also Anderson 1977). In this scheme, instruments are grouped together according to (1) whether they rely upon the use of 'nodality' (or information), authority, treasure or the organizational resources of government for their effectiveness and (2) whether the instrument is designed to effect a change in a policy environment or detect changes in it. A typical taxonomy of substantive policy instruments based on Hood's schema is presented in Table 1.1.

Procedural policy instruments, as noted here, have been studied less systematically, although many studies of individual tool use exist (Landry et al. 1998). The works of Bressers and Klok (1988), Schneider and Ingram (1990a, 1990b), and others (McDonnell and Elmore 1987; Elmore 1978, 1987) in the 1980s and 1990s, for example, identified a large number of typical procedural policy instruments. These include education, training, institution creation, the selective provision of information, formal evaluations, hearings and institutional reform (Weiss and Tschirhart 1994; Bellehumeur 1997; Chapman 1973; Wraith and Lamb 1971; Peters 1992; Kernaghan 1985). Research into the tools and mechanisms used in intergovernmental regulatory design identified several other such instruments, including 'treaties' and a variety of 'political agreements', which can affect target group recognition of government intentions and vice versa (Bulmer 1993; Harrison 1999; Doern and Wilks 1998). Other research into interest group behaviour and activities highlighted the existence of tools related to group creation and manipulation, including the role played by private or public sector patrons in aiding the formation and activities of such groups (Pal 1993; Burt 1990; Finkle et al. 1994; Phillips 1991; Nownes and Neeley 1996; Lowry 1999). Still other specialised research into aspects of contemporary policymaking has highlighted the use of techniques such as provision of research funding for, and access to, investigative hearings and tribunals (Gormley 1989; Jenson 1994; Cairns 1990; Salter and Slaco 1981).

Procedurally oriented implementation tools affect production, consumption and distribution processes only indirectly, if at all. Rather, they instead affect the behaviour of actors involved in policy implementation. Policy actors are arrayed in various kinds of policy communities, and just as they can alter or affect the actions of citizens in the productive realm, so, too, can they affect and alter aspects of policy-making behaviour. Procedural implementation tools are an

Table 1.1 A Taxonomy of Substantive Policy Instruments

Principal Governing Resource Used					
		Nodality	*Authority*	*Treasure*	*Organization*
	Detector				
General Purpose of Instrument		Advice Training	Regulation Licences	Grants User Charges Taxes Loans	Bureaucratic Administration Public Enterprises
	Effector				
		Reporting Surveys	Census Taking Registration	Polling Consultants	Record Keeping Police Reporting

(Cells provide examples of instruments in each category.)

Source: Adapted from Hood (1986)

important part of government activities aimed at altering policy interaction within policy subsystems, but, as Klijn et al. (1995) put it, they typically 'structure . . . the game without determining its outcome' (441). That is, these behavioural modifications affect the manner in which implementation unfolds but without predetermining the results of substantive implementation activities.

Procedural implementation tools and their effects are not as well studied or understood as are substantive instruments, although several procedural techniques, such as the use of specialised investigatory commissions and government reorganizations, are quite old and well used and have been the objects of study in fields such as public administration, public management and organizational behaviour. Nevertheless, just like their substantive counterparts, they are a key part of policy designs and policy design activity.

Some of the kinds of implementation-related activities that can be affected by the use of procedural tools (Klijn et al. 1995; Goldsmith and Eggers 2004; Klijn and Koppenjan 2006) include:

1. Changing actor policy positions.
2. Setting down, defining or refining actor positions.
3. Adding actors to policy networks.
4. Changing access rules for actors to governments and networks.
5. Influencing network formation.
6. Promoting network self-regulation.
7. Modifying system-level policy parameters (e.g., levels of market reliance).
8. Changing evaluative criteria for assessing policy outcomes, success and failure.
9. Influencing the payoff structure for policy actors.
10. Influencing professional and other codes of conduct affecting policy actor behaviour.
11. Regulating inter-actor policy conflict.
12. Changing policy actors' interaction procedures.
13. Certifying or sanctioning certain types of policy-relevant behaviour.
14. Changing supervisory relations between actors.

Hood's taxonomy of substantive instruments can be modified to help make sense of this disparate (and partial) inventory of procedural tools. That is, classifying procedural instruments in accordance with the type of 'governing resource' they rely on generates a useful preliminary taxonomy (see Table 1.2) (Saward 1992). While most researchers have focused on the manner in which these instruments have been used to enhance participation and policy-relevant knowledge, it should also be emphasised that procedural tools can also be used to negatively affect interest groups and other actor behaviour. That is, for example, information-based procedural instruments include both the provision of information and its suppression, and the release of misleading as well as accurate information. Deception, obfuscation and other forms of administrative delay, similarly, are all forms of authority-based procedural instruments (Mueller 1973). Hence, drawing a distinction between 'positive' and 'negative' uses of governing resources in terms of whether they encourage of discourage actor participation in policy processes is a useful aspect of the preliminary classification of such instruments.

As was the case with substantive instruments, this taxonomy is useful insofar as it highlights the different basic resources used by different types of instruments and therefore allows a virtually unlimited number of instruments to be placed in a limited number of general categories, facilitating analysis and helping improve policy practice.

Table 1.2 A Resource-Based Taxonomy of Procedural Policy Instruments

Principal Governing Resource Used					
		Nodality	*Authority*	*Treasure*	*Organization*
General Purpose of Instrument	Positive	Education Information Provision Focus Groups	Labelling Treaties and Political Agreements Advisory Group Creation	Interest Group Creation Intervenor and Research Funding	Institutional Reform Judicial Review Conferences
	Negative	Propaganda Information Suppression Denial of Access	Banning Groups and Associations	Eliminating Funding	Administrative Delay and Obfuscation

(Cells provide examples of instruments in each category.)

The Rationale for Instrument Use: Market and Subsystem Manipulation

Understanding these basic types of policy instruments and their permutations accomplished one of the main goals of students of policy instruments in the post-Salamon era. However, simply describing the nature of the instruments available to policymakers was only the first step towards providing better advice to those same policymakers about which instruments to choose in which circumstance. That is, the aim is not only better description but also better prescription, and in order to accomplish this, it is necessary to elevate the discussion from taxonomies to the analysis of the reasons for tool adoption, or what is usually referred to in the literature as 'the rationale for instrument choice'.

Towards this end, many analysts at various points in time proposed various schemes which purported to establish the relationship existing between different instruments or categories of instruments and the successful attainment of government objectives (Doern and Aucoin 1971; Doern and Wilson 1974; Tupper and Doern 1981). For example, developed a spectrum of substantive instruments based on Hood's taxonomy. They focused on the level of direct state involvement in the provision of goods and services as the chief criterion for distinguishing between categories of 'effector' instruments. This placed 'voluntary' instruments requiring minimal state involvement at one end of a continuum with state-based instruments such as public enterprises placed at the opposite end. Between the two poles lie a wide range of 'mixed' instruments involving varying levels of state and private provision of goods and services (see Figure 1.1).

Much the same can be done for procedural instruments. That is, as Dutch scholars such as Klijn, Kickert, Koppenjan and especially de Bruijn and ten Heuvelhof have argued, procedural policy instruments can be thought of as involving the manipulation not of economic exchange relationships, as is the case with substantive tools, but rather of the links and nodes of the network relationships existing among actors involved in policymaking Klijn 1996; de Bruijn and ten Heuvelhof 1995, 1997; Leik 1992). Construed in this way, procedural instruments can be seen to be used to manipulate the number or nature of actors arrayed in the policy subsystems

Figure 1.1 A Spectrum of Substantive Policy Instruments

Source: Howlett and Ramesh (1995)

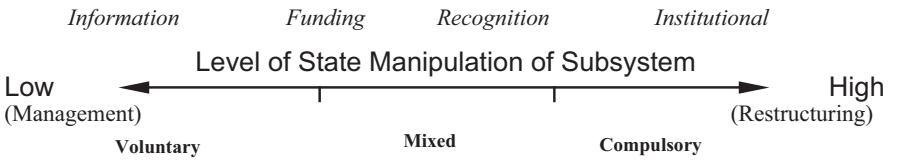


Figure 1.2 A Spectrum of Procedural Policy Instruments

Source: Howlett (2000)

which policymakers face, each category of instrument using a specific resource in order to manipulate an aspect of a policy subsystem or network.

As de Bruijn and ten Heuvelhof (1995, 1991; see also Klijn and Teisman 1991; Peters 1998) have pointed out, a wide range of activities are possible in network manipulation, ranging from limited 'network management' to more fundamental 'subsystem restructuring'. Incorporating this distinction allows the procedural policy instruments found in Table 1.2 to be arrayed in a single spectrum according to the level of state manipulation of subsystem membership and activities (see Figure 1.2).

In this spectrum, procedural policy instruments can be seen to range from limited information suppression or release designed to mildly affect subsystem behaviour through 'voluntaristic' responses from targeted actors to group or institutional reforms designed to completely restructure existing subsystems by compulsory means (Smith et al. 1993; Savoie 1999).

The Variables Affecting Instrument Choice: State Capacity and Target Complexity

It is only a start, however, to say that a variety of instrument choices exists which can alter patterns of goods and service delivery or policy interactions and that these choices differ in terms of the extent of state involvement in them. Rather, what is needed is the identification of a limited set of factors or variables which can be said to influence instrument choices in specific directions.

In a perfect world, there would be little trouble choosing the appropriate tool for the governmental task at hand. That is, if all the costs and benefits of a tool were context-free and known, and the goals of a policy clear and unambiguous, then a decision on which instrument to use in a given circumstance would be a simple maximising one, and mistakes would not be made. However, in real-world situations, as information difficulties arise in determining instrument effects and as the clarity and precision of goals diminish, it becomes more and more likely that policy means and ends will be mismatched and policy failures occur.

Moreover, it has become more and more apparent to many observers that the kind of precision required for such maximising instrument choices will never be achieved, not just because

of poorly defined, ambiguous decision-making circumstances and information asymmetries but, more fundamentally, because the utility of the instruments themselves, and hence the calculation of their attractiveness, is heavily context dependent. That is, although instruments may be, in some technical or theoretical sense, 'substitutable', in the sense that any one could achieve any end – albeit at differing levels of cost – in practice, they differ in a number of ways which makes the choice of instrument a complex matter.

Salamon and Lund, for example, suggest that different instruments involve varying degrees of effectiveness, efficiency, equity, legitimacy and partisan support, which affect their appropriateness for a particular situation (Salamon and Lund 1989). Thus, some instruments are more effective in carrying out a policy in some contexts than others. Efficiency, for example, in terms of low levels of financial and personnel costs, may be an important consideration in climates of budgetary restraint but a less significant aspect in free-spending times. Legitimacy is another critical aspect of instrument use which varies with context (Beetham 1991; Suchman 1995). The ability of an instrument to attract the support of the population in general and, particularly, of those directly involved in policymaking in the issue area or subsystem involved must also be taken into account. A relatively heavy-handed approach to regulation of the financial dealings of industry, for example, may be anathema in normal times in many sectors, but in the wake of bank failures or scandals, such as the Enron affair in the US or Parmalat in Europe, may find sudden popularity among both the public and policy elites. Abstract notions of efficiency and effectiveness may also find themselves less important criteria in some contexts, like wartime, when the use of government departments or public enterprises, simply because they remain under direct government control (Borins 1982) Vining and Botterell 1983) or because administrators may be more familiar with their use and risks, are preferred tool choices (May 1993; Hawkins and Thomas 1989). Moreover, cultural norms and institutional or political arrangements may accord greater legitimacy to some instruments than others. Thus, it is possible that in liberal democracies, citizens and policymakers desiring high levels of individual autonomy and responsibility may prefer instruments that are less coercive rather than other equally or perhaps more effective or efficient alternatives which do not promote these values. Such societies can be expected, for example, to prefer voluntary and mixed instruments to compulsory instruments on philosophical or ideological grounds (Doern and Wilson 1974; Doern 1974; Howlett 1991). Moreover, instruments have varying distributional effects, and so policymakers in such societies may need to select instruments that are, or at least appear to be, equitable. Tax incentives, for example, are inherently inequitable because they offer no benefit to those (the poor) without taxable income. Their use, therefore, will vary to the extent that (1) societies are bifurcated along socio-economic or class lines, and (2) individuals are aware of their advantageous and pernicious consequences.

In addition to these 'external' contexts, there are also 'internal' constraints on instrument choices that must be considered. That is, while instrument choice is clearly not a simple technical exercise and must take into account aspects of the social, political and economic contexts of instrument selection, it is also the case that the internal configuration of instrument mixes alters the calculus of instrument choice in significant ways. That is, some instruments may work well with others – as is the case with 'self-regulation' set within a regulatory compliance framework (Gibson 1999; Grabosky 1995; Trebilcock et al. 1979; Tuohy and Wolfson 1978) – while other combinations – such as, notably, independently developed subsidies and regulation (de Moor 1997; Myers and Kent 2001) – may not.

Both these 'internal' and 'external' contexts of instrument behaviour and selection must be taken into account in efforts to theorise optimality in the design of policy mixes (Minogue 2002). Unfortunately, however, this is often not the case, and instrument choices are often

viewed through an ideological or conceptual lens which reduces choices to a 'one size fits all' motif or, more commonly, to a struggle between 'good and evil' in which an existing range of instrument uses is condemned and the merits of some alternative single instrument trumpeted as the embodiment of all that is good in the world. The unfortunate consequence of such approaches, if adopted, is usually to wield that instrument – be it state-driven public enterprises in the case of socialist and developing countries in the first two-thirds of the twentieth century or the virtues of privatisation, deregulation and markets in the last third – less like the scalpel of a careful surgeon working on the body politic and more like the butcher's cleaver, with little respect for the tissue of the patient falling under the knife.

Howlett and Ramesh, again, provide an example of how these two variables and their expected relationship to each other can be used to generate a simple model containing a set of hypotheses regarding substantive instrument choices (see Table 1.3).

In this model, for example, it is argued that subsidy or market instruments should only be used, or can only be used effectively, when a high level of state capacity and a complex policy subsystem exists – as is the case, for example, with most competitive economic situations faced by modern states. If a state faces a complex network or subsystem but has only limited capacity, on the other hand, it is expected that it will tend to utilise regulatory or information-based instruments. Direct provision and public enterprises would be expected to be used only when a state has high capacity but faces a relatively simple social or policy environment characterised by few actors and a small number of significant interorganizational relationships. Finally, when state capacity is low and the policy environment not very complex, reliance on voluntary instruments can be effective, as was the case historically in many areas of social and health policy (Vogel 1996; Eisner 1994; Tupper 1979; Laux and Molot 1988; Hall and Banting 2000).

These kinds of models do not delve into the detail of fine gradations of instrument use within each general category or the specific contexts of individual decisions which can result in errors being made in instrument choices. However, they suggest that although substantive instrument choices are complex, general patterns of such choices can nevertheless be discerned and explained. The development of instrument taxonomies and spectra and the formulation of bivariate conceptual models helped identify these patterns and the limited number of variables responsible for them.

This much is well known about instruments. However, in practice, as was pointed out earlier, most governments do not use single instruments to address problems but usually adopt a variety of tools to accomplish their ends. While these mixes can become quite complex – either by design or by accident of history – it is worth noting that although seemingly faced with a wide

Table 1.3 A Model of Policy Instrument Choice

	Level of Policy Subsystem Complexity	
Level of State Capacity	*High*	*Low*
High	Market or Subsidy Instruments	Direct Provision Instruments
Low	Regulatory or Information Instruments	Voluntary, Community or Family-Based Instruments

(Cells indicate likely instrument choice.)

Source: Howlett and Ramesh (1995)

choice of possible instruments in creating their strategies, governments often repeatedly choose from a much more limited set of options. That is, there is a distinct tendency for governments to develop an 'implementation style' in various sectors and to stick with that style for quite some time (Kagan and Axelrad 1997; Kagan 1997).

An emphasis on long-standing patterns of instrument choices is not to say, of course, that choices are inevitable or immutable or that substantial shifts in implementation styles do not occur. These can happen as the nature of the constraints governments face changes or if the governments decide to broaden or narrow their focus on specific policy targets. This is a central theme of this chapter, of course – embodied in the title. Assessing how likely it is for existing implementation styles to change, therefore, is an important question.

Certainly, shifts in fundamental implementation styles have occurred in many governments over the past century due to the influences of activities like colonisation and decolonisation, war, and other events which have wrought changes to the organizational capacities of states and their societies. Even in governments less affected by such dramatic events, such as those in North America, implementation styles have moved from, for example, a preference for directed subsidisation in the nineteenth century and then to the regulatory corporatism associated with the progressive movement in the 1920s and 1930s (Raadschelders 1998, 2000; Eisner 1994; Lowi 1966).

It is also certainly the case in Europe, North America and elsewhere that contemporary governance takes place within a very different context from that of past decades. Government capacity in terms of human and organisational resources remains high by historical standards, but the autonomy or ability of governments to independently affect change has been eroded by such factors as the growth of powerful international actors and systems of exchange (Cerny 1996). Moreover, at the domestic level, modern societies have developed increasingly complex networks of interorganisational actors whose coordination and management are increasingly problematic (Lehmbruch 1991; Mayntz 1993).

Conclusion: The Need for Nuance and Precision in Policy Tool Analysis and Practice

The study of policy instruments over the past 50 years has generated many insights into instrument use: insights which have helped academics better understand policy processes and have helped practitioners in Canada and elsewhere design better policies (Gibson 1999; Weimer 1992). However, in the process of developing the taxonomies and models of instrument choice, many investigators have focused almost exclusively on the specific set of instruments which governments use to alter the distribution of goods and services in society. In focusing so intently on 'substantive' policy instruments, sight has been lost of the need, identified by early students of public policy, to take both the substance and process of policymaking into account when conducting instrument analyses.

This has become a major problem in attempting to find solutions, methods and tools to deal with contemporary policy issues (Kooiman 1993; Peters and Pierre 1998; Klijn and Koppenjan 2000; Walters et al. 2000). At the present time, however, the basic contours of both procedural and substantive policy instruments are well known, as are their basic rationales for use and the factors which have led to their selection. Although understanding the use of 'bundles' or 'portfolios' of instruments rather than single tools is crucial in designing effective governance strategies (Doremus 2003; Sterner 2002), the concept of an 'implementation style' is a useful one in beginning to assess this question. All these issues, and more, are addressed in the chapters contained in this handbook.

References

Anderson, Charles W. *Statecraft: An Introduction to Political Choice and Judgement* (New York: John Wiley and Sons, 1977).

Beetham, David. *The Legitimation of Power* (London: Macmillan, 1991).

Bellehumeur, Robert. "Review: An Instrument of Change," *Optimum*, 27, no. 1 (1997): 37–42.

Bemelmans-Videc, Marie-Louise, Ray C. Rist, and Evert Vedung, eds. *Carrots, Sticks and Sermons: Policy Instruments and Their Evaluation* (New Brunswick: Transaction Publishers, 1998).

Borins, Sandford F. "World War Two Crown Corporations: Their Wartime Role and Peacetime Privatization," *Canadian Public Administration*, 25, no. 3 (1982): 380–404.

Bressers, Hans and Pieter-Jan Klok. "Fundamentals for a Theory of Policy Instruments," *International Journal of Social Economics*, 15, no. 3/4 (1988): 22–41.

Bulmer, Simon J. "The Governance of the European Union: A New Institutionalist Approach," *Journal of Public Policy*, 13, no. 4 (1993): 351–380.

Burt, Sandra. "Canadian Women's Groups in the 1980s: Organizational Development and Policy Influence," *Canadian Public Policy*, 16, no. 1 (1990): 17–28.

Cairns, Alan C. "Reflections on Commission Research," in Innis Christie, John A. Yogis, and A. Paul Pross (eds.), *Commissions of Inquiry*, (Toronto: Carswell, 1990), pp. 87–110.

Cerny, Philip G. "International Finance and the Erosion of State Policy Capacity," in Philip Gummett (ed.), *Globalization and Public Policy*, (Cheltenham: Edward Elgar, 1996), pp. 83–104.

Chapman, Richard A. "Commissions in Policy-Making," in Richard A. Chapman (ed.), *The Role of Commissions in Policy-Making*, (London: George Allen and Unwin, 1973), pp. 174–188.

Dahl, Robert A. and Charles E. Lindblom. *Politics, Economics and Welfare: Planning and Politico-Economic Systems Resolved into Basic Social Processes* (New York: Harper and Row, 1953).

de Bruijn, Johan A. and Ernst F. ten Heuvelhof. "Instruments for Network Management," in W. J. M. Kickert, E.-H. Klijn, and J. F. M. Koppenjan (eds.), *Managing Complex Networks: Strategies for the Public Sector*, (London: Sage, 1997), pp. 119–136.

de Bruijn Johan A. and Ernst F. ten Heuvelhof. "Policy Instruments for Steering Autopoietic Actors," in Roeland In 'T Veld, et al. (eds.), *Autopoiesis and Configuration Theory: New Approaches to Societal Steering*, (Dordrecht: Kluwer, 1991), pp. 161–170.

de Bruijn, Johan A. and Ernst F. ten Heuvelhof, "Policy Networks and Governance," in David L. Weimer (ed.), *Institutional Design*, (Boston: Kluwer Academic Publishers, 1995), pp. 161–179.

de Moor, A. P. G. *Perverse Incentives: Hundreds of Billions of Dollars in Subsidies Now Harm the Economy, the Environment, Equity and Trade* (San Jose: Earth Council, 1997).

Doern, G. Bruce. "The Concept of Regulation and Regulatory Reform," in G. B. Doern and V. S. Wilson (eds.), *Issues in Canadian Public Policy*, (Toronto: Macmillan, 1974), pp. 8–35.

Doern, G. Bruce and Peter Aucoin, eds. *The Structures of Policy-Making in Canada* (Toronto: Macmillan, 1971).

Doern, G. Bruce and Richard W. Phidd. *Canadian Public Policy: Ideas, Structure, Process* (Toronto: Nelson, 1988).

Doern, G. Bruce and Stephen Wilks, eds. *Changing Regulatory Institutions in Britain and North America* (Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1998).

Doern, G. Bruce and V. S. Wilson. "Conclusions and Observations," in G. B. Doern and V. S. Wilson (eds.), *Issues in Canadian Public Policy*, (Toronto: Macmillan, 1974), pp. 337–345.

Doern, G. Bruce and V. S. Wilson, eds. *Issues in Canadian Public Policy* (Toronto: Macmillan, 1974).

Doremus, Holly. "A Policy Portfolio Approach to Biodiversity Protection on Private Lands," *Environmental Science & Policy*, 6 (2003): 217–232.

Dunleavy, Patrick and Christopher Hood. "From Old Public Administration to New Public Management," *Public Money and Management*, 14, no. 3 (1994): 9–16.

Dunsire, Andrew. "A Cybernetic View of Guidance, Control and Evaluation in the Public Sector," in Franz-Xavier Kaufman, Giandomenico Majone, and Vincent Ostrom (eds.), *Guidance, Control, and Evaluation in the Public Sector*, (Berlin: Walter de Gruyter, 1986), pp. 327–346.

Dunsire, Andrew. *Manipulating Social Tensions: Collibration as an Alternative Mode of Government Intervention* (Koln: Max Plank Institut fur Gesellschaftsforschung Discussion Paper 93/7, 1993a).

Dunsire, Andrew. "Modes of Governance," in J. Kooiman (ed.), *Modern Governance*, (London: Sage, 1993b), pp. 21–34.

Edelman, Murray. *The Symbolic Uses of Politics* (Chicago: University of Illinois Press, 1964).

Eisner, M. A. "Discovering Patterns in Regulatory History: Continuity, Change and Regulatory Regimes," *Journal of Policy History*, 6, no. 2 (1994): 157–187.

Eisner, Marc Allen. "Economic Regulatory Policies: Regulation and Deregulation in Historical Context," in D. H. Rosenbloom and R. D. Schwartz (eds.), *Handbook of Regulation and Administrative Law*, (New York: Marcel Dekker, 1994), pp. 91–116.

Elmore, Richard F. "Instruments and Strategy in Public Policy," *Policy Studies Review*, 7, no. 1 (1987): 174–186.

Elmore, Richard F. "Organizational Models of Social Program Implementation," *Public Policy*, 26, no. 2 (1978): 185–228.

Finkle, Peter et al. *Federal Government Relations With Interest Groups: A Reconsideration* (Ottawa: Privy Council Office, 1994).

Gibson, Robert B., ed. *Voluntary Initiatives: The New Politics of Corporate Greening* (Peterborough: Broadview Press, 1999).

Goldsmith, S. and W. D. Eggers. *Governing by Network: The New Shape of the Public Sector.* Washington, DC: Brookings Institution Press, 2004.

Gormley, William T. *Taming the Bureaucracy: Muscles, Prayers and Other Strategies* (Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1989).

Grabosky, Paul. "Counterproductive Regulation," *International Journal of the Sociology of Law*, 23 (1995): 347–369.

Hall, Michael and Keith Banting. "The Nonprofit Sector in Canada: An Introduction," in Keith Banting (ed.), *The NonProfit Sector in Canada: Roles and Relationships*, (Montreal: McGill Queen's University Press, 2000), pp. 1–28.

Harrison, Kathryn. "Retreat from Regulation: The Evolution of the Canadian Environmental Regulatory Regime," in G. Bruce Doern, et al. (eds.), *Changing the Rules: Canadian Regulatory Regimes and Institutions*, (Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1999), pp. 122–142.

Hawkins, Keith and John M. Thomas, eds. *Making Regulatory Policy* (Pittsburgh, PA: University of Pittsburgh Press, 1989).

Hippes, Gjalt. "New Instruments for Environmental Policy: A Perspective," *International Journal of Social Economics*, 15, nos. 3/4 (1988): 42–51.

Hood, C. *The Tools of Government* (Chatham: Chatham House Publishers, 1986).

Hood, Christopher. "Contemporary Public Management: A New Global Paradigm?" *Public Policy and Administration*, 10, no. 2 (1995): 104–117.

Hood, Christopher. "A Public Management for All Seasons?" *Public Administration*, 69, no. Spring (1991): 3–19.

Howlett, M. "What Is a Policy Instrument? Policy Tools, Policy Mixes and Policy Implementation Styles," in P. Eliadis, M. Hill, and M. Howlett (eds.), *Designing Government: From Instruments to Governance* (Montreal: McGill-Queen's University Press, 2005), pp. 31–50.

Howlett, Michael. "Beyond Legalism? Policy Ideas, Implementation Styles and Emulation-Based Convergence in Canadian and U.S. Environmental Policy," *Journal of Public Policy*, 20, no. 3 (2000): 305–329.

Howlett, Michael. *Designing Public Policies: Principles and Instruments* (New York: Routledge, 2011). http://www.routledge.com/books/details/9780415781336/

Howlett, Michael. "Policy Instruments, Policy Styles, and Policy Implementation: National Approaches to Theories of Instrument Choice," *Policy Studies Journal*, 19, no. 2 (1991): 1–21.

Howlett, Michael and M. Ramesh. "Patterns of Policy Instrument Choice Policy Styles, Policy Learning and the Privatization Experience," *Policy Studies Review*, 12, no. 1 (1993): 3–24.

Howlett, Michael and M. Ramesh. *Studying Public Policy: Policy Cycles and Policy Subsystems* (Toronto: Oxford University Press, 1995).

Howlett, Michael, M. Ramesh, and Anthony Perl. *Studying Public Policy: Policy Cycles & Policy Subsystems* (Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2009).

Jenson, Jane. "Commissioning Ideas: Representation and Royal Commissions," in Susan D. Phillips (ed.), *How Ottawa Spends 1994–95: Making Change*, (Ottawa: Carleton University Press, 1994), pp. 39–69.

Kagan, Robert A. "Should Europe Worry About Adversarial Legalism?" *Oxford Journal of Legal Studies*, 17, no. 2 (1997): 165–183.

Kagan, Robert A. and Lee Axelrad. "Adversarial Legalism: An International Perspective," in P. S. Nivola (ed.), *Comparative Disadvantages? Social Regulations and the Global Economy*, (Washington, DC: Brookings Institution Press, 1997), pp. 146–202.

Kernaghan, Kenneth. "Judicial Review of Administration Action," in Kenneth Kernaghan (ed.), *Public Administration in Canada: Selected Readings*, (Toronto: Methuen, 1985), pp. 358–373.

Kirschen, E. S. et al. *Economic Policy in Our Time* (Chicago: Rand McNally, 1964).

Klijn, Erik-Hans. "Analyzing and Managing Policy Processes in Complex Networks: A Theoretical Examination of the Concept Policy Network and Its Problems," *Administration and Society*, 28, no. 1 (1996): 90–119.

Klijn, Erik-Hans and J. F. M. Koppenjan. "Institutional Design: Changing Institutional Features of Networks," *Public Management Review*, 8, no. 1 (2006): 141–160.

Klijn, Erik-Hans. and J. F. M. Koppenjan. "Politicians and Interactive Decision Making: Institutional Spoilsports or Playmakers," *Public Administration*, 78, no. 2 (2000): 365–387.

Klijn, E. H., J. Koppenjan, and K. Termeer. "Managing Networks in the Public Sector: A Theoretical Study of Management Strategies in Policy Networks," *Public Administration*, 73 (1995): 437–454.

Klijn, Erik Hans and G. R. Teisman. "Effective Policymaking in a Multi-Actor Setting: Networks and Steering," in Roeland In 'T Veld, et al. (eds.), *Autopoiesis and Configuration Theory: New Approaches to Societal Steering*, (Dordrecht: Kluwer, 1991), pp. 99–111.

Kooiman, Jan. "Governance and Governability: Using Complexity, Dynamics and Diversity," in J. Kooiman (ed.), *Modern Governance*, (London: Sage, 1993), pp. 35–50.

Landry, Rejean, Frederic Varone, and Malcolm L. Goggin. *The Determinants of Policy Design: The State of the Theoretical Literature* (Chicago: Midwest Political Science Association, 1998).

Lasswell, H. "Key Symbols, Signs and Icons," in L. Bryson, L. Finkelstein, R. M. MacIver, and Richard McKean (eds.), *Symbols and Values: An Initial Study* (New York: Harper and Brothers, 1954), pp. 77–94.

Lasswell, Harold D. *A Pre-View of Policy Sciences* (New York: American Elsevier, 1971).

Laux, Jeanne Kirk and Maureen Appel Molot. *State Capitalism: Public Enterprise in Canada* (Ithaca, NY: Cornell University Press, 1988).

Lehmbruch, Gerhard. "The Organization of Society, Administrative Strategies, and Policy Networks," in Roland M. Czada and Adrienne Windhoff-Heritier (eds.), *Political Choice: Institutions, Rules, and the Limits of Rationality*, (Boulder, CO: Westview, 1991), pp. 121–155.

Leik, Robert K. "New Directions for Network Exchange Theory: Strategic Manipulation of Network Linkages," *Social Networks*, 14 (1992): 309–323.

Linder, S. and B. G. Peters. "The Design of Instruments for Public Policy," in S. S. Nagel (ed.), *Policy Theory and Policy Evaluation: Concepts, Knowledge, Causes, and Norms* (New York: Greenwood Press, 1990), pp. 103–119.

Lowi, Theodore J. "Distribution, Regulation, Redistribution: The Functions of Government," in Randall B. Ripley (ed.), *Public Policies and Their Politics: Techniques of Government Control*, (New York: W.W. Norton, 1966), pp. 27–40.

Lowry, Richard C. "Foundation Patronage Toward Citizen Groups and Think Tank: Who Gets Grants?" *The Journal of Politics*, 81, no. 3 (1999): 758–776.

May, Peter J. "Mandate Design and Implementation: Enhancing Implementation Efforts and Shaping Regulatory Styles," *Journal of Policy Analysis and Management*, 12, no. 4 (1993): 634–663.

Mayntz, Renate. "Modernization and the Logic of Interorganizational Networks," in J. Child, M. Crozier, and Mayntz R. (eds.), *Societal Change Between Market and Organization*, (Aldershot: Avebury, 1993), pp. 3–18.

McDonnell, Lorraine M. and Richard F. Elmore. *Alternative Policy Instruments* (Santa Monica, CA: Center for Policy Research in Education, 1987).

Minogue, M. "Governance-Based Analysis of Regulation," *Annals of Public and Cooperative Economics*, 73, no. 4 (2002): 649–666.

Mueller, C. *The Politics of Communication: A Study in the Political Sociology of Language, Socialization and Legitimation* (New York: Oxford University Press, 1973).

Myers, Norman and Jennifer Kent. *Perverse Subsidies: How Tax Dollars Can Undercut the Environment and the Economy* (Washington, DC: Island Press, 2001).

Nownes, Anthony and Grant Neeley. "Toward an Explanation for Public Interest Group Formation and Proliferation: 'Seed Money', Disturbances, Entrepreneurship, and Patronage," *Policy Studies Journal*, 24, no. 1 (1996): 74–92.

Pal, Leslie A. *Interests of State: The Politics of Language, Multiculturalism, and Feminism in Canada* (Montreal: McGill-Queen's University Press, 1993).

Peters, B. Guy. "Government Reorganization: A Theoretical Analysis," *International Political Science Review*, 13, no. 2 (1992): 199–218.

Peters, B. Guy. *Managing Horizontal Government: The Politics of Coordination* (Ottawa: Canadian Centre for Management Development, 1998).

Peters B. Guy and Jon Pierre. "Governance without Government? Rethinking Public Administration," *Journal of Public Administration Research and Theory*, 8, no. 2 (1998): 223–244.

Phillips, Susan D. "How Ottawa Blends: Shifting Government Relationships with Interest Groups," in Frances Abele (ed.), *How Ottawa Spends 1991–92: The Politics of Fragmentation*, (Ottawa: Carleton University Press, 1991), pp. 183–228.

Raadschelders, Jos C. N. "Administrative History of the United States: Development and State of the Art," *Administration and Society*, 32, no. 5 (2000): 499–528.

Raadschelders, Jos C. N. *Handbook of Administrative History* (New Brunswick, NJ: Transaction, 1998).

Riker, William H. *The Art of Political Manipulation* (New Haven: Yale University Press, 1986).

Riker, William H. "Political Theory and the Art of Heresthetics," in Ada W. Finifter (ed.), *Political Science: The State of the Discipline*, (Washington, DC: American Political Science Association, 1983), pp. 47–67.

Salamon, Lester M., ed. *Beyond Privatization: The Tools of Government Action* (Washington, DC: Urban Institute, 1989).

Salamon, Lester M. "Rethinking Public Management: Third-Party Government and the Changing Forms of Government Action," *Public Policy*, 29, no. 3 (1981): 255–275.

Salamon, Lester M., ed. *The Tools of Government: A Guide to the New Governance* (New York: Oxford University Press, 2002).

Salamon, Lester M. and Michael S. Lund. "The Tools Approach: Basic Analytics," in L. S. Salamon (ed.), *Beyond Privatization: The Tools of Government Action*, (Washington, DC: Urban Institute, 1989), pp. 23–50.

Salter, Liora and Debra Slaco. *Public Inquiries in Canada* (Ottawa: Science Council of Canada, 1981).

Savoie, Donald. *Governing from the Centre: The Concentration of Power in Canadian Politics* (Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1999).

Saward, Michael. *Co-Optive Politics and State Legitimacy* (Aldershot: Dartmouth, 1992).

Schneider, Anne L. and Helen Ingram. "Behavioural Assumptions of Policy Tools," *Journal of Politics*, 52, no. 2 (1990a): 511–529 at pp. 513–514.

Schneider, Anne L. and Helen Ingram. "Policy Design: Elements, Premises and Strategies," in Stuart S. Nagel (ed.), *Policy Theory and Policy Evaluation: Concepts, Knowledge, Causes and Norms*, (New York: Greenwood, 1990b), pp. 77–102.

Smith, Martin J. David Marsh, and David Richards, "Central Government Departments and the Policy Process," *Public Administration*, 71 (1993): 567–594.

Sterner, Thomas. *Policy Instruments for Environmental and Natural Resource Management* (Washington, DC: Resources for the Future, 2002), esp. pp. 212–218.

Suchman, Mark C. "Managing Legitimacy: Strategic and Institutional Approaches," *Academy of Management Review*, 20, no. 3 (1995): 571–610.

Trebilcock, Michael J. "Regulating Service Quality in Professional Markets," in D. N. Dewees (ed.), *The Regulation of Quality: Products, Services, Workplaces, and the Environment*, (Toronto: Butterworths, 1983), pp. 83–108.

Trebilcock, Michael J., C. J. Tuohy, and A. D. Wolfson. *Professional Regulation: A Staff Study of Accountancy, Architecture, Engineering, and Law in Ontario Prepared for the Professional Organizations Committee* (Toronto: Ministry of the Attorney General, 1979).

Tuohy, C. J. and A. D. Wolfson. "Self-Regulation: Who Qualifies?" in P. Slayton and M. J. Trebilcock (eds.), *The Professions and Public Policy* (Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1978), pp. 111–122.

Tupper, Allan. "The State in Business," *Canadian Public Administration*, 22, no. 1 (1979): 124–150.

Tupper, Allan and G. B. Doern. "Public Corporations and Public Policy in Canada," in A. Tupper and G. B. Doern (eds.), *Public Corporations and Public Policy in Canada*, (Montreal: Institute for Research on Public Policy, 1981), pp. 1–50.

Turnpenny, John, Claudio M. Radaelli, Andrew Jordan, and Klaus Jacob. "The Policy and Politics of Policy Appraisal: Emerging Trends and New Directions," *Journal of European Public Policy*, 16, no. 4 (2009): 640–653.

Vedung, Evert. "Policy Instruments: Typologies and Theories," in Ray C. Rist, Evert Vedung, and Marie Louise Bemelmans-Videc (eds.), *Carrots, Sticks and Sermons: Policy Instruments and Their Evaluation*, (New Brunswick: Transaction Publishers, 1997), pp. 21–58.

Vining, A. R. and R. Botterell. "An Overview of the Origins, Growth, Size, and Functions of Provincial Crown Corporations," in J. R. S. Pritchard (ed.), *Crown Corporations: The Calculus of Instrument Choice*, (Toronto: Butterworths, 1983), pp. 303–368.

Vogel, Steven K. *Freer Markets, More Rules: Regulatory Reform in Advanced Industrial Countries* (Ithaca, NY: Cornell University Press, 1996).

Walters, Lawrence C., James Aydelotte, and Jessica Miller. "Putting More Public in Policy Analysis," *Public Administration Review*, 60, no. 4 (2000): 349–359.

Weimer, David L. "Claiming Races, Broiler Contracts, Heresthetics, and Habits: Ten Concepts for Policy Design," *Policy Sciences*, 25 (1992): 135–159.

Weiss, Janet A. and Mary Tschirhart. "Public Information Campaigns as Policy Instruments," *Journal of Policy Analysis and Management*, 13, no. 1 (1994): 82–119.

Woodside, K. "Policy Instruments and the Study of Public Policy," *Canadian Journal of Political Science*, 19, no. 4 (1986): 775–793.

Wraith, R. E and G. B. Lamb. *Public Inquiries as an Instrument of Government* (London: George Allen and Unwin, 1971).

Wu, Xun, M. Ramesh, Michael Howlett, and Scott Fritzen. *The Public Policy Primer: Managing Public Policy* (London: Routledge, 2010).

2

THE HISTORY OF THE TOOLS APPROACH IN THE POLICY SCIENCES

Key Definitions and Problematics

Michael Howlett

Understanding the range of possibilities present in any design situation is a key factor for both policy advisors and decision-makers and requires an understanding of what kinds of instrument options exist, which subset of those is generally considered feasible or possible in a given context, and which among that smaller subset of all possible tools is the most appropriate to use at a given time. In the effort to help deal with these questions, students of policy formation and policy instruments in a variety of academic disciplines have, over the years, developed several models or conceptual schemes which help explain how policy instruments differ and how the different ones can be used in specific circumstances to achieve specific kinds of ends. This study of the "tools of government" has a long history and a rich tradition of research in the policy sciences, much of it borrowed from public administration, law and regulatory studies, public management, and many sectoral fields, from telecommunications and environmental regulation to social policy and education studies. The main findings and currents of thinking in this area are set out in this chapter.

Introduction

A significant part of policy-making activity involves matching policy goals with the ideas formulators hold about feasible and desirable mixes of policy means. Understanding the range of possibilities present in any policy-making situation is a key factor for both policy advisors and decision-makers and requires an understanding of what kinds of instrument options exist, which subset of those is generally considered feasible or possible in a given context, and which among that smaller subset of tools is the most appropriate to use at a given time.

In the effort to help deal with these questions, students of policy formation and policy instruments in a variety of academic disciplines have, over the years, developed several models or conceptual schemes which help explain how policy instruments differ and how the different ones can be used in specific circumstances to achieve specific kinds of ends. This study of the "tools of government" has a long history and a rich tradition of research in the policy sciences, much of it borrowed from public administration, law and regulatory studies, public management, and many

DOI: 10.4324/9781003163954-3

sectoral fields, from telecommunications and environmental regulation to social policy and education studies. The main findings and currents of thinking in this area are set out in this chapter.

The Origins of Policy Instrument Study as Field of Academic Inquiry

Fields interested in studying public policy, such as political science and political sociology, have traditionally been concerned with studying policy "inputs" or the dynamics of public policy formation. For example, in political science, a key focus has been on the role played by public opinion, political party activities, elections, and similar phenomena in affecting policy-making processes and defining policy content while, in the case of political sociology, a key focus has been on understanding the roles played by social structure in defining actor "interests" and positions in policy-making processes (Mayntz 1983).

Studies in these disciplines have revealed a great deal about policy-formation processes but tended to neglect the implementation component of policymaking. Studies in other fields, such as public administration and management and organization studies, on the other hand, have traditionally focused their efforts on the study of the inner workings of government, especially the study of behavioural and management issues involved in such tasks as financial administration and budgeting, ministerial responsibility and accountability, the operation of the merit principle, and human resources/personnel administration. While these studies often purposely avoided considering the more political aspects of policy processes, they provided a great deal of information on implementation issues, which has helped fill in the blanks left in earlier studies.

In his pathbreaking early works on public policymaking, Harold Lasswell drew on both these literatures, not only to define public policy, clarify important aspects of policymaking such as the number and type of stages involved in policy deliberations, and emphasize the importance of context to its workings (Torgerson 1985, 1990) but also to think about the main instruments of policymaking.

Lasswell (1954) noted the extent to which governments could affect policymaking through manipulations involving, among other things, "symbols, signs and icons", and argued that a principal task of the policy sciences must be to understand the nuances of these actions and their effects (Lasswell 1954, 1971). Like others of Lasswell's insights, this orientation was retained by many later students of policymaking who developed very flexible notions of the multiple means by which governments could affect, or give effect to, policy.

In these early works, "policy instruments" were defined very broadly so as to include a wide range of tools or techniques of governance used at different stages of the policy process. However, in the 1970s, as the effort to improve policymaking through improved policy designs took shape, work turned to focus on the evaluation of the impact on policy outcomes of specific kinds of implementation related tools, primarily economic ones like subsidies and taxes (Mayntz 1983; Woodside 1986; Sterner 2003) but later extended to many more types and variations.

Many authors and scholars, following this lead, argued for a fundamental recasting of policy studies along the lines of implementation research. Bardach (1980) and Salamon (1981), for example, both argued in the early 1980s that policy studies had "gone wrong" right at the start by defining policy in terms of "issues", "areas" or "fields", rather than in terms of "instruments". As Salamon put it:

> The major shortcoming of current implementation research is that it focuses on the wrong unit of analysis, and the most important theoretical breakthrough would be to identify a more fruitful unit on which to focus analysis and research. In particular, rather than focusing on individual programs, as is now done, or even collections of

> programs grouped according to major "purpose," as is frequently proposed, the suggestion here is that we should concentrate instead on the generic tools of government action, on the "techniques" of social intervention.
>
> *(1981: 256)*

Following these kinds of injunctions, other scholars began to investigate the links between implementation failures and policy success in more detail and turned their gaze directly on the subject of how implementation alternatives were crafted and formulated (Mayntz 1979; Goggin et al. 1990; O'Toole 2000). Studies in economics and law which focused on the "ex-post" evaluation of the impact of policy outputs (Bobrow 1977; Stokey and Zeckhauser 1978), for example, began the more systematic appraisal of implementation alternatives. Many lessons about policy instruments and policy design were also drawn from legal studies, for example, which revealed a great deal about how tools such as laws, regulations, and other mechanisms involved in the delivery of various kinds of goods and services operate and upon procedural aspects of formulation and implementation activities such as the passage of legislation and forms of administrative rulemaking, while organization, management, and administrative studies provided insights into the links between administrative systems and governance modes, among others (Peters and Pierre 1998; Pierre and Peters 2005). Ultimately, insights gleaned from a wide body of interdisciplinary literature concerning policy inputs and governmental processes were combined in the 1980s and 1990s in the explicit study of policy instruments and their role in policy design.

Studies from the early 1980s focused on the need to more precisely categorize types of policy instruments in order to better analyze the reasons for their use (Salamon 1981; Tupper and Doern 1981; Trebilcock and Hartle 1982; Bressers and Honigh 1986; Bressers and Klok 1988). Careful examination and systematic classification of implementation instruments and instrument choices, it was argued, would not only lead to insights into the factors driving the policy process and the characterization of long-term patterns of public policymaking, as Lasswell had hoped, but would also allow practitioners to more readily draw lessons from the experiences of others with the use of particular techniques in specific circumstances and hence improve policy designs and outcomes (Mayntz 1983; Linder and Peters 1984; Woodside 1986).

During this period, studies in Europe and North America shed a great deal of light on the construction and establishment of regulatory and other political and administrative agencies and enterprises, traditional financial inducements, and the "command-and-control" measures adopted by administrative agencies (Tupper and Doern 1981; Hood 1986; Howlett 1991; Vedung 1998; Landry et al. 1998). And this new emphasis on the systematic study of policy instruments quickly generated a sizable academic literature and resulted in immediate application in the design of many new policy initiatives in emerging areas such as pollution prevention and professional regulation (Trebilcock 1983; Hippes 1988). Significant subjects such as the reasons behind shifts in patterns of instrument choices associated with the waves of privatization and deregulation which characterized the period also received attention (Howlett and Ramesh 1993).

Most of these studies, however, focused exclusively on what were referred to in previous chapters as "substantive instruments": that is, those which directly affect the production and delivery of goods and services in society. These early studies failed to adequately address procedural tools and consequently, until around the year 2000, developed only a partial description of policy tools and an understanding of how instrument choices related to policy design.

Nevertheless, by the late 1980s the field of instrument studies had advanced enough that Salamon (1989) could argue that the "tools approach" had become a major approach to policy studies in its own right, bringing a unique perspective to the policy sciences with its focus on

policy outputs. Salamon argued that this perspective had revealed that not only did, as traditional studies had maintained, "politics determine policy", but also the reverse (Landry et al. 1998). That is, via the feedback mechanism in the policy cycle (Pierson 1992, 1993), tool choices led to the establishment of a "political economy" of a policy regime: a tool choice such as, for example, a decision to use tax incentives to accomplish some end, created a constituency for continuation of that incentive (and sometimes one opposed to it), affecting future policy deliberations and decisions including those related to instrument choices (Linder and Peters 1984; Bobrow and Dryzek 1987; Dryzek and Ripley 1988).

At this point, Salomon framed two important research questions to be addressed in future analyses of the tools of government action: "What consequences does the choice of tool of government action have for the effectiveness and operation of a government program?" and "What factors influence the choice of program tools?" (265). These questions were taken up by the "tools approach" and the policy design literature in the 1990s.

The Development of Models in the Study of Policy Tools

Assessing and answering Salomon's questions required scholars interested in policy design to engage in a lengthy process of social scientific analysis and model building related to the study of implementation tools. These efforts expanded the number of preliminary questions which needed to be answered before Salomon's queries could be addressed (Salamon 1981; Timmermans et al. 1998; Hood 2007) to include:

1. What potential tools does any government have?
2. How can these be classified?
3. How have these been chosen in the past?
4. Is there a pattern for this use?
5. If so, how can we explain this (or these) pattern(s)?
6. Can we improve on past patterns of use?

The Construction of Empirical Inventories

The first step in the systematic study of policy instruments, as in any other similar endeavour in the social sciences, is the establishment of an inventory of the dependent variable.

While there were many scholars who had looked at specific tools in the past (such as Cushman's 1941 study of regulatory agencies, which was often cited by early students of the field), the first efforts to systematically define the range of possible instruments which could be used in a policy design originated in the post–World War II planning exercises undertaken by the United Nations and the Organization for Economic Cooperation and Development (OECD) in Europe.

Key figures in this research included Nobel Prize–winning development economists such as E. S. (Etienne) Kirschen and Jan Tinbergen, who published groundbreaking studies including *Economic Policy in Our Times* (1964), dealing with the instruments for economic policy they had viewed in operation in the process of post-war European reconstruction. One of the first inventories of instruments was Kirschen et al.'s (1964) identification of well over 40 different types of implementation instruments then prevalent in European economic policy-making activities, ranging from public enterprises to various forms of government procurement and tax incentive and subsidy schemes.

Such studies were followed by many others examining the instruments prevalent in other areas, such as banking and foreign policy (Hermann 1982), adding to the list tools such as

interest rate determination and other monetary and fiscal tools. These were pathbreaking studies which, although they did not make any distinctions between general implementation preferences, policy mechanisms, and calibrations, and very often confused implementation tools and instruments used at other stages of the policy process, laid the groundwork for such future refinements by providing the raw data required for later classification efforts.

The Development of Taxonomies

Once a fairly exhaustive inventory has been created, the next major step in theory construction is to move towards taxonomy: that is, examining the list of the phenomena under consideration and attempting to classify or categorize the subject matter into a smaller number of mutually exclusive categories, which together retain the exhaustive character of the original lists. Many such schemes were developed in the policy instruments literature of the 1960s to 1980s.

Kirschen and his fellow authors (1964), for example, utilized a resource-based taxonomy of governing instruments to group instruments into five general "families" according to the "governing resource" they used: public finance, money and credit, exchange rates, direct control, and changes in the institutional framework (16–17). However, this scheme was very sectorally specific and focused on the specific problem of achieving economic development goals. More generic schemes were developed, such as that put forward by Theodore Lowi (1966, 1972), which heavily influenced later thinking on the subject.

Lowi developed the insight first put forward by students of public administration in the USA like Cushman (see Figure 3.2) that governments had only a small number of alternative choices in any given regulatory situation, depending on the amount of coercion they wished to employ in that situation – in Cushman's case, choosing either to regulate or not and, if so, to regulate either by the use of public enterprises or regulatory commissions. This analysis, among other things, introduced the idea that instrument choices were multi-level and nested, an insight which would be further developed in the years to come.

In his own work, however, Lowi argued that a four-cell matrix based on the specificity of the target of coercion and the likelihood of its actual application would suffice to distinguish all the major types of government implementation activity. The original three policy types he developed included the weakly sanctioned and individually targeted "distributive" policies, the individually targeted and strongly sanctioned "regulatory" policy, and the strongly sanctioned and generally targeted "redistributive" policy. To these three, Lowi later added the weakly sanctioned and generally targeted category of "constituent" policy (see Table 4.1).

This was a significant advance, since it attempted to reduce the complexity of instrument choice to a single two-dimensional framework. However, Lowi's categories of tools – distributive, redistributive, constituent, and regulatory – did not fit well with existing tool inventories and hence were difficult to operationalize and test (Roberts and Dean 1994). As a result, many other classification schemes emerged in the literature in the mid-to-late 1980s.

Many of these efforts, but not all, followed Lowi's and Cushman's lead in focusing on some aspect of coercion as the key element differentiating policy instrument types. In a key development, however, some also introduced a greater number of differentiating criteria. Balch (1980), for example, talked about both "carrots" (inducements or incentives) and "sticks" (coercion or disincentives), while Bardach (1980) argued that government had three "technologies" which they could utilize in any given choice situation – enforcement, inducement, and benefaction – and that these strategies required different combinations of four critical governmental resources: money, political support, administrative competency, and creative leadership. Elmore (1987) identified four major classes of instruments: mandates, inducements, capacity building, and system changing.

Table 2.1 Hood's 1986 Taxonomy of Substantive Policy Instruments

		Governing Resource			
		Nodality	*Authority*	*Treasure*	*Organization*
Principle	Detectors	Surveys	Licencing	Policing	Record keeping
Use	Effectors	Public information campaign	Regulation	Subsidies	Government agencies

Source: Adapted from Christopher Hood, *The Tools of Government*, Chatham: Chatham House Publishers, 1986

Further studies moving in the design direction refined this idea of only a limited number of "governing resources" lying behind each tool. Christopher Hood (1983, 1986) generated a major work on the subject in 1986 which was heavily influenced by detailed studies of the British and German policy implementation processes undertaken previously by Dunsire (1978) and Mayntz (1975). It involved the elaboration of a fourfold resource-based categorization scheme for policy instruments which served as an admirable synthesis of the other, earlier, models.

Hood argued that governments have essentially four resources at their disposal, which they can use to either effect changes in their environment or detect them: nodality, meaning the resource that existed simply by nature of the fact that governments existed at the "centre" of social and political networks but which can also be thought of as "information" or "knowledge"; authority; treasure; and organization (or "NATO" in Hood's terminology). In Hood's scheme, implementation instruments are grouped together according to which of the NATO resources they most or primarily relied on for their effectiveness, fully recognizing that most used some combination of these resources in practice (Anderson 1977; Hood 1986).

A government regulation requiring a licence in order to use a particular pesticide, for example, is a policy tool expected to give effect to a set of policy objectives (in this case, a problem with externalities from pollution and information asymmetries between producers and consumers of sophisticated chemical products) within a set of aims (such as environmental protection and species preservation) and implementation preferences (such as market-based service delivery within a market mode of governance). Such a mechanism requires an organization to implement it, some funding to pay the personnel involved in that activity, information notices to regulatees that a licence is required and that the requirement will be enforced, and some legal authority to create a licence scheme and enforce it. Such an instrument thus involves the use of many types of governing resources, but the primary resource it relies on is the legal authority to enforce compliance, without which all the other resources would be ineffective and unnecessary.

This taxonomy proved useful in providing a limited number of eight clearly differentiated categories of instruments (see Table 2.1).

Contemporary Conceptions of Instrument Choice

As Linder and Peters (1990: 307) noted, once the tools of government have been inventoried and classified, "the need to do something more becomes irresistible". The next logical step was "to explore functional connections" involving "matching instruments to goals, policy problems, social impact and organizations". Taking this next step towards the idea of policy design, as we have seen, requires clarifying the nature of the criteria by which experts assess policy tools and the nature of the contexts in which they can reasonably be anticipated to perform as expected.

Kirschen et al., in their early 1964 work, had already gone some distance towards that goal by arguing that the key determinants of policy choice in the case of the economic instruments

they had identified were the economic objective or goal pursued and the structural and conjunctural context of the choice. The economic objectives, they argued, were determined by the interaction of political parties and their representatives in government, administrators, and interest groups (1964: 224–236) while the structural and conjunctural context, in turn, was affected by the influence of long-term economic processes and structures and current economic conditions (236–238). They argued that the actual choice of instrument from within the set that fit these epistemic and contextual constraints should be made on essentially technical grounds, according to efficiency and cost criteria, although the political preferences of interest groups and governments – including sociological and ideological constraints – and the institutional limitations of the political system itself had to be taken into account as factors influencing key decision-makers (238–244).

This was a prescient analysis of the overall set of factors affecting instrument choices (Majone 1976, 1989), combining as it did both technical and political factors. However, it was also one which was not adequately grounded in a classification of instruments so as to be able to produce specific recommendations or hypotheses concerning appropriate instrument selections and policy designs in different circumstances or times.

The first models of instrument choices which were so grounded attempted to identify a limited number of criteria upon which policy tools varied, creating single or multiple "spectrums" or "continuums" of instrument characteristics which it was hoped could then be associated with specific government preferences among these criteria. Dahl and Lindblom, for example, as early as 1953 had argued that the number of alternative politico-economic instruments is virtually infinite and proposed five long continua as a method of assessing tool preferability in specific contextual situations (Dahl and Lindblom 1953). Their first continuum ranged instruments according to whether they involved public or private enterprises or agencies, the second according to whether they were persuasive or compulsory, the third according to whether they involved direct or indirect controls over expenditures, the fourth according to whether they involved organizations with voluntary or compulsory membership, and the fifth according to whether government agencies were autonomous or directly responsible to legislators or executive members. Although Dahl and Lindblom did not pursue any further the question of whether and to what extent governments actually used these criteria in order to choose a particular instrument, their idea of arranging instruments on a continuum in order to better clarify the reasons behind their choice was adopted by many authors. Salamon and Lund (1989), for example, suggested that different instruments involve varying degrees of effectiveness, efficiency, equity, legitimacy, and partisan support that affect their appropriateness for a particular situation.

A simplified version of this model was put forward by a group of Canadian scholars including Bruce Doern, Richard Phidd, Seymour Wilson, and others, who published a series of articles and monographs in the late 1970s and early 1980s that turned Lowi's two-dimensional matrix of policy choices into a single continuum of policy instruments based on the "degree of government coercion" each instrument choice entailed. They first placed only self-regulation, exhortation, subsidies, and regulation on this scale (Doern 1981) but later added in categories for "taxation" and public enterprise (Tupper and Doern 1981) and, finally, an entire series of finer "gradations" within each general category (Doern and Phidd 1983) (see Figure 4.3).

For Doern and his colleagues, the development of their coercion spectrum model led to the hypothesis of a twofold rationale of instrument choice, one that fit very well with the notion of a "continuum" of choices and offered a great deal of explanatory power in the context of liberal-democratic states. This rationale was based on an appreciation of the ideological preferences of liberal-democratic governments for limited state activity and the difficulties posed to

this principle by the relative political "strength" of the societal actors in resisting government efforts to shape their behaviour. Assuming that all instruments were more or less technically "substitutable" – or could perform any task although not necessarily as easily or at the same cost – they argued that in a liberal-democratic society, governments, for ideological reasons, would prefer to use the least coercive instruments available and would only "move up the scale" of coercion as far as was necessary to overcome societal resistance to attaining their goal. As Doern and Wilson put it:

> [P]oliticians have a strong tendency to respond to policy issues, (any issue) by moving successively from the least coercive governing instrument to the most coercive. Thus they tend to respond first in the least coercive fashion by creating a study, or by creating a new or reorganized unit of government, or merely by uttering a broad statement of intent. The next least coercive governing instrument would be to use a distributive spending approach in which the resources could be handed out to constituencies in such a way that the least attention is given as to which taxpayers' pockets the resources are being drawn from. At the more coercive end of the continuum of governing instruments would be a larger redistributive programme, in which resources would be more visibly extracted from the more advantaged classes and redistributed to the less advantaged classes. Also at the more coercive end of the governing continuum would be direct regulation in which the sanctions or threat of sanctions would have to be directly applied.
>
> *(Doern and Wilson 1974: 339)*

This model was lauded for its simplicity and elegance but, as critics pointed out, was still problematical since "coercion" appears to be indivisible or, at best, still very difficult to operationalize with the degree of precision required by the model (Trebilcock et al. 1982). Trebilcock et al. questioned the likelihood of state actors adhering to a minimalist notion of their own proper role in society, preferring public choice–inspired notions about bureaucratic expansionism and political credit mongering motivating administrative and political policymakers, especially notions of a political cost-benefit calculus aimed at vote maximization (Trebilcock et al. 1982).

This formulation nevertheless has many advantages. It is not unidimensional, although it might appear so on first reading, because it, like Kirschen, does take into account several political and contextual variables, and it, like Cushman, assumes instrument choices are multi-level, with finer calibrations of instruments emerging after initial broad selections have been made. That is, it assumes that both states' and societal interests in liberal-democratic regimes prefer a minimal state and choose instruments accordingly after that initial decision has been made. Preferring "self-regulation", governments would first attempt to influence overall target group performance through exhortation and then add instruments only as required in order to compel recalcitrant societal actors to abide by its wishes, eventually culminating, if necessary, in the takeover of individual firms.

This is not an unreasonable conclusion, based as it is on much observation of the practices of such governments, and hints at the "nested" nature of instrument choices, a subject not previously as well developed in instrument studies. However, as Woodside (1986) argued:

> Experience suggest that governments do not always seek to avoid coercive solutions, but indeed, may at times seem to revel in taking a hard line from the start. While there are undoubtedly many reasons for these heavy-handed responses, surely some of the

> most important ones include the constituency or group at which the policy is aimed, the circumstances in which the problem has appeared, and the nature of the problem involved.
>
> *(786)*

These authors also questioned the notion of instrument substitutability found in Doern's work, arguing that constitutional restraints, financial limitations, and other technical criteria prevented certain instruments from being utilized in specific circumstances (Trebilcock and Prichard 1983). Thompson and Stanbury did much the same, focusing on visibility and its linkages to political advantage and disadvantage as a criterion of instrument choice. Democratic politicians, they argued, are not ideologically predisposed towards a small state or minimal instruments but would adopt whatever instrument generates the most political benefits for them while minimizing the political costs (Howard and Stanbury 1984; Stanbury 1986; Baxter-Moore 1987).

Improving on Hood's Taxonomy of Policy Instruments: Adding in Procedural Tools and "Non-implementation Tools"

All this work, however, focused on implementation and the kinds of tools governments used to influence other actors in society to abide by their wishes. They generally did not examine other stages of the policy process – such as agenda-setting, policy formulation, decision-making, or policy evaluation – and also failed to examine the kinds of "procedural" tools governments have at their disposal in affecting these aspects of policy-making from the creation of new departments and agencies to the spread of information, be it true or false.

Most older literature on policy tools focused on single instrument choices and designs (Tupper and Doern 1981; Salamon 1989; Trebilcock and Prichard 1983), and these studies provide only limited insights into the complex arrangements of multiple policy instruments which are commonly found in all policy fields (Jordan et al. 2011, 2012; Givoni 2013). Many significant issues related to the manner in which tool choices in bundles are made and how tool bundles evolve over time affect the propensity for designs to avoid the twin shoals of over- and underreacting to problems (Maor 2012; Howlett and Rayner 2007) while incorporating better knowledge of both synergistic and counterproductive tool relationships and interactions (Del Rio 2010; Leplay and Thoyer 2011; Grabosky 1995; Justen et al. 2013). For these authors, the key question was no longer "Why do policymakers utilize a certain instrument?" as it was for earlier generations of students of policy instrument choice, but rather "Why is a particular combination of procedural and substantive instruments utilized in a specific sector?" (Dunsire 1993; Howlett 2000; Salamon 2002; Cubbage et al. 2007; Gleirscher 2008; Gipperth 2008; Taylor 2008; Clark and Russell 2009; McGoldrick and Boonn 2010). Hence, for example, a well-known implementation style found in many US policy sectors, dubbed "adversarial legalism" by Robert Kagan, is composed of a preferred substantive instrument – regulation – and a characteristic procedural one – judicial review – based on widespread, easily accessible legal procedures (Kagan 1991).

Fortunately, though, earlier generations of implementation scholars had not completely neglected procedural instruments, and other works, like those of Gunningham and his colleagues (Gunningham et al. 1998) had begun to deal with the problem of the design of policy mixes or combinations of procedural and substantive tools put in place to accomplish government ends. In the late 1990s, work on instrument selection began to assess the question of the potential to develop optimal policy mixes and to move away from a focus on single instrument choices (Grabosky 1994; Gunningham and Young 1997). Studies such as Gunningham, Grabosky, and Young's work on "smart regulation" led to the development of efforts to identify

complementarities and conflicts within instrument mixes or tool "portfolios" involved in more complex and sophisticated policy designs (Barnett et al. 2009; Barnett and Shore 2009; Buckman and Diesendorf 2010).

Meanwhile, other scholars such as Salamon had also turned their attention to the issue of micro-calculations and calibrations of policy tools and developed ideas about the sets of factors policy formulators take into account in fine-tuning their instrument choices, such as deciding not just whether or not to provide a subsidy to industry, but how much to provide and in what fashion (Salamon 1989, 2002).

And others, like Schneider and Ingram, developed more sophisticated notions of the interrelationships existing between governance modes and target group behaviour which did not always assume that governments benevolently, or accurately, selected the correct policy targets (Schneider and Ingram 1997). In their 1990 study of policy targets and their behaviour, Schneider and Ingram also began to systematically pursue Doern's insight that the extent of a government's willingness to alter the underlying behaviour of key policy actors was a major factor affecting its choice of policy implementation tools. They argued that policy-making "almost always attempts to get people to do things that they might not otherwise do" and noted that:

> If people are not taking actions needed to ameliorate social, economic or political problems, there are five reasons that can be addressed by policy: they may believe that law does not direct them or authorize them to take action; they may lack incentives or capacity to take the actions needed; they may disagree with the values implicit in the means or ends; or the situation may involve such high levels of uncertainty that the nature of the problem is not known, and it is unclear what people should do or how they might be motivated.
>
> *(Schneider and Ingram 1990: 513–514)*

That is, they recognized that each of Hood's "statecraft" resources required not only state capacity in that area – that is, a plentiful supply of the "resource" – but also a corresponding belief or endowment on the part of target groups which would allow that capacity to be utilized effectively (Schneider and Ingram 1990a, 1990b, 1993, 1994, 1997).

Thus, the effective use of "nodality", for example, requires the transmission of information to targets, "authority" requires the enforcement capability to coerce or force targets to do something they might not otherwise wish to do, "treasure" requires having the fiscal capacity to provide targets with incentives or disincentives to act in certain ways, and "organization" requires the administrative capacity to provide them with some good or service directly. But in order to be effective not only must governments have an adequate "supply" of these resources but targets must also be susceptible to their deployment: effective information transmission requires credibility or the belief among targets that a government is telling the truth; the effective use of authority requires legitimacy or the belief among the target population that the use of authority is legally and morally appropriate; the effective use of treasure resources requires cupidity or the willingness on the part of actors to accept payments or make them; and the effective use of organization requires trust on the part of the target group that an administration is competent and capable of actually delivering the promised goods or services.

In the case of procedural instruments, several works dealing with aspects of the subject provided a broad sense of which direction to pursue in attempting to elevate this area of instrument studies to the level that substantive implementation instrument research had attained through taxonomy construction and model building (Walker 1983, 1991; Qualter 1985).

In their 1988 work, for example, Bressers and Klok (1988) had noted the ways in which "subjective rational actors" can be influenced by manipulation of the alternatives placed before them and that different instruments can affect the number of policy options developed in the policy process or the calculations of the costs and benefits of alternative courses of action made by policy actors. While some of the instruments they examined were "substantive" (for example, the use of licences to affect the cost of certain activities), most of the instruments captured by their scheme were procedural, especially those dealing with the selective creation, provision, and diffusion of information to policy actors.

On the basis of this analysis, Schneider and Ingram, following Elmore and his colleagues, identified five general types of instruments corresponding to these "behavioural assumptions". These they called "authority", "incentives", "capacity-building", "symbolic and hortatory" and "learning" instruments. As was the case with Bressers and Klok, this scheme included both "procedural" and "substantive" tools. While their discussion, like many in the USA at the time, virtually ignored pure public provision of goods and services by government agencies and corporations (Leman 1989), the "authority" and "incentive" examples cited are typical substantive instruments involving mixed provision of goods and services by a combination of private and public actors. "Capacity", "symbolic", and "learning" tools, however, are much more procedurally oriented, affecting the policy institutions and processes within which policy decisions take place.

Taken together, the works of Bressers and Klok, along with those of Schneider and Ingram and others in the US and Europe, identified a large number of procedural instruments, their inventory, like that in the case of substantive tools, being accompanied by several ideas about how to classify them (Chapman 1973; Weiss and Tschirhart 1994). These authors identified, among others, tools involved in education, training, institution creation, the selective provision of information, formal evaluations, hearings, and institutional reform (Wraith and Lamb 1971; Chapman 1973; Kernaghan 1985; Peters 1992; Weiss and Tschirhart 1994; Bellehumeur 1997).

Research into the tools and mechanisms used in intergovernmental regulatory design also identified several other such instruments, including intergovernmental "treaties" and a variety of "political agreements" that can affect target-group recognition of government intentions and vice versa (Bulmer 1993; Doern and Wilks 1998; Harrison 1999). Other research into interest-group behaviour and activities highlighted the existence of tools related to group creation and manipulation, including the role played by private- or public-sector patrons in aiding the formation and activities of such groups (Burt 1990; Phillips 1991; Pal 1993; Finkle et al. 1994; Nownes and Neeley 1996; Lowry 1999). Still other specialized research into aspects of contemporary policymaking highlighted the use of procedural techniques such as the provision of research funding for, and access to, investigative hearings and tribunals (Salter and Slaco 1981; Gormley 1989; Cairns 1990; Jenson 1994).

While most researchers focused on the manner in which these instruments were used to enhance "desirable" traits in public policymaking, such as enhanced participation and the wider dissemination of policy-relevant knowledge, some scholars like Saward (1992) also emphasized that procedural tools were also used to "negatively" affect interest groups' and other actors' behaviour: that is, to restrict their freedom to associate and engage in policy-influencing activities. This latter research highlighted the role such tools have played on the "dark side" of politics and policymaking: for example, suppressing government enemies and rewarding friends via punishment, exclusions, and denial of information (Goodin 1980; Saward 1990, 1992).

Examples of "negative" procedural policy tools identified at this time included co-opting opponents through provision of funds and other privileges, denying information, keeping opponents' views from the public, penalizing opponents by denying funding or recognition,

fragmenting opposition – divide and conquer – by selective rewarding, rewarding "neutrals", adding administrative hurdles and costs to opponents, and many more. These latter studies, however, all existed outside the mainstream of policy instrument research, which continued to focus almost exclusively on substantive implementation tools but were ready to be used when policy design and implementation studies moved in a procedural direction in the late 1990s.

Hood's taxonomy of substantive instruments can be modified to help make sense of this disparate list of procedural tools, and this task was undertaken in the late 1990s in several quarters. Classifying procedural instruments just as Hood had done for their substantive counterparts – that is, in accordance with the type of "governing resource" on which they primarily rely for their effectiveness – generates a useful preliminary taxonomy of procedural tools.

Drawing a distinction between "positive" and "negative" uses of governing resources in terms of whether they encourage or discourage actor participation in policy processes further parallels the "effector-detector" distinction made in Hood's original discussion of substantive tools (Howlett 2000) (see Table 2.2).

As was the case with Hood's discussion of substantive instruments, this taxonomy is useful insofar as it highlights a small number of different basic resources used by different types of procedural tools and therefore allows a virtually unlimited number of such instruments to be placed in a limited number of general categories, preparing the ground for the development of improved understandings of the basic contours and possibilities of tool selection and of policy designs.

This insight allows a simplified NATO model to be set out in Table 2.3, which includes both procedural and substantive tools as well as a clearer idea of what constitutes a basic governing resource. It is this model which is used in many of the chapters which follow to set out and describe the basic subtypes and most common individual kinds of implementation instruments used in contemporary policy designs.

Table 2.2 A Resource-Based Taxonomy of Procedural Policy Instruments

		Governing Resource			
		Nodality	*Authority*	*Treasure*	*Organization*
Principle of Use	"Positive"	Freedom of information	Mandated participatory processes	Interest-group funding	Conferences and commissions
	"Negative"	Propaganda	Preferential access to policymakers	Targeted campaign funding	Red tape

(Cells provide examples of instruments in each category.)

Source: M. Howlett, M, "Managing the 'Hollow State': Procedural Policy Instruments and Modern Governance," *Canadian Public Administration* 43, no. 4 (2000): 412–431

Table 2.3 A Simplified Taxonomy of Substantive and Procedural Implementation Tools

		Governing Resource			
		Information	*Authority*	*Treasure*	*Organization*
Purpose of tool	Substantive	Public information campaigns	Independent regulatory agencies	Subsidies and grants	Public enterprises
	Procedural	Official secrets acts	Administrative advisory committees	Interest-group funding	Government reorganizations

Conclusion

Policy tools, or the instruments and techniques used by government in order to implement policy goals (Howlett 2005), have a special place in considerations and studies of policymaking. This is because this approach is based on the preparation of plans for tool use with a reasonable chance of achieving a specific goal or target (Howlett 2004). Choosing policy tools becomes more complex when multiple goals and multiple policies are involved within the same sector and government, as is very common in many policy-making situations (Doremus 2003; Jordan et al. 2012; Howlett et al. 2009).

These latter kinds of multi-policy, multi-goal and multi-instrument mixes – what Milkman et al. (2012) call "policy bundles", Chapman (2003) and Hennicke (2004) a "policy mix" and Givoni et al. (2012) "policy packages" – are examples of complex portfolios of tools. These mixes typically involve much more than functional logics linking tools to a goal and also deal with ideological or even "aesthetic" preferences in tool choices and goal articulation, which involves trade-offs and bargaining between actors in choosing one set of tools, goals, and policies over another (Williams and Balaz 1999). This makes their formulation or design especially problematic (Peters 2005; Givoni 2013; Givoni et al. 2012). Most often, the focus should move from the design of specific instruments to the appropriate design of instrument mixes. This is more difficult to do when instruments belong to different territorial/administrative levels.

Key design questions about such portfolios with which contemporary scholars and practitioners grapple include the issues of avoiding both "over" and "under" design (Haynes and Li 1993; Maor 2012), how to achieve "complementarity" and avoid "redundancy" or counterproductive mixes (Grabosky 1995; Hou and Brewer 2010; Justen et al. 2013), how to enhance or alter mixes over time so that they continue to meet old goals and take on new ones (Heijden 2011; Kay 2007), and how to sequence or phase in instruments over time (Taeihagh et al. 2013).

As this discussion has shown, over the course of the past 30 years, the study of policy implementation instruments has advanced through the various stages of social scientific theory construction and now contributes a great deal of knowledge to policy formulation and policy design (Hood 2007; Lascoumes and Le Gales 2007).

References

Anderson, C. W. *Statecraft: An Introduction to Political Choice and Judgement*. New York: John Wiley and Sons, 1977.

Balch, G. I. "The Stick, the Carrot, and Other Strategies: A Theoretical Analysis of Governmental Intervention." *Law and Policy Quarterly* 2, no. 1 (1980): 35–60.

Bardach, E. *Implementation Studies and the Study of Implements*. Washington, DC: American Political Science Association, 1980.

Barnett, Carole K., and Barry Shore. "Reinventing Program Design: Challenges in Leading Sustainable Institutional Change." *Leadership & Organization* 30, no. 1 (2009): 16–35.

Barnett, Pauline, Tim Tenbensel, Jacqueline Cuming, Calre Alyden, Toni Ashton, Megan Pledger, and Mili Burnette. "Implementing New Modes of Governance in the New Zealand Health System: An Empirical Study." *Health Policy* 93 (2009): 118–127.

Baxter-Moore, N. "Policy Implementation and the Role of the State: A Revised Approach to the Study of Policy Instruments." In *Contemporary Canadian Politics: Readings and Notes*, edited by R. J. Jackson, and D. Jackson, 336–55. Scarborough: Prentice-Hall, 1987.

Bellehumeur, R. "Review: An Instrument of Change." *Optimum* 27, no. 1 (1997): 37–42.

Bobrow, D. B. "Beyond Markets and Lawyers." *American Journal of Political Science* 21, no. 2 (1977): 415–433.

Bobrow, D. B., and J. S. Dryzek. *Policy Analysis by Design*. Pittsburgh: University of Pittsburgh Press, 1987.

Bressers, H., and M. Honigh. "A Comparative Approach to the Explanation of Policy Effects." *International Social Science Journal*, 108 (1986): 267–288.

Bressers, H., and P. J. Klok. "Fundamentals for a Theory of Policy Instruments." *International Journal of Social Economics* 15, nos. 3/4 (1988): 22–41.

Buckman, Greg, and Mark Diesendorf. "Design Limitations in Australian Renewable Electricity Policies." *Energy Policy* 38, no. 7 (July 2010): 3365–3376.

Bulmer, M. "The Royal Commission and Departmental Committee in the British Policy-Making Process." In *Advising West European Governments: Inquiries, Expertise and Public Policy*, edited by B. G. Peters and A. Barker, 37–49. Edinburgh: Edinburgh University Press, 1993.

Burt, S. "Canadian Women's Groups in the 1980s: Organizational Development and Policy Influence." *Canadian Public Policy* 16, no. 1 (1990): 17–28.

Cairns, A. C., A. P. Pross, I. Christie, and J. A. Yogis. "Reflections on Commission Research." In *Commissions of Inquiry*, 87–110. Toronto: Carswell, 1990.

Chapman, R. "A Policy Mix for Environmentally Sustainable Development: Learning from the Dutch Experience." *New Zealand Journal of Environmental Law* 7, no. 1 (2003): 29–51.

Chapman, R. A. *The Role of Commissions in Policy-Making*. London: George Allen and Unwin, 1973.

Clark, C. D., and C. S. Russell. "Ecological Conservation: The Problems of Targeting Policies and Designing Instruments." *Journal of Natural Resources Policy Research* 1, no. 1 (2009): 21–34.

Cubbage, Frederick, Patrice Harou, and Erin Sills. "Policy Instruments to Enhance Multi-Functional Forest Management." *Forest Policy and Economics* 9, no. 7 (April 2007): 833–851.

Cushman, R. E. *The Independent Regulatory Commissions*. London: Oxford University Press, 1941.

Dahl, R. A., and C. E. Lindblom. *Politics, Economics and Welfare: Planning and Politico-Economic Systems Resolved into Basic Social Processes*. New York: Harper and Row, 1953.

Doern, G. B. *The Nature of Scientific and Technological Controversy in Federal Policy Formation*. Ottawa: Science Council of Canada, 1981.

Doern, G. B., and R. W. Phidd. *Canadian Public Policy: Ideas, Structure, Process*. Toronto: Methuen, 1983.

Doern, G. B., and S. Wilks. *Changing Regulatory Institutions in Britain and North America*. Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1998.

Doern, G. B., and V. S. Wilson. "Conclusions and Observations." In *Issues in Canadian Public Policy*, 337–345. Toronto: Macmillan, 1974.

Doremus, H. "A Policy Portfolio Approach to Biodiversity Protection on Private Lands." *Environmental Science & Policy* 6 (2003): 217–232.

Dryzek, J. S., and B. Ripley. "The Ambitions of Policy Design." *Policy Studies Review* 7, no. 4 (1988): 705–719.

Dunsire, A. *The Execution Process*. Oxford: Martin Robertson, 1978.

Dunsire, A. *Manipulating Social Tensions: Collibration as an Alternative Mode of Government Intervention*. Koln: Max Plank Institut fur Gesellschaftsforschung Discussion Paper 93/7, 1993.

Elmore, R. F. "Instruments and Strategy in Public Policy." *Policy Studies Review* 7, no. 1 (1987): 174–186.

Finkle, P., K. Webb, W. T. Stanbury, and P. Pross. *Federal Government Relations with Interest Groups: A Reconsideration*. Ottawa: Privy Council Office, 1994.

Gipperth, Lena. "The Legal Design of the International and European Union Ban on Tributyltin Antifouling Paint: Direct and Indirect Effects." *Journal of Environmental Management* 90, no. Supplement (2008): S86–S95.

Givoni, Moshe. "Addressing Transport Policy Challenges through Policy-Packaging." *Transportation Research Part A: Policy and Practice* 60 (February 2014): 1–8. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.tra.2013.10.012.

Givoni, Moshe, James Macmillen, David Banister, and Eran Feitelson. "From Policy Measures to Policy Packages." *Transport Reviews* (2012): 1–20.

Gleirscher, Norbert. "Policy Instruments in Support of Organic Farming in Austria." *International Journal of Agricultural Resources, Governance and Ecology* 7, no. 1/2 (2008): 51–62.

Goggin, M. L., A. O. M. Bowman, J. P. Lester, and Larry J. O'Toole. *Implementation Theory and Practice: Toward A Third Generation*. Glenview: Scott, Foresman/Little, Brown, 1990.

Goodin, R. E. *Manipulatory Politics*. New Haven, CT: Yale University Press, 1980.

Gormley, W. T. *Taming the Bureaucracy: Muscles, Prayers and Other Strategies*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1989.

Grabosky, P. N. "Green Markets: Environmental Regulation by the Private Sector." *Law and Policy* 16, no. 4 (1994): 419–448.

Grabosky, P. N. "Regulation by Reward: On the Use of Incentives as Regulatory Instruments." *Law Policy* 17, no. 3 (1995): 257–282.

Gunningham, N., and M. D. Young. "Toward Optimal Environmental Policy: The Case of Biodiversity Conservation." *Ecology Law Quarterly* 24 (1997): 243–298.

Gunningham, N., P. Grabosky, and D. Sinclair. *Smart Regulation: Designing Environmental Policy*. Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1998.

Harrison, K. *Voluntarism and Environmental Governance*. UBC: Paper Presented to the PRI/SSHRC Project on Trends – Environmental Section, 1999.

Haynes, Kingsley E., and Qiangsheng Li. "Policy Analysis and Uncertainty: Lessons from the IVHS Transportation Development Process." *Computers, Environment and Urban Systems* 17, no. 1 (January 1993): 1–14.

Heijden, Jeroen van der. "Institutional Layering: A Review of the Use of the Concept." *Politics* 31, no. 1 (January 10, 2011): 9–18.

Hennicke, P. "Scenarios for a Robust Policy Mix: The Final Report of the German Study Commission on Sustainable Energy Supply." *Energy Policy* 32, no. 15 (October 2004): 1673–78. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0301-4215(03)00163-0.

Hermann, Charles F. "Instruments of Foreign Policy." In *Describing Foreign Policy Behaviour*, edited by P. Callahan, L. P. Brady, and M. G. Hermann, 153–174. Beverly Hills, CA: Sage, 1982.

Hippes, G. "New Instruments for Environmental Policy: A Perspective." *International Journal of Social Economics* 15, nos. 3/4 (1988): 42–51.

Hood, C. *The Tools of Government*. Chatham, NJ: Chatham House Publishers, 1986.

Hood, C. "Using Bureaucracy Sparingly." *Public Administration* 61, no. 2 (1983): 197–208.

Hood, Christopher. "Intellectual Obsolescence and Intellectual Makeovers: Reflections on the Tools of Government After Two Decades." *Governance* 20, no. 1 (2007): 127–144.

Hou, Yilin, and Gene Brewer. "Substitution and Supplementation Between Co-Functional Policy Instruments: Evidence from State Budget Stabilization Practices." *Public Administration Review* 70, no. 6 (2010): 914–924.

Howard, J. L., and W. T. Stanbury. "Measuring Leviathan: The Size, Scope and Growth of Governments in Canada." In *Probing Leviathan: An Investigation of Government in the Economy*, edited by G. Lermer. Vancouver: Fraser Institute, 1984.

Howlett, M. "Beyond Good and Evil in Policy Implementation: Instrument Mixes, Implementation Styles and Second Generation Theories of Policy Instrument Choice." *Policy & Society* 23, no. 2 (2004): 1–17.

Howlett, M. "Managing the 'Hollow State': Procedural Policy Instruments and Modern Governance." *Canadian Public Administration* 43, no. 4 (2000): 412–431.

Howlett, M. "Policy Instruments, Policy Styles and Policy Implementation." *Policy Studies Journal* 19, no. 2 (1991): 1–21.

Howlett, M. "What Is a Policy Instrument? Policy Tools, Policy Mixes and Policy Implementation Styles." In *Designing Government: From Instruments to Governance*, edited by P. Eliadis, M. Hill, and M. Howlett, 31–50. Montreal: McGill-Queen's University Press, 2005.

Howlett, M., and M. Ramesh. "Patterns of Policy Instrument Choice: Policy Styles, Policy Learning and the Privatization Experience." *Policy Studies Review* 12, no. 1 (1993): 3–24.

Howlett, Michael, M. Ramesh, and Anthony Perl. *Studying Public Policy: Policy Cycles & Policy Subsystems*. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2009.

Howlett, Michael, and Jeremy Rayner. "Design Principles for Policy Mixes: Cohesion and Coherence in 'New Governance Arrangements.'" *Policy and Society* 26, no. 4 (2007): 1–18.

Jenson, J. "Commissioning Ideas: Representation and Royal Commissions." In *How Ottawa Spends 1994–95: Making Change*, edited by S. D. Phillips, 39–69. Ottawa: Carleton University Press, 1994.

Jordan, A., D. Benson, A. Zito, and Wurzel R. "Environmental Policy: Governing by Multiple Policy Instruments?" In *Constructing a Policy State? Policy Dynamics in the EU*, edited by J. J. Richardson, 104–124. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2012.

Jordan, Andrew, David Benson, Rudiger Wurzel, and Anthony Zito. "Policy Instruments in Practice." In *Oxford Handbook of Climate Change and Society*, edited by J. S. Dryzek, R. B. Norgaard, and D. Schlosberg, 536–549. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2011.

Justen, Andreas, Nils Fearnley, Moshe Givoni, and James Macmillen. "A Process for Designing Policy Packaging: Ideals and Realities." *Transportation Research Part A: Policy and Practice* 60 (February 2014): 9–18.

Kagan, R. A. "Adversarial Legalism and American Government." *Journal of Policy Analysis and Management* 10, no. 3 (1991): 369–406.

Kay, Adrian. "Tense Layering and Synthetic Policy Paradigms: The Politics of Health Insurance in Australia." *Australian Journal of Political Science* 42, no. 4 (2007): 579–591.

Kernaghan, K. "Judicial Review of Administration Action." In *Public Administration in Canada: Selected Readings*, 358–373. Toronto: Methuen, 1985.

Kirschen, E. S., J. Benard, H. Besters, F. Blackaby, O. Eckstein, J. Faaland, F. Hartog, L. Morissens, and E. Tosco. *Economic Policy in Our Time*. Chicago: Rand McNally, 1964.

Landry, R., F. Varone, and M. L. Goggin. "The Determinants of Policy Design: The State of the Theoretical Literature." In *Midwest Political Science Association*, Vol. Chicago, 1998.

Lascoumes, Pierre, and Patrick Le Gales. "Introduction: Understanding Public Policy through Its Instruments – From the Nature of Instruments to the Sociology of Public Policy Instrumentation." *Governance* 20, no. 1 (2007): 1–21.

Lasswell, H. "Key Symbols, Signs and Icons." In *Symbols and Values: An Initial Study*, edited by L. Bryson, L. Finkelstein, R. M. MacIver, and Richard McKean, 77–94. New York: Harper and Brothers, 1954.

Lasswell, H. D. *A Pre-View of Policy Sciences*. New York: Elsevier, 1971.

Leman, C. K. "The Forgotten Fundamental: Successes and Excesses of Direct Government." In *Beyond Privatization: The Tools of Government Action*, edited by L. M. Salamon, 51–92. Washington, DC: Urban Institute, 1989.

Leplay, Solenn, and Sophie Thoyer. "Synergy Effects of International Policy Instruments to Reduce Deforestation: A Cross-Country Panel Data Analysis." Working Paper. LAMETA, Universtiy of Montpellier, 2011. http://ideas.repec.org/p/lam/wpaper/11-01.html.

Linder, S. H., and B. G. Peters. "The Design of Instruments for Public Policy." In *Policy Theory and Policy Evaluation: Concepts, Knowledge, Causes, and Norms*, edited by S. S. Nagel, 103–119. New York: Greenwood Press, 1990.

Linder, S. H., and B. G. Peters. "From Social Theory to Policy Design." *Journal of Public Policy* 4, no. 3 (1984): 237–259.

Lowi, T. J. "Distribution, Regulation, Redistribution: The Functions of Government." In *Public Policies and Their Politics: Techniques of Government Control*, edited by R. B. Ripley, 27–40. New York: W.W. Norton, 1966.

Lowi, T. J. "Four Systems of Policy, Politics and Choice." *Public Administration Review* 32, no. 4 (1972): 298–310.

Lowry, R. C. "Foundation Patronage Toward Citizen Groups and Think Tank: Who Gets Grants?" *The Journal of Politics* 81, no. 3 (1999): 758–776.

Majone, Giandomenico. *Evidence, Argument, and Persuasion in the Policy Process*. New Haven, CT: Yale University Press, 1989.

Majone, Giandomenico. "Choice among Policy Instruments for Pollution Control." *Policy Analysis* 2, no. 4 (1976): 589–613.

Maor, Moshe. "Policy Overreaction." *Journal of Public Policy* 32, no. 3 (2012): 231–259.

Mayntz, R. "Legitimacy and the Directive Capacity of the Political System." In *Stress and Contradiction in Modern Capitalism: Public Policy and the Theory of the State*, edited by L. N. Lindberg, R. Alford, C. Crouch, and C. Offe, 261–274. Lexington: Lexington Press, 1975.

Mayntz, R. "Public Bureaucracies and Policy Implementation." *International Social Science Journal* 31, no. 4 (1979): 633–645.

Mayntz, Renate. "The Conditions of Effective Public Policy: A New Challenge For Policy Analysis." *Policy & Politics* 11 (April 1983): 123–143.

McGoldrick, Daniel E., and Ann V. Boonn. "Public Policy to Maximize Tobacco Cessation." *American Journal of Preventive Medicine* 38, no. 3, Supplement 1 (March 2010): S327–S332.

Milkman, Katherine L., Mary Carol Mazza, Lisa L. Shu, Chia-Jung Tsay, and Max H. Bazerman. "Policy Bundling to Overcome Loss Aversion: A Method for Improving Legislative Outcomes." *Organizational Behavior and Human Decision Processes*, 2012. https://doi.org/16/j.obhdp.2011.07.001.

Nownes, A., and G. Neeley. "Toward an Explanation for Public Interest Group Formation and Proliferation: 'Seed Money', Disturbances, Entrepreneurship, and Patronage." *Policy Studies Journal* 24, no. 1 (1996): 74–92.

Peters, B. G. "Conclusion: The Future of Instruments Research." In *Designing Government: From Instruments to Governance*, edited by P. Eliadis, M. Hill, and M. Howlett, 353–363. Montreal: McGill-Queen's University Press, 2005.

Peters, B. G. "Government Reorganization: A Theoretical Analysis." *International Political Science Review* 13, no. 2 (1992): 199–218.

Pierson, Paul. "'Policy Feedbacks' and Political Change: Contrasting Reagan and Thatcher's Pension-Reform Initiatives." *Studies in American Political Development* 6, no. 2 (1992): 359–390.

Rio, Pablo del. "Interactions Between Climate and Energy Policies: The Case of Spain." *Climate Policy* 9, no. 2 (2009): 119–138. https://doi.org/10.3763/cpol.2007.0424.

Río, Pablo del. "Analysing the Interactions between Renewable Energy Promotion and Energy Efficiency Support Schemes: The Impact of Different Instruments and Design Elements." *Energy Policy* 38, no. 9 (September 2010): 4978–89. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.enpol.2010.04.003.

Salamon, L. M. *Beyond Privatization: The Tools of Government Action*. Washington, DC: Urban Institute, 1989.

Salamon, L. M. "Rethinking Public Management: Third-Party Government and the Changing Forms of Government Action." *Public Policy* 29, no. 3 (1981): 255–275.

Salamon, L. M., and M. S. Lund. "The Tools Approach: Basic Analytics." In *Beyond Privatization: The Tools of Government Action*, edited by L. S. Salamon, 23–50. Washington, DC: Urban Institute, 1989.

Salter, L., and D. Slaco. *Public Inquiries in Canada*. Ottawa: Science Council of Canada, 1981.

Saward, M. "Cooption and Power: Who Gets What From Formal Incorporation." *Political Studies* 38 (1990): 588–602.

Schneider, A. L., and H. Ingram. "Behavioural Assumptions of Policy Tools." *Journal of Politics* 52, no. 2 (1990): 511–29.

Schneider, A. L., and H. Ingram. "Social Construction of Target Populations: Implications for Politics and Policy." *American Political Science Review* 87, no. 2 (1993): 334–347.

Schneider, A. L., and H. Ingram. *Policy Design for Democracy*. Lawrence: University Press of Kansas, 1997.

Stanbury, W. T. *Business-Government Relations in Canada: Grappling with Leviathan*. Toronto: Methuen, 1986.

Sterner, Thomas. *Policy Instruments for Environmental and Natural Resource Management*. Washington, DC: Resources for the Future, 2003.

Stokey, E., and R. Zeckhauser. *A Primer for Policy Analysis*. New York: W.W. Norton, 1978.

Taeihagh, Araz, Moshe Givoni, and René Bañares-Alcántara. "Which Policy First? A Network-Centric Approach for the Analysis and Ranking of Policy Measures." *Environment and Planning B: Planning and Design* 40, no. 4 (2013): 595–616.

Torgerson, D. "Contextual Orientation in Policy Analysis: The Contribution of Harold D. Lasswell." *Policy Sciences* 18 (1985): 240–252.

Trebilcock, M. J. "Regulating Service Quality in Professional Markets." In *The Regulation of Quality: Products, Services, Workplaces, and the Environment*, edited by D. N. Dewees, 83–108. Toronto: Butterworths, 1983.

Trebilcock, M. J., and D. G. Hartle. "The Choice of Governing Instrument." *International Review of Law and Economics* 2 (1982): 29–46.

Trebilcock, M. S., R. S. Prichard, G. D. Hartle, and D. N. Dewees. *The Choice of Governing Instrument*. Ottawa: Canadian Government Pub. Centre, 1982.

Tupper, A., and G. B. Doern. "Public Corporations and Public Policy in Canada." In *Public Corporations and Public Policy in Canada*, edited by A. Tupper and G. B. Doern, 1–50. Montreal: Institute for Research on Public Policy, 1981.

Vedung, E. "Policy Instruments: Typologies and Theories." In *Carrots, Sticks and Sermons: Policy Instruments and Their Evaluation*, edited by M. L. Bemelmans-Videc, R. C. Rist, and Vedung, Evert, 21–58. New Brunswick: Transaction Publishers, 1998.

Walker, J. L. "The Origins and Maintenance of Interest Groups in America." *American Political Science Review* 77, no. 2 (1983): 390–406.

3

WHERE TOOLS ARE DEPLOYED IN THE POLICY PROCESS

Policy Instruments and the Policy Cycle

Michael Howlett

The role played by implementation instruments in policy design has been a central focus of most research on policy tools. It is they which provide the substance or content of whatever design deliberations occur at the formulation stage. However, policy instruments exist at all the stages of public policymaking. There are specific instruments, like consultative mechanisms such as public hearings or investigatory commissions, which serve as agenda-setting instruments. And there are others, like the use of decision-making matrices and legislative committee systems, which are used at the decision-making stage of the process. Even further, auditor generals and other kinds of expenditure evaluation systems are instruments used at the evaluation stage of the policy cycle. How these tools operate and their effects on policymaking and policy outcomes are new areas of research in instrument studies.

Introduction: Policy Tools and the Policy Cycle

The exact processes by which policy decisions are taken vary greatly by jurisdiction and sector and reflect the great differences and nuances that exist between different forms of government – from military regimes to liberal democracies and within each type – as well as the particular configuration of issues, actors and problems various governments, of whatever type, face (Ingraham, 1987; Howlett, Ramesh and Perl, 2009).

In some circumstances, policy decisions will be more highly contingent and "irrational" – that is, driven by situational logics and opportunism rather than careful deliberation and assessment – than others (Kingdon, 1984; Cohen, March and Olsen, 1979; Dryzek, 1983; Eijlander, 2005; Franchino and Hoyland, 2009). This high level of contingency in decision-making has led some critics and observers of policy design efforts to suggest that policies are less "designed," in the sense that a house or a piece of furniture can be, than arrived at through odd combinations of luck and timing (Dryzek and Ripley, 1988). However, many other scholars disagree with this assessment. They view policymaking not as primarily a random, ritualistic or symbolic form of state activity, but rather as a conscious matter of attempting to match the means of policy implementation to policy goals, however those are formulated. That is, policymaking is viewed as an instrumental problem-solving activity, one in which various governing resources are marshaled into a set of techniques which could, at least potentially or theoretically, achieve the aims, objectives and goals of policymakers.

 DOI: 10.4324/9781003163954-4

Either view, however, needs to grapple with the questions of where and when in the policy process policy tools are deployed. In this effort, it is helpful to envision the policy process as a series of stages or sub-stages in which policymakers grapple with problems and attempt to arrive at some sort of solution to them. A model of the policy process which is very helpful in this regard is that of the policy cycle (Howlett, Ramesh and Perl, 2020; Wegrich).

The Policy Cycle Model

The idea of viewing policy-making as a process or a cycle or activities has been used to model policy-making activities since the earliest days of the discipline (Hawkesworth, 1992) and is helpful when examining policy tools and the purposes to which they are put.

A five-stage model of the policy process has been most commonly used (Lyden et al., 1968; Simmons et al., 1974; Brewer, 1974; Brewer and deLeon, 1983; Jones, 1984; Anderson, 1984) (see Figure 3.1). In this model, "agenda-setting" refers to the first stage in the process. This is the earliest stage in a sequence of policy development when a problem is initially sensed by policy actors and a variety of solutions put forward. "Policy formulation" refers to the second stage in the process in which specific policy options are developed within government. In this stage, the range of plausible choices is narrowed by excluding the infeasible ones, and efforts are made by various actors to have their favoured solution ranked highly among the remaining few. "Decision-making" refers to the third stage in which governments adopt a particular course of action or non-action. This can involve the adoption of none, one, or some combination of the solutions remaining at the end of the estimation stage. In the fourth stage of "policy implementation," governments put their decisions into effect. This involves the use of some combination of the tools of public administration in order to alter the distribution of goods and services in society in a way that is broadly compatible with the sentiments and values of affected parties. Finally, "policy evaluation" refers to the fifth stage in the process, in which the results of policies are monitored by both state and societal actors, often leading to the reconceptualization of policy problems and solutions in the light of experiences encountered with the policy in question (Howlett, Ramesh and Perl, 2009).

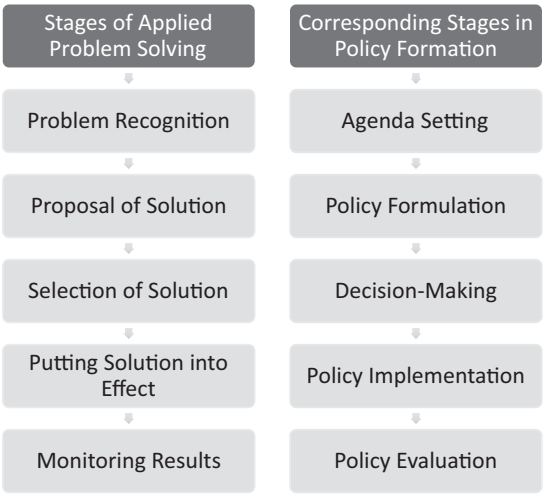


Figure 3.1 The Five Stages of the Policy Cycle and Their Relationship to Applied Problem Solving

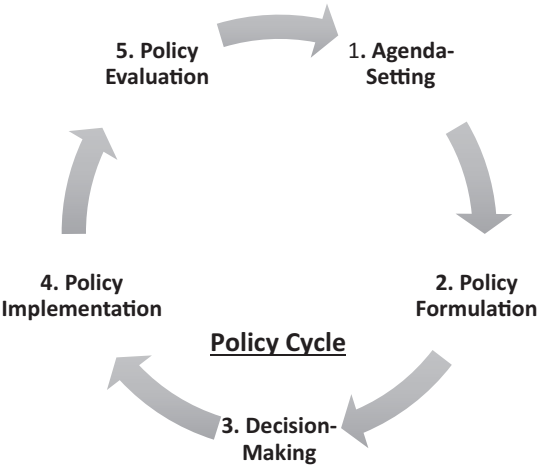


Figure 3.2 The Policy Cycle

The stages in applied problem solving and the corresponding stages in the policy process are depicted in Figures 3.1 and 3.2.

Policy instruments extend to activities located in all stages of the policy process, including not just policy formulation and implementation, where they have traditionally been studied, but also agenda-setting, decision-making and policy evaluation.

Styles of Policy Activity in Each Stage of the Policy Cycle

Agenda-Setting

In the scholarly literature on agenda-setting, a useful distinction is drawn between the systemic or unofficial public agenda and the institutional or formal, official agenda. The systemic agenda "consists of all issues that are commonly perceived by members of the political community as meriting public attention and as involving matters within the legitimate jurisdiction of existing governmental authority" (Cobb and Elder, 1972). This is essentially a society's agenda for discussion of public problems, such as crime or health care, water quality or wilderness preservation. The formal or institutional agenda, on the other hand, consists of only a limited number of issues or problems to which attention is devoted by policy elites (Baumgartner and Jones, 1991; Kingdon, 1984). Each society has literally hundreds of issues which some citizens find to be matters of concern and would have the government do something about. However, only a small proportion of the problems on the public or systemic agenda are actually taken up by policy actors actively involved in policy development.

Policy Formulation

Studies of policy formulation have emphasized the importance of actors interacting to develop and refine policy options for government (Freeman, 1955; Linder and Peters, 1990). But unlike agenda-setting, in which the public is often actively involved, in policy formulation the relevant policy actors are restricted to those who not only have an opinion on a subject but also have

some minimal level of knowledge of the subject area, allowing them to comment, at least hypothetically, on the feasibility of options put forward to resolve policy problems.

Scholars over the years have developed a variety of taxonomies to help identify the key actors in these policy subsystems, what brings them together, how they interact and what effect their interaction has on policy development (Jordan, 1981, 1990a, 1990b; Jordan and Schubert, 1992). Most of these distinguish between a larger set of actors with some knowledge of the policy issue in question and a smaller set in which actors not only have requisite knowledge but also have established patterns of more or less routine interactions with each other (Knoke, 1993).

Membership in knowledge-based policy communities extends to actors such as state policymakers (administrative, political and judicial), members of non-governmental organizations (NGOs) concerned with the subject, members of the media who report on the subject, academics who follow or research the area and members of the general public who, for whatever reason, have taken an interest in the subject (Sabatier, 1987, 1988). In many issue areas, the policy community also involves members of other organizations such as businesses, labour unions or various formalized interest groups or professional associations concerned with government actions in the sector concerned. In some cases, international actors such as multinational corporations, international governmental or non-governmental organizations or the governments of foreign states, can also be members of sectoral policy communities (Haas, 1992). A subset of these actors who interact within more formalized institutions and procedures of government are defined as members of policy networks (Coleman and Skogstad, 1990; Marin and Mayntz, 1991; Pross, 1992). These policy networks include representatives from the community but are "inner circles" of actors who effectively hold the power to veto many policy options as untenable or infeasible.

The type and nature of options which come forward to governments from the policy formulation phase are affected by the interaction of networks and communities (Howlett and Rayner, 1995; Smith, 1993; Smith, 1994; Howlett and Ramesh, 1998; Howlett, 2002a). In open subsystems where networks have many members and communities share many idea sets, it can be expected that a propensity for new, radical alternatives to the status quo may be generated in the policy formulation process. In closed subsystems, where networks have few members and communities are dominated by a single idea set, on the other hand, a status quo orientation will emerge in the policy options developed and put before decision-makers. In subsystems where only a few actors make up the network but communities are open to new ideas, significant alternatives to the status quo may emerge from the formulation process, but usually over the opposition of network members. In subsystems where many actors deal with few ideas, marginal or incremental options tend to develop.

Decision-Making

Many early studies of policymaking in companies, governments and organizations conducted largely by students of public and business administration argued that decision-makers attempt to follow a systematic method for arriving at logical, efficient decisions. They argued that policymakers achieved superior results when they first established a goal, explored alternative strategies for achieving it, attempted to predict its consequences and the likelihood of each occurring and then chose the option which maximized potential benefits at least cost or risk (Edwards, 1954; Gawthrop, 1971; Weiss, 1977; Carley, 1980; Cahill and Overman, 1990).

This model was "rational" in the sense that it prescribed a standard set of procedures for policymaking which were expected to lead in all circumstances to the choice of the most efficient means of achieving policy goals (Jennings, 1987; Torgerson, 1986). Pure "rational" models of

decision-making thought of policymakers as neutral "technicians" or "managers" who identify a problem and then find the most effective or efficient way of solving it (Elster, 1991). Many of the latest efforts to enhance the efficiency and effectiveness of public policy decision-making, the "evidence-based policy movement" (Pawson, 2006), focus on the application of a systemic evaluative rationality to policy problems (Sanderson, 2006; Mintrom, 2007) in classic rational style.

Empirical research into decision-making processes, however, has found a more complex world in which disputes and conflicts over the meaning and definition of policy goals and means were frequent and in which political processes of bargaining and negotiation often outweighed "rational" deliberations and calculations of costs and benefits. Policymakers were often found to be neither necessarily neutral nor competent, and other models of the public policy decision-making processes have argued this is not an accidental situation but rather an inherent and unavoidable characteristic of the policy-making exercise.

Policy Implementation

Implementation is the stage in the policy process in which public policy decision-making must be translated into action. It has long been considered one of the most difficult and critical stages in the policy process – the phase in which any deficiencies in the design of the policy or any vulnerabilities with respect to the external environment will become visible.

The set of tasks practically associated with implementation is best understood as a "continuum of strategic and operational task functions" (see Table 3.1). Tasks related to implementation range from high-level "strategic" design considerations to more operational-level design and capacity-building tasks in later stages of the policy process. Strategic functions relate to the highest levels of policy formulation and overall responsibility for implementation and overlap considerably with other stages in the policy-making process, such as agenda-setting and decision-making.

As important as these tasks are, implementation is often neglected in practice. Policymakers often fail to prepare the ground systematically for implementation, resulting occasionally in high-profile policy disasters and even more frequently in policies that perform far below expectation. One key reason for this neglect is the sheer complexity, both analytical and practical, that implementation poses. Another reason is implementation's political sensitivity. In policy formulation and even decision-making, critical differences between stakeholders may be papered over by using vague language or even postponing decisions on mission-critical but politically

Table 3.1 Implementation Tasks

Policy Implementation (Emphasis on Strategic Tasks)	*Program Implementation* <---------->	*Project Implementation (Emphasis on Operating Tasks)*
• Constituency building • Overall policy objective setting and design • Designing the implementation framework – overall responsibilities and resource allocations to different actors • Legitimization • Resource mobilization	• Program design • Capacity building for implementers • Collaboration with multiple groups and organizations • Expanding resources and support • Active leadership	• Clear objectives • Defined roles and responsibilities • Plans/schedules • Rewards and sanctions • Feedback/adaptation mechanisms

Source: Adapted from Table 2.1 in Brinkerhoff and Crosby (2002), p. 25

or bureaucratically "sensitive" aspects of policies outright. This has the advantage of keeping a policy process moving forward and "buying time" for more supportive coalitions to be built. But the consequences of such avoidance become unavoidable during the implementation stage, in which coordinators will struggle to generate, allocate and control resources and interpret policy intentions. The intended outputs and results of a policy will fail to materialize even as negative side effects of policies become more evident.

The high degree of interdependence among stakeholders involved in the integrated policy-making process increases the complexity and vulnerability of the implementation challenge. As a result, the stakes in "getting implementation right" – in designing interventions that make successful implementation more likely and in anticipating and building in mechanisms to overcome implementation difficulties – are particularly high calculations from the onset.

Policy Evaluation

The last stage of the cycle is policy evaluation. For many early observers, policy evaluation was expected to consist of assessing whether a public policy was achieving its stated objectives and, if not, what could be done to eliminate impediments to their attainment. Thus David Nachmias defined policy evaluation as "the objective, systematic, empirical examination of the effects ongoing policies and public programs have on their targets in terms of the goals they are meant to achieve" (Nachmias, 1979).

Often, however, public policy goals are not stated clearly enough to find out if and to what extent they are being achieved, nor are they shared by all key policy actors. Moreover, the possibilities for objective analysis are also limited because of the difficulties involved in the attempt to develop objective standards by which to evaluate government's level of success in dealing with subjective claims and socially constructed problems.

What is significant in the evaluative process is thus not so much ultimate success and failure but that policy actors and the organizations and institutions they represent can learn from the formal and informal evaluation of policies in which they are engaged. This can lead them to modify their positions in the direction of greater substantive or procedural policy change, or it can lead them to resist any alteration to the status quo (Majone, 1989).

A significant variable in this regard is the capacity of an organization to absorb new information. As Cohen and Levinthal argued in the case of the private firm:

> [T]he ability to evaluate and utilize outside knowledge is largely a function of the level of prior related knowledge. At the most elemental level, this prior knowledge includes basic skills or even a shared language but may also include knowledge of the most recent scientific or technological developments in a given field. Thus, prior related knowledge confers an ability to recognize the value of new information, assimilate it, and apply it to (commercial) ends. These abilities collectively constitute what we call (a firm's) "absorptive capacity."
>
> *(Cohen and Levinthal, 1990)*

Policy evaluations do not necessarily result in major policy change. That is, while the concept of evaluation suggests that an implicit "feedback loop" is an inherent part of the policy cycle, in many cases, this loop may not be operationalized (Pierson, 1993). Path dependence, in which policies are set on "trajectories" following some "critical juncture," can hinder policy change and learning (Pierson, 2000). Based on the idea of "increasing returns," Pierson has argued that positive feedback can support an existing policy without it necessarily being the best solution to a

problem (Pierson, 2000; Liebowitz and Margolis, 1995). Organizational-institutional properties (Eising, 2002; Olsen and Peters, 1996), including varieties of principle-agent models (Dunlop and Radaelli, 2010; Waterman and Meier, 1998), international governance regimes (Haas, 1992) and bargaining and mutual adjustment processes (Elgström and Jönsson, 2000) are also often seen as barriers to learning from policy evaluations.

Studying Policy Tools

As Chapter 1 has set out, policy tool use extends to both the means or mechanisms through which goals are given effect and to the goals themselves, since goal articulation inevitably involves considerations of feasibility, or what is practical or possible to achieve in given conjunctures or circumstances given the means at hand (Huitt, 1968, Majone, 1975; Ingraham, 1987). Even when the goals pursued are not laudable, such as personal enrichment or military adventurism, or when the knowledge or means utilized is less than scientific, such as religious or ideologically inspired dogma or implementation preferences, and even when these efforts are much more ad hoc and much less systematic than might be desired, as long as a desire for effective resource use in goal attainment guides policymaking, it will involve some effort at analysis.

Policy alternatives are composed of different sets or combinations of the policy elements described here. Policy instruments are the techniques or means through which states' attempt to attain their goals. Other terms have been developed in the field of policy studies to describe the same phenomena, such as "governing instruments," "policy tools" and the "tools of government", and while these sometimes are used to refer to different mechanisms and calibrations of policy means, they are more often used synonymously.

These are the subject of deliberation and activity at all stages of the policy process as they affect both the agenda-setting and policy-formulation processes as well as being the subject of decision-making policy implementation and evaluation (Howlett, 2005; Howlett, Ramesh and Perl, 2009).

They have a special place in the consideration and study of policy design because, taken together, they comprise the contents of the toolbox from which governments must choose in building or creating public policies. Policy design elevates the analysis and practice of policy instrument choice – specifically tools for policy implementation – to a central focus of study, making their understanding and analysis key design concerns (Salamon, 1981; Linder and Peters, 1990). Instrument choice from this perspective is, in a sense, public policymaking, and understanding and analyzing potential instrument choices involved in implementation activity are policy design. The role of a textbook in policy design thus is one of assisting "in constructing an inventory of potential public capabilities and resources that might be pertinent in any problem-solving situation" (Anderson, p. 122).

As Figure 3.3 shows, although policy instruments appear in all stages of the policy process, those affecting the agenda-setting, formulation, decision-making and evaluation stages of the policy process are very significant and important in public management (Wu, Ramesh, Howlett and Fritzen, 2010) but understudied when compared to the very wide array of studies of implementation tools and processes.

This is because the key sets of policy instruments of concern to policy designers have historically been those linked to policy implementation in the first instance and to policy formulation in the second (Howlett, 2011). In the first category, we would find examples of many well-known governing tools, such as public enterprises and regulatory agencies, which are expected to alter or affect the delivery of goods and services to the public and government

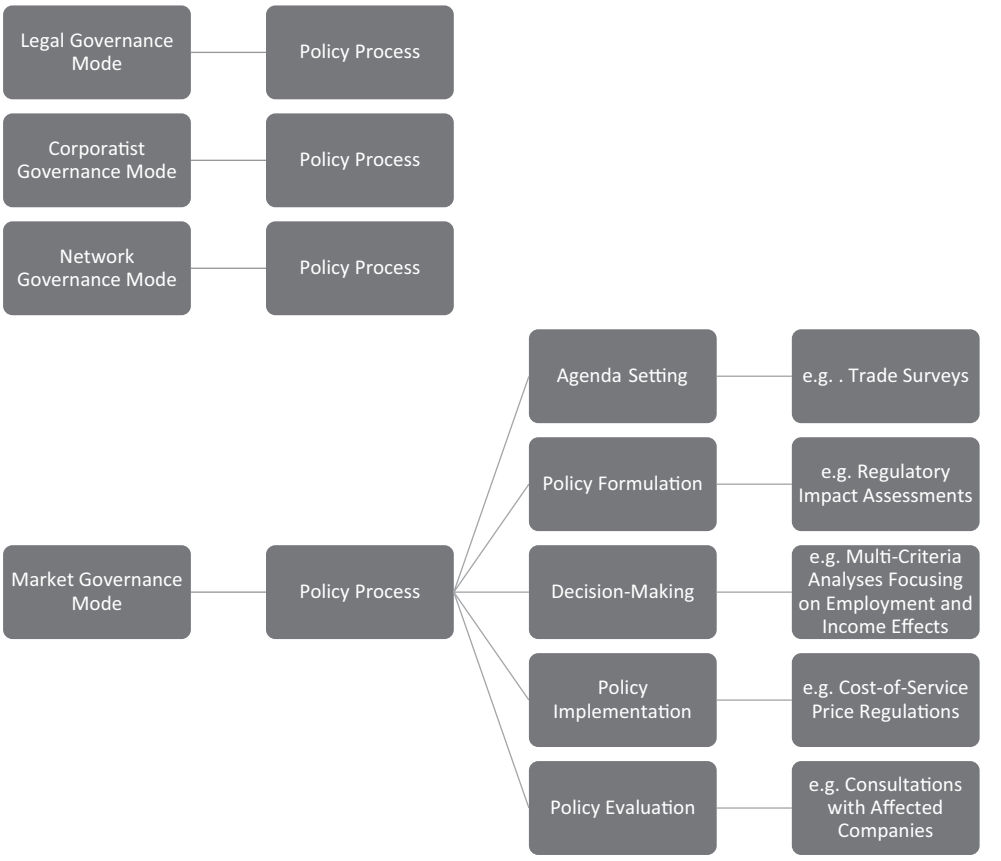


Figure 3.3 An Example of the Range of Policy Instruments by Governance Mode and Stage of the Policy Cycle

(Salamon, 2002), while in the second, we would find instruments such as regulatory impact or environmental impact appraisals, which are designed to alter and affect some aspect of the nature of policy deliberations and the consideration and assessment of alternatives (Turnpenny et al., 2009).

The role played by implementation instruments in policy design has been a central focus of most research on policy tools. It is they which provide the substance or content of whatever design deliberations occur at the formulation stage. However, as we have seen, policy instruments exist at all the stages of public policy-making. There are specific instruments, like consultative mechanisms such as public hearings or investigatory commissions, which serve as agenda-setting instruments. And there are others, like the use of decision-making matrices and legislative committee systems, which are used at the decision-making stage of the process. Even further, auditor generals and other kinds of expenditure evaluation systems are instruments used at the evaluation stage of the policy cycle (Wu et al., 2010; Heilman and Walsh, 1992).

How these tools operate and their effects on policymaking and policy outcomes are areas of research in instrument studies which other chapters in this book explore.

References

Anderson, J. E. 1984. *Public Policymaking*. New York: Praeger.

Baumgartner, Frank R., and Bryan D. Jones. 1991. 'Agenda Dynamics and Policy Subsystems', *Journal of Politics* 53, 4: 1044–1074.

Brewer, G. D. 1974. 'The Policy Sciences Emerge: To Nurture and Structure a Discipline', *Policy Sciences* 5, 3: 239–244.

Brewer, G., and P. deLeon. 1983. *The Foundations of Policy Analysis*. Homewood: Dorsey.

Brinkerhoff, D. W., and B. L. Crosby. 2002. *Managing Policy Reform: Concepts and Tools for Decision-Makers in Developing and Transitional Countries*. Bloomfield: Kumarian Press.

Cahill, Anthony G., and E. Sam Overman. 1990. 'The Evolution of Rationality in Policy Analysis', in *Policy Theory and Policy Evaluation: Concepts, Knowledge, Causes, and Norms*, edited by S. S. Nagel. New York: Greenwood Press.

Carley, Michael. 1980. *Rational Techniques in Policy Analysis*. London: Heinemann Educational Books.

Cobb, Roger W., and Charles D. Elder. 1972. *Participation in American Politics: The Dynamics of Agenda-Building*. Boston: Allyn and Bacon.

Cohen, M. D., J. G. March, and J. P. Olsen. "People, Problems, Solutions and the Ambiguity of Relevance." In *Ambiguity and Choice in Organizations*, edited by J. G. March and J. P. Olsen, 24–37. Bergen: Universitetsforlaget, 1979.

Cohen, Wesley M. and Daniel A. Levinthal. 1990. 'Absorptive Capacity: A New Perspective on Learning and Innovation', *Administrative Science Quarterly* 35: 128–152.

Coleman, William D. and Grace Skogstad, eds. 1990. *Policy Communities and Public Policy Canada: A Structural Approach*. Mississauga, ON: Copp Clark Pitman.

Dryzek, John. 1983. 'Don't Toss Coins in Garbage Cans: A Prologue to Policy Design', *Journal of Public Policy* 3, 4: 345–367.

Dryzek, J. S., and B. Ripley. 1988. 'The Ambitions of Policy Design', *Policy Studies Review* 7, 4: 705–719.

Dunlop, Claire A. and Claudio M. Radaelli. 2010. *Systematizing Policy Learning*. APSA 2010 Annual Meeting September 2–5, 2010, Washington, DC.

Edwards, Ward. 1954. 'The Theory of Decision Making', *Psychological Bulletin* 51, 4: 380–417.

Eijlander, P. 2005. 'Possibilities and Constraints in the Use of Self-Regulation and Co-Regulation in Legislative Policy: Experiences in the Netherlands – Lessons to Be Learned for the EU', *Electronic Journal of Comparative Law* 9, 1: 1–8.

Eising, R. 2002. 'Policy Learning in Embedded Negotiations: Explaining EU Electricity Liberalization', *International Organization* 56, 1: 85–120.

Elgström, Ole, and Christer Jönsson. January 1, 2000. 'Negotiation in the European Union: Bargaining or Problem-Solving?' *Journal of European Public Policy* 7, 5: 684–704. https://doi.org/10.1080/1350176001001490 2.

Elster, Jon. 1991. 'The Possibility of Rational Politics', in *Political Theory Today*, edited by D. Held. Oxford: Polity.

Franchino, Fabio, and Bjorn Hoyland. 2009. 'Legislative Involvement in Parliamentary Systems: Opportunities, Conflict and Institutional Constraints', *American Political Science Review* 103, 4: 607–621.

Freeman, J. Leiper. 1955. *The Political Process: Executive – Bureaucratic – Legislative Relations*. rev. ed. New York: Random House, 1965.

Gawthrop, Louis C. 1971. *Administrative Politics and Social Change*. New York: St. Martin's Press.

Haas, Peter M. 1992. 'Introduction: Epistemic Communities and International Policy Coordination', *International Organization* 46, 1: 1–36.

Hawkesworth, M. 1992. 'Epistemology and Policy Analysis', in *Advances in Policy Studies*, edited by W. Dunn and R. M. Kelly, 291–329. New Brunswick: Transaction Press.

Heilman, John G. and Roberta W. Walsh. 1992. 'Introduction: Energy Program Evaluation and Policy Design', *Policy Studies Journal* 20, 1: 42–47.

Hill, M. and P. Hupe. 2006. 'Analysing Policy Processes as Multiple Governance: Accountability in Social Policy', *Policy & Politics* 34, 3: 557–573.

Howlett, Michael. 2002a. 'Do Networks Matter? Linking Policy Network Structure to Policy Outcomes: Evidence from Four Canadian Policy Sectors, 1990–2000', *Canadian Journal of Political Science* 35, 2: 235–268.

Howlett, Michael. 2005. 'What Is a Policy Instrument? Policy Tools, Policy Mixes and Policy Implementation Styles', in *Designing Government: From Instruments to Governance*, edited by P. Eliadis, M. Hill, and M. Howlett, 31–50. Montreal: McGill-Queen's University Press.

Howlett, Michael. 2011. *Designing Public Policies: Principles and Instruments*. London and New York: Routledge.

Howlett, Michael and M. Ramesh. 1998. 'Policy Subsystem Configurations and Policy Change: Operationalizing the Postpositivist Analysis of the Politics of the Policy Process', *Policy Studies Journal* 26, 3: 466–482.

Howlett, Michael, M. Ramesh, and Anthony Perl. 2009. *Studying Public Policy: Policy Cycles and Policy Subsystems*. Toronto: Oxford University Press.

Howlett, Michael, M. Ramesh, and Anthony Perl. 2020. *Studying Public Policy: Principles and Processes*. Fourth edition. Don Mills: Oxford University Press.

Howlett, Michael and Jeremy Rayner. 1995. 'Do Ideas Matter? Policy Subsystem Configurations and Policy Change in the Canadian Forest Sector', *Canadian Public Administration* 38, 3: 382–410.

Huitt, R. K. 1968. 'Political Feasibility,' in *Political Science and Public Policy*, edited by A. Rannay, 263–76. Chicago: Markham Publishing Co.

Jennings, B. 1987. 'Interpretation and the Practice of Policy Analysis', In *Confronting Values in Policy Analysis: The Politics of Criteria*, edited by F. Fischer and J. Forester, 128–152. Newbury Park, CA: Sage.

Jordan, A. Grant. 1981. 'Iron Triangles, Woolly Corporatism and Elastic Nets: Images of the Policy Process', *Journal of Public Policy* 1, 1: 95–123.

Jordan, A. Grant. 1990a. 'Policy Community Realism versus "New" Institutionalist Ambiguity', *Political Studies* 38, 3: 470–484.

Jordan, A. Grant. 1990b. 'Sub-Governments, Policy Communities and Networks: Refilling the Old Bottles?', *Journal of Theoretical Politics* 2, 3: 319–338.

Jordan A. Grant and Klaus Schubert. 1992. 'A Preliminary Ordering of Policy Network Labels', *European Journal of Political Research* 21, 1 and 2: 7–27.

Knoke, David. 1993. 'Networks as Political Glue: Explaining Public Policy-Making', in *Sociology and Public Agenda*, edited by W. J. Wilson, 164–184. London: Sage.

Liebowitz, S. J. and Stephen E. Margolis. 1995. 'Path Dependence, Lock-In, and History', *Journal of Law Economics and Organization* 11, 1: 205–225.

Linder, S. H. and B. G. Peters. 1988. 'The Analysis of Design or the Design of Analysis?', *Policy Studies Review* 7, 4: 738–750.

Linder, S. H. and B. G. Peters. 1990. 'The Design of Instruments for Public Policy', in *Policy Theory and Policy Evaluation: Concepts, Knowledge, Causes, and Norms*, edited by S. S. Nagel, 103–119. New York: Greenwood Press.

Linder, Stephen H., and B. Guy Peters. 1990. 'Research Perspectives on the Design of Public Policy: Implementation, Formulation, and Design', in *Implementation and the Policy Process: Opening Up the Black Box*, edited by Dennis J. Palumbo and D. J. Calista. New York: Greenwood Press.

Majone, Giandomenico. 1989. *Evidence, Argument, and Persuasion in the Policy Process*. New Haven, CT: Yale University Press.

Mintrom, Michael. 2007. 'The Policy Analysis Movement', In *Policy Analysis in Canada: The State of the Art*, edited by L. Dobuzinskis, M. Howlett, and D. Laycock, 71–84. Toronto: University of Toronto Press.

Nachmias, David. 1979. *Public Policy Evaluation: Approaches and Methods*. New York: St. Martin's Press.

Olsen, Johan P. and B. Guy Peters, eds. 1996. *Lessons from Experience: Experiential Learning in Administrative Reforms in Eight Democracies*. Oslo: Scandinavian University Press.

Pawson, Ray. *Evidence-Based Policy: A Realist Perspective*. London: Sage Publications, 2006.

Pierson, Paul. 1993. 'When Effect Becomes Cause: Policy Feedback and Political Change', *World Politics* 45: 595–628.

Pierson, Paul. 2000. 'Increasing Returns, Path Dependence, and the Study of Politics', *American Political Science Review* 94, 2: 251–267.

Potoski, M. 2002. 'Designing Bureaucratic Responsiveness: Administrative Procedures and Agency Choice in State Environmental Policy', *State Politics and Policy Quarterly* 2, 1: 1–23.

Pross, A. Paul. 1992. *Group Politics and Public Policy*. Toronto: Oxford University Press.

Sabatier, Paul A. 1987. 'Knowledge, Policy-Oriented Learning, and Policy Change', *Knowledge: Creation, Diffusion, Utilization* 8, 4: 649–692.

Sabatier, Paul A. 1988. 'An Advocacy Coalition Framework of Policy Change and the Role of Policy-Oriented Learning Therein', *Policy Sciences* 21, 2 and 3: 129–168.

Salamon, L. M. 2002. *The Tools of Government: A Guide to the New Governance*. New York: Oxford University Press.

Sanderson, I. 2006. 'Complexity, "Practical Rationality" and Evidence-Based Policy Making', *Policy & Politics* 34, 1: 115–132.

Smith, Gilbert. 1994. 'Policy Networks and State Autonomy', in *The Political Influence of Ideas: Policy Communities and the Social Sciences*, edited by S. Brooks and A.-G. Gagnon. New York: Praeger.

Smith, Martin J. 1993. *Pressure, Power and Policy: State Autonomy and Policy Networks in Britain and the United States*. Aldershot: Harvester Wheatsheaf.

Torgerson, Douglas. 1986. 'Between Knowledge and Politics: Three Faces of Policy Analysis', *Policy Sciences* 19, 1: 33–59.

Waterman, R. W. and K. J. Meier. 1998. 'Principal-Agent Models: An Expansion?', *Journal of Public Administration Research and Theory* 8, 2: 173–202.

Weiss, Carol H. 1977. *Using Social Research in Public Policy Making*. Lexington, MA: Lexington Books.

Wu, Xun, M. Ramesh, Michael Howlett, and Scott Fritzen. 2010. *The Public Policy Primer: Managing Public Policy*. London: Routledge.

4

THE NEED TO UNDERSTAND AND INTEGRATE PROCEDURAL AND SUBSTANTIVE TOOLS

Achim Lang

The chapter makes a clear distinction between substantive and procedural policy tools and discusses various typologies and types of tools. The chapter stresses the need to integrate procedural and substantive tools in a comprehensive way in order to tackle issues such as policy integration and wicked problems. The emphasis is on procedural tools, which are of particular importance for boundary-spanning activities. Procedural tools are delineated according to different phases in the policy cycle, as well as according to the involved organizations (including their preferences and problem perceptions) and the quality of their interactions.

Introduction

Governments, like any other organization, have developed tools or instruments to advance their objectives. Policy tools represent a systematic description of "what government does" (Hood, 1983) and what it intends to achieve. From this perspective, government can be conceptualized as a set of administrative tools to affect and supervise the behavior of individuals and organizations.

The use of such tools dates back to prehistoric times when hunter-gatherer societies first developed a kind of functionally differentiated structure, and rudimentary planning and implementation processes were developed. The study of policy tools can be traced back to prehistoric accounts 4,000 years ago during the Xia dynasty in China (Seeger, 1934), the philosophical treaty of the duties of a statesman (*De Officiis*) by Cicero, or the somewhat malicious recommendations of Machiavelli in *The Prince*. These practices and accounts rested on a narrow, authoritative, and hierarchical type of policy process based on charismatic and traditional leadership and domination (Weber, 2019). Even the legal-rational model of Western societies, developed over the last two centuries, still focused on authoritative (legal) means as the primary source of government (Salamon, 2000).

In the wake of the newly established policy sciences, a massive proliferation has occurred in studies analyzing tools of governments (Le Galès, 2011; Peters, 2000; Schneider & Ingram, 1990). This has brought about a shift in research focus away from more descriptive and legal accounts of policy tools to the development of categories (Bemelmans-Videc et al., 2011; Hood, 1983; Howlett, 2020), the effects of tools on policy objectives (Lang, 2019; Schneider & Ingram, 1990), the choice of policy tools (Howlett, 2018), and configurational analyses of

DOI: 10.4324/9781003163954-5

policy mixes (Cejudo & Michel, 2021; Howlett, 2004). These new avenues of research mainly involve the study of substantive policy tools. However, the principal innovation in the study of policy tools came with a focus on procedural tools that reflected the need of governments to increase participation by interested parties in decision-making as well as the implementation of policy. This shift from government to governance was also reflected in the study of policy tools (Levi-Faur, 2012).

This chapter has two overall aims. First, it provides a distinction between substantive and procedural tools and sketches the main characteristics of substantive policy tools. These characterizations are chosen because they are applicable to procedural instruments as well. Excellent summaries of substantive tools can also be found elsewhere (Hood & Margetts, 2007; Howlett, 2018, 2020). Second, it takes stock of the main debates concerning procedural policy tools. Specifically, this chapter argues that studies of procedural tools take up the challenge of current political processes: namely, that participation by interested and affected parties is increasing, and the design of substantive tools is becoming increasingly complex due to the interdependencies of policy issues.

Policy Tools

Policy tools at the disposal of the government are "means used to address public problems" (Salamon, 2000) or to attain policy objectives (see also Bemelmans-Videc et al., 2011; Howlett, 1991). These tools are embedded in a layered hierarchy involving "the overarching goals that guide policy in a particular field, the techniques or policy instruments used to attain those goals, and the precise settings of these instruments" (Hall, 1993). Hall gives examples of a policy aimed at alleviating the financial problems of the elderly – for example, an old-age pension – and its setting would be the level at which benefits were fixed (Hall, 1993).

Others conceptualize policy instruments by the resources needed for them to be effective. Typical resources are authority, (financial) incentives, and information (often paraphrased as "carrots, sticks, and sermons") (Bemelmans-Videc et al., 2011). Authority tools (sticks) coerce people into complying with a set of rules. Financial tools (carrots) or communicative tools (sermons) have a lower authoritative force and, as a result, leave greater scope for personal choice. A carrot tool motivates people to act in a certain way by (financially) encouraging or discouraging certain behavior. A communicative instrument (sermon) influences behavior by supplying information that induces people to act in a prescribed manner (Bouwma et al., 2018). Policy tools frequently come in different combinations or policy mixes and are applied in different contexts (Howlett et al., 2015).

The following paragraphs provide an overview of the basic elements and categories of substantive policy tools, which also serve to categorize procedural tools (Howlett 2000, 2020; Peters, 2000).

Substantive Policy Tools

Substantive policy tools are designed to modify the behavior of individuals or organizations. Lester M. Salamon argues that substantive tools are means that structure collective action in order to address a public problem (p. 1642). Such tools are packages of different elements, delivered as a type of good or activity (e.g., a cash or in-kind payment, a restriction or prohibition, or the provision of information) by a delivery vehicle for this good or activity (e.g., a direct provision of a service). The delivery vehicle is part of a larger delivery system including a set of organizations that are engaged in providing the good or activity (e.g., public, non-profit, or for-profit), which

are tied together by a set of rules, whether formal or informal, defining the relationships among the entities that comprise the delivery system (Salamon, 2000: 1643–1644).

This encompassing classification by Salamon has been subject to various revisions, especially with regard to the type of good/activity. Indeed, most scholars differentiate these goods and activities regarding the underlying resources. The most popular typology of substantive policy tools was developed by Hood, who distinguishes tools for "detection" and tools for "effecting." Detection tools or detectors are all tools used by governments to obtain information, while effecting tools or effectors are designed to have an impact on those outside government. The second distinction sums up the four basic underlying resources that governments have: "nodality" (now generally referred to as "information"), "authority," "treasure," and "organization" (Hood, 1983).

Nodality denotes, in the stricter sense of Hood, the property of being at the center of a star-like network, dominating and steering the flow of information (Hood, 1983). Most scholars have broadened this concept and argue that governments not only channel information but also produce and disseminate information. Consequently, information tools refer to any activity related to disseminating and channeling information (Howlett, 2020).

Authority means the possession of legal or official power; authority tools are prescriptions authorized by the legitimate public body that permits, prohibits, or requires a specific behavior of individuals or organizations under designated circumstances (Hood & Margetts, 2007; Schneider & Ingram, 1988).

Treasure denotes the possession of tradeable or transferable resources – financial, human, and permissions. Treasure gives governments the ability to exchange these resources to influence the behavior of citizens or organizations and to buy information (Hood & Margetts, 2007).

Organization means the possession of competencies and skills (by people) and infrastructure (e.g., buildings, materials, and computers), giving governments the ability to act directly, using their own personnel rather than third parties (Hood & Margetts, 2007). In other words, organization denotes the delivery system pertaining exclusively to public authorities.

This typology is the starting point for many analyses pointing to the choice of instruments (Borrás & Edquist, 2013; Capano et al., 2020; Howlett, 2018), instrument effectiveness (Bali et al., 2019; Schneider & Ingram, 1990), and for conceptualizing procedural tools (Howlett, 2018, 2020).

Procedural Policy Tools

Effective public authorities must be sufficiently able to influence the stakeholders and their interactions within the decision-making and implementation processes. Such capabilities rest on the ability to deploy policy tools based on authority, information, organization, and treasure so that stakeholders engage in the policy process in a way they might not otherwise do (Schneider & Ingram, 1990, p. 513). Although numerous classifications of policy tools exist (Bemelmans-Videc et al., 2011; Hood, 1983; Howlett, 2000, 2005), procedural policy tools have received little attention (Howlett, 2000, 2005). Substantive policy tools are typically outputs of the policy-making process to resolve public concerns or problems. The process that involves the making and designing of tools concerns the management of policy networks since policymaking is increasingly less the sole responsibility of public authorities but involves a multitude of other organizations – governmental as well as commercial and not for profit. The same holds for the implementation phase when substantive policy tools have been defined and must be deployed. The central question is, therefore, how governing organizations can steer or influence policy networks in the policy-making and implementation phase.

Procedural policy tools "are used to manipulate the number or the nature of actors arrayed in the policy subsystems that policy-makers face" (Howlett, 2000, p. 420). Consequently, these tools are used to manipulate the policy-making behavior of stakeholders or policy-making processes, and public authorities usually have a range of tools at their disposal (Howlett & Ramesh, 1998). Public authorities can choose from a set of procedural policy tools to establish a new setup that defines the boundaries and working conditions of the policy subsystem (Heclo, 1978; Sabatier & Weible, 2019) at different phases of the policy process (Ling, 2002). Governments may establish or alter networks or partnerships and restructure internal procedures to change policy choices and their design (Howlett, 2018). Examples of procedural policy tools include creating advisory committees to aid policy deliberations and decision-making in contentious areas (Howlett, 2000; Jochim & May, 2010; Klijn & Koppenjan, 2000). In addition, internal reorganization as a policy tool may affect departmental policy processes, such as other responsibilities or guidelines regarding the participation of lobbies or other political groups and different intradepartmental coordination procedures, fostering new operating arrangements affecting policy formulation (Howlett, 2020).

In contrast to substantive policy tools, classifications of procedural tools are rare. Howlett (2000) adapts the classification elaborated by Christopher Hood (1983) to the study of procedural tools. In Howlett's case, tools are grouped according to the resources on which they rely.

Authority tools are the most common tools used by governments to achieve their policy objectives, and this also applies to procedural policy tools. Using authority tools involves granting permission, prohibiting, or requiring action regarding the participation of individuals and organizations during policy formulation or implementation (Schneider & Ingram, 1990). Authority tools delineate the rules, establishing the number of people and organizations participating in the policy networks, influencing their preferences and problem perceptions. Authority tools also provide rules for the decision-making process, establish a quorum for internal voting, and provide "softer" interaction rules such as a joint declaration of intent. Compliance mechanisms, in contrast, seek to guarantee participation in the more arduous implementation process. In addition, the accountability of political output and outcome serves to redefine stakeholder interests. Policy actors may be accountable to the coordination process or the quality of the policy output (Koliba et al., 2011; Ling, 2002).

Information is another vital policy tool resource – and information tools include the provision, suppression, and manipulation of information (Howlett, 2000). As Hood (1983) points out, information tools involve not only the management of information but also the positioning in a social network of information flows. Regarding the management of policy networks, mission statements are expected to guide individuals' preferences and perceptions. Monitoring and evaluation are also information tools (Howlett, 2000) frequently designed to boost commitment to the decision-making or implementation process by altering existing interests and making affected parties more amenable to alternative policy options (Kavanagh & Richards, 2001; Ling, 2002).

Treasure is the third important resource for governments on which procedural policy tools rest. Treasure is any material or immaterial medium (or money) with the capacity to be freely exchanged (Hood, 1983). Funding network activities and participation is important in network management included in this category (Howlett, 2000; Klijn et al., 1995). In addition, incentive-setting policy tools provide a tighter coupling of participants for the process (Ling, 2002). Neo-corporatist reasoning provides another fungible good, which can be included in the treasure category. In neo-corporatist arrangements, governments typically trade influence for compromise and commitment within the agreed objectives (Streeck & Schmitter, 1985).

Organization (Hood & Margetts, 2007; Howlett, 2000) or capacity-building (Schneider & Ingram, 1988) is another resource characterized by procedural tools. Organization denotes an institutional format in which interaction between stakeholders takes place alongside the institution or organization (people, skills, and infrastructure) to shape and structure the interaction. These tools include all means designed to establish a political opportunity structure in which an institutionalized exchange occurs. Policy network analysis has revealed that these institutional venues channel information flows, making interaction more likely, even between opposing groups (Howlett, 2000, 2005). Examples of such tools of organization include running an institutional venue such as an advisory board where the exchange takes place or an administrative unit, which Provan and Kenis (2008) call a network administrative organization (NAO) (Provan & Kenis, 2008). An NAO is set up expressly to manage and provide leadership activities to enable network members to accomplish their objectives. The NAO is not part of the network per se, meaning it does not provide public services and is not engaged in any planning activities.

This overview of procedural policy tools demonstrates the variety of tool types. The following paragraphs summarize key research areas in which procedural policy tools are essential to the underlying theoretical framework. These paragraphs deal with the use of procedural tools at different phases of the policy cycle, establishing policy integration and coping with complex ("wicked") problems.

Procedural Policy Tools and Phases of the Policy Cycle

Policy sciences and policy network literature provide an abundance of studies regarding interventions in the organization and processes of the policy cycle (Jann & Wegrich, 2017; Lindquist & Wellstead, 2021). However, few studies have established a link with policy tools literature (Howlett & Mukherjee, 2017; Jordan & Turnpenny, 2015; Turnpenny et al., 2015). The following section provides a preliminary classification of procedural tools and their use in different phases of the policy cycle. The policy formulation and decision-making phase focuses on those processes that lead to the formally responsible decision-making institutions' selection and adoption of a particular program or policy. The focus is on questions concerning interest negotiation and consensus building, and it is rarely the formal decision-making bodies alone that decide on a course of action. Most decisions are preceded by an informal exchange and negotiation process in various policy networks. Power resources, influence, and the distribution of competencies and responsibilities among the individual players involved (or the convergence of interests) determine the negotiation process and thus the shaping of policy content. Few studies have addressed policy tools for policy formulation, although Jordan and Turnpenny (2015) are a notable exception (Jordan & Turnpenny, 2015). Conversely, the implementation phase has received the most attention by policy tool scholars (Pülzl & Treib, 2017). This phase focuses on how inputs come about and how they are processed into programs of interest and political output. In policy formulation and implementation, procedural tools are applied for the widespread involvement of stakeholders and the top-down alignment of their needs. Additionally, within the implementation phase, tools are related to the way specified outcomes of the collaboration process are effectively attained.

Another distinction can be made in terms of network components. These involve the number and types of involved organizations (including their preferences and problem perceptions) and the number and quality of interactions between organizations (Blanco et al., 2011; Klijn et al., 1995). Procedural policy tools, it is often argued, manipulate the number and configuration of links and the nodes of the policy or issue networks involved in policy formulation and implementation (Howlett, 2000; Kickert et al., 1997; Klijn & Koppenjan, 2000).

Table 4.1 summarizes the different policy tools in two-dimensional category space. The first quadrant introduces procedural policy tools that affect actor composition regarding goal consensus in the decision-making process.

Policy formulation is dominated by informational tools, which are defined as "a technique, scheme, device or operation . . . which can be used to collect, condense and make sense of different kinds of policy relevant knowledge to perform some or all of the various inter-linked tasks of policy formulation" (Jenkins-Smith, 1990, p. 11).

Turnpenny et al. (2015) differentiate between tools for problem characterization (e.g., statistical indicators, surveys, and expert evidence), the specification of objectives (e.g., scenario analysis), and the options assessment (e.g., cost-benefit analysis). These tools are designed to affect actor preferences and introduce an evidence perspective in the decision-making process. Tools affecting policy formulation are not restricted to informational tools but involve the invitation and funding of selected participants to join the formulation process and the exchange of influence, compromise, and commitment to attaining this objective (Howlett, 2000). Authority tools focusing on the interaction between participants include the rules of the game and interaction guidelines specifying acceptable conduct. The provision and acknowledgement of various interest positions offer another informational perspective on policy tools. At the same time, establishing an appropriate opportunity structure in which participants may exchange information and other resources falls within the organization and treasure category of policy tools (Lang, 2019).

Policy tools influencing the implementation phase contain compliance mechanisms that bind participants to the agreed objective and decisions. An example of such a tool is the neo-corporatist exchange of participation in the formulation process with support to implement the agreed policy (Streeck & Schmitter, 1985). In addition, reporting and monitoring tools are included whose aim is to raise the level of commitment to delivering results (Ling, 2002). While the link between implementation research and policy tools analysis is strongly top down, studies

Table 4.1 Classification of Tools

Process	*Network Structure*	
	Actors	*Network Interaction*
Policy Formulation	Actors and preferences setup	Deliberation and consensus orientation
	Restrict/invite participation	Rules for joint decision-making and co-design
	Problem characterization tools	
	Elaboration of visions and scenarios	Interaction guidelines
	Funding of participants	Providing and acknowledging interest positions
	Options assessment	
	Exchange of participation and compromise	Establishing political opportunity structures (sponsoring of events/administration)
Policy Implementation	Commitment to delivering results	Joint production orientation
	Trading participation in the formulation for commitment in the implementation	Rules for joint production and collaboration
		Promotion of participation
		Joint action plans
	Delegation of implementation competencies	Incentives to collaborate
		Integrating leadership
	Reporting and monitoring	Setup of living/innovation labs
	Funding of participants	

Sources: Hood (1983), Lang (2019), Streeck and Schmitter (1985)

of co-production introduce a more bottom-up component (Howlett et al., 2017; Nesti, 2017; Sorrentino et al., 2018).

Establishing rules for joint production can enhance implementation – that is, the interactions that lead to the desired outcomes. Incentives for collaboration are aimed at increasing the willingness of participants to take part in joint action. The setting up of public living or innovation labs (Nesti, 2017), whereby public authorities and other organizations or individuals innovative public services, is highly relevant in this context. This is because these labs involve not only infrastructure, venues, and financial resources but also soft tools such as integrating leadership (Bussu & Tullia Galanti, 2018).

This short enumeration and classification of procedural tools is far from exhaustive but highlights the wealth of tools available for each policy phase.

Procedural Policy Tools for Policy Integration

The literature of the policy cycle sees policy formulation and implementation entrenched in a steady policy subsystem in which domain-specific experts incrementally refine policies (Heclo, 1978; Sabatier & Weible, 2019). However, an increasing number of policy issues demand intersectoral coordination to find adequate solutions. Therefore, policy integration and related theoretical approaches examine cooperation between players from two or more policy domains in transferring policy objectives and tools derived from one policy domain to another (Tosun & Lang, 2017). This research perspective primarily refers to the difficulties that can arise when formulating and implementing cross-sectoral policies (Jordan & Lenschow, 2010).

The literature on policy integration has developed a comprehensive collection of procedural policy tools. Studies focusing on boundary-spanning institutions suggest that integrating institutions are conducive to policy integration because they help focus the attention of those involved in the formulation process (Jochim & May, 2010) subsume parliamentary committees and government-related advisory bodies. While information exchange and bargaining are the dominant modes of interaction, inter-administrative coordination provides a more active use of procedural tools by the government. Various tools are mentioned in the literature (Cejudo & Michel, 2021; Ling, 2002; Peters, 1998): new types of organizations that require flexible organizational structures, superministries that internally coordinate cross-cutting issues, advisory committees and boards consisting of experts and laypersons, coordination organizations, task forces and working groups for interdepartmental coordination, and ad-hoc committees of affected organizations – new types of collaboration between organizations focusing on shared processes and structures, shared budgets, and shared teams.

In a recent conceptual article, Cejudo and Michel (2021) propose a classification of policy integration tools: policy frame, authority, and information. A policy frame denotes a common understanding of the problem to be tackled and the responsibilities each participating organization was assigned in attaining a shared goal. Authority is defined by Cejudo and Michel (2021) as the "capacity that the decision-maker has to carry out the changes required to keep the policy mix pertinent, relevant and functioning as planned over time" (Cejudo & Michel, 2021, p. 4). Finally, information involves the strategic creation, collection, and utilization of data regarding the attributes of the tools within the procedural policy mix (Cejudo & Michel, 2021). In particular, the policy frame seems to be a valuable addition to the orthodox classification of tools.

Policy integration approaches aim to describe policy tools and consider various explanatory factors for the successful integration of cross-sectoral policies. For example, concerning the integration of climate change policies, Nilsson and Nilsson (2005) argue that they can only be integrated with measures from adjacent policy fields if the underlying policy problem can be

presented in such a way that all sector-specific actors feel affected by it and responsible for solving the problem. Jordan and Lenschow (2010) identify other potential success factors for policy integration in their literature review. These include institutional factors such as the degree of ministerial departmental independence and the design of federal-state structures. According to Jordan and Lenschow (2010), a legalistic administrative culture also tends to be an obstacle to successful policy integration. Moreover, they argue that constellations of interests impact the willingness to cooperate and integrate into the context of policy integration. Other studies emphasize the importance of trust between organizations and individuals for successful inter-administrative collaboration (O'Flynn et al., 2011). Thus, organizational change needs to be accompanied by cultural measures to foster a collaborative culture oriented toward inter-organizational problems (O'Flynn et al., 2011). In this context, Davies (2009) argues that conflicts of interest between administrative units, in particular, can prevent successful cooperation. In this case, the creation of special incentives ought to increase the willingness to cooperate. Studies dealing with inter-administrative coordination also highlight the positive effects of performance and output metrics (Kavanagh & Richards, 2001; Ling, 2002). In addition, it is argued that differences in problem perceptions and diverging interest reduce the stability of policy integration in the absence of integrating institutions (Jochim & May, 2010).

Procedural Policy Tools and Wicked Problems

Recently, analysis pointing to the significance of complex or "wicked" policy problems has emerged as a new field in the study of policy tools (Alford & Head, 2017; Head, 2019; Peters, 2017). Wicked problems generally involve different layers associated with interest pluralism (multiple and diverging interests and actor values), institutional complexity (multiple venues of inter-organizational cooperation and governance), and knowledge uncertainty (fragmentation and gaps in reliable knowledge) (Head & Alford, 2015). The policy problem for government is how to address these when there are no ready-made and agreed solutions to hand. When governments have to consider multiple and sometimes conflicting goals, maximizing each goal becomes difficult, if not impossible (McConnell, 2018). Procedural tools are essential for tackling wicked problems since interest pluralism and knowledge uncertainty require integrated responses involving many players. As Howlett (2009) argues, these integrated responses require the identification and scoping of the problem, the deliberation on the choice of tools and procedures, and the participation of many players in the implementation of solutions. However, the analysis of complex issues has shown that the government responses to wicked policy problems are often to fragment the issues into more manageable elements (Head, 2019). Consequently, one of the core challenges in policy design is selecting policy tools or a mix of tools appropriate to the task. Notwithstanding, tool selection remains a significant challenge for governments since impacts and the likely effects of various policy tools are difficult to assess, especially ex-ante (Head, 2019; Head & Alford, 2015).

McConnell (2018) points out that the political and institutional dimensions of tool choice are just as crucial. Policy design and implementation involve negotiation, persuasion, and dealing with difficult trade-offs in finding and constantly adjusting substantive policy tools (McConnell, 2018). Kirschke and Kosow (2021) analyze the design of policy tools for emerging wicked problems and conclude that both comprehensiveness and diversity are important when coping with the complexity of wicked problems. They argue that multiple entry points are needed to address multi-faceted issues. In highlighting the heterogeneity of the target groups, they contend for an equally specific design of procedural policy tools (Kirschke & Kosow, 2021). Similarly, Endl (2017) argues in his analysis of wicked problems in the realm of sustainable development

that policymaking should take place across multiple levels or hierarchies as well as at political-administrative and territorial levels. Participation is a prerequisite for integrating different interests, perspectives, and knowledge bases into the decision-making process. A key point to address is a long-term vision that unites all the various players in a shared vision of the end solution. Continuous adaptive learning is another pillar of this response (Endl, 2017).

These empirical studies conceptualize procedural policy tool response to wicked problems as a unique and more complex case of policy integration. However, the "problem complexity" and "stakeholder divergence" elements of wicked problems are particularly challenging to tackle and by far outweigh any issues of interdepartmental coordination, mutual adjustment, and integrative stakeholder participation dominant in policy integration approaches. Head and Alford (2015) suggest developing and adopting "new approaches from systems thinking, collaboration and coordination, together with an adaptive-leadership and learning approach by public leaders and managers" (Head and Alford, 2015, p. 711). These approaches come close to the literature of network management (Edelenbos et al., 2013; Klijn & Koppenjan, 2014) and complex adaptive systems (Teisman et al., 2009). However, this new thinking has yet to be elaborated further.

Conclusion and Future Research Directions

The study of substantive and procedural policy tools has advanced considerably in the last 20 years, but the development happened at different speeds. Substantive and procedural policy tools are relevant at different phases of the policy cycle. Substantive tools are typically the output of the policy process, which, in turn, is affected by the use of procedural tools. Since substantive tools directly affect the behavior of citizens and organizations, they have received the bulk of the attention.

There exist several useful typologies for substantive tools while procedural tools are still underspecified. The literature of substantive tools has advanced to explaining the choice of tools, the effects and mixes of tools, and the specification of other contextual factors such as the policy domain in which substantive tools are applied. In contrast, scholars in procedural tools still struggle to develop typologies other than the ones based on resources. Typologies may rest on the different policy phases, the number and degree of integrating of policy subsystems, as well as the wickedness of the problem that needs to be tackled. However, developing useful typologies and classifications is the first step to advance to more sophisticated research design that includes factors affecting the choice of tools and their effectiveness. Studies in substantive tools have gone that way; scholars of procedural tools need to catch up.

References

Alford, J., & Head, B. W. (2017). Wicked and less wicked problems: A typology and a contingency framework. *Policy and Society*, 36(3), 397–413.

Bali, A. S., Capano, G., & Ramesh, M. (2019). Anticipating and designing for policy effectiveness. *Policy and Society*, 38(1), 1–13.

Bemelmans-Videc, M.-L., Rist, R. C., & Vedung, E. O. (2011). *Carrots, sticks, and sermons: Policy instruments and their evaluation*. Transaction Publishers.

Blanco, I., Lowndes, V., & Pratchett, L. (2011). Policy networks and governance networks: Towards greater conceptual clarity. *Political Studies Review*, 9(3), 297–308.

Borrás, S., & Edquist, C. (2013). The choice of innovation policy instruments. *Technological Forecasting and Social Change*, 80(8), 1513–1522.

Bouwma, I., Beunen, R., & Liefferink, D. (2018). Natura 2000 management plans in France and the Netherlands: Carrots, sticks, sermons and different problems. *Journal for Nature Conservation*, 46, 56–65.

Bussu, S., & Tullia Galanti, M. (2018). Facilitating coproduction: The role of leadership in coproduction initiatives in the UK. *Policy and Society*, 37(3), 347–367.

Capano, G., Pritoni, A., & Vicentini, G. (2020). Do policy instruments matter? Governments' choice of policy mix and higher education performance in Western Europe. *Journal of Public Policy*, 40(3), 375–401.

Cejudo, G. M., & Michel, C. L. (2021). Instruments for policy integration: How policy mixes work together. *SAGE Open*, 11(3), 21582440211032160.

Davies, J. S. (2009). The limits of joined-up government: Towards a political analysis. *Public Administration*, 87(1), 80–96.

Edelenbos, J., Van Buuren, A., & Klijn, E.-H. (2013). Connective capacities of network managers. *Public Management Review*, 15(1), 131–159.

Endl, A. (2017). Addressing "wicked problems" through governance for sustainable development: A comparative analysis of national mineral policy approaches in the European Union. *Sustainability*, 9(10), 1830.

Hall, P. A. (1993). Policy paradigms, social learning, and the state: The case of economic policymaking in Britain. *Comparative Politics*, 275–296.

Head, B. W. (2019). Forty years of wicked problems literature: Forging closer links to policy studies. *Policy and Society*, 38(2), 180–197.

Head, B. W., & Alford, J. (2015). Wicked problems: Implications for public policy and management. *Administration & Society*, 47(6), 711–739.

Heclo, H. (1978). Issue networks and the executive branch. In A. S. King & S. H. Beer (Eds.), *The new American political system* (pp. 87–124). American Enterprise Institute.

Hood, C. C. (1983). *The tools of government*. Macmillan.

Hood, C. C., & Margetts, H. Z. (2007). *The tools of government in the digital age*. Macmillan.

Howlett, M. (1991). Policy instruments, policy styles, and policy implementation: National approaches to theories of instrument choice. *Policy Studies Journal*, 3(2), 53, 1–21.

Howlett, M. (2000). Managing the "hollow state": Procedural policy instruments and modern governance. *Canadian Public Administration*, 43(4), 412–431.

Howlett, M. (2005). What is a policy instrument? Policy tools, policy mixes and policy styles. In Pearl Eliadis, M. Hill, & M. Howlett (Eds.), *Designing government: From instruments to governance*. McGill-Queen's University Press.

Howlett, M. (2004). Beyond good and evil in policy implementation: Instrument mixes, implementation styles, and second generation theories of policy instrument choice. *Policy and Society*, 23(2), 1–17.

Howlett, M. (2009). Policy analytical capacity and evidence-based policy-making: Lessons from Canada. *Canadian Public Administration*, 52(2), 153–175.

Howlett, M. (2018). Selecting substantive and procedural tools in public policymaking. In M. Howlett & I. Mukherjee (Eds.), *Routledge handbook of policy design*. Routledge.

Howlett, M. (2020). Policy instruments: Definitions and approaches. In M. Howlett & G. Capano (Eds.), *A modern guide to public policy*. Edward Elgar Publishing.

Howlett, M., Kekez, A., & Poocharoen, O.-O. (2017). Understanding co-production as a policy tool: Integrating new public governance and comparative policy theory. *Journal of Comparative Policy Analysis: Research and Practice*, 19(5), 487–501.

Howlett, M., & Mukherjee, I. (2017). *Handbook of policy formulation*. Edward Elgar Publishing.

Howlett, M., Mukherjee, I., & Woo, J. J. (2015). From tools to toolkits in policy design studies: The new design orientation towards policy formulation research. *Policy & Politics*, 43(2), 291–311.

Howlett, M., & Ramesh, M. (1998). Policy subsystem configurations and policy change: Operationalizing the postpositivist analysis of the politics of the policy process. *Policy Studies Journal*, 26(3), 466–481.

Jann, W., & Wegrich, K. (2017). Theories of the policy cycle. In F. Fischer, G.J. Miller, & Mara S. Sidney (Eds.), *Handbook of public policy analysis* (pp. 69–88). Routledge.

Jenkins-Smith, H. C. (1990). *Democratic politics and policy analysis*. Brooks/Cole Publishing Company.

Jochim, A. E., & May, P. J. (2010). Beyond subsystems: Policy regimes and governance. *Policy Studies Journal*, 38(2), 303–327.

Jordan, A. J., & Lenschow, A. (2010). Environmental policy integration: A state of the art review. *Environmental Policy and Governance*, 20(3), 147–158.

Jordan, A. J., & Turnpenny, J. R. (2015). *The tools of policy formulation: Actors, capacities, venues and effects*. Edward Elgar Publishing.

Kavanagh, D., & Richards, D. (2001). Departmentalism and joined-up government. *Parliamentary Affairs*, 54(1), 1–18.

Kickert, W. J., Klijn, E.-H., & Koppenjan, J. F. (1997). *Managing complex networks: Strategies for the public sector*. Sage.

Kirschke, S., & Kosow, H. (2021). Designing policy mixes for emerging wicked problems: The case of pharmaceutical residues in freshwaters. *Journal of Environmental Policy & Planning*, 1–12.

Klijn, E.-H., & Koppenjan, J. F. (2000). Public management and policy networks: Foundations of a network approach to governance. *Public Management an International Journal of Research and Theory*, 2(2), 135–158.

Klijn, E.-H., & Koppenjan, J. F. (2014). Complexity in governance network theory. *Complexity, Governance & Networks*, 1(1), 61–70.

Klijn, E. H., Koppenjan, J., & Termeer, K. (1995). Managing networks in the public sector: A theoretical study of management strategies in policy networks. *Public Administration*, 73(3), 437–454.

Koliba, C. J., Mills, R. M., & Zia, A. (2011). Accountability in governance networks: An assessment of public, private, and nonprofit emergency management practices following Hurricane Katrina. *Public Administration Review*, 71(2), 210–220.

Lang, A. (2019). Collaborative governance in health and technology policy: The use and effects of procedural policy instruments. *Administration & Society*, 51(2), 272–298.

Le Galès, P. (2011). Policy instruments and governance. In M. Bevir (Ed.), *The SAGE handbook of governance* (pp. 142–159). Sage.

Levi-Faur, D. (2012). From "big government" to "big governance". In D. Levi-Faur (Ed.), *The Oxford handbook of governance* (pp. 3–18). Oxford University Press.

Lindquist, E. A., & Wellstead, A. (2021). The policy cycle: From heuristic to a theory-informed research and advice. In B. Hildreth, G. J. Miller, & E. A. Lindquist (Eds.), *Handbook of public administration* (pp. 303–322). Routledge.

Ling, T. (2002). Delivering joined–up government in the UK: Dimensions, issues and problems. *Public Administration*, 80(4), 615–642.

McConnell, A. (2018). Rethinking wicked problems as political problems and policy problems. *Policy and Politics*, 46(1), 165–180.

Nesti, G. (2017). Living labs: A new tool for co-production? In A. Bisello, D. Vettorato, R. Stephens, & P. Elisei (Eds.), *Smart and sustainable planning for cities and regions: Results of SSPCR 2015* (pp. 267–281). Springer.

Nilsson, M., & Nilsson, L. J. (2005). Towards climate policy integration in the EU: Evolving dilemmas and opportunities. *Climate Policy*, 5(3), 363–376.

O'Flynn, J., Buick, F., Blackman, D., & Halligan, J. (2011). You win some, you lose some: Experiments with joined-up government. *International Journal of Public Administration*, 34(4), 244–254.

Peters, B. G. (1998). Managing horizontal government: The politics of co-ordination. *Public Administration*, 76(2), 295–311.

Peters, B. G. (2000). Policy instruments and public management: Bridging the gaps. *Journal of Public Administration Research and Theory*, 10(1), 35–47.

Peters, B. G. (2017). What is so wicked about wicked problems? A conceptual analysis and a research program. *Policy and Society*, 36(3), 385–396.

Provan, K. G., & Kenis, P. (2008). Modes of network governance: Structure, management, and effectiveness. *Journal of Public Administration Research and Theory*, 18(2), 229–252.

Pülzl, H., & Treib, O. (2017). Implementing public policy. In F. Fischer, G.J. Miller, & Mara S. Sidney (Eds.), *Handbook of public policy analysis* (pp. 115–134). Routledge.

Sabatier, P. A., & Weible, C. M. (2019). The advocacy coalition framework: Innovations and clarifications. In P.A. Sabatier (Ed.), *Theories of the policy process* (pp. 189–220). Routledge.

Salamon, L. M. (2000). The new governance and the tools of public action: An introduction. *Fordham Urban Law Journal*, 28, 1611.

Schneider, A., & Ingram, H. (1988). Systematically pinching ideas: A comparative approach to policy design. *Journal of Public Policy*, 8(1), 61–80.

Schneider, A., & Ingram, H. (1990). Behavioral assumptions of policy tools. *The Journal of Politics*, 52(2), 510–529.

Seeger, E. (1934). *The pageant of Chinese history*. Longmans.

Sorrentino, M., Sicilia, M., & Howlett, M. (2018). Understanding co-production as a new public governance tool. *Policy and Society*, 37(3), 277–293.

Streeck, W., & Schmitter, P. C. (1985). Community, market, state-and associations? The prospective contribution of interest governance to social order. *European Sociological Review*, 1(2), 119–138.

Teisman, G., van Buuren, A., & Gerrits, L. M. (2009). *Managing complex governance systems*. Routledge.
Tosun, J., & Lang, A. (2017). Policy integration: Mapping the different concepts. *Policy Studies*, 38(6), 553–570.
Turnpenny, J. R., Jordan, A. J., Benson, D., & Rayner, T. (2015). The tools of policy formulation: An introduction. In A. J. Jordan & J. R. Turnpenny (Eds.), *The tools of policy formulation: Actors, capacities, venues and effects* (pp. 3–32). Edward Elgar Publishing.
Weber, M. (2019). *Economy and society*. Harvard University Press.

PART II

Basic Concepts

5

HOW TOOLS WORK

Policy Instruments as Activators and Mechanisms

Giliberto Capano and Michael Howlett

The mechanistic approach to policy tool research tries to unpack the processes through which instruments reach (or do not reach) their expected goals by shedding light on the set of behavioural mechanisms and how the deployment of specific kinds of policy tools activates some compliance responses and not others in policy targets or 'policy takers'. The mechanistic perspective assumes that instruments are not simply independent variables or co-variables; rather, they are real drivers of specific outcomes of interest. As a result, policy instruments are considered to be 'activators' of specific mechanistic chains through which the behaviours of individuals, groups and subsystems are altered in order to achieve specific outcomes. This means that instruments should not be considered as having a direct impact on the expected outcome, but rather serve as 'triggers' capable of activating a sequence of individual and aggregate behaviours that is expected to achieve a specific result. In general, each category of tool involves the use of a specific governing resource, but this resource use is expected to trigger or lever a specific characteristic or receptor in targets, inducing a certain behavioural response. Thus, the effectiveness of the deployment of such tools is linked not just to resource availability – a precondition of their use – but also to the existence of different 'receptors' on the part of policy targets which make them respond in a predictable way to the use of this resource when deployed. The policy mixes or bundles of policy instruments which arise in such cases typically involve not only a number of tools but also a range of motivations across a range of targets. This makes the assessment of the motivational structure of a policy realm more complex and difficult. It also suggests that rather than think about compliance in the context of single target-single instrument dynamics, policy design should centre on multiple target-multiple instrument ones.

Introduction: Instruments as Activators

What happens when a policy tools is deployed? Much existing policy thinking jumps from a proposed solution to an outcome, bypassing the 'black box' of behavioural and organizational change and targeting behaviour which generate outputs which allow that outcome to occur (Astbury and Leeuw 2010).

A mechanistic approach to policy tool use helps make sense out of what it is, in general, that a policy tool does. Such a mechanistic perspective not only reinforces existing analyses and explanations of how design works, but it also shows how the policy capacity of government can be

DOI: 10.4324/9781003163954-7

strengthened by better understanding how policy tools 'work'. That is, a mechanistic approach strengthens decision-makers' analytical capacity by making it clearer what should be analyzed and why when it comes to choosing and deploying a policy instrument. This approach better allows appropriate policy tools to be chosen to 'fit the job' and also helps inform the calibration of those tools to ensure their effectiveness.

A Mechanistic Perspective on Policy Instruments

Over the past few decades, many social sciences have moved in a mechanistic direction as a result of dissatisfaction with both legalistic and statistical explanations. Starting with Elster (1989; Elster 2009), studies have sought to apply mechanistic explanatory logic to both political science and sociology, for example, including Hedström and Swedberg 1998; Tilly 2001; Mayntz 2004; Schmidt 2006; Abbott 2007; Hedström 2005, 2008; Gross 2009; Mahoney 2001; Gerring 2007.

A mechanism is a 'causal structure that explains the empirical outcome' (Bygstad et al. 2016, 83). These mechanisms differ from 'intervening' variables because they are part of a different perception of causation than the correlation logic commonly found in the field which defines 'dependent', 'independent', and 'intervening' variables (Hedström and Swedberg 1998). Although in general difficult to observe directly, they indicate precisely how X actually produces Y under specific conditions rather than simply chronicling the co-appearance of Y whenever X is present.

Inspired by Coleman (1990) and Hedström and Swedberg (1998), a macro-meso-micro dynamic can be distinguished in three general types of mechanisms at work in the social and policy world (see Figure 5.1): 'situational' mechanisms which (on the basis of existing structural and environmental forces) constrain individuals' actions or shape their beliefs, 'action-formation' mechanisms which link individual activities or behaviour to individuals' actions and 'transformational' mechanisms which generate intended and unintended outcomes (meso level). The persistence or institutionalization of the outcomes of transformative mechanisms then generates a new situation, in which these 'first-order' and other 'second-order' mechanisms such as learning and feedback again occur.

This view, common in sociology, however, assumes that there is no direct influence between the micro and the macro (emergent) levels (Bhaskar 2008) and is hence less useful in the policy realm than in others where structural or system-level relationships are also important. Rather than use this rubric, instead a mechanistic sequence for policymaking composed of three components – 'activators', 'first-order mechanisms' and 'second-order mechanisms' – is described next (see also: Capano et al. 2019; Capano and Howlett 2021).

Activators, First- and Second-Order Mechanisms and Their Relationship to Policy Tools

'Activators' are not mechanisms; rather, they are 'events' or activities which trigger mechanisms, activating the first-order and second-order mechanisms through which the behaviour of individuals, groups and subsystems is altered in order to achieve a specific outcome. From a policy design perspective, activators are policy instruments through which decision-makers set up their policies to impact the reality they want to maintain or change. These instruments, of course, can be calibrated or tuned more precisely to attain government goals: for example, when a subsidy is adjusted upwards in the expectation that it will be utilized by more participants and enhance compliance rates with government initiatives.

First-order mechanisms are those which are triggered by the tool's applications of state resources in order to affect the behaviour of individuals, groups and structures and can be applied in a specific fashion in order to achieve a specific outcome. In the policy realm, these mechanisms exist at the individual level, whereby actions like the provision of subsidies are expected to change individual savings behaviour; at the group level, whereby, for example, the provision of tax credits for charitable donations affect group membership and behaviour; and at the system or subsystem level, whereby adding or removing new actors and ideas, or reinforcing existing ones, through activities such as creating authoritative policy advisory boards and commissions, providing access to information and other kinds of tools affect system structure and behaviour. These different levels of mechanisms interact with each other as, for example, occurs when a tax-credit for charities changes individual behaviour, which can affect the group's behaviour and, ultimately, the nature of a policy subsystem.

Second-order mechanisms are those which are used to inform the use of activators by observation of the reaction of individual, group and system behaviour to the previous deployment of activators. In the policy realm, these second order mechanisms are those which promote reflexive governance and include various kinds of activities such as policy learning, diffusion and transfer, both with respect to lessons learned about individual behaviour and collective or structural effects. They also include counter-causal mechanisms (counter-mobilization, negative framing, resistance) that can impede expected outcomes from first-order tools (Weaver 2010; Dunlop 2017).

Figure 5.1 presents an elaboration of this arrangement.

Activating First- and Second-Order Effects

This model is useful in understanding what specific first- and second-order mechanisms can be triggered by the deployment of policy tools to affect actors' behaviour in predictable directions

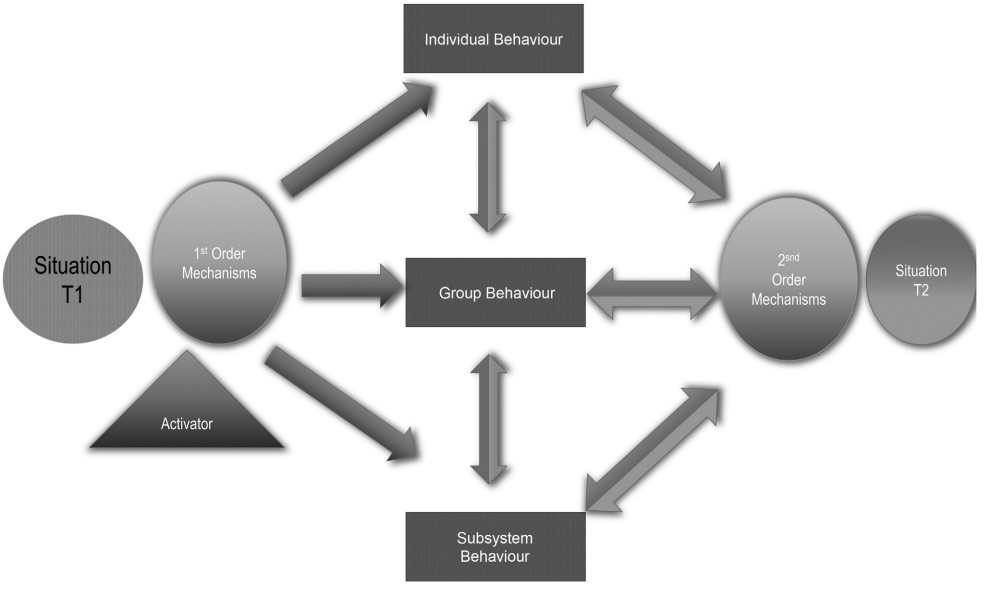


Figure 5.1 The Mechanistic Process From a Policy Design Perspective

and in what contexts. That is, first- and second-order mechanisms work in a context that varies according to the type of policy and can affect the ability of tools to alter behaviour in expected ways, depending on factors such as resource availability, capacity, implementation barriers and counteracting pulls on individual, group and subsystem activity and behaviour.

Such a mechanistic perspective helps us understand the various dimensions of policy instrument use. The focus on 'activators', the design tools/choices through which an intervention operates, for example, helps distinguish between the content of the design in terms of adopted policy tools or the strategy for an intervention and the mechanisms that they are capable of activating. The focus on 'first-order mechanisms', in turn, requires an awareness of the types of mechanisms that are activated through policy design in order to address targets' behaviour in such a way that their related behaviour produces the expected outcome. And the focus on second-order mechanisms helps us understand what occurs when a designed policy is implemented and thus improve the understanding of how a better policy design can be achieved. When a government decides to change how its education system functions, for example, if it has the requisite capacity to do so, it can activate first-order mechanisms, such as school competition or enhanced institutional accountability in order to improve the performance of schools, by activating second-order mechanisms like learning which is expected to do the same, or in some combination. Introducing vouchers or a combination of choice and national testing, for example, can activate competition and institutional accountability.

Activating First-Order Mechanisms

When a mechanistic perspective is applied to policymaking, the key questions are how and why certain tools activate specific mechanisms. As set out in Figure 5.2, the mechanisms approach to

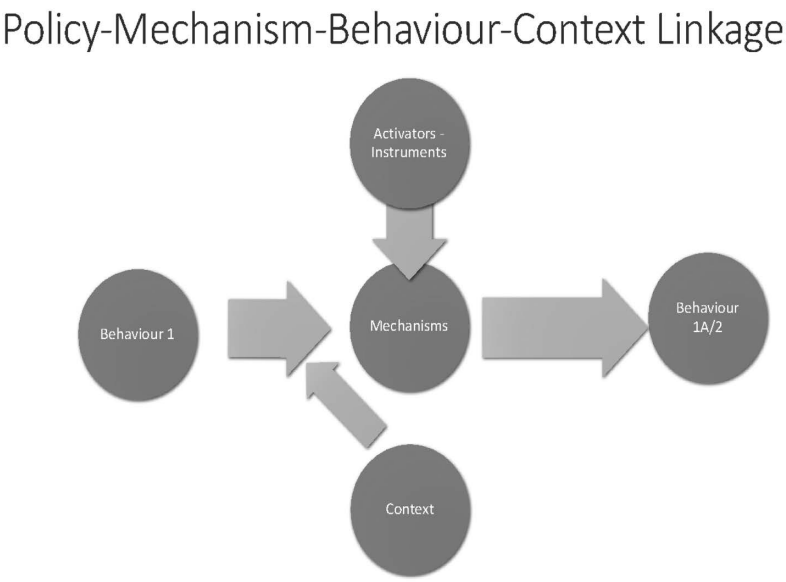


Figure 5.2 The Behavioural Expectations of Policy Tools

policymaking and policy dynamics centers around the idea that the use of policy tools activates certain propensities on the part of policy actors, leading to policy outputs resulting from more or less predictable changes in target behaviour and, ultimately, policy outcomes.

This is a process which involves complex causal chains centered around existing policy behaviours and policy-making contexts and policy interventions which trigger – intentionally, consciously or not – policy mechanisms which affecting 'target' behaviour, changing it in some new direction (Falleti and Lynch 2009; Hedström and Swedberg 1996, 1998; Hedström and Ylikoski 2010).

The linkages between policy instrument invocation and behavioural or policy change are very rich. As Figure 5.3 shows, a mechanistic process of behavioural change involves at least four linkages, all of which are affected by contextual aspects present at the exact moment at which instruments are invoked and mechanisms triggered. These are:

1. The link between tools and the governing resources present at any moment in time.
2. The link between resources and the mechanisms which tools activate.
3. The links between the mechanisms and the actual behavioural changes which occur post-activation.
4. The link between changes in behaviour and changes in policy outputs and outcomes.

This approach thus views policymaking as largely about affecting behavioural changes in target populations, with policy instruments used as a means to influence a shift from an existing behaviour ('Behaviour 1') to a reformed or new one ('Behaviour 1A or 2') (Balch 1980), a shift which is moderated by the context in which the tool is deployed and the manner in which the tool is calibrated.

Context is important because all four of these linkages – instrument choices, mechanism activation, reception and impact – are susceptible to various barriers and impediments linked to factors such as the number and type of targets, the availability (or not) of adequate resources or capacities on the part of state actors and the like (Howlett and Rayner 2013a, 2013b). As Figure 5.3

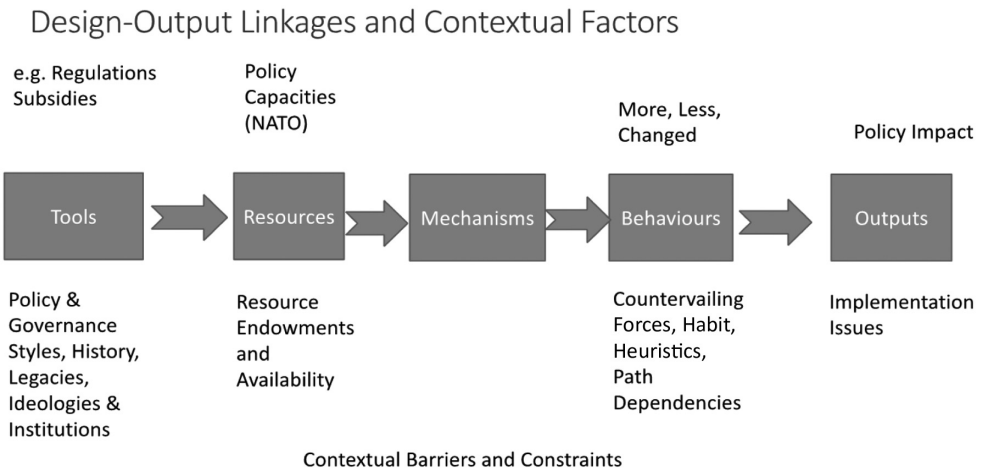


Figure 5.3 Examples of Specific Context-Related Mechanism Constraints

shows, in general, each link in a mechanistic chain is affected by contextual factors which can serve to block or make the linkages across the tools-output chain problematic: that is, making a design outcome more difficult to predict and control (Falleti and Lynch 2009).

Factors Affecting Activation

There are many such barriers and factors, which include such factors as the preferred policy style and governance mode, which can affect preferences for certain tools over others and the various resource ('nodality', 'authority', 'treasure' and 'organization', or NATO) (Hood 1986) endowments enjoyed by a government which can limit its capability to use particular tools or how they are calibrated or eliminate them altogether (Wu et al. 2015). Possible countervailing demands and constraints on behavioural change which can undermine the effect and impact of a mechanisms on subsequent behavioural change (Weaver 2014, 2015; Howlett 2018) are also important as are various kinds of implementation and other issues which can lessen or enhance policy outputs (Lindqvist 2016; Hupe and Hill 2016).

Moreover, different temporal dimensions also exist in these relationships, such as the tempo, duration, time frame and timing of interventions and responses (Adam 2004). Some mechanistic causal chains need time to develop an outcome (duration), and if the designer does not take this into account, they may design in a very ineffective way. And some mechanistic chains can have a different timing with respect to other related or linked dynamics such as a low synchronization rate between first-order mechanism activation and second-order learning or diffusion; this temporal misalignment can be the bearer of unexpected outcomes with respect to designers' goals. In other words, mechanisms can be activated in different ways and induce expected behaviors in an intense way or more loosely and at a slower pace.

Individual- and Group-Level Behavioural Mechanisms

First-order mechanisms are those psychological and structural characteristics of policy actors which directly affect their behaviour and reaction to policy cues. Although a great deal of the extant policy literature deals with individual-level behaviour, these mechanisms exist not only at the 'individual' level but also at the 'group' and 'structural' ones (Falleti and Lynch 2008).

Most of the literature on causal mechanisms in general, and dealing with policy mechanisms in particular, has focused on the individual level. At this level, both individual-level 'micro' mechanisms (affecting either 'system 1' unconscious or semi-conscious psychological propensities) and 'system 2' conscious or more 'rational' ones compose a key set of mechanisms which many policy tools are expected to activate (Kahneman 2013).

In this view, at the individual level, the mechanisms activated by policy instruments in order to trigger policy change are characteristics of human behaviour such as greed, fear, risk aversion or the use of heuristics and other less rational ways of thinking, which affect the logics of calculation and appropriateness individuals take towards such issues as whether or not to perform a crime or quit smoking or invest in a pension fund or donate to a charity (March and Olsen 2004).

These individual-levels mechanisms are triggered or activated by 'substantive' policy instruments (Howlett 2000), which are the typical kinds of policy tools discussed in the literature around economic incentives and disincentives such as the provision of subsidies or the creation of regulatory regimes (Tupper and Doern 1981; Hood 1986; Salamon 2002). As Hood noted, these tools rely on a set of governing resources for their effectiveness, including 'nodality' (or information), authority, treasure and the organizational resources of government (Hood

1986; Anderson 1975) (see Table 5.1) which form an important part of their capacity of inducing behavioural responses and figure prominently in thinking around their likely effectiveness on the ground.

Thus, information-based instruments, for example, can facilitate the provision of information as well as suppress it and can involve the release of misleading as well as accurate information (Goodin 1980), both of which can affect human cognitive and emotional response mechanisms: for example, concerning whether and how many supplies to stockpile in the face of a natural disaster or threat. These tools can be calibrated or applied at different levels of intensity, affecting the degree or speed to which a mechanism is activated

One of the main reasons such tools might be deployed is supply oriented: that is, a government may utilize specific kinds of tools which deploy the kinds of resources it has in ample supply or which could be easily replenished (Hood 1983). But in addition to 'supply-side' capacity issues, 'demand-side' considerations are also very significant in such choices. That is, in general, each category of tool involves the use of a specific governing resource expected to trigger or lever a specific characteristic or receptor in a target, inducing a certain behavioural response. Thus, the effectiveness of the deployment of such tools is linked not just to resource availability – a precondition of their use – but also to the existence of different 'receptors' on the part of policy targets which make them respond in a predictable way to the use of this resource when deployed and to the level of knowledge policymakers have concerning those propensities.

Table 5.2 presents a framework of the behavioural prerequisites which governing tools rely on for the effect.

Table 5.1 A Resource-Based Taxonomy of Procedural and Substantive Policy Instruments

Governing Resource and Target Need					
		Information	*Authority*	*Treasure*	*Organization*
Purpose of Tool	Substantive	Public Information Campaign	Independent Regulatory Agencies	Subsidies and Grants	Public Enterprises
	Procedural	Official Secrets Acts	Administrative Advisory Committees	Interest Group Funding	Government Reorganizations

(Cells provide examples of instruments in each category.)

Source: Adapted from Howlett (2000)

Table **5.2** Behavioural Needs for Resource Effectiveness

Tool Type	*Statecraft Resource Applied*	*Target Behavioural Prerequisite*
Nodality	Information	Credibility/Trust – willingness to believe and act on information provided by government
Authority	Coercive Power/Force	Legitimacy – willingness to be manipulated by government-invoked penalties and proscriptions
Treasure	Financial	Cupidity – willingness to be manipulated by gain/losses imposed by governments
Organization	Organization	Competence – willingness to receive goods and services from government and enter into partnership arrangements

Source: Howlett (2011)

In the case of information use, for example, tool effectiveness relies on both the availability of knowledge and reliable data and the means to distribute it ('resources') and the target's belief in the accuracy of the messages being purveyed, or their credibility ('receptor'). Similarly, the effectiveness of the use of authoritative tools depends not just on the availability of coercive mechanisms and their enforcement but also on target perceptions of government legitimacy or the firmness and justice of the use of force or its threat. Similarly, the effective use of treasure resources depends not just on the availability of government funding but also on target group financial need and especially their receptivity to government funding or their cupidity. Likewise, the effective use of organizational tools depends on both the existence of personnel and other organizational resource and target group perceptions of government competence in the deployment and training of personnel to provide services and rules.

These are important considerations in the use of tool and especially in their calibration. Thus, the use of authority-based tools such as laws and regulations, for example, involves considerations of legitimacy on the part of targets but must not overreach or overburden the extent of legitimacy which a government enjoys (Suchman 1995; Hanberger 2003). If a policy measure does so, it most assuredly will require much monitoring and enforcement activity in order to be even minimally effective, involving large administrative costs and burdens which may well undermine its own efficiency and effectiveness considerations, as has occurred in the past in many countries in areas such as marijuana or alcohol prohibition (Issalys 2005). The exact manner in which a tool is calibrated is affected by a variety of implementation issues, ranging from the level of resources available to governments – such as the nature of financial constraints on subsidy levels – to their knowledge of the degree to which different levels of resource use affect the intensity of mechanism activation.

Group-Level Mechanisms

Although often pitched purely at the level of individuals, many of these same mechanisms also operate at the more collective or group level (Olson 1965; Buchanan and Tullock 1980; Riker 1986) (see also Figure 5.4). That is, this same basic logic can be applied to groups or collections of

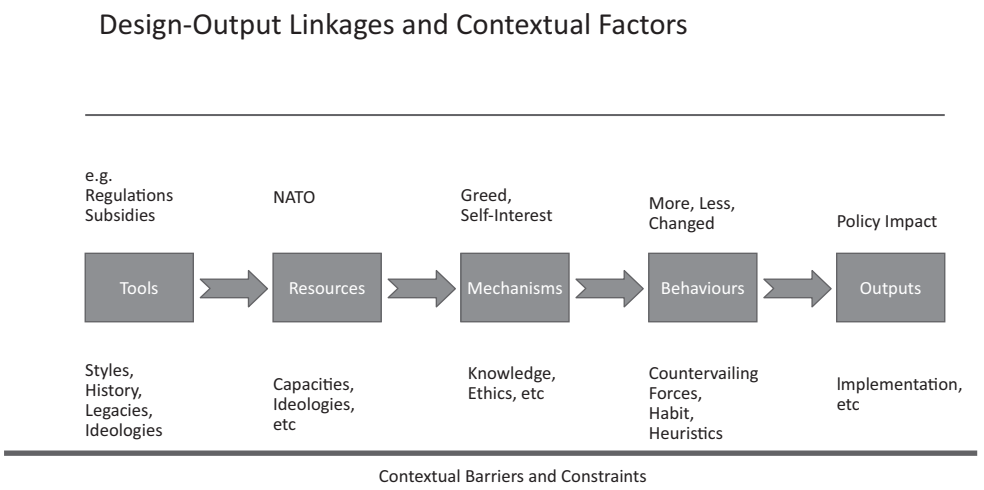


Figure 5.4 Examples of Individual- and Group-Level First-Order Mechanisms

individuals who enter into coalitions or act independently in order to pursue collective aims and goals, including influencing the behaviour of government towards them.

Such groups are sometimes viewed as mere aggregates of individual preferences with no interests or aims beyond those of their members (Olson 1965), although more careful study has shown many more complex motivations and proclivities exist at the collective or organizational level which are not reducible in such a fashion (Halpin and Binderkrantz 2011). These mechanisms include the propensities of groups to search for new issues or retain existing issue orientations, whether they prefer to specialize or generalize in issue orientations and the nature of their membership appeals (Nownes and Neeley 1996; Halpin et al. 2018).

Structural- or Subsystem-Level Mechanisms

A third set of mechanisms is that which concerns the structure of policy subsystems and how they change. This set of mechanisms is quite different from the individual- and group-level ones, which are the typical subjects of mechanistic analysis.

This third set of mechanisms is activated by policy tools, especially 'procedural' ones which affect the manner in which individual and groups act and interact in attempting to affect policy outcomes (Howlett 2000, 2011). A sizeable literature in the policy sciences has noted the importance to policy outputs and processes of two aspects of subsystem structure: namely, the number of types of actor arrayed in a subsystem or network and especially their ability to block off or close off entry of new types of actor, as well as the nature of the ideas which circulate within such subsystems. That is, changes in the ends of policies, be they conceptual or practical, require new ideas to be incorporated into policy-making processes (Sabatier 1999; Campbell 1998; Blyth 1997; Hall 1993), meaning such ideas have to be able to penetrate into the policy communities and networks which control or dominate policy discourses. Similarly, another sizeable body of policy research links changes in the conceptual aspects of policy-making simply to the ability of actors in policy subsystems to achieve and retain 'monopoly' or hegemonic status within them (Baumgartner and Jones 1993; Hoberg 1996; Jacobsen 1995; Pontusson 1995).

Like any kind of networks, policy subsystems are composed of nodes and links. Manipulating nodes and links – adding, subtracting and changing them – thus constitutes a set of triggers which activate a variety of mechanisms at this network level, including the willingness of policy actors to enter into relationships with other proximate actors in the network (rather than more distant ones) or their desire to act as leaders, entrepreneurs or brokers between other actors and governments.

Hence, there is a third major type of policy behaviour with a specific set of mechanisms, which policymakers can and do activate, which are structural ones (see Figure 5.5).

Second-Order Mechanisms: The Family of Policy Feedback

All the aforementioned mechanisms are 'first-order' ones which directly affect actor or system behaviour. But there are also policy mechanisms activated by policy tools which do not directly produce effects at the aggregate level but rather involve feedback processes affecting further tool choices and policy efforts. These effects require the activation of other types of mechanisms, which can be defined as 'second-order' mechanisms.

Policy feedback processes are one such mechanism, for example, and can be either positive (reinforcing existing behaviours) or negative (altering them) (Pierson 1993, 2000a, 2000b). Positive policy feedback effects often develop lock-in effects over time through increasing return

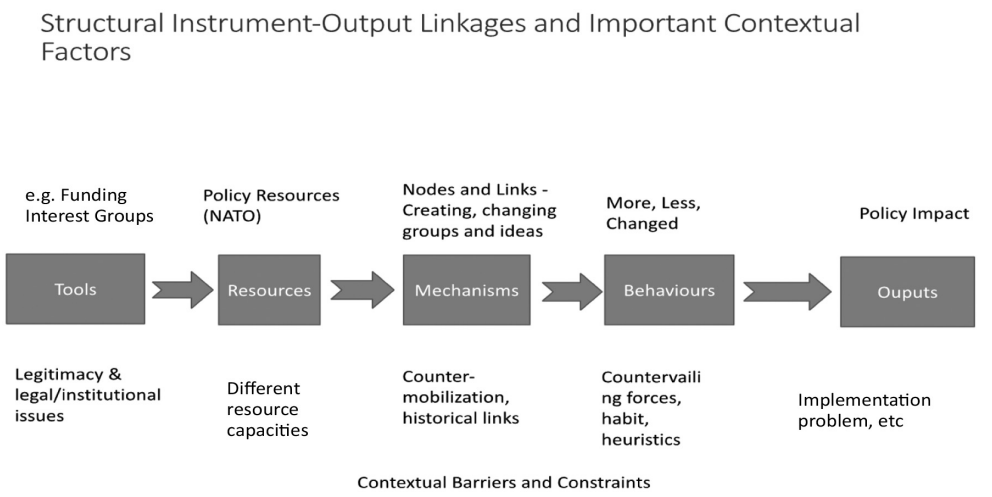


Figure 5.5 Links in the Design Chain – Structural Level

mechanisms that both freeze the elements of a specific policy and stabilize them on a specific path to be followed (North 1990; Pierson 2004; Moynihan and Soss 2014). Thus, they can be considered self-reinforcing. Negative feedback avoids the expected outcomes and can advance self-undermining policy reform and change processes (Weaver 2010).

Conclusion

All in all, many lessons emerge from the study of policy instruments as activators of different mechanisms and effects. By focusing on the underlying mechanisms, a mechanistic approach can thus help policy design better open the 'black box' of policy behaviour and compliance and intervene in it.

References

Abbott A (2007) Mechanisms and relations. *Sociologica* 2(1): 1–22.
Adam, B (2004) *Time*. Cambridge: Polity Press.
Anderson JE (1975) *Public Policymaking*. New York: Praeger.
Astbury B and Leeuw FL (2010) Unpacking black boxes: Mechanisms and theory building in evaluation. *American Journal of Evaluation* 31(3): 363–381.
Balch GI (1980) The stick, the carrot, and other strategies: A theoretical analysis of governmental intervention. *Law and Policy Quarterly* 2(1): 35–60.
Baumgartner F and Jones B (1993) *Agendas and Instability in American Politics*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press.
Bhaskar RA (2008) *A Realist Theory of Science*. London: Routledge.
Blyth, M (1997) Any more bright ideas? The ideational turn of comparative political economy. *Comparative Politics* 29(1): 229–250.
Buchanan J and Tullock G (1980) *Towards a Theory of the Rent-Seeking Society*. College Station: Texas A & M Press.
Bygstad B, Munkvold E and Volkoff O (2016) Identifying generative mechanisms through affordances: A framework for critical realist data analysis. *Journal of Information Technology* 31(1): 83–96.
Campbell JL (1998) Institutional analysis and the role of ideas in political economy. *Theory and Society* 27(2): 377–409.

Capano G, Howlett M, Ramesh M and Virani A (eds.) (2019) *Making Policies Work: First and Second Order Mechanisms in Policy Design*. London: Edward Elgar.
Capano G and Howlett M (2021) Causal logics and mechanisms in policy design: How and why adopting a mechanistic perspective can improve policy design. *Public Policy and Administration* 36(2), 141–162.
Coleman JS (1990) *Foundations of Social Theory*. Cambridge, MA: The Belknap Press of Harvard University Press.
Dunlop CA (2017) Policy learning and policy failure: Definitions, dimensions and intersections. *Policy & Politics* 45(1): 3–18.
Elster J (1989) *Nuts and Bolts for the Social Sciences*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press.
Elster, J (2009) *Reason and Rationality*. Translated by Steven Rendall. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press.
Falleti T and Lynch J (2008) From process to mechanism: Varieties of disaggregation. *Quantitative Sociology* 31(4): 333–339.
Falleti T and Lynch J (2009) Context and causal mechanisms in political analysis. *Comparative Political Studies* 42(9): 1143–1166.
Gerring J (2007) The mechanismic worldview: Thinking inside the box. *British Journal of Political Science* 38(1): 161–179.
Goodin RE (1980) *Manipulatory Politics*. New Haven, CT: Yale University Press.
Gross N (2009) A pragmatist theory of social mechanisms. *American Sociological Review* 74(3): 358–379.
Hall PA (1993) Policy paradigms, social learning and the state: The case of economic policy making in Britain. *Compartive Politics* 25(3): 275–296.
Halpin DR and Binderkrantz A (2011) Explaining breadth of policy engagement: Patterns of interest group mobilization in public policy. *Journal of European Public Policy* 18(2): 201–219.
Halpin DR, Fraussen B and Nownes AJ (2018) The balancing act of establishing a policy agenda: Conceptualizing and measuring drivers of issue prioritization within interest groups. *Governance* 31(2): 215–237.
Hanberger A (2003) Public policy and legitimacy: A historical policy analysis of the interplay of public policy and legitimacy. *Policy Sciences* 36(2): 257–258.
Hedström P (2005) *Dissecting the Social: On the Principles of Analytical Sociology*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press.
Hedström P (2008) Studying mechanisms to strengthen causal inferences in quantitative research. In: Box-Steffensmeier J, Brady H and Collier D (eds.) *The Oxford Handbook of Political Methodology*. Oxford: Oxford University Press, pp. 319–338.
Hedström P and Swedberg R (1996) Social mechanisms. *Acta Sociologica* 39(3): 281–308.
Hedström P and Swedberg R (1998) *Social Mechanisms. An Analytical Approach to Social Theory*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press.
Hedström P and Ylikoski P (2010) Causal mechanisms in the social sciences. *Annual Review of Sociology* 36(1): 49–67.
Hoberg G (1996) Putting ideas in their place: A response to "learning and change in the British Columbia forest policy sector". *Canadian Journal of Political Science* 29(1): 135–144.
Hood C (1983) Using bureaucracy sparingly. *Public Administration* 61(2): 197–208.
Hood C (1986) *The Tools of Government*. Chatham, NJ: Chatham House Publishers.
Howlett M (2000) Managing the "hollow state": Procedural policy instruments and modern governance. *Canadian Public Administration* 43(4): 412–431.
Howlett M (2011) *Designing Public Policies: Principles and Instruments*. London: Routledge.
Howlett M (2018) Matching policy tools and their targets: Beyond nudges and utility maximisation in policy design. *Policy & Politics* 46(1): 101–124.
Howlett M and Rayner J (2013a) Design principles for policy mixes: Cohesion and coherence in "new governance arrangements". *Policy and Society* 26(4): 1–18.
Howlett M and Rayner J (2013b) Patching vs. packaging in policy formulation: Assessing policy portfolio design. *Politics and Governance* 1(2): 170–182.
Hupe PL and Hill MJ (2016) And the rest is implementation: Comparing approaches to what happens in policy processes beyond great expectations. *Public Policy and Administration* 31(2): 103–121.
Issalys P (2005) Choosing among forms of public action: A question of legitimacy. In: Eliadis P, Hill M and Howlett M (eds.) *Designing Government: From Instruments to Governance*. Montreal: McGill-Queen's University Press, pp. 154–181.
Jacobsen JK (1995) Much ado about ideas: The cognitive factor in economic policy. *World Politics* 47(2): 283–310.

Kahneman D (2013) *Thinking, Fast and Slow*. 1st edition. New York: Farrar, Straus and Giroux.
Lindqvist K (2016) Dilemmas and paradoxes of regional cultural policy implementation governance modes, discretion, and policy outcome. *Administration & Society*. https://doi.org/10.1177/0095399715621944.
Mahoney J (2001) Beyond correlational analysis: Recent innovations in theory and method. *Sociological Forum* 16(3): 575–593.
March JG and Olsen JP (2004) The Logic of Appropriateness. Oslo: ARENA Working Paper.
Mayntz R (2004) Mechanisms in the analysis of social macro-phenomena. *Philosophy of the Social Sciences* 34(2): 237–259.
Moynihan DP and Soss S (2014) Policy feedback and the politics of administration. *Public Administration Review* 74(3): 320–332.
North D (1990) *Institutions, Institutional Change and Economic Performance*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press.
Nownes A and Neeley G (1996) Toward an explanation for public interest group formation and proliferation: "Seed money", disturbances, entrepreneurship, and patronage. *Policy Studies Journal* 24(1): 74–92.
Olson M (1965) *The Logic of Collective Action: Public Goods and the Theory of Groups*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press.
Pierson P (1993) When effect becomes cause: Policy feedback and political change. *World Politics* 45(4): 595–618.
Pierson P (2000a) The limits of design: Explaining institutional origins and change. *Governance* 13(4): 475–499.
Pierson P (2000b) Increasing returns, path dependence, and the study of politics. *American Political Science Review* 94(2): 251–267.
Pierson P (2004) *Politics in Time: History, Institutions, and Social Analysis*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press.
Pontusson J (1995) From comparative public policy to political economy: Putting institutions in their place and taking interests seriously. *Comparative Political Studies* 28(1): 117–147.
Riker WH (1986) *The Art of Political Manipulation*. New Haven, CT: Yale University Press.
Sabatier PA (1999) The need for better theories. In: *Theories of the Policy Process*. Boulder, CO: Westview Press, pp. 3–17.
Salamon LM (2002) *The Tools of Government: A Guide to the New Governance*. New York: Oxford University Press.
Schmidt M (2006) *Die Logik mechanismischer Erkla¨rungen*. Wiesbaden: VS Verlag.
Suchman MC (1995) Managing legitimacy: Strategic and institutional approaches. *Academy of Management Review* 20(3): 571–610.
Tilly C (2001) Mechanisms in political processes. *Annual Review of Political Science* 4: 21–41.
Tupper A and Doern GB (1981) Public corporations and public policy in Canada. In Tupper A and Doern GB (eds.) *Public Corporations and Public Policy in Canada*. Montreal: Institute for Research on Public Policy, pp. 1–50.
Weaver RK (2010) Paths and forks or chutes and ladders? Negative feedbacks and policy regime change. *Journal of Public Policy* 30(2): 137–162.
Weaver RK (2014) Compliance regimes and barriers to behavioral change. *Governance* 27(2): 243–265.
Weaver RK (2015) Getting people to behave: Research lessons for policy makers. *Public Administration Review* 75(6): 806–816.
Wu X, Ramesh M and Howlett M (2015) Policy capacity: A conceptual framework for understanding policy competences and capabilities. *Policy and Society* 34(3–4): 165–171.

6
WHAT TOOLS DO
Policy Targeting and Behaviour

Michael Howlett

Introduction: The Utilitarian Roots of Much Thinking About Policy Tools

It is critically important for policymaking that the behaviour resulting from policy activity and the expenditure of governing resources matches that anticipated prior to deployment (May 2004; Kaine et al. 2010; Duesberg et al. 2014). Policy tool use and behavioural expectations are thus linked in the sense that the use of policy tools involves implicit or explicit assumptions and expectations about the effect the tools will have upon those impacted by them.

In other words, 'tools have targets' (Weaver 2009a, 2009b, 2010). That is, not just 'targets' in the sense of policy aims and goals and their measures, such as reducing petty crime by 10% in a city (Boswell 2014), but 'targets' in the sense of individuals and groups whose behaviour is expected to be affected by policy activity (Ghosh et al. 2016). Regardless of whether those targets are purely social constructions with few empirical referents (Schneider and Ingram 1993, 2005) or if they reflect more objective assessment of the actual behaviour of relevant groups of policy actors, it is critical for effective policymaking that actual target behaviour matches expectations.

'Compliance' thus links policy design, tool use and tool choice together and is critical to policy success and failure (Weaver 2009b; Lynn 1986; Schneider and Ingram 1990; Shafir 2013). However, despite the fact that 'compliance' with government intentions has been a significant issue in areas such as regulatory studies for many years (Feeley 1970; Etienne 2011; Meier and Morgan 1982; Rodgers 1975; Mulford and Etzioni 1978), this aspect of policy design has only rarely been systematically examined in the literature on policy tools (Grabosky 1995; Weaver 2009a, 2009b, 2013, 2015; Winter and May 2001).

And even when it has been examined, the lessons learned from empirical studies have only rarely been related to the principles behind the effective use of particular kinds of policy instruments (Duesberg 2014; Corner and Randall 2011) and to decisions to use one or more of one particular type rather than another in putting together a policy or programme (Tan and Low 2011; Taylor et al. 2013). Instead, studies of policy tools have often been developed with only the most rudimentary and cursory knowledge of how those expected to be affected by the policy are, in fact, likely to react to it (Lewis 2007; Corner and Randall 2011; Taylor et al. 2013; Duesberg 2014).

DOI: 10.4324/9781003163954-8

It is often simply assumed, for example, that policy 'targets' are rational self-maximizers, calculating their best interests hedonically in deciding whether or not to comply with the demands of government instruments and mechanisms such as regulation, laws and subsidies (Stover and Brown 1975; Weaver 2014; Jones et al. 2014; Duesberg et al. 2014; Araral 2014; Maskin 2008). Hence, much work in this area is often focused around the idea of 'getting incentives right' or calibrating incentives and disincentives, often financial, to achieve expected levels of compliance and outcomes rather than on examining other, more normative or culturally determined aspects of target behaviour.

This tendency, however, has changed somewhat in recent years as scholars and practitioners alike, many under the influence of behavioural economics, have come to appreciate that members of the public and other policy actors often predictably behave in less than perfectly rational ways (Ariely 2010; Thaler et al. 2010; Thaler and Sunstein 2009; Mulgan 2008; Bason 2014).

This work has led to renewed interest in compliance and in the policy design issues surrounding it. Weaver (2009b, p. 5), for example, has enumerated some of the various 'compliance problems' or 'barriers' to compliance which governments face when putting their policies into practice. These indeed include incentive and sanction problems where positive and/or negative incentives are insufficient to ensure compliance but also monitoring problems where target compliance may be difficult or costly to monitor, resource problems where targets lack the resources to comply even if they want to, autonomy problems where targets do not have the power to make decisions that comply with policy even if they want to, information problems where targets lack information that would make compliance more likely and attitude and objectives problems where targets are hostile/mistrustful towards providers or programs. As Weaver and others have suggested, these and other similar compliance problems need to be the subject of more investigation in order to determine what is needed for effective policy designs that overcome them.

But if target behaviour is not purely utilitarian, then what is it, and how can it best be anticipated and linked in policy designs to the efficient and effective attainment of government goals?

This is not a trivial issue in policy theory and practice. Is the best way to encourage an increase in birth rates, for example, to provide subsides which might tip the balance of a woman's or family's calculations of the affordability of children? Or is it more effective to promote family-centred events and activities in public service announcements and movie, television and other entertainment placements which promote the notion of home life and the pleasures of children and family (Lichtenstein and Slovic 2006)? Or both? In what order or sequence?

Policy tool considerations built around the first orientation can involve debates and discussions around the appropriate use of particular kinds of financial tools, such as providing more widely distributed and available subsidized day care and better local schools rather than around how much of a direct subsidy to a parent through the use of tax incentives or cash grants will promote higher levels of child birth and larger families (Woodside 1979). But the second may involve a much greater range of activities and tools, such as the use of movie theatre and TV public service advertisements and educational programmes in schools and elsewhere, rather than simply the provision of new services or subsidies. And whether both work in conjunction with each other or at cross purposes is unknown.

Constructing effective compliance regimes is a significant aspect of policy design and requires more systematic analysis and understanding of the motivations of policy targets than exist at present, ones which would allow better matching of tools and target behaviour right at the outset of policymaking, rather than relying on utilitarian conceptions of compliance and non-compliance behaviour, which can lead to inappropriate tool choices difficult to alter once in place (Weaver 2009a, 2009b; Braithwaite 2003; Schneider and Sidney 2009; Chatterton and Wilson 2014; Pierce et al. 2014).

Beyond a Compliance-Deterrence Logic in Policy Design: Contemporary Challenges to the Utilitarian Foundations of Policy Formulation and Design

As the previous chapters have outlined, the immediate aim of most public policy is to invoke behavioural change in some elements of the population in order to have them comply with government goals. This is done for many reasons, be it promotion of public safety through sanctions on criminal behaviour or the reduction of health-care expenses by encouraging healthy living. If perfect compliance of targets with governments aims occurred automatically, of course, there would be little purpose in undertaking state activity beyond providing the targeted populations with information about government goals so that the expected behaviour could then simply occur. Since this rarely, if ever, happens, much policy activity, both in terms of policy formulation and implementation, is about designing programmes and invoking policy tools which can encourage behaviour in the direction desired by government and discourage it in others.

In other words, compliant target behaviour is expected to be achieved through the expenditure of governing resources in the form of the deployment of specific combinations of substantive and procedural policy tools which are aimed at modifying or redirecting specific kinds of behaviour towards that which is congruent with government goals, aims and ambitions (Anderson 1977; Baldwin 1985). In most circumstances, this means that a substantial part of government policy formulation and design activity is to determine whether or not a target is likely to comply with an intended government action and intention and whether such compliance will be reluctantly or freely given and by whom (Scholz 1991). Desired changes can be large or small, and the expectation of compliance can be rapid or gradual. But in all cases, some changes in behaviour in a direction congruent with government aims from some groups of actors is expected to result from the utilization of state resources in policy tool deployment.

Why compliance is not always forthcoming, even when the deployment of government tools and resources occurs, is thus a key question in the policy sciences, one which can be addressed through efforts to better understand the behavioural underpinnings and conditions of successful and failed policies and the study of the kinds of designs and activities which have proven more likely to attain success with minimal effort and expenditure (Feeley 1970; Mulford and Etzioni 1978).

The Utilitarian Roots of Much Policy Design Thinking: Compliance-Deterrence Logics in Policymaking

Much policy design thinking has been informed by a utilitarian way of thinking about public policy compliance, one which has been generally pervasive in the policy sciences from the very founding of the discipline (Tribe 1972; Banfield 1977; Shafir et al. 1993). The notions of government legitimacy and the 'compliance-deterrence logic' associated with this orientation towards compliance continue to dominate the discipline, despite the emergence of more nuanced thinking about these subjects in recent years, linked to the rise of behavioural economics (Oliver 2015).

In their original 'compliance-deterrence' form, legitimate taxes and rules are often simply expected to be paid and obeyed by the majority of citizens and targets, with penalties and fines established to punish non-compliance in such a way as to 'deter' a minority of noncompliers and prevent the spread of any unwanted and illegitimate scofflaw and evasive free-rider behaviour to the majority (Doern and Phidd 1983). Utility calculations were extended to the calibration of penalties and fines, with these set at such a level as to discourage or punish those who might

contest the legitimacy of government actions or seek to evade compliance (Lowi 1966; Balch 1980).

This approach relied on several traditional utilitarian presuppositions, such as the presence of perfect information and reciprocal risk and benefit valuations on the part of policy targets, which are difficult to sustain in practice. And even in theory, some aspects of this approach have been undermined in recent years by developments associated with the findings of behavioural economics and the translation of these insights into the policy sciences (Thaler and Sunstein 2009; Selinger and Whyte 2012; Liu et al. 2014). This approach has questioned many traditional utilitarian presuppositions and led to the articulation of different kinds of policy analysis and design principles associated with the design of 'choice architectures', such as emphasizing the important role played by behaviours such as framing or the manipulation of defaults in affecting levels of compliance (Room 2013; John et al. 2009).

As is well known, this approach has promoted the design and adoption of a different set of tools than those linked to traditional compliance-deterrence logics. These tools are linked to modest behavioural modification through the provision of 'nudges' and other types of cues which can engender almost subliminal compliance with government intentions by, for example, squeezing highway warning lines together to encourage braking by providing the appearance of greater speed than in reality (Thaler et al. 2010; Liu et al. 2014; Lehner et al. 2016).

While this latter work disputes the idea of the presence of 'perfect rationality' among policy targets, which often implicitly colours utilitarian analyses, it still accepts uncritically most of the hedonic assumptions of such thinking. That is, even in most behaviourally inspired analyses, 'subjects' are still seen to be motivated to promote pleasure and avoid pain and do so in an essentially calculating 'cost-benefit' fashion when confronted with the choice of rewards or penalties associated with whether or not they comply with government measures (Steg et al. 2014), although they may not necessarily be able to do so with perfect information or knowledge.

Other policy-relevant studies, however, have long recognized that the compliance of policy targets with government intentions is a much more difficult problem than these utilitarian-inspired approaches assume, one which requires a different behavioural logic beyond classical compliance-deterrence or newer 'nudge' models (Meier and Morgan 1982). Empirical studies of the degree of compliance of targets with the exercise of coercive authority on the part of governments in the form of the creation and imposition of tools and instruments such as laws, regulations and taxes, for example, found this behaviour to involve a normative component as well as a utilitarian one (May 2004). And some governments, of course, have devoted much time and energy to 'social marketing' or the use of enhanced appeals to collective identities and social mores (such as altruistic or non-altruistic corporate social responsibility [CSR] voluntary codes) with the expectation that increased and improved compliance can be achieved at modest or less cost by using different instruments from traditional control-deterrence linked 'command and control' regulation (6 et al. 2010; John 2013a; Dolan et al. 2012; Tallontire 2007; Steurer 2009; Campbell 2012).

Thus, government efforts such as raising tax revenues or enforcing regulations were found by Hofman et al. (2014) and others to involve a moral and ethical dimension beyond the individual. That is, they were found to involve a private-public collective action problem in that in order to be effective, actions taken by governments on the part of the general public, such as levying taxes to pay for services, require a prior belief on the part of targets that the use of coercion to set and collect such taxes is legitimate and that it is in the self-interest of citizens to pay them whether or not they directly benefit from the expenditures which resulted from this activity (Hofman et al. 2014). Similarly, many studies found persuasion and education provided superior compliance

results to fines and penalties in areas such as farming practices and construction, among others (May and Winter 1999).

Both these groups of studies showed the compliance situation to be a more complex one than a purely utilitarian perspective focused on deterrence would have it. That is, even the most basic activities of governance, such as collecting taxes and ensuring laws and rules are obeyed, involve not just individual hedonic behaviour but considerations on the part of targets and the public of issues such as the legality and normative 'appropriateness' of government activity and rule enforcement, among other things (March and Olsen 1989). These can include, for example, considerations of the legitimacy and illegitimacy of government actors and actions in specific fields such as constitutional, religious or privacy-related ones but can also run into and involve the desires on the part of individuals and groups to earn praise, avoid shame or avoid guilt and social opprobrium for their actions, among other things (Cialdini and Goldstein 2004; Beetham 1991; Weber 1978; Hofmann et al. 2014).

Moreover, another group of studies has also shown that different kinds of target groups and individuals exist or are perceived to exist in terms of government expectations of the nature of their compliant or noncompliant behaviours and can be and are treated differently by governments in their policy designs. These different groups of targets have different resources, capabilities and attitudes which affect whether or not they will comply and how and to what extent they will not.

These attitudes and behaviours can be quite complex and rooted in historical and culturally specific views of government intentions and the moral and other aspects of the appropriateness of compliant and noncompliant behaviour (Wan et al. 2014, 2015). This variation in target structure, motivation and compliance behaviour makes policy design a much more challenging activity than a simple hedonic utilitarian perspective would have it. It is an even more complex situation than behavioural economics would have it as even behaviourally inspired 'rules' of semi-rational economic calculations are not enough to capture all the considerations of cultural and psychological appropriateness cited in this chapter (Knetsch 2011; Koh 2011).

Governments, of course, have more tools at their disposal than just authority-based ones and thus have a range of options available both to implement policy and to promote compliance, including those linked to education and persuasion of targets in addition to the exercise of coercion (Hawkins and Thomas 1989; Hood 1986). This makes policy design much more complex than when viewed as a simple compliance-deterrence problem. That is, targets can be influenced to behave 'appropriately' and comply with government wishes through many means in addition to fines and penalties, such as financial incentives as well as efforts at moral suasion and education, which governments may have in higher or lower levels of supply (McLeod et al. 2015; Hood 1983). And some of these effects are quite subtle. Hence, for example, Kallgren et al. (2000) and de Groot and Schuitema (2012) note the manner in which norm compliance can be affected by the type of 'message' sent urging compliance, including its negative or positive nature, as well as other factors linked to the character of the underlying norm the message relies on (see also Schultz et al. 2007).

Reconceptualizing Target Behaviour and Policy Design Imperatives

Understanding whether a proposed action is likely to trigger behavior linked to 'affiliation' or 'conformity' with government wishes or will result in various kinds of non-compliance behaviour from outright disobedience to 'boomerang' effects encouraging the action policies are aimed at discouraging, or vice versa, is a critical aspect of design work and should be a key criterion for policy tool evaluation and deployment (Cialdini and Goldstein 2004; Cialdini et al. 2006).

Nevertheless, despite this evidence and these concerns, the utilitarian viewpoint has only been seriously challenged in the policy sciences in relatively few instances when it has been undeniably apparent that target behaviour is motivated by considerations other than utility. This is the case, for example, when the logics of appropriateness clearly dominate those of calculation in displays of patriotism or religiously inspired altruistic or resistant activity to, for example, war and military service (March and Olson 1989, 2004; Tyler 1990, 2013). Or when the continuance of clearly self-destructive behaviour such as drug, alcohol or smoking addictions, despite prohibitions up to and including death penalties and long prison sentences, prove difficult to explain, let alone correct, using a purely utilitarian framework (Vimpani 2005; McGoldrick and Boonn 2010). Empirically, however, holding such a position has become increasingly difficult as consideration and plans for 'nudging' and other aspects, behavioural psychology to policymaking, have served to undermine the utilitarian paradigm and help bring a new nonutilitarian focus to contemporary policy studies (Thaler and Sunstein 2009).

The same is also true of the recent employment of policy tools such as co-production or faith-based public service delivery (Alford 1998; Hula et al. 2007; Kissane 2007; Zehavi 2008) and, to a lesser extent, in areas affected by the 'social marketing' efforts discussed earlier (Pykett et al. 2014). These have also undermined confidence in the ability of utilitarian models to capture critical aspects of target behaviour responsible for participation in, and compliance with, government schemes and intentions and have led to more efforts to better understand these phenomena and build them into policy designs. This is the case, for example, with efforts to use information-based tools or moral suasion to try to convince citizens to do their duty and refrain from, for instance, littering (Grasmick et al. 1991; John 2013b); to 'do the right thing' in giving up their seats on public transportation to pregnant women, the disabled, the elderly and others less fortunate than themselves; or, as we have seen, to pay their taxes (Stanbury and Fulton 1984; Bardach 1989; Torgler 2004; Corner and Randall 2011) or engage in time-consuming volunteer work with the elderly or parent-teacher associations (Pestoff et al. 2006; Voorberg 2014; Alford 1998).

Such approaches have been especially significant in some jurisdictions in recent years, often displacing the deployment of regulation and financial incentives, such as the emphasis on behavioural modification through social marketing and 'nudges' developed by the Blair government in the UK after 2008 (Chatterton and Wilson 2014). Although some analyses of co-production tools try to link their success and failure to issues such as 'ability' or 'capacity to comply', which reintroduces the idea of utilitarianism, albeit in modified form, as capability deficits are said to prevent more straightforward hedonic compliance situations from emerging (Winter and May 2001; Corner and Randall 2011; Chatterton and Wilson 2014; McLeod et al. 2015), this work has not been successful in explaining why people take on voluntary labour or why some do and some don't. Consideration of these tools, which rely on an entirely different set of information- or organization-based resources and behavioural motivations for their effectiveness, along with a very different way of thinking about policy target compliance than typically found in discussions of the use of financial or authority-based ones, is in order in a nonutilitarian policy design world (Hood 1986).

Changing Conceptions of the Nature of the Policy Tools-Compliance Relationship

Notwithstanding these latter concerns, recent activity on the part of many governments experimenting with new tools and techniques such as nudging and co-production (Jordan et al. 2003) have not only raised questions about the accuracy of the assumptions of self-interested utility

maximization that underlie many existing and proposed policy designs and which have dominated the academic discourse on these subjects, but have also led to new thinking in this area (DiMento 1989; Kahneman 1994; Jones et al. 2011).

This is not to say that existing work done to date on target motivations and policy implementation is not useful or cannot help develop a better understanding of policy instrument design and choice. Rather, it is to argue that what is needed in the policy formulation, design and implementation processes is a better, more systematic and empirically robust and supportable linkage of the expected behaviour of policy targets to the full range of policy tools available. This is more than simply a scholarly preoccupation with motivational assumptions, as policy design should not be limited by, or focus upon, unproven behavioural presuppositions which might artificially restrict consideration of what could prove to be very effective policy instruments in dealing with complex problems (Chatterton and Wilson 2014).

The need to move beyond pure utilitarianism or, rather, to return to suppler, earlier notions of target behaviour has become increasingly apparent in recent years as governments around the globe have moved to pursue new kinds of policy mixes to address continuing problems such entrenched poverty, homelessness, drug addiction, crime and many others which have eschewed rapid resolution and undermined utilitarian thinking about tools and targets. These efforts have cast doubt on orthodox views of compliance and the motivations of target behaviour. Poor experiences with even alternative tools, however, have also prompted a rethinking of the relationship between policy tools and behaviour and the need for better and more evidence-informed design (Howlett 2014; Moseley and Stoker 2013).

This work has focused on better understanding both the 'supply' and 'demand' sides of policy tools and incorporating this knowledge into a better understanding of policy formulation and design (Howlett and Mukherjee 2017).

Better Understanding Policy Tools and Governing Resources: The Supply Side of Policy Design

On the supply side, some congruence between tool characteristics and target behaviour must exist in order for there to be any impact at all from the deployment of governing tools. Taxonomies of policy tools generated in earlier eras (Tupper and Doern 1981; Hood 1986; Vedung 1998; Howlett 2000) helped shed light on this relationship by clarifying how the nature of the governing or 'statecraft' resources employed by different types of tools in their deployment affected behaviour (Hood 1995, 1991; Dunleavy and Hood 1994; Riker 1983, 1986; Dunsire 1993; Salamon 2002).

Previous chapters have outlined the overall range of policy tools available to governments, including both the 'substantive' instrument traditionally examined by economists and a range of less economically oriented 'procedural' ones (Howlett 2000), which can be used to affect interest groups and other actor behaviour and highlight the utility of the model put forward by Hood (1986). Following Anderson (1977), Hood grouped tools into a small number of categories according to whether they rely on the use of 'nodality' (or information), authority, treasure or the organizational resources of government for their effectiveness (see Table 6.1). Thus, information-based instruments can facilitate the provision of information as well as suppress it and can involve the release of misleading as well as accurate information (Mueller 1973; Saward 1992).

Hood's idea was that each basic category of tool relied on a particular different kind of governing resource and that one of the main reasons one tool would be chosen over another was supply oriented: that is, that a government would utilize specific kinds of tools deploying the resources it had in ample supply or which could be easily replenished (Hood 1983).

Incorporating Compliance: The Demand Side of Policy Design

This is an important insight. However, as the discussion here has shown, in addition to capacity issues, 'demand-side' considerations are also very significant in policy design. That is, in general, each category of tool involves the use of a specific governing resource, but this resource use is expected to trigger or lever a specific characteristic or receptor in targets, inducing a certain behavioural response. Thus, the effectiveness of the deployment of such tools is linked not just to resource availability – a precondition of their use – but also to the existence of different 'receptors' on the part of policy targets, which make them respond in a predictable way to the use of this resource when deployed.

In the case of information use, for example, tool effectiveness relies on both the availability of knowledge and the means to distribute it ('resources') and also on the target's belief in the accuracy of the messages being purveyed, or their credibility ('receptor'). Similarly, the effectiveness of the use of authoritative tools, as discussed earlier, depends not just on the availability of coercive mechanisms and their enforcement but also on target perceptions of government legitimacy. Similarly, the effective use of treasure resources depends not just on the availability of government funding but also on target group financial need and especially their receptivity to government funding or their cupidity. Likewise, the effective use of organizational tools depends on the existence of personnel and other organizational resource and also on target group perceptions of government competence and fairness in the deployment and training of personnel to provide services and rules.

Table 6.1 presents a model of the behavioural prerequisites which governing tools rely on for the effect.

Table 6.1 Behavioural Needs for Resource Effectiveness

Tool Type	*Statecraft Resource Applied*	*Target Behavioural Prerequisite*
Nodality	Information	Credibility/Trust – willingness to believe and act on information provided by government
Authority	Coercive Power/Force	Legitimacy – willingness to be manipulated by government-invoked penalties and proscriptions
Treasure	Financial	Cupidity – willingness to be manipulated by gain/losses imposed by governments
Organization	Organization	Competence – willingness to receive goods and services from government and enter into partnership arrangements

Source: Howlett (2011)

These are important considerations in policy design and especially in the calibration of policy tools. Thus, the use of authority-based tools such as laws and regulations, for example, involves considerations of legitimacy on the part of targets but must not overreach or overburden the extent of legitimacy which a government enjoys (Suchman 1995; Hanberger 2003). If a policy measure does so, it most assuredly will require much monitoring and enforcement activity in order to be even minimally effective, involving large administrative costs and burdens which may well undermine its own efficiency and effectiveness considerations, as has occurred in the past in many countries in areas such as marijuana or alcohol prohibition (Issalys 2005).

The same nonutilitarian behavioural logic extends to the use of taxes and subsidies, although the behavioural characteristics of treasure-based policy tools is not the same as for authority-based ones. That is, such tools achieve their ends not through a legitimacy-coercion matrix

of encouragement and deterrence but through the willingness of subjects to be manipulated, more or less voluntarily, by financial incentives and disincentives (Surrey 1970; Woodside 1979). These tools will only be as effective if those targets are willing to accept financial awards or penalties from governments and alter their behaviour accordingly (Braithwaite 2013). Calibrations of the settings of such tools are often claimed to be undertaken on a purely utilitarian basis, but the extent of cupidity or greed on the part of policy targets varies dramatically by group and subject matter as governments discover whenever they attempt, for example, to discourage cigarette and tobacco use or obesity by discouraging consumption through raising excise taxes on harmful products while reducing them on others (Gullberg and Skodvin 2011; Coffman et al. 2016). Such actions may work in some cases and products or among some groups, like the elderly in the case of tobacco control, but fail in others, such as young women and younger people in general (Studlar 2002).

This is also true of the use and effectiveness of the deployment of information. As the poor experiences of the application of some of the insights of behavioural economics and psychology to policymaking in the form of 'nudges' or informational cues shows, consideration by targets of the credibility of messages sent and received and the willingness of targets to trust their contents and promises are critical to what type and extent of behavioural response will ensue (Weiss and Tschirhart 1994). This is true, to give only one example, of many different public information and marketing campaigns in the areas of obesity and the ingestion of dangerous products which utilize this resource (Kersh 2015; Padberg 1992). Again, design in this area involves a subtle effort to match resource expenditure and target behaviour. Although some treatments of these information tools still base their analysis on behavioural assumptions in which manipulation is sometimes expected to follow government cues unthinkingly ('nudges'), this underestimates the impact of trust and credibility of the information sent and received, and 'libertarian paternalism' (Sunstein 2015) may well undermine these efforts at persuasion by leading to a general distrust of government (Jones et al. 2014; Wilkinson 2013; Mols et al. 2015; Galizzi 2014; Momsen and Stoerk 2014; Carter 2015). Efforts at 'social marketing' discussed earlier also feature the use of these informational or 'nodality' tools (Hood 1986), ones that appeal directly to sentiments of collective solidarity and the moral duty of citizens and groups, which invoke values well beyond those related to individual utility calculations (Corner and Randall 2011).

Efforts at 'co-production' and co-design or co-management also often aim at redesigning service delivery through various forms of partnerships in which some division of labour emerges between state and non-state actors (Pestoff et al. 2006; Voorberg 2014; Alford 1998; Braithwaite and Levi 2003). These forms of service delivery are organizational tools which utilize state personnel and organizational resources to directly or indirectly deliver goods and services. But, again, willingness of targets to partner in these activities, as in the case of more traditional exclusively government-based ones, requires targets to assess the competence of government agents to deliver or plan such services in a timely and appropriate way and of their ability to remain independent and autonomous in the face of such support (Howlett et al. 2017).

These are all policy tool choice challenges which are complicated by the fact that policy targets come in all shapes and flavors, from individuals with certain kinds of characteristics to organizations of various shapes and sizes, histories, backgrounds and memberships. The preferences of such individual single targets are always an issue (Lichtenstein and Slovic 2006; Unsworth and Fielding 2014), and in all but the simplest situations, governments are faced with more complex environments in which they encounter not just one but multiple actors and target groups. What works with one group or section of a group may not work as well or at all with another, and it is not unusual for a range of governing resources and tools to have to be deployed in order to deal with such complex, 'target-rich' environments (Reichardt et al. 2016).

The policy mixes or bundles of policy instruments which arise in such cases hence typically involve not only a number of tools but also a range of motivations across a range of targets. This makes the assessment of the motivational structure of a policy realm more complex and difficult. It also suggests that rather than think about compliance in the context of single target-single instrument dynamics, policy design should centre on multiple target-multiple instrument ones.

Conclusion: Better Policy Tool Choices Through Behavioural Study

Traditionally, much compliance theory in economics and elsewhere has embodied a concept of 'compliance-deterrence' (Kaine et al. 2010) based on the hedonic idea that narrow self-interest and calculable utility in enhancing pleasure and avoiding pain are the primary motivators of compliance behavior on the part of policy actors (Kaine et al. 2010; Stover and Brown 1975), with governments enhancing pain and pleasure in efforts to deter specific kinds of activity and encourage others. This thinking has led to many considerations of policy design focusing only on the calibrations of policy tools – such as the size of penalties or rewards – rather than on the nature of the tools themselves and whether the appropriate tool is being used to match the nature of target compliance and cooperation in the design situation.

This chapter suggests that very different and distinct behavioural patterns and motivations underlie the effectiveness of each type of policy tool, most of which are not susceptible to utilitarian calculations on the part of either targets or designers, and that matching targets and tools typically occurs in a multi-target, multi-instrument setting, which makes design itself a much more complex task than often assumed outside the corridors of government where these complexities are well known.

The fundamental design problem for governments, then, is not just determining a given governmental resource endowment and calculating the range of prison sentences or the amount of fines and subsidies to levy in some situation, based on a utilitarian compliance-deterrence logic, but rather to understand on which basis compliance is likely to occur or not with each target: that is, to what extent a government enjoys legitimacy, credibility, competence and cupidity among each targeted group.

References

6, Perri, Charlotte Fletcher-Morgan, and Leyland, Kate. "Making People More Responsible: The Blair Governments' Programme for Changing Citizens' Behaviour." *Political Studies* 58, no. 3 (June 1, 2010): 427–49.

Alford, John. "A Public Management Road Less Travelled: Clients as Co-producers of Public Services." *Australian Journal of Public Administration* 57, no. 4 (December 1, 1998): 128–137.

Anderson, Charles W. *Statecraft: An Introduction to Political Choice and Judgment* (New York: John Wiley and Sons, 1977).

Araral, Eduardo. "Policy and Regulatory Design for Developing Countries: A Mechanism Design and Transaction Cost Approach." *Policy Sciences* 47, no. 3 (2014): 289–303. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11077-013-9192-z.

Ariely, Dan. *Predictably Irrational, Revised and Expanded Edition: The Hidden Forces That Shape Our Decisions* (New York: Harper Perennial, 2010).

Balch, G. I. "The Stick, the Carrot, and Other Strategies: A Theoretical Analysis of Governmental Intervention." *Law and Policy Quarterly* 2, no. 1 (1980): 35–60.

Baldwin, D. A. *Economic Statecraft* (Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1985).

Banfield, Edward C. "Policy Science as Metaphysical Madness." In *Statesmanship and Bureaucracy*, edited by Robert A. Goldwin, 1–35 (Washington, DC: American Enterprise Institute for Public Policy, 1977).

Bardach, E. "Moral Suasion and Taxpayer Compliance." *Law Policy* 11, no. 1 (1989): 49–69.

Bason, Christian. *Design for Policy*. Farnham, Surrey; Burlington, VT: Gower Pub Co, 2014.

Beetham, D. *The Legitimation of Power* (London: Macmillan, 1991).
Boswell, Christina. "The Double Life of Targets in Public Policy: Disciplining and Signaling in UK Asylum Policy." *Public Administration* (October 1, 2014): n/a–n/a.
Braithwaite, John. *Inequality, Crime and Public Policy* (Abingdon, UK: Routledge, 2013).
Braithwaite, V. A., ed. *Taxing Democracy: Understanding Tax Avoidance and Evasion* (Aldershot, Hants; Burlington, VT: Ashgate Pub Ltd, 2003).
Braithwaite, Valerie, and Margaret Levi, eds. *Trust and Governance* (New York: Russell Sage Foundation Publications, 2003).
Campbell, Bonnie. "Corporate Social Responsibility and Development in Africa: Redefining the Roles and Responsibilities of Public and Private Actors in the Mining Sector." *Resources Policy* 37, no. 2 (June 2012): 138–143.
Carter, Eric D. "Making the Blue Zones: Neoliberalism and Nudges in Public Health Promotion." *Social Science & Medicine*. Accessed January 16, 2015.
Chatterton, Tim, and Charlie Wilson. "The 'Four Dimensions of Behaviour' Framework: A Tool for Characterizing Behaviours to Help Design Better Interventions." *Transportation Planning and Technology* 37, no. 1 (January 2, 2014): 38–61. https://doi.org/10.1080/03081060.2013.850257.
Cialdini, Robert B., Linda J. Demaine, Brad J. Sagarin, Daniel W. Barrett, Kelton Rhoads, and Patricia L. Winter. "Managing Social Norms for Persuasive Impact." *Social Influence* 1, no. 1 (March 1, 2006): 3–15.
Cialdini, Robert B., and Noah J. Goldstein. "Social Influence: Compliance and Conformity." *Annual Review of Psychology* 55, no. 1 (2004): 591–621.
Coffman, Makena, Sherilyn Wee, Carl Bonham, and Germaine Salim. "A Policy Analysis of Hawaii's Solar Tax Credit." *Renewable Energy* 85 (January 2016): 1036–1043. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.renene.2015.07.061.
Corner, Adam, and Alex Randall. "Selling Climate Change? The Limitations of Social Marketing as a Strategy for Climate Change Public Engagement." *Global Environmental Change* 21, no. 3 (August 2011): 1005–1014.
de Groot, Judith I. M., and Geertje Schuitema. "How to Make the Unpopular Popular? Policy Characteristics, Social Norms and the Acceptability of Environmental Policies." *Environmental Science & Policy* 19–20 (May 2012): 100–107.
DiMento, J. F. "Can Social Science Explain Organizational Noncompliance with Environmental Law?" *Journal of Social Issues* 45, no. 1 (1989): 109–132.
Doern, G. B., and R. W. Phidd. *Canadian Public Policy: Ideas, Structure, Process* (Toronto: Methuen, 1983).
Dolan, P., M. Hallsworth, D. Halpern, D. King, R. Metcalfe, and I. Vlaev. "Influencing Behaviour: The Mindspace Way." *Journal of Economic Psychology* 33, no. 1 (February 2012): 264–277. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.joep.2011.10.009.
Duesberg, Stefanie, Áine Ní Dhubháin, and Deirdre O'Connor. "Assessing Policy Tools for Encouraging Farm Afforestation in Ireland." *Land Use Policy* 38 (May 2014): 194–203.
Dunleavy, Patrick, and Christopher Hood. "From Old Public Administration to New Public Management." *Public Money and Management* 14, no. 3 (1994): 9–16.
Dunsire, Andrew. *Manipulating Social Tensions: Collaboration as an Alternative Mode of Government Intervention* (Koln: Max Plank Institut fur Gesellschaftsforschung Discussion Paper 93/7, 1993).
Etienne, Julien. "Compliance Theory: A Goal Framing Approach." *Law & Policy* 33, no. 3 (July 1, 2011): 305–333.
Feeley, Malcolm. "Coercion and Compliance: A New Look at an Old Problem." *Law & Society Review* 4, no. 4 (May 1, 1970): 505–519.
Galizzi, Matteo M. "What Is Really Behavioral in Behavioral Health Policy? and Does It Work?" *Applied Economic Perspectives and Policy* 36, no. 1 (March 1, 2014): 25–60.
Ghosh, Atish R., Jonathan D. Ostry, and Marcos Chamon. "Two Targets, Two Instruments: Monetary and Exchange Rate Policies in Emerging Market Economies." *Journal of International Money and Finance* 60, no. 1 (2016): 172–196. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jimonfin.2015.03.005.
Grabosky, P. N. "Using Non-Governmental Resources to Foster Regulatory Compliance." *Governance* 8, no. 4 (1995): 527–550.
Grasmick, Harold G., Robert J. Bursik, and Karyl A. Kinsey. "Shame and Embarrassment as Deterrents to Noncompliance with the Law The Case of an Antilittering Campaign." *Environment and Behavior* 23, no. 2 (January 3, 1991): 233–251. https://doi.org/10.1177/0013916591232006.
Gullberg, Anne Therese, and Tora Skodvin. "Cost Effectiveness and Target Group Influence in Norwegian Climate Policy." *Scandinavian Political Studies* 34, no. 2 (June 1, 2011): 123–142. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1467-9477.2011.00266.x.

Hanberger, A. "Public Policy and Legitimacy: A Historical Policy Analysis of the Interplay of Public Policy and Legitimacy." *Policy Sciences* 36 (2003): 257–258.

Hawkins, K., and J. M. Thomas. "Making Policy in Regulatory Bureaucracies." In *Making Regulatory Policy*, edited by K. Hawkins and J.M. Thomas, 3–30 (Pittsburgh: University of Pittsburgh Press, 1989).

Hofmann, Eva, Katharina Gangl, Erich Kirchler, and Jennifer Stark. "Enhancing Tax Compliance Through Coercive and Legitimate Power of Tax Authorities By Concurrently Diminishing or Facilitating Trust in Tax Authorities: Enhancing Tax Compliance." *Law & Policy* 36, no. 3 (July 2014): 290–313.

Hood, C. "Using Bureaucracy Sparingly." *Public Administration* 61, no. 2 (1983): 197–208.

Hood, Christopher. "Contemporary Public Management: A New Global Paradigm?" *Public Policy and Administration* 10, no. 2 (1995): 104–117.

Hood, Christopher. "A Public Management for All Seasons?" *Public Administration* 69, no. Spring (1991): 3–19.

Hood, Christopher. *The Tools of Government* (Chatham, NJ: Chatham House, 1986).

Howlett, M. "Managing the 'Hollow State': Procedural Policy Instruments and Modern Governance." *Canadian Public Administration* 43, no. 4 (2000): 412–431.

Howlett, Michael. *Designing Public Policies: Principles and Instruments* (New York: Routledge, 2011). http://www.routledge.com/books/details/9780415781336/.

Howlett, Michael. "Why Are Policy Innovations Rare and so Often Negative? Blame Avoidance and Problem Denial in Climate Change Policy-Making." *Global Environmental Change* 2014. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.gloenvcha.2013.12.009.

Howlett, Michael, Anka Kekez, and Ora Poocharoen. "Understanding Co-Production as a Policy Tool: Integrating New Public Governance and Comparative Policy Theory." *Journal of Comparative Policy Analysis: Research and Practice* 0, no. 0 (March 1, 2017): 1–15.

Howlett, Michael, and Ishani Mukherjee. *Handbook of Policy Formulation*. Cheltenham: Edward Elgar, 2017.

Hula, Richard, Cynthia Jackson-Elmoore, and Laura Reese. "Mixing God's Work and the Public Business: A Framework for the Analysis of Faith-Based Service Delivery." *Review of Policy Research* 24, no. 1 (2007): 67–89.

Issalys, P. "Choosing among Forms of Public Action: A Question of Legitimacy." In *Designing Government: From Instruments to Governance*, edited by P. Eliadis, M. Hill, and M. Howlett, 154–181 (Montreal: McGill-Queen's University Press, 2005).

John, Peter, Graham Smith, and Gerry Stoker. "Nudge Nudge, Think Think: Two Strategies for Changing Civic Behaviour." *The Political Quarterly* 80, no. 3 (July 1, 2009): 361–370.

John, Peter. "All Tools Are Informational Now: How Information and Persuasion Define the Tools of Government." *Policy & Politics* 41, no. 4 (October 1, 2013a): 605–620. https://doi.org/10.1332/030557312X655729.

John, Peter. "Experimentation, Behaviour Change and Public Policy." *The Political Quarterly* 84, no. 2 (2013b): 238–246. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1467-923X.2013.12010.x.

Jones, Rhys, Jessica Pykett, and Mark Whitehead. *Changing Behaviours: On the Rise of the Psychological State* (Cheltenham: Edward Elgar Pub, 2014).

Jones, Rhys, Jessica Pykett, and Mark Whitehead. "Governing Temptation: Changing Behaviour in an Age of Libertarian Paternalism." *Progress in Human Geography* 35, no. 4 (August 1, 2011): 483–501.

Jordan, A., R. K. W. Wurzel, and A. R. Zito. *"New" Instruments of Environmental Governance: National Experiences and Prospects* (London: Frank Cass, 2003).

Kahneman, Daniel. "New Challenges to the Rationality Assumption." *Journal of Institutional and Theoretical Economics (JITE)/Zeitschrift Für Die Gesamte Staatswissenschaft* 150, no. 1 (March 1, 1994): 18–36.

Kaine, Geoff, Helen Murdoch, Ruth Lourey, and Denise Bewsell. "A Framework for Understanding Individual Response to Regulation." *Food Policy* 35, no. 6 (December 2010): 531–537.

Kallgren, Carl A., Raymond R. Reno, and Robert B. Cialdini. "A Focus Theory of Normative Conduct: When Norms Do and Do Not Affect Behavior." *Personality and Social Psychology Bulletin* 26, no. 8 (October 1, 2000): 1002–1012.

Kersh, R. "Of Nannies and Nudges: The Current State of U.S. Obesity Policymaking." *Public Health* (July 27, 2015).

Kissane, Rebecca Joyce. "How Do Faith-Based Organizations Compare to Secular Providers? Nonprofit Directors' and Poor Women's Assessments of FBOs." *Journal of Poverty* 11, no. 4 (2007): 91–115.

Knetsch, Jack. "Behavioural Economics, Policy Analysis and the Design of Regulatory Reform." In *Behavioural Economics and Policy Design*, edited by Donald Low, 161–182 (Singapore: Co-Published with Civil Service College Singapore, 2011).

Koh, Tsin Yen. "Key Ideas in Behavioural Economics–and What They Mean for Policy Design." In *Behavioural Economics and Policy Design*, edited by Donald Low, 17–34 (Singapore: Co-Published with Civil Service College Singapore, 2011).

Lehner, Matthias, Oksana Mont, and Eva Heiskanen. "Nudging: A Promising Tool for Sustainable Consumption Behaviour?" *Journal of Cleaner Production* (2016). Accessed December 15, 2015.

Lewis, Miranda. *States of Reason: Freedom, Responsibility and the Governing of Behaviour Change*. Illustrated edition (London: Institute for Public Policy Research, 2007).

Lichtenstein, Sarah, and Paul Slovic. *The Construction of Preference*. (Cambridge; New York: Cambridge University Press, 2006).

Liu, Peggy J., Jessica Wisdom, Christina A. Roberto, Linda J. Liu, and Peter A. Ubel. "Using Behavioral Economics to Design More Effective Food Policies to Address Obesity." *Applied Economic Perspectives and Policy* 36, no. 1 (March 1, 2014): 6–24.

Lowi, Theodore J. "Distribution, Regulation, Redistribution: The Functions of Government." In *Public Policies and Their Politics: Techniques of Government Control*, edited by Randall B. Ripley, 27–40 (New York: W.W. Norton, 1966).

Lynn, Laurence E., Jr. "The Behavioral Foundations of Public Policy-Making." *The Journal of Business* 59, no. 4 (October 1, 1986): S379–S384.

March, J. G., and J. P. Olsen. *Rediscovering Institutions: The Organizational Basis of Politics*. New York: The Free Press, 1989.

March, J. G., and J. P. Olsen. "The Logic of Appropriateness." Oslo: ARENA Working Paper, 2004.

Maskin, Eric S. "Mechanism Design: How to Implement Social Goals." *The American Economic Review* 98, no. 3 (June 1, 2008): 567–576.

May, Peter J. "Compliance Motivations: Affirmative and Negative Bases." *Law & Society Review* 38, no. 1 (2004): 41–68.

May, Peter J., and S. Winter. "Regulatory Enforcement and Compliance: Examining Danish Agro-Environmental Policy." *Journal of Policy Analysis and Management* 18, no. 4 (1999): 625–651.

McGoldrick, Daniel E., and Ann V. Boonn. "Public Policy to Maximize Tobacco Cessation." *American Journal of Preventive Medicine* 38, no. 3, Supplement 1 (March 2010): S327–S332.

McLeod, Lynette J., Donald W. Hine, Patricia M. Please, and Aaron B. Driver. "Applying Behavioral Theories to Invasive Animal Management: Towards an Integrated Framework." *Journal of Environmental Management* 161 (September 15, 2015): 63–71.

Meier, Kenneth J., and David R. Morgan. "Citizen Compliance with Public Policy: The National Maximum Speed Law." *The Western Political Quarterly* 35, no. 2 (June 1, 1982): 258–273.

Mols, Frank, S. Alexander Haslam, Jolanda Jetten, and Niklas K. Steffens. "Why a Nudge Is Not Enough: A Social Identity Critique of Governance by Stealth." *European Journal of Political Research* 54, no. 1 (2015): 81–98.

Momsen, Katharina, and Thomas Stoerk. "From Intention to Action: Can Nudges Help Consumers to Choose Renewable Energy?" *Energy Policy* 74 (November 2014): 376–382.

Moseley, Alice, and Gerry Stoker. "Nudging Citizens? Prospects and Pitfalls Confronting a New Heuristic." *Resources, Conservation and Recycling, SI: Resourceful Behaviours* 79 (October 2013): 4–10.

Mueller, Claus. *The Politics of Communication: A Study in the Political Sociology of Language, Socialization and Legitimation* (New York: Oxford University Press, 1973).

Mulford, C. L., and A. Etzioni. "Why They Don't Even When They Ought to: Implications of Compliance Theory for Policymakers." In *Policy Research*, 47–62. Leiden: E.J. Brill, 1978.

Mulgan, Geoff. *The Art of Public Strategy: Mobilizing Power and Knowledge for the Common Good* (Oxford; New York: Oxford University Press, 2008).

Oliver, Adam. "Nudging, Shoving, and Budging: Behavioural Economic-Informed Policy." *Public Administration* (March 1, 2015): n/a–n/a. doi:10.1111/padm.12165.

Padberg, D. I. "Nutritional Labeling as a Policy Instrument." *American Journal of Agricultural Economics* 74, no. 5 (1992): 1208–1213.

Pestoff, Victor, Stephen P. Osborne, and Taco Brandsen. "Patterns of Co-Production in Public Services." *Public Management Review* 8 (December 2006): 591–595.

Pierce, Jonathan J., Saba Siddiki, Michael D. Jones, Kristin Schumacher, Andrew Pattison, and Holly Peterson. "Social Construction and Policy Design: A Review of Past Applications." *Policy Studies Journal* 42, no. 1 (February 1, 2014): 1–29.

Pykett, Jessica, Rhys Jones, Marcus Welsh, and Mark Whitehead. "The Art of Choosing and the Politics of Social Marketing." *Policy Studies* 35, no. 2 (March 4, 2014): 97–114.

Reichardt, Kristin, Simona O. Negro, Karoline S. Rogge, and Marko P. Hekkert. "Analyzing Interdependencies Between Policy Mixes and Technological Innovation Systems: The Case of Offshore Wind in Germany." *Technological Forecasting and Social Change* 106 (May 2016): 11–21.

Riker, William H. *The Art of Political Manipulation* (New Haven, CT: Yale University Press, 1986).

Riker, William H. "Political Theory and the Art of Heresthetics." In *Political Science: The State of the Discipline*, edited by Ada W. Finifter, 47–67 (Washington, DC: American Political Science Association, 1983).

Rodgers, Harrell R. "Coercion to Compliance, Or How Great Expectations in Washington Are Actually Realized at the Local Level, This Being the Saga of School Desegregation in the South as Told by Two Sympathetic Observers – Lessons on Getting Things Done." 1975.

Room, Graham. "Agile Policy on Complex Terrains – Nudge or Nuzzle?" October 2, 2013. https://horizons.gc.ca/en/2013/10/01/agile-policy-on-complex-terrains-nudge-or-nuzzle/.

Salamon, Lester M., ed. *The Tools of Government: A Guide to the New Governance* (New York: Oxford University Press, 2002).

Saward, Michael. *Co-Optive Politics and State Legitimacy* (Aldershot: Dartmouth, 1992), pp. 27, 150 and 153.

Schneider, A. L., and H. Ingram. "Behavioural Assumptions of Policy Tools." *Journal of Politics* 52, no. 2 (1990): 511–529.

Schneider, A. L., and H. Ingram. "Social Construction of Target Populations: Implications for Politics and Policy." *American Political Science Review* 87, no. 2 (1993): 334–347.

Schneider, Anne L., and Helen M Ingram, eds. *Deserving and Entitled: Social Constructions and Public Policy*. SUNY Series in Public Policy. Albany: State University of New York, 2005.

Schneider, Anne, and Mara Sidney. "What Is Next for Policy Design and Social Construction Theory?" *Policy Studies Journal* 37, no. 1 (2009): 103–119.

Scholz, J. T. "Cooperative Regulatory Enforcement and the Politics of Administrative Effectiveness." *American Political Science Review* 85, no. 1 (1991): 115–136.

Schultz, P. Wesley, Jessica M. Nolan, Robert B. Cialdini, Noah J. Goldstein, and Vladas Griskevicius. "The Constructive, Destructive, and Reconstructive Power of Social Norms." *Psychological Science* 18, no. 5 (May 1, 2007): 429–434.

Selinger, Evan, and Kyle Powys Whyte. "Nudging Cannot Solve Complex Policy Problems." *European Journal of Risk Regulation* 2012 (2012): 26.

Shafir, E., I. Simonson, and A. Tversky. "Reason-Based Choice." *Cognition* 49, no. 1–2 (November 1993): 11–36.

Shafir, Eldar, ed. *The Behavioral Foundations of Public Policy* (Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 2013).

Stanbury, W. T., and J. Fulton. "Suasion as a Governing Instrument." In *How Ottawa Spends 1984: The New Agenda*, edited by A. Maslove, 282–324 (Toronto: Lorimer, 1984).

Steurer, Reinhard. "The Role of Governments in Corporate Social Responsibility: Characterising Public Policies on CSR in Europe." *Policy Sciences* 43, no. 1 (May 2009): 49–72. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11077-009-9084-4.

Steg, Linda, Jan Willem Bolderdijk, Kees Keizer, and Goda Perlaviciute. "An Integrated Framework for Encouraging Pro-Environmental Behaviour: The Role of Values, Situational Factors and Goals." *Journal of Environmental Psychology* 38 (June 2014): 104–115.

Stover, Robert V., and Don W. Brown. "Understanding Compliance and Noncompliance with Law: The Contributions of Utility Theory." *Social Science Quarterly* 56, no. 3 (December 1, 1975): 363–375.

Studlar, D. T. *Tobacco Control: Comparative Politics in the United States and Canada* (Peterborough: Broadview Press, 2002).

Suchman, M. C. "Managing Legitimacy: Strategic and Institutional Approaches." *Academy of Management Review* 20, no. 3 (1995): 571–610.

Sunstein, Cass R. *Why Nudge? The Politics of Libertarian Paternalism*. Reprint edition (New Haven, CT: Yale University Press, 2015).

Surrey, Stanley S. "Tax Incentives as a Device for Implementing Government Policy: A Comparison with Direct Government Expenditures." *Harvard Law Review* 83, no. 4 (February 1, 1970): 705–738.

Tallontire, Anna. "CSR and Regulation: Towards a Framework for Understanding Private Standards Initiatives in the Agri-Food Chain." *Third World Quarterly* 28, no. 4 (2007): 775–791.

Tan, Charmaine, and Donald Low. "Incentives, Norms and Public Policy." In *Behavioural Economics and Policy Design*, edited by Donald Low, 35–49 (Singapore: Co-Published with Civil Service College Singapore, 2011).

Taylor, C. M., S. J. T. Pollard, A. J. Angus, and S. A. Rocks. "Better By Design: Rethinking Interventions for Better Environmental Regulation." *Science of the Total Environment* 447 (March 1, 2013): 488–499.

Thaler, Richard H., and Cass R. Sunstein. *Nudge: Improving Decisions About Health, Wealth, and Happiness*. Revised & Expanded edition (New York: Penguin Books, 2009).

Thaler, Richard H., Cass R. Sunstein, and John P. Balz. *Choice Architecture*. SSRN Scholarly Paper (Rochester, NY: Social Science Research Network, April 2, 2010).

Torgler, B. "Moral Suasion: An Alternative Tax Policy Strategy? Evidence from a Controlled Field Experiment in Switzerland." *Economics of Governance* 5, no. 1 (2004): 235–253.

Tribe, L. H. "Policy Science: Analysis or Ideology?" *Philosophy and Public Affairs* 2, no. 1 (1972): 66–110.

Tupper A., and G. B. Doern. "Public Corporations and Public Policy in Canada." In *Public Corporations and Public Policy in Canada*, edited by A. Tupper and G. B. Doern, 1–50 (Montreal: Institute for Research on Public Policy, 1981).

Tyler, Tom R. *Why People Cooperate: The Role of Social Motivations*. Reprint edition (Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 2013).

Tyler, Tom R. *Why People Obey the Law* (New Haven, CT: Yale University Press, 1990).

Unsworth, Kerrie L., and Kelly S. Fielding. "It's Political: How the Salience of One's Political Identity Changes Climate Change Beliefs and Policy Support." *Global Environmental Change* 27 (July 2014): 131–137.

Vedung, Evert. "Policy Instruments: Typologies and Theories." In *Carrots, Sticks and Sermons: Policy Instruments and Their Evaluation*, edited by Ray C. Rist and Evert Vedung Marie Louise Bemelmans-Videc, 21–58 (New Brunswick, NJ: Transaction Publishers, 1998).

Vimpani, G. "Getting the Mix Right: Family, Community and Social Policy Interventions to Improve Outcomes for Young People at Risk of Substance Misuse." *Drug and Alcohol Review* 24 (2005): 111–125.

Voorberg, W. H., V. J. J. M. Bekkers, and L. G. Tummers. "A Systematic Review of Co-Creation and Co-Production: Embarking on the Social Innovation Journey." *Public Management Review* 0, no. 0 (June 30, 2014): 1–25.

Wan, Calvin, Geoffrey Qiping Shen, and Ann Yu. "Key Determinants of Willingness to Support Policy Measures on Recycling: A Case Study in Hong Kong." *Environmental Science & Policy* 54 (December 2015): 409–418.

Wan, Calvin, Geoffrey Qiping Shen, and Ann Yu. "The Role of Perceived Effectiveness of Policy Measures in Predicting Recycling Behaviour in Hong Kong." *Resources, Conservation and Recycling* 83 (February 2014): 141–151.

Weaver, Kent. *But Will It Work?: Implementation Analysis to Improve Government Performance* (Washington, DC: Brookings Institution, 2010). http://www.brookings.edu/research/papers/2010/02/implementation-analysis-weaver

Weaver, Kent. "If You Build It, Will They Come? Overcoming Unforeseen Obstacles to Program Effectiveness." The Tansley Lecture – University of Saskatchewan, 2009a.

Weaver, Kent. *Target Compliance: The Final Frontier of Policy Implementation* (Washington, DC: Brookings Institution, 2009b).

Weaver, R. Kent. "Compliance Regimes and Barriers to Behavioral Change." *Governance* 27, no. 2 (April 2014): 243–265. https://doi.org/10.1111/gove.12032.

Weaver, R. Kent. "Getting People to Behave: Research Lessons for Policy Makers." *Public Administration Review* (July 1, 2015): n/a–n/a.

Weber, M. *Economy and Society* (Berkeley: University of California Press, 1978).

Weiss, Janet A., and Mary Tschirhart. "Public Information Campaigns as Policy Instruments." *Journal of Policy Analysis and Management* 13, no. 1 (1994): 82–119.

Wilkinson, T. M. "Nudging and Manipulation." *Political Studies* 61, no. 2 (June 1, 2013): 341–355.

Winter, Søren C., and Peter J. May. "Motivation for Compliance with Environmental Regulations." *Journal of Policy Analysis and Management* 20, no. 4 (2001): 675–698.

Woodside, K. "Tax Incentives vs. Subsidies: Political Considerations in Governmental Choice." *Canadian Public Policy* 5, no. 2 (1979): 248–256.

Zehavi, Amos. "The Faith-Based Initiative in Comparative Perspective: Making Use of Religious Providers in Britain and the United States." *Comparative Politics* 40, no. 3 (2008): 331–351.

7
PORTFOLIOS OF POLICY TOOLS
Types of Policy Mixes

Michael Howlett and Pablo del Rio

There are a series of questions about how exactly tools fit together, or should fit together, when a policy is enacted. In such cases, the instruments are not isolated from each other, and tools in such mixes interact, leading to the potential for negative conflicts and synergies. A second and related set of issues involves determining how many tools are required for the efficient attainment of a goal or goals. And a third set of concerns relates to how any optimum figure can be attained in practice.

Introduction: Tool Mixes and Policy Design Studies

Policy tools, or the instruments or techniques used by government in order to implement policy goals (Howlett 2005), have a special place in considerations and studies of policy design. This is because this approach is based on the preparation of plans for tool use with a reasonable chance of achieving a specific goal or target (Howlett 2004). Choosing policy tools becomes more complex when multiple goals and multiple policies are involved within the same sector and government, as is very common in many policy-making situations (Doremus 2003; Jordan et al. 2012; Howlett et al. 2009).

These latter kinds of multi-policy, multi-goal and multi-instrument mixes – what Milkman et al. (2012) call 'policy bundles', Chapman (2003) and Hennicke (2004) a 'policy mix' and Givoni et al. (2012) 'policy packages' – are examples of complex portfolios of tools. These mixes typically involve much more than functional logics linking tools to a goal but also deal with ideological or even 'aesthetic' preferences in tool choices and goal articulation, which involve trade-offs and bargaining between actors in choosing one set of tools, goals and policies over another (Williams and Balaz 1999). This makes their formulation or design especially problematic (Peters 2005; Givoni 2013; Givoni et al. 2012). Most often, the focus should move from the design of specific instruments to the appropriate design of instrument mixes. This is more difficult to do when instruments belong to different territorial/administrative levels.

Key design questions about such portfolios with which contemporary scholars and practitioners grapple include the issues of avoiding both 'over' and 'under' design (Haynes and Li 1993; Maor 2012), how to achieve 'complementarity' and avoid 'redundancy' or counterproductive mixes (Grabosky 1995; Hou and Brewer 2010; Justen et al. 2013a), how to enhance or alter mixes over time so that they are able to continue to meet old goals and take on new ones (van

 DOI: 10.4324/9781003163954-9

der Heijden 2011; Kay 2007) and how to sequence or phase in instruments over time (Taeihagh et al. 2013).

In what follows, several distinctions are drawn between mix types based on the complexity of design variables, including the number of instruments, the number of policy goals, the number of sectors and the levels of government and sectors involved in the construction and maintenance of a portfolio. It is argued that if policy design theory is to improve and better inform policy practice, then it requires a better understanding of the dimensions of these design spaces and the kinds of formulation processes which they encounter (Howlett 2011).

Problems With Existing Portfolio Analyses

Although thinking about the design of policy portfolios has been at the forefront of much current research work on policy design (Howlett 2005, 2011; Howlett and Lejano 2013), existing studies of such bundles of tools do not use consistent terminology and fail to define the dependent variable carefully enough (Howlett et al. 2006). As a result, the cumulative impact of empirical studies has not been great, theorization has lagged, and understanding of the mix phenomena, despite many observations of their significance, has not improved very much over past decades (Chapman 2003; Ring and Schroter-Schlaack 2011).

Most older literature on policy tools focused on single instrument choices and designs (Tupper and Doern 1981; Salamon 1989; Trebilcock and Prichard 1983), and these studies provide only limited insights into the complex arrangements of multiple policy instruments which are commonly found in all policy fields (Jordan et al. 2011, 2012; Givoni 2013). Many significant issues related to the manner in which tool choices in bundles are made and how tool bundles evolve over time affect the propensity for designs to avoid the twin shoals of over- and underreacting to problems (Maor 2012; Howlett and Rayner 2007) while incorporating better knowledge of both synergistic and counterproductive tool relationships and interactions (Del Rio 2010; Leplay and Thoyer 2011; Grabosky 1995; Justen et al. 2013b).

First, there are a series of questions about how exactly tools fit together, or should fit together, into a mix. In such mixes, the instruments are not isolated from each other, and tools in such mixes interact, leading to the potential for negative conflicts ('one plus one is less than two') and synergies ('one plus one is more than two') (Lecuyer and Bibas 2012; Philibert 2011). In such cases, different design principles are required to help inform portfolio structure. Here the question of tool complementarity looms large. As Tinbergen (1952) noted, additional tools – 'supplementary' or 'complementary' ones – are often required to control side effects or otherwise bolster the use of a 'primary' tool. Bundling or mixing policy tools together in complex arrangements, however, raises many difficult questions for students and practitioners when there are significant interactive effects among policy tools (Boonekamp 2006; Yi and Feiock 2012), some of which may be very difficult to anticipate or quantify using standard analytical tools (Justen et al. 2013a, 2013b).

A second and related set of issues involves determining how many tools are required for the efficient attainment of a goal or goals. This concern has animated policy design studies from their outset, and an example of an oft-cited rule in this area originating in the very early years of policy design studies is that the optimal ratio of the number of tools to targets or goals in any portfolio is 1:1 (Knudson 2009).

This is a rule-of-thumb design principle towards which Tinbergen (1952) provided some logical justification in his discussion of the information and administrative costs associated with the use of redundant tools in the area of economic policy. Most observers, however, dispute that such a simple situation was ever 'normal' and instead argue that combinations of tools are

typically found in efforts to address multiple policy goals (Jordan et al. 2012). The issue of potentially under- or overdesigning a mix arises in all such circumstances and is made more complex because in some instances, for example, arrangements may be unnecessarily duplicative while in others some redundancy may be advantageous in ensuring that goals will be met (Braathen and Croci 2005; Braathen 2007).

A third set of concerns relates to how any optimum figure can be attained in practice. This concern is less a spatial than a temporal one as the existing evidence shows that suboptimal situations are very common in many existing mixes which have developed haphazardly through processes of policy layering (Thelen 2004; van der Heijden 2011). This is a process in which new tools and objectives have been piled on top of older ones, creating a palimpsest-like mixture of quite possibly inconsistent and somewhat incoherent policy elements (Howlett and Rayner 2007; Carter 2012). These processes and change dynamics focus attention on the sequencing of instrument choices (Taeihagh et al. 2009, 2013b) and especially on the fact that many existing mixes have developed without any sense of an overall conscious design. These kinds of 'unintentional' mixes can be contrasted with 'smarter' designs which involve creating new sets of tools specifically intended to overcome or avoid the problems associated with layering but which may be harder to put into practice (Gunningham et al. 1998; Kiss et al. 2012).

In other words, intelligent design of policy mixes begins with ensuring a good fit not only between packages of tools and government goals and their institutional and behavioural contexts at a specific moment in time (Considine 2012; Lejano and Shankar 2013) but also across time periods as new instruments appear and old ones evolve or are eliminated. That is, design analyses must extend beyond questions of tool synergies and optimal design to consideration of how and why mixes change over time and how the processes of policy formulation followed in adopting such complex designs take place (Larsen et al. 2006; Kay 2007; Feindt and Flynn 2009).

Better Defining the Design Space: Vertical and Horizontal Levels of Complexity in Policy Portfolios

Most work on the subject of policy portfolio design fails to define the design space carefully enough to be able to distinguish the impact on different design choices of the spatial and temporal factors influencing the portfolio design process. Most studies, for example, fail to differentiate between simple and complex contexts and simple and complex designs and mixes (Howlett 2004; Howlett et al. 2006). But, as the earlier discussion of the Tinbergen rule illustrated, incorporating the level of complexity of a mix is an important characteristic of the problem context which principles of portfolio design must take into account. Providing a better model of policy design spaces helps reveal some important variations in terms of who makes or is capable of making design decisions, as well as on the likely content of that decision in specific contexts (Howlett 2011).

In addressing the issue of design spaces and their impact on policy designs and designing a first-order distinction must be drawn between single 'level' mixes and those with a more complex structure. That is, in addition to the 'horizontal' issue addressed by many students of policy mixes – pertaining to the kind of relationships existing between tools, goals and policies within a single level of government and sector of policymaking – a second, 'vertical' dimension is present and often ignored in these studies. This vertical dimension involves not just the number of instruments, goals and policies found in a mix, but also the number of policy sectors they involve and the number of governments active in policy formulation in this area (del Rio 2009).

Such a framework allows room for many more complex interactions between bundle elements than typically envisioned or analyzed in existing studies. That is, conflicts and synergies

between tools, goals and policies can be identified both at the horizontal level – for example, between different types of instruments and goals within each level of analysis – and/or at the vertical: that is, across and between different policy sectors and/or administrative levels. These variations have significant implications for both the number and type of actors involved in policy design and the processes through which formulation unfolds, as well as for the complexity of design itself. While some aspects of horizontal interactions can be addressed in largely technical ways – so that, for example, some conflicts can be mitigated just by selecting certain instruments over others – in more complex cases, such analyses must be supplemented by other political, administrative and organizational logics, and policy formulation processes become more difficult. These challenges are multiplied as mixes evolve over time.

That is, vertical design contexts cutting across sectors and governments require efforts aimed at achieving administrative coordination and policy integration suitable to the complexity of context, which horizontal mixes generally do not. In the former situation, relevant coordination, for example, needs to be in place between different administrative levels and across policy subsystems which are not needed in simpler horizontal contexts. The configuration of elements in a vertical mix must relate to preferences for different instruments favored in multiple sectors and governments rather than just among a single set of actors (Freeman 1985; Howlett 2009). And shifts in these preferences over time require changes to existing mixes, which may be more or less easy to achieve and require special handling or developmental techniques and analysis.

Developing a Basic Taxonomy of Policy Mixes

Developing a typology of policy mixes based on the level of complexity of design spaces is a useful first step in advancing design studies beyond their current weak status. Mixes can be assessed at a general level by identifying spaces of conflicts, complementarities and synergies between policy fields, but those interactions also depend on the type of tools being adopted and the specific design elements of the instruments adopted within those policy fields. The choice of specific instruments and design elements within interacting policy fields may contribute to mitigate conflicts and promote complementarities and synergies or not. Coordination is easier under certain instruments and design elements than under others.

The first key dimension in constructing such a taxonomy relates to distinguishing between mixes according to the number of instruments, goals and policies found within the horizontal level. Additional scenarios then exist for vertical mixes in situations in which multiple instruments and goals exist across sectors and governments. As at the horizontal level, at these levels tools and goals may complement each other while in others or in some aspects, they might not (Hull 2008; Flanagan et al. 2011).

While relatively simple mix design processes may be dominated by expert actors (Dunlop 2009) and decided on according to technical or functional criteria (Braathen 2007), moving towards multiple goals brings in additional actors such as those arrayed in 'epistemic communities' (Marier 2008) and involves more sophisticated evidence and ideas than are found in more simple contexts (Sanderson 2002). In such multi-level government and governance contexts (Hooghe and Marks 2003), different levels of government are likely to have some common but also different goals and instrument preferences (Enderlein et al. 2011), and reconciling them typically involves the use of the overt political calculus of intra- or intergovernmental bargaining and decision-making (Bolleyer and Borzel 2010; Kaiser et al. 2012).

Increasing complexity from horizontality to verticality brings in cross-sectoral or cross-national epistemic actors (Haas 1992), including political ones, and often involves the assessment and use of politically contested evidence and criteria (Gilabert and Lawford-Smith 2012). The

most sophisticated design spaces involve the most complex design processes and the full range of subsystem actors operating across multiple governance levels (McCool 1998; Hooghe and Marks 2003). Here, in a context of vested interests, lobbying pressures and intergovernmental jurisdictional disputes – fully blown political criteria such as blame avoidance, credit claiming, bargaining and log-rolling relevant information (Hood 2010) – are features of policy formulation, and designs take on new forms and patterns.

Taking these five aspects of horizontality and verticality into account, and assuming simple binary measures of complexity at each level, yields 32 possible configurations of portfolios. This complexity can be greatly reduced, however, by restricting analysis to only complex tool mixes: that is, eliminating from further analysis half the circumstances whereby only a single instrument is utilized. Combining both cross-sectoral and multi-governmental vertical elements into a single multi-level variable then reduces this to eight basic types (see Table 7.1).

In this model, mixes can be seen to range from the simplest type, when multiple tools are an issue (Type I), to the most complex multi-level, multi-policy, multi-goal type (Type VIII). Four of these eight types are 'instrument mixes' which involve single policy contexts (Types I, II, V and VI), and therefore are less complex than their multi-policy counterparts (Types III, VII and VIII), which can be termed 'policy mixes'.

Are all eight types equally likely to occur? Although much of the literature seems to suggest that Type I situations are the norm, empirical studies suggest this is not the case (Howlett et al. 2006; Hosseus and Pal 1997) and that more complex design spaces and, hence, policy portfolios are commonplace and growing. Factors such as the administrative and legislative arrangements present in federal and nonfederal systems affect the likelihood of the appearance of multi-governmental mixes (Howlett 1999; Bolleyer and Borzel 2010), while increasing efforts to promote collaborative or horizontal governance arrangements, for example, will affect the number of multi-sectoral and multi-policy situations which exist (Peters 1998; Koppenjan et al. 2009).

Design Implications Flowing From This Taxonomy

This model of mix types and design spaces helps overcome the three sets of issues raised here: how to avoid both 'over' and 'under' design, how to achieve 'complementarity' and avoid 'redundancy' or counterproductive mixes and how to enhance or alter mixes over time so that they are able to continue to meet old goals and take on new ones. Each of these issues is discussed in turn next.

Table 7.1 Basic Typology of Portfolio Designs

Types								
Dimension	*I*	*II*	*III*	*IV*	*V*	*VI*	*VII*	*VIII*
Multi-level	No	No	No	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Multi-policy	No	No	Yes	Yes	No	No	Yes	Yes
Multi-goal	No	Yes	No	Yes	No	Yes	No	Yes
	Simple single-level instrument mix	Complex single-level instrument mix	Simple single-level policy mix	Complex single-level policy mix	Simple multi-level instrument mix	Complex multi-level instrument mix	Simple multi-level policy mix	Complex multi-level policy mix

Avoiding Over- and Under-designing

Prima facie, the taxonomy set out in Table 7.1 shows that simple Tinbergen-type single-instrument, single-goal, single-policy, single-government instrument mixes represent only one of many possible types of instrument mixes. And this means that the standard Tinbergen design maxim of 'one goal-one tool', proposed as a suitable design maxim to address the issue of instrument optimality, is unlikely to be put into practice very often, and other principles need to be developed to take its place within more complex designs if over- and under-designing are to be avoided. These, to a certain extent, now have come to relate to the need to promote synergies and avoid counterproductive tools uses which were previously divorced from the optimality issue by the assumption of simpler design spaces and rules.

Avoiding Conflicts and Promoting Complementarities and Synergies in Tool Uses

When multiple tools are involved in a mix, the tools involved and invoked in a mix may be inherently contradictory (Tinbergen 1952; Grabosky 1995; Gunningham et al. 1998) in the sense that they evoke contradictory responses from policy targets (Schneider and Ingram 1990a, 1990b, 1993, 1994, 1997, 2005), while other combinations may be more virtuous in providing a reinforcing or supplementing arrangement (Hou and Brewer 2010). Although a consensus does not exist on the terms and definitions of conflicts, complementarities and synergies (Oikonomou and Jepma 2007; Oikonomou et al. 2010, 2011), nevertheless, it can be argued that the types of interaction found between tools will vary such that in some cases there will be:

> a strong conflict: where the addition of an instrument (X) leads to a reduction of the effect of a second instrument (Y) in the combination: $0 < X+Y < 1$;
> a weak conflict (partial complementarity) where the addition of an instrument to another leads to a positive effect on the combination, but lower than the one that would take place if both were used separately: $1 < X+Y < 2$;
> a situation of full complementarity where X adds fully to the effect of Y in the combination: $X+Y = 2$; and
> a situation of synergy where adding X to Y magnifies the impact of the combination: $X+Y > 2$.
>
> *(del Río 2014)*

Effective design would involve avoiding strong conflicts, minimizing weak ones and promoting complementarity and synergies.

Here the idea would be to attempt to avoid conflicts of both types while promoting tool combinations which are complementary or synergistic. While this becomes more difficult to do as the level of complexity of the design space increases, it remains a central goal of a portfolio design. It may be impossible to satisfy all assessment criteria with different instruments when more than one goal, policy or government is involved. The best way to address trade-offs and conflicts between criteria is to adopt a multi-criteria framework which makes those conflicts explicit. This allows policymakers to give weight to those criteria and decide on the trade-off according to their preferences.

Linking tools and goals is a second area in which synergies and complementarities can be sought. Criteria such as 'consistency', 'coherence', 'congruence' and level of 'integration' have been suggested as useful in this area of portfolio design (Howlett and Rayner 2007; Lanzalaco

2011; Mandell 2008; Howlett and Rayner 2007; Kern and Howlett 2009). Work on mixes in sectors such as climate change mitigation and renewable energy support (del Río González 2007, del Río et al. 2011; del Rio 2009, 2010; Boonekamp 2006) lead the way in this regard.

As del Rio (2009) has argued, design principles to promote integration in complex mixes require a broader view of the elements found in policy mixes than is typically found in the literature on the subject. That is, appropriate policy evaluation, appraisal and design cannot be conducted in a narrow context. The focus should not be on the functioning of specific instruments with respect to one specific criterion, but rather on the functioning of the whole policy mix and the conflicts and synergies with respect to several goals and criteria in this portfolio. This is a particular challenge with overlapping policies and governments. What might be regarded as conflictive in the interactions within an instrument mix might not be so problematic when a broader picture of a policy or governmental mix is considered. But both horizontal and vertical coordination are very difficult to achieve. There is certainly a role for coordination between goals and instruments to mitigate conflicts and to promote complementarities and synergies in policy mixes. But the existence of different goals at different administrative levels complicates vertical coordination. Different benefits and costs for different constituencies stemming from supranational policies may lead to low levels of social acceptability and considerations of political feasibility. Different goals may create winners and losers at lower administrative levels and thus lead to unacceptable distributional effects. All these factors must enter into design considerations.

Promoting Patching as Well as Packing in Portfolio Design

Finally, there is the issue of temporality and how to handle it. Considerations on how to overcome temporal legacies in existing portfolios range from thinking about designing in a situation which Thelen (2003) describes as 'replacement' – that is, one in which design occurs de novo, and all previous regime elements have been swept away or do not exist – and in situations characterized by 'layering' – in which design occurs within the context of difficult-to-remove policy elements (Rayner et al. 2013).

That is, at least two distinct design techniques emerge here as formulation efforts may take the form of policy 'packaging' – that is, the creation of new mixes – or 'patching', in which only selected aspects of existing mixes are altered. Recognizing the drawbacks of layering, conversion and drift as often promoting unintentional mixes, many critics have increasingly argued for the promotion of complex policy mixes through replacement. However, multiple policy tool portfolios which have evolved over a long period time through processes of incremental layering cannot easily be replaced. Policy 'patching' is a more realistic design modality in such contexts and, if done properly, with a clear eye on promoting coherence and integration in complex environments, can achieve complex and ambitious policy goals in as efficient and effective a way as those designs which are consciously created as interlocking packages of measures (Feindt and Flynn 2009; Kay 2007; Howlett et al. 2015).

Conclusion

The aim of this chapter has been to develop the main elements of a theoretical and methodological taxonomy which can help clarify the different types of policy portfolios which are currently often ignored or improperly juxtaposed in the literature on the subject. This was done in an effort to provide the basis not only for better designs but also for improved considerations of the formulation processes and actors involved in such complex policy-making efforts. The discussion thus contributes to efforts currently being made to assess the success or optimality of

complex policy mixes (Mandell 2008; Howlett and Rayner 2013; del Rio 2014) and advances the project of revitalizing policy design studies urged by Howlett and Lejano (2013).

The multidimensional nature of policy mixes is a phenomenon which has been ignored in most of the policy instrument choice and policy design literature, resulting in a lack of clarity and difficulties associating different kinds of actors and evaluation criteria with mixes (Leutz 1999; Justen et al. 2013a, 2013b) and the continual use of outdated or inappropriate design maxims in their construction, which significantly enhances the potential for over- and under-designing. Even with only three main portfolio dimensions – goals, policies and levels – the design situation is more complex and nuanced than is normally depicted in the existing policy design literature.

The chapter argues that complex policy mixes inherently involve interactions between the different instruments of which they are composed, in the form of either conflicts or synergies. These can be defined as horizontal – between different types of instruments, policies or governments – or vertical – between different levels of goals, policies and government. These two dimensions each contain a number of elements and a large number of possible permutations. However, it is possible to refine significant mix types and design spaces to eight basic types: four relatively simple instrument mixes and four more complex policy mixes.

Mitigating the conflicts and encouraging synergies within these mixes through effective policy design first requires recognizing these different design spaces and their implications for what is being designed and by whom (Howlett 2013). Only then can efforts take place to enhance relevant horizontal and vertical coordination between and within different administrative levels and sectors relating to different instruments, goals and policies contained within a mix. The typology of outcomes set out in Table 7.1 suggests an increasingly complex environment for policy formulation as the complexity of portfolio parameters increases, ranging from relatively simple single-instrument mixes to the multi-level, multi-goal and multi-policy bundles of higher-numbered types (Keast et al. 2007).

The potential for complementarity and coherency effects to be actualized increases in level of difficulty as more goals, policies and governments are involved in a 'bundle' or 'portfolio', and the number of actors and types of evidence used in designing correspondingly increases in complexity and variability (Escribano 2013). Developing such a multidimensional typology of policy portfolios, however, is a needed step, helping clarify several outstanding issues in portfolio design which eluded existing literature on the subject. The typology allows us, for example, to begin to generate a multi-level model of tool selection and design showing how the problems (conflicts) in horizontal interactions can be mitigated by design principles such as coordinating targets, instruments and/or design elements and suggests that, in many instances, designing through patching will produce superior results to design through packaging or replacement.

References

Bolleyer, Nicole, and Tanja A. Borzel. "Non-Hierarchical Policy Coordination in Multilevel Systems." *European Political Science Review* 2, no. 2 (2010): 157–185.

Boonekamp, Piet G. M. "Actual Interaction Effects Between Policy Measures for Energy efficiency: A Qualitative Matrix Method and Quantitative Simulation Results for Households." *Energy* 31, no. 14 (November 2006): 2848–2873.

Braathen, Nils Axel. "Instrument Mixes for Environmental Policy: How Many Stones Should Be Used to Kill a Bird?" *International Review of Environmental and Resource Economics* 1, no. 2 (May 16, 2007): 185–235.

Braathen, Nils Axel, and E. Croci. "Environmental Agreements Used in Combination with Other Policy Instruments." In *The Handbook of Environmental Voluntary Agreements*, Vol. 43, 335–364. Dodrecht: Springer, 2005.

Carter, Pam. "Policy as Palimpsest." *Policy & Politics* 40, no. 3 (2012): 423–443.
Chapman, R. "A Policy Mix for Environmentally Sustainable Development – Learning from the Dutch Experience." *New Zealand Journal of Environmental Law* 7, no. 1 (2003): 29–51.
Considine, Mark. "Thinking Outside the Box? Applying Design Theory to Public Policy." *Politics & Policy* 40, no. 4 (2012): 704–724.
Del Río, Pablo. "Analysing the Interactions Between Renewable Energy Promotion and Energy Efficiency Support Schemes: The Impact of Different Instruments and Design Elements." *Energy Policy* 38, no. 9 (September 2010): 4978–4989.
Del Rio, Pablo. "Interactions Between Climate and Energy Policies: The Case of Spain." *Climate Policy* 9, no. 2 (2009): 119–138.
Del Río, Pablo. "On Evaluating Success in Complex Policy Mixes: The Case of Renewable Energy Support Schemes." *Policy Sciences* (2014): 1–21. doi:10.1007/s11077-013-9189-7.
Del Río, Pablo, Anxo Calvo Silvosa, and Guillermo Iglesias Gómez. "Policies and Design Elements for the Repowering of Wind Farms: A Qualitative Analysis of Different Options." *Energy Policy* 39, no. 4 (April 2011): 1897–1908.
Del Río González, Pablo. "The Interaction Between Emissions Trading and Renewable Electricity Support Schemes: An Overview of the Literature." *Mitigation and Adaptation Strategies for Global Change* 12, no. 8 (2007): 1363–1390.
Doremus, H. "A Policy Portfolio Approach to Biodiversity Protection on Private Lands." *Environmental Science & Policy* 6 (2003): 217–232.
Dunlop, Claire A. "Policy Transfer as Learning: Capturing Variation in What Decision-Makers Learn from Epistemic Communities." *Policy Studies* 30, no. 3 (2009): 289–311.
Enderlein, Henrik, Sonja Wälti, and Michael Zürn. *Handbook on Multi-Level Governance*. Cheltenham: Edward Elgar Publishing, 2011.
Escribano, Gonzalo. "Ecuador's Energy Policy Mix: Development Versus Conservation and Nationalism with Chinese Loans." *Energy Policy* (March 14, 2013).
Feindt, Peter H., and Andrew Flynn. "Policy Stretching and Institutional Layering: British Food Policy Between Security, Safety, Quality, Health and Climate Change." *British Politics* 4, no. 3 (September 2009): 386–414.
Flanagan, Kieron, Elvira Uyarra, and Manuel Laranja. "Reconceptualising the 'Policy Mix' for Innovation." *Research Policy* 40, no. 5 (June 2011): 702–713.
Freeman, G. P. "National Styles and Policy Sectors: Explaining Structured Variation." *Journal of Public Policy* 5, no. 4 (1985): 467–496.
Gilabert, Pablo, and Holly Lawford-Smith. "Political Feasibility: A Conceptual Exploration." *Political Studies* 60, no. 4 (2012): 809–825. doi:10.1111/j.1467-9248.2011.00936.x.
Givoni, Moshe. "Addressing Transport Policy Challenges through Policy-Packaging." *Transportation Research Part A: Policy and Practice* (2013). doi:10.1016/j.tra.2013.10.012.
Givoni, Moshe, James Macmillen, David Banister, and Eran Feitelson. "From Policy Measures to Policy Packages." *Transport Reviews* (2012): 1–20. doi:10.1080/01441647.2012.744779.
Grabosky, P. "Counterproductive Regulation." *International Journal of the Sociology of Law* 23 (1995): 347–369.
Gunningham, N., P. Grabosky, and D. Sinclair. *Smart Regulation: Designing Environmental Policy*. Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1998.
Haas, P. M. "Introduction: Epistemic Communities and International Policy Coordination." *International Organization* 46, no. 1 (1992): 1–36.
Haynes, Kingsley E., and Qiangsheng Li. "Policy Analysis and Uncertainty: Lessons from the IVHS Transportation Development Process." *Computers, Environment and Urban Systems* 17, no. 1 (January 1993): 1–14.
Hennicke, P. "Scenarios for a Robust Policy Mix: The Final Report of the German Study Commission on Sustainable Energy Supply." *Energy Policy* 32, no. 15 (October 2004): 1673–1678.
Hood, Christopher. *The Blame Game: Spin, Bureaucracy, and Self-Preservation in Government*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 2010.
Hooghe, L., and G. Marks. "Unraveling the Central State, But How? Types of Multi-Level Governance." *American Political Science Review* 97, no. 2 (2003): 233–243.
Hosseus, D., and L. A. Pal. "Anatomy of a Policy Area: The Case of Shipping." *Canadian Public Policy* 23, no. 4 (1997): 399–416.

Hou, Yilin, and Gene Brewer. "Substitution and Supplementation Between Co-Functional Policy Instruments: Evidence from State Budget Stabilization Practices." *Public Administration Review* 70, no. 6 (2010): 914–924.

Howlett, M. "Beyond Good and Evil in Policy Implementation: Instrument Mixes, Implementation Styles and Second Generation Theories of Policy Instrument Choice." *Policy & Society* 23, no. 2 (2004): 1–17.

Howlett, M. "Federalism and Public Policy." In *Canadian Politics–Third Edition*, edited by J. Bickerton and A. Gagnon. Peterborough: Broadview Press, 1999.

Howlett, M. "What Is a Policy Instrument? Policy Tools, Policy Mixes and Policy Implementation Styles." In *Designing Government: From Instruments to Governance*, edited by P. Eliadis, M. Hill, and M. Howlett, 31–50. Montreal: McGill-Queen's University Press, 2005.

Howlett, M., J. Kim, and P. Weaver. "Assessing Instrument Mixes Through Program- and Agency-Level Data: Methodological Issues in Contemporary Implementation Research." *Review of Policy Research* 23, no. 1 (2006): 129–151.

Howlett, Michael. *Designing Public Policies: Principles and Instruments*. New York: Routledge, 2011.

Howlett, Michael. "Governance Modes, Policy Regimes and Operational Plans: A Multi-level Nested Model of Policy Instrument Choice and Policy Design." *Policy Sciences* 42, no. 1 (2009): 73–89.

Howlett, Michael. "Policy Design: What, Who, How and Why?" In *Policy Instruments*, edited by P. LeGales (Paris 2013 forthcoming).

Howlett, Michael, and Raul P. Lejano. "Tales From the Crypt The Rise and Fall (and Rebirth?) Of Policy Design." *Administration & Society* 45, no. 3 (April 1, 2013): 357–381. https://doi.org/10.1177/0095399712459725.

Howlett, Michael, M. Ramesh, and Anthony Perl. *Studying Public Policy: Policy Cycles & Policy Subsystems*. Oxford University Press, 2009.

Howlett, Michael, and Jeremy Rayner. "Design Principles for Policy Mixes: Cohesion and Coherence in 'New Governance Arrangements'." *Policy and Society* 26, no. 4 (2007): 1–18.

Howlett, Michael, and Jeremy Rayner. "Patching vs Packaging in Policy Formulation: Assessing Policy Portfolio Design." *Politics and Governance* 1, no. 2 (2013): 170–182. doi:10.12924/pag2013.01020170.

Howlett, Michael, Ishani Mukherjee, and Jeremy Rayner. "Designing Effective Programs." In *Handbook of Public Administration*, edited by James L. Perry and Robert K. Christensen, 3 edition., 180–96. San Francisco, CA: Jossey-Bass, 2015.

Hull, Angela. "Policy Integration: What Will It Take to Achieve More Sustainable Transport Solutions in Cities?" *Transport Policy* 15, no. 2 (March 2008): 94–103.

Jordan, A., D. Benson, A. Zito, and Wurzel R. "Environmental Policy: Governing by Multiple Policy Instruments?" In *Constructing a Policy State? Policy Dynamics in the EU*, edited by J. J. Richardson. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2012.

Jordan, Andrew, David Benson, Rudiger Wurzel, and Anthony Zito. "Policy Instruments in Practice." In *Oxford Handbook of Climate Change and Society*, edited by J. S. Dryzek, R. B. Norgaard, and D. Schlosberg, 536–549. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2011.

Justen, Andreas, Nils Fearnley, Moshe Givoni, and James Macmillen. "A Process for Designing Policy Packaging: Ideals and Realities." *Transportation Research Part A: Policy and Practice* (2013a). doi:10.1016/j.tra.2013.10.016.

Justen, Andreas, Jens Schippl, Barbara Lenz, and Torsten Fleischer. "Assessment of Policies and Detection of Unintended Effects: Guiding Principles for the Consideration of Methods and Tools in Policy-Packaging." *Transportation Research Part A: Policy and Practice* (2013b). doi:10.1016/j.tra.2013.10.015.

Kaiser, Annika, André Kaiser, and Jan Biela. *Policy Making in Multilevel Systems: Federalism, Decentralisation, and Performance in the OECD Countries*. Exeter: European Consortium for Political Research Press, 2012.

Kay, Adrian. "Tense Layering and Synthetic Policy Paradigms: The Politics of Health Insurance in Australia." *Australian Journal of Political Science* 42, no. 4 (2007): 579–591.

Keast, Robyn, Kerry Brown, and Myrna Mandell. "Getting the Right Mix: Unpacking Integration Meanings and Strategies." *International Public Management Journal* 10, no. 1 (January 1, 2007): 9–33.

Kern, Florian, and Michael Howlett. "Implementing Transition Management as Policy Reforms: a Case Study of the Dutch Energy Sector." *Policy Sciences* 42, no. 4 (November 1, 2009): 391–408.

Kiss, Bernadett, Clara González Manchón, and Lena Neij. "The Role of Policy Instruments in Supporting the Development of Mineral Wool Insulation in Germany, Sweden and the United Kingdom." *Journal of Cleaner Production* 0 (December 29, 2012).

Knudson, William A. "The Environment, Energy, and the Tinbergen Rule." *Bulletin of Science, Technology & Society* 29, no. 4 (August 1, 2009): 308–312.

Koppenjan, Joop, Mirjam Kars, and Haiko van der Voort. "Vertical Politics in Horizontal Policy Networks: Framework Settings as Coupling Arrangement." *Policy Studies Journal* 37, no. 4 (2009): 769–792.

Lanzalaco, Luca. "Bringing the Olympic Rationality Back In? Coherence, Integration and Effectiveness of Public Policies." *World Political Science Review* 7, no. 1 (May 25, 2011): 1098.

Larsen, T. P., P. Taylor-Gooby, and J. Kananen. "New Labour's Policy Style: A Mix of Policy Approaches." *International Social Policy* 35, no. 4 (2006): 629–649.

Lecuyer, Oskar, and Ruben Bibas. *Combining Climate and Energy Policies: Synergies or Antagonism? Modeling Interactions with Energy Efficiency Instruments*. SSRN Scholarly Paper. Rochester, NY: Social Science Research Network, January 26, 2012. http://papers.ssrn.com/abstract=1992324.

Lejano, Raul P., and Savita Shankar. "The Contextualist Turn and Schematics of Institutional Fit: Theory and a Case Study from Southern India." *Policy Sciences* 46, no. 1 (March 1, 2013): 83–102.

Leplay, Solenn, and Sophie Thoyer. Synergy Effects of International Policy Instruments to Reduce Deforestation: A Cross-Country Panel Data Analysis. Working Paper. LAMETA, University of Montpellier, 2011. http://ideas.repec.org/p/lam/wpaper/11-01.html.

Leutz, Walter N. "Five Laws for Integrating Medical and Social Services: Lessons from the United States and the United Kingdom." *The Milbank Quarterly* 77, no. 1 (January 1, 1999): 77–110.

Mandell, Svante. "Optimal Mix of Emissions Taxes and Cap-and-Trade." *Journal of Environmental Economics and Management* 56 (2008): 131–140.

Maor, Moshe. "Policy Overreaction." *Journal of Public Policy* 32, no. 3 (2012): 231–259.

Marier, Patrik. "Empowering Epistemic Communities: Specialized Politicians, Policy Experts and Policy Reform." *West European Politics* 31, no. 3 (2008): 513–533.

McCool, D. "The Subsystem Family of Concepts: A Critique and a Proposal." *Political Research Quarterly* 51, no. 2 (1998): 551–570.

Milkman, Katherine L., Mary Carol Mazza, Lisa L. Shu, Chia-Jung Tsay, and Max H. Bazerman. "Policy Bundling to Overcome Loss Aversion: A Method for Improving Legislative Outcomes." *Organizational Behavior and Human Decision Processes* 117, no. 1 (January 2012): 158–167.

Oikonomou V., A. Flamos, and S. Grafakos. "Is Blending of Energy and Climate Policy Instruments Always Desirable?" *Energy Policy* 38, no. 8 (August 2010): 4186–4195.

Oikonomou, V., A. Flamos, D. Zeugolis, and S. Grafakos. "A Qualitative Assessment of EU Energy Policy Interactions." *Energy Sources, Part B: Economics, Planning, and Policy* 7, no. 2 (2011): 177–187.

Oikonomou, V., and C. J. Jepma. "A Framework on Interactions of Climate and Energy Policy Instruments." *Mitigation and Adaptation Strategies for Global Change* 13, no. 2 (February 15, 2007): 131–156.

Peters, B. G. "Conclusion: The Future of Instruments Research." In *Designing Government: From Instruments to Governance*, edited by P. Eliadis, M. Hill, and M. Howlett, 353–363. Montreal: McGill-Queen's University Press, 2005.

Peters, B. G. *Managing Horizontal Government: The Politics of Coordination*. Ottawa: Canadian Centre for Management Development, 1998.

Philibert, Cédric. *Interactions of Policies for Renewable Energy and Climate*. IEA Energy Paper. OECD Publishing, March 2011. http://econpapers.repec.org/paper/oecieaaaa/2011_2f6-en.htm.

Rayner, Jeremy, Kathleen McNutt, and Adam Wellstead. "Dispersed Capacity and Weak Coordination: The Challenge of Climate Change Adaptation in Canada's Forest Policy Sector." *Review of Policy Research* 30, no. 1 (2013): 66–90. doi:10.1111/ropr.12003.

Ring, Irene, and Christoph Schroter-Schlaack. *Instrument Mixes for Biodiversity Policies*. Helmholtz Centre for Environmental Research, 2011.

Salamon, L. M. "The Tools Approach: Basic Analytics." In *Beyond Privatization: The Tools of Government Action*, edited by L. S. Salamon and M. S. Lund, 23–50. Washington, DC: Urban Institute, 1989.

Sanderson, I. "Evaluation, Policy Learning and Evidence-Based Policy Making." *Public Administration* 80, no. 1 (2002): 1–22.

Schneider, A. L., and H. Ingram. "Behavioural Assumptions of Policy Tools." *Journal of Politics* 52, no. 2 (1990a): 511–529.

Schneider, A. L., and H. Ingram. *Deserving and Entitled: Social Constructions and Public Policy*. SUNY Series in Public Policy. Albany: State University of New York, 2005.

Schneider, A. L., and H. Ingram. *Policy Design for Democracy*. Lawrence: University Press of Kansas, 1997.

Schneider, A. L., and H. Ingram. "Policy Design: Elements, Premises and Strategies." In *Policy Theory and Policy Evaluation: Concepts, Knowledge, Causes and Norms*, edited by S. S. Nagel, 77–102. New York: Greenwood, 1990b.

Schneider, A. L., and H. Ingram. "Social Construction of Target Populations: Implications for Politics and Policy." *American Political Science Review* 87, no. 2 (1993): 334–347.

Schneider, A. L., and H. Ingram. "Social Constructions and Policy Design: Implications for Public Administration." *Research in Public Administration* 3 (1994): 137–173.

Taeihagh, Araz, René Bañares-Alcántara, and Moshe Givoni. "A Virtual Environment for the Formulation of Policy Packages." *Transportation Research Part A: Policy and Practice* (2013b). doi:10.1016/j.tra.2013.10.017.

Taeihagh, Araz, René Bañares-Alcántara, and Zun Wang. "A Novel Approach to Policy Design Using Process Design Principles." In *Computer Aided Chemical Engineering*, edited by Caludio Augusto Oller do Nascimento and Evaristo Chalbaud Biscaia Rita Maria de Brito Alves, Vol. 27, 2049–2054. Elsevier, 2009.

Taeihagh, Araz, Moshe Givoni, and René Bañares-Alcántara. "Which Policy First? A Network-Centric Approach for the Analysis and Ranking of Policy Measures." *Environment and Planning B: Planning and Design* 40, no. 4 (2013): 595–616. doi:10.1068/b38058.

Thelen, Kathleen. "How Institutions Evolve: Insights from Comparative Historical Analysis." In *Comparative Historical Analysis in the Social Sciences*, edited by J. Mahoney and D. Rueschemeyer, 208–240. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 2003.

Thelen, Kathleen. *How Institutions Evolve: The Political Economy of Skills in Germany, Britain, the United States and Japan*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 2004.

Tinbergen, Jan. *On the Theory of Economic Policy*. Dordrecht: North-Holland Pub. Co., 1952.

Trebilcock, M. J., and J. R. S. Prichard. "Crown Corporations: The Calculus of Instrument Choice." In *Crown Corporations in Canada: The Calculus of Instrument Choice*, 1–50. Toronto: Butterworths, 1983.

Tupper, A., and G. B. Doern. "Public Corporations and Public Policy in Canada." In *Public Corporations and Public Policy in Canada*, 1–50. Montreal: Institute for Research on Public Policy, 1981.

Van der Heijden, Jeroen. "Institutional Layering: A Review of the Use of the Concept." *Politics* 31, no. 1 (January 10, 2011): 9–18.

Williams, A. M., and V. Balaz. "Privatisation in Central Europe: Different Legacies, Methods and Outcomes." *Environment and Planning C: Government and Policy* 17 (1999): 731–751.

Yi, Hongtao, and Richard C Feiock. "Policy Tool Interactions and the Adoption of State Renewable Portfolio Standards." *Review of Policy Research* 29, no. 2 (March 1, 2012): 193–206.

8

UNDERSTANDING PRIMARY AND SECONDARY RELATIONSHIPS AMONG POLICY TOOLS IN POLICY MIXES

Michael Howlett, M. Ramesh and Azad Singh Bali

A recent resurgence of interest in policy design has fostered renewed efforts to better understand how specific combinations of policy tools arise and shape policy outcomes. However, to date, these efforts have been stymied by under-theorization of the different purposes to which tools are directed in policy mixes and a corresponding failure to acknowledge the different purposes towards which different tools in a mix are directed. The central argument of this chapter is that existing frameworks do not adequately recognize the complexity of contemporary policy tool mixes, especially their hybrid and multilayered features, and how procedural and substantial tools operate and interact together in such mixes in priority and supportive roles. To close these gaps, we propose a revised tool framework that distinguishes between first- and second-order aspects of instruments used in policy mixes and highlights the particular salience of procedural tools within them. The framework, we argue, is simple to operationalize and thus aids understanding of the complex architecture of mixes, allowing closer examination of the conditions and factors which shape policy performance.

Introduction: The Policy Tools Approach

The most commonly adopted theoretical frameworks in contemporary policy sciences – such as the advocacy coalition framework, punctuated equilibrium theory, the multiple stream approach, narrative policy framework – all focus on the input side of the policy process, especially the roles played by different kinds of actors – policy entrepreneurs and brokers, discourse coalitions, epistemic communities and others – in policy processes (Howlett et al., 2020). This is useful in understanding policymaking but less so when it comes to analyzing policy content and effects.

There is a parallel stream of thinking in policy studies, however, that focuses on the outputs of policymaking, analyzing in detail the content of adopted decisions, which is much more useful in this pursuit (Hood, 2007). This is the "tools approach" to policy studies, in which the outputs of the policy process are conceptualized as comprised of specific policy "tools" or "instruments" deployed in order to attain specific policy goals and objectives. In this latter approach, scholars work backwards from outputs to inputs in assessing policymaking less as an open-ended or

 DOI: 10.4324/9781003163954-10

boundaryless struggle between ideas or interests than as a process of choosing or selecting specific tools expected to achieve policy goals (Peters, 2018; Howlett, 2019).

Understanding the use of "bundles" or "portfolios" of instruments rather than single tools is a focus of much current work in instrument studies and helps elucidate, promote and design more effective governance strategies (Doremus, 2003; Sterner, 2003). These kinds of multi-policy, multi-goal and multi-tools mixes – what Milkman et al. (2012) call "policy bundles", Chapman (2003) and Hennicke (2004) "policy mix" and Givoni et al. (2013) "policy packages" – are examples of complex portfolios of tools whose study has been, to date, only very partial and exploratory (Rogge and Reichardt, 2016).

The resurgence of interest in policy design has fostered efforts to better understand how such combinations of policy tools arise and shape policy outcomes. However, these efforts have been stymied by under-theorization of the different purposes to which tools are directed in policy mixes. One key issue with such mixes, for example, is the relationship(s) existing among the different tools in a mix or package. Thus, for example, taxes are typically layered with nodal tools such as nudges that help effect compliance. Similarly, public health financing programs which cover citizens are often combined with tax incentives to encourage individuals to purchase supplementary private insurance. Significantly, in both these cases, some tools are "primary" – in this case taxation and public financing – while others are "secondary" – nudges and tax incentives. Health insurance co-payments such as user fees and deductibles to offset costs or reduce malfeasance associated with health insurance are another example of secondary policy tools commonly deployed along with public financing in health-care policy mixes (Blomqvist, 2011).

In general, current studies have focused on better identifying and measuring only the overall composition of policy portfolios or mixes (e.g., Kern and Howlett, 2009; Schaffrin et al., 2014, 2015) in specific policy sectors and have not addressed in detail the key features of the inter- and intra-tool relationships they contain (McDermott et al., 2009, 2010; Auld et al., 2010; Schmidt and Sewerin, 2019). For an exception, see Hou and Brewer, 2010). The key question for most existing studies has been simply to describe what kind of policies or policy mixes exist and begin to grapple with the question of how overall policy configurations and specific policy components have developed and changed over time (e.g., Howlett and Lejano, 2013; Howlett and Rayner, 2013).

The central argument of this chapter is that existing frameworks do not adequately recognize the complexity of contemporary policy tools in policy mixes, especially their hybrid and multi-layered features, and how both procedural and substantial tools operate and interact in priority and supportive roles. To close these gaps, we propose a revised tool framework that distinguishes between first- and second-order aspects of instruments used in policy mixes and highlights the particular salience of procedural tools within them. The framework, we argue, is simple to operationalize and thus aids understanding of the complex architecture of mixes, allowing closer examination of the conditions and factors which shape both policy dynamics and performance.

Understanding Policy Mixes

Early studies of policy tools focused on describing the types of tools governments use to advance their goals and the criteria which affect the choice of individual tools (Lowi, 1972; Hood, 1983; Linder and Peters, 1989; Peters and van Nispen, 1998; Howlett, 2000; Salamon, 2002). A more recent wave of studies on policy design, however, has brought about a renewed interest not only in such questions but also in new issues such as how tool choices evolve over time and, especially, how individual tools operate when combined with others, sometimes in very complex

multi-level, multi-policy and multi-tool "policy mixes" or "portfolios" (Howlett and del Rio; Howlett and Lejano, 2013; Howlett et al., 2015).

It has increasingly been recognized that most contemporary policy problems are too complex to be addressed by a single tool but rather require the use of multiple tools based on different governing resources (Hood, 2007). As Peters (2018) recently reminds us, there are now very few policies composed of discrete and standalone policy tools. Mixes or "combinations of different kinds of policy tools (market-based, hierarchical, network and others) whose exact configuration changes from location to location" (Rayner et al., 2017, p. 473) are much more common.

This is an important observation and insight. Thus, social insurance, for example, a commonly used tool to finance health care around the world has commonly been understood as a purely financial tool. But, in practice, social insurance requires an administering agency (organizational tool), legislation mandating participation (an authority tool) and the availability of public information on the scheme in addition to these treasure-related activities. Another example can be found in how to manage traffic congestion. Many countries now "bundle" licenses, congestion pricing and user fees (Wu and Ramesh, 2014) so that traffic management policy is, at minimum, a three-instrument mix. And congestion pricing, commonly understood as a fiscal tool, also requires legislation (an authority tool) and an administering tax agency (an organizational tool) and has to be based on accurate and easily transmissible traffic data (an information tool) in order to operate effectively, adding to the complexity of such portfolios.

These mixes can develop in a conscious, intentional way or through a more haphazard process, and studies of mixes have begun to examine how policymakers choose particular instruments and whether and how they change previous choices (Capano and Lippi, 2017) and how policy actors aggregate around specific policy instruments to form "instrument constituencies" promoting certain tools, often regardless of the nature of the problem (Voß and Simons, 2014; Béland and Howlett, 2016), Studies have also looked at the political and policy effects achieved by adopting specific policy instruments: for example, creating coalition effects for actors benefiting (or not) from policy efforts (Borras and Edquist, 2013; Bressers and Klok, 1988; May et al., 2005).

These studies, among other things, have identified several aspects of mixes and their compositive elements which constitute important attributes of these kinds of tool portfolios, affecting their ability to attain government goals and ambitions (see Table 8.1).

Yet despite this work, there remain several important gaps in our understanding of the nature of policy composition and dynamics between and among tools within a policy mix which negatively affect the ability of scholars to generalize about them and practitioners to design and deploy them (see Capano and Howlett, 2020).

Recent efforts to measure policy dynamics, for example, while useful, often mischaracterize mixes and do not offer a compelling understanding of how choices are arrived at within the spectrum of tools involved or how such choices create an operational bundle of policy tools. For instance, many studies of mixes have stressed the importance of policy density (Knill et al., 2012), a measure which focuses on the number of tools in a policy mix but ignores the different emphasis or weight placed on specific tools within a policy mix. Moreover, it ignores the institutional architecture that supports each tool and conditions its performance. Similarly, other studies have attempted to combine the measure of density with one related to policy intensity, which often stresses the coercive strength of individual tools. This does not, however, take into account the interactive or synergistic effects different tools have when they are bundled together.

Moreover, empirical studies continue to show how governments typically rely on multiple and offsetting kinds of policy tools to achieve a stated goal (Wu and Ramesh, 2014) mixing,

Table 8.1 Attributes of Policy Mixes

Attribute	*Description*
Coherence	The extent to which policy goals and instruments are consistent over time (Howlett & Rayner, 2007)
Complementarity	The extent to which there are synergies or "positive interactions" between various policy tools and components within an existing mix (Howlett, 2018)
Completeness	The deliberate inclusion of procedural elements in a policy mix with the goal of managing governance failures in service delivery (Saguin, 2020)
Goodness of Fit	The extent to which individual instruments and their settings are compatible with governance style and the broader political context (Howlett et al., 2015)
Degrees of Freedom	The scope for future changes/calibrations to the instrument (Howlett et al., 2015)
Volatility	The likelihood or propensity of mixes to contain instruments that that are inherently unstable (Howlett, 2019)
Intensity	The specific content of the instruments (i.e., the level and scope of government intervention) measured through six indicators (objectives, scope, integration, budget, implementation and monitoring) (Knill et al., 2012; Schaffrin et al., 2015)
Density	The number of instruments in a policy mix or used to manage a policy area (Knill et al., 2012)
Explicitness	The extent to which instruments in a mix define a desired direction of behavioural change relative to a given technical policy goal (Thomann, 2018)

Source: Adapted from Bali, Howlett and Ramesh (2021)

or blending many elements such as the procedural or substantive nature and impacts of tools (Howlett, 2000). In health care, for example, procedural tools such as budget ceilings sharpen commonly used fiscal tools such as capitation payments, and, in turn, fiscal tools (e.g., subsidies, fees, penalties) are used to sharpen the impact of regulatory interventions (Liu, 2003). Certain tools also allow the government leverage to steer actors in a sector and are must be reconciled with tools which direct specific kinds of actors or actor behaviour, such as regulation which might prohibit or incentivize certain kinds of activity. For example, public ownership of hospitals can allow governments to set standards on waiting times, costs and clinical outcomes at public hospitals. The absence of such ownership consequently may deny the government this leverage of the sector and actor behaviour (Ramesh and Bali, 2019, 2021).

Empirical research on mixes has not yet sufficiently developed with regard to measuring these interactive effects of policy tools, and there is still disagreement about the definition and meaning of concepts such as mix consistency and coherence (Rogge and Reichardt, 2016), which this chapter sets out to resolve.

Policy (De)Composition as a Continuing Problematic Element in Policy Design Studies

Surprising as it may sound, the discipline of public policy has for decades largely evaded the question of what is a "policy", often conflating it with a "decision" to implement an action without specifying its exact nature and content (Howlett and Cashore, 2009). A "decisional" conception of policy is problematic, however, not the least for being unable to distinguish adequately between small and large decisions, such as between purchasing stationery and reforming the education system, but also because a decision, in itself, often amounts to approving some set of policy measures without actually describing or capturing the nature of those measures.

A major development on this front was Hall's (1993) initial disaggregation of the elements which made up a policy, distinguishing between three basic components – goals, tools and calibrations – into which policies could be decomposed. This process was enriched by Cashore and Howlett's (2007) modification of Hall's model to include six constituent components of public policies: goals, objectives, specifications with respect to policy ends, instrument logic, tools and calibrations for policy means, as depicted in Table 8.2.

While it is apparent that policies are composed of all six elements, researchers typically continue to describe only one or a few of the macro- or micro-level policy elements and overlook the interrelationships between these elements: that is, how changes to one component affect the overall character and effects of the policy.

For example, comparative studies of policy regimes typically focus on institutional arrangements used to organize policy subsystems. These studies are typically pitched at the macro level and emphasize how ideas such as attitudes towards societal risk pooling and ideas regarding the role of the state in the health sector, state and nonstate actors in the provision and financing of health care, and institutions (e.g., social security organizations, social contracts and the like) shape policy choices (Esping-Andersen, 1996; Moran, 2000; Harris and Milkis, 1989; Jochim and May, 2010; Preker and Harding, 2003). This has contributed to policy debates on national "models" of policy focusing on broad generalizations around existing macro-level arrangements while downplaying tools choices and configurations. Thus, much attention in the field is devoted to the nature of the health-care sector: for example, the development of alternate systems such as the Singapore medical savings account model, the British NHS model, the tax-funded Canadian system, the Australian Medicare system and others (Kulesher and Forrestal, 2014; Hsiao and Shaw, 2007; Blomqvist, 2011) without paying a great deal of attention to the specific nature of the tools deployed in each regime which give it its distinctive character.

Conversely, but equally problematically, many studies emphasize micro-level calibrations and programme settings and underscore the variation that exists at this level but without reconciling this with the similarities which may exist in more macro-level policy parameters. These micro-level factors include, for example, bureaucratic routines and imperatives of specific agencies or individual decision-makers. They often focus on the efficacy of specific program parameters such as the level of subsidy, contribution rates or benefit levels in social policy schemes and often highlight the idiosyncratic processes underlying these choices (Asher and Bali, 2015; Hsiao and Shaw, 2007; Langenbrunner et al., 2009). While such micro-level studies are useful in understanding how programmatic variations affect service delivery and costs, however, they err in the opposite direction of macro models in comparative policy studies as they are too idiosyncratic and ignore how policy choices at this level are constrained by choices of policy tools and objectives as well as governance arrangements and ideas.

To move the debate beyond this overemphasis on both policy regimes and micro-level policy models, many current studies now focus on the specific meso-level characteristics which many traditional policy studies tended to neglect. This meso level is composed of policy instruments or techniques that give policy goals effect, especially the mixes of such tools which comprise

Table 8.2 Policy Components

	High-Level Abstraction	*Programme-Level Abstraction*	*Specific On-the-Ground Measures*
Policy Focus: Ends	Policy goal	Objectives	Specification
Policy Focus: Means	Tools logic	Policy tools	Calibration

Source: Cashore and Howlett, 2007

most modern policies. Such studies deal with how policy tools are assembled, sequenced and deployed; how such actions affect and are affected by macro-level policy change and micro-level policy dynamics; and the implications of these findings for future policy designs (Howlett and Lejano, 2013; Howlett et al., 2018). This highlights the significance of the need for a clearer understanding of policy mixes and how tools originate and interact in such mixes to produce desired, or undesirable, policy effects.

Improving the Analysis of Policy Mixes

Distinguishing Between Primary and Secondary or Supplementary Tools

One issue which needs resolution in the study of policy mixes, as set out earlier, is reconciling the specific functionalities of policy tools with the multiple objectives they are intended to achieve. Even straightforward policy goals – such as health care for all – in reality comprise a vast array of objectives, each of which requires deployment of multiple policy tools if they are to be achieved. Delivering health care to all, for example, requires expanding the supply of health services which, in turn, requires mobilizing the resources necessary to produce the services and then delivering them to those according to differential needs. In addition, there is the unstated objective of accomplishing this aim in a financially sustainable manner. Each of these efforts to produce and distribute health-care services in an efficient and equitable manner requires multiple tools that are bundled together in ways in which they engender complex patterns of interactions and outputs.

Moreover, policy problems are often characterized by multiple dimensions, each of which requires a different solution. Thus, for example, what is called a "health-policy problem" typically consists of three interrelated sets of problems – centred on provision, financing and payment – with each set comprising its own distinct set of problems and possible solutions. As noted earlier, a health system characterized by private provision (delivery) has major implications for efficiency and equity which pose different obstacles to attaining the goal of universal access than those posed by public systems.

Hence, it is important to note not only that different policy tools co-exist but also that they do so in a hierarchical fashion. That is, some tools (and resources) are "primary" in the sense that they are central to achieving a stated objective and area expected to be the primary instrument(s) for changing a targeted behaviour. Others are "secondary" in the sense that, by themselves, they are not expected to achieve primary policy goals but rather to play a vital role in supporting primary tools.

The primary and secondary or "supplementary" tools used to target problems together form a policy "portfolio" (see Table 8.3).

While contemporary design studies recognize that discrete policy tools are typically "bundled" in a "portfolio", ideally working in concert to achieve stated goal, they do not help identify which tools have, or should have, priority in such mixes. Policy design scholars have, however, become increasingly interested in establishing guidelines for the formulation of more sophisticated policy designs in which complementarities across orders are maximized and conflicts

Table 8.3 Two Orders of Policy Tools

Order	*Definition*
First Order	The primary substantive and procedural tools used to meet policy objectives
Second Order	Other tools that are layered to increase effectiveness or sharpen the effect of first-order tools

avoided and in identifying the various means through which mixes can be developed which are generally resilient and robust in the face of change (Capano and Woo, 2017). This research asks meaningful questions, for example, concerning the utility of redundant elements in policy mixes which might seem a priori to be dysfunctional or inefficient but which can, in fact, promote resiliency and adaptiveness (Bali et al., 2019).

Identifying supplementary policy tools that condition or sharpen the effect of the main tool, however, would help present a more complete picture of the individual policy tool (Hou and Brewer, 2010) and the supporting institutional architecture (beyond ideas, governance styles, actors) that conditions its performance and is critical to effective policy design. Understanding such relationships would lend itself to more rigorous policy design studies and a better understanding of the conditions under which policy success and failure occur (Wilder, 2017).

Distinguishing More Clearly Between Substantive and Procedural Tools

A second significant problem in policy mix research is the tendency among both scholars and practitioners to concentrate exclusively on substantive implementation tools while overlooking associated procedural tools (Howlett, 2019; Bali et al., 2021). Substantive tools – such as subsidy, tax, public enterprises, etc. – seek to directly target the problematic conditions or subjects' behaviour while procedural policy tools are decision processes used to alter the choice or use of substantive tools. (Howlett, 2000). Procedural tools do not affect outcomes as directly as substantive tools, but they are often essential for the latter to work. Each substantive policy tool relies on a range of secondary complex administrative processes and procedures which are used to select, sequence, calibrate and deploy the tool, such as the administrative processes and activities involved in selecting, deploying and calibrating such tools.

Table 8.4 provides examples of such procedural tools in the health-care sector.

Table 8.4 Procedural Tools in Health Care: Examples

Policy Formulation Tools	*Accountability Tools*
National health plan	Performance-based contracts
National targets, goals and performance measures	Systems of judicial redress, procedures to combat corruption
Multi-year strategic plan; medium-term expenditure frameworks and national health accounts	Superintendent board/board of governors
Partnership Tools	**Participation Tools**
Inter-ministerial and inter-departmental committees	Open meetings, public workshops, national forums, citizen advisory committees, citizen juries
Public-private task force	Satisfaction surveys
Integrated budgets and accounting, co-funding arrangements or earmarked grants	Formal consultations in drafting legislation
Information-Gathering Tools	**Transparency Tools**
Inter-ministerial fact-finding commissions or task force, parliamentary investigations	Watchdog committees (facility boards, health authority, ombudsman, parliamentary committees)
Periodic audits, public expenditure and performance reviews	Releasing performance information to providers and the public
Health technology assessments	Inspectorates, fact-finding commissions

Source: Adapted from Barbazza and Tello (2014)

Similar to substantive tools, procedural tools, too, come in primary and secondary forms. That is, some procedural tools are more "primary", such as those related to designing governance arrangements (partnerships, hierarchies, degree and type of competition, accountability mechanisms, etc.) for delivering services or those which establish or change actors' positions, add actors to networks or change access rules for actors. But other uses are more supportive or "secondary", such as changing evaluative criteria or influencing payoff structures for actors, such as codes of conduct and behaviour; tools used to regulate conflict, such as tribunals or commissions; or those which otherwise change interaction procedures, certify certain types of behaviour or change supervisory relations between actors (Agranoff and McGuire, 1999).

Summary: The Need to Revisit and Revise Common Conceptions of Policy Portfolios in Order to Advance Policy Studies and Practice

In Table 8.5, we adapt Cashore and Howlett's original six-part conception of policy elements (Table 8.2) to present a more comprehensive depiction of policy tools which takes into account the distinctions between substantive and procedural tools and their primary and secondary functions highlighted earlier. These distinctions enable analysts to better identify factors that affect a tools mix's performance and, we argue, should form an integral part of the study of policy tools and policy design.

This revision of the Cashore and Howlett model of policy elements is more robust and better suited to the analysis of policy mixes than the original formulation.

Conclusion

A key theme in the new design orientation in the policy sciences is to understand how contemporary policy problems can be better addressed in heterodox contexts. This, in turn, requires a sophisticated understanding of the spectrum of policy tools government use and the factors that condition their performance. Our argument in this chapter is that existing frameworks of policy

Table 8.5 An Improved Depiction of Policy Elements

	Macro Level	*Meso Level*	*Micro Level*
Policy Ends	Goals Aspirational ideas driving the policy	Objectives The policy's stated purpose	Specifications Establishing arrangements and conditions for the chosen policy to work
Policy Means	Substantive Focus Dominant policy style and tool preferences	Primary and Secondary Substantive tools Substantive tools to be deployed to achieve policy objectives Other substantive tools that sharpen or increase the effectiveness of primary tools	Substantive Calibrations Functional calibrations of primary and secondary tools
	Procedural Focus Dominant governance ideas and arrangements	Primary and Secondary Procedural tools Decision-making processes for operationalizing the chosen substantive tools Supporting processes to enhance the effectiveness of primary tools	Procedural Calibrations Size and composition of the procedural decision-making bodies

tools understate the complexity of policy tools and policy mixes. These include a failure to incorporate into existing models (1) the multiple objectives (requiring different types of governing resources) policy tools face, (2) the hierarchical relationships among different tools in a mix and the fact that (3) procedural tools play a key role in all policy designs.

To address these challenges, we adapted Cashore and Howlett's (2007) model of policy decomposition to distinguish between primary and secondary tools at both the substantive and procedural levels. The framework presented in Table 8.5 is a useful heuristic or diagnostic tool to better understand the institutional architecture that supports a policy sector and conditions its performance. The additional nuance and understanding such a framework brings allows analysts to gain a deeper understanding of the tools used and the institutional architecture that conditions their performance than do current policy efforts which fail to account for the primary and secondary nature of the procedural and substantive tools arrayed in such mixes.

References

Agranoff, R., & McGuire, M. (1999). Managing in network settings. *Policy Studies Review*, 16(1), 18–41.

Asher, M. G., & Bali, A. S. (2015). Public pension programs in Southeast Asia: An assessment. *Asian Economic Policy Review*, 10(2), 225–245.

Auld, G., Cashore, B., Balboa, C., Bozzi, L., & Renckens, S. (2010). Can technological innovations improve private regulation in the global economy? *Business and Politics*, 12(3), 1–39.

Bali, A. S., Capano, G., & Ramesh, M. (2019). Anticipating and designing for policy effectiveness. *Policy & Society*.

Bali, A. S., Howlett, M., Lewis, J. M., & Ramesh, M. (2021). Procedural policy tools in theory and practice. *Policy and Society*, 40(3), 295–311.

Bali, A. S., Howlett, M., & Ramesh, M. (2021). Unpacking policy portfolios: Primary and secondary aspects of tool use in policy mixes. *Journal of Asian Public Policy*. Forthcoming.

Barbazza, E., & Tello, J. E. (2014). A review of health governance: Definitions, dimensions and tools to govern. *Health Policy*, 116(1), 1–11.

Béland, D., & Howlett, M. (2016). How solutions chase problems: Instrument constituencies in the policy process. *Governance*, 29(3), 393–409. https://doi.org/10.1111/gove.12179.

Blomqvist, A. (2011). Public sector health care financing. In: Glied, S. and Smith, P. (eds.) *The Oxford handbook of health economics*. Chippenham: Oxford University Press, pp. 257–284.

Borras, S., & Edquist, C. (2013). The choice of innovation policy instruments. *Technological Forecasting and Social Change*, 80(8), 1513–1522. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.techfore.2013.03. 002.

Bressers, H., & Klok, P. J. (1988). Fundamentals for a theory of policy instruments. *International Journal of Social Economics*, 15(3–4), 22–41. https://doi.org/10.1108/eb014101.

Capano, Giliberto, & Howlett, Michael. (2020, January) The knowns and unknowns of policy instrument analysis: Policy tools and the current research agenda on policy mixes. *SAGE Open*, 10(1).

Capano, G., & Lippi, A. (2017). How policy instruments are chosen: Patterns of decision makers' choices. *Policy Sciences*, 50(2), 269–293. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11077-016-9267-8.

Capano, Giliberto, & Woo, Jun Jie. (2017, January 5). Resilience and robustness in policy design: A critical appraisal. *Policy Sciences*, 1–28.

Cashore, B., & Howlett, M. (2007). Punctuating which equilibrium? Understanding thermostatic policy dynamics in Pacific Northwest forestry. *American Journal of Political Science*, 51(3), 532–551.

Chapman, R. (2003). A policy mix for environmentally sustainable development-learning from the Dutch experience. *New Zealand Journal of Environmental Law,* 7, 29.

Doremus, H. (2003). A policy portfolio approach to biodiversity protection on private lands. *Environmental Science and Policy*, 6, 217–232.

Esping-Andersen, G. (Ed.). (1996). *Welfare states in transition: National adaptations in global economies*. Sage.

Givoni, M., Macmillen, J., Banister, D., & Feitelson, E. (2013). From policy measures to policy packages. *Transport Reviews*, 33(1), 1–20.

Hall, P. A. (1993). Policy paradigms, social learning, and the state: the case of economic policymaking in Britain. *Comparative Politics*, 25(3), 275–296.

Harris, R. A., & Milkis, S. M. (1989). *The politics of regulatory change: A tale of two agencies*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.

Hennicke, P. (2004). Scenarios for a robust policy mix: The final report of the German study commission on sustainable energy supply. *Energy Policy*, 32(15), 1673–1678.

Hood, C. (1983). *The tools of governments*. London: Red Globe Press.

Hood, C. (2007). Intellectual obsolescence and intellectual makeovers: Reflections on the tools of government after two decades. *Governance*, 20(1), 127–144.

Hou, Yilin, & Brewer, Gene. (2010). Substitution and supplementation between co-functional policy instruments: Evidence from state budget stabilization practices. *Public Administration Review*, 70(6), 914–924.

Howlett, M. (2018, September 2). The criteria for effective policy design: Character and context in policy instrument choice. *Journal of Asian Public Policy*, 11(3), 245–266.

Howlett, M. (2019). *Designing public policies: Principles and instruments*. Abingdon, UK: Routledge.

Howlett, M. (2000). Managing the "hollow state": Procedural policy instruments and modern governance. *Canadian Public Administration*, 43(4), 412–431.

Howlett, M., Capano, G., & Ramesh, M. (2018). Designing for robustness: Surprise, agility and improvisation in policy design. *Policy and Society*, 37(4), 405–421.

Howlett, M., & Cashore, B. (2009). The dependent variable problem in the study of policy change: Understanding policy change as a methodological problem. *Journal of Comparative Policy Analysis*, 11(1), 33–46.

Howlett, M., & Lejano, R. (2013). Tales from the Crypt: The rise and fall (and re-birth?) of policy design studies. *Administration & Society*, 45(3), 356–380.

Howlett, M., Mukherjee, I., & Woo, J. J. (2015). From tools to toolkits in policy design studies: The new design orientation towards policy formulation research. *Policy and Politics*, 43(2), 291–311. https:// doi.org/10.1332/147084414X13992869118596.

Howlett, M., Ramesh, M., & Perl, A. (2020). *Studying public policy*. New York: Oxford University Press.

Howlett, M., & Rayner, J. (2007). Design principles for policy mixes: Cohesion and coherence in "new governance arrangements". *Policy and Society*, 26(4), 1–18.

Howlett, M., & Rayner, J. (2013). Patching vs packaging in policy formulation: Assessing policy portfolio design. *Politics and Governance*, 1(2), 170–182.

Hsiao, W., & Shaw, R. P. (Eds.). (2007). *Social health insurance for developing nations*. Washington, DC: The World Bank.

Jochim, A. E., & May, P. J. (2010). Beyond subsystems: Policy regimes and governance. *Policy Studies Journal*, 38(2), 303–327.

Kern, F., & Howlett, M. (2009). Implementing transition management as policy reforms: A case study of the Dutch energy sector. *Policy Sciences.*, 42, 391–408.

Knill, C., Schulze, K., & Tosun, J. (2012). Regulatory policy outputs and impacts: Exploring a complex relationship. *Regulation & Governance*, 6(4), 427–444.

Kulesher, R., & Forrestal, E. (2014). International models of health systems financing. *Journal of Hospital Administration*, 3(4), 127–139.

Langenbrunner, J. C., O'Duagherty, S., & Cashin, C. S. (Eds.). (2009). *Designing and Implementing Health Care Provider Payment Systems: " How-to" Manuals*. Washington, DC: The World Bank.

Linder, S. H., & Peters, B. G. (1989). Instruments of government: Perceptions and contexts. *Journal of Public Policy*, 9(1), 35–58.

Liu, X. (2003). *Policy tools for allocative efficiency of health services*. Geneva: World Health Organization.

Lowi, T. J. (1972). Four systems of policy, politics, and choice. *Public Administration Review*, 32(4), 298–310.

May, P. J., Jones, B. D., Beem, B. E., Neff-Sharum, E. A., & Poague, M. K. (2005). Policy coherence and component driven policy making: Arctic policy in Canada and the United States. *Policy Studies Journal*, 33(1), 37–63. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1541-0072.2005.00091.x.

McDermott, C. L., Cashore, B., & Kanowski, P. (2009). Setting the bar: An international comparison of public and private forest policy specifications and implications for explaining policy trends. *Environmental Sciences*, 6(3), 217–237.

McDermott, C. L., Cashore, B., & Kanowski, P. (2010). *Global environmental forest policies: An international comparison*. London: Earthscan.

Milkman, K. L., Mazza, M. C., Shu, L. L., Tsay, C. J., & Bazerman, M. H. (2012). Policy bundling to overcome loss aversion: A method for improving legislative outcomes. *Organizational Behavior and Human Decision Processes*, 117(1), 158–167.

Moran, M. (2000). Understanding the welfare state: The case of health care. *The British Journal of Politics and International Relations*, 2(2), 135–160.

Peters, B. G. (2018, January 1). Comparative politics and comparative policy studies: Making the linkage. *Journal of Comparative Policy Analysis: Research and Practice*, 20(1), 88–100.

Peters, B. G., & Van Nispen, F. (1998). *Public policy instruments: Evaluating the tools of public administration*. Cheltenham: Edward Elgar.

Preker, A. S., & Harding, A. (Eds.). (2003). *Innovations in health service delivery: The corporatization of public hospitals*. Washington, DC: The World Bank.

Ramesh, M., & Bali, A. S. (2019). Healthcare in Singapore. In: Compton, M. and t'Hart, Paul (eds.), *Great policy successes: How governments get it right in a big way at least some of the time*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.

Ramesh, M., & Bali, A. S. (2021). *Health Policy in Asia*. Singapore: Cambridge University Press.

Rayner, J., Howlett, M., & Wellstead, A. (2017). Policy mixes and their alignment over time: Patching and stretching in the oil sands reclamation regime in Alberta, Canada: Alberta Oil Sands. *Environmental Policy and Governance*, 27(5), 472–483.

Rogge, K. S., & Reichardt, K. (2016). Policy mixes for sustainability transitions: An extended concept and framework for analysis. *Research Policy*, 45(8), 1620–1635.

Saguin, K. (2020). Policy completeness of new governance arrangements. *Paper presented at the University of Melbourne-NUS Workshop on Policy Tools*, January 23–24, 2020. Melbourne, Australia: University of Melbourne.

Salamon, L. M. (2002). *The tools of government. A guide to the New Governance*. New York: Oxford University Press.

Schaffrin, A., Sewerin, S., & Seubert, S. (2014) The innovativeness of national policy portfolios: Climate policy change in Austria, Germany, and the UK. *Environmental Politics*, 23(5), 860–883.

Schaffrin, A., Sewerin, S., & Seubert, S. (2015). Toward a comparative measure of climate policy output. *Policy Studies Journal*, 43(2), 257–282.

Thomann, E. (2018). Donate your organs, donate life! *Explicitness in Policy Instruments. Policy Sciences*, 51(4), 433–456. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11077-018-9324-6.

Voß, J.-P., & Simons, A. (2014). Instrument constituencies and the supply side of policy innovation: The social life of emissions trading. *Environmental Politics*, 23(5), 735–754. https://doi.org/10. 1080/ 09644016.2014.923625.

Wilder, M. (2017). Comparative public policy: Origins, themes, new directions. *Policy Studies Journal*, 45(S1), S47–S66.

Wu, X., & Ramesh, M. (2014). Market imperfections, government imperfections, and policy mixes: policy innovations in Singapore. *Policy sciences*, 47(3), 305–320.

PART III

Agenda-Setting Tools

9

AGENDA-SETTING TOOLS IN THEORY AND PRACTICE

Richa Shivakoti and Michael Howlett

In examining the policy sciences literature on policy tools and instruments, we find that the focus has mostly been on implementation tools. So this chapter presents several types of policy tools used by governments at the agenda-setting stage of the policy cycle. The agenda-setting stage is not a process driven entirely exogenously and thus outside of the purview of government activity; rather, governments control or attempt to control issue prominence and agenda-entry patterns in an effort to manage or direct their own policy timetables and agendas. This chapter adds to Christopher Hood's taxonomy of available toolsets of resources available to governments by identifying examples of agenda-setting tools available to governments.

Introduction: Non-Implementation Tools and Public Policymaking

The literature in the policy sciences on policy tools or instruments historically has focused almost exclusively on implementation tools (Hood 1986; Salamon 2002; Hood and Margetts 2007; Howlett 2011). However, each of the stages of the policy process is also subject to government action (Wu et al 2010), and distinct sets of policy tools can be identified in each of the non-implementation stages of policymaking.

This chapter addresses the situation with respect to agenda-setting or the stage in which policy issues and problems are first brought to the attention of policymakers and included as subjects of possible government policy-making activities (Cobb and Elder 1972; Kingdon 1984).

While many accounts of policymaking assume agenda-setting to be a process driven entirely exogenously and thus outside of the purview of government activity, detailed analyses of agenda-setting issue formation and behaviour have not supported this view (Cobb et al. 1976; Howlett 1997; Baumgartner and Jones 1993). Rather, these studies have all identified common practices whereby governments control or attempt to control issue prominence and agenda-entry patterns in an effort to manage or direct their own policy timetables and agendas (Rochefort and Cobb 1993).

This chapter examines this literature and focuses attention on several tools commonly employed in these efforts, ranging from funding for and regulation of stakeholder and interest group formation to information and public opinion formation through government advertising to media control or influence through freedom of information and privacy legislation. The

DOI: 10.4324/9781003163954-12

chapter highlights the significance of these efforts and the utility of using frameworks and taxonomies developed in the study of implementation tools for their analysis.

What Are Policy Tools?

Policy alternatives are composed of different sets or combinations of the policy elements described earlier. Policy instruments are the techniques or means through which states attempt to attain their goals. They are the subject of deliberation and activity at all stages of the policy process as they affect both the agenda-setting and policy formulation processes as well as being the subject of decision-making policy implementation and evaluation (Howlett 2005).

They have a special place in the consideration and study of policy design because, taken together, they comprise the contents of the toolbox from which governments must choose in building or creating public policies. Policy design elevates the analysis and practice of policy instrument choice – specifically tools for policy implementation – to a central focus of study, making their understanding and analysis a key design concern (Salamon 1981; Linder and Peters 1990). Instrument choice from this perspective in a sense, is public policymaking, and understanding and analyzing potential instrument choices involved in implementation activity is policy design. The role of a handbook in policy design thus is one of assisting "in constructing an inventory of potential public capabilities and resources that might be pertinent in any problem-solving situation" (Anderson 1977, p. 122).

It is important to repeat, however, that policy instruments exist at all stages of the policy process – with specific tools such as stakeholder consultations and government reviews intricately linked to agenda-setting activities, those like legislative rules and norms linked to decision-making behaviour and outcomes and others linked to policy evaluation, such as the use of ex-post, or after-the-fact, cost-benefit analyses (see Figure 9.1).

Although policy instruments appear in all stages of the policy process, those affecting the agenda-setting, decision-making and evaluation stages of the policy process, while very significant and important in public management (Wu et al. 2010), are less so with respect to policy design activities. This is because policy design largely takes place at the formulation stage of the policy cycle and deals with plans for the implementation stage. Thus, the key sets of policy instruments of concern to policy designers are those linked to policy implementation in the first instance and to policy formulation in the second. In the first category, we would find examples of many well-known governing tools such as public enterprises and regulatory agencies, which are expected to alter or affect the delivery of goods and services to the public and government (Salamon 2002), while in the second, we would find instruments such as regulatory impact or environmental impact appraisals, which are designed to alter and affect some aspect of the nature of policy deliberations and the consideration and assessment of alternatives (Turnpenny et al. 2009).

As pointed out in earlier chapters, policy tools are "multi-purpose", since, for example, regulation can appear in the implementation activities of several governance modes while some tools, like impact assessments, can also appear in several stages of the cycle. However, a regulation appearing within the implementation phase of a network mode of governance which mandates information disclosure, for example, serves a different purpose than a regulation found in a market mode which limits a firm to ownership of only a specific percentage of an industry. Similarly, consultations which take place in the agenda-setting stage of the policy process have a different purpose and effect than those which take place after a decision has been made.

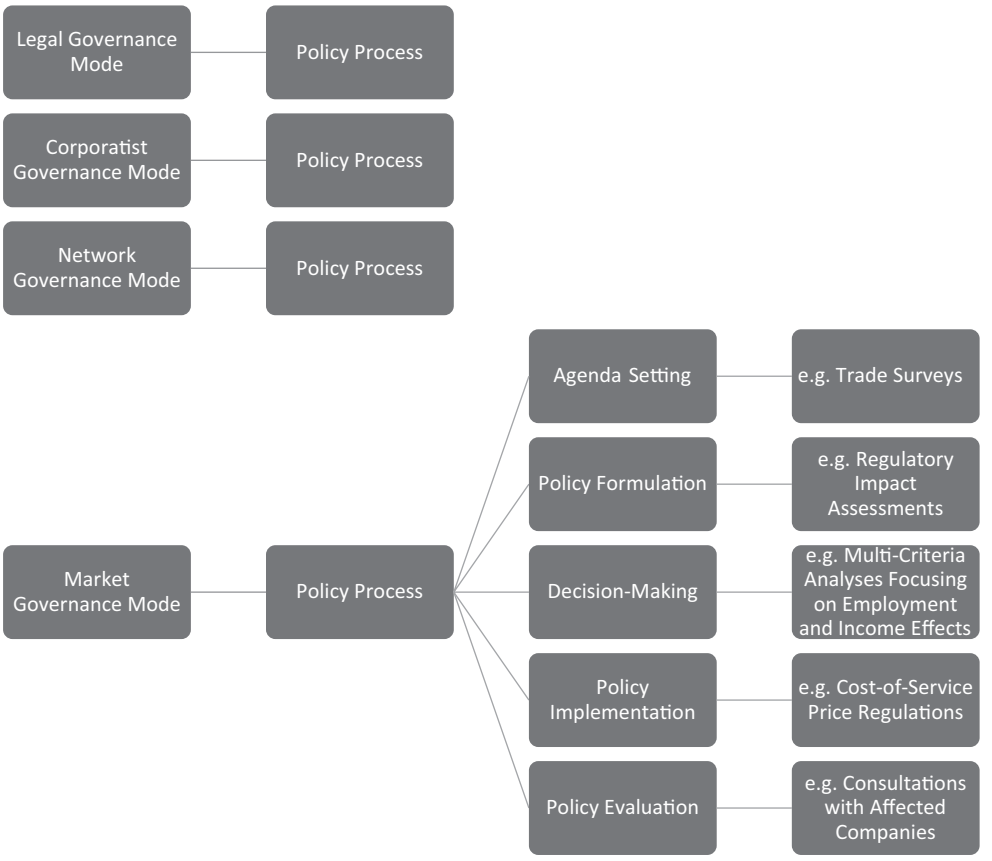


Figure 9.1 The Full Range of Policy Instruments

What Is an Agenda-Setting Tool?

What Is Agenda-Setting

As Cobb and Elder put it in their early studies of the subject in the United States:

> [P]re-political, or at least pre-decisional processes often play the most critical role in determining what issues and alternatives are to be considered by the polity and the probable choices that will be made. What happens in the decision-making councils of the formal institutions of government may do little more than recognize, document and legalize, if not legitimize, the momentary results of a continuing struggle of forces in the larger social matrix. . . . From this perspective, the critical question becomes, how does an issue or a demand become or fail to become the focus of concern and interest within a polity?
>
> *(Cobb and Elder 1972)*

The question of how a problem comes to be interpreted as a public problem requiring government action raises deeper questions about the nature of human knowledge and the social

construction of that knowledge, and the policy sciences took many years to evolve a position or theory on the nature of social problems.

It has long been generally agreed, however, that a variety of political (Castles and McKinlay 1979; Castles 1982; Hibbs 1977; King 1981; von Beyme 1984), epistemological (Hilgartner and Bosk 1981; Holzner and Marx 1979; Rochefort and Cobb 1993) and ideological (Edelman 1988; Stark 1992; Fischer and Forester 1993; Stone 1988, 1989) factors in addition to the unfolding of basic socio-economic processes can affect which social problems gain access to the formal policy agenda of government. This conceptual agreement on the basic outline of significant policy determinants, far from representing the culmination of analysis in this area of public policymaking, merely sets out the general types of variables which analysts should take into account when investigating the subject. In this same vein, a wide variety of analysts from a disparate range of fields have endorsed a model of agenda-setting first put forward by John Kingdon in his 1984 work on the operation of the US federal legislative system. His model deals with the question of state and non-state influences on agenda-setting by focusing on the role played by policy entrepreneurs both inside and outside of government in taking advantage of agenda-setting opportunities – policy windows – to move items onto formal government agendas. It suggests that the characteristics of issues – the problem stream – combine with the characteristics of political institutions and circumstances – the politics stream – and the development of policy solutions – the policy stream – in a fashion which can lead to the opening and closing of windows of opportunity for agenda entrance. Such opportunities can be seized on or not, as the case may be, by policy entrepreneurs who are able to recognize and act on them.

Kingdon's model of agenda-setting represents the orthodoxy in policy studies. Among other subjects, it has been used to describe and assess the nature of US foreign policymaking (Woods and Peake 1998); the politics of privatization in Britain, France and Germany (Zahariadis 1995; Zahariadis and Allen 1995); the nature of US domestic anti-drug policy (Sharp 1994); the collaborative behaviour of business and environmental groups in certain anti-pollution initiatives in the US and Europe (Lober 1997); and the overall nature of the reform process in Eastern Europe (Keeler 1993). It leaves open, however, the key questions of which policy actors are involved in agenda-setting and the manner in which the highlighted variables combine to affect the actions of these actors.

Beginning from the observation that the process of agenda-setting involves discussion, debate and persuasion among policymakers, who present a variety of evidence and argument in support of their position (Majone 1989), scholars such as Frank Baumgartner and Bryan Jones developed models of agenda-setting which focused on the significance of policy subsystems (Baumgartner and Jones 1991, 1993, 1994). That is, the two key actors in agenda-setting are governments and the "public", and the relationship set out between them was one in which the government responded to public concern. Both sets of actors are often assumed to be driven largely by self-interest: the government by its political wing and politicians' interest in reelection in a democratic polity and the public by rational calculations of what individuals felt could be accomplished as a result of their devotion of scarce political resources to particular problems. The key element in the process of agenda-setting, in this view, revolves around the ability of state and societal actors to control the interpretation of a problem and thus the manner in which it is conceived and discussed (Howlett and Ramesh 1995).

Many other models similarly focused on the nature of the actors involved in the process and the general characterization of agenda-setting "styles" in terms of typical relationships of power and influence existing between significant actors (Cobb, Ross and Ross 1976; Rochefort and Cobb 1993). These studies tended to support the view that agenda-setting in democratic states is largely a matter of governments responding to social pressures and focused their attention on

how the activities of interest groups could facilitate this process (Bali and Halpin 2021). Other studies, however, pointed to a much larger role played by government agencies and a variety of "boundary-spanning" organizations, such as the media, in blocking, filtering or otherwise affecting the development of public concerns, undermining the notion that agenda-setting was a relatively simple, one-way, transmission process (Downs 1972; Howlett 1997, 1996; Hogwood 1992).

That is, there is as much evidence that the government agenda drives the public as there is for the reverse situation.

What Is an Agenda-Setting Tool?

Implementation tools are the policy instruments most often studied. They affect either the content or processes of policy implementation: that is, which alter the way goods and services are delivered to the public or the manner in which such implementation processes take place (Howlett 2000). Many of the distinctions and categorizations developed to examine implementation tools remain useful in examining other types of tools as well.

One common category of implementation instrument thus, for example, proposes to alter the actual substance of the kinds of day-to-day production, distribution and consumption activities carried out in society while the other focuses upon altering political or policy behaviour in the process of the articulation of implementation goals and means. "Substantive" implementation instruments are those used to directly affect the production, distribution and consumption of goods and services in society while "procedural" implementation instruments accomplish the second purpose (Ostrom 1986; Howlett 2000, 2005).

That is, at their most basic level, all government tools fall into these two types (substantive or procedural), depending on their general goal orientation. Substantive instruments are expected to alter some aspect of the production, distribution and delivery of goods and services in society, broadly conceived to include both mundane goods and services (like school lunches) as well as a range of vices and virtues, from crude vices (such as gambling or illicit drug use) to more common individual virtues (such as charitable giving or volunteer work with the physically challenged) to the attainment of sublime collective goals (like peace and security, sustainability and well-being) and are found at the implementation stage of the policy cycle, although, of course, discussed and decided upon elsewhere.

Procedural tools, on the other hand, affect production, consumption and distribution processes only indirectly, instead affecting the behaviour of actors involved in policymaking. These actors are arrayed in policy networks which comprise very simple arrangements of nodes (actors) and links (relationships) but can result in very complex structures and interaction patterns. Policy networks include sets of formal institutional and informal relational linkages between governmental and other policy actors, which are typically structured around shared beliefs and interests in public policymaking and implementation. In order to pursue their preferred policy initiatives, governments must interact with other state and non-state actors who might possess diverging interests (Leik 1992). They use procedural tools to alter the behaviour of policy network members involved in policy-making processes. They are only tangentially related to productive or consumptive behaviour, if at all, and figure more clearly at stages such as agenda-setting.

Types of Government Agenda-Setting Tools

This chapter presents the different types of policy tools governments can use at the agenda-setting stage of the policy cycle. By examining the toolsets available to the government at this

Table 9.1 Examples of Agenda-Setting Tools by Resource Used

Nodality	*Authority*	*Treasure*	*Organization*
Government Communications	Sunset clauses	Charitable deductions	Scenario planning
Issue management	Periodic review		Strategic foresight

stage, we can better study and understand how governments control or attempt to control issue prominence while trying to manage or direct their own policy timetables and agendas.

Christopher Hood presented a toolset that governments use to govern which he called the NATO scheme and argued that governments tend to possess four basic resources by virtue of being government: nodality, authority, treasure and organization (Hood 1986). Nodality denotes the use of government information resources to influence and direct policy actions through the provision or withholding of "information" or "knowledge" from societal actors. Authority denotes the possession of legal or official power: i.e., the power officially to demand, forbid, guarantee, adjudicate. Treasure denotes the possession of a stock of moneys or "fungible chattels". Organization denotes the possession of a stock of people with whatever skills they may have (soldiers, workers, bureaucrats), land, buildings, materials, computers and equipment, somehow arranged (Hood and Margetts 2007).

Hood's NATO taxonomy can be used to identify examples of the different agenda-setting tools available to governments. Table 9.1 lists several specific types of agenda-setting tools available.

Specific Types of Procedural Agenda-Setting Tools

Nodality Tools: Government Communications and Issue Management

Government communications are the "sermons" in the "carrots, sticks, organizations and sermons" formulation of basic policy instrument types. Evert Vedung defines these "sermons" as "Efforts to use the knowledge and data available to governments to influence consumer and producer behaviour in a direction consistent with government aims and wishes" and/or "gather information in order to further their aims and ambitions" (Vedung and van der Doelen 1998). This definition, while useful, is limited in that it conceals or elides several dimensions of information tool use and the general purposes to which they can be put.

Two dimensions of government communications activities in particular are often incorrectly juxtaposed in the literature on the subject. First, whether the communication activities are intended to serve as devices primarily oriented towards the manipulation of policy actors (Saward 1992; Edelman 1988) or social and economic ones (Hornik 1989; Jahn et al. 2005) and second, which stages of the production process or policy cycle different communication tools focus on (Howlett 2009). Both missing dimensions require further elaboration in order to develop a workable definition and classification of communication tools for comparative purposes.

With respect to the first "substantive" dimension, much existing literature focuses very much on the manipulation of the behaviour of economic actors – namely, consumers and producers – to the neglect of the effects such tools can and do have on other kinds of policy and policy network actors and activities. With respect to the second "procedural" concern, many studies focus exclusively on the role of government communications as part of the agenda-setting process in government (Mikenberg 2001; Sulitzeanu-Kenan 2007), on its role in policy implementation (Salmon 1989a, 1989b) or on their effect on consumption activities and actors versus

those involving productive or distributive activities. These are quite different roles and functions within the policy and production processes, however, and should be carefully distinguished from each other in order to understand the links and linkages that exist between government communication strategies and activities and policy outcomes such as accountability and policy efficacy and in order to assess any trends or directions in the use of these instruments, either cross-sectorally, cross-nationally or, over time, both.

Authority-Based Tools: Sunset Clauses and Periodic Review

A sunset clause is a legal provision that provides for the expiry of a law or part of a law at a later date. A sunset clause does not aim at continuity; rather it "sets the sun" on a provision or entire statute on a specific date unless there are substantial reasons to believe that the former should be extended for a determined period (Ranchordas 2014). Unlike most laws, the continued validity of legislation subject to a sunset clause is contingent on some future action by the legislature (Ip 2014).

A sunset clause can be used as an agenda-setting tool as it can set an expiration date to a legal provision at the outset. Within Hood's NATO taxonomy, sunset clauses and periodic reviews can be seen as "authority" resources used by the government to set the agenda as they can use their power to introduce a policy when needed and mandate the termination date ahead of time based on a periodic review of its usefulness. Overcoming legislative inertia can be seen as one of the major rationales for sunset clauses as they change the default position from permanent to temporary. A sunset clause provides enough leeway to extend the provision at a later date if necessary after a periodic review has taken place. But, more importantly, it sets a policy termination date at the outset, which can otherwise be a difficult thing to do as there can be resistance to termination (Bardach 1976; deLeon 1978, 1983; Kirkpatrick et al. 1999; Geva-May 2004) by different groups along with legislative inertia.

According to Veit and Jantz (2013), a sunset clause has two main characteristics. It creates a "threat of termination" for laws by shifting the burden of proof from those who would terminate a policy program to those who would renew it, and it requires a periodic review and evaluation of the effectiveness and efficiency of government functions and program. The termination or renewal should only occur after an ex-post evaluation has been completed so it can verify whether the objective was achieved or if the provision should be renewed. A periodic review and evaluation means that sunset clauses can serve to provide a broader legislative perspective and can foster evaluation activities and policy learning.

Veit and Jantz (2013), in their empirical study of the application of sunsetting in four countries – the United States, Australia, Switzerland and Germany – conclude that implementation of sunsetting is a difficult task. They write that on the one hand, international experiences show that general sunset regimes often fail because of limited time and resources for sunset reviews, a lack of acceptance and unrealistic expectations with regard to the effects of sunsetting. On the other hand, sunset clauses are an established feature of the regulatory toolbox – they are used to bring about political compromise, to strengthen parliamentary control of regulatory activities in government agencies or to foster better regulation and evidence-based policymaking. So sunset clauses and periodic reviews can be used as tools at the agenda-setting phase to bring about specific policies and programs for a limited time and give the discretion to renew or terminate it as necessary.

Treasure-Based Tools: Interest Group and NGO Funding

Governments can use policy tools that give an economic benefit to a favored group, not just by appropriating money but also by exempting an event or a transaction from taxation. This

way, such tools can allocate benefits and have several advantages as it will not further burden the government's budget and can also reduce the apparent burden of taxation on individuals. But economists have been quick to point out that the economic effect of such deductions can be equivalent to an appropriation of public funds, both from the point of view of the government, which is deprived of that portion of receipts from taxation, and from the point of view of the taxpayer, who is allowed to retain funds that would otherwise be taxed (Yarmolinsky 2000).

Charitable deductions permit certain taxpayers to deduct their contributions to charitable, educational and scientific organizations in calculating their taxable income. From the perspective of the government, allowing for charitable deductions can be seen as a carrot to incentivize people to give to certain kinds of charities that may have positive externalities. As noted by Brody and Cordes (2006) and Cordes (2011), the most visible way in which the federal government acts as a benefactor of non-profit sector is by allowing individuals and corporations an income tax deduction for the value of their charitable contributions. These deductions can be viewed as providing an important economic incentive for private donors to provide financial support to a wide range of philanthropic enterprises. It can also have the direct effect of freeing the government from having to perform the same service, which can thereby be seen as the government subsidizing itself. The public service performed by the contribution may be something that government could not have done, given the lack of either the means or the will to do it, and could remain untended if a charitable initiative did not intervene.

Within Hood's NATO taxonomy, charitable deductions can be seen as a "treasure" resource, used by the government to set the agenda by using its authority while deciding what kinds of activities should be indirectly supported by giving tax-exempt status and how citizens can be incentivized to support certain kinds of programs that have positive externalities. They forgo taxes to their treasury in exchange for some activity they think is good and would like to promote.

Organization-Based Tools: Scenario Planning and Strategic Foresight

Scenario planning is a policy tool used to plan for uncertain times in the future. It is a process of positing several informed, plausible and imagined alternative future environments in which decisions about the future may be played out for the purpose of changing current thinking, improving decision-making, enhancing human and organization learning and improving performance (Chermack 2005). Within Hood's (1986) NATO taxonomy, scenario planning can be seen as an "organization" resource used by the government to set the agenda for planning for the future. The government can used its resources such as people, information and materials to study various scenarios for the future and how it can better manage and prepare for them.

Scenario planning has become an important agenda-setting tool in recent years. Given the uncertainties of public policymaking, it has the potential to prepare and better manage complex decisions and spot early warning signals about future problems. It can also be used to identify and manage conflicts and to try to find common ground for future action when there are diverging societal interests and values. As an agenda-setting tool, it is important as it can first be used as a policy risk-free space to visualize, rehearse and test the acceptability of different strategies without being implicated by the actual constraints of day-to-day policymaking (Volkery and Ribeiro 2009).

Even though people have been interested in the future and have used scenarios indirectly to explore it, scenario planning as a strategic planning tool is firmly rooted in the military and has been employed by military strategists throughout history. Modern-day scenario techniques, however, only emerged in the post-war period in the 1960s with the emergence of

two geographical centers in the USA and France (Bradfield et al. 2005). Scenario planning is still not used extensively by governments and is usually executed in a rather ad hoc and isolated manner. Volkery and Ribeiro (2009), in their review of evaluative scenario literature in public policymaking, find that it is mostly geared towards indirect decision support in the early phases of policymaking such as agenda-setting and issue framing but not in later phases such as policy design and implementation. They conclude that political and institutional context factors need to be treated with greater care in the future as making decisions under conditions of deep uncertainty requires not only rigorous analysis but also political will and more stable institutional settings and organizational capacities to build up trust and experience with adaptive, flexible process formats.

Future forecasting and strategic foresight are agenda-setting tools used to help decision-makers develop future-oriented policies in uncertain times (Konnola et al. 2011; Georghiou and Harper 2011). Habegger (2010) differentiates between the two, stating that future forecasting tries to capture and anticipate potential future developments and to generate visions of how society evolves and what policy options are available to shape a desired future, while strategic foresight can be seen as a deliberate attempt to broaden the boundaries of perception and to expand the awareness of emerging issues and situations. It aims to support strategic thinking and decision-making by developing a range of possible ways the future could unfold. Like scenario planning, both future forecasting and strategic foresight fall under the "organization" resource in Hood's NATO taxonomy as the government uses its available organized resources to plan for uncertain times in the future.

Various authors (Leigh 2003; Calof and Smith 2010; Habegger 2010) have identified many different factors that lead to government-led foresight success. Leigh identified five ways in which strategic foresight teams can contribute to more innovative government: anticipating emerging issues, identifying unanticipated consequences, getting a sense of the "big picture", drawing a wide range of information sources and involving the public. Based on experiences from the United Kingdom, Singapore and the Netherlands, Habegger includes having a scientific edge in terms of specific foresight methods and processes, allowing for innovation, fostering iterative interactions between stakeholders and obtaining the trust and support of top bureaucrats to support the idea of exploring futures that may be quite different from the present conditions as elements of successful foresight exercises.

At the agenda-setting phase, future forecasting and strategic foresight can also be used to inform policy by enhancing the knowledge base for thinking about and designing policies and can even help in identifying current policy gaps. In many cases, it can be used by policymakers as a signaling device to show the public that scientific rationale and planning are used in making policies.

Conclusion: Agenda-Setting Tools and Policy Instrument Studies

As Linder and Peters, Davis Bobrow, Peter May, Patricia Ingraham, Christopher Hood, Renate Mayntz and the other pioneers of policy design research in the 1980s and 1990s argued, like other kinds of design activities in manufacturing and construction, policy design involves three fundamental aspects: (1) knowledge of the basic building blocks or materials with which actors must work in constructing a (policy) object, (2) the elaboration of a set of principles regarding how these materials should be combined in that construction and (3) understanding the process by which a design becomes translated into reality. In a policy context, this means understanding the kinds of implementation tools governments have at their disposal in attempting to alter some aspect of society and societal behaviour, elaborating a set of principles concerning which

instruments should be used in which circumstances and understanding the nuances of policy formulation and implementation processes in government.

Establishing the nature of the policy "space" is a crucial activity in analyzing policy tool choices (May 1981). Generally speaking, policymakers should "consider the range of feasible" options possible in a given circumstance and package these into sets of "competing strategies" to achieve policy goals (May 1981, pp. 236 and 238). As David Weimer (1992) has argued, "Instruments, alone or in combination, must be crafted to fit particular substantive, organizational and political contexts" (p. 373).

This is just as true of agenda-setting tools as any other. While this chapter has gone some way towards describing and classifying agenda-setting tools and instruments, a much larger research agenda remains to describe the patterns of, and reasons for, their use.

References

Anderson, C. W. *Statecraft: An Introduction to Political Choice and Judgement*. New York: John Wiley and Sons, 1977.

Bali, Azad, and Darren Halpin. "Agenda-Setting Instruments: Means and Strategies for the Management of Policy Demands." *Policy and Society* 40, no. 3 (2021): 333–344.

Bardach, Eugene. "Policy Termination as a Political Process." *Policy Sciences* 7 (1976): 123–131.

Baumgartner, F. R., and B. D. Jones. *Agendas and Instability in American Politics*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1993.

Baumgartner, Frank R., and Bryan D. Jones. "Agenda Dynamics and Policy Subsystems." *Journal of Politics* 53, no. 4 (1991): 1044–1074.

Baumgartner, Frank R., and Bryan D. Jones. "Attention, Boundary Effects, and Large-Scale Policy Change in Air Transportation Policy." In *The Politics of Problem Definition: Shaping the Policy Agenda*, edited by D. A. Rochefort and R. W. Cobb. Lawrence: University of Kansas Press, 1994.

Bradfield, R. et al. "The Origins and Evolution of Scenario Techniques in Long Range Business Planning." *Futures* 37 (2005): 795–812.

Brody, Evelyn, and Joseph J. Cordes. "Tax Treatment of Nonprofit Organizations: A Two-Edged Sword?" In *Nonprofits and Government*, edited by Elizabeth Boris and C. Eugene Steuerle. Washington, DC: Urban Institute Press, 2006, pp. 141–181.

Calof, Jonathan, and Jack E. Smith. "Critical Success Factors for Government-Led Foresight." *Science and Public Policy* 37, no. 1 (February 2010): 31–40.

Castles, Francis G. "The Impact of Parties on Public Expenditure." In *The Impact of Parties: Politics and Policies in Democratic Capitalist States*, edited by Francis G. Castles. London: Sage Publications, 1982, pp. 21–96.

Castles, Frank, and Robert D. McKinlay. "Does Politics Matter: An Analysis of the Public Welfare Commitment in Advanced Democratic States." *European Journal of Political Research* 7 (1979): 169–186.

Chermack, T. J. "Studying Scenario Planning: Theory, Research Suggestions and Hypotheses." *Technological Forecasting and Social Change* 72, no. 1 (2005): 59–73.

Cobb, R., J. K. Ross, and M. H. Ross. "Agenda Building as a Comparative Political Process." *American Political Science Review* 70 (1976): 127–136.

Cobb, Roger W., and Charles D. Elder. *Participation in American Politics: The Dynamics of Agenda-Building*. Boston: Allyn and Bacon, 1972, p. 12.

Cordes, Joseph J. "Rethinking the Deduction for Charitable Contributions: Evaluating the Effects of Deficit-Reduction Proposals." *National Tax Journal* 64, no. 4 (December 2011): 1001–1024.

deLeon, Peter. "Policy Evaluation and Program Termination." *Policy Studies Review* (1983): 631–647.

deLeon, Peter. "Public Policy Termination. An End and a Beginning." *Policy Analysis* 4 (1978): 369–392.

Downs, A. "Up and Down with Ecology: The 'Issue-Attention Cycle'." *Public Interest* 28 (1972): 38–50.

Edelman, Murray J. *Constructing the Political Spectacle*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1988, pp. 12–13.

Fischer, Frank, and John Forester, eds. *The Argumentative Turn in Policy Analysis and Planning*. Durham: Duke University Press, 1993.

Georghiou, Luke, and Jennifer C. Harper. "From Priority-Setting to Articulation of Demand: Foresight for Research and Innovation Policy and Strategy." *Futures* 43 (2011): 243–251.

Geva-May, Iris. "Riding the Wave of Opportunity: Termination in Public Policy." *Journal of Public Administration Research and Theory* 14 (2004): 309–333.
Habegger, Beat. "Strategic Foresight in Public Policy: Reviewing the Experiences of the UK, Singapore, and the Netherlands." *Futures* 42 (2010): 49–58.
Hibbs Jr., Douglas A. "Political Parties and Macroeconomic Policy." *American Political Science Review* 71 (1977): 1467–1487.
Hilgartner, Stephen, and Charles L. Bosk. "The Rise and Fall of Social Problems: A Public Arenas Model." *American Journal of Sociology* 94, no. 1 (1981): 53–78.
Hogwood, Brian W. "Ups and Downs: Is There an Issue-Attention Cycle in Britain?" *Glasgow: Strathclyde Papers in Government and Politics* 89 (1992).
Holzner, Burkhart, and John H. Marx. *Knowledge Application: The Knowledge System in Society*. Boston: Allyn and Bacon, 1979.
Hood, Christopher. *The Tools of Government*. Chatham: Chatham House Publishers, 1986.
Hood, Christopher, and Helen Z. Margetts. *The Tools of Government in the Digital Age*. Basingstoke: Palgrave Macmillan, 2007.
Hornik, R. "The Knowledge-Behavior Gap in Public Information Campaigns." In *Information Campaigns: Managing the Process of Social Change*, edited by C. Salmon. Newberry Park: Sage, 1989.
Howlett, M. "Managing the 'Hollow State': Procedural Policy Instruments and Modern Governance." *Canadian Public Administration* 43, no. 4 (2000): 412–431.
Howlett, M. "What Is a Policy Instrument? Policy Tools, Policy Mixes and Policy Implementation Styles." In *Designing Government: From Instruments to Governance*, edited by P. Eliadis, M. Hill, and M. Howlett. Montreal: McGill-Queen's University Press, 2005, pp. 31–50.
Howlett, Michael. *Agenda-Setting in Canada: Evidence from Six Case Studies*, Paper Presented to the Annual Meeting of the British Columbia Political Studies Association, Prince George, 1996.
Howlett, Michael. *Designing Public Policies: Principles and Instruments*. New York: Routledge, 2011.
Howlett, Michael. "Government Communication as a Policy Tool: A Framework for Analysis." *The Canadian Political Science Review* 3, no. 2 (June 2009): 23–37.
Howlett, Michael. "Issue-Attention Cycles and Punctuated Equilibrium Models Re-Considered: An Empirical Examination of Agenda-Setting in Canada." *Canadian Journal of Political Science* (1997).
Howlett, Michael, and M. Ramesh. *Studying Public Policy: Policy Cycles and Policy Subsystems*. Toronto: Oxford University Press, 1995.Ip, J. C. "Sunset Clauses and Counterterrorism Legislation." *Public Law* (January, 2014): 74–99.
Jahn, G., M. Schramm, and A. Spiller. "The Reliability of Certification: Quality Labels as a Consumer Policy Tool." *Journal of Consumer Policy* 28 (2005): 53–73.
Keeler, John T. S. "Opening the Window for Reform: Mandates, Crises and Extraordinary Policy-Making." *Comparative Political Studies* 25, no. 4 (1993): 433–486.
King, Anthony. "What Do Elections Decide?" In *Democracy at the Polls: A Comparative Study of Competitive National Elections*, edited by David Butler, Howard R. Penniman, and Austin Ranney. Washington, DC: American Enterprise Institute for Public Policy Research, 1981.
Kingdon, J. W. *Agendas, Alternatives, and Public Policies*. Boston: Little Brown and Company, 1984.
Kirkpatrick, Susan et al. "The Policy Termination Process." *Review of Policy Research* 16 (1999): 209–238.
Konnola, T. et al. "Foresight Tacking Societal Challenges: Impacts and Implications on Policy-Making." *Futures* 43 (2011): 252–264.
Leigh, Andrew. "Thinking Ahead: Strategic Foresight and Government." *Australian Journal of Public Administration* 62, no. 2 (June 2003): 3–10.
Leik, R. K. "New Directions for Network Exchange Theory: Strategic Manipulation of Network Linkages." *Social Networks* 14 (1992): 309–323.
Linder, Stephen H., and B. Guy Peters. "An Institutional Approach to the Theory of Policy-Making: The Role of Guidance Mechanisms in Policy Formulation." *Journal of Theoretical Politics* 2, no. 1 (January 1, 1990): 59–83.
Lober, Douglas J. "Explaining the Formation of Business-Environmentalist Collaborations: Collaborative Windows and the Paper Task Force." *Policy Sciences* 30 (1997): 1–24.
Majone, Giandomenico. *Evidence, Argument, and Persuasion in the Policy Process*. New Haven, CT: Yale University Press, 1989.
May, Peter J. "Hints for Crafting Alternative Policies." *Policy Analysis* 7, no. 2 (1981): 227–244.
Mikenberg, M. "The Radical Right in Public Office: Agenda-Setting and Policy Effects." *West European Politics* 24, no. 4 (2001): 1–21.

Ostrom, E. "A Method of Institutional Analysis." In *Guidance, Control and Evaluation in the Public Sector*, edited by F. X. Kaufman, G. Majone, and V. Ostrom. Berlin: deGruyter, 1986, pp. 459–475.

Ranchordas, Sofia. "Sunset Clauses and Experimental Regulations: Blessing or Curse for Legal Certainty." *Statute Law Review* (February 11, 2014): 1–18.

Rochefort, David A., and Roger W. Cobb. "Problem Definition, Agenda Access, and Policy Change." *Policy Studies Journal* 21, no. 1 (1993): 56–71.

Salamon, L. M. "Rethinking Public Management: Third-Party Government and the Changing Forms of Government Action." *Public Policy* 29, no. 3 (1981): 255–275.

Salamon, L. M. *The Tools of Government: A Guide to the New Governance*. New York: Oxford University Press, 2002.

Salmon, C. "Campaigns for Social Improvement: An Overview of Values, Rationales, and Impacts." In *Information Campaigns: Managing the Process of Social Change*. Newberry Park: Sage, 1989a, pp. 1–32.

Salmon, C. *Information Campaigns: Managing the Process of Social Change*. Newberry Park: Sage, 1989b.

Saward, M. *Co-optive Politics and State Legitimacy*. Aldershot: Dartmouth, 1992.

Sharp, Elaine B. "Paradoxes of National Anti-Drug Policymaking." In *The Politics of Problem Definition: Shaping the Policy Agenda*, edited by David A. Rochefort and Roger W. Cobb. Lawrence: University Press of Kansas, 1994, pp. 98–116.

Stark, Andrew. "'Political-Discourse' Analysis and the Debate Over Canada's Lobbying Legislation." *Canadian Journal of Political Science* 25, no. 3 (1992): 513–534.

Stone, Deborah A. "Causal Stories and the Formation of Policy Agendas." *Political Science Quarterly* 104, no. 2 (1989): 281–300.

Stone, Deborah A. *Policy Paradox and Political Reason*. Glenview: Scott, Foresman, 1988.

Sulitzeanu-Kenan, R. "Scything the Grass: Agenda-Setting Consequences of Appointing Public Inquiries in the UK, A Longnitudinal Analysos." *Policy and Politics* 35, no. 4 (2007): 629–650.

Turnpenny, John, Claudio M. Radaelli, Andrew Jordan, and Klaus Jacob. "The Policy and Politics of Policy Appraisal: Emerging Trends and New Directions." *Journal of European Public Policy* 16, no. 4 (2009): 640–653.

Vedung, E., and Frans C. J. van der Doelen. "The Sermon: Information Programs in the Public Policy Process: Choice, Effects and Evaluation." In *Carrots, Sticks and Sermons: Policy Instruments and Their Evaluation*, edited by M. L. Bemelmans-Videc and R. C. Rist. New Brunswick, NJ: Transaction Publishers, 1998, pp. 103–128.

Veit, Sylvia, and Bastian Jantz. "Sunset Legislation: Theoretical Reflections and International Experiences" In *Better Business Regulation in a Risk Society*, edited by Alberto Alemanno, Frank den Butter, Andre Nijsen, and Jacopo Torriti. New York: Springer, 2013, pp. 267–284.

Volkery, Axel, and Teresa Ribeiro. "Scenario Planning in Public Policy: Understanding Use, Impacts and the Role of Institutional Context Factors." *Technological Forecasting & Social Change* 76 (2009): 1198–1207.

von Beyme, Klaus. "Do Parties Matter? The Impact of Parties on the Key Decisions in the Political System." *Government and Opposition* 19 (1984): 5–29.

Weimer, D. L. "The Craft of Policy Design: Can It Be More Than Art?" *Policy Studies Review* 11, no. 3/4 (1992): 370–388.

Woods, B. Dan, and Jeffrey S. Peake. "The Dynamics of Foreign Policy Agenda-Setting." *American Political Science Review* 92, no. 1 (1998): 173–184.

Wu, Xun, M. Ramesh, Michael Howlett, and Scott Fritzen. *The Public Policy Primer: Managing Public Policy*. London: Routledge, 2010.

Yarmolinsky, Adam. "The Charitable Deduction: Subsidy or Limitation?" *Nonprofit and Voluntary Sector Quarterly* 29 (2000): 173–178.

Zahariadis, N. *Markets, States, and Public Policy: Privatization in Britain and France*. Ann Arbor: University of Michigan Press, 1995.

Zahariadis, Nikoloas, and Christopher S. Allen. "Ideas, Networks, and Policy Streams: Privatization in Britain and Germany." *Policy Studies Review* 14, nos. 1/2 (1995): 71–98.

10

FORMAL AGENDA-SETTING GOVERNMENT TOOLS

Periodic Evaluations and Reviews

Valerie Pattyn and Pirmin Bundi

The dominant focus in agenda-setting scholarship on external factors driving governments' agenda can make us overlook that governments also have many formal tools at their disposal to steer and manage their own agenda and timetables. In this chapter, we study the agenda-setting potential of three such procedural tools, which have thus far received little attention in prior research: periodic policy reviews, spending reviews, and sunset reviews. We discuss their major attributes, their underpinning rational assumptions, and the way they have been institutionalized and routinized in countries' evaluation systems and reflect on the conditions that foster or jeopardize their agenda-setting impact. Throughout the chapter, we draw on different empirical examples from various countries. While these tools are very often strongly institutionalized, the actual impact on agenda-setting should generally not be overestimated.

Introduction

The dominant focus in agenda-setting scholarship on external factors driving governments' agenda can make us overlook that governments also have many formal tools at their disposal to steer and manage their own agenda and timetables (Rochefort and Cobb, 1993; Howlett and Shivakoti, 2014). Such in-house government tools get much less attention than exogenous agenda-setting forces, even though they may be as influential as social pressures or pushes from interest groups on governments' priorities and timetables (Baumgartner and Jones, 1993).

In recent decades, governments worldwide increasingly invested in the institutionalization of these tools, with the intention of controlling issue prominence. In this chapter, we review the agenda-setting potential and influence of a particular group of evaluation-related tools governments often resort to in the agenda-setting stage. Policy evaluations, which we define as 'structured and objective assessments of the content, implementation, or impact of policies or programmes' (OECD, 2020), are typically conceived in a retrospective ex-post way only and as the concluding stage of the policy process (Vedung, 1997).

However, particular evaluation tools also play an important analytical role in setting up and managing the agendas of governments. This contribution discusses the agenda-setting role of three in-house tools: budget reviews, policy reviews, and sunset reviews. While each of these

DOI: 10.4324/9781003163954-13

tools looks backward, they also generate and block policy options for the future. It is this hybrid nature that makes them particularly interesting to study.

Policy analysis literature and policy tool scholarship has thus far paid little attention to them. In this chapter, we address this void. In the first section, we concisely discuss what characterizes them as a particular group of policy tools and with which rationale they are generally introduced by governments. Next, we review the potential of each of the three tools in theory. Thereafter, we focus on the actual value of these tools as empirically observed in practice and discuss several drivers and impediments for impact. We conclude with a general discussion of our findings.

Evaluation Tools With Agenda-Setting Potential: Classification and Rationale

A full understanding of the role of evaluation tools in the agenda-setting stage requires a comprehensive approach to policy instruments, in line with the more recent shift in policy design studies since the late 1990s (Howlett, 2019a). Policy evaluations or reviews are not always consistently classified in policy analytical literature, however, and in the many approaches to policy instruments circulating (see e.g., Acciai and Capano, 2021 for an overview). Radin (2013), for instance, considers evaluation tools as an exponent of the broader family of analytical tools. Schick (1977), along the same line of thinking, approaches them as a type of analycentric or decision support tools.

Relying on Howlett (2019a) and drawing on the extended NATO typology (Hood, 1983), evaluation tools can be conceived as well as procedural policy instruments. Procedural policy tools, other than substantive tools, only indirectly impact the production, consumption and distribution processes of target groups through affecting the behavior of actors involved in policymaking themselves (Howlett, 2019a: 56). More in particular, the type of evaluation tools at stake in this chapter has the potential to (re)structure the policy process by altering the number of policy options in the policy process or the calculations of costs and benefits of different options possible (cfr. Bressers and Klok, 1988; Howlett, 2000). As a result, they can influence the substantive outcome of implementation activities. Common to the tools discussed is that they are formally embedded in government legislation or regulation. They all require the (re)consideration of policy priorities at particular time intervals.

Further drawing on this typology, and as propagated in Howlett and Shivakoti (2014), the evaluation tools can be conceived as cases of authoritative policy instruments. Authority implies that governing bodies of the public sector, such as government agencies or parliaments, possess the power to demand evaluations (Bundi, 2016; Pattyn et al., 2019; Bali and Halpin, 2021). They mandate certain procedural requirements in the policy-making process to ensure that policies pass the test of effectiveness, efficiency, or other evaluation criteria often stipulated in law or regulations. Interestingly, the target group of such authoritative instruments are policymakers themselves. Whether the evaluation tools are indeed effective and implemented as mandated will thus also largely depend on how policymakers conceive the legitimacy and relevance of this mandate.

To be sure, our chapter centers on in-house instruments. The in-house qualification in the first place concerns the actor commissioning their production, with 'in-house' usually referring to government ministries (i.e., for policy reviews) or the cabinet committee (i.e., for spending reviews). Typical for these tools, which by nature rely on scientific procedures, is the frequent involvement of research-oriented parties in the production of the evidence, however, such as universities, government research institutions or consultants.

Finally, the type of instruments at stake is of primary relevance for the agenda-setting stage. As hinted at before, such evaluation tools can in fact be used throughout the entire policy cycle, including when a policy is still in operation or when a policy has already been concluded. Also, the type of evidence these tools produce tends to be of a mixed nature, with evidence yielding suggestions of 'where to go', which is typically connected with agenda-setting but at times also pointing at routes about 'how to get there', the latter being associated with policy formulation (Turnpenny et al., 2015: 4). In sum, the classification of evaluation tools as particular policy instruments serves in the first place as an analytical heuristic and should be treated with care.

While the commitment to particular policy tools will be contingent on the interplay between macro, meso and micro factors (Linder and Peters, 1989; Peters, 2000), and while each of the tools discussed has a particular rationale, the introduction of evaluation instruments such as policy reviews, spending reviews and sunset reviews is to be mainly situated with the introduction of New Public Management (NPM) in the late 1970s. This neoliberal wave came with the incorporation of private sector principles in the public sector and a heavy emphasis on value for money and efficiency (Vedung, 2010; De Francesco and Pattyn, 2021). One of the central principles of NPM is output-based management and control by measuring government performance (Vedung, 2010). As a result, with evaluation being a key tool for measuring outcomes and impacts and responding to the need for improved accountability, NPM served as a major driver for the introduction of evaluation tools in the public sector (Pattyn et al., 2018).

Besides NPM, 'evidence-based' policy or 'evidence-informed' policy as a normative principle and the 'what works' discourse (Vedung, 2010) was a major impetus for the dissemination of evaluations and policy reviews, also for the purpose of agenda-setting. For the 2008 financial crisis, for instance, evaluation tools were seen as having the potential to help governments making decisions what to cut and to find new ways of addressing public needs and delivering services (Stame, 2012; Mavrot and Pattyn, 2022). More in general, evidence-informed policy is seen as a way to reduce non-design spaces by prioritizing policy decisions that are justified by theoretically informed empirical analysis (Howlett, 2019a: 64).

Agenda-Setting Potential of Procedural Authoritative Evaluation Tools

Budget Reviews

Given their backward-looking and forward-looking approach, budget reviews have been portrayed as tools breathing the spirit of integrated policy analysis or policy design (van Nispen and de Jong, 2017). Various modes and classifications of budget reviews exist, with spending reviews and expenditure reviews commonly seen as the main types, although the distinction is not always consistently applied in practice. While expenditure reviews may result in suggesting proposals for extra funding, spending reviews are focused on identifying potential savings in relation to the baseline and examining the consequences of alternative lower levels of funding. They can be further subdivided in one-off and semi-permanent proposals for smart savings based on the assessment of the effectiveness and efficiency of policy measures (i.e., functional reviews) or the timeliness of the objectives (i.e., strategic reviews) (van Nispen and de Jong, 2017). Budget reviews are mainly coordinated by a cabinet committee under the auspices of either the Prime Minister or the Minister of Finance. Line ministries are often in charge of drafting reports of their particular ministry and are consequently actively engaged in the review process (van Nispen, 2016).

Especially since the 2008 financial crisis, budget reviews were reinvigorated in popularity as strategic tools that could help countries identifying savings in a 'smart' way (OECD, 2011; van

Nispen, 2016). As reported by the OECD in 2019, all but six OECD countries at the time used budget reviews to some extent and in some format. Empirically, much variation exists in the frequency and way in which budget reviews are conducted across countries, and it would exceed the scope of this chapter to elaborate on this in detail. Countries such as the Netherlands and Germany, for instance, organize spending reviews of selected spending programmes each year within a limited area. Other countries, such as the UK and Ireland, prioritize comprehensive spending reviews, which take place at specific time intervals, often in response to the election of a new government or between elections – for instance, in reaction to tough fiscal pressures (OECD, 2019a).

Comprehensive reviews, as the term itself reveals, are broader in scope and are focused on the whole of government. They are to large extent similar to zero-based budgeting (van Nispen, 2016). Also the COVID-19 pandemic seems to have triggered the organization of (comprehensive) spending reviews, which was the case in Flanders (Belgium), for instance, where such review was launched for the first time in 2021. Spending review practices are also rapidly evolving, with innovative new types being adopted in recent years. Noteworthy, for instance, is the 2017 introduction of the Public Values Framework in the UK, inspired by Moore's public value theory (1995). The framework seeks to define everything that a public body should be doing to maximize the likelihood of delivering optimal value from the funding it receives. It uses a set of criteria to assess how likely it is that value is being maximized by the activities that are taking place. These criteria revolve around four pillars relating to overarching goals the public body aims to achieve and the progress made towards it, the public body's financial management, the involvement of citizens and users and the extent to which system capacity is developed (HM Treasury, 2019: 4). Also, other countries such as the Netherlands recently piloted a public values scan (*Publieke Waarde Scan*), modeled along the UK framework.

Irrespective the particular type, budget reviews are a tool par excellence to give the government improved control over the level of aggregate expenditure and have potential to affect the policy agenda. Governments can use the tool to cut less effective and efficient spending, which enables them to safeguard key spending priorities or to reprioritize expenditure that does not run counter to higher-level government policy objectives and wider fiscal objectives. As a result, they can be seen as a tool to block spending decisions that are driven by narrow, near-term interests.

Budget reviews from this perspective contrast with the normal focus in the budget, which tends to be characterized by (competing) demands for incremental increases (OECD, 2019a: 113). For reviews, the budget cycle serves as the most important platform for deciding on the outcomes of the reviews and incorporating potential savings. Quite evidently, this is a strong political process rather than an economic one (van Nispen and de Jong, 2017: 158) as governments have much discretion in deciding whether the results generated by the reviews will be used and which of the proposed scenarios for savings or reprioritization are adopted. With spending reviews not taking current funding as a given, they de facto also shift the burden of proof to those who want to continue the current program (van Nispen, 2016: 482). Budget reviews are thus an inherent political instrument, which is no different than any other evaluation tool (Mavrot and Pattyn, 2022).

Policy Reviews

Although the term 'policy reviews' is frequently used to refer to evaluations of single programs or policy measures, the very label is, in principle, reserved for periodic and systematic reviews

of policies. Policy reviews are best seen as a synthesis of existing program evaluations, which – provided that such evaluations are available – do not require additional research or fieldwork.

Just like budget reviews, policy reviews are promoted for their ability to deliver policy-relevant information on the effectiveness and efficiency of current policies and can impact governments' decision to proceed on the same basis, to implement changes or to terminate policies. Given their synthetic nature, policy reviews also hold the potential to identify overlap and wanted or unwanted side effects between different policy measures. They can, as a result, contribute to the resilience and robustness of policies by making recommendations to make different policy measures more coherent and consistent and to bring them in sync with each other (Howlett, 2019b).

Although systematic reviews are in vogue, generally speaking, not many countries have developed procedures and guidelines for policy reviews, at least to our knowledge. Scholarly works discussing policy reviews (e.g., van Nispen and de Jong, 2017) typically focus on the Netherlands as a country with a strongly institutionalized system of policy reviews. The Dutch style of policy reviews, or policy appraisals, has also been explicitly labelled as unique among European countries (Klein Haarhuis, 2020: 91).

The origin of policy reviews as procedural tools of 'involuntary self-assessment' (van Nispen and de Jong, 2017: 154) is to be situated in the framework of attempts to improve the quality and pace of financial reporting (Jonker et al., 2016) and performance-based budgeting. Performance budgeting in the Netherlands underwent a major reorientation in 2010 with the Accountable Budgeting Reform that shifted away from the idealized image of integrated comprehensive control of the budget via performance information to a more differentiated approach that focused on the benefits and use of information on the effectiveness and efficiency of policies. Also, in this reform, there was a shift and thus greater emphasis on the responsibility of ministries for policy results. Overall, the picture is one of a realistic adjustment of expectations regarding the behavior of actors involved and a material strengthening of evidence-based decision-making based on both performance information and evaluations (Kaiser et al., 2021).

As it currently stands, the budget serves as the primary structuring mechanism for the organization of policy reviews, which tend to be at the level of a budget item. The latter typically concerns several programs, subsidies or government agencies. The synthetic nature of the review should enable the assessment as to whether the 'final performance is greater than the sum of its parts' (Jonker et al., 2016).

Unlike budget reviews, the ownership of policy reviews is in the hands of line ministries and so can be applied in a more tailor-made fashion, considering the characteristics (and sensitivities) of a particular policy field. The Ministry of Finance stipulates the guidelines (i.e., regulation periodic evaluations [*regeling periodiek evaluatieonderzoek*]) and is in charge of the central formulation of the terms of reference of the reviews. The guidelines also imply that reviews are organized on a rolling basis, with the idea that the whole budget is reviewed every seven years at least (van Nispen and de Jong, 2017). The accent is primarily on accountability and legitimacy, although learning and enlightenment have more recently been added as additional aims (Klein Haarhuis, 2020). Interestingly, both the research design of the reviews and the actual findings are submitted to Parliament in the Netherlands. MPs are given the chance to add any questions and to comment on the topic and substance before the start of the review. In 2014, Parliament requested more insight into potential saving options for inefficient policies which they could use in their election manifestos (Jonker et al., 2016). Since then, the requirement has been added to identify measures in case of 20% budget cuts. By building in parliamentary reporting and feedback mechanisms, opportunities for agenda-setting maneuvering have thus been institutionalized. Similar to budget reviews, policy reviews, by design, clearly put the burden of proof on those willing to continue current policies.

Sunset Reviews

A sunset review is an evaluation of the need for the continued existence of a program that is often legally based in an evaluation clause (Balthasar, 2009). A review typically yields a recommendation to either retain the program, to modify it or to allow the program to terminate, including the repeal of relevant statutes (Joint Legislative Audit & Review Committee, 2018).

Veit and Jantz (2011: 170) define sunset legislation as follows:

> When we speak of sunset legislation, we are not referring to the widespread, case-by-case evaluation and limitation of laws, [it] represents an attempt to systematically integrate the evaluation and limitation of legal norms into the legislative process – either in the form of a general obligation to limit and/or evaluate time limits or in the form of institutionalized tests of time limits as part of the legislative process.

Its original can be found in sunset legislation (i.e., temporary laws subject to review) (Flückiger and Popelier, 2022).

Sunset laws have their origins in deregulation and anti-bureaucratic policies in the United States (Ranchordás, 2014: 21 f). Such laws are usually introduced to provide an alternative to the increasing volume of legislation, simply by limiting their duration and by inserting an evaluation clause conditioning their continuation. For instance, the USA PATRIOT Act (2001) was designed as a sunset law that allowed federal prosecutorial powers in the aftermath of the 9/11 attacks. Underhill et al. (2020) show that sunset clauses often induce a broader range of compromise beliefs and significantly more support for conservative legislation compared to liberal legislation. In the same vein, Flückiger and Popelier (2022) argue that the hopes of de-bureaucratization were quickly disappointed since sunset laws were often renewed automatically without the results of evaluations.

As Berry (1986) points out, a sunset review consists of the basic elements of an evaluation, which assesses both the process and outcome of the legislation. Such reviews allow decision-makers to review the usefulness of the current legislation and to make necessary adjustments. However, sunset legislations usually do not provide concrete guidance as to the design and methods that are required for the evaluation, which is why government agencies often conduct evaluations that do not address the need of the specific sunset legislation. Either they focus too much on the implementation process (and ignore the outcome and impact of a policy), or they provide their report too late so that decision-makers are forced to take action without knowing the final result of the review. Beadnell et al. (2017) highlight that soft skills like facilitation are equally essential to making sunset reviews work since these enable the production of rigorous evaluations that work within the timing of sunset legislation.

There is an increasing discussion in various contemporary democracies whether and to what extent sunset provisions can be used to support the goals of better regulation (Veit and Jantz, 2011). On the one hand, they provide a legitimation base for government organizations in order to conduct evaluations. In Switzerland, for instance, Article 24 of the Energy Utilization Decision of October 14, 1990, established the legal mandate to evaluate the action program, which was designed as 'sunset legislation' (Sager et al., 2017). On the other hand, Veit and Jantz (2011) argue that the temporary nature of laws is to be conceived as an attempt to bring about a renewed 'artificial' agenda-setting at certain points in the political process. It is assumed that windows of opportunity for policy change do not open automatically when laws are ineffective or generate undesired outcomes.

By setting a time limit, policymakers have to decide about the continuation of a policy after a certain period of validity of a legal norm. This decision can be made on the basis of an

evaluation, which triggers evidence-informed policy making (Head, 2016). To sum up, sunset reviews provide a tool to structurally not forget policy issues, which can be used strategically by actors such as parliaments and government agencies. If we conceive the political agenda as the 'list of issues to which political actors pay attention' (Walgrave et al., 2008: 815), then a sunset review functions as a news ticker that pop ups periodically on the political agenda.

Agenda-Setting Value in Practice? Drivers and Barriers

This chapter has mainly focused on the value of evaluation tools for agenda-setting without considering whether this potential is also met. While assessing their real impact is not straightforward, and differences across polities and tools exist, it is safe to argue that their added value should generally not be overestimated. For spending reviews, the limited effect is often built into their very design. Even in countries with a long-standing tradition such as the UK or Canada, and where a close link between spending reviews and the budget cycle exists, savings usually do not exceed 15% of the in-scope spending (van Nispen and de Jong, 2017: 159).

Other than this, studies have pointed at major problems in implementing reviews, which jeopardize their effect. In an OECD (2019a) survey, governments themselves reported a wide range of challenges they are confronted with in the implementation of budget reviews, and spending reviews in particular.

The top-reported challenges concern the availability of performance information and the poor quality of performance information and data. It is evident that budget reviews very much depend on the availability of valid and reliable information, which should enable making informed decisions about the effectiveness and efficiency of expenditure. This is not possible without a continuous development of performance indicators that can help identifying savings options or evaluations that provide evidence on the outcome and efficiency of policy measures.

Budget reviews are a very resource-intensive activity, requiring that all aspects of the process are designed to deliver the best possible return. Governments also indicated a struggle with inattention to implementation, time constraints for the implementation, a lack of political support and a lack of capacity to organize such budgetary reviews, amongst other, less frequently named impediments (OECD, 2019a: 115–116). To maximize use, reviews should be integrated as a full part of the budget preparation process, rather than on an ad hoc basis. Additionally, the successful implementation of reviews and evaluation requires political leadership at the top level that can approve the procedure, set the criteria for the identification of savings and the decision on which saving options to adopt (OECD, 2019b). This is not to say, of course, that politicians themselves should be involved in the actual implementation of the reviews. On the contrary, the fact that review topics can be chosen irrespective of current policies or views of policymakers and that 'out of the box' options can be named have been mentioned as important conditions to make spending reviews succeed (van den Heuvel, 2019).

For policy reviews in particular, a recent meta-analysis in the Dutch context (SEO, 2018) revealed that in only 2% of the review studies could a causal relationship between input and outcome be made plausible; in most of the instances (40%), the relationship was qualified as 'reasonably accounted for'. Challenges not only relate to methodological difficulties in isolating policy effects from external influences on goal indicators and the lack of effectiveness evaluation in individual studies underlying policy reviews but can also be attributed to a mere lack of evaluation knowledge and capacity among commissioners of the reviews. Additionally, existing policy reviews often lack information on alternative policy options (efficiency). Interestingly, the study also pointed at strong disincentives for line ministries to share information on ineffectiveness, which is more a cultural hurdle to overcome (van den Heuvel, 2019). Knowing that the

Netherlands is among the highest-scoring European countries on indices of evaluation maturity (Furubo and Sandahl, 2002; Stockmann et al., 2020), the challenge is probably even more pronounced for countries without such tradition.

As to sunset reviews, the four-country study of Veit and Jantz (2011) in the US, Australia, Germany and Switzerland is insightful. Even though the US is considered a pioneer in sunset legislation, sunset reviews were abolished in several US states after only a few years. The main reason was the immense amount of resources required by legislatures that often only work part time (Kearney, 1990; Squire, 2017). Due to work overload, laws were often automatically extended after the end of the term without the legislature exercising any actual oversight function. In addition, the use of fixed-term clauses did not lead to substantial closure of government agencies, nor did it save any significant amount of budgetary resources.

Hence, general fixed-term clauses proved to be ineffective and unsuited for the federal states, which were the main target of sunset legislation in the United States. In contrast, Australia knows a general time limit requirement for sub-statutory regulations at the central government level (Legislative Instruments Act). Laws are valid for ten years before they are evaluated by the authorities. However, an internal evaluation showed that the actual evaluation activities of the government organizations have so far been inadequate in many cases, despite comprehensive evaluation obligations and support materials.

A pragmatic approach to evaluation requirements, varying from case to case, seems to prevail with recent attempts, particularly at the sub-state level, to establish the level of administrative burdens as a decisive criterion for the intensity of evaluation activities (McMillan and Ombudsman, 2009). Also in Germany, sunset legislation is widespread across federal states. Administrative regulations are even subject to a general time limit requirement in ten federal states, which is typically five years (Jantz and Veit, 2010). Even though there is an obligation to check all draft laws of the federal government ex ante as to whether time limits are possible and whether an evaluation should be carried out, Veit (2010) shows that this has been implemented inadequately in practice. In Switzerland, finally, the obligation to evaluate public measures is not linked to a general obligation to set a time limit. However, the Federal Office of Justice explicitly includes the possibility of setting time limits for laws and formulates a corresponding list of criteria (Bundesamt für Justiz, 2019). Accordingly, laws should be limited in time if they deal with temporarily occurring problems or problems that can be permanently solved by other suitable measures after a certain period of time.

Furthermore, time limits are advisable for laws with uncertain effects, for laws with high financial costs and for laws that are to be periodically reviewed with a view to systematic impact control. Wirths et al. (2017) show that more than three-quarters of evaluation clauses are already introduced by the administration in the bill. In most cases, evaluation clauses are then seen as a promising tool for evidence-based governance of public services and policy programs.

Of course, a successful implementation of reviews and evaluations does not guarantee use and an actual impact on governments' agendas. Research has shown that there is much waste of reviews and evaluations: results from high-quality evaluations are not always used, even in settings with high evaluation maturity (Pattyn and Bouterse, 2020). For instance, in a study on the use of evaluations and policy reviews produced between 2013 and 2016 by the Policy and Operations Evaluation Department (IOB) of the Dutch Ministry of Foreign Affairs (i.e., a typical case of relatively high evaluation maturity), only five out of eighteen studies produced were perceived to be used, at least in an instrumental way (Pattyn and Bouterse, 2020).

Such observations confirm that policymaking is highly complex and that it would be naive to think that evaluations and reviews would be used in a linear and rational way. Of the plethora of conditions that may influence use, this study highlighted the importance of interest among

policymakers for the evaluation or review and engaging them in the evaluation process. It is not surprising, of course, that an evaluation will only be used when the main policymaker(s) are really dedicated to doing so. By the same token, it was shown that timing matters a lot and that reviews and evaluations have more potential to make a difference when taking place simultaneously with drafting new/changed policy measures (Pattyn and Bouterse, 2020).

While some evaluations and reviews have been shown to result in tangible changes of governments' agenda, and whereas evidence exists of reviews having impact on election programmes of political parties (see van den Heuvel, 2019, for examples of the Dutch case), results from evaluations or reviews are often merely 'used as additional background information, or as political ammunition in budget negotiations both for extra spending or spending cuts, and [are] simply ignored if not useful' (van Nispen and de Jong, 2017: 159).

One cannot ignore the very politics of evaluations and reviews, which is unavoidable given their close entangling with the policy process. As a matter of fact, and given the increasing institutionalization of such procedural tools, both political and administrative actors over time learned to make the best of evaluations and reviews by using them not only as reflective tools with epistemic relevance to improve policy making, but also as political instruments helping them pursuing their own agendas (Mavrot and Pattyn, 2022). Evaluations and reviews by nature lend the rational arguments to strategically package and justify predefined administrative or political priorities in a seemingly value-neutral, 'evidence-based' way. Of course, strategic 'underuse' or 'misuse' of reviews and evaluations is not an argument to throw the baby out with the bathwater.

Conclusion

The family of tools discussed in this chapter share the characteristic that they permit issues (back) on the agenda at set intervals (Bali and Halpin, 2021). Given their procedural anchorage, each of the tools de facto requires those wishing to continue the policy to justify this position. As can be derived from the summary overview (Table 10.1), the instruments vary in the extent to which they also put other policy ideas on the agenda or whether they are rather backward looking and reactive only.

Each of the tools addresses different dimensions and hence provides other information to decision-makers. For instance, budget reviews are very much focused on the potential savings for the public budgetary and therefore rather focus on efficiency. Policy reviews are mostly

Table 10.1 Reviews as Policy Tools for Agenda-Setting

Principal	*Budget Reviews*	*Policy Reviews*	*Sunset Reviews*
	Cabinet Committee	*Spending Department*	*Legislator*
Aim	Potential savings (spending reviews) and proposals for extra funding (expenditure reviews)	Arguments/ information	Accountability/ information
Focus	Spending	Policy relevance	Goal attainment, effectiveness
Unit of Analysis	Policy	Program	Program/organization
Impact on Agenda	Reactive and proactive, leaving some room for new policy ideas	Mainly reactive, leaving little room for new policy ideas	Reactive, leaving little room for new policy ideas

Source: Authors' elaboration, based on van Nispen and de Jong (2017: 155)

concerned about arguments and information and discuss the relevance of policies which leave organizations more methodical leverage than the other reviews. Finally, sunset reviews are aimed at addressing the effectiveness of public measures and whether they have reached their foreseen objectives.

Over time, the use of such procedural evaluation tools has been strongly institutionalized in the public sector, to the extent that scholars increasingly talk – often in a pejorative way – about emerging 'evaluation systems' (Leeuw and Furubo, 2008) in which the application of such tools has become strongly routinized practice. It is particularly this often uncritical routinization which made observers question their added value in many instances (Raimondo and Leeuw, 2021). Our analysis shows that, independently of the political system, the implementation and use of reviews and evaluations are indeed very ad hoc. They have definitely not reached the point where they set the agenda systematically and regularly. Amongst other elements, organizational capacity proves essential for successful implementation.

Irrespective of mere implementation challenges, the critical question also arises as to what the optimal volume of review is that governments can engage in. With decision-makers often having many studies at their disposal already, they risk lacking the time to process all relevant information, even if such information is of high quality. Moreover, timing is critical. Reviews can only play a comprehensive role in agenda-setting if they are already taken into account during the legislation process.

In the future, governments may take advantage of the use of modern ICT methods to systematically use review information (Cahlikova and Ballester, 2022), provided that the contextual contingencies and autonomous learning 'problems' of AI are overcome. But again, with evaluations and reviews being intrinsic political undertakings, it will ultimately be a strategic – not merely a technical – decision whether governments are willing to walk this path.

References

Acciai, C., & Capano, G. (2021). Policy instruments at work: A meta-analysis of their applications. *Public Administration*, 99(1), 118–136.

Bali, A., & Halpin, D. (2021). Agenda-setting instruments: Means and strategies for the management of policy demands. *Policy and Society*, 40(3), 333–344.

Balthasar, A. (2009). Institutional design and utilization of evaluation: A contribution to a theory of evaluation influence based on Swiss experience. *Evaluation Review*, 33(3), 226–256.

Baumgartner, F. R., & B. D. Jones. (1993). *Agendas and Instability in American Politics*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press.

Beadnell, B., Carmichael Djang, H., Vanslyke, J., & Andersen, B. (2017). Evaluation at sunset: Considerations when evaluating a program as it concludes. *The Foundation Review*, 9(1), 6.

Berry, L. (1986). Providing guidance for program evaluations: Sunset reviews versus evaluation plans. *Evaluation Review*, 10(6), 757–775.

Bressers, H., & Klok, P. J. (1988). Fundamentals for a theory of policy instruments. *International Journal of Social Economics*, 15(3/4), 22–41.

Bundesamt für Justiz (2019). *Leitfaden für die Ausarbeitung von Erlassen des Bundes*. Bern: Bundesamt für Justiz.

Bundi, P. (2016). What do we know about the demand for evaluation? Insights from the parliamentary arena. *American Journal of Evaluation*, 37(4), 522–541.

Cahlikova, T., & Ballester, O. (2022). Evaluation and digitalisation: What are the key challenges for evaluation processes and evaluators? In F. Varone, S. Jacob, & P. Bundi (Eds.), *Edward Elgar Handbook on Public Policy Evaluation*. Cheltenham: Edward Elgar Publishing.

De Francesco, F., & Pattyn, V. (2021). Policy evaluation styles. In M. Howlett & J. Tosun (Eds.), *The Routledge Handbook of Policy Styles* (pp. 408–421). Routledge.

Flückiger, A., & Popelier, P. (2022). Policy Evaluation in the Legislative Cycle. In F. Varone, S. Jacob, & P. Bundi (Eds.), *Edward Elgar Handbook on Public Policy Evaluation*. Cheltenham: Edward Elgar Publishing.

Furubo, J. E., Rist, R. C., & Sandahl, R. (2002). *International Atlas of Evaluation*. New Brunswick: Transaction Publishers.

Head, B. W. (2016). Toward more "evidence-informed" policy making? *Public Administration Review*, 76(3), 472–484.

HM Treasury (2019). *The Public Value Framework: With Supplementary Guidance*. London: UK Government. www.gov.uk/government/publications

Hood, C. (1983). *The Tools of Government*. London: Macmillan.

Howlett, M. (2019a). *Designing Public Policies: Principles and Instruments*. 2nd edition. London: Routledge.

Howlett, M. (2019b). Procedural policy tools and the temporal dimensions of policy design resilience, robustness and the sequencing of policy mixes. *International Review of Public Policy*, 1(1), 27–45.

Howlett, M. (2000). Managing the "hollow state": Procedural policy instruments and modern governance. *Canadian Public Administration*, 43(4), 412–431.

Howlett, M., & Shivakoti, R. (2014). Agenda-setting tools: State-driven agenda activity from government relations to scenario forecasting. ECPR Glasgow General Conference Non-Implementation Tools Panel.

Jantz, B., & Veit, S. (2010). *Bessere Rechtsetzung durch Befristungs- und Evaluationsklauseln? Empfehlungen zur Befristung von Bundesgesetzen in Deutschland auf Basis einer empirischen Auswertung internationaler Erfahrungen*. Potsdam/Gütersloh: Bertelsmann-Stiftung.

Joint Legislative Audit & Review Committee (2018). *What Is a Sunset Review?* Washington, DC: Washington State Legislation.

Jonker, J. J., Keulen, S., Ten Cate, B., & Timmermans, J. (2016). Policy evaluation in the Netherlands (EES16–0674). Paper presented at the European Evaluation Society Conference, Maastricht.

Kaiser, N., Odermatt, B., Haering B, Bundi, P., Ladner, A., & Proeller, I. (2021). Neues Führungsmodell für die Bundesverwaltung NFB: Vollzugs- und Wirkungsevaluation. Im Auftrag der Eidgenössischen Finanzverwaltung. Zürich and Lausanne: Econcept and IDHEAP.

Kearney, R. C. (1990). Sunset: A survey and analysis of the state experience. *Public Administration Review*, 50(1), 49-57.

Klein Haarhuis, C. (2020). The Netherlands. In R. Stockmann, W. Meyer, & L. Taube (Eds.), *The Institutionalisation of Evaluation in Europe* (pp. 89–114). London: Palgrave Macmillan.

Leeuw, F. L., & Furubo, J.-E. (2008). Evaluation systems: What are they and why study them? *Evaluation*, 14(2), 157–169.

Linder, S. H., & Peters, B. G. (1989). Instruments of government: Perceptions and contexts. *Journal of Public Policy*, 9(1), 35–58.

Mavrot, C., & Pattyn, V. (2022). The politics of evaluation. In A. Ladner & F. Sager (Eds.), *Edward Elgar Handbook on the Politics of Public Administration*. Cheltenham: Edward Elgar Publishing.

McMillan, J., & Ombudsman, C. (2009). Review of the Legislative Instruments Act 2003. Paper to the Australia-New Zealand Scrutiny of Legislation Conference, Canberra, 7 July. www.aph.gov.au/About_Parliament/Senate/Whats_On/Conferences/-sl_conference/papers/mcmillan.

Moore, M. H. (1995). *Creating Public Value: Strategic Management in Government*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press.

OECD (2011). OECD Senior Budget Officials Network on Performance and Results – 7th Annual meeting. Typology and implementation of spending reviews. Discussion paper. GOV/PGC/SBO(2011)9. Paris: OECD Conference Centre.

OECD (2019a). *Budgeting and Public Expenditures in OECD Countries 2019*. Paris: OECD Publishing. https://doi.org/10.1787/9789264307957-en.

OECD (2019b). *Spending Reviews: Fiscal Sustainability of Health Systems – Enhancing the Dialogue*. Paris: OECD Publishing.

OECD (2020). *Improving Governance with Policy Evaluation: Lessons From Country Experiences. OECD Public Governance Reviews*. Paris: OECD Publishing.

Pattyn, V., & Bouterse, M. (2020). Explaining use and non-use of policy evaluations in a mature evaluation setting. *Humanities and Social Sciences Communications* 7, 85. https://doi.org/10.1057/s41599-020-00575-y.

Pattyn, V., De Peuter, B., & Brans, M. (2019). Why do ministers ask for policy evaluation studies? The case of the Flemish government. *Politische Vierteljahresschrift* 60(4), 701–717.

Pattyn, V., Van Voorst, S., Mastenbroek, E., & Dunlop, C. A. (2018). Policy evaluation in Europe. In E. Ongaro & S. Van Thiel (Eds.), *The Palgrave Handbook of Public Administration and Management in Europe* (pp. 577–593). London: Palgrave Macmillan.

Peters, B. G. (2000). Policy instruments and public management: Bridging the gaps. *Journal of Public Administration Research and Theory* 10(1), 35–47.

Radin, B. (2013). *Beyond Machiavelli*. Washington, DC: Georgetown University Press.

Raimondo, E., & Leeuw, F. L. (2021). Evaluation systems and bureaucratic capture: Locked in the system and potential avenues for change. In B. Perrin & T. Tyrrell (Eds.), *Comparative Policy Evaluation: Vol. 29. Changing Bureaucracies: Adapting to Uncertainty, and How Evaluation Can Help*. Abingdon, UK: Routledge.

Ranchordás, S. (2014). *Constitutional Sunsets and Experimental Legislation: A Comparative Perspective*. Cheltenham: Edward Elgar Publishing.

Rochefort, D. A., & R. W. Cobb. (1993). Problem definition, agenda access, and policy choice. *Policy Studies Journal* 21(1), 56–71.

Sager, F., Ingold, K., & Balthasar, A. (2017). Policy-Analyse in der Schweiz. Besonderheiten, Theorien, Beispiele. Zürich: NZZ Libro-Buchverlag Neue Zürcher Zeitung NZZ Libro (Politik und Gesellschaft in der Schweiz, Band 4).

Schick, A. (1977). Beyond analysis. *Public Administration Review* 37(3), 258–263.

SEO (2018). *Beleidsdoorlichtingen belicht. Studie uitgevoerd in opdracht van het Ministerie van Financiën. 2018–110*. www.seo.nl/publicaties/beleidsdoorlichtingen-belicht/ (Accessed 4 October 2021).

Squire, P. (2017). A Squire index update. *State Politics & Policy Quarterly* 17(4), 361–371.

Stame, N. (2012). Evaluation and learning in the current crisis. *Evaluation Connections* (January, 3–4).

Stockmann, R., Meyer, W., & Taube, L. (2020). *The Institutionalisation of Evaluation in Europe*. London: Palgrave Macmillan.

Turnpenny, J. R., Jordan, A. J., Benson, D., & Rayner, T. (2015). The tools of policy formulation: An introduction. In A. J. Jordan & J. R. Turnpenny (Eds.), *The Tools of Policy Formulation: Actors, Capacities, Venues and Effects* (pp. 3-29). Cheltenham: Edward Elgar Publishing.

Underhill, K., Ayres, I., & Bhandarkar, P. (2020). Sunsets Are for Suckers: An Experimental Test of Sunset Clauses. Columbia Law and Economics Working Paper No. 651.

van den Heuvel, M. (2019). Evaluating in the Netherlands: Best practices and lessons learned. Dutch Ministry of Finance. Strategic Analysis Unit. Presentation at Styringskonferansen. Direktoratet for forvaltning og økonomistyring. Norway.

van Nispen, F. K., & de Jong, M. (2017). Evidence-based budgetary policy: Speaking truth to power? In M. Brans, I. Geva-May, & M. Howlett (Eds.), *Routledge Handbook of Comparative Policy Analysis* (pp. 143–165). New York: Routledge.

Vedung, E. (1997). *Public policy and program evaluation*. New Brunswick, NJ: Transaction.

Vedung, E. (2010). Four waves of evaluation diffusion. *Evaluation*, 16(3), 263–277.

Veit, S. (2010). *Bessere Gesetze durch Folgenabschätzung?: Deutschland und Schweden im Vergleich*. Wiesbaden: Springer-Verlag.

Veit, S., & Jantz, B. (2011). Sunset Legislation als Instrument der besseren Rechtsetzung: Wunderwaffe oder stumpfes Schwert? *Schweizer Jahrbuch Der Verwaltungswissenschaften*, 2(1), 167–178.

Walgrave, S., Soroka, S., & Nuytemans, M. (2008). The mass media's political agenda-setting power: A longitudinal analysis of media, parliament, and government in Belgium (1993 to 2000). *Comparative Political Studies*, 41(6), 814–836.

Wirths, D., Rosser, C., Horber-Papazian, K., & Mader, L. (2017). Über die gesetzliche Verankerung von Evaluation: die Verteilung von Evaluationsklauseln und deren Auswirkungen auf kantonaler Ebene. In F. Sager, A. Balthasar, & T. Widmer (Hrsg.), *Evaluation im politischen System der Schweiz: Entwicklung, Bedeutung und Wechselwirkungen* (pp. 155–188). Zürich: NZZ.

11

TOOLS TO PROMOTE POPULAR MOBILIZATION AND SOCIAL ADVOCACY

Social Identities, Policy Programs, Careers, and Education

Johanna Hornung and Nils C. Bandelow

There are different theoretical perspectives on why policy actors promote certain policy proposals, but they all have in common that a policy idea needs support – from the public, key actors in government and administration, or influential corporatist actors such as interest groups – to be successful. How do policy actors gain supporters for their ideas in the agenda-setting phase? Which tools do they use to promote their ideas at this stage? This contribution argues that policy actors can make use of the career motivations and social psychological drivers of actors' behavior to achieve popular mobilization and social advocacy for their ideas. In detail, we set out the mechanisms that link a policy idea successfully entering the agenda-setting stage to the tools used by policy actors by drawing on the lens of the programmatic action framework (PAF). We thereby distinguish four types of tools through which actors seize the attention of decisive actors and promote their policy proposals: those that target the salience of social identities of policy actors that favor policy proposals (social identity-driven tools), those that target the normative implications of policy proposals (program-driven tools), those that achieve issue attention through the exertion of authority and motivate actors in promising top-level positions (career-driven tools), and those that build on the creation of knowledge and evidence in the policy process (education-driven tools). We also discuss the delineation and overlapping of these tools with regard to existing classifications of policy tools and provide practical advice to use these tools for ensuring long-term support of a policy program by a diversity of actors throughout the policy cycle.

Introduction: The Need for Actor-Centered Policy Tools in Agenda-Setting

Policy instruments and policy tools are consistently defined as the means and techniques deployed by policy actors to achieve policy goals (Howlett 1991; Capano and Howlett 2020). Depending on the stage of the policy process a policy issue finds itself in, however, goal achievement may refer to different things. In the dominant and widely used understanding of policy

DOI: 10.4324/9781003163954-14

instruments as concerned with effective policy implementation, policy goals describe the desire for certain outcomes. In the agenda-setting phase of the policy cycle, though, the goals of policy actors rather lie in raising public awareness of a policy problem among both policy and societal actors and ideally already gathering support for a preferred policy instrument (or tool mix) in combination with a presented policy idea (Zahariadis 2016).

There are different theoretical perspectives on why policy actors promote certain policy proposals, but they all have in common that a policy idea needs support – from the public, key actors in government and administration, or influential corporatist actors such as interest groups – to be successful. How do policy actors gain supporters for their ideas in the agenda-setting phase? Which tools do they use to promote their ideas at this stage? Despite a range of existing classifications to delineate different types of policy instruments, there is so far only limited attention to procedural policy instruments that have an impact on policy-making processes and policy actors' behavior (Bali et al. 2021). Focusing explicitly on those discussed in the context of agenda-setting, we add an actor-centered perspective to the tools used by actors to mobilize the public and foster social advocacy for policy proposals.

Due to its actor-centered perspective, the classification that is developed in this contribution takes into account psychological insights on the preference formation and behavior of actors. The integration of (social) psychological theories into public policy research has a long-standing tradition, with its beginning prominently marked by the work of Herbert Simon (1976) on (procedural) rationality as rational individual behavior bounded by institutional constraints. Since then, the concepts of belief systems, personality traits, and social groups have been subsequently integrated in part in theoretical explanations of policy change (Weible and Sabatier 2009; Zafonte and Sabatier 1998; Freitag and Bauer 2016; Schwartz 2021; Bandelow and Hornung 2021a). As a consequence, this contribution argues that policy actors can make use of the cognitive drivers of preferences and behavior, such as group identification, norms, the desire for authority, and rationality, to achieve popular mobilization and social advocacy for their ideas.

In detail, we set out the mechanisms that link a policy idea successfully entering the agenda-setting stage to the tools used by policy actors to gather support for this idea. Drawing on the lens of the programmatic action framework (PAF) (Hassenteufel and Genieys 2021; Bandelow et al. 2021), the tools set out in the following refer to a long-term perspective on policy ideas following a cyclical pattern of programmatic dominance. They are thus oriented not just towards tool for raising short-term attention, but to bringing actors following a policy proposal from agenda-setting to eventual implementation.

In doing so, the contribution first describes the cyclical understanding of policy ideas similar to "economic cycles" (Bandelow and Hornung 2021b). Subsequently, a classification of agenda-setting tools integrating (social) psychological insights in a long-term view distinguishes four types of tools through which actors seize the attention of decisive actors and promote their policy proposals: those that target the salience of social identities of policy actors that favor policy proposals (social identity-driven tools), those that target the normative implications of policy proposals (program-driven tools), those that achieve issue attention through the exertion of authority and motivate actors in promising top-level positions (career-driven tools), and those that build on the creation of knowledge and evidence in the policy process (education-driven tools).

The classification is delineated from existing typologies of policy tools. Besides the theoretical considerations, it also provides practical advice to use these tools for ensuring long-term support of a policy program by a diversity of actors throughout the policy cycle. This also includes the question of who should be the actors that mobilize the public and recruit supporters. We conclude by formulating a research agenda for future research on policy tools to be used from the agenda-setting stage onward.

A Cyclical Understanding of Policy Ideas

What is important to observe is the temporal dimension of a policy idea. It may be that a policy issue is only shortly on the agenda and almost instantly disappears again, as was the case during the COVID-19 pandemic, which opened opportunities for change left unused by policy actors. Per Bodenheimer and Leidenberger (2020), windows of opportunity have to be accompanied by long-term strategies to sustainably promote change in a policy area.

While it is certainly as relevant to investigate the conditions under which policy ideas fade away after having only reached the stage of agenda-setting, there is a long-term, strategic element inherent in policy design that poses the question of what tools actors use to promote popular mobilization and social advocacy in the long term. Only then is the agenda-setting phase the beginning of an ongoing process of policy formulation, design and redesign, and final implementation. Also, if general attention to a policy issue is maintained, this may be conducive to initiating a debate around the adequate design and instrument mixes addressing the identified policy problem.

The perspective of the PAF sets out a cyclical understanding of policy issues and ideas. It argues that these are connected to the careers of policy actors, and therefore policy actors have an interest in not just bringing their policy idea onto the political agenda but also in promoting it throughout the policy cycle to eventually reach career positions with this program. The notion of cyclical processes of idea promotion is not new but anchored in the issue attention cycle. However, the issue attention cycle, an observation made by Downs (1991), has less focus on actors than on issues and argues that an issue runs through different stages of public attention, which are largely driven by the nature of the issues and the media logic. Yet how policies rise and decline, from a PAF perspective at least, is a matter of actors surrounding these ideas as well. From an actor-centered perspective, it is therefore interesting to study why actors stick to a certain policy idea, and which tools can be used to foster their support from the agenda-setting stage onward.

Four Drivers of Advocacy

The question why actors support certain policy proposals and not others has been subject to an ongoing research endeavor in the policy sciences. It is connected to the understanding and explanation of the underlying functioning of human cognition as well as human preference formation and subsequent behavior. Being able to understand why actors evaluate a problem as pressing, putting it at the top of their agenda to solve it, or evaluate an instrument as particularly effective, striving toward putting it on the agenda of everyone else, is still puzzling.

An often-studied element of agenda-setting dynamics is that of a sudden shift in attention. This may be due to disasters (Crow et al. 2018), a focusing event (Birkland 2004), or a window of opportunity (Herweg et al. 2015), which stresses the hazardous consequences of inaction. Such focusing events have been found to also effect the degree to which less powerful groups mobilize and may actively and successfully advocate change in public (Birkland 1998). Recent research questions the necessary suddenness of such events, arguing that it might also be aggregate focusing events that lead to an increase in attention over time (O'Donovan 2017). Beyond the idea of exogenous happenings that affect the urgency with which individuals want to see a problem solved, however, there is also a need to turn to the endogenous drivers of agenda-setting and the tools that actors may actively employ rather than waiting for an event to come. This also adds to the literature on low-salience policies and the question of how these can be put on the agenda if they have not yet reached public opinion (Koski 2010).

Previous research on agenda-setting tools is rather scarce. A prominent existing classification stems from Hood (1986) and identifies nodality, authority, treasure, and organization as potential tools to mobilize the public. Nodality includes information tools such as government communication; authority includes any action taken by government to force anew attention to an issue, such as periodic reviews and sunset clauses; treasure relates to any financial means that the government uses to incentivize a specific behavior that sets the agenda for an issue; organization refers to the way in which the government uses its organized procedures to set an agenda: for example, by anticipating future developments through scenario building (Howlett and Shivakoti 2014).

The typology of Hood is frequently applied in current studies of agenda-setting tools (Fawcett 2021). Bali and Halpin (2021) use it as an orientation for their identification of agenda-setting tools to shape engagement from organized interests to manage policy demands. Other types of agenda-setting tools are questioned to fall under the nature of being procedural or substantive, as Stark and Yates (2021) argue for public inquiries, which are beyond the government's control. Other tools, such as open collaboration platforms for crowdsourcing, fit well in a range of the categories listed by Hood (Taeihagh 2017).

While existing typologies present important and useful steps in distinguishing (procedural) agenda-setting tools, it is so far understudied in what way actors actively make use of the cognitive mechanisms in individuals' minds, thereby using tools to set the agenda and to foster the mobilization for and advocacy of their preferred policies. It is this theoretical gap that the following classification contributes to, by theoretically deriving four types of tools and connecting them to the mechanisms through which actors may achieve long-term support for policy ideas that lasts beyond the sudden shifts in attention usually observed at the agenda-setting stage.

Social Identity–Driven Tools

Only recently has the perspective of social groups and social identities found entry into policy studies (Hornung et al. 2019; Hogg et al. 2017). With a view on the dynamics of the policy process and the explanation of policy change, the focus on individual social identification has shed light on paradigmatic change (Hornung and Bandelow 2020) and voting behavior (Vogeler et al. 2020).

The main idea is that actors orientate their preferences and behavior according to their salient social identity, meaning that depending on which group membership they are most aware of in a given moment, they will think and act differently (Turner 2010; Lalonde and Silverman 1994). Hornung et al. (2019) distinguish five general types of social identities that may be relevant in policymaking: organizational identities (such as political parties or associations), sectoral identities (such as committees or sector-specific networks), local identities (such as attachment to the hometown, state, or city), demographic and biographic identities (such as age, profession, or ancestry), and informal identities that form on the basis of informal connections and often emerge from the previous group memberships.

The group-theoretical perspective can be used in the agenda-setting phase because it allows policymakers to target individuals by triggering their group salience. Past and present research in social psychology has centered on the question of what triggers the salience of social identities, with answers including the language used (Morris et al. 2008), the targeting of campaigns (Dickson and Scheve 2006), social context (Ellemers et al. 2002), and events (Chrobot-Mason et al. 2009). Explicitly transferred to public policy research, Mols et al. (2015) add to the literature on modes of governance to outline that a long-term change in an individual's behavior and preferences requires altering the internalization of norms. This is best achieved, they state,

after depicting social relations and salient identities and understanding the norms and where they come from, to afterward address these identities in the agenda-setting process.

In detail, this means that when setting the agenda, policymakers may make use of different existing groups and their social identities to directly target individuals via their group membership. Framing individuals as members of a specific group and outlining the importance that a policy issue has for that group are essential factors for how they will evaluate ideas (Pepermans and Rousseau 2021). This comes also close to the notion set forward by Birkland (2007) that agenda-setting is a result of a struggle between groups advocating their norms to shape solutions and policies in the long term.

A special case of a social group exerting influence on the policy process is that of a programmatic group. A programmatic group is labelled according to the program it attaches to and with which it is irrevocably tied (Bandelow et al. 2021). Programmatic groups are often the result of biographical intersections of individuals: e.g., working commissions or committees. Therefore, besides using existing social group memberships and the identities they shape to trigger and transform certain ways of thinking on the side of individuals, policy actors may also actively create groups by establishing them through councils or commissions, which then also set the agenda for a certain topic.

Program-Driven Tools

Actors may also advocate a policy idea or instrument because they normatively think it is the best to choose. Some scholars might argue that individuals possess firm beliefs that have been built from socialization (Searing et al. 1973), but recent research in psychology questions this stability of norms and values. Instead, it supposes that actors may in general support any norm, and even opposite ones within shorter periods of time, just because the peers they regularly engage with change (Parsons 2015). Nevertheless, individuals may think that their norms are stable and that attaching to a certain policy idea is morally right and superior, to which psychological research on "good and evil" (Miller 2016) provides more insights.

The programmatic action framework (PAF) hypothesizes that the normative attachment to policy ideas up to cohesive programs stems not from normative convictions but from the identification with other actors surrounding the policies. This is similar to what the policy instrument literature labels instrument constituencies (Béland et al. 2018; Simons and Voß 2018), with the important difference that the source of attachment is not the instrument but the identity connected to it. As a consequence, actors do not cherish the instrument itself but the feeling of belonging to a group that dominates the debate in the search for policy alternatives and the resulting power over others, combined with the feeling of (often moral) superiority. In general, this is good news for policy actors striving to gather support for setting their agenda because it implies that individuals are generally ambiguous toward preferences and can be won over for any policy by providing them with a social group that they can identify with and that suggests the support of this proposal.

How can policy actors use this normative, program-driven tool to achieve popular mobilization and social advocacy for their ideas? First of all, the communication of a problem or a policy plays a key role. Making people feel that a problem is severe and that solving it must be put on the top of the political agenda can spark an ongoing interest that outlives until the final implementation stage. Thereby, it is necessary to convey that anyone who equally notices this problem belongs to those who truly recognize the importance of a policy issue. An example is presented by the historical corporate tax avoidance of companies operating in Australia, where campaigners have successfully framed a reform of this "deficiency" as adhering to the principles of fairness, morality, and global equality (Murphy-Gregory et al. 2020). Tosun and Scherer

(2020) stress the importance of a dominant policy image for setting the agenda. As opposed to earlier studies, the influence of the media on setting the agenda is meanwhile seen from a differentiated perspective (Dalton et al. 1998). Even if morality arguments are put forward, as was the case in the Clinton/Lewinsky scandal, these have to be connected to a policy issue and an electoral or government agenda to be impactful (Yioutas and Segvic 2003).

The second program-driven tool is continuously mentioning an issue in public and in conversations with other policy actors, bureaucrats, and sectoral actors. Psychological research informs us that often-heard concepts are remembered and internalized in the long run, thereby slightly increasing support (Ernst et al. 2017; Cacioppo and Petty 1989). At least in the area of climate policy, Muradova et al. (2020) find that proposals have a higher chance of gaining public support if they are repeated by multiple speakers in the Irish Citizen's Assembly.

At first sight, one might think that program-driven tools are only suitable to attract a specific target group of bureaucrats and the general public because both policy actors and sectoral actors have either economic or other ideologically determined interests that prevent them from promoting an issue no matter the frame if it counters the views of their primary affiliation. Yet, the "Nixon-goes-to-China" effect teaches us differently, outlining that actors may well take stances that usually lie on the opposite site of their alleged preferences. It is therefore in general always possible to also normatively convince people that a policy issue is important or a policy idea is worth pursuing if conveying the impression that it is guided by information (Sulitzeanu-Kenan and Zohlnhöfer 2019).

Career-Driven Tools

An inherent assumption in the study of programmatic action is that policy actors – above all, civil servants and bureaucrats, but also sectoral actors and party politicians – strive towards increased authority in their policy sector. This assumption is widely backed by public administration research, showing that those graduates who pursue a career in government are motivated by a wish for impact (Chetkovich 2003) and thus driven by (also intellectual) self-interest rather than ideology (Egeberg 1995; van der Wal 2013). A third tool to be used in the agenda-setting phase can thus be seen in achieving issue attention by motivating actors through promising them top-level positions. Following up from the previous two presented types of tools, this is strongly connected to the idea of the economic cycle of policy ideas and the idea that careers depend on programs and public commitment to such programs.

While the perspective of the PAF hypothesizes actors' preferences and behavior as mainly driven by social group memberships, particularly informal identities, critical voices might raise the question why, from a group-theoretical view, the individual motivation plays a role in agenda-setting. By referring to the self-categorization theory (SCT), the PAF argues that structuring human beings into social groups and categorizing oneself with reference to social groups to fulfill both the purpose of distinction from others and the search for sameness (optimal distinctiveness theory) (Brewer 1991) are integral parts of human behavior and thinking. This does not mean that individuals do not have motivations that lead them to actively join social groups or that they do not use social relations to fulfill their own goals. As a consequence, using the self-interest of actors may foster support for a policy issue or idea because they see this as an opportunity to use it for their own career advancement. This is particularly the case as the solution to problems that enter the agenda is sometimes achieved through outsourcing and sometimes through the establishment of job positions, departments, or agencies. When these are institutionalized, they also offer long-term career trajectories for those actors who are attached to it (Duque 2021).

What does this mean in detail? Policy actors, constantly striving toward career enhancement, need to at the same time stick out from the masses but also not polarize. This is also the reason agenda-setting is best carried out by a group of people in which responsibility is diffused rather than concentrated in only one policy entrepreneur whose prominence rises and falls with the policy idea. A group of actors in diverse positions has greater potential to introduce an issue at diverse points of the political system and to use it collectively for career advancement across the different institutions. To trigger the career aspirations of individuals, policymakers can (1) formulate job advertisements that correspond to their preferred policy (such as "climate mitigation observer"), (2) provide further education for employees to learn more about the topic that is to be put on the agenda, or (3) introduce new study programs into universities that educate people accordingly so that they will promote certain policies throughout their own career paths.

Education-Driven Tools

Connected to the education of individuals is the idea that policy tools used to promote popular mobilization and social advocacy can build on the integration of scientific insights served to foster knowledge and use arguments of evidence in the agenda-setting stage. When trying to convince individuals why a certain problem is important or a certain solution is the best, including scientific support in the communication helps justify and legitimize the agenda (Ettelt and Hawkins 2018). With a view on programmatic groups, this again is connected to the idea of social identities and biographies, rather than on the ideas of the "myth" of evidence-based policy-making (Cairney 2020).

Regarding biographies, it comes as no surprise that individual actors are socialized by their education and that the things they learned at university and the subjects they studied influence the way in which they think about the world in general and policies in particular. For example, students of law will have different answers to the question of how to organize health care than health economists or doctors. These views are not be confused with firm beliefs that developed during the socialization phase but constitute a way of how to see the world stemming from regular interaction with peers studying the same subjects and/or learning the same arguments. Therefore, the views are much less stable and, in general, may change quickly when the individuals are confronted with different scientific arguments and actors with different backgrounds with whom they have to work in a policy sector.

Turning to the notion of social groups, one way of including evidence in the policy process is the institutionalization of scientific advice and the establishment and use of advisory systems (Laage-Thomsen 2021). These may also serve the function of social groups and shape an identity when there are diverse actors bringing in their expertise and developing a governmental strategy. In that, their impact follows from content (policy programs or setting policy issues on the agenda) rather than from the location where the scientific advice is bound in (Craft and Howlett 2012). The institutionalization of expert advice has been found to be a main driver of the development of policy programs and, relatedly, to the formation of programmatic groups (Hornung 2021). From a policy tool perspective and related to the typology set out by Hood (1986), the regular inclusion of scientific advice in agenda-setting processes corresponds to the authoritative category of policy tools.

Agenda-Setting Policy Tools in Context

Summarizing the typology laid out in the previous sections, four general types of agenda-setting tools that are procedural by design can be imagined. Figure 11.1 visualizes this typology. The

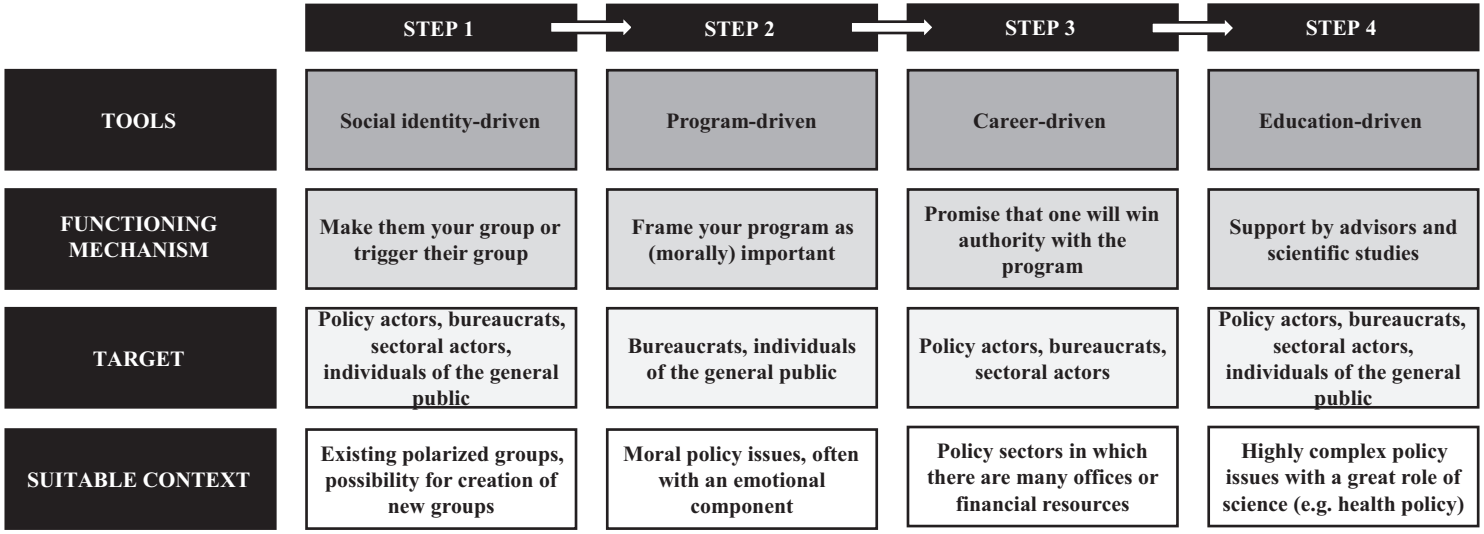


Figure 11.1 PAF Typology of Agenda-Setting Policy Tools

Source: Authors' visualization

step-wise list of tools implies and suggests that the four types of tools are ideally used in combination with each other, within a coherent strategy of agenda-setting. However, this does not exclude the possibility that single tools can be used separately from the others, depending also on the context one finds oneself in.

Regarding context, the last line of the table includes suggestions for the situations in which some tool might be more suitable than another. The social identity–driven tool functions via the mechanism of making individuals feel that they belong to their own group or triggering the salience of their already-existing identities. It is suitable for the policy context in general because it can be assumed that policy actors possess different social identification, of which it is relatively easy to find one to trigger. Program-driven tools are particularly suitable in contexts in which there is a morally superior or an emotional component involved, such as animal welfare policy. In such cases, program-driven tools may well be used to frame or reframe an issue accordingly to put it on the agenda. Career-driven tools are particularly powerful in policy sectors that offer financial or authoritative resources for the individuals working in the sector because policy actors can make them believe that it will be helpful career-wise for them to promote a policy issue. Finally, education-driven agenda-setting tools function over the support provided by advisors and scientific expertise; therefore, they are most appropriate to be employed in contexts of highly complex subjects. Policy sectors with issues that require a substantial degree of scientific expertise will find it easier to use scientific advice actively in setting the agenda.

Besides the context, which agenda-setting tool is used with the best effect is also a question of the target group. Nearly all policy tools can be employed for policy actors and sectoral actors. Program-driven tools, however, are more effective in convincing the public and non-political actors, as these have much less knowledge and fewer fixed preferences than policymakers. Career-driven tools, on the other hand, only address people who actually strive toward making a career in the policy sector, such as bureaucrats, policy actors, and sectoral actors. Social identity–driven tools and education-driven tools can be used for all sorts of clientele because both the cognitive mechanisms of group belonging and the processing of newly presented evidence function the same way.

Implications for Practice and Where to Go From Here

While these classifications are clearly a starting point for future research on the tools used by actors to bring issues onto the agenda, there are direct implications – at least in a theoretical manner – that can be derived from the aforementioned considerations. These essentially concern a hands-on guide on how to build a programmatic agenda and not just putting an issue on the political agenda for a short time, but to let it flow through the entire economic cycle policy ideas may go through (or not). It is no coincidence that the tools have been presented in a certain order, and they can almost identically be integrated into a step-wise process of gathering support among the public and organizing social advocacy.

The programmatic action framework provides a lens on policy processes that turns attention to social group memberships and biographies as drivers of individual preferences and behavior. Thereby, the present contribution derives from the assumptions of the PAF policy tools that can be used in the agenda-setting phase of the policy cycle to promote popular mobilization and social advocacy for policy issues and ideas. While the classification of agenda-setting tools remains theoretical for now, it strongly encourages empirical research on the question of which types of these agenda-setting tools are used alone or in combination, for which target groups they are used, and in the context of which policy sector.

References

Bali, Azad, and Darren Halpin. 2021. "Agenda-Setting Instruments: Means and Strategies for the Management of Policy Demands." *Policy and Society*:1–12. doi: 10.1080/14494035.2021.1955489.

Bali, Azad Singh, Michael Howlett, Jenny M. Lewis, and M. Ramesh. 2021. "Procedural Policy Tools in Theory and Practice." *Policy and Society* 40 (3):295–311. doi: 10.1080/14494035.2021.1965379.

Bandelow, Nils C., and Johanna Hornung. 2021a. "Policy Programme Cycles through Old and New Programmatic Groups." *Journal of Public Policy* 41 (4):633–652. doi: 10.1017/S0143814X20000185.

Bandelow, Nils C., and Johanna Hornung. 2021b. "Informal Social Groups and Policy Programs: A Programmatic Action Framework (PAF) on Policymaking." *European Policy Analysis* 7 (S1):6–13. https://doi.org/10.1002/epa2.1110.

Bandelow, Nils C., Johanna Hornung, and Marc Smyrl. 2021. "Theoretical Foundations of the Programmatic Action Framework (PAF)." *European Policy Analysis* 7 (1):14–27. doi: 10.1002/epa2.1083.

Béland, Daniel, Michael Howlett, and Ishani Mukherjee. 2018. "Instrument Constituencies and Public Policy-Making: An Introduction." *Policy and Society* 37 (1):1–13. doi: 10.1080/14494035.2017.1375249.

Birkland, Thomas A. 1998. "Focusing Events, Mobilization, and Agenda Setting." *Journal of Public Policy* 18 (1):53–74. doi: 10.1017/S0143814X98000038.

Birkland, Thomas A. 2004. "'The World Changed Today': Agenda-Setting and Policy Change in the Wake of the September 11 Terrorist Attacks." *Review of Policy Research* 21 (2):179–200. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1541-1338.2004.00068.x.

Birkland, Thomas A. 2007. "Agenda Setting in Public Policy." In *Handbook of Public Policy Analysis: Theory, Politics, and Methods*, edited by Frank Fischer, Gerald J. Miller and Mara S. Sidney, 63–78. Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press; Taylor & Francis Group.

Bodenheimer, Miriam, and Jacob Leidenberger. 2020. "COVID-19 as a Window of Opportunity for Sustainability Transitions? Narratives and Communication Strategies Beyond the Pandemic." *Sustainability: Science, Practice and Policy* 16 (1):61–66. doi: 10.1080/15487733.2020.1766318.

Brewer, Marilynn B. 1991. "The Social Self: On Being the Same and Different at the Same Time." *Personality and Social Psychology Bulletin* 17 (5):475–482. doi: 10.1177/0146167291175001.

Cacioppo, John T., and Richard E. Petty. 1989. "Effects of Message Repetition on Argument Processing, Recall, and Persuasion." *Basic and Applied Social Psychology* 10 (1):3–12. doi: 10.1207/s15324834basp1001_2.

Cairney, Paul. 2020. "The Myth of 'Evidence-Based Policymaking' in a Decentred State." *Public Policy and Administration*:0952076720905016. doi: 10.1177/0952076720905016.

Capano, Giliberto, and Michael Howlett. 2020. "The Knowns and Unknowns of Policy Instrument Analysis: Policy Tools and the Current Research Agenda on Policy Mixes." *SAGE Open* 10 (1):2158244019900568. doi: 10.1177/2158244019900568.

Chetkovich, Carol. 2003. "What's in a Sector? The Shifting Career Plans of Public Policy Students." *Public Administration Review* 63 (6):660–674. doi: https://doi.org/10.1111/1540-6210.00330.

Chrobot-Mason, Donna, Marian N. Ruderman, Todd J. Weber, and Chris Ernst. 2009. "The Challenge of Leading on Unstable Ground: Triggers That Activate Social Identity Faultlines." *Human Relations* 62 (11):1763–1794. doi: 10.1177/0018726709346376.

Craft, Jonathan, and Michael Howlett. 2012. "Policy Formulation, Governance Shifts and Policy Influence: Location and Content in Policy Advisory Systems." *Journal of Public Policy* 32 (2):79–98. doi: 10.1017/S0143814X12000049.

Crow, Deserai A., Elizabeth A. Albright, Todd Ely, Elizabeth Koebele, and Lydia Lawhon. 2018. "Do Disasters Lead to Learning? Financial Policy Change in Local Government." *Review of Policy Research* 35 (4):564–589. doi: 10.1111/ropr.12297.

Dalton, Russell J., Paul Allen Beck, Robert Huckfeldt, and William Koetzle. 1998. "A Test of Media-Centered Agenda Setting: Newspaper Content and Public Interests in a Presidential Election." *Political Communication* 15 (4):463–481. doi: 10.1080/105846098198849.

Dickson, Eric S., and Kenneth Scheve. 2006. "Social Identity, Political Speech, and Electoral Competition." *Journal of Theoretical Politics* 18 (1):5–39. doi: 10.1177/0951629806059594.

Downs, Anthony. 1991. "Up and Down with Ecology: The 'Issue-Attention Cycle'." In *Agenda Setting: Readings on Media, Public Opinion, and Policymaking*, edited by David L. Protess and Maxwell McCombs, 27–34. New York: Routledge.

Duque, Juan Felipe. 2021. "Who Embodies the Evaluative State? Programmatic Elites in the Chilean and the Colombian Policies of Quality Assurance in Higher Education." *European Policy Analysis* 7 (1):48–63.

Egeberg, Morten. 1995. "Bureaucrats as Public Policy-Makers and Their Self-Interests." *Journal of Theoretical Politics* 7 (2):157–167. doi: 10.1177/0951692895007002003.

Ellemers, Naomi, Russell Spears, and Bertjan Doosje. 2002. "Self and Social Identity." *Annual Review of Psychology* 53 (1):161–186. doi: 10.1146/annurev.psych.53.100901.135228.

Ernst, Nicole, Rinaldo Kühne, and Werner Wirth. 2017. "Effects of Message Repetition and Negativity on Credibility Judgments and Political Attitudes." *International Journal of Communication* 11:3265–3285.

Ettelt, Stefanie, and Benjamin Hawkins. 2018. "Scientific Controversy, Issue Salience, and E-Cigarette Regulation: A Comparative Study of Policy Debates in Germany and England." *European Policy Analysis* 4 (2). doi: 10.1002/epa2.1039.

Fawcett, Paul. 2021. "Metagovernance of Migration Policy in the Asia Pacific Region: An Analysis of Policy Tools." *Policy and Society* 40 (3):431–447. doi: 10.1080/14494035.2021.1955486.

Freitag, Markus, and Paul C. Bauer. 2016. "Personality Traits and the Propensity to Trust Friends and Strangers." *The Social Science Journal* 53 (4):467–476. doi: 10.1016/j.soscij.2015.12.002.

Hassenteufel, Patrick, and William Genieys. 2021. "The Programmatic Action Framework: An Empirical Assessment." *European Policy Analysis* 7 (1):28–47. doi: 10.1002/epa2.1088.

Herweg, Nicole, Christian Huß, and Reimut Zohlnhöfer. 2015. "Straightening the Three Streams: Theorizing Extensions of the Multiple Streams Framework." *European Journal of Political Research* 54 (3):435–449.

Hogg, Michael A., Dominic Abrams, and Marilynn B. Brewer. 2017. "Social Identity: The Role of Self in Group Processes and Intergroup Relations." *Group Processes & Intergroup Relations* 20 (5):570–581. doi: 10.1177/1368430217690909.

Hood, Christopher. 1986. *The Tools of Government*. Chatham: Chatham House Publishers.

Hornung, Johanna. 2021. "The (Mis)fit of Policy Programs to Political Institutions and Its Influence on Programmatic Action: How Crisis Has Differently Hit French and German Health Policy." *European Policy Analysis* 7 (1):120–138. doi: 10.1002/epa2.1108.

Hornung, Johanna, and Nils C. Bandelow. 2020. "The Programmatic Elite in German Health Policy: Collective Action and Sectoral History." *Public Policy and Administration* 35 (3):247–265. doi: 10.1177/0952076718798887.

Hornung, Johanna, Nils C. Bandelow, and Colette S. Vogeler. 2019. "Social Identities in the Policy Process." *Policy Sciences* 52 (2):211–231. doi: 10.1007/s11077-018-9340-6.

Howlett, Michael. 1991. "Policy Instruments, Policy Styles, and Policy Implementation." *Policy Studies Journal* 19 (2):1–21. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1541-0072.1991.tb01878.x.

Howlett, Michael, and Richa Shivakoti. 2014. "Agenda-Setting Tools: State-Driven Agenda Activity from Government Relations to Scenario Forecasting." Paper presented to the ECPR Glasgow General Conference. Glasgow: https://ecpr.eu/Filestore/PaperProposal/f6950d8f-b0e9-442d-85eb-f4fa54032ccd.pdf

Koski, Chris. 2010. "Greening America's Skylines: The Diffusion of Low-Salience Policies." *Policy Studies Journal* 38 (1):93–117. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1541-0072.2009.00346.x.

Laage-Thomsen, Jakob. 2021. "Professional Expertise in Policy Advisory Systems: How Administrators and Consultants Built Behavioral Insights in Danish Public Agencies." Public Administration n/a (n/a). doi: https://doi.org/10.1111/padm.12725.

Lalonde, Richard N., and Randy A. Silverman. 1994. "Behavioral Preferences in Response to Social Injustice: The Effects of Group Permeability and Social Identity Salience." *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology* 66 (1):78–85. doi: 10.1037/0022-3514.66.1.78.

Miller, Arthur G., ed. 2016. *The Social Psychology of Good and Evil*. New York: The Guilford Press.

Mols, Frank, S. Alexander Haslam, Jolanda Jetten, and Niklas K. Steffens. 2015. "Why a Nudge Is Not Enough: A Social Identity Critique of Governance by Stealth." *European Journal of Political Research* 54 (1):81–98. doi: 10.1111/1475-6765.12073.

Morris, Michael W., Erica Carranza, and Craig R. Fox. 2008. "Mistaken Identity: Activating Conservative Political Identities Induces 'Conservative' Financial Decisions." *Psychological Science* 19 (11):1154–1160. doi: 10.1111/j.1467-9280.2008.02217.x.

Muradova, Lala, Hayley Walker, and Francesca Colli. 2020. "Climate Change Communication and Public Engagement in Interpersonal Deliberative Settings: Evidence from the Irish Citizens' Assembly." *Climate Policy* 20 (10):1322–1335. doi: 10.1080/14693062.2020.1777928.

Murphy-Gregory, Hannah, Ainsley Elbra, John Mikler, and Lachlan Johnson. 2020. "The Australian Campaign against Corporate Tax Avoidance: Agenda-Setting, Narratives, and Political Opportunities." *Australian Journal of Political Science* 55 (4):399–415. doi: 10.1080/10361146.2020.1774508.

O'Donovan, Kristin. 2017. "An Assessment of Aggregate Focusing Events, Disaster Experience, and Policy Change." *Risk, Hazards & Crisis in Public Policy* 8 (3):201–219. https://doi.org/10.1002/rhc3.12116.

Parsons, Bryan M. 2015. "The Social Identity Politics of Peer Networks." *American Politics Research* 43 (4):680–707. doi: 10.1177/1532673x14546856.

Pepermans, Guido, and Sandra Rousseau. 2021. "Consumers and Citizens: Identity Salience in Choice Settings Focusing on Local Wind Turbines." *Journal of Environmental Management* 281:111857. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jenvman.2020.111857.

Schwartz, Noah S. 2021. "Guns in the North: Assessing the Impact of Social Identity on Firearms Advocacy in Canada." *Politics & Policy* n/a (n/a). doi: https://doi.org/10.1111/polp.12412.

Searing, Donald D., Joel J. Schwartz, and Alden E. Lind. 1973. "The Structuring Principle: Political Socialization and Belief Systems." *American Political Science Review* 67 (2):415–432. doi: 10.2307/1958774.

Simon, Herbert A. 1976. "From Substantive to Procedural Rationality." In *25 Years of Economic Theory: Retrospect and Prospect*, edited by T. J. Kastelein, S. K. Kuipers, W. A. Nijenhuis and G. R. Wagenaar, 65–86. Boston: Springer.

Simons, Arno, and Jan-Peter Voß. 2018. "The Concept of Instrument Constituencies: Accounting for Dynamics and Practices of Knowing Governance." *Policy and Society* 37 (1):14–35. doi: 10.1080/14494035.2017.1375248.

Stark, Alastair, and Sophie Yates. 2021. "Public Inquiries as Procedural Policy Tools." *Policy and Society*:1–17. doi: 10.1080/14494035.2021.1955485.

Sulitzeanu-Kenan, Raanan, and Reimut Zohlnhöfer. 2019. "Policy and Blame Attribution: Citizens' Preferences, Policy Reputations, and Policy Surprises." *Political Behavior* 41 (1):53–77. doi: 10.1007/s11109-017-9441-5.

Taeihagh, Araz. 2017. "Crowdsourcing: A New Tool for Policy-Making?" *Policy Sciences* 50 (4):629–647. doi: 10.1007/s11077-017-9303-3.

Tosun, Jale, and Ulrike Scherer. 2020. "Attention and Water Governance: An Agenda-Setting Perspective." *Water* 12 (8). doi: 10.3390/w12082138.

Turner, John C. 2010. "Social Categorization and the Self-Concept: A Social Cognitive Theory of Group Behavior." In *Key Readings in Social Psychology: Rediscovering Social Identity*, edited by Tom Postmes and Nyla R. Branscombe, 243–272. New York: Psychology Press.

van der Wal, Zeger. 2013. "Mandarins versus Machiavellians? On Differences between Work Motivations of Administrative and Political Elites." *Public Administration Review* 73 (5):749–759. https://doi.org/10.1111/puar.12089.

Vogeler, Colette S., Johanna Hornung, and Nils C Bandelow. 2020. "Farm Animal Welfare Policymaking in the European Parliament: A Social Identity Perspective on Voting Behaviour." *Journal of Environmental Policy & Planning* 22 (4):518–530. doi: 10.1080/1523908X.2020.1778458.

Weible, Christopher M., and Paul A. Sabatier. 2009. "Coalitions, Science, and Belief Change: Comparing Adversarial and Collaborative Policy Subsystems." *Policy Studies Journal* 37 (2):195–212. doi: 10.1111/j.1541-0072.2009.00310.x.

Yioutas, Julie, and Ivana Segvic. 2003. "Revisiting the Clinton/Lewinsky Scandal: The Convergence of Agenda Setting and Framing." *Journalism & Mass Communication Quarterly* 80 (3):567–582. doi: 10.1177/107769900308000306.

Zafonte, Matthew, and Paul A. Sabatier. 1998. "Shared Beliefs and Imposed Interdependencies as Determinants of Ally Networks in Overlapping Subsystems." *Journal of Theoretical Politics* 10 (4):473–505. doi: 10.1177/0951692898010004005.

Zahariadis, Nikolaos. 2016. "Setting the Agenda on Agenda Setting: Definitions, Concepts, and Controversies." In *Handbook of Public Policy Agenda Setting*, edited by Nikolaos Zahariadis, 1–22. Cheltenham; UK: Edward Elgar Publishing Ltd.

12
CONSULTATION TOOLS AND AGENDA-SETTING

Bert Fraussen

The recent scholarship in the policy sciences has highlighted how different policy instruments and tools are assembled or bundled in complex policy portfolios in different stages of the policy process. A nascent strand of this important work concerns the agenda-setting phase, in which scholars aim to understand the instruments – procedural and substantive – that the government uses to shape the issues that it has to address. This chapter presents a taxonomy to typologize agenda-setting instruments and illustrative examples of emerging policy mixes used to manage policy demands. Tools are classified as those which governments use to routinize demands, regularize demands, generate demands, and impose issues onto the agenda. The chapter makes two contributions to the literature on policy tools and mixes. First, it presents a framework to study agenda-setting tools, and second, it contributes to the literature around policy portfolios by presenting empirical examples of emerging policy mixes used in the agenda-setting phase of the policy process.

Introduction

This chapter focuses on the consultation approaches and tools government have at their disposal to manage the agenda-setting phase and organize consultation process and, in this way, shape the participation and formulation of policy demands by external stakeholders, such as interest groups, think tanks, companies, citizens, and experts. While much work has focused on how and to what extent these external stakeholders have the ability to set the government agenda, the other side of the equation – namely, how policymakers approach stakeholder engagement in this early phase of the policy cycle – has received much less attention.

In all phases of the policy cycle, policymakers are in need of policy expertise and insight into societal legitimacy of policy measures, and the agenda-setting phase obviously is no exception. Quite in contrary, this kind of information might be most critical and influential in the earliest moments of setting the agenda and developing policy proposals as the space to shape the content and scope of policies is arguably largest at this point. This implies both that external stakeholders see this as a unique window of opportunity to shape policy initiatives, and public officials are likely to be most open to suggestions and input, compared to later stages in the policy process.

In organizing the consultation process, governments face several difficult choices and trade-offs, which will be addressed in this chapter. The first question involves which consultation

DOI: 10.4324/9781003163954-15

approaches and tools are most suitable, a question that has only become more important as the number of available policy tools has proliferated. The second question relates to the objectives of the central actors: Which strategies can governments follow to manage stakeholder demands, how do bureaucratic motives shape the chosen consultation approach, and how do stakeholders approach and perceive different consultation tools? These strategies and choices also relate to key trade-offs, such as the fairness and inclusiveness of consultation procedures.

Consultation Tools and Approaches

Consultation of external stakeholders is a central feature of contemporary governance. Much academic work has focused on the consultation of external stakeholders, such as NGOs, firms, business associations, think tanks, and citizens in the policy formulation phase. In this phase, consultation procedures are often characterized by higher transparency and more strongly institutionalized. Yet the importance of consultation practices at both earlier and later stages, such as agenda-setting, implementation, and evaluation, should not be overlooked. The phase of agenda-setting in particular provides a key opportunity for public officials and external stakeholders to set the policy scene and determine which (aspects of) policy problems receive attention and the range of policy solutions put forward for political and public debate.

The increased importance of consultation procedures to both policymakers and stakeholders can be explained by a combination of developments. As highlighted by Bunea (2020: 2), a combination of government reforms triggered by ideas related to New Public Management (accelerated by the emergence of new digital technologies), increasing concerns about the legitimacy and accountability of public policies, a growing need to enhance the functioning of regulatory regimes, more emphasis on evidence-based policymaking, and better regulation has resulted in more attention to consultation processes, greater investments in these procedures by public officials, and more scholarly attention.

In recent years, the number and variety of consultation tools that policymakers have at their disposal have increased considerably. Classic tools, such as advisory councils, parliamentary hearings, and expert committees, have been complemented with new instruments. Some of these tools have been enabled by new technologies, such as the increased use of online public consultations. Other tools follow a trend towards more participatory and collaborative modes of policymaking, such as cocreation, codesign, and collaborative policy platforms.

As a result, policymakers have a large toolbox and a variety of tools to engage with external stakeholders. To provide one specific example, in recent communication, the European Commission (see European Commission 2017) distinguishes the following consultation tools: (1) conferences, public hearings, and events; (2) Eurobarometer surveys; (3) Expert groups of the Commission; (4) focus groups; (5) interviews; (6) public consultations; (7) consultations targeting SMEs-SME panel; and (8) workshops, meetings, and seminars. Excluded from this list are direct meetings with policymakers. While this cannot be considered a consultation tool, this form of interaction between external stakeholders and policymakers still constitutes a scarce and highly valuable channel as it involves privileged access for a select number of groups, often on an individual basis.

While there is a tendency to study consultation tools in isolation (in particular those linked to democratic innovations), the political and administrative reality is that within a single policy process, policymakers often combine several consultation tools to involve stakeholders and acquire policy input. As a result, different types of tools are used to engage with external stakeholders in a similar issue context. In recent work, Fraussen et al. (2020) consider how public authorities might combine these different tools and conceptually distinguish between open, closed, and hybrid approaches to engaging stakeholders in policy processes.

The use of internet consultations provides a good example of an open consultation approach as this tool enables the participation of all external stakeholders who seek to provide policy input. An open consultation approach implies that the consultation procedure is accessible to everyone. Hence, theoretically, the number of external stakeholders who can participate in an open consultation approach is unlimited, as it provides "self-selected" involvement for a wide range of possible participants (2020: 476). An open consultation approach seems most suitable when policymakers aim to consult a very large and broad set of stakeholders.

The main difference between an open consultation approach and a closed consultation approach relates to the role of (elected or unelected) policymakers as gatekeepers. When a consultation approach is closed, participation depends on being invited by policymakers to participate in the consultation process: for instance, being selected as member of an advisory council, participant in a workshop, or expert on a specific committee. While many external stakeholders may wish to participate, places are limited, and only those stakeholders who are considered "relevant" participants by policymakers will be granted a seat at the table. Inclusion in these policymaking venues is often considered a privileged form of access as the smaller set of participants combined with the more enduring nature of these tools increases the insider status of groups and enables them to interact with policymakers on a regular basis (Fraussen et al. 2015). Typically, these approaches are used when policymakers aim to consult a narrower and rather well defined target group. These approaches are therefore sometimes also described as "targeted".

A consultation procedure in the context of a specific policy issue can also involve the combination of some of these tools, such as a public internet consultation open to everyone, followed by the establishment of an advisory committees that, for instance, involves 20 specific participants from academia and civil society. This third consultation approach is labelled hybrid as it involves elements of both open (public internet consultation) and closed approaches (advisory committee).

Government Strategies, Bureaucratic Motives, and Stakeholder Perspectives

The previous section outlined the great variety of consultation tools that policymakers have at their disposal and conceptually distinguished three types of consultation approaches: open, closed, and hybrid. In this section, we shift our attention to the strategies and motives that might clarify preferences for certain consultation tools and approaches, addressing these questions from the perspectives of policymakers as well as external stakeholders.

Government Strategies

To understand variation in consultation approaches, it is important to provide insight into the diverse reasons policymakers might prioritize a particular consultation approach above another. In recent work, Bali and Halpin distinguish four different strategies policymakers can apply to manage the demands of external stakeholders: policymakers can rely on consultation tools to routinize, regularize, or generate demands or instead rely on them to impose issues (2021).

When policymakers aim to routinize demands, they seek to "acknowledge and engage with a spectrum of actors, and design strategies to meet these demands" as well as turn "ill-structured or chaotic patterns of engagement with organized interests into more routinized forms" (Bali and Halpin 2021: 337). Policymakers can routinize demands by setting up and standardizing the use of particular consultation tools, such as the standard use of online public consultation (as done by the European Commission) or the establishment of expert committees or advisory councils

whose composition often remains identical for a longer period of time. In some cases, these committees or councils can also have a more ad hoc character as they are set up in response to a specific crisis or to address a particular policy challenge that cuts across policy domains.

Rather than routinizing demands, policymakers can also intend to "regularize" demands. The use of these tools ensures policymakers that particular issues automatically return to the government agenda at specific intervals, hence creating recurring consultation patterns. The examples here are annual budgetary and fiscal calendars or statutory set reviews, which ensure government and media attention to these matters on a regular bias. In short, the strategy to regularize demands refers to routines and procedures governments establish to ensure a smooth policy rhythm and to create a certain level of predictability and control.

The strategies of "routinizing" and "regularizing" aim to make engagement with external stakeholders more structured and predictable and can be considered ways to control, limit, and steer policy demands from external stakeholders. Consultation tools related to these strategies typically involve a standardized way of selecting and inviting stakeholders and detailed bureaucratic guidelines and procedures for collecting and processing their policy input. A strategy to routinize and regularize might lead to a stronger emphasis on closed or hybrid consultation approaches. For instance, policymakers could establish an advisory committee or combine public consultation with the formation of expert committees.

A government strategy can also aim to "generate" policy demands. This relates to the need of governments to support, or even create, policy partners, to ensure there is a policy public in a specific sector or related to a particular policy issue. Government funding of specific interest groups and societal organizations can strengthen (or facilitate the emergence) of a community that can support policy programs. While Bali and Halpin in their work focus on the mobilization of possible policy partners, another take on this strategy to "generate" demands would focus on the ability of governments to enable external stakeholders to put new issues on the government agenda or provide them the opportunity to develop new policy measures in different institutional settings so that they are less constrained by existing policies and procedures.

In other words, rather than restricting the space to provide input (for example, by determining the scope of the consultation and the specific questions formulated), when seeking to generate policy demands, governments maximize the room for policy deliberation and innovation. New forms of stakeholder consultation, such as co-design, co-production and collaborative platforms, provide relevant examples of this approach. The reliance on those tools is often situated within an open or hybrid consultation approach that enables the participation of a wider set of participants and, in some cases, also implies the absence of (government) gatekeepers and a less central role for public officials.

The fourth strategy could be considered the extreme opposite of the "generating" approach as governments here seek to "impose" issues on the agenda. Here, consultation is nonexistent or merely symbolic, as governments strive to "unilaterally install government issue priorities onto the agenda": for instance, via summits or executive statements that enable no (or only a very limited) role for external stakeholders (Bali and Halpin 2021: 339).

In these cases, a government uses its legitimacy (for instance, soon after elections or in response to a crisis) "to advance preferred agendas while dismissing the need for public consultation or engagement" (339). This strategy resonates with a closed consultation approach as policymakers here act as gatekeepers focused on limiting and controlling the possible contribution and policy input of external stakeholders.

The ability of government to prioritize particular strategies might also be constrained by (domestic) legal requirements (for instance, the obligation to organize public consultations on particular topics or the requirement to consult particular advisory bodies), as well as institutional

and cultural norms (such as differences in interest intermediation in neo-corporatist and pluralist political systems or different traditions in terms of relying on academic experts).

Bureaucratic Motives

The interaction between policymakers and external stakeholders is often conceived as an exchange relationship, with expertise and legitimacy being key currencies (Bouwen 2004; Tallberg et al. 2015). A similar logic applies to the consultation of external stakeholders in the agenda-setting phase. Public officials rely on expertise as they aim to increase the "problem-solving capacity" of governments (Van Ballaert 2017: 2, see also Princen 2011). Whereas the supply of detailed and relevant policy input is expected to increase the effectiveness of proposed policy measures, the involvement of relevant external societal stakeholders is considered imperative to garner sufficient societal support for policy proposals. A higher societal legitimacy of policy proposals is believed to benefit smooth political decision-making processes, as well as positively affect accurate policy implementation and compliance.

Focusing on the role of the bureaucracy, Binderkrantz et al. highlight two "central logics of bureaucratic behavior: concerns with securing and enhancing institutional power and bureaucratic autonomy" (2020: 474). These logics highlight the role of consultation within the broader political-institutional context. As regards institutional power, Bunea and Thomson, for instance, argue that the use of stakeholder consultation may strengthen the agenda-setting and bargaining power of the government (2015). Focusing on the EU context, they find that extensive and open consultations with interest groups in early phases of the policy process increases the likelihood of policy success for the European Commission and strengthens its position vis-à-vis other EU institutions.

Binderkantz et al. (2020) link the concept of bureaucratic autonomy to recent work on bureaucratic reputation and clarify how an emphasis on distinct aspects of reputation might lead to a preference for different consultation practices. They rely on the four-fold distinction made by Carpenter between the technical, performative, moral and legal-procedural aspects of reputation (2010; for an application in the EU context, see Rimkute 2020). Technical and performative reputation can be linked to the earlier-mentioned problem-solving capacity of government as it refers to in-house knowledge as well as organizational policy capacities. As expertise is the key resource here, Binderkrantz et al. assume that an emphasis on technical and performative aspects of reputation will lead to a greater use of closed consultation approaches. If we consider moral and legal-procedural reputation, the relative emphasis is on legitimacy. If political institutions aim to demonstrate those aspects of their reputation, open and hybrid approaches might be more suitable since they have the potential to result in "broad consultation involving not only interest groups that are usually among the stakeholders of the involved agency, but also allowing for the expression of broad, public interest" (2020: 475).

The central distinguishing feature between open, closed, and hybrid consultation approaches involves the accessibility of the consultation procedure. Van Ballaert highlights another key dimension of consultation practices: namely, their repetitive nature. Does it concern a one-time interaction or repeated exchanges and discussions with the same actors? (2017). This variation in the repetitive nature is equally relevant to understanding how consultation practices shape the ties between external stakeholders and policymakers as multiple interactions between the same actors are likely to lead to a more lasting and stable relationship.

To understand the origins and dynamics of these long-term interactions, Braun distinguished two logics that jointly explain the enduring and often stable nature of policy networks (2013). She distinguishes between the logic of anticipatory behavior and habitual behavior. In brief,

"the logic of anticipatory behavior refers to maintenance of interactions because of future costs associated with ending current interactions" (2013: 6). For instance, it might be costly to end existing relationships because there are few alternative stakeholders who can supply relevant expertise or legitimacy and since cooperation of particular societal actors and organizations is imperative to (future) policy success. While more long-term strategic considerations are at the core of this logic of anticipatory behavior, the logic of habitual behavior clarifies how interactions are shaped by patterns and legacies from the past. Rather than following from specific policy objectives or policy needs, interactions are mostly driven by organizational routines, which is likely to further solidify existing relationships and thus benefits external stakeholders who have already acquired the status of policy insider.

Stakeholder Perspectives

From a stakeholder perspective, involvement in the agenda-setting phase is crucial as key decisions are made by policymakers at this early moment that often cannot be substantially changed in the following stages of the policy cycle. This is also the stage of the policy cycle that provides most opportunities for shaping the specific content, scope, and focus of new policy proposals. If we conceive interactions between policymakers and external stakeholders as an exchange that works best when (stakeholder) supply meet (policymakers') demand, those stakeholders who are able to provide critical exchange goods such as expertise and legitimacy are most likely to have a listening ear among policymakers. In the following paragraph, we relate this discussion to the variety of policy goods that external stakeholders can provide, their central objectives for participating in policy consultation, and the use of different consultation approaches.

It is important to look beyond the classic expertise-legitimacy distinction and consider in more detail the variety of policy goods, or policy capacities, that external stakeholders may provide. For instance, Daugbjerg et al. highlight not only societal legitimacy and expert knowledge but also assistance in implementation, the provision of services to citizens, the mobilization of a particular constituency, and the ability to discipline members or ensure compliance within a certain profession or industry (2017). These policy goods can be linked to different policy capacities of external stakeholders, such as analytical (e.g., expert knowledge), operational (like assistance in policy implementation), or political (skills such as societal legitimacy or the ability to mobilize a particular constituency). The value of these policy goods and capacities and the extent to which they are in high demand among policymakers are likely to be shaped by institutional factors (such as the policy capacity of government departments, the specific phase of the policy cycle, and whether patterns of interest intermediation resemble neo-corporatist or pluralist patterns), as well as more contextual policy-related factors (such as the complexity, salience, and conflictual nature of an issue and the number of external stakeholders who participate in a specific consultation process) (Klüver et al. 2015).

A fundamental question is which consultation approaches or tools are most suitable to acquire specific goods. As clarified by Bryson (2013: 27) "specific stakeholders may be involved in different ways at different steps or phases of the processes", as the needs of policymakers might shift and therefore other consultation approaches become more suitable. For instance, whereas the EU Commission relies on expert groups and workshops to acquire detailed policy information, the main goal of its online consultations is the involving of a larger set of external stakeholders (European Commission 2017: 385). From a stakeholder perspective, this also implies that the value of policy goods (and participation more generally) will vary across different consultation approaches.

From a stakeholder perspective, the value of consultation processes is often linked to the extent to which these interactions provide opportunities to influence policymakers. This is also

the dominant focus in many studies, even though the reasons external stakeholders participate in policy consultation and value being involved in this early stage of the policy process might be much more multi-faceted. For instance, while Lundberg acknowledges the role of political influence and the opportunity to shape government public policy as key drivers for stakeholder participation in consultation processes, he also highlights role of communicative influence, in which stakeholders consider consultations as a means to generate media attention.

In addition to these external considerations, Lundberg argues that more internal motives can be an important motivation for external stakeholders. That is, consultation processes also require stakeholders to engage in internal deliberation and discussion with members (or internal stakeholders), determine policy positions, and declare public statements (see also Halpin and Fraussen 2017). More generally, it can even be seen as part of a "civic duty" for external stakeholders, as they consider this part of their mission and responsibilities.

It is important to distinguish between the value of specific consultation tools for exercising policy influence and their usefulness for signaling policy preferences (toward policymakers and the broader public). While open consultation approaches with a more public and transparent character (such as online internet consultation that afterward provide an overview of all input to the general public) might be very effective for clarifying the policy position of a specific stakeholder to a broad audience, closed approaches (such as expert councils, advisory councils or informal direct meetings) are likely to provide better opportunities for policy influence. As Binderkrantz et al. argue, participation in open approaches is relatively easy and low cost for external stakeholders, and requires no pre-existing relationships with policymakers (2020). In contrast, closed approaches often involve considerable investment in terms of policy preparation and building and maintaining relationships. Yet these fora also provide opportunities for more frequent interactions with policymakers as well as unique opportunities to monitor and discuss policy developments. Therefore, we can expect a strong preference among external stakeholders for closed consultation approaches as these approaches enable the formation of more enduring relationships and limit the competition of other stakeholders who might have different viewpoints. These closed settings with few participants might also bolster more mutual understanding and trust between external stakeholders and policymakers.

At the same time, the evaluation by external stakeholders of the legitimacy of consultation tools and approaches might be shaped by other considerations and factors. For instance, the extent to which external stakeholders can be considered policy insiders or policy outsiders might shape their perceptions of particular consultation regime (but see Bunea 2017 for contrary findings). A similar dynamic has been demonstrated in research on the legitimacy of participatory processes as the perception of individuals of the legitimacy of the procedural features of the process is strongly shaped by the outcome and the extent to which the final policy proposal or decision aligns with their preferences (e.g., Esaiasson et al. 2019). In that regard, an assessment of losers' (those with different preferences or with less strong ties to policymakers) perception of consultation approaches might provide a critical test for their legitimacy (Werner and Marien 2020).

Consultation and Agenda-Setting: Fairness and Inclusiveness

When designing consultation processes, determining specific approaches, and selecting particular tools, a central point of attention involves the extent to which they create an equal playing field among external stakeholders. This notion can be related to the treatment of policy participants and the way in which their input is processed, as well as to the open nature of the process and the ease of participation. In this final section, we address these two key characteristics of consultation processes and their fairness and inclusiveness.

Fairness

The question of the fairness of the consultation process relates to the extent to which participants feel that there is an impartial and just treatment of all participants and the input they provided.

As regards an impartial and just treatment of all participants, open approaches by definition score higher in terms of fairness then closed approaches. If we consider, for instance, online public consultations, all participants have an equal chance to participate and provide their input in a similar way. Yet the treatment of their provided input is likely to differ as some viewpoints might align closer with policymakers' preferences and will therefore be better reflected in proposed policy. Even if these procedures are highly transparent, there still is a considerable black box between the provision of input by external stakeholders and the policy proposals that policymakers subsequently put forward based on the variety of input they have received.

This black box challenge is also critical for the legitimacy of democratic innovations, such as mini-publics of citizens, collaborative stakeholder platforms, or cocreation and codesign as participatory tools for agenda-setting. While these tools are often used to "generate" demands by external stakeholders rather than "routinizing" or "regularizing" them, if often remains unclear to what extent, how, and at what stage of the policy process policymakers need to engage with the outcomes of these participatory processes (e.g., Jacquet and van der Does 2021). An adequate "coupling" of these initiatives with legislative procedures not only requires particular institutional mechanisms but also "requires actors to step outside their comfort zone to build new relationships and engage in new spaces with different sets of ideas, actors and rules" (Hendriks 2016: 57).

The use of these latter tools also often implies a shift in the position and role of public authorities and government officials (Ansell and Gash 2008). While they occupy a central or even gatekeeping role in more classic and routinized forms of consultation, such as advisory councils and expert committees, they often take up a more facilitative or even neutral role in more collaborative settings. Furthermore, while policymakers often determine the focus or scope of consultation in the context of traditional tools (by determining questions from an online consultation or asking advice of expert committees on specific aspects of policy proposals) and thus constrain the opportunity to put new issues on the agenda or formulate policy proposals that deviate substantially from the status quo, their ability to shape the agenda and policy discussion is reduced as tools put more emphasis on collaboration and deliberation.

Inclusiveness

The importance and value of an inclusive consultation process is frequently highlighted. For instance, Nabatchi argues that by consulting broadly and involving a diverse set of actors and organizations, public officials "give voice to multiple perspectives and different interests, allowing for more thoughtful decisions that take a broader view of those who will benefit or be harmed by an action" (Beierle and Cayford 2002; Sirianni 2009). Public policy also might benefit from a more inclusive set of policy participants as this might "generate better projects and policies, secure buy-in for decisions, and limit delays, mistakes and lawsuits" (Burby 2003)," especially if these processes become more inclusive (Bryson et al. 2013: 28; see also Feldman and Quick 2009).

Findings on the implications of consultation approaches for stakeholder diversity are mixed. Some research clarifies how consultation regimes could alleviate inequalities and generate a more equal playing field between insiders and outsiders (Bunea 2017). Yet most work points in a less positive direction as consultation practices reinforce existing practices and the policy

status quo as (also more open) consultation procedures are dominated by established (and often economic) organizations that represent business interests. Rather than being a tool for policy change, consultation instruments thus become "a primary mechanism of policy reproduction" (Howlett and Cashore 2009).

If we consider the distinct consultation approaches described earlier in this chapter, open consultation approaches naturally enable the participation of a larger set of stakeholders than closed consultation approaches as participation is "self-selected", and the number of contributions quasi-unlimited.

The possible relation between consultation approaches and the diversity of participating stakeholders is less straightforward. One the one hand, the involvement of more external stakeholders in open approaches might lead to a greater diversity of interests that engage with policymakers. Such an approach implies that opportunities to participate are equal and characterized by low thresholds. Moreover, there is no gatekeeper who decides who is included and excluded from the process. One the other hand, the increase in the number of participating stakeholders might have a negative relation to diversity. Rather than involving a broader field of actors, those stakeholders who dominate closed approaches could also be well represented in open approaches, or even become more dominant. In that scenario, those societal groups that suffer less from collective action problems and have higher levels of organized representation (such as business and professional interests) might be even more numerous and dominant in consultation approaches with an open-door policy.

This last expectation is also confirmed in recent work that examines the use of consultation tools by the European commission in the context of 41 regulations and its implications for stakeholder diversity, in particular business bias or the extent to which business interests dominate the set of organized stakeholders (Fraussen et al. 2020). As regards the applied consultation strategy, a purely open approach was rare and only found in 3 regulations. In the majority of cases, the EC applies either a closed approach (19 regulations) or a hybrid approach (19 regulations). As expected, hybrid approaches, which combine tools related to closed (such as an expert committee) and open approaches (internet consultation), attract much larger numbers of external stakeholders. Hence, to purely increase the number of involved stakeholders, hybrid approaches seem essential. Yet this higher level of engaged external stakeholders does not automatically result in a greater diversity of external stakeholders. Instead, closed approaches were characterized by higher stakeholder diversity (or less business dominance) than hybrid approach.

Hence, if we consider the relation between consultation approaches and diversity, we should be careful to draw strong conclusions regarding the possible benefits of more open or hybrid approaches and not underestimate the role that public officials might (or can) play in designing more closed approaches and enabling a more balanced set of participating stakeholders. While the role of gatekeeper is often discussed in more negative terms (as they, by definition, exclude certain actors and organizations from the policy process and rarely need to justify their choices), their possible contribution to achieving a more balanced or equal participation and (better) involving overlooked or marginalized constituencies, should not be underestimated and seems a promising avenue for further research.

Conclusion

In this chapter, we addressed different aspects of the consultation process. We addressed the proliferation of consultation tools and distinguished open, closed, and hybrid consultation approaches. After clarifying the consultation toolbox that policymakers have at their disposal, we examined different government strategies to manage the policy demands of external stakeholders

and considered the value of distinct consultation approaches from the perspectives of bureaucrats and external stakeholders. As designing consultation process also requires important democratic trade-offs, the last section addressed the fairness and inclusiveness of consultation procedures.

Whereas much scholarly attention has been focused on which societal interests are represented in the consultation process, a better understanding of this central component of contemporary governance and its implications for public policy also requires close attention to the motives of bureaucrats and stakeholders, as well as their perception of the value and limitations of particular consultation tool. Future work would benefit from better connecting the different strands of research that have been highlighted in this chapter, bridging the agenda-setting and policy formulation phase, and studying the implications of both institutional design choices and trade-offs made be external stakeholders and policymakers.

References

Ansell, C., & Gash, A. (2008). Collaborative Governance in Theory and Practice. *Journal of Public Administration Research and Theory*, 18(4), 543–571.

Bali, A., & Halpin, D. (2021). Agenda-Setting Instruments: Means and Strategies for the Management of Policy Demands. *Policy and Society*, 40(3), 333–344.

Beierle, T. C., & Cayford, J. (2002). *Democracy in practice: Public participation in environmental decisions*. Washington, DC: Resources for the Future.

Binderkrantz, A. S., Blom-Hansen, J., & Senninger, R. (2020). Countering bias? The EU Commission's Consultation with Interest Groups. *Journal of European Public Policy*, 28(4), 469–488. doi:10.1080/13501763.2020.1748095.

Bouwen, P. (2004). Exchanging Access Goods for Access: A Comparative Study of Business Lobbying in the European Union institutions. *European Journal of Political Research*, 43(3), 337–369.

Braun, C. (2013). The Driving Forces of Stability: Exploring the Nature of Long-Term Bureaucracy: Interest Group Interactions. *Administration & Society*, 45(7), 809–836.

Bryson, J. M., Quick, K. S., Slotterback, C. S., & Crosby, B. C. (2013). Designing public Participation Processes. *Public Administration Review*, 73(1), 23–34.

Bunea, A. (2017). Designing Stakeholder Consultations: Reinforcing or Alleviating Bias in the European Union System of Governance? *European Journal of Political Research*, 56(1), 46–69.

Bunea, A. (2020). Stakeholder Consultations. In P. Harris, A. Bitonti, C. Fleisher, and A. Skorkjær Binderkrantz (Eds.), *The Palgrave Encyclopedia of Interest Groups, Lobbying and Public Affairs*. Cham: Palgrave Macmillan.

Bunea, A., & Thomson, R. (2015). Consultations with Interest Groups and the Empowerment of Executives: Evidence from the European Union. *Governance*, 28(4), 517–531.

Burby, R. J. (2003). Making Plans that Matter: Citizen Involvement and Government Action. *Journal of the American Planning Association,* 69(1), 33–49.

Carpenter, D. (2010). *Reputation and Power, Organizational Image and Pharmaceutical Regulation at the FDA*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press.

Daugbjerg, C., Fraussen, B., & Halpin, D. R. (2017). Interest Groups and Policy Capacity: Modes of Engagement, Policy Goods and Networks. In W. Xun, M. Howlett, & M. Ramesh (Eds.), *Policy Capacity and Governance: Assessing Governmental Competences and Capabilities in Theory and Practice* (pp. 243–261). Cham: Palgrave Macmillan.

Esaiasson, P., Persson, M., Gilljam, M., & Lindholm, T. (2019). Reconsidering the Role of Procedures for Decision Acceptance. *British Journal of Political Science*, 49(1), 291–314.

European Commission. (2017). *Better Regulation "Toolbox"*. Brussels: European Commission.

Feldman, M. S., & Quick, K. S. (2009). Generating Resources and Energizing Frameworks Through Inclusive Public Management. *International Public Management Journal*, 12(2), 137–171.

Fraussen, B., Albareda, A., & Braun, C. (2020). Conceptualizing Consultation Approaches: Identifying Combinations of Consultation Tools and Analyzing Their Implications for Stakeholder Diversity. *Policy Sciences*, 53(3), 473–493.

Fraussen, B., Beyers, J., & Donas, T. (2015). The Expanding Core and Varying Degrees of Insiderness: Institutionalised Interest Group Access to Advisory Councils. *Political Studies*, 63(3), 569–588.

Halpin, D. R., & Fraussen, B. (2017). Laying the Groundwork: Linking Internal Agenda-Setting Processes of Interest Groups to Their Role in Policy Making. *Administration & Society*, 51(8), 1337–1359.

Hendriks, C. M. (2016). Coupling Citizens and Elites in Deliberative Systems: The Role of Institutional Design. *European Journal of Political Research*, 55(1), 43–60.

Howlett, M., & Cashore, B. (2009). The Dependent Variable Problem in the Study of Policy Change: Understanding Policy Change as a Methodological Problem. *Journal of Comparative Policy Analysis*, 11(1), 33–46.

Jacquet, V., & van der Does, R. (2021). Deliberation and Policy-Making: Three Ways to Think about Minipublics' Consequences. *Administration & Society*, 53(3), 468–487.

Klüver, H., Braun, C., & Beyers, J. (2015). Legislative Lobbying in Context: Towards a Conceptual Framework of Interest Group Lobbying in the European Union. *Journal of European Public Policy*, 22(4), 447–461. doi:10.1080/13501763.2015.1008792.

Princen, S. (2011). Agenda-Setting Strategies in EU Policy Processes. *Journal of European Public Policy*, 18(7), 927–943.

Rimkutė, D. (2020). Building Organizational Reputation in the European Regulatory State: An Analysis of EU Agencies' Communications. *Governance*, 33(2), 385–406.

Sirianni, C. (2009). *Investing in Democracy: Engaging Citizens in Collaborative Governance*. Washington, DC: Brookings Institution Press.

Tallberg, J., Dellmuth, L. M., Agné, H., & Duit, A. (2015). NGO Influence in International Organizations: Information, Access and Exchange. *British Journal of Political Science*, 48(1), 213–238.

Van Ballaert, B. (2017). The European Commission's Use of Consultation during Policy Formulation: The Effects of Policy Characteristics. *European Union Politics*, 18(3), 406–423.

Werner, H., & Marien, S. (2020). Process vs. Outcome? How to Evaluate the Effects of Participatory Processes on Legitimacy Perceptions. *British Journal of Political Science*, 1–8. Doi:10.1017/s000712342 0000459.

13

TOOLS FOR MANAGING THE MEDIA

Monitoring, Branding and Messaging

Alex Marland

Communication is a crucial component in the success or failure of public policy, including agenda-setting. As the media and technological environment evolves, so, too, must politicians and governments, which means packaging information to meet the way the news media works and the way audiences receive and process information. The many disparate voices in a digital world have increased the risks of a communications mistake and augmented the strategic value of controlled messaging. This control can take the form of branding whereby all information is coordinated to reinforce central messages that resonate on an emotional level and foster loyalty and which offer time and cost efficiencies but which emphasize select aspects of a policy while obscuring others. This chapter looks at some of the public-facing communications activities by government to sell public policy. It examines some internal strategic planning templates used in Canada, where branding and message management are key facets of public policy announcements. While public sector branding is generally in the public interest, it is a form of information management that bears monitoring. This chapter reveals some of the hidden aspects of communications planning in government. It begins by situating why public officials want to control information and synthesizes literature about public sector branding. Most of the chapter features a case study of the government of Canada, and discusses how internal tools are used to coordinate the repetition of strategic messaging across multiple communications channels. Examples of communication tools are identified to illustrate the political interest in spinning information, centralized communications planning and the onset of the shift to digital visuals, social media and storytelling. Special attention is paid to key message planning tools which involve public servants strategizing how to optimize spin, generate positive publicity and reinforce brand messaging.

Introduction

Politicians and political staff obsess over trying to control communications. Sophisticated news management in government dates to at least the Second World War (Tulloch 1993), but nowadays, the desire to generate praise and avoid criticism extends beyond news coverage to preoccupation with social media and public opinion polls. The relentless push for positive publicity and the integration into governance of election campaign strategies and tactics are so persistent that governments are said to be permanently campaigning (e.g., Cook 2002; Needham 2005).

 DOI: 10.4324/9781003163954-16

As partisans apply a command-and-control hierarchy to government, and as they infuse new communications-focused processes, they demand competent communications management at all stages of the public policy cycle. The unrelenting drive among partisans to win political competitions shows no signs of letting up in a hyper-mediated public environment where a minor slip-up can go viral and derail a policy agenda. This political fixation with communications victories is magnified when combined with the public service's own efforts to manage information in a fast-tempo mediascape that blends journalists, political actors and ordinary citizens in real-time public interactions without boundaries of place.

Modern governments are preoccupied with information management, including branding (Eshuis and Klijn 2012) and self-promotion (Deacon and Monk 2002). Branding emerged as a marketing tool to differentiate commodities such as coffee and soap through the use of logos, colourful packaging, contests and publicity that resulted in consumers willing to pay a price premium for their preferred brand (Marland 2003). It evolved into fostering brand preference by communicating images and emotions instead of emphasizing details like car advertising, which promotes lifestyle and aspiration.

Today, branding is a monolith that permeates organizational culture. It unifies all communications to promote desired key messages, construct a desired image and reach target audiences in an efficient manner that saves money, reinforces overarching corporate values, generates goodwill, builds emotional attachments and instills loyalty (Marland 2016; Wood 2000). While most, if not all, leaders of Western liberal democracies are attuned to the importance of staying "on brand" (e.g., Scammell 2015), it would be misguided to assume that the appeal of branding among political parties is what has spurred its adoption within public administration, which has its own reasons for using branding. As well, branding does not exist in a vacuum of related phenomena, such as the packaging of politics (Franklin 1994) or new political governance (Aucoin 2012), and like other forms of communications management, it can obfuscate what strategists do not want audiences to see by employing spin and propaganda (Bertilsson and Rennstam 2017). A notable difference from other forms of strategic communications is that the simplicity of brand messages combines financial savings with nurturing a flock of devoted supporters.

Branding in government appeals to the political executive, political staff and senior public servants alike, although there can be tension about its execution. They generally recognize the competitive and financial benefits of differentiating products with country of origin markers, of creating tourism campaigns that turn on the branding of a place, and of branding public policy (e.g., Alserhan 2013; Valaskivi 2013). They periodically collaborate to develop a new corporate identity for the government, whose visual standards and logo are enforced by staff throughout the public service. Branding is also used by governments to foster public trust and to forge stronger relationships with internal and external stakeholders (Leijerholt, Biedenbach and Hultén 2019). How politicians and governments manage some forms of communication is well documented. For instance, relatively observable phenomena include the role of press secretaries to drive the news agenda or ways that governments reinforce the leader's authority (Heffernan 2006). Less well understood are the internal practices in government that bring together disparate messages to present a unified voice and image as part of a branding strategy.

What tools do governments use to coordinate brand messages? What public administration processes are used to promote conformity and ensure alignment with centralized messaging? Surprisingly little documentation exists about internal tools within public administration to manage communications. There are two main types of communications templates within government that encompass front-end and back-end activities (Gaber 2000; Howlett 2009). One type is publicly visible, such as a news release or website content, while the other is below the line and performs an internal organizational function, such as a planning document to roll out

the announcement of a new policy (Marland 2017a). There is little descriptive research about below-the-line media management by governments around the world, with the exception of practitioner manuals that offer insider accounts, including *How to be a Spin Doctor* (Richards 2016) and *Professional Communications in the Public Sector* (Glenn 2014).

In this chapter, I synthesize media management tools used in public administration, paying particular attention to internal planning functions within Canadian federal and provincial governments and how this functions as part of branding. This synthesis draws on a review of internal documents obtained in 2016 by placing requests with departmental communications staff and filing access-to-information requests (see Marland 2017a, 2017b). Readers should be mindful that communications strategies and tactics are constantly evolving in response to changes in technology, journalism and society, including innovations in the private and public sectors, as well as politicians and political staff importing new approaches from the campaign trail. The Canadian case informs broad insights into the significant planning exerted within public administration to control information to achieve optimal publicity and a keen political interest in tying messages to the master brand established by those at the top of the government hierarchy.

Being mindful that the study of a single country constitutes a snapshot in time in a single jurisdiction, I summarize processes to enable generalizations that might apply to other countries, particularly those using the Westminster system of government (e.g., Aucoin 2012; Gaber 2000). But before examining how governments manage the media, we need to consider the news ecosystem they operate in, which is a hybrid of traditional mainstream media and digital media.

The News Media Ecosystem

Relationships between politicians and journalists are fraught with tension in Western liberal democracies. The nineteenth-century era of the party press, when newspapers were blatantly partisan and sometimes owned by elected officials, gave way to a commercialized media environment in which government executives gave inside scoops in return for laudatory coverage. The television age in the mid-twentieth century hastened the focus on political leaders, including their presentation and personality, while the Watergate scandal in the late 1960s transformed press galleries from reporter lapdogs who built friendships with political insiders into journalists aspiring to be agitators who mistrust authority figures.

The media's competitive interest in behaving as a so-called fourth estate grew as the speed at which news and information travels intensified with technological innovations such as photocopiers, 24/7 news channels, fax machines, cheaper long distance telephone fees and cellphones. Throughout, image management was at the fore, with political leaders constantly looking for ways to generate the most positive impressions of their public self and policies.

In this century, information communication technologies have exponentially increased the volume and speed at which news travels, including from the general public, while the media gatekeepers who decide what is newsworthy have seen their role diminish. At first, politicians and public servants were preoccupied with posting text on static web pages. As internet bandwidth expanded and digital cameras became the norm, this evolved into more dynamic experiences involving graphics, photos, audio and video.

The emergence of social media and smartphones brought more diverse voices into political conversations while simultaneously fracturing audiences into information silos that are filled with like-minded views, or "echo chambers," including among journalists who amplify divisions (Usher, Holcomb and Littman 2018). In the digital age, information travels so quickly that there

can be multiple news cycles per day, with a hybrid of traditional and newer media combining to create a "political information cycle" that features journalists interacting with citizen proto-journalists as they compete to be the first to break news online (Chadwick 2011) and react to audience online feedback (Lee and Tandoc Jr. 2017).

Governments were forced to adapt. The wheels of public administration are notoriously slow, resistant to change and painstaking, but the public service was confronted with a public culture that wanted two-way engagement in real time and political masters who were under pressure to divulge error-free information in a manner that reinforced the government's message themes set by the political centre. In a digital communications environment, there is a greater need to package information in an interesting, simple and creative manner in order to attract journalists' and audiences' fleeting attention. At all times, government personnel must be mindful that pundits and opponents will seize the opportunity to pounce on a misstep.

The fear of error, combined with the desire to promote a singular narrative, has driven the prevalence of scripting in politics and government. Ministers are advised to stick to their talking points, to deliver canned speeches and to avoid answering controversial questions. Social media posts rehash key messages and present staged images. In lieu of risky interviews, journalists might be asked by a communications staffer to submit enquiries by email so a written response can be crafted by multiple people to skirt thorny topics. In response, professional journalists might ignore supplied or repeated messaging, which can result in news stories that cause political actors discomfort and fortify their impressions that the media cannot be trusted. In other cases, codependency persists, such as when journalists report inside information without identifying their sources while less industrious and time-strapped reporters get in the habit of quoting from social media posts. Often, only well-resourced journalists have the time and space to perform investigative journalism (Boswell and Corbett 2016).

Government Advertising

To avoid media controversy, governments control the message by buying advertising on platforms that they believe will reach target audiences. Advertising is a crucial element of brand building because it allows the sponsor to direct all facets of the message and how it is communicated, and the controlled images can resonate on an emotional level. Advertising plays a considerable role in publicizing public policy, ranging from a public health information campaign through to tourism ads and annual reminders about filing taxes. However, it is expensive, particularly on television, whereas social media ads offer greater precision at a more economical price. More ominously, government advertising is subject to taking on partisan slants and allegations of inappropriate use of state resources for political gain.

The potential for government ads to imbue partisan tones results in rules and processes. In Canada, the federal government has a two-stage oversight mechanism, requiring that proposals for large advertising campaigns be reviewed by a non-profit organization that administers a national code of advertising standards. The review criteria focus on whether a proposed advertisement is considered to be objective, is free from political party identifiers or bias and does not blatantly use a political party's colour scheme (Government of Canada 2020). Other criteria include ensuring that politicians do not appear and that certain public policy initiatives or proposed trade agreements are not advertised until approved by Parliament. A comparable mechanism in Ontario, the country's largest province, inspired the federal oversight model, although frustrated politicians have since watered it down. Smaller provinces have few if any formal rules to guide how government advertising may be used.

Media Management: Public Communications Products

Outward-facing communications products are relatively consistent in Western liberal societies. To improve the potential for news coverage, public relations (PR) activities need to respond to how journalists perform their work, which means recognizing the pressures they face to file news stories quickly, efficiently and at a low cost with minimal effort. Publicists are therefore incentivized to package information to accommodate the on-the-job realities of media economics. For example, instead of securing an interview or filing access-to-information requests, some journalists investigate stories while sitting at their desks by perusing what is trending on social media and conducting online research for background information, which increases the strategic importance of managing online content. News outlets that allocate fewer resources to original journalism, particularly small media outlets, might rely on news releases for content or publish supplied digital photographs (Marland 2012). Accordingly, an organization that posts quotes from key spokespersons on Twitter about a topical issue, emails a news release written in the manner of a news story or posts professional photographs online increases the likelihood of circulation via the news media. The uptake of these information subsidies is so extensive that one British study concluded that a majority of news stories avail of free content and that only a minority of news reports feature independent journalistic activities (Lewis, Williams and Franklin 2008).

Many media management tools are generic and are creatures of corporate PR. Media advisories are issued to announce the details of an upcoming news conference, photo op or other event that reporters might want to attend. Ministers deliver speeches by drawing on speaking notes that might be shared with the press in advance on a "check against delivery" basis. The written word includes news releases, backgrounders, frequently asked questions and fact sheets, while digital-only content features multimedia galleries of high-quality photos and video in a style that mimics photojournalism and is suitable for reproduction. Partisan slants are often embedded; the least politicized PR products are public alerts and notices that provide factual information about public safety. All this responds to the norms of how the media behaves, which academics refer to as "media logic" and "mediatization": namely, journalists acting as gatekeepers who filter information, decide what has news value, and apply their own values and biases (Strömbäck 2008).

Countries such as Canada, Germany, Spain and the United Kingdom have formal rules to help ensure that information about government policies is communicated in an impartial manner to the media (Sanders, Crespo and Holtz-Bacha 2011). But there are limits: interactions between journalists and partisan spokespersons such as ministers are not bound by the same limitations as non-partisan public servants are, nor should they be. It falls to political representatives to stay on script and reframe debate. They engage in rebuttal, set and drive the news agenda and plant stories, or perhaps they might create diversions, float policy trial balloons and generally manage public expectations (Gaber 2000). But how, then, does the public service engage in media management that is hidden from public view?

Media Management: Internal Planning Tools

It is the below-the-line planning tools that reveal the strategic thinking that influences what policy information is released and how it is packaged. Back-and-forth discussion between the head of government, ministers, political staff, senior public servants and communications personnel is simplified by using standardized templates that ensure all relevant details are considered. Every government uses different internal forms, and invariably a government tweaks and updates its innumerable templates. What is constant is that considerable human resources are allocated to

mapping out how public policy will be announced, how it will be promoted, and how media enquiries and social media discussion will be managed.

A branding ethos is pervasive in the government of Canada, making it an exemplary case study. A strategic planning template introduced by the Conservative government led by Prime Minister Stephen Harper from 2006 to 2015 exemplified how the Prime Minister's Office (PMO) strives to police message discipline and manage visual optics. A "message event proposal" form introduced by the Harper PMO began as an election campaign tool to plan for the leader's media events and was introduced into government, where it went through various iterations (for examples, see Marland 2016: 400–404, 2017b: 39–40). The template required that line departments supply copious details about a planned public announcement or media event so that the PMO and its public service counterpart, the Privy Council Office (PCO), could play a central coordinating role. The message event proposal required that a minister's office and public servants bundle the event into one of a handful of branded message themes, such as "creating and protecting jobs and opportunities" or "protecting Canadians" to receive clearance from central agencies. Departments were obligated to identify key messages; outline the visuals, including the backdrop and speaker's podium sign; and consider newsworthy angles. That the ensuing Liberal government led by Justin Trudeau pledged in 2015 to do away with the central oversight, and yet, nevertheless, departmental templates persisted, including some which repurposed the notorious form, speaks to the institutionalization of communications planning documents. The templates are a facet of public administration in a similar way that memoranda to cabinet, briefing notes and other repetitive information assemblies are necessary for efficient government operations, except that communications processes are more fluid.

A myriad of policies and protocols within the government of Canada promote branding. Chief among them is the Federal Identity Program (FIP), which is a corporate image policy set by the Treasury Board that has passed through multiple iterations since the program's creation in 1970 (Way 1993; Marland 2016). The FIP has strict guidelines about the use of visual identity, and it restricts departments from creating their own logos. Brand coherence is evident through the requirement that government visuals, including the exterior of its buildings, prominently display the iconic Canada wordmark that comprises "Canada" in black typeface and a red maple leaf flag situated on top of the final letter. Each department is required to designate an FIP coordinator to ensure compliance, although certain agencies, boards and commissions are exempt from the program. The FIP is a branding leviathan that sets a culture tone throughout Canadian government that line departments are beholden to the centre and must follow a "whole of government" approach to communications.

Choosing the timing of a government policy announcement or media event is reminiscent of air traffic control in that there must be centralized monitoring and coordination to avoid conflicts. In Canada, ministers require approval of the PMO to travel outside the capital city of Ottawa. Both the PMO and PCO maintain communications calendars that map planned ministerial events along with other activities such as public holidays, leaders' summits, tabling of reports of officers of the legislature, events planned by opponents and interest groups and so forth. Where possible, government media events are slotted into a message of the day and grouped into a weekly theme. Thus, policy announcements involving women might be delayed or bumped up to align with International Women's Day, or policies concerning young families might be timed to coincide with children heading back to school after summer vacation. The bundling of messages in this way increases the ability of the government to sustain an overarching brand as compared with communications delivered in a hodgepodge fashion. Central coordination also avoids the potential for a high-profile policy announcement to overshadow another potential good news story or get lost amid external events. Awareness of the external political environment is needed to address the possibility that an announcement could be in

poor taste, such as if news broke that the government was changing how morticians were regulated at the very moment that the public was mourning a human tragedy.

Considerable effort is now steered towards digital communications, and the extent to which politicians and public servants attempt to micromanage social media is startling, given that they work to create an illusion of being impromptu and authentic. In Canada, communications process templates reflect the individual preferences of government departments. Preparing for a public announcement can range from filling out a narrow event planning checklist to drafting a broad strategic communications plan. When journalists request an interview, a staffer might complete a form to document relevant details and possibly draft suggested media lines for approval. Staff develop and maintain social media plans that encompass how preplanned posts and images will be rolled out. An additional element with the government of Canada is that all communications must be bilingual, so time is needed to ensure that English can be translated into French and vice versa. As a result, a single tweet can be crafted and approved by a dozen or more personnel and prepared weeks in advance. Sometimes a communications snafu occurs, and an awkward turn of phrase or political insensitivity that is mocked online can lead to a retraction or explanation by the minister. The public embarrassment is held up as further evidence that communications planning and oversight are necessary.

The strategic and tactical impetus for communications planning is sometimes spelled out in templates so that public servants have greater awareness of the need to give significant thought to how they will provide the media or public with information. Plans for publicizing major policies, programs and initiatives are organized much like a corporate document. One Canadian department's template begins with a summary of what is being communicated and how it is linked with government priorities, notably the budget (Employment and Social Development Canada 2016). Public servants are advised that communications objectives require thinking about ways to raise awareness of a program or policy and what action audiences should take. Isolating target audiences entails, in part, considering their online habits and which social media influencers can be reached to spread the message. Knowing audiences' current perception of the issue, identifying communications risks and opportunities, establishing an awareness of trends and stakeholder positions, identifying what is being said in the media and estimating how an announcement is likely to be publicly received are among the many strategic considerations. Increasingly, communications personnel are encouraged to include data points in their messaging because statistics and milestones add credibility to broader messaging. Having established these basics, this particular template then moves into the strategic approach to getting the message out, including digital communications, media outreach and stakeholder engagement.

Developing key messages is where public policy transforms from detailed minutiae into high-level themes and emotive communication. Concision is prized. In the template example here, public servants are asked to create "three to five key messages that align with your objectives and capture the essence of the initiative." They are instructed to "keep the messages concise and in plain language" and to "work alongside your program colleagues to ensure messages are simple and easily understood, particularly if describing a complex or highly technical topic." The foundation of branding appears in instructions urging unity of message. In this template, communicators are asked to "keep in mind the government's other messages related to this issue, and ensure consistency across all products." After crafting messages, the department is requested to list types of public communications products and describe how the success of the public rollout will be measured.

Considerable planning goes into a government's social media. Canadian departments maintain social media implementation plans or some such variation. For example, in 2016, one department's public servants considered the business drivers of the proposed online approach and how it aligned with a broader social media strategy (Agriculture and Agri-Food Canada 2016). They

were asked to justify the choice of platform by articulating the target audience and identifying what accessibility options are available and what terms of use apply. The form then requested details about resources to mobilize the online message, including the need to identify which staff will work on the social media plan and at what intervals, along with what financial resources will be required. A chart of roles and responsibilities followed to identify who will draft content, edit it, approve it and publish it. Once published, someone needs to administer, monitor and respond to the account, particularly if issues arise that require swift management. As part of this particular template, the department required a risk management plan to mitigate potential problems, with additional planning resulting from the proposed use of social media platforms that are not on a preauthorized list. Next, management protocols must be considered. How will the department engage with audiences online? What protocol will it follow in the event of contentious issues? What are the voice and style of the account? Who will have access to running it? What is the plan for ensuring continuous updating? A further factor is performance management to measure the success of the account relative to its objectives. Then, a communications strategy must be prepared to "align key messages communicated through the official social media account with messages delivered through other departmental channels" (Agriculture and Agri-Food Canada 2016). A phasing-out plan follows to establish how the social media account will be phased out and closed. All this planning must be approved by the departmental head of communications.

Government personnel are evidently concerned about the pitfalls of maintaining a social media presence. According to a third Canadian department, the objectives of managing risk in social media interactions include ensuring that the department engages in a timely manner, maximizes the visibility and ranking of its social media channels, and serves the public effectively. To accomplish this, it maintains a chart to assign tasks to designated public servants to manage likes, retweets and ad hoc messages which can escalate to involving senior management (Table 13.1). This is one of countless internal planning documents used within governments worldwide to manage the message.

Table 13.1 Social Media Engagement Delegated Authority Chart

Level	*Social Media Content*	*Type*	*Delegated Authority*
1	Likes	Partner/stakeholder content Call to action responses (e.g., photo contest, poll, questions, etc.)	Social Media Advisor
2	Retweets/shares	Partner/stakeholder content Key social media influencers	Strategic Communications Manager or Manager of Web and New Media
3	General user questions	Responses to questions using preapproved messages (media lines, Q&As, existing web content, etc.)	Strategic Communications Manager
4	General user questions Retweets/shares	Questions and content outside the scope of Level 2 or 3 (such as content not originating from an identified stakeholder/partner or influencer)	Associate Director General or delegate
5	Snapshot	Weekly, advance content	
6	Ad hoc messages	Messages which were not anticipated in the snapshot process	
7	As required by Associate Director General	Any social media content or question as needed	Director General or delegate

Source: Canadian Heritage (2016)

Figure 13.1 Government of Nunavut Logo and Tagline

Source: © Government of Nunavut. Reprinted with permission

It is unclear to what extent branding is top of mind for the public servants who fill out these templates. In this Canadian case study, the word *brand* almost never appeared in the collected documents, with the key exception being sub-national governments that create brand standard manuals similar to the FIP. Documentation for the government of Nunavut's visual identity program is particularly enlightening. That northern territory's manual outline brand compliance expectations, such as how to use the government's logo (Figure 13.1), what its design standards are for the logo and wordmark, how to use the government's tagline and examples of improper use.

The Nunavut manual explains what branding is and establishes that it is a prism for all government policy decisions:

> The [government's] brand is broader than its visual identity, more than a signature or symbol. Our brand is the intangible sum of the government's attributes: its name, values, offerings, people, history and reputation, and the way it is experienced and promoted. . . . The brand positioning provides a lens through which every substantive decision within the [government] should be made.
>
> *(Government of Nunavut 2016: 2)*

It goes on to explain that the visual identity of a polar bear logo helps differentiate the territory from other sub-national governments; assist citizens with easily recognizing government programs, services and facilities; and reinforce the government's reputation. The benefits of branding, it says, are that the government develops "effective tools to communicate consistently and clearly to all audiences, at a number of levels, while ensuring that all communications reinforce our reputation, wherever we go." By comparison, mentions of branding were fleeting in the other collected documents, such as one province's corporate communications policy, which referred to the importance of brand coherence (Treasury Board of Nova Scotia 2016).

Conclusion

The synchronization of all communications is a growing trend that has considerable benefit and is considered essential in a multi-platform media environment. Politicians and political staff adopt corporate marketing practices during election campaigns and then import successful practices into governance. The public service also employs branding, most notably through the unification of messaging and visuals under a single corporate identity umbrella. The considerable cost and time savings that result from communications consistency, combined with improved

ability to reach audiences in a more poignant manner, understandably make branding a strategic priority for public administration. However, this brings the potential for political interference and obfuscation of information that can weaken source credibility and harm a professional public service's creed of impartiality.

Government branding comprises visible communications and the internal processes that drive those outward-facing interactions. Advertising is the most dynamic aspect of a branding campaign because the sponsor controls all strategic facets, ranging from the creative design to the media buy. But advertising is expensive. Whether advertising is used or not, the news media plays a formidable role in reporting information about government activities and public policy, and journalists in modern liberal democracies often file confrontational reports. Governments package information in a manner that increases the likelihood of the media abandoning a critical filter in its reporting. Press conferences, photo ops, tweets and news releases are part of the canon of PR tactics to fulfill the media's interest in low-cost and timely information supplied in a user-friendly format. In short order, social media has become the preferred medium for official content, and consequently, each post can require the involvement of many public servants.

Considerable work goes on behind the scenes within government to influence media coverage and control their agenda or at least manage them; by extension, this involves promoting interconnected messages that are a hallmark of branding and communications control. Governments are large, complex organizations that are prone to using templates to assemble and coordinate many perspectives, so it stands to reason that they do so with communications planning. Those that embody transparency make publicly available the templates of their internal planning tools, such as memoranda to cabinet or briefing notes. Conversely, communications templates can be difficult to locate, with the notable exception of those related to emergency planning, which require urgent nonpartisan coordination across multiple public actors. It seems likely that these will remain hidden instruments because making internal templates publicly available would subject a government to criticism for attempting to manipulate information and for prioritizing some audiences over others. As well, while a cabinet memorandum is relatively static and centralized, by comparison, the communications ecosystem is subject to constant change; thus, government departments must continually revise their templates.

There is a saying in government that good communications cannot sell bad policy, but bad communications can sink good policy. Reinforcing central messages and mitigating the potential hazards of derailing a policy initiative make branding even more appealing to public servants and politicians. While the use of branding in the public sector is generally in the public interest, it is a form of information management that bears monitoring.

References

Agriculture and Agri-Food Canada. 2016. "Sample template: Social media implementation plan." Internal document.

Alserhan, Baker Ahmad. 2013. "Branding employment related public policies: Evidence from a non-western context." *Employee Relations* 35(4): 423–440.

Aucoin, Peter. 2012. "New political governance in Westminster systems: Impartial public administration and management performance at risk." *Governance* 25(2): 177–199.

Bertilsson, Jon and Jens Rennstam. 2017. "The destructive side of branding: A heuristic model for analyzing the value of branding practice." *Organization* 25(2): 260–281.

Boswell, John and Jack Corbett. 2016. "How do journalists cope? Conspiracy in the everyday production of political news." *Australian Journal of Political Science* 51(2): 308–322.

Canadian Heritage. 2016. "Annex C: Social media delegated authority guidelines." Internal document.

Chadwick, Andrew. 2011. "The political information cycle in a hybrid news system: The British prime minister and the 'bullygate' affair." *The International Journal of Press/Politics* 16(1): 3–29.

Cook, Corey. 2002. "'The contemporary presidency': The permanence of the 'permanent campaign': George W. Bush's public presidency." *Presidential Studies Quarterly* 32(4): 753–764.
Deacon, David and Wendy Monk. 2002. "News management and new managerialism." *Journal of Political Marketing* 1(2–3): 25–44.
Employment and Social Development Canada. 2016. "Communications strategic approach and roll-out." Internal document.
Eshuis, Jasper and Erik-Hans Klijn. 2012. *Branding in Governance and Public Management*. London: Routledge.
Franklin, Bob. 1994. *Packaging Politics: Political Communication in Britain's Mediated Democracy*. London: Edward Arnold.
Gaber, Ivor. 2000. "Government by spin: An analysis of the process." *Media, Culture & Society* 22: 507–518.
Glenn, Ted. 2014. *Professional Communications in the Public Sector*. Toronto: Canadian Scholars' Press.
Government of Canada. 2020. "Advertising review criteria." www.canada.ca/en/treasury-board-secretariat/services/government-communications/advertising-oversight-mechanism/criteria-non-partisan-communications.html
Government of Nunavut. 2016. "Corporate communications policy." Executive and intergovernmental affairs. Internal document.
Heffernan, Richard. 2006. "The prime minister and the news media: Political communication as a leadership resource." *Parliamentary Affairs* 59(4): 582–598.
Howlett, Michael. 2009. "Government communication as a policy tool: A framework for analysis." *Canadian Political Science Review* 3(2): 23–37.
Lee, Eun-Ju and Edson C. Tandoc Jr. 2017. "When news meets the audience: How audience feedback online affects news production and consumption." *Human Communication Research* 43: 436–449.
Leijerholt, Ulrika, Galina Biedenbach and Peter Hultén. 2019. "Branding in the public sector: A systematic literature review and directions for future research." *Journal of Brand Management* 26: 126–140.
Lewis, Justin, Andrew Williams and Bob Franklin. 2008. "A compromised fourth estate? UK news journalism, public relations and news sources." *Journalism Studies* 9(1): 1–20.
Marland, Alex. 2003. "Marketing political soap: A political marketing view of selling candidates like soap, of electioneering as a ritual, and of electoral military analogies." *Journal of Public Affairs* 3(2): 103–115.
Marland, Alex. 2012. "Political photography, journalism and framing in the digital age: Management of visual media by the prime minister of Canada." *International Journal of Press/Politics* 17(2): 214–233.
Marland, Alex. 2016. *Brand Command: Canadian Politics and Democracy in the Age of Message Control*. Vancouver: UBC Press.
Marland, Alex. 2017a. "Above and below the line: Strategic communications and media management in Canadian governments." *Canadian Public Administration* 60(3): 417–437.
Marland, Alex. 2017b. "Strategic management of media relations: Communications centralization and spin in the Government of Canada." *Canadian Public Policy* 43(1): 36–49.
Needham, Catherine. 2005. "Brand leaders: Clinton, Blair and the limitations of the permanent campaign." *Political Studies* 53: 343–361.
Richards, Paul. 2016. *How to be a Spin Doctor: Handling the Media in the Digital Age*. Hull, UK: Biteback.
Sanders, Karen, Marìa José Canel Crespo and Christina Holtz-Bacha. 2011. "Communicating governments: A three-country comparison of how governments communicate with citizens." *The International Journal of Press/Politics* 16(4): 523–547.
Scammell, Margaret. 2015. "Politics and image: The conceptual value of branding." *Journal of Political Marketing* 14: 7–18.
Strömbäck, Jesper. 2008. "Four phases of mediatization: An analysis of mediatization of politics." *The International Journal of Press/Politics* 13(3): 228–246.
Treasury Board of Nova Scotia. 2016. "Communications policy/protocol." Internal document.
Tulloch, John. 1993. "Policing the public sphere: The British machinery of news management." *Media, Culture and Society* 15: 363–384.
Usher, Nikki, Jesse Holcomb and Justin Littman. 2018. "Twitter makes it worse: Political journalists, gendered echo chambers, and the amplification of gender bias." *The International Journal of Press/Politics* 23(3): 324–344.
Valaskivi, Katja. 2013. "A brand new future? Cool Japan and the social imaginary of the branded nation." *Japan Forum* 25(4): 485–504.
Way, Alan. 1993. "The government of Canada's federal identity program." *Design Management Journal* Summer: 55–62.
Wood, Lisa. 2000. "Brands and brand equity: Definition and management." *Management Decision* 38/9: 662–669.

PART IV

Policy Formulation Tools

14
POLICY FORMULATION TOOLS
New Perspectives

Elisa Helena Xiol Y Ferreira, Andrew Jordan and John Turnpenny

Policy formulation is an important but imperfectly understood stage of the policy cycle. Challenging to conceive and study without thinking in terms of tools – arguably more than for other policy stages – there are many individual literatures that seek to promote and/or inform the use of specific policy formulation tools. With the emergence of ever-more-complex policy problems, a fresh wave of interest in more sophisticated policy formulation tools has been generated as well, such as scenarios and computer-based forms of modeling. However, the policy analysis literature is relatively silent on how, why, when, by whom, in what settings and with what effects the various tools are used in practice. To that end, we propose a new definition and typology of tools and offer a means of reassembling the field around an analytical framework focused on actors, venues, capacities and effects. To understand these tools fully, we argue that policy researchers must view them in the context of the broader activities and processes of policy formulation. The general aim here is to investigate what can be gained by bringing the study of policy formulation tools back into the mainstream of public policy research.

Introduction

As policy researchers and analysts are becoming more interested in policy formulation – partly because of the rise to prominence of ever-more-complex problems that defy standard policy remedies (Howlett et al. 2014) – there is a growing belief that it may constitute the final 'missing link' (Hargrove 1975) in policy analysis. If the agenda-setting stage in the policy cycle is essentially concerned with identifying where to go, policy formulation is all about how to get there (Hill 2009, p. 171). Arguably one of the most poorly understood of the policy process stages, policy formulation is a vastly different activity to policy implementation. It is an important phase devoted to 'generating options about what to do about a public problem' (Howlett 2011, p. 29) and is inherent to most, if not all, forms of policymaking. In this chapter, we investigate what might be gained by bringing the study of policy formulation tools back into the mainstream of public policy research. A new definition and typology of tools are proposed, as well as an analytical framework, as a means of reassembling the field.

If policy formulation is 'a process of identifying and addressing possible solutions to policy problems or, to put it another way, exploring the various options or alternatives available for addressing a problem', then developing and/or using policy formulation tools is a vital part of that

DOI: 10.4324/9781003163954-18

process (Howlett 2011, p. 30). We suggest that, much more than for other policy stages, it is very hard to conceive of policy formulation, let alone properly study it, without thinking in terms of tools. Based on Dunn (2004), these include tools for forecasting and exploring future problems using scenarios, tools for identifying and recommending policy options (e.g., cost-benefit, cost-effectiveness and multi-criteria analyses) and tools for exploring problem structuring or framing (e.g., brainstorming, boundary analysis and argumentation mapping), to name but a few.

In recent years, the number of potentially deployable policy formulation tools has expanded massively. They include types that may be considered to fall into both positivist and post-positivist categories, with the latter inspired by critiques of the role of technocratic analysis and a concern to address subtle influences on the content of policy, such as discourses and ideologies (Fischer 1995). Yet the policy tools and instruments literature remains stubbornly fixated on implementation instruments. And while there are many individual literatures that seek to promote and/or inform the use of specific policy formulation tools, the policy analysis literature is relatively silent on how, why, when, by whom, in what settings and with what effects the various tools are used in practice. To the extent that they devote attention to formulation as a specific stage in the policy process, most textbooks frame it around understandings of processes, interests and expertise.

In many ways, the limited academic treatment that policy formulation tools have received in the period following the Second World War is symptomatic of a wider division in policy analysis between those doing policy research and those engaged in policy practice. For reasons explored more fully later in this chapter, when it comes to policy formulation tools, practice has arguably run well ahead of research. In this chapter, we seek to bring these two wings of the policy analysis community into a closer dialogue.

The remainder of the chapter is divided as follows: the second section takes a step back by examining the main actors, processes and venues of policy formulation in a general sense. The third section charts the turn away from policy formulation tools in mainstream public policy research and explores some of the reasons interest in policy formulation has recently undergone a renaissance. It also scours the existing literatures to explore the development of the several policy formulation tools that could, in principle, be used in these venues. Section 4 explores the analytical steps that will be needed to reassemble the various literatures into a more coherent sub-field of policy research, revolving around a series of common foci. To that end, we propose a new definition and typology of tools and offer a means of reassembling the field around an analytical framework focused on actors, venues, capacities and effects.

Policy Formulation: Actors, Processes and Venues

Actors: Who Are the Policy Formulators?

It is generally recognized that policy formulation is a critically important but relatively inscrutable stage of the policy process (Wu et al. 2010, p. 47), with many different actors interacting, often under intense and focused political pressure from special advisors, lobbyists and interest groups. As we shall see, this creates a distinct set of challenges for those who want to study the use of the tools or those who wish to design and/or promote them.

Some specific studies of policy formulation have sought to offer a detailed stock take of the different policy analysts who are typically involved (Howlett 2011, p. 31). Together, these actors are often said to constitute a policy advisory system, comprising decision-makers (chiefly politicians), knowledge producers and/or providers and knowledge brokers (Howlett 2011, pp. 31–33). Other typologies have differentiated the main participants in relation to their location (i.e., core

actors – professional policy analysts, central agency officials and others) and level of influence (i.e., public sector insiders, private sector insiders, and outsiders) (Howlett 2011, p. 33).

Precisely who formulates policy is ultimately an empirical question. The point we wish to make is that it is important to appreciate the variety of actors who might be involved in policy formulation activities as they might well have rather different motives and capabilities for using particular tools – a matter to which we now turn.

Policy Formulation Processes and Tasks

One of the most common ways to comprehend the process of policy formulation is to break it down into constituent steps or tasks. Having established the existence of a policy problem (or problems) through some form of data collection, the various policy-relevant dimensions of the problem are then evaluated to determine their causes and extent, chiefly as a basis for identifying potential policy solutions.

For Wu et al. (2010, p. 40) '[u]nderstanding the source of the problem' is an unavoidable part of formulation. They also make the point that rarely is there 'full agreement over . . . underlying causes' (Wu et al. 2010, p. 40). Like initial problem characterization, evaluation of the causes of a problem may thus involve political conflict as different actors seek to apportion blame, reduce their perceived complicity or shape subsequent policy responses in line with their interests. These characteristics strongly condition the type of tools used.

Once a broad consensus has been reached on the nature and extent of the problem(s), policymakers turn to consider appropriate responses. From the initial information gathering and analysis of causes, formulators thus engage in the '[s]pecification of objectives' (Wolman 1981, p. 438) or '[c]larifying policy objectives' (Wu et al. 2010, p. 40) stage. Initially, this third step of objective specification can involve the determination of the objectives to be met and the timescales for action (Wu et al. 2010). Again, disagreements over objectives can quickly ensue but once they are established, as a fourth step, specific policy options can be assessed, and recommendations are made on policy design(s). Because any particular problem may have multiple potential solutions, each with differing costs and benefits, these options require comparative assessment to guide decision-making.

Prior to the adoption of the final policy, it undergoes a fifth step – design. Having determined objectives, various means are available for selection from the toolbox (for example, Howlett 2011; Jordan et al. 2012; Jordan et al. 2013b). Determining the preferred policy mix is central to design considerations. While typologies also abound in the instruments literature, four main categories are evident: regulations, market-based instruments, voluntary approaches and informational measures (Jordan et al. 2013b). In addition, the instrument of public spending or budgeting may also be identified (see, e.g., Russel and Jordan 2014). Policymakers select from these instruments according to a range of considerations that are both internal and external to the instrument. This stage of formulation could, according to Wolman (1981, pp. 440–446), consequently involve the weighing up of several factors: the 'causal efficacy' of the policy, 'political feasibility', 'technical feasibility', any 'secondary consequences' resulting from the design, instrument type (regulations or incentives) and the capacity of implementation structures. This cycle constitutes the standard steps or tasks of policy formulation.

As mentioned earlier, all the steps including design may be deeply contested. After all, the final architecture of the policy could, once implemented, create winners and losers via processes of positive and negative feedback (Jordan and Matt 2014). One means of dissipating distributional conflict throughout the entire formulation process is to engage in what Thomas (2001, p. 218) terms consensus building or 'consolidation', whereby agreement is sought between the various

policy formulators and their client groupings. We shall show that a number of formulation tools have been developed specifically for this purpose. But while '[a]nticipating and addressing the . . . concerns of the various powerful social groups is essential', consultation may create associated transaction costs such as the slowing down of policy adoption (Wu et al. 2010, p. 41). A decision can be taken – the subsequent stage of the policy process – once agreement has been reached on the chosen course of action.

Indeed, policy formulation may not culminate in the adoption of a discrete and hence settled 'policy': on the contrary, policies may continue to be (re)formulated throughout their implementation as tool-informed learning takes place in relation to their operational effectiveness and associated outcomes (Jordan et al. 2013a). As we shall show, many policy analysts responded to these discomforting discoveries by offering ever-more-strident recommendations on how policy formulation should be conducted (Vining and Weimer 2010; Dunn 2004); notably fewer have studied how it is actually practiced (Colebatch and Radin 2006; Noordegraaf 2011). In the following section, we shall explore what a perspective focusing on formulation tools and venues offers by way of greater insight into the steps and the venues of policy formulation.

The Venues of Policy Formulation

Policy formulation – like policymaking more generally – occurs in particular venues and can, in principle, exist at different levels of governance, as well as within or outside the structures of the state. Baumgartner and Jones (1991, p. 1045) have termed these 'venues of policy action', going on to define them as 'institutional locations where authoritative decisions are made concerning a given issue' (Baumgartner and Jones 1993, p. 32). More specifically, Timmermans and Scholten (2006, p. 1105) suggest that the venues 'are locations where policies originate, obtain support, and are adopted as binding decisions'.

Several types of venues have been detected, including within federal, state and local governments and within international organizations (Pralle 2003), European Union institutions and national governments (Beyers and Kerremans 2012) and various trans-governmental cooperation mechanisms (Guiraudon 2002). Venues can include 'formal political arenas such as legislatures, executives and the judiciary, but also the media and the stock market' and so-called 'scientific venues such as research institutes, think-tanks and expert committees' (Timmermans and Scholten 2006, p. 1105).

On this basis, any attempt to categorize the venues of policy formulation should be cognizant of the institutional space itself and, significantly, the type of evidence used. With respect to the former, when examining formulation, we can more neatly divide venues by functional power rather than institutional level or actor group. Here, in terms of relative power, it is national government executives that are still arguably dominant globally, despite increasing shifts towards multi-level governance (Jordan and Huitema 2014). To give greater analytical purchase to our conceptualizations, we therefore build on Peters and Barker (1993), Baumgartner and Jones (1993) and Timmermans and Scholten (2006) and define policy formulation venues as institutional locations, both within and outside governments, in which certain policy formulation tasks are performed with the aim of informing the design, content and effects of policymaking activities.

The Tools of Policy Formulation

The Turn Away From Policy Formulation Tools and the Turn Back

Tool-driven or 'analycentric' approaches (Schick 1977) initially developed in the fields of defence and budgeting, but from the late 1960s, the scope of analytical activities has greatly expanded (Parsons 1995; Radin 2013, pp. 17–22; DeLeon 2006) almost as a corollary to the general

expansion in the state. As Schick (1977, p. 258) observed: '[W]henever positive government action has been extended to a new sphere, analytic activity has been sure to follow'. Crucially, the increasingly forceful turn towards analycentric tools and methods embedded a linear-rational approach to analysis of policy problems in which – to put it simplistically – problems were to be identified and then 'solved' using analytical tools.

These tools primarily drew on techniques from operational research and economic analysis, including methods for assessing the costs and benefits of different policy alternatives and analysis of interacting parts of complex systems. Tools such as cost-benefit analysis (CBA) and computer models were to be found in the analycentric 'backroom' (Self 1981, p. 222), where political 'irrationalities' could be tempered and policy made more 'rational'.

While from the Lasswellian (Lasswell, 1971) perspective, tools were seen as having a central role in the development of an integrated approach that united policy researchers with policy practitioners, for several reasons, things did not quite match up to this vision. Policy formulation tools were gradually marginalized in public policy research, and some fell out of favour with policymakers. For example, CBA and integrated forms of planning and budgeting such as the Program Planning and Budgeting System (PPBS) fell some way short of initial expectations, and the rise of private sector management techniques in running public services (e.g., the New Public Management agenda), coupled with the desire to reduce the power and scope of bureaucracy, nurtured a demand for a new set of accounting tools for contracting out public services (Mintrom and Williams 2013).

In time, tool designers and developers became ever more divided into 'clusters of functional interest' (Schick 1977, p. 260). The idea of an integrated policy analysis for democracy was quietly forgotten in the rush to design ever-more-sophisticated tools. Indeed, some have devoted their entire careers to this task, only to discover later that relatively few policymakers routinely used the tools they had designed (Pearce 1998; Hanley et al. 1990). As Schick (1977, p. 262) had earlier predicted, they believed that the route to usefulness was via ever greater precision and rigour – but it wasn't.

Nowadays, interest in policy formulation tools appears to be growing strongly once again, for several reasons. First, new tasks other than knowledge creation are being found for tools such as CBA and indicators, including as a means to implement the New Public Management agenda. Second, the emergence of complex policy problems such as climate change has generated a fresh wave of interest in more sophisticated policy formulation tools such as scenarios and computer-based forms of modeling. Third, the growing interest in policy formulation tools could also be seen as one symptom of the gradual rediscovery of policy design as both a policy goal (e.g., through state-led policymaking) and a research topic (Howlett et al. 2014). Far from reducing the need for state involvement, the emergence of a more complex, networked society and austerity pressures make it more important for interventions to be carefully targeted and legitimated (Howlett and Lejano 2013, p. 12; Xiol Y Ferreira and Howlett, 2021). Finally, the number of policy formulation tool types has grown significantly in recent years. And as they have emerged from the analycentric 'backroom' (Self 1981, p. 222), the expectation has grown that that they will respond more sensitively to changing contextual conditions and public expectations. In the next section, we attempt to bring a greater sense of analytical order to the expanding list of tools, methods, tasks and expectations by taking stock of the literatures to date.

Formulation Tools: Towards a New Sub-field of Policy Analysis?

The Literatures on Policy Formulation Tools: Taking Stock

In attempting to move the study of policy formulation tools back into the mainstream of public policy research, we immediately confront a problem – the relative absence of common definitions and typologies. Without these, it is difficult to believe that the literature on the topic

can be telescoped into a new sub-field. We believe that four literatures provide an especially important source of common terms and concepts, which we now briefly summarize.

The first literature describes the internal characteristics and functions of each tool and/or offers tool kits which seek to assist policy formulators in selecting 'the right tool for the job'. It outlines the intrinsic features of each tool, but it does not have a great deal to say about where, how, why and by whom (i.e., by which actors and in which venues) they are used and what effects they (do not) produce.

The second is dominated by typologies. Tools can be typologized in a number of different ways: for example, by the resources or capacities they require, by the activity they mainly support, by the task(s) they perform and by their spatial resolution. Radin (2013, p. 145) opts for a more parsimonious framing, distinguishing between two main types: the more economic tools such as cost-benefit analysis (CBA) and what she terms the more 'systematic approaches', such as criteria analysis and political mapping. The problem is that dividing the field in two does not really offer much typological variation.

The third literature adopts a more critical perspective (Wildavsky 1979; Shulock 1999; Self 1981), through offering words of caution about expecting too much from tools. It appears to have left a deep impression on a number of policy analysts, perhaps sufficient to militate against the development of a new sub-field. However, despite these cautionary words, many tools have been developed and are very heavily applied in certain venues to routinely produce effects that are not currently understood. Hence, questions about precisely where, how, why and by whom they are used remain.

A fourth and final literature is more strongly focused on the main venues and processes of policy formulation rather than the tools. In attempting to understand better and explain how policy is made and what influences it, this literature encompasses studies of crucial factors such as the utilization of knowledge in policymaking (Radaelli 1995), and the role of power and institutions. (For an excellent summary, see Sabatier 2005.) The manner in which power and particular analytical practices are bound up with one another has been explored in planning/geography (see, e.g., Owens and Cowell 2002) and science and technology studies (Stirling 2008). Other aspects focus on the political demand for evidence-based policymaking (Sanderson 2002; Shine and Bartley 2011). Much of this literature adopts a macro- or a meso-level focus and draws on or develops theory. To the extent that it considers policy formulation tools at all, there is a tendency (although by no means universal) to assume that tools are epiphenomenal and, hence, not warranting detailed analysis. Without more detailed research, however, these remain no more than untested assumptions.

Reassembling the Field: A Definition, Typology and Analytical Framework

While keenly aware that typologizing can very easily become an end in itself, we argue that developing some kind of workable taxonomy nonetheless remains a crucial next step towards enhancing a shared understanding of how policy formulation tools are used in contemporary public policymaking. To move forwards, we draw upon Jenkins-Smith (1990, p. 11) by defining a policy formulation tool as a technique, scheme, device or operation (including – but not limited to – those developed in the fields of economics, mathematics, statistics, computing, operations research and systems dynamics) which can be used to collect, condense and make sense of different kinds of policy-relevant knowledge to perform some or all of the various interlinked tasks of policy formulation.

We propose that five policy formulation tasks – problem characterization, problem evaluation, specification of objectives, policy options assessment and policy design – may be used to structure

a typology of policy formulation tools, based on what might be termed the 'textbook' characteristics of what they may be capable of. For this, we also draw on Dunn's (2004, pp. 6–7) schema of three types of tasks associated with policy formulation tools (problem structuring, forecasting and recommending) and de Ridder et al.'s (2007) typology of assessment tools. The first two tasks of 'problem characterization' and 'problem evaluation' broadly correspond to Dunn's (2004) problem structuring – that is, tools that produce information about what problem to solve. The remaining three tasks correspond to Dunn's forecasting – tools that produce information about the expected outcomes of policies – and also recommend tools that produce information about preferred policies. Interaction between four key aspects of these tools – together – constitutes our analytical framework: actors, venues, capacities and effects. The discussion that follows explores, via this analytical framework, how these tasks (or uses) work out in practice.

Actors

The growth in policy formulation tools is a tangible manifestation of the broadening and deepening of the policy analysis and advisory community from one dominated by generalist bureaucrats and 'econocrats' (Mintrom and Williams 2013, p. 9) to one comprising a multitude of actors within a more open and plural policy advisory system. Instead of 'speaking truth to power', as Wildavsky (1979) would have it, putting policy formulation tools alongside the actors that utilize them provides a sharper picture of how modern policy analysts seek to 'share the truth with many actors of influence' (Craft and Howlett 2012, p. 85). As a result, the first element of our proposed analytical framework concerns the actors who develop and/or promote particular policy formulation tools. As discussed generally earlier, three main types of actors appear: decision-makers, knowledge producers and/or providers and knowledge brokers (Howlett 2011, pp. 31–33).

Decision-makers at state and international levels have been assiduous promoters of policy formulation tools, almost since the dawn of policy analysis (Dunn 2004, p. 40). Nowadays, national finance ministries and core executives continue to support the application of indicators and CBA through the publication of rules, statutes and best-practice guides under different rhetorical banners, including better regulation, administrative modernization and evidence-based policymaking.

Governmental actors also work within international organizations to share best practices on many tools, including scenarios, indicators and CBA. The research arm of the European Commission has directly funded many complex computer models (Nilsson et al. 2008) and taken active steps to ensure they are more heavily utilized in formalized systems of policy-level appraisal. Under the category of knowledge producers and/or providers, there are a myriad of actors, in state and non-state settings, who variously invent tools and numerous variants thereof (e.g., academics and technical officials in state bureaucracies); refine and update them (e.g., scenario developers); and provide the policy-relevant knowledge that is fed into policy formulation activities (e.g., statisticians, policy specialists and special advisors). Industry, too, has made notable contributions to the development of forecasting, simulation gaming and scenario tools. Consultants and think tanks have also created complex modeling tools (such as influential energy system models) and scenarios and have also been active disseminators of other tools across government. Finally, while knowledge brokers are – in theory – supposed to adopt a more or less neutral role between science and policy, in practice, they play an important role in matching tools to policy problems (e.g., models to scenarios in processes of integrated assessment).

Beyond the analysis of actors, adopting a tools perspective on policy formulation – that is, following a particular tool as it is picked up and deployed in different policy formulation venues –

arguably offers a new and potentially fruitful way to 'open up the black box' of policy formulation. It supplements the standard methods of following issues or focusing on policy advisory systems and is discussed further next.

Venues

Relatively little is known about how the various tools and venues intersect, either in theory or, as importantly, in practice. Thus, the second element of our analytical framework relates to the suggestion that policymakers apply tools in policy formulation venues, defined on the basis of their location (internal or external to government) and the sources of knowledge that they draw upon (official versus unofficial). Although in the past, the standard assumption in policy analysis was that it was the state and its constituent organizations that mainly selected and deployed the tools, with a particularly strong preference (according to Meltsner (1976) at least) for the more substantive-technical variants, such as models and CBA, specific tools do not completely dominate specific venues.

The purposes to which the tools are put in the various policy formulation venues also exhibit a great deal of variation. Purposes can be thought of in at least two distinct senses: vis-à-vis the well-known stages or steps of policy formulation and in relation to the pre-existing 'design space' (Howlett 2011, p. 141): that is, does it seek a radical or a more incremental departure from the policy status quo? As regards the former, certain tools appear to be far better suited (and be more heavily used in relation) to certain policy formulation tasks than others. The other way to consider the purposes to which a tool is put is relate it to the pre-existing 'design space'. In other words, does it seek to implement the existing policy regime (comprising an internally consistent set of policy objectives, goals and instruments) (Howlett 2011, p. 142) in a more efficient or cost-effective fashion, or does it seek to stretch the existing design space by incorporating new problem formulations or radically different policy approaches? In many tool-related literatures, this is directly comparable to the distinction between policy analysis that 'opens up' debate and that which closes it down (Stirling 2008).

Although the literature on policy formulation tools is still immature, there do appear to be clear and discernible patterns in the way that policy formulation tools are used. Whether one starts with the tools and looks across to the venues or explores different combinations of tools in and across particular venues, the patterns seem to recur and hence, in principle, seem worthy of further exploration. Indeed, one especially intriguing possibility is that the most significant differentiating factor may eventually be policy type, not venue.

Capacities

Third, analysts should examine the relationship between policy capacity and policy formulation tools. Policy capacity is one of a number of sub-dimensions of state capacity, which together include the ability to create and maintain social order and exercise democratic authority (Matthews 2012). Broadly, it is the ability that governments have to identify and pursue policy goals and achieve certain policy outcomes in a more or less instrumental fashion: that is, 'to marshal the necessary resources to make intelligent collective choices about and set strategic directions for the allocation of scarce resources to public ends' (Painter and Pierre 2005, p. 2). It is known to vary between policy systems and even between governance levels in the same policy system. Policy instruments and tools have long been assumed to have an important influence on policy capacity – if they did not, why use them (Howlett et al. 2014, p. 4)? The fact that they are unevenly used over time, for example, could explain why the policy capacity to get things done also varies across space and time (Bähr 2010; Wurzel et al. 2013).

In principle, therefore, the presence and availability of policy formulation tools help expand policy capacities, although we should not automatically assume that the relationship is immediate or unidirectional. The fact that critical supporting capacities may not be available in every policy system is also important to note.

Effects

Finally, what effects, both intended and actual, do the various tools generate when they are employed? As we explained earlier, our original expectation was that the tools would produce some quite specific epistemic and political effects. But while some evidence is available on their wider effects, much more is required. The policy instruments literature has been struggling to address this question, at least for implementation tools, ever since Salamon (2002, p. 2) speculated that each tool imparts its own distinctive spin or twist on policy dynamics. This collective failure probably has much to do with the disciplinary background of the contributors, but it also reflects an entirely understandable desire to stay anchored in the relatively clear-cut world of textbooks and typologies. Nonetheless, some potentially useful categorizations could form the basis of future work.

For example – and drawing on Turnpenny et al. (2009, p. 648) – a broad distinction can be drawn between 'substantive' effects (the extent to which tools generate change – or work to ensure continuity – in a given policy field) and 'process-based' effects (i.e., system-wide effects which arise from the use of particular tools). Substantive effects include learning in relation to new means to achieve given policy goals (a feature which is predominant amongst the more structured procedural tools such as CBA, but also computer modeling tools) through to the heuristic-conceptual effects on problem understandings. The procedural effects could be similarly wide ranging including (re)channelling political attention, opening up new opportunities for outsiders to exert influence and uncovering political power relationships. In addition, some participatory tools such as the devil's advocate technique and participatory backcasting have the aim of generating new understandings and uncovering extant political power relationships.

A second important distinction relates to the difference between intended and unintended effects. To a large extent, the difference is one of prior expectations, purposes and ultimately values. Thus, by their very nature, the more procedurally inflexible tools such as CBA appear more prone to performance deficits. But more open, participatory tools can also produce unexpected effects. For example, backcasting approaches all too easily entrench political differences and forms of participation. Consequently, the new sub-field of policy formulation research should be careful to pose more probing questions (e.g., unexpected by whom and why?) rather than assume that everything which is unexpected is necessarily bad or otherwise.

In sum, understanding tool effects arguably constitutes the biggest analytical challenge of all, but one which the nascent sub-field of policy formulation is beginning to engage with. A rather different lens through which to study the interaction of actors, venues, capacities and effects is that of executive oversight and/or political control over non-majoritarian agencies (Turnpenny et al. 2009, p. 645). There are, however, many important questions still to be addressed by those seeking to move the new sub-field in this theoretical direction.

Conclusions, New Perspectives and New Challenges

The existing literatures on policy formulation tools remain fragmented, across not only the main tool types but also different disciplines. As policy analysts, it is arguably the one we know the least about and is often complex and fluid and usually much less accessible to public scrutiny

than the other stages. For policy analysts, the divide between those tool experts seeking to pursue research 'of policy' and those preferring to undertake analysis 'for policy' seems even more pronounced than in other comparable sub-areas of policy analysis such as policy instruments. Looking through the prism of tools is methodologically advantageous in the sense that, drawing on Hood (1983, pp. 115–131), it reduces complexity and permits comparisons to be made more easily across time and between different policy areas and political systems. There is potentially much more to add to our collective understanding of the tools themselves, which, as repeatedly noted, have often been studied in a rather isolated, static and descriptive manner.

To reinvigorate our understandings, analysts require common concepts, parsimonious definitions and usable taxonomies. Here, we have sought to supply and then critically reflect on all three and now invite readers to apply, test and critique them. Of course, at the level of specific tools, debate about definitions, typologies and purposes will undoubtedly continue. We see that as a healthy sign yet believe that agreement at the broader level is now needed to generate a common and hopefully more fruitful research agenda, perhaps organized around our framework of actors, venues, capacities and effects.

A tools perspective offers insights into governing beyond the formal rules, administrative systems and constitutions that dominate existing policy analysis. As a result, a renewed focus on policy formulation tools can add to our collective understanding not only of policy formulation but of public policy more generally. At present, there are no maxims (Howlett et al. 2014) of the type found in the policy instruments literature (e.g., escalate slowly up the pyramid of intervention) or meta-tools to inform the design of tool packages. Clearly, inconsistencies between some tool pairings are more obvious than between others. Multicriteria and participatory approaches do seem to mix more freely with one another than, for example, CBA and scenarios. But there is plenty of fresh work to be done on whether and indeed why this might be the case.

Finally, bringing policy formulation tools into the mainstream of policy research may help us learn more about ourselves and our multidisciplinary field of policy analysis. To tell the story of policy formulation tools is to tell of the emergence and professionalization of policy analysis.

Acknowledgement

This material is abridged and updated from Andrew Jordan and John Turnpenny's (2015) book *The Tools of Policy Formulation: Actors, Capacities, Venues and Effects*, specifically Chapters 1 (Turnpenny et al. 2015) and 13 (Jordan et al. 2015).

References

Bähr, H. (2010), *The Politics of Means and Ends*, Farnham: Ashgate.

Baumgartner, F.R. and B.D. Jones (1991), 'Agenda dynamics and policy subsystems', *The Journal of Politics*, 53, 1044–1074.

Baumgartner, F.R. and B.D. Jones (1993), *Agendas and Instability in American Politics*, Chicago, London: The University of Chicago Press.

Beyers, J. and B. Kerremans (2012), 'Domestic embeddedness and the dynamics of multilevel venue shopping in four EU Member States', *Governance*, 25, 263–290.

Colebatch, H.K. and B.A. Radin. (2006), 'Mapping the work of policy', in H.K. Colebatch (ed.), *The Work of Policy*, New York: Rowman and Littlefield, pp. 217–226.

Craft, J. and M. Howlett (2012), 'Policy formulation, governance shifts and policy influence', *Journal of Public Policy*, 32 (2), 79–98.

DeLeon, P. (2006), 'The historical roots of the field', in M. Moran, M. Rein and R. Goodin (eds.), *The Oxford Handbook of Public Policy*, Oxford: Oxford University Press, pp. 39–57.

de Ridder, W., J. Turnpenny, M. Nilsson and A. von Raggamby (2007), 'A framework for tool selection and use in integrated assessment for sustainable development', *Journal of Environmental Assessment Policy and Management*, 9, 423–441.
Dunn, W. (2004), *Public Policy Analysis: An Introduction*, Upper Saddle River, NJ: Pearson/Prentice Hall.
Fischer, F. (1995), *Evaluating Public Policy*, Chicago: Nelson Hall.
Guiraudon, V. (2002), 'European integration and migration policy: Vertical policy-making as venue shopping', *Journal of Common Market Studies*, 38 (2), 251–271.
Hanley, N., S. Hallett and I. Moffatt (1990), 'Research policy and review 3: Why is more notice not taken of economists' prescriptions for the control of pollution', *Environment and Planning A*, 22, 1421–1439.
Hargrove, E.C. (1975), *The Missing Link: The Study of the Implementation of Social Policy*, Washington, DC: Urban Institute.
Hill, M. (2009), *The Public Policy Process*, 5th edition, Abingdon: Routledge.
Hood, C. (1983), *The Tools of Government*, London: Macmillan.
Howlett, M. (2011), *Designing Public Policies: Principles and Instruments*, Abingdon: Routledge.
Howlett, M. and R. Lejano (2013), 'Tales from the crypt: The rise and fall (and rebirth?) of policy design', *Administration and Society*, 45 (3), 357–381.
Howlett, M., J.J. Woo and I. Mukherjee (2014), 'From tools to toolkits in policy design studies: The new design orientation towards policy formulation research', *Policy and Politics*, 43 (2), 291–311.
Jenkins-Smith, H. (1990), *Democratic Politics and Policy Analysis*, Pacific Grove, CA: Brooks/Cole.
Jordan, A.J., D. Benson, R. Wurzel and A.R. Zito (2012), 'Environmental policy: Governing by multiple policy instruments?', in J.J. Richardson (ed.), *Constructing a Policy Making State?*, Oxford: Oxford University Press, pp. 104–124.
Jordan, A.J., M. Bauer and C. Green-Pedersen (2013a), 'Policy dismantling', *Journal of European Public Policy*, 20 (5), 795–805.
Jordan, A.J. and D. Huitema (2014), 'Innovations in climate policy: The politics of invention, diffusion and evaluation', *Environmental Politics*, 23 (5), 715–734.
Jordan, A.J. and E. Matt (2014), 'Designing policies that intentionally stick: Policy feedback in a changing climate', *Policy Sciences*, 47 (3), 227–247.
Jordan, A.J. and J.R. Turnpenny (2015), *The Tools of Policy Formulation*, Cheltenham: Edward Elgar Publishing.
Jordan, A.J., J.R. Turnpenny and T. Rayner (2015). 'The tools of policy formulation: New perspectives and new challenges', in Jordan Turnpenny (ed.), *The Tools of Policy Formulation Actors, Capacities, Venues and Effects*, Cheltenham: Edward Elgar Publishing, pp. 267–290.
Jordan, A.J., R. Wurzel and A. Zito (2013b), 'Still the century of "new" environmental policy instruments?', *Environmental Politics*, 22 (1), 155–173.
Lasswell, H. (1971), *A Pre-view of Policy Sciences*, New York: Elsevier.
Matthews, F. (2012), 'Governance and state capacity', in D. Levi-Faur (ed.), *The Oxford Handbook of Governance*, Oxford: Oxford University Press, pp. 281–293.
Meltsner, A.J. (1976), *Policy Analysts in the Bureaucracy*, Berkeley: University of California Press.
Mintrom, M. and C. Williams (2013), 'Public policy debate and the rise of policy analysis', in E. Araral, S. Fritzen, M. Howlett, M. Ramesh, and X. Wu (eds.), *Routledge Handbook of Public Policy*, London: Routledge, pp. 3–16.
Nilsson, M., A. Jordan, J. Turnpenny, J. Hertin, B. Nykvist and D. Russel (2008), 'The use and non-use of policy appraisal tools in public policy making', *Policy Sciences*, 41 (4), 335–355.
Noordegraaf, M. (2011), 'Academic accounts of policy experience', in H. Colebatch, R. Hoppe and M. Noordegraaf (eds.), *Working for Policy*, Amsterdam: University of Amsterdam Press, pp. 45–67.
Owens, S. and R. Cowell (2002), *Land and Limits: Interpreting Sustainability in the Planning Process*, London and New York: Routledge.
Painter, M. and J. Pierre (2005), 'Unpacking policy capacity: Issues and themes', in M. Painter and J. Pierre (eds.), *Challenges to State Policy Capacity*, Basingstoke: Palgrave, pp. 1–18.
Parsons, W. (1995), *Public Policy*, Aldershot, UK and Brookfield, VT: Edward Elgar Publishing.
Pearce, D.W. (1998), 'Cost: Benefit analysis and policy', *Oxford Review of Economic Policy*, 14 (4), 84–100.
Peters, B.G. and A. Barker (1993), 'Introduction: Governments, information, advice and policy-making', in B.G. Peters and A. Barker (eds.), *Advising West European Governments: Inquiries, Expertise and Public Policy*, Edinburgh: Edinburgh University Press, pp. 1–19.
Pralle, S.B. (2003), 'Venue shopping, political strategy, and policy change: The internationalization of Canadian forest advocacy', *Journal of Public Policy*, 23, 233–260.

Radaelli, C. (1995), 'The role of knowledge in the policy process', *Journal of European Public Policy*, 2 (2), 159–183.

Radin, B. (2013), *Beyond Machiavelli*, Washington, DC: Georgetown University Press.

Russel, D. and A. Jordan (2014), 'Embedding the concept of ecosystem services? The utilisation of ecological knowledge in different policy venues', *Environment and Planning C*, 32 (2), 192–207.

Sabatier, P. (2005), *Theories of the Policy Process*, 2nd edition, Boulder, CO: Westview Press.

Salamon, L. (2002), 'The new governance and the tools of public action: An introduction', in L. Salamon (ed.), *Tools of Government*, Oxford: Oxford University Press, pp. 1–47.

Sanderson, I. (2002), 'Evaluation, policy learning and evidence-based policy making', *Public Administration*, 80 (1), 1–22.

Schick, A. (1977), 'Beyond analysis', *Public Administration Review*, 37 (3), 258–263.

Self, P. (1981), 'Planning: Rational or political?', in P. Baehr and B. Wittrock (eds.), *Policy Analysis and Policy Innovation*, London: Sage, pp. 219–236.

Shine, K.T. and B. Bartley (2011), 'Whose evidence base? The dynamic effects of ownership, receptivity and values on collaborative evidence-informed policy making', *Evidence and Policy*, 7 (4), 511–530.

Shulock, N. (1999), 'The paradox of policy analysis: If it is not used, why do we produce so much of it?', *Journal of Policy Analysis and Management*, 18 (2), 226–244.

Stirling, A. (2008), "'Opening up" and "closing down": Power, participation, and pluralism in the social appraisal of technology', *Science, Technology, and Human Values*, 33 (2), 262–294.

Thomas, H.G. (2001), 'Towards a new higher education law in Lithuania: Reflections on the process of policy formulation', *Higher Education Policy*, 14 (3), 213–223.

Timmermans, A. and P. Scholten (2006), 'The political flow of wisdom: Science institutions as policy venues in the Netherlands', *Journal of European Public Policy*, 13 (7), 1104–1118.

Turnpenny, J., A. Jordan, D. Benson and T. Rayner (2015), 'The tools of policy formulation: An introduction', in *The Tools of Policy Formulation Actors, Capacities, Venues and Effects*, Cheltenham: Edward Elgar Publishing, pp. 3–30.

Turnpenny, J., C.M. Radaelli, A. Jordan and K. Jacob (2009), 'The policy and politics of policy appraisal: Emerging trends and new directions', *Journal of European Public Policy*, 16 (4), 640–653.

Vining, A.R. and D.L. Weimer (2010), 'Foundations of public administration: Policy analysis', *Public Administration Review*, Foundations of Public Administration Series, retrieved from www.aspanet.org/public/ASPADocs/PAR/FPA/FPA-Policy-Article.pdf

Wildavsky, A. (1979), Speaking Truth to Power: The Art and Craft of Policy Analysis, Boston: Little, Brown. [Reprint in 1987. New Brunswick, NJ: Transaction Books.]

Wolman, H. (1981), 'The determinants of program success and failure', *Journal of Public Policy*, 1 (4), 433–464.

Wu, X., M. Ramesh, M. Howlett and S.A. Fritzen (2010), *The Public Policy Primer: Managing the Policy Process*, London: Routledge.

Wurzel, R.K.W., A.R. Zito and A.J. Jordan (2013), *Environmental Governance in Europe: A Comparative Analysis of New Environmental Policy Instruments*, Cheltenham, UK and Northampton, MA: Edward Elgar Publishing.

Xiol Y Ferreira, E. and M. Howlett (2021), 'Measuring retrenchment in welfare states: Overcoming the challenges to the definition, operationalization and measurement of welfare policy change', in B. Greve (ed.), *Handbook on Austerity, Populism and the Welfare State*, Northampton: Edward Elgar Publishing, pp. 54–63.

15

INDICATORS AND MEASURES AS POLICY TOOLS

Markku Lehtonen

Today, indicators are produced and used worldwide: across all levels and sectors of society; by public, private and civil society actors; and for a variety of purposes, ranging from knowledge provision to administrative control. Indicators are ubiquitous in practically all policy sectors, at various stages of the policy cycle. They are typically applied in combination with or in support of other policy tools, including evaluation and regulation, but also information, communication, popular mobilization and social advocacy, as illustrated, for example, by the ever-expanding range of indicators of sustainable development and well-being. The ways of producing indicators range from expert-led technical exercises to highly participatory multi-stakeholder processes. Indicators contribute to characterizing the current situations and framings; conceptualizing problems; constructing future scenarios; identifying and shaping policy solutions; and assessing, comparing and justifying potential policy options. This chapter elucidates on such diversity of indicators and their roles both in formal policymaking and in the numerous informal venues that shape policy decisions and their context. Particular attention is given to the various unintended and systemic consequences of the production and use of indicators. The chapter ends by identifying challenges for indicator work in the era of big data and declining trust in authority.

Introduction: Indicators as Policy Tools

Indicators have become a ubiquitous policy tool, produced and used worldwide, across all levels and sectors of society, by public, private and civil society actors for a variety of purposes. Although this chapter deals with them under the category of policy formulation tools, indicators are present in practically all policy sectors, at various stages of the classical policy cycle. They are typically applied in combination with, or in support of, other policy tools, including evaluation and regulation, but also information, communication, popular mobilization and social advocacy, as illustrated by the ever-expanding range of indicators of sustainable development, happiness, and well-being. The ways of producing indicators range from expert-led technical exercises to highly participatory multi-stakeholder processes. Such collaborative processes have gained increasing popularity as a way of better addressing the diverse user needs and bridging the gap between experts and 'lay' people. Participatory processes of indicator elaboration can be a key source of influence in their own right (Mickwitz and Melanen 2009; Ottaviani et al. 2021), thanks to the learning effects of interaction and dialogue. Development of information

DOI: 10.4324/9781003163954-19

technologies has enabled new methods of engagement via crowdsourcing or interactive uses of indicators (e.g., Radermacher 2021).

A relatively homogeneous community of indicator users and producers – called by some an 'indicator industry' (Sébastien and Bauler 2013) – has emerged as a powerful instrument constituency promoting the ever-wider application of indicators as a tool for addressing diverse societal problems across a wide range of sectors of society. While indicators are produced by a wide range of actors, statistical offices play a central role, as gatekeepers and in indicator quality control. The lack – or, in their opinion, erroneous ways of – indicator use has become a major concern for this indicator community. Often, the debate focuses on the 'intrinsic' quality of indicators, with the assumption that 'better' indicators would lead to more and better use and, hence, positive policy impact. The recent debates around a post-truth society, the 'digital revolution', and big data have added a new angle to the concerns over indicator quality – raising to the fore the question of trust in authorities producing indicators, notably the national statistical offices.

Numerous tensions and ambiguities characterize indicators as a policy tool, and call into question the assumption of an unproblematic linear relationship from better indicators through greater use to better policy.

Ambiguities result from the potential of indicators to serve as 'boundary objects' (e.g., Turnhout 2009; Sébastien et al. 2014; Lehtonen et al. 2016) mediating across different 'social worlds" (Star 2010) and categories. Indicators can thus both shape the prevailing problem framings and are shaped by those very framings (Boulanger 2014: 26). Indicators combine quantitative, 'hard' facts with 'soft' speculation – drawing on quantitative statistical information – yet they are necessarily only approximations of underlying phenomena that escape direct measurement (Turnhout 2009). As a result, indicator development faces the enduring need to balance scientific quality and policy relevance.

Furthermore, indicators can serve centralization of power via control and management (e.g., through government performance targets and indicators) or local-level emancipation and empowerment (e.g., via participatory indicator processes or application of indicators of environmental quality, sustainable development or well-being). The power of indicators is based on widespread trust in their quality as an authoritative source of data on 'reality', yet the very rationale of indicators relies on the idea of mistrustful civic vigilance and citizen control of the powers to be.

Finally, the role of indicators in policymaking can be seen either through the lens of 'informational managerialism' (Mol 2006: 506), which portrays indicators as a rather unproblematic direct input to societal transformations, or through a much more problematic framing that highlights the numerous indirect, unintended, unanticipated and systemic consequences, including dysfunctional effects such as consolidation of the prevailing asymmetries of power (Gudmundsson 2003; Hezri and Dovers 2006; Hood 2007; Lehtonen 2013; Lehtonen et al. 2016; Lyytimäki et al. 2013; Rydin 2007; Turnhout 2009; Radermacher 2020).

This chapter illustrates this ambiguity of indicators as a policy tool by describing the types of indicators (section 2), examining their role at various stages of the policy cycle (section 3), surveying the concerns over the scarce use and frequent misuse of indicators (section 4), exploring the literature on the indirect consequences of indicators (section 5) and discussing the role of indicators in policy instrument mixes (section 6). Section 7 concludes and identifies challenges for future indicator work in an era of big data and declining trust in the authority of expertise.

What Are Indicators? Definitions, Types, Qualities and Production Processes

Indicators come in various forms, with distinct purposes, functions, disciplinary backgrounds, application areas and levels, as well as theoretical and even ideological underpinnings. Two features are common for most definitions of indicators: 'indication', implying that an entity that is not directly measurable can be 'assessed using a limited set of measurable parameters' (Turnhout 2009: 403), and 'signaling' – the idea that an indicator needs to be interpreted and given meaning (Jackson 2011: 15). As policy tools and instruments in general, indicators not only are shaped by dominant framings of social problems but also shape those very framings (Boulanger 2014: 26). By rendering problems measurable, indicators unavoidably affect the ways in which these problems are perceived and addressed.

Underlying by conceptual frameworks is what determine the criteria and logic for the choice of specific indicators, anchor indicator systems in theory and make them comparable with each other and communicable to the targeted audience (Gudmundsson 2003; Pintér et al. 2005). Often, indicators are associated with specific targets that allow for judgments and assessments to be made, enabling indicators to provide early warning through the observation of trends. Unlike evaluations, indicators are not always underpinned by a model that establishes cause-effect relationships (Gudmundsson 2003).

Three overlapping yet analytically distinct categories of indicators can be identified: descriptive, performance and composite indicators. Descriptive indicators resemble 'pure data', which is not designed for a specific use and thereby do not, in the first instance, appear as policy tools. Performance indicators measure the performance of an entity (an organization, sector, city, country, etc.) in a given area of activity, judging progress towards a normative goal. Examples range from environmental performance indicators (e.g., OECD 1991) to government performance monitoring, or key performance indicators used by an organization or a project. Performance indicators are frequently applied by government for the purposes of monitoring and accountability but can just as well foster learning, policy improvement and demonstration of policy improvement (e.g., Boswell et al. 2015).

Finally, composite indicators (e.g., GDP, ecological footprint, new indicators of well-being) seek to present the 'big picture' in a manner accessible to diverse audiences, thereby serving in particular communication and awareness raising. School and university rankings have become increasingly visible and powerful in measuring and signaling the quality of service and thereby informing choices, including those that concern resource allocation. Composites can also be used for performance benchmarking and accountability and for attributing rewards and sanctions (Jackson 2011). Composite indicators of sustainable development are expected to provide a common language that enables comparison between theories, engenders collective understanding of sustainability, and provides an alternative to GDP as a measure of societal progress (e.g., Chancel et al. 2014).

Composites are not well suited for steering specific policy decisions, given their inability to identify causality. However, they can have significant indirect policy impacts as the ubiquity of GDP in media and policy debate demonstrates. Ideally, composites inform both the public and political debates about objectives and trade-offs, help make explicit the assumptions that underlie policy debates, challenge dominant ways of measurement and help citizens hold politicians to account (Seaford 2013). Table 15.1 summarizes the characteristics and expected functions of the three broad categories of indicators.

Table 15.1 Three Types of Indicators

Type of Indicator	*Presentation*	*Functions*
Descriptive	Number, grade, time series, ratio or dichotomy (Often) no policy interpretation	Source of data and information
Performance	Comparison to a standard, target value or benchmark	Measurement and monitoring of goal achievement
Composite	Aggregate index composed of several variables	Snapshot of performance at a given point in time
	Often combines descriptive and performance indicators	Raising awareness, drawing attention to a policy issue

Source: Adapted from Gudmundsson (2003) and Lehtonen (2017)

Intended Roles of Indicators in a Policy Cycle

The key concern for indicator producers and a large part of the indicator community is that of maximizing the quality of indicators. The attention, therefore, focuses on scientific criteria such as reliability, validity, measurability, and representativeness. However, indicator quality crucially depends on the intended and actual use of the indicators. The disappointment at the lack of use and widespread 'misuse' of indicators has given rise to a plethora of guidelines and principles of 'good practice' that seek to better connect indicators with policymaking, enhance trust in indicators and indicator producers, strengthen the resources and institutional capacities available for indicator producers, better match indicators with user needs and abilities, improve communication, and include users in indicator design (e.g., Pintér et al. 2005; Seaford 2013; ESAC 2015).

A look at the intended and actual roles of indicators throughout the policy cycle provides a first way of broadening the perspective away from the intrinsic quality of the indicators alone towards policy relevance and the potential roles of indicators in the policy processes.

Although appearing in this book in the section on policy formulation, indicators fulfill multiple functions throughout the entire policy cycle. At the agenda-setting stage, indicators can help conceptualize problems and characterize the current situations and framings. Indicators shape agendas indirectly by framing problems and policies. However, governments can use indicators intentionally to help shape the policy agenda. For instance, they can use indicators to draw attention to specific policy problems, either by publishing indicators or by strategically and repeatedly feeding the media with selected indicators (e.g., Marland 2022). Indicators can contribute to 'evaluation systems' designed for agenda-setting (Pattyn and Bundi 2022). Sustainability and new well-being indicators – whether composites or sets of indicators – illustrate the awareness-raising and mobilization functions, which, in turn, are intimately linked with social identities (Hornung and Bandelow 2022). Such indicators are likely to appeal in the first place to the 'green-minded' groups in society, including cities, communities and companies that wish to see themselves as 'green', 'responsible' and 'inclusive' and portray such images to their peer communities, clients and decision-makers.

Indicators are intended to serve several policy formulation tasks, summarized in Table 15.2). They contribute to structuration and conceptualization of policy problems whereby policymakers select the forms of relevant evidence and types of action, or when issues themselves produce specific types of evidence amenable to description via indicators (Turnpenny et al. 2015: 8).

Indicators can (1) provide baseline information on policy problems (e.g., state of the environment or sectoral indicators), (2) offer evidence on causal relations and scale of problems, and (3) help articulate values through participatory indicator elaboration or as inputs to participatory processes of policy formulation. By characterizing and framing problems, indicators fundamentally shape policy formulation while at the same time being shaped by issue framings. The role of GDP is again illustrative. GDP reflects societal trends, having become the overwhelmingly dominant indicator of progress as economic efficiency grew into the overarching policy objective in the post-war era. On the other hand, GDP frames the question of societal progress in ways that may appear as self-evidently 'correct' for economists but can be problematic from a societal perspective (e.g., Morse and Bell 2011; Boulanger 2014).

Indicators help specify objectives. In catering to technocratic and deliberative ideals – seemingly exact, rigorous, scientific and objective information on the one hand and policy-relevant, tailor-made and partly subjective evidence on the other – indicators can operate as boundary objects that shape the conceptualization of problems and mediate between various groups and even 'social worlds', allowing these to collaborate in the absence of full consensus on the meaning and functions of the indicators in question (e.g., Turnhout 2009; Star 2010; Lehtonen et al. 2016).

Forward-looking indicators used as part of scenario exercises do this by producing information about the expected outcomes of policies or helping envision alternative futures. Scenario and visioning processes can indeed partly address a frequent criticism of indicators, namely, their alleged lack of timeliness and inability to examine future trends (e.g., Lehtonen 2017; Sébastien et al. 2014). Especially composite indicators also allow various groups to disseminate and promote their preferred visions and worldviews (Sébastien and Bauler 2013; Sébastien et al. 2014). By quantifying and simplifying, indicators also shape and structure formal and informal models (Seaford 2013) and scenarios, and render problems more manageable.

Indicators enable the assessment of policy options via comparison of the possible impacts of diverse policy options and the exploration of past and future trends. Comparisons can draw on historical data and experience or on modeling and anticipation of the future impacts of policy options. Indicators are routinely used as part of such tools as cost-benefit and cost-effectiveness analysis, multi-criteria analysis, risk assessment, time-series and statistical analyses, expert judgment (e.g., Delphi), forecasting, and multi-agent simulation (Lehtonen 2015, 2017).

Indicators play an auxiliary role in the identification and design of policy options, that is, in the production of policy recommendations, based on the evaluation of the likely effectiveness of policy instruments or mixes. At this stage, indicators help define what is doable – identify the relevant and realistically viable policy options. By quantifying, measuring, aggregating, and prioritizing information, indicators delimit the range of policy options considered relevant: indicators shape perceptions of which policies offer feasible and appropriate means of promoting the chosen aims and objectives. For instance, climate policy choices depend partly on whether one takes the total greenhouse gas emissions or only CO2 emissions as the leading indicator.

In addition to policy formulation, indicators support decision-making tools such as scenario planning, multi-criteria decision-analysis, forecasting, and backcasting (Alves Furtado 2022; Marttunen et al. 2022; van der Steen 2022). As part of communication and policy-steering efforts by governments, indicators contribute to policy implementation (Howlett 2022). Supporting assessment, evaluation, and monitoring, indicators serve as a tool for justifying and legitimizing policies, ex ante or ex post. The functions of policy tools hence overlap and interact with each other.

Table 15.2 Summary of Indicators as Policy Formulation Tools

Policy Formulation Task	*Contribution of Indicators*
Problem structuring and conceptualization	Baseline information (state of the environment indicators, sectoral indicators, etc.)
	Participatory elaboration of indicators
	Indicators as input to participatory policymaking
	Indicators framing policy problems
	Indicators reflecting dominant framings
Specification of objectives	Forward-looking indicators as inputs to scenarios and visions
	Quantification and simplification
	Translation of broad policy aims into specific goals
	Indicators as carriers of visions and worldviews
Assessment of policy options	Indicators as input to formal assessment methods, designed to compare impacts from policy options (e.g., CBA, cost-effectiveness analysis, multi-criteria analysis, risk assessment, time-series analyses, statistical methods, Delphi technique, economic forecasting, multi-agent simulation)
Identification and design of policy options and recommendations	Indicators as input to formal assessment methods, to define what is doable

Source: Adapted from Lehtonen (2017)

Intended Use and Actual Misuse of Indicators

A second way of broadening out of the perspective from the mere intrinsic quality of the indicators focuses on the potential users, their needs and the complex behavioral aspects that govern the reactions of target groups to diverse policy measures (Capano and Howlett 2020). However, the users often, if not mostly, use the tools in surprising ways that often sharply contrast with those envisaged by their developers. That user needs constitute a major consideration should seem obvious, given that indicators are produced for a specific purpose and use in mind. Yet academic debate, in journals such as *Ecological Indicators* and *Social Indicators Research*, typically still focuses on the search for scientifically more robust indicators, whereas policy debates in international arenas, such as the OECD and Eurostat, tend to give greater emphasis to policy relevance.

Two key concerns characterize debates within the indicator community relating to indicator use. First, there is a general feeling that policymakers seldom use indicators, and second, even when they do, indicator designers tend to see this use as selective and incorrect. The alleged 'misuse' is generally qualified either as intentional 'cherry-picking' of data or unintended misuse following from ignorance or lack of 'statistical literacy', for example, when indicators are interpreted out of context, used as political ammunition or simply ignored. Indicator designers frequently condemn such 'misuse' but consider its reasons as being beyond their control. However, as Capano and Howlett (2020) point out, anticipation of the behavior of policy target groups should constitute an integral component of policy formulation and tool design, rather than being seen as a mere issue of implementation or an external factor that lies beyond the remit of indicator designers.

Statistical Literacy as an Antidote to Fake News?

In addition to more collaborative indicator work, statistical literacy is increasingly evoked as a way of enhancing use and as an antidote to the ills of the alleged 'post-truth' era of populism, polarization of

societal debate, and mistrust of authority. Within the indicator community, the loss of public trust in official statistics is a major concern (e.g., Davies 2017; Radermacher 2020, 2021). While the decline of trust in statistical authorities is by no means equally distributed across countries (Lehtonen 2019), there are fears that loss of trust and concerns for potential fragmentation of statistical information, and exponential growth in access to diverse data will undermine democracy and lead to the disappearance of a common language for public discourse (Davies 2017; Radermacher 2021).

The answer would lie in investment in education, designed to improve the understanding, skills, and abilities of citizens to handle facts, graphics, maps and indicators (Radermacher 2021). This way, the population and the 'political scene' would better understand the differences in the quality of statistical information, manage to distinguish between fake and fact, and gain confidence in statistical authorities (ibid.). Trust would here appear as 'the main and overarching goal of statistical governance' (Radermacher 2020: 140). Based on the assumption that trust increases alongside experience, a major challenge for statistical offices would then be to turn today's potential users into real users, who would become more trustful thanks to first-hand experience of indicators. Further trust-building measures would include international processes of monitoring and quality control to ensure the independence of statistics, institutions, certification systems for indicators produced by actors other than the statistical offices, and communication on the democratic and public-service values of statistics and the associated institutions (e.g., Radermacher 2021).

Indicators as a Tool for Civic Vigilance

Trust in indicators is certainly vital, yet blind trust in indicators as a presumably incontestable and authoritative reflection of truth can be just as damaging as generalized mistrust. The very identity of statisticians rests on their role as custodians of objective, incontestable data in defense of democracy and the underprivileged. However, trust in either the benevolence of the state bureaucracy or in the willingness and ability of individual indicator experts to place 'the public good' above their particular interests should not be taken for granted (Ràfols, p. 9). For example, the strong social ties within 'indicator communities' can undermine the general interest at the cost of particular interests. These communities of indicator producers and users – e.g., the statistical offices and their main clients – usually share similar mental frameworks, epistemic beliefs, and policy objectives; hold strong trust in official statistics; and have experience-based reasons to do so. The blurring of boundaries between the users and producers of indicators highlights a point made by Capano and Howlett (2020): the choice of policy tools by policymakers is never a fully rational process driven by the search for the best tool for the purpose. Instead, it is highly influenced by policymakers' values, knowledge, and experience – including experience of collaboration and networking. In such a context, the vast majority of 'citizen non-users' may indeed have good reasons for mistrust.

Obviously, skepticism and mistrust are warranted in relation to the assumption that the policy goals manifested in an indicator indeed lead to outcomes that are positive for the public interest. Rather than unconditional trust in statistical offices and indicators, what is needed is conditional trust and 'prudent' skepticism, in the spirit of 'trust but verify' (Norris, forthcoming). Indicator work can, indeed, provide an arena for this kind of mistrustful civic vigilance in the service of liberal democracy (Lehtonen 2019).

Beyond Use: The Unintended and Unanticipated Consequences of Indicators

On the surface, the debates between experts stressing the scientific quality attributes of indicators and others focusing on policy relevance seem to juxtapose two contrasting views. However,

both tend to reduce the question to indicator quality, the only difference being whether quality is judged in terms of internal scientific criteria or the presumed needs of policymakers. The third way of broadening out the perspectives, therefore, goes beyond the questions of active use of indicators and embraces instead the numerous unintended, unanticipated and systemic impacts from indicators and indicator elaboration processes.

Greater indicator use does not automatically mean 'better policy' (e.g., Sébastien et al. 2014; Lehtonen et al. 2016; Lehtonen 2017). Highly used indicators are not always highly influential, whereas those that are not actively used may generate significant indirect impacts, either positive or negative (Lehtonen 2013; Lyytimäki et al. 2013; Sébastien et al. 2014). It is here that the idea of policy tool mixes shows its full value: it is hardly relevant or even possible to analyze the use and influence of indicators in isolation from the context of multiple policies and tools within which the indicators are produced and applied. Indicator producers may regret the lack of use, yet the unintended, unanticipated and systemic impacts of indicators are powerful, regardless of the intended and expected use. Rather than acting directly on the policy target, indicators can operate as 'triggers' that activate sequences of individual and collective behaviors, producing specific outcomes, often through complex pathways and with a considerable time lag (cf. Capano and Howlett 2022). Such effects can be synergistic, counterproductive, or additive in relation to those resulting from other policy tools (Maor and Howlett 2022), and they can stem just as well from the indicator production processes as from the use of indicators. These impacts can affect the operation of administrative structures and societal institutions; shared norms and understandings; and the legitimacy of policies, decisions and actors, as well as established ways of policymaking (Hezri and Dovers 2006; Zittoun 2006). They can indirectly foster social learning, such as networking, and greater focus and motivation among policy actors, or 'political learning', whereby policy actors learn to better drive their own interest, possibly against the general interest (Hezri and Dovers 2006). The unanticipated uses and consequences, in turn, feed back on indicators. Moreover, use and production are interrelated: a process of indicator production seen as legitimate is likely to foster greater use.

Indicators carry with them diverse ideologies, policy paradigms and belief systems (Capano and Howlett 2020). The different indicator systems and communities within the 'indicator industry' bring with them distinct values and ideologies, including contrasting views on quantification. For instance, performance indicators reflect an 'audit culture' (Hicks et al. 2015) quite distinct from the participatory ethos of many of the well-being and sustainable development indicator systems. Indicators frame problems and solutions, disseminate and promote worldviews and visions, and shape policy priorities and performance criteria. They are 'performative', that is, the conceptualizations that they produce not only describe the world but also act upon it (e.g., Waterton 2002; Mickwitz and Melanen 2009). Obviously, indicators also provide useful 'ammunition' for participants in political debates (Sébastien et al. 2014). Above all, indicators render problems manageable through quantification. While relatively unproblematic in policy areas and issues that, by their nature, lend themselves to quantification (e.g., pollutant emissions, wealth distribution, or unemployment rate), indicator use can collide with the very policy culture in many sectors or on certain policy issues.

A rich and diverse body of critical scholarship has highlighted the potentially perverse and socially regressive outcomes of indicators. These include critique of indicator work for its excessive 'trust in numbers' and technical rationality – belief in the ability of numbers to turn the incommensurable commensurable. Indicators would have a tendency to depoliticize issues by reducing normative choices to presumably neutral, incontestable and commonly agreed-upon figures, thereby concealing the political choices embedded in the seemingly technical processes of indicator design (Ogien 2013; Sébastien and Bauler 2013). Ràfols (2019) evokes the 'fallacy of misplaced concreteness' and false precision as common characteristics of indicator work.

Ogien (2013) regrets statistics authorities' efforts to 'clean up' indicators of politics, to cherish the false image of objective and value-free indicators. These efforts include maintaining the independence of statistical offices in relation to the government, but they often also reflect aversion towards innovative indicators, such as composite indicators of sustainable development and well-being, seen by statistics authorities as excessively subjective and value laden (Sébastien and Bauler 2013; Lehtonen 2017). Scholars have pointed to the potentially perverse systemic impacts that follow from the intimate relationship between indicator systems and the broader dynamics and trends in policymaking (Rydin 2007). Concepts used to capture the systemic impacts include governmentality (Rydin 2007), government and management by numbers (Hood 2007; Jackson 2011; Lascoumes and Le Galès 2005), boundary objects (Sébastien et al. 2014; Star 2010), informational governance (Lehtonen et al. 2016) and instrumentation (Zittoun 2006; Lascoumes and Le Galès 2005). Indicators are seen to incite behaviors aligned with market society and foster both inclusion and exclusion via simplification (making problems accessible to non-experts while at the same time legitimizing experts as the only true 'masters' of numbers) (Zittoun 2006). Even the potential of participatory indicator exercises is limited by their embeddedness in the broader dynamics and trends in policymaking (Rydin 2007), such as evidence-based policy.

Performance measurement indicators have faced particularly harsh criticism. Ideally, they can provide greater accountability, efficiency and citizen control over policymakers. However, even when used with caution and in full awareness of their limitations, performance indicators tend to be complex, opaque and reductionist. Rather than enabling dialogue and deliberation, especially when coupled with sanctions, they can erode the very foundations of the system they are to support by encouraging goal shifting, 'gaming', and dissimulation and distortion of data; reproducing prevailing power structures; and undermining trust, responsibility, innovation, creativity, ambition, and plurality of values and points of view (Hood 2007; Jackson 2011; Perrin 1998; Ogien 2013). They may instill a management rhetoric to sectors with a 'non-managerial' tradition (Smith 1990, 1995; Pidd 2005; Bevan and Hood 2006) or 'crowd out' from policy agenda topics difficult to capture through indicators (Boswell et al. 2015). This perspective opens up the possibility that in some contexts, manipulative use can engender socially desirable outcomes, and 'correct' may instead give rise to perverse effects. The positive upshot is that, although frustrating for indicator communities, the lack of use and impact may sometimes be a blessing for society (Boswell et al. 2015).

Discussion: Indicators as Part of Instrument Mixes, Bundles and Portfolios

As policy tools in general, indicators are seldom, if ever, used alone as an isolated policy tool. Rather, indicators form part of mixes, bundles and portfolios of a range of policy tools (Capano and Howlett 2020). Ideally, indicators then act in synergy, complementing and supplementing the tools they interact with. For example, environmental performance indicators and environmental performance evaluation are more effective together than when each is applied separately. Indicators can support policy strategy work – by providing essential information and legitimacy – or operate in conjunction with economic or command-and-control measures designed to induce behavior change. Indicators are routinely part of diverse collaborative policymaking efforts (Siddiki et al. 2022), scenario construction, or task forces and commissions, thus facilitating policy formulation.

While maximizing synergies and complementarities is the logical primary objective (Capano and Howlett 2020), it is undermined by at least two factors. First, indicators can produce effects that counteract the objectives of other policy tools. This can be an occasional and context-dependent

event or, alternatively, reflect a conflict between the very culture and philosophy of indicators and the policy area or policy tool in question. The growing literature on the role of indicators as a governance tool has highlighted the numerous unanticipated and indirect impacts of indicator systems, notably those associated with the use of quantitative indicators to measure phenomena of essentially qualitative nature. Second, because the policy objectives and objectives of indicator use are not necessarily shared by all involved parties, it is not necessarily true that greater indicator impact and synergy between indicators would produce socially desirable outcomes. Yet as long as the objectives, targets, indicators and underlying values have been democratically debated and agreed on, coherence across tool mixes can be seen as a reasonable aim.

The 'layering' of policy tools – that is, path dependence that leads to unintentional and unplanned policy tool mixes – may not be harmful when it fosters a fuller expression of and dialogue between a plurality of views, values and perspectives in society. The creation of instrument constituencies that drive policy – another characteristic of policy tools – is potentially more problematic. In promoting their own favorite indicators and indicator sets, the likeminded and closely knit communities of indicator users and producers may propagate values, cultures, and policy tools and practices that may be suboptimal for tackling the problems at hand and may lack democratic backing.

Current and Future Challenges of Indicator Use

Developments in information technologies, including big data and artificial intelligence, represent not only a technological but also an institutional and policy challenge. In an era of faltering trust in authority and expertise, statistical authorities will have to innovate, notably by engaging with data users and new data communication and visualization techniques. To build trust, authorities and governments might do well in actively nurturing mistrustful 'civic vigilance'. This could include supporting civil society organizations that challenge official indicator work, or actively feeding debate on the framings and values that underpin distinct indicator systems.

Three challenges for policy tool research can be highlighted. First, this research could usefully explore ways of making trust and mistrust operate in tandem, that is, exploring means of combining the trust- and mistrust-based functions of indicators within instrument mixes that maximize synergies and minimize the counterproductive effects.

Second, a shared task for authorities and scholars would be that of elucidating the relationships between data, statistics and indicators on one hand and policy on the other, in the new context of 'big' and open data. The statistics community has taken steps in this direction (e.g., Radermacher 2021), yet the work remains incipient.

Third, little is known about the variation between countries and sectors in terms of the role that indicators play as policy tools. Given the centrality of unintended and unanticipated systemic effects of indicator work, cross-cultural comparison of such effects appears as particularly timely and valuable.

References

Alves Furtado, B. 2022. Simulation as a policy tool. In: Howlett (ed.), Chapter 22.

Bevan, G. & Hood, C. 2006. What's measured is what matters: Targets and gaming in the English public health care system. *Public Administration* 84, 517–538.

Boswell, C., Yearley, S., Fleming, C., Rodrigues, E. & Spinardi, G. 2015. The effects of targets and indicators on policy formulation: Narrowing down, crowding out and locking in. In: Turnpenny, J. R. & Jordan, A. J. (eds.) *The tools of policy formulation: Actors, capacities, venues and effects*. Cheltenham, UK and Northampton, MA: Edward Elgar.

Boulanger, P.-M. 2014. Elements for a comprehensive assessment of public indicators. Luxembourg: European Commission Joint Research Centre, Ispra, Italy. Report EUR 26921 EN.

Capano, C. and Howlett, M. 2020. The knowns and unknowns of policy instrument analysis: Policy tools and the current research agenda on policy mixes. *Sage Open* 10(1): 1–10.

Capano, G. and Howlett, M. 2022. How tools work: Tools as activators and mechanisms. In: Howlett (ed.), Chapter 5.

Chancel, L., Thiry, G. & Demailly, D. (2014). Beyond-GDP indicators: To what end? Study N°04/14. Paris: IDDRI. www.iddri.org/sites/default/files/import/publications/st0414en.pdf

Davies, W. 2017. How statistics lost their power: And why we should fear what comes next. *The Guardian*, 19 January. www.theguardian.com/politics/2017/jan/19/crisis-of-statistics-big-data-democracy

ESAC 2015. *The users of statistics and their role in the European Society*, Authors: Maurizio Vichi, Maria João Valente Rosa; Co-author: Frances Ruane. European Statistics Advisory Committee. ESAC doc: 2015/1175, approved by ESAC, 20th Meeting, Brussels, June 1, 2015.

Gudmundsson, H. 2003. The policy use of environmental indicators: Learning from evaluation research. *The Journal of Transdisciplinary Environmental Studies* 2, 1–12.

Hezri, A. A. & Dovers, S. R. 2006. Sustainability indicators, policy and governance: Issues for ecological economics. *Ecological Economics* 60, 86–99.

Hicks, D., Wouters, P., Waltman, L., de Rijcke, S. & Ràfols, I. 2015. The Leiden Manifesto for research metrics. *Nature* 520(23 April), 429–431. doi:10.1038/520429a.

Hood, C. 2007. Public service management by numbers: Why does it vary? Where has it come from? What are the gaps and the puzzles? *Public Money & Management* 27, 95–102.

Hornung, J. and Bandelow, N.C. 2022. Tools to promote popular mobilization & social advocacy: Social identities, policy programs, careers, and education. In: Howlett (ed.), Chapter 11.

Howlett, M. 2022. Information as a policy tool: The role of government communication. In: Howlett (ed.), Chapter 27.

Jackson, P. M. 2011. Governance by numbers: What have we learned over the past 30 years? *Public Money & Management* 31, 13–26.

Lascoumes, P. & Le Galès, P. (eds.) 2005. *Gouverner par les instruments*. Paris: Les Presses de Science Po.

Lehtonen, M. 2013. The non-use and influence of UK Energy Sector Indicators. *Ecological Indicators* 35, 24–34.

Lehtonen, M. 2015. Indicators: Tools for informing, monitoring or controlling? In: Jordan, A.J. & Turnpenny, J.R. (eds.) *The tools of policy formulation: Actors, capacities, venues and effects*. Edward Elgar. Pp. 76–99.

Lehtonen, M. 2017. Operationalizing information: Measures and indicators in policy formulation. In: Howlett, M. & Mukherjee, I. (eds.) *Handbook of policy formulation*. Cheltenham, UK & Northampton, MA: Edward Elgar. Pp. 161–181.

Lehtonen, M. 2019. The multiple faces of trust in statistics and indicators: A case for healthy mistrust and distrust. *Statistical Journal of the IAOS* 35 (4): 539–548. doi:10.3233/SJI-190579.

Lehtonen, M., Sébastien, L. & Bauler, T. 2016. The multiple roles of sustainability indicators in informational governance: Between intended use and unanticipated influence. *Current Opinion in Environmental Sustainability (COSUST), Special Issue on Informational Governance and Sustainability* 18, 1–9.

Lyytimäki, J., Tapio, P., Varho, V. & Söderman, T. 2013. The use, non-use and misuse of indicators in sustainability assessment and communication. *International Journal of Sustainable Development & World Ecology* 20 (5), 385–393.

Maor, M. and Howlett, M. 2022. Techniques and methods for assessing policy mixes. In: Howlett (ed.), Chapter 35.

Marland, A. 2022. Tools for managing the media: Monitoring, branding and messaging. In: Howlett (ed.), Chapter 13.

Marttunen, M., Belton, V. and Lienert, J. 2022. Formal problem structuring tools and multi-criteria decision analysis. In: Howlett (ed.), Chapter 21.

Mickwitz, P. & Melanen, M. 2009. The role of co-operation between academia and policymakers for the development and use of sustainability indicators: A case from the Finnish Kymenlaakso Region. *Journal of Cleaner Production* 17, 1086–1100.

Mol, A.P.J. 2006. Environmental governance in the Information Age: The emergence of informational governance. *Environment and Planning C: Government and Policy* 24, 497–514.

Morse, S. & Bell, S. 2011. Sustainable development indicators: The tyranny of methodology revisited. *Consilience: The Journal of Sustainable Development* 6, 222–239.

Norris, P., forthcoming. *In Praise of Skepticism*: *Trust but Verify*. New York: Oxford University Press.
OECD 1991. *Environmental performance indicators: A preliminary set*. Paris: OECD.
Ogien, A. 2013. *Désacraliser le chiffre dans l'évaluation du secteur public*. Versailles: Éditions Quae.
Ottaviani, F., Le Roy, A. & O'Sullivan, P. 2021. Constructing non-monetary social indicators: An analysis of the effects of interpretive communities. *Ecological Economics* 183, 106962. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ecolecon.2021.106962.
Pattyn, V. & Bundi, P. 2022. Formal agenda-setting government tools: Periodic evaluations and reviews. In: Howlett (ed.), Chapter 10.
Perrin, B. 1998. Effective use and misuse of performance measurement. *American Journal of Evaluation* 19, 367–379.
Pidd, M. 2005. Perversity in public service performance measurement. *International Journal of Productivity and Performance Management* 54, 482–493.
Pintér, L., Hardi, P. & Bartelmus, P. 2005. Indicators of sustainable development: Proposals for a way forward. Discussion Paper Prepared under a Consulting Agreement on behalf of the UN Division for Sustainable Development. UNDSD/EGM/ISD/2005/CRP.2, IISD – International Institute for Sustainable Development.
Radermacher, W.J. 2020. Official Statistics 4.0: Verified Facts for People in the 21st Century. Cham, Switzerland: Springer.
Radermacher, W.J. 2021. Governing-by-the numbers: Résumé after one and a half years. *Statistical Journal of the IAOS* 37, 701–711.
Ràfols, I. 2019. S&T indicators in the wild: Contextualization and participation for responsible metrics. *Research Evaluation* 28(1), 7–22.
Rydin, Y. 2007. Indicators as a governmental technology? The lessons of community-based sustainability indicator projects. *Environment and Planning D: Society and Space* 25, 610–624.
Seaford, C. 2013. The multiple uses of subjective well-being indicators. *Social Indicator Research* 114, 29–43.
Sébastien, L. & Bauler, T. 2013. Use and influence of composite indicators for sustainable development at the EU-level. *Ecological Indicators* 35(December), 3–12.
Sébastien, L., Lehtonen, M. & Bauler, T. 2014. Can indicators fill the gap between science and policy? An exploration of the (non) use and (non) influence of indicators in EU and UK policymaking. *Nature & Culture* 9, 316–343.
Siddiki, S., Beagles, J. E., & Oesterling, N. A. 2022. Collaboration as a Policy Tool in Policy Formulation and Other Aspects of the Policy Process. In: Howlett (ed.), Chapter 18.
Smith, P. 1990. The use of performance indicators in the public sector. *Journal of the Royal Statistical Society, Series A*, 153, 53–72.
Smith, P. 1995. On the unintended consequences of publishing performance data in the public sector. *International Journal of Public Administration* 18, 277–310.
Star, S. L. 2010. This is not a boundary object: Reflections on the origin of a concept. *Science, Technology & Human Values* 35, 601–617.
Turnhout, E. M. 2009. The effectiveness of boundary objects: The case of ecological indicators. *Science and Public Policy* 36, 403–412.
Turnpenny, J. R., Jordan, A. J., Benson, D. & Rayner, T. 2015. The tools of policy formulation: An introduction. In: Jordan, A. J. & Turnpenny, J. R. (eds.) *The tools of policy formulation: Actors, capacities, venues and effects*. Cheltenham, UK and Northampton, MA, USA: Edward Elgar.
van der Steen, M. 2022. Scenario analysis, forecasting and backcasting as policy tools. In: Howlett (ed.), Chapter 20.
Waterton, C. 2002. From field to fantasy: Classifying nature, constructing Europe. *Social Studies of Science* 32, 177–204.
Zittoun, P. 2006. Indicateurs et cartographie dynamique du bruit, un instrument de reconfiguration des politiques publiques? *Développement durable et territoires*, Dossier 8: Méthodologies et pratiques territoriales de l'évaluation en matière de développement durable. Doi: https://doi.org/10.4000/developpementdurable.3261.

16

A TOOLS-BASED APPROACH TO UNDERSTANDING AND OPTIMIZING POLICY ADVICE IN POLICY MAKING

Jonathan Craft

Policy advice is a central preoccupation for a variety of actors located in and around government engaged in policy formulation. Public servants are tasked with generating it, we hope policymakers are asking for and receiving quality supplies of it to help inform their decisions, and several 'outsiders' are in the business of providing policy advice whether solicited or not. This chapter takes a tools-based approach to exploring the substantive, procedural, and temporal aspects of policy advice in relation to how governments generate and evaluate policy options and make decisions. Additional attention is paid to the partisan-political and nonpartisan aspects of how policy advice, as a tool, impacts the substance of policy matters but also the processes by which policy is developed and used by policymakers. The chapter argues that the emphasis on procedural information–based public information campaigns can be broadened by recognizing that policy advice, as a tool, has inward- and outward-facing roles at various stages of policymaking. Government advisory activity can and does move markets and impact citizen and firm behavior and has major implications for the supply and demand of internal policy work of governments. A series of illustrative examples are used demonstrate the breadth and diversity of policy advice, as a policy tool, and the application of a tools-based approach to improve how we think about systems of advice and the role of decision-makers in managing and optimizing those systems.

Introduction

Policy advice is a central preoccupation for a variety of actors located in and around government engaged in policy formulation. Public servants are tasked with generating it, and we hope policymakers are receiving (and using) quality supplies while various 'outsiders' provide it, whether solicited or not. The art and craft of giving and using advice have always been challenging but are seemingly further complicated by an increasingly contestable advisory environment, the complex nature of many policy problems, and political and media cycles that reward expedience over thoughtfulness and longer-term consideration. Policy issues and governments are often awash in policy advice, but its quality and useability remain matters of ongoing concern and debate.

DOI: 10.4324/9781003163954-20

This chapter contributes to the collection's focus on policy tools by applying tools-based research to policy advice. This is novel in that few studies of policy advice have explicitly considered how, as a policy tool, advice is used and impacts policymaking. The tools approach makes sense given the core role of advice in policymaking but also given the number and types of advisory tools, including written briefing/decision notes, cabinet submissions, verbal briefings, public consultations, advisory commissions and boards, and white and green papers (Prasser 2006; Craft and Halligan 2020; Pierre 1998).

Next, recent developments in policy advice research are reviewed to establish a common footing and vocabulary. Then, the well-known Hood (1986) instrument classification approach that arrays tools based on their government resource use is applied with a focus on 'information-based' policy tools. The approach argues that government's 'nodal' or central position within broader networks confers it with privileged abilities to collect and disseminate information that can be used to affect behavior and achieve policy outcomes (Hood 1986, 2007; Bemelmans-Videc et al. 1998; Howlett 2009).

To date, studies of information-based policy instruments have focused predominantly on the dissemination or communications and public information campaigns undertaken by the state. This chapter argues that this is unnecessarily narrow. Instead, as an information-based policy tool, policy advice is argued to play an important function throughout the policy process within and outside governments. Examples are used to draw out the procedural and substantive nature of policy advisory tools as well as their applicability to the 'front end' and 'back end' of the policy-making process.

The chapter closes by drawing out the clear parallels between instrument and policy advice research, which have both increasingly sought to grapple with the fact that neither operates in isolation. Instead, both are now understood to operate alongside other instruments/many forms of advice in so-called instrument mixes or policy advisory systems (PAS). The chapter concludes by pointing to the opportunities and the current imperatives for thinking about and studying policy advice as a policy tool.

Policy Advice and Tools: Common Ground and Paths Forward in Policy Making

In a similar way to that by which the policy tools literature evolved from a set of descriptive taxonomies to considerations of how and why tools are selected, deployed, and mixed, what constitutes policy advice and how its generated, brokered, and consumed have evolved in practice and as subjects of study. Early on, policy advice was often thought of broadly in terms of government knowledge utilization or, more narrowly, as part of the policy-making process (Peters and Barker 1993; Scott and Baehler 2010). For the insider, policy advice could simply be an 'output' (DPMC 2014), which at its core could be seen as 'covering analysis of problems and the proposing of solutions' (Halligan 1995, p. 139).

In this way, policy advice was often relegated to the formulation stage of policymaking. However, as we will see later in this chapter, this view has changed, given evidence of a broader set of practices and activities related to advisory work that span the policy process and often involve a range of actors beyond those of the professional public service (Veselý 2017; Craft 2015; Scott and Baehler 2010).

Policy advice is now understood to be linked to front-end policy making activities like those associated with the construction of policy problems and objectives, formalization of policy agendas, and policy formulation (Craft and Halligan 2020; Bahler and Scott 2010). The 'back end' of policymaking or implementation and evaluation activities have also always featured policy

advisory work with governments seeking to understand how to work with street-level bureaucrats, communities of practice, other orders of government, and a range of actors to operationalize policy and to learn about and evaluate its effectiveness (Howlett 2012).

The renewed attention of governments to questions of 'what works' along with a focus on 'delivery' and managing policy performance have seen back-end information tools like advice via performance dashboards, 'stock takes' involving the appraisal of how policies are faring, and audits and evaluations become common policy instruments in modern governance (Halligan 2020; Diamond 2020; Lindquist 2006; Gregory and Lonti 2008; Gold 2017). Boston (1994, p. 3) offers a useful approach to help make sense of the complex nature of policy advice by distinguishing between two general high-level categories of advice: 'strategic' and 'operational'. As he puts it:

> '[S]trategic' policy advice involving the production of well-researched, in-depth reports for political executives on various matters of public policy (e.g. concerning the role of the state as funder, provider, regulator), setting out the issues and exploring the options; and 'operational' policy advice which is concerned with the issues of implementation and the administration of government programs (e.g. advice on drafting or amending laws and regulations, technical advice of various kinds, advice on appointments to public organizations, the monitoring of policy outcomes).

These distinctions draw out that there are a range of purposes to giving policy advice, which are connected to the fundamental starting points of policymaking in constructing and formalizing policy problems and generating options to respond to them, but also to operational matters involving how to do it. This chapter uses these categories to examine how policy advisory instruments can be conceived of in relation to the arc of policymaking from 'front-end' to 'back-end' policy work. These categories can also subsume further distinctions related to the partisan-political advice being provided to officials via their politically appointed staffs or others, which complements the non-partisan advice provided in most public service systems (Craft 2015; Craft and Halligan 2020).

Advisory research increasingly features a consensus that policy advice now involves a range of 'hard' and 'soft' competencies and practices. These include rigorous formal professional policy advising – based on the standardized practices and formal techniques of policy analysis such as cost benefit and the like – but also research, proposal development, consultation, managing political processes, and evaluating outcomes (Gregory and Lonti 2008, p. 838). The 'soft craft' of advisory work involves marshalling tacit and experiential knowledge, consultation, brokerage and negotiation, advocacy, and political acuity, among others (Bromell 2017; Tiernan 2015; Prince 2018). Current views understand policy advice as including the provision of recommendations and guidance and the articulation of preferences in support of policy work (Craft and Halligan 2020). That is, not simply generating inputs for formulation and decision-making but again more broadly applicable as a range of activities essential to policy processes.

A second pertinent feature of policy advice research, which shares much with tools-based approaches, has been the focus on the substantive and procedural nature of those activities: for instance, with major debates and research programs looking at substantive aspects of advice related to the content of policy advice. This includes long-standing debates about the nature and uses of evidence-based policy advice versus partisan-political forms of advice and distinctions based on the policy domain and nature of various policy problems (Head 2008; Craft 2015; Craft and Wilder 2017). Procedurally, researchers have noted the closed or open nature of advising processes, the role of various actors and rules that structure advisory process, and the

technocratic and democratic implications of policy advisory processes, as well as the procedural implications of short- versus long-term forms of policymaking (Craft and Howlett 2013; Pierre 1998; Prasser 2006).

A final development of note has been the attempt to make sense of the growing pluralism and complexity of advising by thinking about the systems of advice that exist in any given jurisdiction. The policy advisory system (PAS), or the assemblage of units and practices that exist at a given time that governments and other actors engage with for policy purposes, has helped broaden the focus of analysis from overreliance on questions of public service capacity and advisory performance to a synergistic frame of analysis that attends to the configuration, operation, effectiveness, and evolution of the systems themselves (Halligan 1995; Craft and Wilder, 2017). Readers will think about their own countries or cities, where they can readily identify public service staffs but also political parties, think tanks or private sector consultancies, academics, or the various international non-governmental agencies like the United Nations, International Monetary Fund, or World Bank that may be active on policy issues in their jurisdictions. PAS is helpful for recognizing that several policy advisory components exist (e.g., types of policy advisors, advice, and advisory practices), and important distinctions can characterize their respective configurations and operation in various jurisdictions and domains. Despite these advances, PAS falls short in recognizing and accounting for how, as a policy tool, advice can be wielded by governments seeking to achieve policy outcomes.

Policy Advice as an Information-Based Policy Tool: Old and New Paths of Study

Policy tools, or the techniques through which governments generate, evaluate, and implement policy options, are numerous, and this collection provides a range of different typologies and approaches. Using Hood's (1986, see Table 16.1) well-known typology that arrays policy tools by primary governing resource used, we see that policy advice is a 'nodality/information' policy tool. Hood (2007, p. 129) explains that nodality-based tools relate to the 'capacity of government to operate as a node in information networks – a central point of contact'. Thus, with respect to information tools, governments are nodal in the sense that they provide, collect, block, and broker information resources. A variety of information-based techniques are available to governments, ranging from general information campaigns and information or data collection

Table 16.1 Examples of Policy Instruments, Classified by Principal Governing Resources Used

Nodality/ Information	*Authority*	*Treasure*	*Organization*
Information collection and release	Command-and-control regulation	Grants and loans	Direct provision of goods and services and public enterprises
Advice and exhortation	Self-regulation	User charges	Use of family, community, and voluntary organizations
Advertising	Standard setting and delegated regulation	Taxes and tax expenditures	Market creation
Commissions and Inquiries	Advisory committees and consultations	Interest group creation and funding	Government reorganization

Source: Adapted from Hood (1986)

to government advertising; commissions of inquiry, access to information, and privacy acts all fall within the rubric of information-based policy instruments. Advice was included as the exemplar of this in Hood's (1986, 2007) approach to classifying and understanding policy tools but has not been the subject of significant tools-based analysis.

Many of these will be familiar to readers who may have seen their government mount public information campaigns such as those designed to promote recruitment to the armed services or inform voters of election dates along with what is required to vote. Others may recall commissions of inquiry or bespoke advisory committees being struck to deal with major government scandals or public health/safety emergencies like COVID-19. Some may even have tried to request information directly from government only to have been denied or receiving heavily redacted government materials. Information-based policy tools, as Vedung et al. (1998, p. 103) put it, '[Cover] government-directed attempts at influencing people through transfer of knowledge communication of reasoned argument, and moral suasion in order to achieve a policy result'. It includes the ability of government to disseminate information through public information campaigns but, as this chapter argues, also through their advisory activity, given governments nodal powers of impacting how information is generated, brokered, and consumed within and around government in the policy process.

Within the tools literature, some work has been done on exploring the use and effectiveness of information-based policy tools. To date, most of the academic study of information-based policy tools has focused on the outward communication function of government, typically focusing on the use and effects of public information campaigns or their ability to structure and limit the processes by which information is collected or released via secrecy or administrative discretion (Adler and Pittle 1984; Bennett and Raab 2003; Salmon 1989; Stanbury and Fulton 1984; Weiss and Tschirhart 1994; Howlett 2009; Howlett et al. 2010a, 2010b).

A key argument of this chapter is that this is an overly narrow view. Firstly, on the grounds that governments often provide policy advice that is public or outwardly directed to citizens, business, or international actors or jurisdictions that is not always part of an organized 'campaign'. A good example would be the release of public health policy advice regarding COVID-19. Governments around the world and their respective public health agencies and non-governmental agencies like the World Health Organization (WHO) all engaged in policy advisory activity designed to affect the behavior of states, citizens, and domestic and international firms and organizations. While some policy advice was coordinated and campaign-like, much of it was not. It included the released public advice about the fundamental understandings of what the COVID-19 disease was, its origins, and its transmissibility (e.g., via droplets versus aerosol transmission), along with a range of public health advice regarding the need for and efficacy of physical distancing, masking, and even the lockdowns of entire communities, while others published advice on corresponding economic and social implications or countermeasures (Boin et al. 2021).

Second, policy advice not only satisfies the traditionally dominant 'outward' dissemination view of information-based tools but also points to a sizable and diverse array of 'internal' uses and instrument types used in the policy process. Policy advice fundamentally meets the spirit and intent of information tools as 'government-direct government-directed attempts at influencing people through transfer of knowledge communication of reasoned argument, and moral suasion in order to achieve a policy result' (Vedung et al. 1998, p. 103).

What is distinct is the target group, which is internal and diverse, including a broad range and type of public sector staffs and elected officials, who are in effect trying to influence other public service or government actors. Public servants' raison d'être in large part involves advisory work to inform policy deliberations and how best to implement democratic decisions in operational contexts by providing their best professional free and frank advice (Scott and Baehler 2010; Craft and Hallgan 2020).

Policy advice is one of the forms of oxygen that facilitates the operation of government at a basic level. Public servants and departments are always working on policy issues and generating policy advice: penning briefing notes or providing verbal advice to other colleagues, either those who are more senior or in other departments, or directly to decision-makers individually or collectively. Likewise, ministers and senior officials use advisory content or processes to help educate and convince their cabinet colleagues, presidents and prime ministers, or other senior officials. The instrument of advice is used to raise considerations, to contest, to contextualize, to inform – or frustrate and delay – policy work at various stages of the policy process (Prasser 2006; Craft 2015; Howlett 2012).

An even broader view would reject the notion that it must be 'government directed' and recognize that instruments of advice are now not only limited to those within the nodal position of government but also wielded by those 'externals' outside of government who seek to influence policy outcomes and behavior. Consultants, firms, and labor and non-governmental organizations, both domestic and abroad, are regularly using policy advisory instruments to inform and influence policy processes at various times and regarding a broad range of policy issues (Craft and Halligan 2020; Stone et al. 2021). Whether presented through private conversations and briefing sessions or publicly available advice in the form of formal published recommendations and guidance, this is commonplace. In short, policy advice may not only lead to supply-and-demand effects outside government, but it can also have powerful market-like forces with respect to the supply and demand for policy work or programs and services within government.

Substantive and Procedural Advisory Tools

Policy advisory scholarship has typically made limited if any distinction around the types of advisory tools. Exceptions include attention to whether policy advice (the instrument) is written or verbal, whether it is formal or informal (meaning part of the formal decision-making system or a more informal 'kitchen cabinet' of advisors), or via advisory bodies like commissions, agents of legislatures, non-governmental advisors, or appointed political advisors who provide a spectrum of policy advice, including more partisan-political advice (Craft 2015; Craft and Halligan 2020).

Looking to the procedural and substantive nature of policy advisory tools can help advance that effort. One of the overlaps noted earlier in relation to policy tools and advice was the distinction and study of procedural and substantive aspects. As covered in greater detail in other chapters of this volume, substantive policy tools are 'intended to directly affect the nature, types, qualities and distribution of goods and services provided in society' (Howlett, 2000, p. 415). Procedural tools, in contrast, are aimed at altering policy processes rather than substance or 'intended to manage state-societal interactions in order to assure general support for government aims and initiatives' (ibid., p. 412). The policy advisory literature has focused on substantive policy matters as the content or substance of advice and how that is generated and impacts policy while procedural aspects have focused on the processes by which policy advice is generated, brokered, and consumed in the policy process (Craft and Howlett 2012). While not identical in their approach to the distinctions, they both capture the material effects or procedural implications of advisory activity.

Policy advice and information as a policy tool have most often been characterized and studied as procedural policy tools. In fact, advisory-specific examples are often used to point out the way in which government can alter the actors, processes, activities, or purposes of advisory instruments with the intent of impacting policy behavior or outcomes (Craft and Halligan 2020; Howlett et al. 2010a). Procedural nodality–related tools are 'based on government information resources in order to attempt to alter the behavior of policy network members involved in policy making processes'

(Howlett 2009, p. 26). Specific examples pertinent to this chapter include setting up special advisory bodies or commissions, opening or closing policy advisory processes to public consultation, and changing the composition or membership of key advisory bodies (Pierre 1998; Prasser 2006; Bali and Halpin 2021; Stark and Yates 2021; Craft and Halligan 2020).

This again, however, speaks only to the 'outward-facing' dissemination view of information tools, which misses the internal applications. For instance, related to how governments set up advisory processes within government, including formal briefing systems that serve to control, coordinate, and structure who generates policy advice and how within the public sector, along with the types of advice and how it is or is not coordinated amongst disparate actors. Practical examples include cabinet decision-making processes and committee structures, interdepartmental committees, budget-making processes, and specific processes put in place by senior officials or ministers to govern how they are advised or engage with policy advice from their staffs or other actors (Craft 2015; Craft and Halligan 2020; Scott and Baehler 2010).

The dominant focus on procedural information–based policy tools also misses some of the substantive tools and uses that are information based. Information-based substantive tools are utilized for eliciting desired policy outcomes by supplying a target audience with information; policymakers seek to influence their thinking, knowledge, or beliefs towards a particular behavior and thereby increase the attainment of desired policy goals (Weiss 2002). In short, substantive tools then serve to directly affect the demand or supply of goods and services provided in society (Howlett 2017, p. 99).

Outward-oriented demand-side examples include reduced travel to certain destinations in the wake of government advice regarding public safety or public health policy advice: for instance, when governments issue travel advisories related to terrorism or security threats, or the significant amounts of public health advice issued by local, regional, and national health units/governments during the COVID-19 pandemic. This had implications for a range of business risks and practices with impacts on spending and consumption. Likewise, policy advice by governments linked to the COVID-19 pandemic had production and supply effects related to the use of sanitizers, masks, vaccines, and testing products, not to mention the effects based on guidance about when and how to safely patronize businesses and manage employees working from home or at places of business. Internally, governments were advancing policy advice that had material consequences for the supply and demand of policy work as governments turned to pandemic policy challenges necessitating supply and demand shifts in the resources, number and type of staff, and broader policy work required to meet the public health, safety, economic, social, and international policy obligations of the pandemic (Boin et al. 2021). The logic carries forward to non-pandemic examples in which government policy advice can have the effect of prioritizing and (re)defining policy problems or options with one possible consequences being shifts in the resources allocated by the state or market actors.

Here, There, and Everywhere

At a high level, trying to make sense of the uses of advisory tools is facilitated by coupling together the substantive and procedural matters with Boston's (1994) strategic and operational distinctions. The latter's categorization also helps confront a persistent issue in policy instrument and advisory studies. As Howlett et al. (2018, p. 160) put it,

> Although policy instruments appear in all stages of the policy process, those affecting the agenda-setting, decision-making and evaluation stages of the policy process, while very significant and important in public management (Wu et al. 2010), have

traditionally not been considered in policy design research, which is centered on the formulation of tools and their mixes.

Policy advice, too, has had a similar treatment, with the emphasis resting on policy advice in relation to policy formulation and decision-making activities (Craft and Wilder 2017). While this chapter does not go through each conjuncture of the policy-making process, Table 16.2 does provide examples, using the strategic and operational distinctions, coupled with the procedural and substantive elements outlined earlier and the audience, internal or external, to which advice is orientated.

Front-end or agenda-setting instruments may involve using externally oriented policy advisory instruments to signal policy direction with implications for firms or sectors that may adjust in anticipation of government policy changes. For example, publication of a government white paper or 'expert panel' on competition policy or anti-trust policy may push firms or sectors to shift supply or impact demand. Published government advice may signal potential government activity in a sector or provide a set of guardrails that directs firms or citizens to the government's preferred behavior or boundaries on policy issues. Internally, a range of agenda-setting policy advisory instruments can exist with clear links to the markets for policy work within government and to market effects outside it. Initial meetings between senior officials and ministers may involve advice about how approach certain policy files, advance key policy priorities, or recommendations about how to work with stakeholders or lead to changes in how initiatives are designed and (de)funded with market implications. Externally oriented advisory tools of a procedural nature include setting terms of reference for public advisory bodies or processes and structuring public consultation topics or timelines with implications for the policy agenda or formulation activities.

Table 16.2 Advisory Instrument by Audience, Function, and Policy Conjuncture

	Strategic 'Front End'		*Operational 'Back End'*	
	Internal	*External*	*Internal*	*External*
Substantive	Policy advice that prompts prioritization, (re) definition of a policy problem or objective with implications for market dynamics (e.g., public advice recommending new/revised competition policy)	Public health advice (e.g., advice on mask use, safe travel, or recommended business occupancy capacity)	Implementation advice from officials (e.g., briefings that recommend working with/ against a stakeholder, firms, or community partner)	Public government evaluation advice (e.g., published advice regarding effective/ efficient service providers)
Procedural	Establishing or managing internal government policy advisory processes (e.g., advising on how to set up briefing-note and cabinet decision-making processes)	Advice to establish or manage externally oriented advisory processes (e.g., setting terms of refence or public consultation timelines)	Establishing delivery units (e.g., to prioritize implementation or evaluation advice at the center of government)	Advice on how to structure or managing public- facing implementation or evaluation processes (e.g., recommending favorable evaluators/ public members for evaluation committee)

Back-end procedural policy advisory instrument examples include the internal use of implementation or progressing chasing units, which create advisory tools that prioritize delivery and utilize advisory instruments like performance dashboards or 'stock takes' on specific policy issues. These may lead to recommendations for recalibrations of approaches or resources reallocations inside or outside government (Lindquist 2006; Gold 2017). Externally, governments can be heavily involved in procedurally structuring/managing evaluations or implementation working groups in setting terms and conditions and placing preferred participants in positions to influence implementation or evaluation advice or outcomes. Substantive advisory instruments could, for example, include inward-facing advice regarding implementation experiences with key stakeholders, firms, or other orders of government that may influence future choices about whom to collaborate with. Externally, governments may publish advice about the effectiveness or efficiency of one service group over another

These are just a few examples to illustrate that governments use advice as a tool beyond the confines of policy formulation and in ways that extend beyond the outward-facing public information campaign. Governments nodal positions given them power over many advisory processes that are internal as well as public facing.

Conclusion

It has been uncommon to think of advice as an instrument in the policy tools literature, with the information policy tool focus being on procedural tools, typically government information campaigns. The arguments presented in this chapter have been simple. Policy advice is an informational tool and has procedural and substantive applications and types. Advisory activity continues to be a significant element of what governments do, not only in terms of the public sector actors and organizations generating it but also how governments seek to structure its processes and use it strategically to influence a range of actors, both within and outside government (Hood 2006; John 2013). There is a pressing need to recognize the inward or internally facing suite of policy advisory tools that impact how governments advise and the types of advice that are privileged and constrained in policymaking. How advisory systems are set up within government and the types of advice that are used, and when, are consequential to resource allocations and policy workflows in government, both in policy formulation and beyond it. Likewise, governments externally facing advice can have important substantive and procedural effects on markets as noted in the examples provided.

While it is easiest to think of policy advice as associated with formulation and design activities, this chapter has argued that there are many examples in which agenda-setting, decision-making, or evaluation and implementation involve advisory tools. Policy advisory tools are apparent as governments seek to chart agendas, define policy objectives, and commit to policy implementation plans and programs and services. The broader suite of advisory tools at the front and back ends of policy points to a need for more research into the nature and types of tools and their policy implications.

Similarly, recognizing the diversity of advisory tools and when they are put to work raises the issue of how these tools are combined in instrument 'mixes' (Howlett et al. 2018). Like policy advisory systems, instrument mixes reflect the reality that, in many instances, there is not a single instrument but several – with governments needing to think through how they are combined and interact. This resonates with advisory system scholarship, which has had a similar interest in understanding how the diverse sets of advice available to government impact governance and policymaking. While some attention has been paid to how external or partisan-political advice is coupled with that of public services, there remain several rich avenues of study to better understand how advisory instrument mixes operate and how governments can optimize them.

References

Adler, R. S., and Pittle, R. D. (1984). Cajolry or command: Are education campaigns and adequate substitute for regulation. *Yale Journal on Regulation*, 1(2), 159–193.

Bali, A., and Halpin, D. (2021). Agenda-setting instruments: Means and strategies for the management of policy demands. *Policy and Society*, 40(3), 333–344. DOI: 10.1080/14494035.2021.1955489

Bemelmans-Videc, M. L., Rist, R. C., and Vedung, E. (1998). *Carrots, Sticks and Sermons, Policy Instruments and Their Evaluation*. New Brunswick: Transaction.

Bennett, C. J., and Raab, C. D. (2003). *The Governance of Privacy: Policy Instruments in Global Perspective*. Aldershot: Ashgate.

Boin, A., Brock, K., Craft, J., Halligan, J.,'t Hart, P., Roy, J., Tellier, G., and Turnbull, L. (2021) Beyond COVID-19: Five commentaries on expert knowledge, executive action, and accountability in governance and public administration. *Canadian Public Administration*, 63(3), 339–368.

Boston, J. (1994). Purchasing policy advice: The limits to contracting out. *Governance*, 7(1), 1–30.

Bromell, D. (2017). *The Art and Craft of Policy Advising: A Practical Guide*. Gewerbestrasse: Springer.

Craft, J. (2015). Conceptualizing partisan advisers as policy workers. *Policy Sciences Journal*, 48(2), 135–158.

Craft, J., and Halligan, J. (2020). *Advising Governments in the Westminster Tradition: Policy Advisory Systems in Australia, Britain, Canada and New Zealand*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Craft, J., and Howlett, M. (2012). Policy formulation, governance shifts and policy influence: Location and content in policy advisory systems. *Journal of Public Policy*, 32(2), 79–98.

Craft, J., and Howlett, M. (2013). The dual dynamics of policy advisory systems: The impact of externalization and politicization on policy advice. *Policy and Society*, 32(3), 187–197.

Craft, J., and Wilder, M. (2017). Catching a second wave: Context and compatibility in advisory system dynamics. *Policy Studies Journal*, 45(1), 215–239.

Diamond, P. (2020). Polycentric governance and policy advice: Lessons from Whitehall policy advisory systems. *Policy and Politics*, 48(4), 563–581.

DPMC/Department of the Prime Minister and Cabinet. (2014). *The Policy Project: Responsive Today, Shaping Tomorrow*. Wellington: DPMC.

Gold, J. (2017). *Tracking Delivery; Global Trends and Warning Signs in Delivery Units*. London: Institute for Government.

Gregory, R., and Lonti, Z. (2008). Chasing shadows? Performance measurement of policy advice in New Zealand government departments. *Public Administration*, 86(3), 837–856.

Halligan, J. (1995). Policy advice and the public sector. In B. G. Peters and D. Savoie (eds.), *Governance in a Changing Environment*. Kingston and Montreal: McGill-Queen's University Press, pp. 138–172.

Halligan, J. (2020). *Reforming Public Management and Governance: Impact and Lessons from Anglophone Countries*. Cheltenham: Edward Elgar.

Head, B. (2008). Three lenses of evidence-based policy. *Australian Journal of Public Administration*, 67(1), 1–11.

Hood, C. (1986). *The Tools of Government*. London: Macmillan.

Hood, C. (2006). The tools of government in the information age. In M. Moran, M. Rein and R. E. Goodin (eds.), *The Oxford Handbook of Public Policy*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.

Hood, C. (2007). Intellectual obsolescence and intellectual makeovers: Reflections on the tools of government after two decades. *Governance*, 20(1), 127–144.

Hood, C., and Margetts, H. (2007). *The Tools of Government in the Digital Age*. New York: Palgrave Macmillan.

Howlett, M. (2000). Managing the "hollow state": Procedural policy instruments and modern governance. *Canadian Public Administration*, 43(4), 412–431.

Howlett, M. (2009). Government communication as a policy tool: A framework for analysis. *Canadian Political Science Review*, 3(2), 23–37. https://ojs.unbc.ca/index.php/cpsr/article/view/134

Howlett, M. (2012). The lessons of failure: Learning and blame avoidance in public policy-making. *International Political Science Review*, 33(5), 539–555.

Howlett, M. (2017). Policy tools and their role in policy formulation: dealing with procedural and substantive instruments. In M. Howlett and I. Mukherjee (eds.), *Handbook of Policy Formulation*. London: Edward Elgar, pp. 96–111.

Howlett, M., Craft, J., and Zibrik, L. (2010a). Government communication and democratic governance: Electoral and policy-related information campaigns in Canada. *Policy and Society*, 29(1), 13–22.

Howlett, M., Craft, J., and Zibrik, L. (2010b). Government communication and their policy impact: Lessons from two Canadian case studies. In Manuel Alejandro Guerrero Martínez (ed.), *Democracy, Communication & Media: Recent Experiences from Mexico and Canada*. Mexico, DF: UNESCO.

Howlett, M., Mukerjee, I., and Woo, J. J. (2018). Thirty years of research on policy instruments. In H. K. Colebatch (ed.), *Handbook on Policy, Process and Governing*. London: Edward Elgar, pp. 147–168.

John, P. (2013). All tools are informational now: How information and persuasion define the tools of government. *Policy & Politics*, 41(4), 605–620.

Lindquist, E. (2006). Organizing for policy implementation: The emergence and role of implementation units in policy design and oversight. *Journal of Comparative Policy Analysis: Research and Practice*, 8(4), 311–324.

Peters, B. G., and Barker, A. (1993). *Advising West European Governments: Inquiries, Expertise and Public Policy*. Edinburgh: Edinburgh University Press.

Pierre, J. (1998). Public consultation and citizen participation: Dilemmas of policy advice. In B. Guy Peters and Donald J. Savoie (eds.), *Taking Stock: Assessing Public Sector Reforms*. Kingston and Montreal: McGill-Queen's University Press, pp. 137–163.

Prasser, S. (2006). Royal commissions in Australia: When should governments appoint them? *Australian Journal of Public Administration*, 65(3), 28–47.

Prince, M. J. (2018). Trends and directions in Canadian policy analysis and advice. In L. Dobuzinskis and M. Howlett (eds.), *Policy Analysis in Canada*. Bristol: The Policy Press, pp. 449–465.

Salmon, C. (1989). *Information Campaigns: Managing the Process of Social Change*. Newberry Park: Sage.

Scott, C., and Baehler, K. (2010). *Adding Value to Policy Analysis and Advice*. Kensington: University of New South Wales Press.

Stanbury, W. T., and J. Fulton (1984). Suasion as a governing instrument. In A. Maslove (ed.), *How Ottawa Spends 1984: The New Agenda*. Toronto: Lorimer, pp. 282–324.

Stark, A., and Yates, S. (2021). Public inquiries as procedural policy tools. *Policy and Society*, 40(3), 345–361. DOI: 10.1080/14494035.2021.1955485

Stone, D., Pal, L. A., and de Oliveriera, O. P. (2021). Private consultants and policy advisory organizations: A blind spot on policy transfer research. In Osmany Porto de Reviera (ed.), *Handbook of Policy Transfer, Diffusion and Circulation*. New York: Edward Elgar, pp. 173–195.

Tiernan, A. (2015). Craft and capacity in the public service. *Australian Journal of Public Administration*, 74(1), 53–62.

Veselý, A. (2017). Policy advice as policy work: A conceptual framework for multi-level analysis. *Policy Sciences*, 50(1), 139–154.

Weiss, J. (2002). Public information. In L. M. Salamon (ed.), *The Tools of Government: A Guide to the New Governance*. New York: Oxford University Press, pp. 217–254.

Weiss, J. A., and Tschirhart, M. (1994). Public information campaigns as policy instruments. *Journal of Policy Analysis & Management*, 13(1), 82–119. http://search.ebscohost.com/login.aspx?direct=true&db=bth&AN=9406161413&site=bsi-live

17

TOOLS FOR STRUCTURING POLICY ADVICE

Commissions of Inquiry and Task Forces as Policy Formulation Instruments

Gregory J. Inwood and Carolyn M. Johns

Classic definitions of public policy refer to government action and inaction – attributes readily apparent in the choice of commissions of inquiry and task forces as policy tools. These tools are unique for many reasons, not the least of which is that they can be simultaneously tools of both action and inaction. Temporary policy tools, which are often born out of crisis, live a short life and die a quick, predetermined, and often inglorious death; they can serve the purpose of inspiring government to action or providing cover for governments that do not want to pursue action. These tools are creatures of the executive branch of government, generally relate to policy review, and typically evade legislative scrutiny. This chapter outlines the general nature and purpose of commissions of inquiry and task forces as policy tools, covers the ways in which they contribute to policy formulation and other parts of the policy process, and uses an analytical framework focused on ideas, institutions, actors, and relations to highlight and assess their utility and value as policy tools.

Introduction

Crisis, scandal, and revelation are great catalysts in government affairs and policymaking. When they strike, governments are asked: How did this happen? Who was responsible? What was the government's failure? What must be done to avoid future occurrences? Governments respond in many ways, particularly in the agenda-setting and formulation stages of the policy cycle, using the wide range of policy tools covered in this book. Policy makers have a wide range of advisory systems and options (Craft and Halligan, 2017); however, some policy conundrums are intractable and require exceptional consideration. In these cases, the policy tool often used is the commission of inquiry or task force.

The structures and functions of commissions of inquiry and task forces have frequently been the subject of study for academics. Scholarship reaches back at least to the early twentieth century, looking at the unique role they play in politics and policy (Hodgetts, 1949, 1952, 1966; Courtney, 1969; Doern, 1967; Walls, 1969). Scholarship has tended to focus on single, in-depth case studies, classifications, and analysis of how inquires have evolved (Gorecki and Stanbury, 1979; Drache and Cameron, 1985; Pross, Christie and Yogis, 1990; Litt, 1992; Jenson, 1994;

 DOI: 10.4324/9781003163954-21

Wherrett, 1995; Timpson, 1999; Bradford, 1999/2000; Orsini, 2002; Ferguson and Wardaugh, 2003; Manson and Mullan, 2003; Inwood, 2005; Clark and Trick, 2006; Scala, 2008). There is also some scholarship that examines and compares inquiries across time and a range of policy issues (Inwood and Johns, 2014; Johns and Inwood, 2018).

Legal scholars have taken a particular interest in commissions of inquiry and task forces (Manson and Mullan, 2003; Ratushny, 2009); so, too, have political scientists and others interested in public policy and public administration (Doern, 1967; Courtney, 1969; Walls, 1969; Bashevkin, 1988; Schwartz, 1997; d'Ombrain, 1997; Bradford, 1999/2000; Stutz, 2008; Inwood and Johns, 2014, 2016, 2018). The widespread and enduring interest in commissions of inquiry and task forces is evident. Scholarship has also emerged in other commonwealth and Westminster systems (for example, see Lauriat, 2010; Rowe and McAllister, 2006 on the UK; and Gilligan, 2002; Prasser, 1985, 1990, 1994, 2021 on Australia), and there is some comparative literature across jurisdictions (Marier, 2009) and on alternative forms (Eburn and Dovers, 2015). Only rarely have commissions of inquiry and task forces been compared directly, though (Aucoin, 1987). Our contribution is to conceptualize them as policy tools and examine their critical dimensions and utility in the pantheon of instruments available to governments related to policy.

Traditional policy processes and tools can only go so far in addressing complex and vexing problems confronting the modern state and society. Anomalous conditions arise from time to time, which require fresh approaches outside the realm of traditional executive, legislative, and judicial policy toolboxes. Sometimes, the relatively slow-moving and often cumbersome apparatus of government requires speeding up but can only do so outside the existing mechanisms for policymaking. Contested terrain may require an independent policy toolset where ideas can be tested, institutions can be rethought, different actors can be engaged, and new relations forged.

This chapter focuses on commissions of inquiry and task forces as policy tools by addressing several key questions: Where do commissions of inquiry and task forces fit in the pantheon of policy tools available to governments? Do they matter to policymaking and formulation? Are they effective in bringing about change or in preventing change and sustaining the status quo? After providing some foundational definitions, the chapter outlines and applies a basic framework of ideas, institutions, actors, and relations for examining commissions and task forces as policy tools.

Commissions of Inquiry and Task Forces: A Note on Nomenclature

The terms *commission of inquiry* and *task force* require some explanation. These terms refer broadly to bodies which are extra-governmental but which are summoned into being by the executive branch of government. In constitutional monarchies, the term *royal commission* is often used for commissions of inquiry, though the former usage tends to delineate a more formal, larger, and more extensive form of inquiry than the latter term, which is also used. *Commission of inquiry* is used to describe a range of investigative tools, often with quasi-judicial features. The term *task force* originated in the United States Navy and is more common in democratic republics. It is essentially a special committee, typically composed of experts in a given field. Its job is to systematically study a particular problem, produce an evaluation of the causes, itemize options, and make recommendations based on the best of a set of possible solutions as determined by a set of standards. It is then up to the executive to act on the task force's recommendations – or ignore them. The subject matter of task forces tends to be less formal and significant than that of commissions of inquiry, with some significant exceptions.

These investigative tools are used extensively by all Westminster countries (e.g., Canada, the UK, Australia, and New Zealand). Examples number in the thousands and cover virtually every

policy field imaginable. Other countries besides Westminster nations have similar investigative models. For instance, the United States has the National Commission and Public Inquiry, such as the National Commission on Terrorist Attacks Upon the United States (also known as the 9/11 Commission) and the Report on the Investigation into Russian Interference in the 2016 Presidential Election (also known as the Mueller Report). Even though they are supposed to be nonpartisan and nonpolitical in nature, the acceptance and rejection of the results of commissions of inquiry and task forces can be as political as any other decision made in any political institution.

Commissions of inquiry are official inquiries into issues that affect the public. According to Gilligan (2002), they originated from the British monarchy, which used the royal prerogative to order investigations. However, because of the broad nature and uses of the commission of inquiry and their complexity, differing mandates, purpose, duration, and size, it is challenging to nail down a single comprehensive definition for them.

Nevertheless, commissions of inquiry can be referred to as official reviews authorized by governments to investigate an issue or event, understand the cause of the issue or event, and subsequently make recommendations (Inwood and Johns, 2014). Categorizations have been undertaken that generally sort them into policy-investigative and legal-judicial types.

Commissions of inquiry are any working group mandated by the government but subordinate to it that is given the job of studying a particular policy or program to produce a nonbinding report and recommendation (Marier, 2009). Although they are a policy tool deployed by the executive branch, they are not themselves part of the executive, legislative, or judicial branches of government; thus, they are not directly answerable to any political master. They have been described as having varying degrees of impact on policy change and formulation as "independent creature[s] existing in a shadowy realm of extra-governmental institutions that are nonetheless public" (Inwood and Johns, 2014: 8).

Task forces are also a type of public inquiry and policy exploration undertaken by governments, typically established by the executive. Task forces are temporary organizations, often involving multiple departments and agencies and levels of governments created to solve a particular problem. According to Roderick Macdonald, task forces are non-statutory forms of inquiries established by a minister seeking to advance policy objectives in their department, ministry, or agency (2011). They are a more formal ad hoc committee, more limited in scope and duration, and are generally more specialized. Task forces are less formal and less independent than commissions of inquiry. As a result, they do not enjoy the power to subpoena witnesses, take evidence under oath, and request documents like the commission of inquiry (Macdonald, 2011; Government of Canada, 2017). Simply put, task forces are policy tools created to investigate and inquire into issues and explore policy options; they can be made up of members of the public service, experts, academics, or members of the public (Macdonald, 2011).

Generally, commissions of inquiry are reserved for more significant policy problems than task forces. But at times, the difference between them is almost nonexistent as some inquiries have been used to tackle relatively small-scale specific issues while some so-called task forces were actually commissions. Commissions of inquiry and task forces are used as policy tools in many jurisdictions. In other non-Westminster countries, there are several different types of public inquiries. In the case of the United States, for instance, the major ones are the Presidential Commission and the Congressional Advisory Commission. As its name suggests, the Presidential Commission is ordered by the president as the head of the executive branch under the Federal Advisory Committee Act to investigate a specific issue, event, or policy. The act endows presidential commissions with limited powers of investigation and requires the president to give a formal response within 12 months of a presidential commission report being submitted

(Prasser, 2021). In contrast, the Congressional Commission has five characteristics that differentiate it from a Presidential Commission. The former "(1) is established by Congress, (2) exists temporarily, (3) serves in an advisory capacity, (4) is appointed in part or whole by Members of Congress, and 5) reports to Congress" (Congressional Research Service, 2021: 1).

Many of the same motivations for establishing commissions of inquiry and task forces extend across various jurisdictions, whether Westminster-style or republic. They provide highly visible forums to contend with difficult issues while bringing together expertise that may be absent in the traditional branches of government. Longer, deeper examinations can be undertaken. Non-partisanship can make recommendations more politically salient and saleable both within government and with the broader public. The criticisms that these endeavors are expensive, and the perception that government may be dodging its responsibility to tackle tough issues is common. So, too, are the charges that findings could have been arrived at through a reasonable effort by the executive or legislative branches and/or are mostly ignored in the policy process.

Commissions of Inquiry and Task Forces as Policy Tools in the Policy Process

Commissions of inquiry and task forces are unique policy tools. Their temporal dimension (short lived), place (outside the realm of regular institutions such as parliamentary-cabinet government, the courts, etc.) and power (special investigatory) make them so. In this section, we consider the following: Where do commissions of inquiry and task forces "fit" in the pantheon of policy tools? And what does the literature say about them as policy tools?

Policy instruments, also called "policy tools" or "governing instruments," covered in detail in other chapters of this book, are the means by which governments can choose to reach their policy goals. There are a large variety of instruments and reasons for their selection, and they are important to all stages of the policy cycle.

Table 17.1 locates commissions of inquiry and task forces in the policy cycle. Noteworthy is that the problem definition and agenda-setting stage reveal that "traditional" policy instruments are not up to the task of tackling the given policy problem; this results in the government choosing the extraordinary tool of a commission of inquiry or task force, which can also be considered to serve as agenda-setting and problem-definition tools as described by Prasser (1994).

Table 17.1 Commissions of Inquiry and Task Forces as Policy Instruments in the Policy Cycle

Policy Cycle	*Commissions of Inquiry and Task Forces*
Problem definition and agenda-setting	Determines that there are no "traditional" instruments with which to solve a problem, and extraordinary measures need to be considered as the problem is unlikely to disappear from the government's agenda
Policy formulation	Involves the government choosing the commission of inquiry or task force to supplant the government in the process of policy formulation
Policy implementation	Implementation of the commission of inquiry or task force recommendations is an entirely discretionary act on the part of the government
Policy evaluation	No formal role; in rare instances, former commission of inquiry or task force members critically assess the implementation or lack thereof of their recommendations

These tools are a part of the policy formulation stage of the policy cycle. It is their fundamental role to devise recommendations that represent the most promising policy formulation for the resolution of the policy problem. Once selected, several important features outline the scope and function of commissions of inquiry and task forces as policy tools. These include mandate and scope, typically outlined in a "terms of reference" time frame and pressures for completion; number of commissioners; staff; financial resources; research capacity and character; capacity for public participation; writing the final report; and the relationship between the inquiry and the government. These important features relate to the design, operation, and outcomes of these tools in the policy formulation stage.

Some of the most successful commissions of inquiry and task forces have been those in which successive governments adopt and continue to work to implement recommendations. Recommendation trackers are now being used regularly by civil society organizations and academics to gauge implementation progress after governments formally accept recommendations made by commissions of inquiry and task forces. These accountability mechanisms increase the utility of these temporary policy tools in policy formulation.

The commission of inquiry or task force has no relationship to the implementation stage of the policy cycle. This function is reappropriated to the government. Once the final report is handed over, the commission of inquiry or task force has no say whatsoever in the implementation of its recommendations. It is effectively dead as a policy tool. It is up to the government to decide what to do and determine if the prescriptions proposed are politically, economically, and culturally acceptable and desirable. Is there the political will or government commitment to policy change or policy formulation? Are the recommendations for policy change or new policy formulation a priority for the government? Will they endure if there has been a change in government?

Similarly, the commission of inquiry or task force is not a tool of evaluation insofar as the implementation of its own recommendations are concerned. Occasionally, a commission of inquiry or task force member will comment publicly on the implementation (or lack thereof) of its recommendations, usually critically. However, this is relatively rare, and even then, only occasionally would this type of evaluation be influential on the policy process after the commission of inquiry or task force has completed its utility as a policy tool.

The selection of a commission of inquiry or task force as a policy tool is based on a variety of factors. These include the cost of action versus inaction, the size of the impacted community, public opinion, political direction, ideology, timing, and the need for creativity related to policy change.

As outlined in other chapters in this book, various policy theories seek to explain the choice of policy tool, and these can be applied to commissions of inquiry and task forces. For example, it is argued in classic neo-institutional theory that their use is limited by previous instrument choice or the level of experience with the instrument by the institutions with authority for making instrument choice. This is classical "path dependency" in neo-institutionalism, in which consecutive governments continue to create commissions of inquiry and task forces to try to address complex policy problems. Classical instrument choice theory also posits that policy makers may choose commissions of inquiry or task forces to move from least coercive action to more coercive action through classical incrementalism. A fundamental assumption under public choice theory is that these instruments are selected based on an individual political leader's objectives of improving their own political position; commissions of inquiry and task forces are seen as less intrusive instruments when seeking support or when politicians or governments do not want unnecessary backlash. In this regard, shuffling an issue off to a commission of inquiry or task force can be seen as a salubrious choice.

Commissions of inquiry and task forces can also be conceptualized as indirect policy tools. They are information-based instruments intended to shed new light on an issue and/or perhaps provide an educative function, influencing ideas, expertise, and argument. This recognizes that human behavior is based on knowledge, beliefs, and values; perhaps if these can be changed, behavior will change. This is the least coercive of all policy instruments: there is no obligation to act and no supplementary inducement or penalty. A problem, though, is that it is hard to measure the efficiency or effectiveness of government money spent on an instrument for "information" or "public education" in the form of a commission of inquiry or task force.

In modern democratic systems of government, the choice of policy tools is constrained by the dominant ideational parameters of a liberal capitalist democracy within which contestation over the role of the state and markets is of paramount importance. Institutionally, a constitutional monarchy or republic, Charter of Rights and Freedoms, federalism, parliamentary-cabinet government, professional public service, independent judiciary, and competitive party system influence the choice of policy instruments. The key actors who influence the choice of policy tools include elected politicians, appointed public servants, the judiciary, the public, political parties, interest groups and social movements, think tanks and research organizations, and the media. The choice of policy tools is also influenced by the set of relations that dominate in the political, economic, and social/cultural domains of the society. Relations can be both inside and outside government itself and can be constituted formally (as with the hierarchy of the public service or the constitutional division of powers) or informally (as in the professional trust ties, common educational/technical backgrounds, social connections, and other personal affiliations of key actors).

Some combination of ideas, institutions, actors, and relations needs to coalesce to bring about the choice of commissions of inquiry or task forces as the preferred policy tool for a given policy problem. Using a framework of ideas, institutions, actors, and relations has been shown to be a very valuable approach when comparing the unique dimensions of these policy tools across many policy areas and eras (Inwood and Johns, 2014). This four-part framework also allows for the detailed analysis of the unique internal features of commissions of inquiry and task forces themselves and a focus on the outcomes that flow from these policy tools.

Analyzing Commissions of Inquiry and Task Forces as Policy Tools

Ideas

The ideational framework influencing the choice of any policy tool is multi-faceted. Where commissions of inquiry and task forces are concerned, precedential knowledge, information, and fact are open to contestation. As Inwood and Johns explain, ideas refer to democratic and political beliefs that influence the behavior of decision-makers and the action they choose (2014). Ideas include knowledge (i.e., factual evidence) acquired through empirical research, systematic program and policy review, evaluation and assessment of progress, political manifestos, and electoral promises, as well as organizational analysis. In addition, informed, educative, and expert-driven opinions are also considered in the realm of ideas, as are ideas about the state versus the market and political ideology. Lastly, ideas can also originate from societal beliefs such as social justice, fairness, equality, equity, diversity, and due process (Johns and Inwood 2104: 28–33).

Typically, the origin, context, and use of ideas are in question when choosing commissions of inquiry and task forces as the policy tool to tackle policy issues. Important societal ideas of modern democratic societies also include legitimacy, transparency, accountability, efficiency, and most importantly, democracy. Choosing these tools, whether as a politically calculated decision to delay, shift blame, or appear transparent and accountable or simply for a policy-learning

reason (Marier 2009; Stark 2019), commissions of inquiry and task forces fulfill many of the requirements of democratic society.

As noted earlier, an important reason to commit to a commission of inquiry or task force is that the regular legislative process or public service is not suited to perform the sort of policy in-depth analytical research, formulation, and critique often required. Commissions of inquiry and task forces can fulfil the efficiency imperative required in investigating disasters and crises where the regular public service may not be able. Old thinking conditioned by path dependency or bureaucratic inertia can be countered with a fresh analysis of the ideational landscape. Conversely, existing dominant ideas can be reinvigorated or defended by a commission of inquiry or task force expressly created to sustain the ideational status quo. The ability of commissions of inquiry and task forces to uncover the causes of issues, crises, and disasters and make recommendations free of the political ideology of a given government is inherently an important reason they are utilized. But so, too, is the imperative to confirm or legitimize the political ideology of a given government.

Drawing these conclusions is often dependent on the level of analysis. If a major oil spill results in a commission of inquiry, one level of analysis may be that the technological failures behind the disaster ought to be investigated. But a broader level of analysis might refer to questions about the dominant capitalist-driven reliance on fossil fuels that contribute to climate crisis. The ideational terrain therefore influences the decision to use commissions of inquiry and task forces as policy tools to investigate, how deeply, and from what perspective,

The nature of the policy also contributes to the idea to utilize commissions of inquiry and task forces instead of other policy tools. In a crisis (such as a pandemic), tragedy or disaster (human-induced or natural), or systemic institutional failure (as in the case of the National Inquiry into Murdered and Missing Indigenous Women and Girls in Canada), existing political and administrative institutions can unwittingly hinder a proper investigative process to address various types of crises (Schwartz and McConnell, 2009; Rena and Christensen, 2020). In summary, the idea to create commissions of inquiry and task forces instead of allowing the legislature or public service to do the same function depends on multiple factors, including the state of ideas in play.

Finally, the mere act of establishing commissions of inquiry and task forces creates an institution in which ideational contestation over policy, problem definition, agenda-setting, and policy solutions is brought into existence (Johns and Inwood, 2014). The fact that commissions of inquiry and task forces are often composed of members of the academic community, legal community, and various societal enterprises that are involved in determining which type of research and evidence to be considered in finding, reporting, and making recommendations are other ideational factors of importance.

Institutions

When the traditional institutions and avenues of policy change have been exhausted, or when governments want to project a sense of legitimacy, accountability, and transparency to the public, they often turn to commissions of inquiry and task forces. Institution here refers to the formal political system, which includes the constitution and federalism (in some countries) and the executive, legislative, and judicial branches of government. All these avenues of policy decision-making can be considered institutions. Similarly, in the context of decision-making, commissions of inquiry and task forces are considered temporary policy tools that exist alongside these other institutions. The formal institutions, primarily the executive branch, set the parameters for each commission of inquiry or task force. While the executive, legislative, and judicial branches

of government are the primary homes of policy decision-making, their inadequacies necessitate an alternative. Creating a commission of inquiry or task force opens up opportunities for the other traditional institutions to formulate and change policy in ways perhaps impossible otherwise to achieve.

The internal features of commissions of inquiry and task forces contain an array of administrative and political characteristics. They can be any size and duration, as the terms of reference, mandate, and scope are entirely determined by the government (Canada, PCO, 2022). The decision to create a commission of inquiry or task force is very much the product of deliberations by the executive, frequently driven at the national level by a prime minister or president and at the sub-national level by a premier or governor. The architecture of the actual policy tool is usually the product of internal deliberations involving cabinet and senior public servants. Whether the government is trying to use a commission of inquiry or task force as a political management tool to divert attention or a policy learning tool to innovate policy will determine its features (Mairer, 2009; Stark, 2019). For instance, if the government is trying to use a policy investigative commission of inquiry or task force as a delay and blame-shifting mechanism, the scope may be expansive to ensure that enough time is used up or the final report is not published until after an election. However, in investigative commissions of inquiry or task forces, the scope is likely to be narrow.

What should a commission of inquiry or task force look like? There is no one correct answer. Some are modest affairs with a single chairperson, small staff, and modest budget. Others are comparatively speaking gargantuan affairs, with as many as 20 commissioners, an army-size staff and truckloads of financial resources. Overall, the size of the commission, staff, mandate, and financial resources is determined by the issue at hand and the extent to which it is politicized. The size also varies around the world; for instance, in the UK, the size can range from one to twenty commissioners, with an average membership of ten (Lauriat, 2010: 12). In Canada, many one-person commissions have been created while the largest was composed of thirteen commissioners (Inwood and Johns, 2014).

Actors

Actors refer to all state political, administrative, and societal policy actors. Political actors refer to the presidents, prime minister, governors, premiers, cabinet ministers, and political staff. Administrative actors include the public service. Societal actors include all types of stakeholders that are interested in shaping public policy or holding government accountable, including individuals, interest groups, social movements, unions, academics, experts, the public, and the media (Inwood and Johns, 2016: 387). All the actors both contribute to and have a stake in the successes or failures, recommendations, and overall outcomes of commissions of inquiry and task forces.

Besides the state actors that ordered the commission of inquiry or task force, the actors conducting it are also influential. Who the chairperson, commissioners, staff, and researchers are has a profound impact. Being human, they all bring their biases and prejudices to the substantive issue under investigation (Lauriat, 2010: 12). The chairperson and commissioners are historically from a small pool of elite communities such as judges, retired cabinet members, or prominent business people, and this has not changed over time (Lauriat, 2010:13). The staff who serve administrative functions are usually seconded from law firms, academia, or various private sectors along with public servants (Johns and Inwood, 2014: 37).

As noted earlier, the creation of commissions of inquiry and task forces is determined by actors in the executive institutions of government. But once established, their work is potentially

subject to the influence of a large body of other actors. Contestation over the terms of reference, size, duration, and staffing is a process largely internal to the government amongst political and administrative actors. Subsequent contestation over the scope of the investigative aspects of the commission of inquiry or task force is a two-headed process. First, contestation occurs within the commission of inquiry or task force itself as the commissioner(s), staff, and expert advisors jockey for influence and the ability to place their stamp on the process. According to Barbara Lauriat, the chair and other commissioners (if there are more than one) and the staff members profoundly impact all aspects of the proceedings and are likely to bring their biases and prejudice to the substantive issues under consideration (Lauriat, 2010: 12).

Second, contestation occurs externally as societal actors seek access to the commission of inquiry or task force and attempt to impress their views upon its key decision-makers. The extent of these actors' influence is often conditioned by the rules of the game; some commissions of inquiry and task forces are broadly consultative and allow for numerous expressions of interest to be heard. Others are more selective.

Relations

Both formal and informal relations affect commissions of inquiry and task forces, like many other political/policy tools, including in their establishment. The formal relations flow from the initial choice to use these policy instruments outlined under the legislation that grants them authority, but also in the terms of reference that outline the scope, mandate, and relations that will formally underpin a commission of inquiry or task force.

Informal relations also matter. For instance, some are launched because of the personal relationship between political actors, who may know well each other's policy proclivities, or between state and non-state actors who are ideologically aligned. Given that the head of the executive branch is primarily responsible for determining the need for and the personnel at the top of commissions of inquiry or task forces, this is not surprising; good relations are often a precondition of the choices made by heads of government. In addition, the relationship between the commissioner(s) and the staff/researchers is also of significance. Some are smooth and collegial; others are plagued by virtual civil war (Inwood and Johns, 2016: 396).

Furthermore, policy entrepreneurs within the commission of inquiry or task force and how they relate to others are also factors that affect their outcome and the probability of policy change. Policy entrepreneurs who take the policy window of opportunity of commissions of inquiry or task forces to peddle their agenda and attempt to influence its direction toward their policy interest must be aware that others may have different designs. The art of managing and massaging relations, therefore, can be very significant and involve commissioners, staff, researchers, and/or various interest groups and policy networks involved in the process. Relations definitely matter related to commissions of inquiry and task forces as policy tools (Inwood and Johns, 2014).

Conclusion

Australian professor Scott Prasser argues that hardly a day passes in Australia without a public inquiry or royal commission being appointed, a report being released, or someone calling for an inquiry (Prasser, 2021). The same could be said in virtually every country where these policy tools are employed. Commissions of inquiry and task forces are commonly used yet unique as tools in government's policy toolbox (Howlett et al., 2009). Used for centuries, they remain available for governments of all political ideologies. They appeal to political leaders and decision-makers due to their ability to result in action, inaction, and everything in between.

For as long as governments have been using commissions of inquiry and task forces as policy tools, they have been assessed as having both strengths and weaknesses inherent to their features but also in comparison to other policy tools covered in this book. They are assessed by some as legitimate tools for in-depth research, analysis, wisdom, judgment, and recommendations; in the context of representative democratic policy making institutions with withering legitimacy, they often lend cache to governments apparently bereft of policy options. But they have also long been criticized as being expensive, difficult to control, too lengthy, too slow, elitist, and ineffective except as tools for delaying, obfuscating, or avoiding policy decisions and actions.

Notwithstanding whether one loves, hates, or is indifferent to commissions of inquiry and task forces, they have endured. On balance, they are viewed as a choice of policy tools for generating policy recommendations for policy change. They remain policy tools that bring state and societal actors and interests together to attempt to collectively understand, analyze, address, and design better policy approaches and solutions. They are tools that embrace the complexity of policy issues and bring together key elements of policy formulation: ideas, institutions, actors, and relations. Commissions of inquiry and task forces are likely to remain important and appealing as policymakers grapple with the increasing complexity of many policy issues.

In a policy context where evidence, facts, equity, and values are increasingly important and where representative democracies continue to see their legitimacy challenges and deliberative forms of democracy viewed as superior and necessary, commissions of inquiry and task forces may become even more important policy tools. They speak to the classic definition of policy as government action and inaction as unique, temporary policy tools. They are often a response to crisis, function for a set and brief period, and terminate on a predetermined schedule. Consequently, they can provide governments with the rationale to take action or the rationale to avoid it, all the while acting at the behest of the executive branch and largely avoiding the scrutiny of legislatures. This chapter has examined the general nature and purpose of commissions of inquiry and task forces as policy tools and their contribution to the policy process, using an analytical framework of ideas, institutions, actors, and relations. Crisis, scandal, and revelation will always be with us; so, too, apparently, will commissions of inquiry and task forces.

References

Aucoin, Peter. 1987. "Royal Commissions and Task Forces as Mechanisms of Program Review." *The Canadian Journal of Program Evaluation*, 2(2) (Fall): 1.

Bashevkin, Sylvia. 1988. "Does Public Opinion Matter? The Adoption of Federal Royal Commission and Task Force Recommendations on the National Question, 1951–1987." *Canadian Public Administration*, 31(3), 390–407.

Bradford, Neil. 1999/2000. "Writing Public Philosophy: Canada's Royal Commissions on Everything," *Journal of Canadian Studies*, 34, 4 (Winter), 136–167.

Canada, Privy Council Office, 2022. About Commissions of Inquiry. https://www.canada.ca/en/privy-council/services/commissions-inquiry/about.html

Clark, Ian D. and David Trick. 2006. "Advising for Impact: Lessons from the Rae Review on the Use of Special Purpose Advisory Commissions." *Canadian Public Administration*, 49, 2 (June), 180–195.

Congressional Research Service. 2021. Congressional Commissions: Overview and Considerations for Congress. https://fas.org/sgp/crs/misc/R40076.pdf

Courtney, John C. 1969. "In Defence of Royal Commissions." *Canadian Public Administration*. 12, 2 (Fall), 198–212.

Craft, Jonathan and John Halligan. 2017. "Assessing 30 Years of Westminster Policy Advisory System Experience." *Policy Sciences*, 50(1), 47–62.

Doern, G. Bruce. 1967. "The Role of Royal Commissions in the General Policy Process and in Federal-Provincial Relations." *Canadian Public Administration*, 10, 4 (December), 405–523.

d'Ombrain, Nicholas. 1997. "Public Inquiries in Canada." *Canadian Public Administration*, 40 1 (Spring), 86–107.

Drache, Daniel and Duncan Cameron. 1985. *The Other Macdonald Report: The Consensus on Canada's Future That the Macdonald Commission Left Out*. Toronto: James Lorimer.

Eburn, Michael and Stephen Dovers. 2015. "Learning Lessons from Disasters: Alternatives to Royal Commissions and Other Quasi-Judicial Inquiries." *Australian Journal of Public Administration*, 74(4), 495–508.

Ferguson, Barry and Robert Wardaugh. 2003. "'Impossible Conditions of Inequality': John W. Dafoe, the Rowell-Sirois Royal Commission, and the Interpretation of Canadian Federalism." *Canadian Historical Review*, 84, 4 (December), 551–583.

Gilligan, George. 2002. "Royal Commissions of Inquiry." *Australian and New Zealand Journal of Criminology*, 35(3), 289–307.

Gorecki, Paul K. and W.T. Stanbury, eds. 1979. *Perspectives on the Royal Commission on Corporate Concentration*. Toronto: Butterworths.

Government of Canada. 2017. Fact Sheet on Inquiries. www.rcaanc-cirnac.gc.ca/eng/1451952560307/1534527794601

Hodgetts, J.E. 1949. "Royal Commissions of Inquiry in Canada." *Public Administration Review*, 8(4), 22–29.

Hodgetts, J.E. 1952. "The Role of Royal Commissions in Canadian Government." *Proceedings of the Third Annual Conference of the Institute of Public Administration of Canada, 1951*: 351–376.

Hodgetts, J.E. 1966. "The Role of Royal Commissions in Canadian Government." In J.E. Hodgetts and D.C. Corbett, eds. *Canadian Public Administration: A Book of Readings*. Toronto: Macmillan, 471–483.

Howlett, Michael, Anthony Perl and M. Ramesh. 2009. *Studying Public Policy: Policy Cycles and Policy Subsystems*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.

Inwood, Gregory J. 2005. *Continentalizing Canada: The Politics and Legacy of the Macdonald Royal Commission*. Toronto: University of Toronto Press.

Inwood, Gregory J. and Carolyn M. Johns. 2014. "Why Study Commissions of Inquiry?" In *Commissions of Inquiry and Policy Change*. Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1–19.

Inwood, Gregory J. and Carolyn M. Johns. 2016. "Commissions of Inquiry and Policy Change: Comparative Analysis and Future Research Frontiers: Commissions of Inquiry and Policy Change." *Canadian Public Administration*, 59(3), 382–404.

Jenson, Jane. 1994. "Commissioning Ideas: Representation and Royal Commissions." In Susan Phillips, ed. *How Ottawa Spends 1994–95: Making Change*. Ottawa: Carleton University Press, 39–69.

Johns, Carolyn M. and Gregory J. Inwood. 2014. "Theories of Policy Change and a Four-Part Theoretical Framework for Comparative Analysis." In *Commissions of Inquiry and Policy Change*. Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 20–48.

Johns, Carolyn M. and Gregory J. Inwood. 2018. "Commissions of Inquiry and Policy Analysis." in *Policy Analysis in Canada*, Laurent Dobuzinskis and Michael Howlett, eds. Policy Press Scholarship Online, 233.

Lauriat, Barbara. 2010. "'The Examination of Everything': Royal Commissions in British Legal History." *Statute Law Review*, 31, 24–46.

Litt, Paul. 1992. *The Muses, the Masses and the Massey Commission*. Toronto: University of Toronto Press.

Macdonald, Roderick Alexander. 2011. *An Analysis of the Forms and Functions of Independent Commissions of Inquiry (Royal Commission) in Canada*. Montreal: McGill Faculty of Law.

Manson, Allan and David Mullan, eds. 2003. *Commissions of Inquiry: Praise or Reappraise?* Toronto: Irwin Law.

Marier, Patrik. 2009. "The Power of Institutionalized Learning: The Uses and Practices of Commissions to Generate Policy Change." *Journal of European Public Policy*, 16(8), 1204–1223.

Prasser, Scott. 1985. "Public Inquiries in Australia: An Overview." *Australian Journal of Public Administration*, 44(1), 1–5.

Prasser, Scott. 1990. "The Fate of Inquiries: Will Fitzgerald be Different?" In S. Prasser, R. Wear and J. Nethercote, eds. *Corruption and Reform: The Fitzgerald Vision*. St Lucia: University of Queensland Press, 98–122.

Prasser, Scott. 1994. "Royal Commissions and Public Inquiries: Scope and Uses." In P. Weller, ed. *Royal Commissions and the Making of Public Policy*. Melbourne: Macmillan, 1–21 and 267–287.

Prasser, Scott. 2021. Public Inquiries: An In-Depth History. www.publicinquiries.com.au/indepth_history.htm [Accessed August 11, 2021].

Pross, A. Paul, Innis Christie and John A. Yogis, eds. 1990. *Commissions of Inquiry*. Toronto: Carswell.

Ratushny, ed. 2009. *The Conduct of Public Inquiries: Law, Policy, and Practice*. Toronto: Irwin Law.

Renå, Helge and Johan Christensen. 2020. "Learning from Crisis: The Role of Enquiry Commissions." *Journal of Contingencies and Crisis Management*, 28(1), 41–49.

Rowe, Mike and Laura McAllister. 2006. "The Roles of Commissions of Inquiry in the Policy Process." *Public Policy and Administration*, 21(4), 99–115.

Scala, Francesca. 2008. "Feminist Ideals vs. Bureaucratic Norms: The Case of Feminist Researchers and the Royal Commission on New Reproductive Technologies." In Yasmeen Abu-Laden, ed. *Gendering the Nation-State: Canadian and Comparative Perspectives*. Vancouver: UBC Press.

Schwartz, Bryan. 1997. "Public Inquiries." *Canadian Public Administration*, 40, 1 (Spring), 72–85.

Schwartz, Robert and Allan McConnell. 2009. "Do Crises Help Remedy Regulatory Failure? A Comparative Study of the Walkerton Water and Jerusalem Banquet Hall Disasters." *Canadian Public Administration*, 52(1), 91–112.

Stark, Alastair. 2019. "Policy Learning and the Public Inquiry." *Policy Sciences*, 52(3), 397–417.

Stutz, Jeffrey R. 2008. "What Gets Done and Why: Implementing the Recommendations of Public Inquiries." *Canadian Public Administration*, 51(3), 501–521.

Timpson, Annis May. 1999. "Royal Commissions as Sites of Resistance: Women's Challenges on Child Care in the Royal Commission on the Status of Women." *International Journal of Canadian Studies*, 20, 123–148.

Walls, C.E.S. 1969. "Royal Commissions: Their Influence on Public Policy." *Canadian Public Administration*, 12 (Fall), 365–371.

Wherrett, Jill. 1995. "The Research Agenda of the Royal Commission on Aboriginal Peoples." *Canadian Public Administration*, 38, 2 (Summer), 272–282.

18

COLLABORATION AS A POLICY TOOL IN THE POLICY PROCESS

Saba Siddiki, Jonathan E. Beagles and Nicholas Oesterling

Collaborative forms of governance are increasingly recognized and studied as important features of modern public policy processes. Collaborative governance is akin to traditionally conceived policy tools (e.g., regulation, taxation, information dissemination) insofar as it is a mechanism through which governments pursue policy-relevant actions toward the attainment of public goals. In this chapter, we present collaborative governance as a policy tool, identifying (1) factors that contribute to its engagement in policymaking, (2) ways it is structured through public policy, and (3) ways that collaborative governance manifests following its engagement and design, as well as factors contributing to sustained collaboration and collaboration efficacy. In doing so, we showcase how collaborative governance as a policy tool situates in different stages of the public policy process.

Introduction

Questions of how governments address public problems and deliver public goods and services are central to the study of public policy. Fundamentally, these "how" questions are aimed at furthering understanding of the tools with which governments do their work in accordance with broader policy objectives. Over the last several decades, policy scholars have dedicated substantial attention to the study of policy tools, contributing important insights about generic types of tools predominantly used by governments (Salamon 2002), factors informing tool choice (Linder and Peters 1989), and the behavioral assumptions associated with different types of policy tools (Schneider and Ingram 1990), among other topics. As policy practice has evolved, scholarship on policy tools has expanded to capture the widening array of tools deliberated, designed, and engaged in various stages of the policy-making process.

In the 1990s and into the early 2000s, scholarship on policy tools underwent a notable shift in reaction to growing recognition of governments' reliance on networks of public and private policy stakeholders in policy formulation and implementation (Howlett 2014). Policy scholars turned their attention to understanding increasingly "networked" or "collaborative" forms of governance in the context of which policymakers were seen less as directing and deciding on policy and more as steering processes in which multiple stakeholders were interacting to deliberate what governments should do and how they should do it (Ansell and Torfing 2016).

 DOI: 10.4324/9781003163954-22

As research on collaborative governance has developed since this time, policy scholars have contributed important insights regarding conditions under which collaborative governance is engaged in the public policy process, how collaborative governance is structured through public policies, and how collaborative governance manifests once it is decidedly engaged and described through public policies. Further, this research also highlights factors that contribute to sustained collaboration and factors that enable collaborative success. In this chapter, we draw on extant research on collaborative governance to discuss each of these topics while positioning collaborative governance as a kind of policy tool.

Engaging Collaboration as a Policy Tool in the Public Policy Process

Collaborative governance has previously, and aptly, been described by Scott and Thomas (2017) as a toolbox collectively utilized and employed by multiple policy actors to achieve desired policy goals. These goals can range from improving the quality of policy outputs to increasing policy actor or action legitimacy, achieving economies of scale in public service provision, bridging hierarchies, and/or expanding the diversity of issues to which governments can respond.

The decision to collaborate, and the form a collaborative governance arrangement takes, are often responses to the perceived nature of wicked public problems and the complex system environment in which actors are embedded. Scholars describe these environments in various ways. Yet there appears to be general agreement regarding the importance of five broad types of conditions on the initiation and design of collaborative processes (Bryson, Crosby, and Stone 2006, 2015; Emerson and Nabatchi 2015). These types of conditions are described next.

Resource and Service Conditions

The condition(s) of the resources and/or services present within the environment of potential collaborators can serve as a baseline from which decisions to collaborate are made. Resource conditions broadly encompass natural resources or human-made resources. Service conditions refer to the scope, distribution, and quality of publicly sponsored provisionary and assurance endeavors for citizen well-being, such as the provision of public education, public regulation of health and financial services, and welfare assistance. Shifts in the quantity and/or quality of these resources and services can often prompt policy actors to target them for collaborative efforts, where the latter are intended to improve quality or to expand or limit resource access (Emerson and Nabatchi 2015; Bryson, Crosby, and Stone 2006; Ostrom 1990). However, the nature and specific type of resource or service, as well as its jurisdictional domain, may constrain who is motivated to come to the table, who can come to the table, and who even knows the table exists.

Institutions

Another factor influencing the decision to collaborate, as well as the trajectory of collaborative policy design and implementation, is the institutional framework in which policy actors are embedded. Institutions (defined here as formal and informal rules) can either facilitate collaboration by placing actors in close proximity during the policy process or act as barriers or obstacles to collaboration through jurisdictional, informational, or social divisors. Examples of this institutional factor bringing potential collaborators into closer proximity include the Administrative Procedure Act's (APA) requirements regarding public participation and stakeholder awareness (Bingham, Nabatchi, and O'Leary 2005) and budgetary rules imposed by a bureaucratic agency that incentivize stakeholders to collaborate and reach consensus in order to take advantage of

available funds (Doberstein 2016). Alternatively, institutional frameworks such as transparency requirements can also inhibit collaboration, as Amsler (2016) suggests, by preventing potential collaborators from obtaining the confidentiality necessary to work together and/or build trust. Rules such as those for agenda-setting and modification can constrain dialogue between individuals or groups, thereby potentially inhibiting collaboration (Amsler 2016).

Political Dimensions and Power Relations

Collaboration is largely about relationships. The power dynamics introduced by an existing system environment into these relationships can, and frequently do, influence considerations regarding the need for collaboration as well as the form a collaborative governance arrangement takes. Politics can often introduce power relations and potentially power imbalances into the collaborative environment, particularly through chains of principal-agent relationships such as between elected legislators and citizens (Epstein and O'Halloran 1999; Waterman and Meier 1998), legislators and bureaucrats (Weingast 1984; Miller 2005), and bureaucrats and non-government contractors (Milward and Provan 2000, 2003). However, unequal distributions of power can also result from resource conditions such as property rights (Ostrom 2005; Agrawal and Ostrom 2001) and resource availability and dependency (Purdy 2012; Casciaro and Piskorski 2005), as well as population characteristics such as income inequality (Dobbin and Lubell 2021; Bryson, Crosby, and Seo 2020) and social inclusion or exclusion (Ansell and Gash 2008; Newman et al. 2004).

Social Connectedness, Trust, and Legitimacy

In addition to the political and/or power dynamics at play, the policy system environment can also have pre-existing socially and perceptually based factors encapsulated as actor history, trust, and legitimacy that can either catalyze or stymie a collaboration. For example, past cooperation or conflicts between potential collaborators in the policy environment can either facilitate or hinder collaboration through effects on trust and the perceived legitimacy of working with other actors (Ansell and Gash 2008; Emerson and Nabatchi 2015). This is important because the opportunity to legitimize not only oneself and/or one's collaboration, but also one's goal or desired state of being (e.g., for a resource/service condition) can give weight to an actor's decision to collaborate (O'Leary and Vij 2012; Chen 2010; Bryson, Crosby, and Stone 2006). Moreover, higher degrees of trust can make the decision to work together easier, thereby serving as a facilitating factor in the decision to engage in collaborative governance (Huxham et al. 2000; Ansell and Gash 2008; Emerson and Nabatchi 2015; Siddiki, Kim, and Leach 2017).

Problem-centric Drivers

Finally, decisions to collaborate in policy creation and implementation are not typically straightforward or binary. They are choices about how much to invest in constructing, deploying, or engaging in a collaborative governance arrangement as a policy response to a specific problem or set of problems bearing particular characteristics. Therefore, the specific characteristics of the problem are also important in influencing the form a collaborative governance arrangement takes. In their synthesis of public policy and management literature, Scott and Thomas (2017) identify several possible paths through which problem identification and understanding translate into policy formulation and the form of collaboration adopted. Prominent among these are the uncertainty regarding the problem and how to address it, the interdependence among actors

affected by and/or responding to the problem, the consequential incentives for potential policy collaborators in working together to address the problem, and the ability of leadership to initiate and guide the collaborative effort as it is adopted (Emerson, Nabatchi, and Balogh 2012).

Designing Collaboration as a Policy Tool in the Public Policy Process

The preceding section highlights factors that contribute to collaborative forms of governance and is guided by the general position that collaborative governance is a kind of policy tool engaged in the policy process. In this section, we review literature that addresses how collaborative governance is designed through public policies. While collaborative governance can take many forms, as further described in the following section, there are specific instances in which it is formally codified through public policies. Recognizing them as formal entities of governance – that is, as formal kinds of policy tools – policies identify participants in collaborative governance arrangements, delineate the array of activities that occur among them, structure decision-making processes, and essentially lay out the goals of collaborations.

Much of the research published to date that examines how policies structure collaborative governance is informed by institutional theories and frameworks, such as the institutional analysis and development framework (Ostrom 2005), common-pool resource theory (Ostrom 1990), and the ecology of games framework (Lubell 2013). In each of these theories and frameworks, attention is paid to the way that rules (generally conceived of in terms of "institutions") structure collective action engaged in some aspect of governance. A central question on which this research orients is "How are institutions that govern collaborative venues and processes designed?"

According to Ansell and Gash (2008), who define institutions as the basic protocols and ground rules for collaboration, the design of institutions matters insofar as it is through institutions that conveners of collaboration specify who will be included therein. Other scholars have specifically sought to investigate this feature of institutional design (Koski et al. 2018; Siddiki et al. 2015). Both Siddiki et al. (2015) and Koski et al. (2018) analyze policy mandates that structure collaborative arrangements engaged in food system governance to understand how they instruct the composition of stakeholders involved in them. Drawing on this assessment of policies and stakeholder composition expressed therein, they seek to understand how mandated stakeholder participation materializes in practice, as well as how patterns in stakeholder composition associate with the performance of food system collaboratives.

Beyond stakeholder composition, scholars have also been interested in understanding how institutions structure the processes through which participants interact within collaborative governance arrangements. Referencing the treatment of institutions within the ecology of games framework, Lubell (2013) notes, "Policy institutions consist of sets of formal and informal norms that structure how actors make collective decisions about the 'operational' rules governing on-the-ground decisions about particular policy issues, such as appropriation of resources and provision of public goods" (Ostrom 1990). Institutions are thus recognized for specifying decision-making protocols as well as for enabling and constraining actions of participants interacting within collaborative arrangements. Olivier (2019) demonstrates how to analyze "networks of prescribed interactions" embedded in the design of institutions governing collaborative arrangements involved in water quality management. His analytical approach allows him to assess how responsibilities germane to the collaboration are distributed across participants. Complementing Olivier's work, Herzog, Ingold, and Schlager (2021) empirically compare networks of prescribed interactions and perceptions of how participants actually interact within collaborative arrangements.

Finally, beyond defining stakeholders, decision-making processes, and prescribed actions, scholars note the important role that institutions play in structuring the goals of collaborative governance arrangements. In their study of food system collaboratives, Siddiki et al. (2015) also evaluate how policy mandates governing these groups articulate collaboration intent.

Altogether, the research highlighted in this section describes the various ways that collaboration is structured through public policies once it is selected as a policy tool with which to address a public problem.

Realizing and Sustaining Collaboration in the Public Policy Process

Having discussed factors that enable the engagement of collaborative governance as a policy tool in the policy process and how policies are used to structure it once it is selected as a policy tool, in this section, we turn to discussing how collaboration materializes in the policy process and factors contributing to its sustainability and efficacy. Attention to the latter is important because while the contours of collaboration are often outlined in public policies – in terms of participants, scope of activities, decision-making processes, and goals – the outcomes of collaboration are far from determined (Vangen, Hayes, and Cornforth 2015). Rather, studies suggest that even when collaborative arrangements are similarly designed, the processes observed within them (Bell and Scott 2020) and their results (Scott 2015) vary.

While collaboration takes many forms and scholars differentiate between them in several ways, distinctions are largely based on the time and resource commitments of the participants and the extent to which organizations adapt their internal goals and structures to fit within the larger whole. In an early study, Mandell and Steelman (2003) differentiate between four forms of collaboration, ranging from intermittent coordination, as in the case of disaster response, to coalitions and networks in which participants are involved in long-term, interdependent, and strategic action. Yet even within network forms of collaboration, there are differences in the extent to which participants are interdependent. On the one hand, there are networks with limited interdependence – where participants primarily share information – and on the other are action networks – where participants are collectively engaged in formally adopted network-level courses of action (Mcguire 2006).

For collaboration to work, managers must address several challenges – some of which are understood during the policy design process, others that are not. One set of issues is related to the division and allocation of tasks and their coordination (Kenis and Raab 2020). Another is related to what Emerson, Nabatchi, and Balogh (2012) refer to as "shared motivation." To implement policy, collaborative public managers must overcome power asymmetries to build trust (Ran and Qi 2019; Vermeiren, Raeymaeckers, and Beagles 2021), develop a common understanding of how to balance the unity/diversity tension (Saz-Carranza and Ospina 2011; Vangen and Winchester 2014), create a shared identity (Mandell, Keast, and Chamberlain 2017), and secure ongoing commitment and the contribution of resources from stakeholders (Koliba, Zia, and Mills 2011; Lemaire and Provan 2018).

Scholars have identified several management strategies associated with positive collaborative outcomes – both in terms of outputs and the quality of relationships (Provan and Milward 2001; Smith 2020; Turrini et al. 2010; Varda, Shoup, and Miller 2012). Increasingly, however, collaborative management scholars are adopting the perspective that few if any of these strategies can be understood in isolation. Rather, they must be understood in combination with aspects of process, structure, and management practice, along with characteristics of the participants and their environment – the idea being that multiple combinations of factors can equally lead to successful collaboration (Ansell et al. 2020; Beagles 2021; Cepiku et al. 2021; Cristofoli, Trivellato,

and Verzillo 2019; Markovic 2017; Provan and Kenis 2008; Raab, Lemaire, and Provan 2013; Raab, Mannak, and Cambré 2015; Wang 2016).

Deliberative Forums, Participation, and Process

Deliberative forums are an important design choice engaged in collaborations to structure participation, cultivate relationships (Raeymaeckers and Kenis 2016; Scott and Thomas 2015), and foster principled engagement and shared motivation (Emerson, Nabatchi, and Balogh 2012). The contours of these are often specified in policy documents and can range from local community working groups to steering committees and the formal governance boards of coalitions and networks.

Although collaboration is considered a nonhierarchical form of organizing, studies find that the concept of vertical complexity is useful for understanding the different combinations of deliberative forums that exist (Vermeiren, Raeymaeckers, and Beagles 2021). Differences in combinations are found to be associated with the task of the collaboration (Beagles 2021; Iborra et al. 2018). They are used to balance tensions, such as tensions between inclusiveness and efficiency or autonomy and accountability (Provan and Kenis 2008; Vangen, Hayes, and Cornforth 2015), and can help balance the uneven distribution of power and build trust (Vermeiren, Raeymaeckers, and Beagles 2021). For example, Iborra et al. (2018) find that within collaborations, sanctioning authority is associated with more complex combinations of deliberative forums than those focused solely on rule-making.

While many of these forums are defined in policy documents and are the result of power dynamics (Saz-carranza, Iborra, and Albareda 2015), not all forums are prescribed nor must they all be activated. Rather, there is considerable opportunity for collaborative managers to activate and deactivate these forums as conditions change. For example, in their study of municipal family-service networks in Belgium, Vermeiren, Raeymaeckers, and Beagles (2021) find that collaborative managers in several collaborations established steering committees and working groups at different times in response to issues of mistrust and questioned legitimacy raised by participants. And, in their study of a neighborhood regeneration collaboration, Vangen, Hayes, and Cornforth (2015) observe how different collaborative forums outlined in the original policy design were allowed to go dormant after their usefulness had run its course.

Social Ties, Integration, and Governance

Because collaboration is considered a voluntary, nonhierarchical form of organizing, informal social structures rather than formal bureaucratic ones are thought to be especially important for understanding both the effectiveness of coordination and the development of shared motivation. Yet, to a large extent, these social structures cannot be prespecified in policy documents. Rather, they must be cultivated.

In terms of effectively coordinating the work of autonomous participants, studies recognize that there is no single best way to integrate collaborative activities. Rather, there are a series of more or less complementary goals that must be balanced (Provan and Kenis 2008; Vangen and Winchester 2014). And the collective work of autonomous organizations can be effectively integrated through both a sparse set of relationships centralized around a single or a few coordinators (Provan and Milward 1995; Raab, Mannak, and Cambré 2015) or through a dense set of relationships connecting a decentralized set of participants (Provan and Milward 1995; Wang 2016). However, several contextual factors seem to influence whether one or the other form of integration is effective – including the size of the collaboration (Beagles 2021; Wang 2016),

its resource munificence and stability (Provan and Milward 1995; Raab, Mannak, and Cambré 2015; Turrini et al. 2010; Wang 2016), and the nature of participants' mutual understanding.

Building on this perspective, network governance scholars describe three ideal forms of network coordination used within interorganizational collaboration – shared, lead organization, and network administrative organization (NAO) – and propose that each form is most effective within a distinct set of functional and social conditions (Provan and Kenis 2008). The shared form of coordination is the simplest and most decentralized, in which participants coordinate among themselves without the use of any centralized administration.

This form of coordination is thought to be most effective when there are few participants and a high density of trust and mutual understanding among them. The lead organization form of coordination, on the other hand, is considered the most centralized. It is a form of coordination in which one of the active participants in the collaboration takes responsibility not only for its own work but also for the activities of the collaboration as a whole. This form of coordination is thought to be most effective when there are a moderate number of participants and mutual understanding, with most of the trust focused on this central participant rather than among the participants themselves. The NAO form of coordination is the most complex. It is a centralized form of coordination. However, unlike a lead organization, the sole purpose of the NAO is to coordinate collective activities. It is thought to be able to handle the largest and most complex collaborations, and because it is governed by an external entity (Saz-carranza, Iborra, and Albareda 2015) or by a board of the participants, the need for dense or a highly centralized level of trust is moderated by both the neutrality of the coordinator and the greater potential for participatory group decision-making.

Collaborative Management and Orchestration

Regardless of the deliberative forums and coordination structure, an important role of collaborative management is building and maintaining trusting relationships and developing a shared motivation among collaborative participants more than formal oversight (Bartelings et al. 2017; McGuire 2006; Piatak et al. 2018). With this in mind, scholars have increasingly focused on the different types of relationships collaborative participants form, their effects, and the role collaborative managers have in developing and maintaining them. For example, studies find that rather than dense networks of asymmetrical relationships, sparse networks with a significant number of clustered, reciprocal relationships are associated with effective collaborations (Provan and Sebastian 1998; Ulibarri and Scott 2017; Yi 2017). Other studies find that these clusters of strong ties, especially when they include the central coordinator or other champions of the collaboration, improve goal congruence and the willingness of participants to contribute resources and effort (Lemaire 2020; Lemaire and Provan 2018).

However, again, the types of relationships and the role of the collaborative manager in these relationships seem to vary depending on the context. Paquin and Howard-Grenville (2013) find that a collaborative manager's orchestration role varies over time, depending on their resources and the needs of participants. In the case of the National Industrial Symbiosis Programme (NISP), the collaborative manager shifted roles from "encouraging serendipitous encounters between network members ('blind dates') to increasingly selecting members and more closely influencing their interactions ('arranging marriages')" (p. 163). Expanding on these findings, Cristofoli and colleagues (2019) find that while in young, densely connected networks, collaborative managers are perceived to be effective when focusing on stabilizing activities like building trust among participants, in more mature collaborations, effective managers move beyond a

stabilizing role to an orchestrating role and then to a networking role where new members are brought in – presumably based on the functional needs of the collaboration (Ansell et al. 2020). Other studies suggest that the culture developed within the collaboration is also important for understanding the types of relationships that are formed and found to be effective (Markovic 2017).

Policy Evaluation, Feedback, and Learning

Finally, in an age where performance management, impact, learning, and accountability are dominant values, collaboration is seen by many not only as a tool that supports attainment of particular policy goals, but also for (re)building social capital within a community. Because of this, there is interest in collaborative policy implementation as well as collaborative policy evaluation, feedback, and learning (Gray, Jenkins, and Leeuw 2017). Didham and Ofei-Manu (2020) provide a positive example of such when they describe how, together, cooperative inquiry, dialogue and deliberation, and knowledge co-production served to improve the monitoring and evaluation of an education for sustainable development program across seven countries: more specifically, how the process resulted in the perception that the system fit the needs of both national and international policymakers and the local educational districts.

Grounded in this line of research, evaluation scholars describe three broad functions of collaborative inquiry – accountability, learning, and transformation – and describe a set of evidence-based principles to guide choices in collaborative approaches (Cousins et al. 2020; Shulha et al. 2016). Differences in these approaches are described based on how they balance considerations, like control of technical decision-making, diversity of stakeholders involved in collaboration, and the depth of participation among stakeholders (Cousins et al. 2020; Vangen and Winchester 2014), with recent studies observing that some factors designed to promote intra-agency performance evaluation can actually undermine inter-agency collaboration (Choi and Moynihan 2019).

As a strategy for addressing these different performance management and learning needs and the tensions they create, Douglas and Ansell (2021) describe three general forms of performance regimes used in collaborations – each balancing considerations of collaborative inquiry differently – and argue for the creation of regular summits designed specifically for the needs and priorities of the collaboration, intentionally balancing the need for shared understanding with requests for commitment, adjustment, and resources.

Conclusion

This chapter presents collaborative governance as a kind of policy tool engaged in the policy process. The focus on collaboration reflects its ubiquity in scholarship and practice as a key mechanism through which governments pursue their work. The chapter identifies factors that contribute to the engagement of collaborative governance in policymaking, ways it is structured through public policy, and ways that collaborative governance manifests following its engagement and design, as well as factors contributing to sustained collaboration and collaboration efficacy. As policy scholars continue to study collaborative governance in the policy process, continued characterization of it as a policy tool may help situate collaborative governance within a more expansive array of policy literature. This, in turn, may facilitate the development of novel questions and insights about the antecedents, design, and efficacy of collaborative governance.

References

Agrawal, Arun, and Elinor Ostrom. "Collective action, property rights, and decentralization in resource use in India and Nepal." *Politics & Society* 29, no. 4 (2001): 485–514.

Amsler, Lisa Blomgren. "Collaborative governance: Integrating management, politics, and law." *Public Administration Review* 76, no. 5 (2016): 700–711.

Ansell, Chris, and Alison Gash. "Collaborative governance in theory and practice." *Journal of Public Administration Research and Theory* 18, no. 4 (2008): 543–571.

Ansell, Chris, and Jacob Torfing. "Introduction: Theories of governance." In *Handbook on theories of governance*. Northampton: Edward Elgar Publishing, 2016.

Ansell, Christopher, Carey Doberstein, Hayley Henderson, Saba Siddiki, and Paul 't Hart. "Understanding inclusion in collaborative governance: A mixed methods approach." *Policy and Society* 39, no. 4 (2020): 570–591.

Bartelings, Jan A., John Goedee, Jörg Raab, and Remco Bijl. "The nature of orchestrational work." *Public Management Review* 19, no. 3 (2017): 342–360.

Beagles, Jonathan E. "Humanitarian INGO governance arrangements and forms of coordination." *Nonprofit Management and Leadership* (2021): 1–22. https://doi.org/10.1002/nml.21482.

Bell, Emily, and Tyler A. Scott. "Common institutional design, divergent results: A comparative case study of collaborative governance platforms for regional water planning." *Environmental Science & Policy* 111 (2020): 63–73.

Bingham, Lisa Blomgren, Tina Nabatchi, and Rosemary O'Leary. "The new governance: Practices and processes for stakeholder and citizen participation in the work of government." *Public Administration Review* 65, no. 5 (2005): 547–558.

Bryson, John M., Barbara C. Crosby, and Danbi Seo. "Using a design approach to create collaborative governance." *Policy & Politics* 48, no. 1 (2020): 167–189.

Bryson, John M., Barbara C. Crosby, and Melissa Middleton Stone. "The design and implementation of cross-sector collaborations: Propositions from the literature." *Public Administration Review* 66 (2006): 44–55.

Bryson, John M., Barbara C. Crosby, and Melissa Middleton Stone. "Designing and implementing cross-sector collaborations: Needed and challenging." *Public Administration Review* 75, no. 5 (2015): 647–663.

Casciaro, T., & Piskorski, M. J. "Power imbalance, mutual dependence, and constraint absorption: A closer look at resource dependence theory." *Administrative Science Quarterly* 50, no. 2 (2005): 167–199.

Cepiku, Denita, Filippo Giordano, Marco Mastrodascio, and Weijie Wang. "What drives network effectiveness? A configurational approach." *Public Management Review* 23, no. 10 (2021): 1479–1503.

Chen, Bin. "Antecedents or processes? Determinants of perceived effectiveness of interorganizational collaborations for public service delivery." *International Public Management Journal* 13, no. 4 (2010): 381–407.

Choi, Iseul, and Donald Moynihan. "How to foster collaborative performance management? Key factors in the US federal agencies." *Public Management Review* 21, no. 10 (2019): 1538–1559.

Cousins, J. Bradley, Lyn Shulha, Elizabeth Whitmore, H. A. Hudib, and Nathalie Gilbert. "Situating evidence-based principles to guide practice in Collaborative Approaches to Evaluation (CAE)." In *Collaborative approaches to evaluation: Principles in use*. Thousand Oaks: SAGE Publications, 2020.

Cristofoli, Daniela, Benedetta Trivellato, and Stefano Verzillo. "Network management as a contingent activity: A configurational analysis of managerial behaviors in different network settings." *Public Management Review* 21, no. 12 (2019): 1775–1800.

Didham, Robert J., and Paul Ofei-Manu. "Facilitating collaborative partnerships in education policy research: A case of multi-stakeholder, co-investigation for monitoring and evaluation of education for sustainable development." *Sustainability* 12, no. 7 (2020): 2787.

Dobbin, Kristin B., and Mark Lubell. "Collaborative governance and environmental justice: Disadvantaged community representation in California sustainable groundwater management." *Policy Studies Journal* 49, no. 2 (2021): 562–590.

Doberstein, Carey. "Designing collaborative governance decision-making in search of a 'collaborative advantage'." *Public Management Review* 18, no. 6 (2016): 819–841.

Douglas, Scott, and Chris Ansell. "Getting a grip on the performance of collaborations: Examining collaborative performance regimes and collaborative performance summits." *Public Administration Review* 81, no. 5 (2021): 951–961.

Emerson, Kirk, and Tina Nabatchi. *Collaborative governance regimes*. Washington, DC: Georgetown University Press, 2015.

Emerson, Kirk, Tina Nabatchi, and Stephen Balogh. "An integrative framework for collaborative governance." *Journal of Public Administration Research and Rheory* 22, no. 1 (2012): 1–29.

Epstein, David, and Sharyn O'Halloran. *A transaction cost politics approach to policy making under separate powers*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1999.

Gray, Andrew, Bill Jenkins, and Frans Leeuw. "Collaborative government and evaluation: The implications of a new policy instrument." In *The challenge for evaluation*, pp. 1–28. Abingdon, UK: Routledge, 2017.

Herzog, Laura, Karin Ingold, and Edella Schlager. "Prescribed by law and therefore realized? Analyzing rules and their implied actor interactions as networks." *Policy Studies Journal* (2021).

Howlett, Michael. "From the 'old' to the 'new' policy design: Design thinking beyond markets and collaborative governance." *Policy Sciences* 47, no. 3 (2014): 187–207.

Huxham, Chris, Siv Vangen, Christine Huxham, and Colin Eden. "The challenge of collaborative governance." *Public Management an International Journal of Research and Theory* 2, no. 3 (2000): 337–358.

Iborra, Susanna Salvador, Angel Saz-Carranza, Xavier Fernández-i-Marín, and Adrià Albareda. "The governance of goal-directed networks and network tasks: An empirical analysis of European regulatory networks." *Journal of Public Administration Research and Theory* 28, no. 2 (2018): 270–292.

Kenis, Patrick, and Jörg Raab. "Back to the future: Using organization design theory for effective organizational networks." *Perspectives on Public Management and Governance* 3, no. 2 (2020): 109–123.

Koliba, Christopher J., Asim Zia, and Russell M. Mills. "Accountability in governance networks: An assessment of public, private, and nonprofit emergency management practices following Hurricane Katrina." *Public Administration Review* 71, no. 2 (2011): 210–220.

Koski, Chris, Saba Siddiki, Abdul-Akeem Sadiq, and Julia Carboni. "Representation in collaborative governance: A case study of a food policy council." *The American Review of Public Administration* 48, no. 4 (2018): 359–373.

Lemaire, Robin H. "What is our purpose here? Network relationships and goal congruence in a goal-directed network." *The American Review of Public Administration* 50, no. 2 (2020): 176–192.

Lemaire, Robin H., and Keith G. Provan. "Managing collaborative effort: How Simmelian ties advance public sector networks." *The American Review of Public Administration* 48, no. 5 (2018): 379–394.

Linder, Stephen H., and B. Guy Peters. "Instruments of government: Perceptions and contexts." *Journal of Public Policy* 9, no. 1 (1989): 35–58.

Lubell, Mark. "Governing institutional complexity: The ecology of games framework." *Policy Studies Journal* 41, no. 3 (2013): 537–559.

Mandell, Myrna, Robyn Keast, and Dan Chamberlain. "Collaborative networks and the need for a new management language." *Public Management Review* 19, no. 3 (2017): 326–341.

Mandell, Myrna, and Toddi Steelman. "Understanding what can be accomplished through interorganizational innovations the importance of typologies, context and management strategies." *Public Management Review* 5, no. 2 (2003): 197–224.

Markovic, Josip. "Contingencies and organizing principles in public networks." *Public Management Review* 19, no. 3 (2017): 361–380.

McGuire, Michael. "Collaborative public management: Assessing what we know and how we know it." *Public Administration Review* 66 (2006): 33–43.

Miller, Gary J. "The political evolution of principal-agent models." *Annual Review of Political Science.* 8 (2005): 203–225.

Milward, H. Brinton, and Keith G. Provan. "Governing the hollow state." *Journal of Public Administration Research and Theory* 10, no. 2 (2000): 359–380.

Milward, H. Brinton, and Keith Provan. "Managing the hollow state collaboration and contracting." *Public Management Review* 5, no. 1 (2003): 1–18.

Newman, Janet, Marian Barnes, Helen Sullivan, and Andrew Knops. "Public participation and collaborative governance." *Journal of Social Policy* 33, no. 2 (2004): 203–223.

O'leary, Rosemary, and Nidhi Vij. "Collaborative public management: Where have we been and where are we going?" *The American Review of Public Administration* 42, no. 5 (2012): 507–522.

Olivier, Tomás. "How do institutions address collective-action problems? Bridging and bonding in institutional design." *Political Research Quarterly* 72, no. 1 (2019): 162–176.

Ostrom, Elinor. *Governing the commons: The evolution of institutions for collective action*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1990.

Ostrom, Elinor. *Understanding institutional diversity*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 2005.

Paquin, Raymond L., and Jennifer Howard-Grenville. "Blind dates and arranged marriages: Longitudinal processes of network orchestration." *Organization Studies* 34, no. 11 (2013): 1623–1653.

Piatak, Jaclyn, Barbara Romzek, Kelly LeRoux, and Jocelyn Johnston. "Managing goal conflict in public service delivery networks: Does accountability move up and down, or side to side?" *Public Performance & Management Review* 41, no. 1 (2018): 152–176.

Provan, Keith G., and Patrick Kenis. "Modes of network governance: Structure, management, and effectiveness." *Journal of Public Administration Research and Theory* 18, no. 2 (2008): 229–252.

Provan, Keith G., and H. Brinton Milward. "A preliminary theory of interorganizational network effectiveness." *Human Services as Complex Organizations* (1995): 161–190.

Provan, Keith G., and H. Brinton Milward. "Do networks really work? A framework for evaluating public-sector organizational networks." *Public Administration Review* 61, no. 4 (2001): 414–423.

Provan, Keith G., and Juliann G. Sebastian. "Networks within networks: Service link overlap, organizational cliques, and network effectiveness." *Academy of Management Journal* 41, no. 4 (1998): 453–463.

Purdy, Jill M. "A framework for assessing power in collaborative governance processes." *Public Administration Review* 72, no. 3 (2012): 409–417.

Raab, Jörg, Robin H. Lemaire, and Keith G. Provan. "The configurational approach in organizational network research." In *Configurational theory and methods in organizational research*. Bradford: Emerald Group Publishing Limited, 2013.

Raab, Jörg, Remco S. Mannak, and Bart Cambré. "Combining structure, governance, and context: A configurational approach to network effectiveness." *Journal of Public Administration Research and Theory* 25, no. 2 (2015): 479–511.

Raeymaeckers, Peter, and Patrick Kenis. "The influence of shared participant governance on the integration of service networks: A comparative social network analysis." *International Public Management Journal* 19, no. 3 (2016): 397–426.

Ran, Bing, and Huiting Qi. "The entangled twins: Power and trust in collaborative governance." *Administration & Society* 51, no. 4 (2019): 607–636.

Salamon, L. M. (2002). *The tools of government: A guide to the new governance*. Oxford, UK: Oxford University Press.

Saz-Carranza, Angel, Susanna Salvador Iborra, and Adrià Albareda. "The power dynamics of mandated network administrative organizations." *Public Administration Review* 76, no. 3 (2015): 449–462.

Saz-Carranza, Angel, and Sonia M. Ospina. "The behavioral dimension of governing interorganizational goal-directed networks: Managing the unity-diversity tension." *Journal of Public Administration Research and Theory* 21, no. 2 (2011): 327–365.

Schneider, Anne, and Helen Ingram. "Behavioral assumptions of policy tools." *The Journal of Politics* 52, no. 2 (1990): 510–529.

Scott, Tyler. "Does collaboration make any difference? Linking collaborative governance to environmental outcomes." *Journal of Policy Analysis and Management* 34, no. 3 (2015): 537–566.

Scott, Tyler A., and Craig Thomas. "Do collaborative groups enhance interorganizational networks?" *Public Performance & Management Review* 38, no. 4 (2015): 654–683.

Scott, Tyler A., and Craig W. Thomas. "Unpacking the collaborative toolbox: Why and when do public managers choose collaborative governance strategies?" *Policy Studies Journal* 45, no. 1 (2017): 191–214.

Shulha, Lyn M., Elizabeth Whitmore, J. Bradley Cousins, Nathalie Gilbert, and Hind al Hudib. "Introducing evidence-based principles to guide collaborative approaches to evaluation: Results of an empirical process." *American Journal of Evaluation* 37, no. 2 (2016): 193–215.

Siddiki, Saba N., Julia L. Carboni, Chris Koski, and Abdul-Akeem Sadiq. "How policy rules shape the structure and performance of collaborative governance arrangements." *Public Administration Review* 75, no. 4 (2015): 536–547.

Siddiki, Saba N., Jangmin Kim, and William D. Leach. "Diversity, trust, and social learning in collaborative governance." *Public Administration Review* 77, no. 6 (2017): 863–874.

Smith, Julia Grace. "Theoretical advances in our understanding of network effectiveness." *Perspectives on Public Management and Governance* 3, no. 2 (2020): 167–182.

Turrini, Alex, Daniela Cristofoli, Francesca Frosini, and Greta Nasi. "Networking literature about determinants of network effectiveness." *Public Administration* 88, no. 2 (2010): 528–550.

Ulibarri, Nicola, and Tyler A. Scott. "Linking network structure to collaborative governance." *Journal of Public Administration Research and Theory* 27, no. 1 (2017): 163–181.

Vangen, Siv, John Paul Hayes, and Chris Cornforth. "Governing cross-sector, inter-organizational collaborations." *Public Management Review* 17, no. 9 (2015): 1237–1260.

Vangen, Siv, and Nik Winchester. "Managing cultural diversity in collaborations: A focus on management tensions." *Public Management Review* 16, no. 5 (2014): 686–707.

Varda, Danielle, Jo Ann Shoup, and Sara Miller. "A systematic review of collaboration and network research in the public affairs literature: Implications for public health practice and research." *American Journal of Public Health* 102, no. 3 (2012): 564–571.

Vermeiren, Caroline, Peter Raeymaeckers, and Jonathan Beagles. "In search for inclusiveness: Vertical complexity in public-nonprofit networks." *Public Management Review* 23, no. 2 (2021): 189–209.

Wang, Weijie. "Exploring the determinants of network effectiveness: The case of neighborhood governance networks in Beijing." *Journal of Public Administration Research and Theory* 26, no. 2 (2016): 375–388.

Waterman, Richard W., and Kenneth J. Meier. "Principal-agent models: An expansion?" *Journal of Public Administration Research and Theory* 8, no. 2 (1998): 173–202.

Weingast, Barry R. "The congressional-bureaucratic system: A principal agent perspective (with applications to the SEC)." *Public Choice* 44, no. 1 (1984): 147–191.

Yi, Hongtao. "Network structure and governance performance: What makes a difference?" *Public Administration Review* 78, no. 2 (2017): 195–205.

PART V

Decision-Making Tools

19

SUPPORTING DECISION-MAKING WITHIN THE POLICY CYCLE

Techniques and Tools

Irene Pluchinotta, Katherine A. Daniell and Alexis Tsoukiàs

The policy cycle is a model of interactive stages for structuring policy problems and making decisions to deal with them. The model encourages cycling through discrete activities, using different policy tools. In order to support decision-making within a policy cycle, a decision-aiding perspective is needed: namely, formal tools and methods introduced to help decision-makers develop reasoned decisions during the different phases of the policy-making process.

The intention of this chapter is firstly, to introduce existing decision analysis analytic methods and tools that can be used to support the different phases of the policy cycle, using concepts from decision analysis and policy analytics. Secondly, the decision-aiding perspective for the design and evaluation of policies is introduced and discussed. Lastly, the chapter focuses on the importance of the policy design phase, introducing an innovative participatory tool to support policy makers and relevant stakeholders during the design of policy alternatives

Introduction

The process of designing, implementing and assessing public policies is a major challenge for policymakers (De Marchi, Lucertini, and Tsoukiàs 2016), and having strong knowledge of a range of policy tools that could be deployed is a prerequisite for achieving the policy goals (Howlett 2018). Policymaking involves the deliberate and conscious attempt to define policy goals and connect them to instruments or tools expected to realise those objectives (Howlett, Mukherjee, and Woo 2015).

Policymaking is a non-linear process and has been conceptualised in a myriad of ways that express this complexity. Some models have great explanatory power for understanding the interrelationships of politics, values, issues and decisions (e.g., Lindblom and Woodhouse 1968; Cohen, March, and Olsen 1972; Kingdon 1984; Dunn 1981; Sabatier 2007); however, they have proven less helpful for understanding where decision support tools can help policymakers.

Other models are criticised for oversimplification of processes (e.g., Jann and Wegrich 2007 on Lasswell's policy cycle) but have stood the test of time as practice-focused aids, particularly for public servants supporting a range of policy activities. Indeed, the cyclical approach introduced by the policy cycle (Lasswell 1956) enables intricate phenomenon of policymaking to be disaggregated into manageable steps, allowing policy analysts to focus on the different issues of each

DOI: 10.4324/9781003163954-24

phase (Bridgman and Davis 1998) using specific tools. Such models of the policy cycle have been used in many countries, including Australia, for decades.

Policy decisions are often supported by incorporating appropriate literature, traditional forms of policy analysis and key lessons from policy-making studies at the relevant steps of the policy cycle. However, to support decision-making within the policy cycle, a decision-aiding perspective is needed (De Marchi, Lucertini, and Tsoukiàs 2016): namely, formal tools and methods introduced to help policymakers improve their decisions during the different phases of the policy-making process. A decision-aiding process supports the construction of artefacts using formal and abstract languages, with shared and consensual rationality models (see Tsoukiàs 2007).

For instance, few government departments and public organisations have yet managed to make systematic use of the broad range of data, evidence, decision analysis, operational research methods, cutting-edge statistical, machine-learning modeling techniques and also participatory approaches to inform their work (Daniell, Morton, and Ríos Insua 2016), even though data analytics groups are being set up in governments across the world to start to wrangle what government departments and partners are collecting and storing.

Within this context, the concept of "policy analytics" was introduced in 2013 as an attempt to develop a framework, tools and methods to address the challenges related to policymaking (De Marchi, Lucertini, and Tsoukiàs 2016).

Policy analytics is defined by Tsoukiàs et al. (2013) as a project to

> support policy-makers in a way that is meaningful (in a sense of being relevant and adding value to the process), operational (in a sense of being practically feasible) and legitimating (in the sense of ensuring transparency and accountability), [by drawing] on a wide range of existing data and knowledge (including scientific knowledge, and expert knowledge in its many forms) and [combining] this with a constructive approach to surfacing, modelling and understanding the opinions, values and judgments of the range of relevant stakeholders.

This conceptual initiative prompted numerous research teams to develop empirical applications of this framework and to reflect on their own decision support practice at the science-policy interface (see Meinard et al. 2021).

Furthermore, as discussed by Ferretti, Pluchinotta, and Tsoukiàs (2019), when it comes to policymaking, decision analysis has developed, among others, methods which aim at supporting different phases of the policy cycle (Larson and Odoni 1981; Larson 2002; Sinuany-Stern and Sherman 2014). However, most emphasis in this stream has been on problem structuring and on the rational selection among given alternatives, resulting in the development of guidelines for public policy evaluation at different levels (e.g., the Green and Magenta Books of the UK government, the Public Policy Assessment Book of the UK government, the European Social Fund Manual) but with limited consideration to support the specific policy design phase.

The aim of this chapter is to introduce existing decision analysis analytic methods and tools that can be used to support the different phase of the policy cycle, using concepts from decision analysis and policy analytics. Secondly, the decision-aiding perspective for the design and evaluation of policies is introduced and discussed. Lastly, the chapter focuses on the importance of the policy design phase, introducing an innovative participatory tool to support policymakers and relevant stakeholders during the design of policy alternatives.

The remainder of the chapter is organized as follows: the decision-aiding perspective is discussed in section 2, the policy cycle analytics tools are presented in section 3, while section 4 introduces a tool for the generation of policy alternatives. Section 5 concludes this chapter.

A Decision-Aiding Perspective

From a decision-aiding perspective, what we can observe and model is the existence of nested decision-aiding processes within the policy cycle. We can distinguish at least two levels. The first one is the policy cycle itself, considering any stakeholder involved in the policy cycle asking some advice on how to conduct themselves within it. This will generate a decision-aiding process of a more strategic nature on how to structure the inter-organisational decision process characterising the policy-making process (Ostanello and Tsoukiàs 1993; Chisholm 1972; Holmqvist 2003; Majchrzak, Jarvenpaa, and Bagherzadeh 2015). The second level concerns each single phase of the policy cycle. For any of these, any stakeholder involved in the policy cycle might request the support of a team of analysts, these using formal decision support tools.

A more formal definition of what a decision-aiding process is has been introduced in Tsoukiàs (2007), where the process is characterised through four cognitive artefacts (or deliverables) of the process: (1) a representation of the problem situation (stakeholders, stakes, resources), (2) a problem formulation (actions, attributes, problem statement), (3) an evaluation model (alternatives, measures, preferences, protocols and algorithms) and (4) a final recommendation. Mazri, Tsoukias, and Daniell (2019) extended this definition to the case of participative decision processes (more relevant in the policy-making context) since defining the participation structure is, on its turn, a decision problem, once again to be supported through formal decision support tools.

Colorni and Tsoukiàs (2013, 2018, 2020) introduced a formal structure of what a decision problem is (a problem formulation) and focused on the generation of actions and alternatives. There are two findings which are relevant for the purpose of this chapter. The first is the fact that designing the alternatives of a decision problem is a decision problem itself: this establishes a recursion of decision problems, extending the formal structure of decision aiding processes. The second is the fact that creating the recursion of decision problems can be modeled using design theory concepts (LeMasson et al. 2018).

Designing the set of decision options (which get the values of the client) is a neglected topic although as important as evaluating and choosing them (Ferretti, Pluchinotta, and Tsoukiàs 2019). This new perspective allows considering integrating formal design support tools within formal decision support tools (and vice versa), a topic yet to be developed in the specialised literature.

Policy Cycle Analytics Tools

The policy cycle approach suggests that policy develops through a set of interrelated tasks for structuring policy problems and making choices concerning them, from setting the agenda and developing policy options to policy evaluation and revision (Daniell, Morton, and Ríos Insua 2016). The model encourages cycling through discrete activities, using different policy tools. Adapted from Althaus, Bridgman, and Davis (1998) and Daniell, Morton, and Ríos Insua (2016), the version of the policy cycle used for this chapter includes:

> Agenda-setting and issues identification to define the problems of public concern that require policy action or changing and establishing priorities.
>
> Policy formulation to reach a better understanding of a public issue on the agenda and the define the boundaries of the policy goals and objectives.
>
> Policy design to create policy alternatives, representing possible paths for the solution of a policy problem connecting the initial state of the problem (i.e., the undesirable

state) to the final state. The problem is formulated in the previous phase, and alternative policy options are developed.

Policy analysis and decision for the selection of the preferred policy option. Based on the analysis of the different policy alternatives, a final decision is made, and the chosen policy proposal is fully specified.

Policy consultation to test the policy proposal and to gather support for a constructive policy initiative. This phase involves more than one agency and/or non-governmental stakeholder for the improvement and test of the policy and, when appropriate, for gathering support.

Policy implementation to pursuit the goal agreed on in the first phase and to put the policy into practice. At this stage, the necessary public resources and regulations are mobilised to make the policy operational.

Policy monitoring and evaluation to observe and assess, on an ongoing basis, whether the implemented policy is producing the expected results and to identify whether the policy should be changed or new issues need to be considered in the agenda.

Policy learning and readjustment to rethink the policy as appropriate after a reconsideration of the implemented instruments and related policy outcomes.

We provide an overview of key tools from the decision analysis research community to introduce analytical methods commonly employed in each phase of the policy cycle. Bridging the two research fields (i.e., operational research and policy science), we aim to introduce a number of operational research tools, opening a multidisciplinary dialogue and underlining the need for a systematic mapping of existing tools. Potentially, the decision-aiding perspective could be applied in each phase of the policy cycle; however, there are areas with no or limited operational research applications. It is worth clarifying that we do not claim to provide a comprehensive list of all the existing operational research methods that have been applied to one or more phases of the policy cycle.

Using the eight-phase policy cycle, we included two types of tools – analyst-driven analytics and stakeholder-driven analytics – since each phase could be carried out via public consultation or, more generally, using collaborative and participatory approaches. As highlighted by Pluchinotta et al. (2019), public participation is widely documented as being a valuable component of policymaking (Beierle and Cayford 2002; Beierle 2002), bringing the need for facilitating stakeholders' contributions (Ackermann and Eden 2011).

Figure 19.1 summarizes the existing methods and tools that can be used to support the different phases of the policy cycle, using concepts from decision analysis and policy analytics, showing the lack of formal tools for supporting decisions in all the phases of the policy cycle.

There are few phases with a large number of decision analysis methodologies successfully adapted and integrated to support participatory policy-making processes. For instance, both phases *agenda setting* and *policy formulation* have: soft operational research approaches (Checkland 2000; Pollock, Rothkopf, and Barnett 1994); problem structuring methods (Rosenhead 1989), such as strategic options development and analysis (Eden 2004) and boundary critique (Midgley and Pinzón 2011); and behavioural operational research (Hämäläinen, Luoma, and Saarinen 2013; Franco et al. 2021). Furthermore, system thinking (Sterman 2000) and group model building (Vennix 1996) are often used to carry out policy, governmental and societal system analysis.

In relation to the phase *policy analysis and decision*, several decision analysis approaches exists, including both analyst- and stakeholder-driven analytics, such as the strategic choice approach (Friend and Hickling 1987), system dynamics (Sterman 2000) and participatory modeling

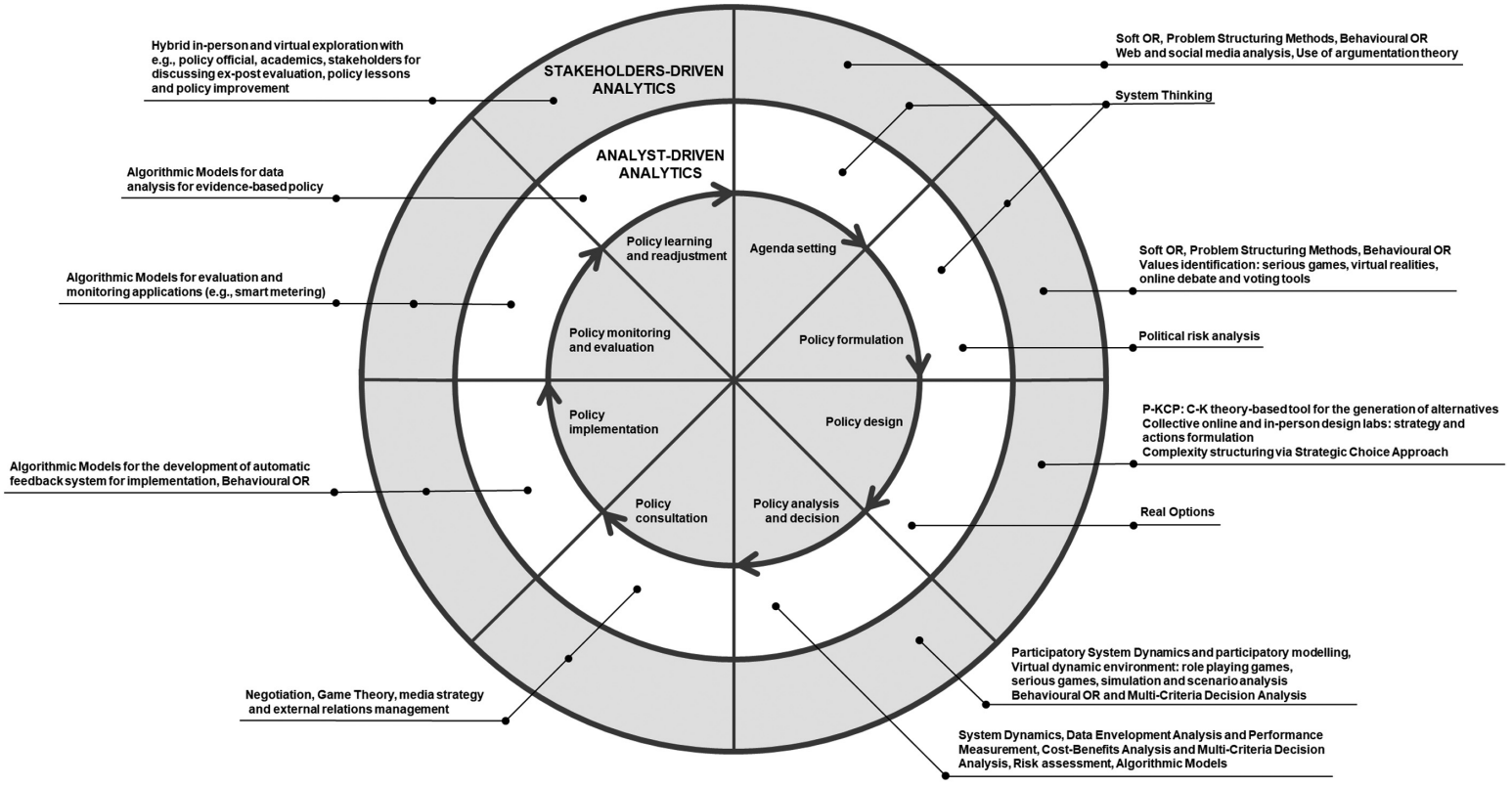


Figure 19.1 Policy Cycle Analytics Tools

(Acronym: operational research [OR])

(Voinov and Bousquet 2010; Voinov et al. 2016), with simulation and scenario analysis, behavioural operational research, data envelopment analysis and performance measurement (Charnes, Cooper, and Rhodes 1979; Cook and Seiford 2009; Emrouznejad and Barnett 2007), cost-benefit analysis and multi-criteria decision analysis (Belton and Stewart 2002).

On the other side, algorithmic models can be used to contribute to evidence bases and are increasingly used to inform policymakers (Kolkman 2020). There are two aspects of digital transformation we may cite when we talk about policy analytics tools. The first concerns the active systemic use of data in different phases of the policy cycle (e.g., for issue identification, policy analysis, evaluation [pay-for-performance approach for energy efficiency programs to evaluate energy efficiency program success]) and for designing data-dependent policies (e.g., personalised taxes based on consumption patterns) (Janssen and Kuk 2016). The second relates to the passive use of algorithms in running utilities and services, introducing the concept of a policy designed by induction. For instance, methods such as deep reinforcement learning are increasingly being used to find optimal policies for a given control task (e.g., Dhebar et al. 2020; Behzadan and Munir 2017).

Policy Design: A Tool for the Generation of Alternatives

Within the policy cycle, policy design can be defined as a specific form of knowledge gathering about possible policy alternatives on policy targets and the application of that knowledge to the development of policies aimed at the attainment of specifically desired public policy outcomes and ambitions (e.g., Bobrow 2006; Capano and Howlett 2015).

Therefore, policy design is an intricate challenge for policymakers as future policy outcomes are inherently uncertain (Nair and Howlett 2016). Evidence suggests that policies often fail due to the lack of formalised policy design methodologies for the innovative generation of alternatives (Howlett 2014). Policy design has long been seen as a component of policy development without any operational characteristics (Howlett 2011). Although policy design represents a crucial step since it determines the quality of the alternative policies being considered, the formalisation of this process has been little investigated (e.g., Ferretti, Pluchinotta, and Tsoukiàs 2019).

Using the lens of a decision-aiding perspective, policy design can be considered the result of a collective decision-making process involving multiple stakeholders for the generation of a set of policy alternatives (Pluchinotta et al. 2019). Alternatives tend to be few and similar when the policy design process is constrained (Alexander 1982). In contrast, a decision-aiding process can bring novelty through the expansion of the set of solutions (see Colorni and Tsoukiàs 2020, 2018).

Ferretti, Pluchinotta, and Tsoukiàs (2019) argue that the mainstream decision analysis literature focuses on tools to support a rational selection among given alternatives. Despite this, policy design represents a crucial step since it determines the quality of the alternative policies being considered; the formalisation of this process has been little investigated.

Within this context, Pluchinotta et al. (2019) underline that there is a demand for methodologies to support policymakers and relevant stakeholders during the design of policy alternatives, exploring the operational role of design theory, and specifically concept-knowledge (C-K) theory, to develop a formal tool for the generation of policy alternatives. The tool is based on the integration between problem structuring methods (PSMs) and C-K theory. PSMs are implemented to elicit and structure individual problem understandings and to detect and analyse differences among different stakeholders' concerns and values (Mingers and Rosenhead 2004). C-K theory framework is then meant to facilitate the alignment of the different problem

frames and available knowledge and to enable the creative process for developing innovative and consensual policy alternatives.

Briefly, P-KCP consists of three main phases: the K-space phase aims to identify a shared concern, to gather missing information and to build a comprehensive summary of the knowledge about the issue under consideration by combining individual stakeholders' knowledge in order to support the subsequent generative phase (C-space phase). Afterwards, the C-space is built during a one-day stakeholder workshop: stakeholders identify and discuss the traditional policy alternatives and propose innovative ones through the expansion of the C-space. Following the C-K theory framework, the C-space represents the map of all identified possibilities, improving the search for new alternatives. Lastly, the project phase uses the K- and C-spaces to shape the policy recommendations.

C-K theory's underlining idea is that design is a generative process through which something unknown can intentionally emerge from what is known (Hatchuel 2001). Briefly, C-K theory is based on the distinction between two expandable spaces: a space of concepts (C-space) and a space of knowledge (K-space) (LeMasson, Dorst, and Subrahmanian 2013). The process of design is therefore defined as the co-evolution of C- and K-spaces through four types of independent operators (C-C, C-K, K-K, K-C): namely, concepts generate other concepts or are transformed into knowledge, and knowledge generates more knowledge or helps formulating concepts (Hatchuel and Weil 2002, 2003). According to Hatchuel and Weil (2009), the K-space is a space of propositions that have a logical status (i.e., "true" or "false") for a designer in a given time step. Whereas the C-space is a set of propositions describing an object (e.g., our policy), that has no logical status in the current K-space (i.e., when a concept is formulated, it is impossible to prove that it is a proposition of the K-space).

Over the last few years, C-K theory has gained growing academic and industrial interest (Agogué and Kazakçi 2014). C-K is a theory of reasoning for innovative design situations, overcoming the limits of traditional design theory (Hatchuel et al. 2015) and creativity methods (Kazakçi and Tsoukiàs 2005). It provides researchers and practitioners with a framework to describe and analyse innovative design processes for the generation of alternatives (Pluchinotta et al. 2020). For a detailed discussion on a C-K theory–based tool for policy design – namely, policy-KCP (P-KCP), see Pluchinotta et al. (2019).

Conclusions

In this chapter, we adopt a general policy cycle approach to represent the complex set of activities occurring when a policy is established: from perceiving the need of a policy to the monitoring and feedback analysis of a policy implementation, through the different steps of agenda-setting, policy design, choosing policy tools, etc.

We show that, despite decision analysis tools having been often suggested and actually used for supporting the activities within the policy cycle, we lack a comprehensive methodology on how to support the whole cycle and several among the steps characterising it. We nevertheless provide a short survey of methods and models created for such purposes. Under such a perspective, we present in more details how policy design can benefit from formal decision analysis tools as well as from formal design theory and, more precisely, C-K theory.

References

Ackermann, F., and C. Eden. 2011. "Strategic Management of Stakeholders: Theory and Practice." *Long Range Planning* 44 (3): 179–196. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.lrp.2010.08.001.

Agogué, M., and A. O. Kazakçi. 2014. "10 Years of C-K Theory: A Survey on the Academic and Industrial Impacts of a Design Theory." *An Anthology of Theories and Models of Design* 219–35. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-1-4471-6338-1_11.

Alexander, E. R. 1982. "Design in the Decision-Making Process." *Policy Sciences* 14: 279–292.

Behzadan, V., and A. Munir. 2017. "Vulnerability of Deep Reinforcement Learning to Policy Induction Attacks." In Perner, P. (eds) *Machine Learning and Data Mining in Pattern Recognition*. MLDM 2017. Lecture Notes in Computer Science, vol 10358. Springer, Cham. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-319-62416-7_19, 262–275.

Beierle, T. C. 2002. "The Quality of Stakeholder-Based Decisions." *Risk Analysis* 22 (4): 739–749. https://doi.org/10.1111/0272-4332.00065.

Beierle, T. C., and J. Cayford. 2002. *Democracy in Practice: Public Participation in Environmental Decisions*. Washington, DC: Resources for the Future.

Belton, V., and T. J. Stewart. 2002. *Multiple Criteria Decision Analysis: An Integrated Approach*. Dordrecht: Kluwer Academic.

Bobrow, D. B. 2006. "Policy Design: Ubiquitous, Necessary and Difficult." In *Handbook of Public Policy*, edited by B. G. Peters and J. Pierre. New York: SAGE.

Bridgman, P., and G. Davis. 1998. *The Australian Policy Handbook: A Practical Guide to the Policy-Making Process*. 6th ed. London, UK: Routledge.

Capano, G., and M. Howlett. 2015. "Design and Non-Design in Policy-Making: When and How Policy Design Matters." In *Policy Formulation and the Changing Dynamics of Public Policy: Proceedings of the ECPR Workshop "Design and Non-Design in Policy Making: When and How Policy Design Matters"*, 1–19. Warsaw.

Charnes, E. A., W. W. Cooper, and E. Rhodes. 1979. "Measuring the Efficiency of Decision Making Units." *European Journal of Operational Research* 3: 429–444.

Checkland, P. 2000. "Soft Systems Methodology: A Thirty Year Retrospective." *Systems Research and Behavioral Science* 17: S11–58.

Chisholm, R. 1972. *Interorganizational Decision Making*. Abingdon, UK: Routledge.

Cohen, Michael D., James G. March, and Johan P. Olsen. 1972. "A Garbage Can Model of Organizational Choice." *Administrative Science Quarterly* 17 (1): 1–25. www.jstor.org/stable/2392088.

Colorni, A., and A. Tsoukiàs. 2013. "What Is a Decision Problem ?" In *ADT 2013: LNAI 8176*, 139–153. Berlin: Springer Verlag.

Colorni, A., and A. Tsoukiàs. 2018. "What Is a Decision Problem ? Designing Alternatives." In *Preference Disaggregation in Multiple Criteria Decision Analysis*, edited by N. Matsatsinis and E. Grigoroudis, 1–15. Switzerland: Springer International Publishing. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-319-90599-0_1.

Colorni, A., and A. Tsoukiàs. 2020. "Designing Alternatives in Decision Problems." *Journal of Multi-Criteria Decision Analysis* 27 (3–4): 150–158. https://doi.org/10.1002/mcda.1709.

Cook, W. D., and L. M. Seiford. 2009. "Data Envelopment Analysis: Thirty Years On." *European Journal of Operational Research* 192: 1–17.

Daniell, K. A., A. Morton, and D. Ríos Insua. 2016. "Policy Analysis and Policy Analytics." *Annals of Operations Research* 236 (1): 1–13. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10479-015-1902-9.

De Marchi, G., Lucertini, G., Tsoukiàs, A. 2016. "From Evidence-based Policy Making to Policy Analytics." *Annals of Operations Research* 236 (1): 15–38. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10479-014-1578-6.

Dhebar, Y., K. Deb, S. Nageshrao, L. Zhu, and D. Filev. 2020. *Interpretable-AI Policies Induction Using Evolutionary Nonlinear Decision Trees for Discrete Action Systems*. Michigan State University.

Dunn, W. 1981. *Public Policy Analysis: An Introduction*. Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice Hall.

Eden, C. 2004. "Analyzing Cognitive Maps to Help Structure Issues or Problems." *European Journal of Operational Research* 159 (3): 673–686. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0377-2217(03)00431-4.

Emrouznejad, R., and A. Barnett. 2007. "Evaluation of Research in Efficiency and Productivity: A Survey and Analysis of the First 30 Years of Scholarly Literature in DEA." *Socio-Economic Planning Sciences* 42: 151–157.

Ferretti, V., I. Pluchinotta, and A. Tsoukiàs. 2019. "Studying the Generation of Alternatives in Public Policy Making Processes." *European Journal of Operational Research* 273 (1): 353–363. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ejor.2018.07.054.

Franco, L. Alberto, Raimo P. Hämäläinen, Etiënne A. J. A. Rouwette, and Ilkka Leppänen. 2021. "Taking Stock of Behavioural OR: A Review of Behavioural Studies with an Intervention Focus." *European Journal of Operational Research* 293 (2): 401–418. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ejor.2020.11.031.

Friend, J. K., and A. Hickling. 1987. *Planning under Pressure. The Strategic Choice Approach*. Oxford, UK: Pergamon.

Hämäläinen, Raimo P., Jukka Luoma, and Esa Saarinen. 2013. "On the Importance of Behavioral Operational Research: The Case of Understanding and Communicating about Dynamic Systems." *European Journal of Operational Research* 228 (3): 623–634. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ejor.2013.02.001.

Hatchuel, A. 2001. "Towards Design Theory and Expandable Rationality: The Unfinished Programme of Herbert Simon." *Journal of Management and Governance* 5 (3–4): 260–273. https://doi.org/10.1023/A:1014044305704.

Hatchuel, A., P. Le Masson, B. Weil, M. Agogué, A. O. Kazakçi, and S. Hooge. 2015. "Multiple Forms of Applications and Impacts of a Design Theory-Ten Years of Industrial Applications of C-K Theory." In *Impact of Design Research on Industrial Practice: Tools, Technology, and Training*, edited by A. Chakrabarti and U. Lindemann, 189–209. Munich: Springer.

Hatchuel, A., and B. Weil. 2002. "C-K Theory: Notions and Applications of a Unified Design Theory." Proceedings of the Herbert Simon International Conference on " Design Sciences ", 1–22.

Hatchuel, A., and Weil, B. 2003. "A New Approach of Innovative Design: An Introduction to CK Theory." In: *XIVth International conference on Engineering Design*. Stockholm, Sweden, 19th–21st August.

Hatchuel, A., and Weil, B. 2009. "C–K Design Theory: An Advanced Formulation." *Research in Engineering Design* 19 (4): 181–192. https://link.springer.com/article/10.1007/s00163-008-0043-4

Holmqvist, M. 2003. "A Dynamic Model of Intra-and Interorganizational Learning." *Organization Studies* 24: 95–123.

Howlett, M. 2011. *Designing Public Policies: Principles and Instruments*. London: Routledge Textbooks in Policy Studies.

Howlett, M. 2014. "From the 'old' to the 'New' Policy Design: Design Thinking beyond Markets and Collaborative Governance." *Policy Sciences* 47 (3): 187–207. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11077-014-9199-0.

Howlett, M. 2018. "The Criteria for Effective Policy Design : Character and Context in Policy Instrument Choice in Policy Instrument Choice." *Journal of Asian Public Policy* 11 (3): 245–266. https://doi.org/10.1080/17516234.2017.1412284.

Howlett, M., I. Mukherjee, and J. J. Woo. 2015. "From Tools to Toolkits in Policy Design Studies: The New Design Orientation towards Policy Formulation Research." *Policy and Politics* 43 (2): 291–311.

Jann, W., and K. Wegrich. 2007. "Theories of the Policy Cycle." In *Handbook of Public Policy Analysis: Theory, Politics and Methods*, edited by M. S. Sidney, F. Fischer, and G. J. Miller. Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press.

Janssen, M., and G. Kuk. 2016. "The Challenges and Limits of Big Data Algorithms in Technocratic Governance." *Government Information Quarterly* 33 (3): 371–377.

Kazakçi, A. O., and A. Tsoukiàs. 2005. "Extending the C-K Design Theory: A Theoretical Background for Personal Design Assistants." *Journal of Engineering Design* 16 (4): 399–411.

Kingdon, J. W. 1984. *Agendas, Alternatives, and Public Policies*. Boston: Little, Brown.

Kolkman, D. 2020. "The Usefulness of Algorithmic Models in Policy Making G." *Government Information Quarterly* 37 (3): 101488.

Larson, R. C. 2002. "Public Sector Operations Research: A Personal Journey." *Operations Research* 50: 135–145.

Larson, R. C., and A. R. Odoni. 1981. *Urban Operations Research*. Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice-Hall.

Lasswell, H. D. 1956. *The Decision Process: Seven Categories of Functional Analysis*. Bureau of Governmental Research, College of Business and Public Administration. College Park, MD: University of Maryland.

LeMasson, P., K. Dorst, and E. Subrahmanian. 2013. "Design Theory: History, State of the Art and Advancements." *Research in Engineering Design* 24 (2): 97–103. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00163-013-0154-4.

LeMasson, P., A. Hatchuel, M. Le Glatin, and B. Weil. 2018. "Designing Decisions in the Unknown: A Generative Model." *European Management Review* 16 (2): 471–490.

Lindblom, C. E., and E. J. Woodhouse. 1968. *The Policy-Making Process* (Vol. 4). Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice-Hall.

Majchrzak, A., S. L. Jarvenpaa, and M. Bagherzadeh. 2015. "A Review of Interorganizational Collaboration Dynamics." *Journal of Management* 41: 1338–1360.

Marchi, G. De, G. Lucertini, and A. Tsoukiàs. 2016. "From Evidence-Based Policy Making to Policy Analytics." *Annals of Operations Research* 236 (1): 15–38. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10479-014-1578-6.

Mazri, C., A Tsoukias, and K. A. Daniell. 2019. "Decision Support in Participatory Contexts: The Organisational Design Dimension." *International Journal of Decision Support System Technology* 11 (3): 47–80. https://doi.org/10.4018/IJDSST.2019070104.

Meinard, Yves, Olivier Barreteau, Christophe Boschet, Katherine A. Daniell, Nils Ferrand, Sabine Girard, Joseph H. A. Guillaume, et al. 2021. "What Is Policy Analytics? An Exploration of 5 Years of

Environmental Management Applications." *Environmental Management* 67 (5): 886–900. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00267-020-01408-z.

Midgley, G., and L. A. Pinzón. 2011. "Boundary Critique and Its Implications for Conflict Prevention." *Journal of the Operational Research Society* 62 (8): 1543–1554. https://doi.org/10.1057/jors.2010.76.

Mingers, John, and Jonathan Rosenhead. 2004. "Problem Structuring Methods in Action." *European Journal of Operational Research* 152, (3): 530–554. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0377-2217(03)00056-0.

Nair, S., and M. Howlett. 2016. "Meaning and Power in the Design and Development of Policy Experiments." *Futures* 76: 67–74. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.futures.2015.02.008.

Ostanello, A., and A. Tsoukiàs. 1993. "An Explicative Model of 'Public' Interorganizational Interactions." *European Journal of Operational Research* 70: 67–82.

Pluchinotta, I., R. Giordano, D. Zikos, T. Krueger, and A. Tsoukiàs. 2020. "Integrating Problem Structuring Methods and Concept-Knowledge Theory for an Advanced Policy Design: Lessons from a Case Study in Cyprus." *Journal of Comparative Policy Analysis: Research and Practice* 22 (6): 626–647. https://doi.org/10.1080/13876988.2020.1753512.

Pluchinotta, I., A. O. Kazakçi, R. Giordano, and A. Tsoukiàs. 2019. "Design Theory for Generating Alternatives in Public Decision Making Processes." *Group Decision and Negotiation*. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10726-018-09610-5.

Pollock, S. M., M. H. Rothkopf, and A. Barnett. 1994. *Operational Research and the Public Sector*. North Holland, NY: Amsterdam.

Rosenhead, J. 1989. *Rational Analysis for a Problematic World: Structuring Methods for Complexity, Uncertainty and Conflict*. London: John Wiley & Sons Ltd.

Sabatier, P. 2007. *Theories of the Policy Process*. Boulder, CO: Westview Press.

Sinuany-Stern, Z., and H. D. Sherman. 2014. "Operations Research in the Public Sector and Nonprofit Organizations." *Annals of Operations Research* 221: 1–8.

Sterman, J. D. 2000. *Business Dynamics: Systems Thinking and Modeling for a Complex World*. Edited by Irwin/McGraw-Hill. Management. Boston. https://doi.org/10.1057/palgrave.jors.2601336.

Tsoukiàs, A. 2007. "On the Concept of Decision Aiding Process: An Operational Perspective." *Annals of Operations Research* 154 (1): 3–27. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10479-007-0187-z.

Tsoukiàs, A., G. Montibeller, G. Lucertini, and V. Belton. 2013. "Policy Analytics: An Agenda for Research and Practice." *EURO Journal on Decision Processes* 1 (1–2): 115–134. https://doi.org/http://dx.doi.org/10.1007/s40070-013-0008-3.

Vennix, J. A. M. 1996. "Group Model-Building: Tackling Messy Problems." *System Dynamics Review* 15 (4): 379–401.

Voinov, A., and F. Bousquet. 2010. "Modelling with Stakeholders." *Environmental Modelling and Software* 25 (11): 1268–1281. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.envsoft.2010.03.007.

Voinov, A., N. Kolagani, M. K. McCall, P. D. Glynn, M. E. Kragt, F. O. Ostermann, S. A. Pierce, and P. Ramu. 2016. "Modelling with Stakeholders: Next Generation." *Environmental Modelling and Software* 77: 196–220. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.envsoft.2015.11.016.

20

SCENARIO ANALYSIS, FORECASTING AND BACKCASTING AS POLICY TOOLS

Martijn van der Steen

Introduction: Looking Ahead in Policy Formulation

Looking ahead and anticipating conditions is an important aspect of policy formulation (Van der Steen et al. 2013, 2010, 2011; Slaughter 2005, 2007; Glenn and Gordon 2006). Looking ahead helps policymakers foresee future problems, identify new or changing trends that shape the conditions for future policies and see new types of solutions. The ability to anticipate the future is a crucial element of solid policy making.

Public organizations at all levels of government conduct anticipatory studies to be better prepared for unknown futures. But the practice of applying foresight to policy is often problematic: foresight is hard enough to do, but it seems even harder to link futures studies to policy formulation. It is one thing to do futures studies; it is another thing to do something with them. The challenge for futures studies in policy formulation is to execute the techniques and methods for anticipation and to link them to the reality and turbulence of policy formulation in the context of today.

This problem is not new. Empirical research into the practice of foresight in policy identifies a persistent gap between generating insights about the future and using these insights in policy formulation. The problem is not a lack of interest in the future but a mismatch between the properties of anticipatory knowledge and policymaking (Riedy 2009; Slaughter 2007; Schwartz 1996; Hart and Tindall 2009; Van Asselt et al. 2007; Groves and Lempert 2007; Brown et al. 2000; Paillard 2006; Sardar 1999; Cairns et al. 2006; Van der Duin et al. 2009; Van der Duin et al. 2010; Van der Duin and Van der Steen 2012). Despite examples of successful attempts to link foresight, the tension between present-day interests and the long-term dimension of policymaking remains (e.g., see Ho 2012; DaCosta et al. 2008; Nehme et al. 2012; Könnölä et al. 2012; Yoda 2011; Chermack 2004; Colson and Corm 2006; Habegger 2009; Groonbridge 2006; Andersson 2010; Chan and Daim 2012; Van Asselt et al. 2010; Van der Steen et al. 2013; Noordegraaf et al. 2014; Veenman 2013; Kuosa 2011; Fuerth 2009; Van der Duin et al. 2009; Riedy 2009). That is, in this chapter we discuss tools for studying the future but also the dilemmas of applying these tools in the process of policymaking.

DOI: 10.4324/9781003163954-25

Why Systematically Studying the Future Is Helpful for Policymaking

Futures studies draw attention to the role of time in policy. There are many different ways to think about time in relation to policy, but in this chapter, we focus on the role of time as a space in which the dynamics of policy take place. Problems, solutions and conditions for policy change with time: partly as a result of policy itself, but also by means of other inherent dynamics. Conditions are not fixed but change over time in complex cycles of interaction. These interactions happen in time, at varying pace and intensity. Time is the space in which these chains or cycles of interactions take place. Moreover, time is also a space for emergence to take place, where 'new things' can happen that are currently not yet a part of the system. Social systems are not bounded by what is already inside. Actors can innovate, choose new routes, come up with fresh answers and express behaviours that were previously not in the system. Time is the space in which such emergence occurs. To make policy is to successfully steer the dynamics that take place in time.

Looking ahead can help policymakers not simply project today's interactions and patterns onto a future time frame. In a systematic study of the future, policymakers explore the flow of interactions in time. Some of these interactions take little time, with perhaps very radical effects in the short term; other interactions take longer, either to occur or for the effects to become noticeable. Exploring the future and looking ahead into the space of time means attempting to foresee at least some of these interactions and/or the possible conditions and outcomes of these interactions.

Studying these interactions requires a balance between the limitations and possibilities of the future. The future is inherently open, in the sense that complex systems can take any possible shape. The future is not bounded to the present state of the system. At the same time, the future is also embedded in the current state. The present provides the conditions from which the future develops: for instance, in demographics and natural conditions but also in social constructions that root behaviour. Van Asselt et al. (2010) and Veenman (2013) speak of the future as open, not empty. The future can be anything, including completely discontinuous with the past but also a mere continuation of the present. That is why in futures studies the future is usually discussed in plural: *futures*-, instead of *the future*.

Studying the future is relevant for policymaking in three ways: (1) to identify possible, plausible and preferable problems; (2) to identify possible, plausible and preferable solutions; and (3) to imagine possible, plausible and preferable future conditions.

Firstly, a temporal perspective calls for a critical analysis of policy problems. Is a problem of today still a likely problem in the future? Some present-day problems may disappear or change dramatically. Issues that are hardly conceived as problems today could very well constitute the policy agenda of the future. And even if the labels of the issue remain the same, a problem can be very different in future times; today's unemployment issue is different from that of the 1960s, and in 2030, the problem will likely be different from that of today.

Secondly, the range of solutions policymakers consider is also time sensitive. Do policymakers consider options beyond the present ones and look at solutions from the perspective of possible futures dynamics? New technologies facilitate the formation of bottom-up and ad hoc local networks, which generate new solutions. For other issues, the solutions that work well today may be ineffective in the future. New solutions may arise, and present-day solutions might become obsolete.

Thirdly, the working conditions for problems and solutions will differ over time. For example, society is becoming more diverse, with a variety of cultural and social values and norms. Technological innovation could lead to more inequality but also to a more balanced society. What

are the professions of the future, and what professions will become obsolete with technological development? All these are relevant possible future conditions. Taking the possible and plausible future state of these conditions into account can improve the quality of policy formulation.

How to Look Ahead in Policy Processes

Two Approaches to Systematically Study the Future: Forecasting and Foresight

In spite of its inherent uncertainty, it is still possible and productive to attempt to 'look ahead in time' and assess the possible dynamics of a system in future times. Theory about long-term analysis typically identifies two main approaches to study possible futures and portray future dynamics of a system in the space of time: forecasting and foresight (Bell 2003; Slaughter 1995; van der Steen 2017). We will discuss each of them here and also discuss some of the more recent developments in both fields (see Table 20.1).

Forecasting is the tradition in which quantitative projection is used to identify different possible futures (Armstrong 2001; van der Steen 2017). A projection is based on a causal model, often embedded in current trends and historical data. A crucial choice in forecasting is the design of the model: which actors and factors, and which relations, are included in the model and are considered – literally – when making the forecast. A forecast 'calculates' the outcomes of interactions between actors and factors in the model over a certain space of time; it portrays paths through the modeled system within the relations within the model and, therefore, also within the margins of the model. A forecast is not necessarily a continuation of the status quo, but it does inevitably produce a continuation of the 'reality in the model'; it is continuation within the bounds of the model (Walker et al. 2012).

Foresight is the tradition in which qualitative data is used to initiate debates and thinking about possible, plausible and preferable futures (Bell 2003; Van der Duin et al. 2009, 2010; Chermack 2004; Wilkinson and Kupers 2014; Klooster and van Asselt 2006; Glenn and Gordon 2006). There is discussion about patterns, and there is causality involved, but the range of possible futures is not limited to a fixed and predefined causal model; causality does not have to be precise and final beforehand, but notions about the relevant actors, factors, causes, effects and relations can develop during the process of discussing possible futures (WRR 2010).

Foresight is based on a more qualitative and less strict definition of a model and sees modeling more as a noun than a verb. Foresight allows for less linear thinking about potential futures and can produce more radical futures; possible relations and discontinuity can be discursively added

Table 20.1 Forecasting Versus Foresight

	Forecasting	*Foresight*
Aim	To describe how the future will be	To describe how the future might be
Activity	Predicting characteristics of the future	Exploring possible futures
Product	Saying with certainty and probability	Identifying conceivable possibilities and 'key uncertainties'
Method	Using verifiable sources, 'crisp' data and 'tight' causal models	Based on wider concepts of knowledge, skills and experiences; 'fuzzy' information; a wide range of creative, interactive and associated methods

to the discussion of possible dynamics and can be considered in imagining possible futures; even though the exact nature or 'value' of the development is unknown and undefined, it can still become part of the discussion of futures dynamics (van der Steen 2017; Paillard 2006; Yoda 2011; Kuosa 2011; Noordegraaf et al. 2014).

Forecasting results in statements about how things will be in the future – not in the sense that one future is pinpointed as 'the future', but the model inherently produces 'hard' numbers about the range of simulated scenarios; it produces probabilities, effects, costs and benefits. Foresight results in images about how things might be, not in terms of numbers, but in narratives, images or a 'look and feel' of possible futures and futures dynamics (Bell 2003; Burt and van der Heijden 2003; Van der Heijden 2005). Foresight is about identifying conceivable possibilities – 'possible, plausible and preferable futures' – using a broad arsenal of sources that are accepted as both 'possible' and 'workable' (Ogilvy 2002).

Because of the central role of the model as the causal environment in which different scenarios are simulated, forecasts are primarily based on quantitative resources. The model requires quantitative data and also is based on numerical values for relations: e.g., in order to forecast the possible effects of better pensions on the lifestyle of pensioners, the forecaster needs to assign a mathematical value to the relation between 'available income' and 'types of behavior'; the relation needs to be defined in terms of cause and effect, but also in terms of 'size' of the relation (e.g., 'an increase in income of 1.0 results in an increase of 1.2 in time spent on leisure activities by pensioners'). The relation cannot simply be named; it needs to be numbered as well.

Foresight allows more space for interpretation, intuition and argumentation and looks for 'signs' of change and trends that have yet to be scientifically validated (Splint and van Wijck 2012; Van der Steen et al. 2011; Maier et al. 2016). Foresight seeks to interpret clues, rather than running established facts through a fixed causal model that reflects historic processes and causalities (which may not apply to the future in any case), often with several variations in either the model or the facts so that diversity in the findings is established (the forecasters' 'scenarios').

In a foresight study, desirability and other normative judgments are necessary parts of the process. A foresight study does not make or prescribe choices, but it does incorporate notions of 'value' into the scenarios (Slaughter 1995). In the same example of the behaviour of pensioners, a foresight study could identify the possible relation between different elements in a system and 'name' different outcomes and second-order or third-order effects of such outcomes; these can be considered by introducing them into the discourse about the future and reflect on possible outcomes of the relation.

In a foresight study, it is not necessary to 'number' each relation; naming them and bringing them into the debate about the future is enough to discursively add them into the narrative of possible futures.

Tools and Techniques for Studying the Future

There are a wide variety of tools and methods to investigate the future and look for possible, plausible and preferable futures (Voros 2003). The choice of tool or technique is important for the outcomes of a study, and knowing the variety of options and mastering at least several of them are important for anticipatory work. However, there is more to anticipation than merely tools; Bell argues that foresight is not primarily about following a methodology but mostly about the underlying skills, creativity, analytical capacity and future-oriented mind-set of those engaged in the foresight work: 'No methodology has a monopoly on producing good or bad work' (2003, p. 241). Methods and techniques count but do not guarantee a successful foresight

project. Also, not every method appeals equally to the policymakers who need to work with the results of a study. Bell stresses that the choice of methods depends on a goodness of fit with the skills of the actors involved, the organization, the policy problem at hand and other contextual factors. There is a codified methodology, but the choice of a certain method largely depends on context. We will briefly discuss a set of anticipatory methods.

Scenario Studies

The scenario method (e.g., Van der Heijden 2005; Schwartz 1996; Bell 2003; Van Asselt 2010; Van Notten 2005; Van 't Klooster and Van Asselt et al. 2006) is one of the most commonly used anticipatory methods. Scenarios are 'stories describing different but equally plausible futures that are developed using methods that systematically gather perceptions about certainties and uncertainties' (Selin 2006, p. 1). The fundamental assumption of the method is that there are deep uncertainties about the future, that many different directions of development are possible, but that a coherent method can help explore that inherent variety. The goal is not to predict the future but to map the variety and to see the multiplicity of futures.

The first step in a scenario study is to analyse a wide range of possible developments that may affect the future. After that, the scenario team selects the two most powerful forces for the future of a certain field, which then become the 'driving forces' for the scenarios (Van 't Klooster and Van Asselt 2006; Van der Heijden 2005). The driving forces are put on two scenario axes and together constitute four dominant scenarios. The scenarios are then further filled in with more or less detail. The purpose of building a variety of scenarios is not to pick and choose the 'best' scenario but to be prepared for all possible options. Policymakers can aim for a particular future, but the true purpose of scenario study is to be prepared for many different possible futures and to be able to recognize them early on and adapt when necessary.

Both the traditions of forecasting and foresight use scenarios. In the tradition of forecasting, the scenarios are based on analysis of current trends, which are translated into elaborate models that project different possible variants of futures. This is done with quantitative methods that greatly benefit from the increased capacity of computers to calculate possible options. That has allowed builders of models to produce an enormous variety of options and incorporate highly complex relations and many variables into their models. A scenario study from the forecasting tradition typically produces scenarios that consist of numbers that represent characteristics of that scenario: for example, one scenario of 1% economic growth and one of 3%, with the different consequences of each scenario for unemployment, social welfare, the annual budget, national debt and so on.

Scenario studies are used differently in the school of foresight. The point is still to produce a variety of possible futures, but the process is more qualitative and involves interaction with many stakeholders, creative techniques and large group sessions (e.g., Janoff and Weisbord 2006; Novaky 2006; Inayatullah 2005). The scenario team organises interactive sessions with many stakeholders to discuss possible trends. Then, there is a discussion to condense 'driving forces' from the variety of trends. The group (team and participants) construct a matrix that scores the level of impact and the level of uncertainty of trends and developments. The two trends that have the highest combination and uncertainty become the driving forces of the scenario study because they represent the most relevant uncertainties to explore for the purpose of this study.

Defining the driving forces is a crucial step because the driving forces become the backbone for the scenario study and, in this approach, are the product of complex group interactions. But it can be risky because groups sometimes produce creative driving forces that 'feel right' to the group and reflect the consensus in the room but are not considered relevant by experts in the

field. That is not to say that the group is wrong or not very good at formulating driving forces; experts can be locked in the path of a scientific field and look at the future in the rear-view mirror; they are bounded by current empirical data, and it is not directly their professional expertise to look beyond the empirical evidence.

Therefore, this foresight approach to scenario studies must seek a balance between consensus and expertise, between asking the 'usual suspects' and bringing in new people with fresh ideas and between creativity and evidence when thinking about possible developments. Outsiders bring in new ideas, but these may not resonate with insiders in the organization; newbies provide a fresh look at a topic but often lack the insight into the basics concepts and structures of a problem; thinking outside the box is important, but many scenario studies eventually have to resonate with people working 'inside the box' as well.

Theoretically, these problems also apply to the forecasting approach, but since forecasting relies more on scientific evidence and is done from a scientific and positivist tradition, it is hardly an issue in practice. In the case of foresight, the balance between creativity and evidence is less clear; the point of doing a foresight study is to look beyond what is currently known towards unexpected, not yet adequately researched and not completely understood trends. That inherently involves creativity and uncertainty but also requires a basis for credibility and quality.

Scenarios can be developed at many different levels of analysis (Dammers 2000). They can be limited to a single sector (e.g., transport) but also cover multiple sectors. In fact, futures thinking can be a wedge to break silos and cut across fixed concepts of domains and sectors. The level of abstraction for a scenario is also important: does the study focus on the micro (unemployment), meso (social welfare) or macro (economic structure and societal norms and values) level? Is it about the organization, the sector or the broader environment? Another choice to make is the level of exploration and speculation for the scenarios. Does the scenario primarily follow current trends, established relations and existing policies? Or should it look beyond current patterns and seek out discontinuities? A further choice is between 'prospective' or 'projective' scenarios. Projective scenarios are based on extrapolations and continuations of current trends to look into the future. Prospective scenarios start from the future, look at possible futures and then reason back to relate the scenarios to the present ('backcasting'). Both options produce narratives of how and why the present developed into possible futures, but the direction for producing those narratives is different. A projective scenario 'argues forward in time' while a prospective scenario reconstructs the path towards a scenario 'back from the future'.

Scenarios can be subdivided into two types; policy scenarios and environmental scenarios. A policy scenario describes possible variants or 'worlds' for a specific policy, whereas an environmental scenario describes different possible contexts in which a variety of policies can be 'tested'. Environmental scenarios can be made once and then used for different policies; they are nonspecific to a particular type of policy. Different economic scenarios can be used to test all sorts of policies, from educational policy to employment policy and traffic congestion. This use of environmental scenarios is referred to as wind tunnelling; policy proposals are tested for their ability to perform in different possible future environments.

A final choice for scenario builders is the amount of 'policy intelligence' to build into the scenarios. Traditionally, scenarios are considered policy neutral; this means that in building the scenarios, there is no room for policymakers to change course when they see matters become worse. They do not correct along the way or take measures to compensate for negative effects of the scenario. Therefore, policy-neutral scenarios typically produce 'extremes', and a frequent critique is that such extremes will never occur in practice because policymakers correct along the way. Scenario builders often argue that the extremes help policymakers see the route they are on while critics counter that the extremes of policy-neutral scenarios result in extreme cases that

'real' policymakers do not take seriously because they consider them too unrealistic. However, it is perfectly possible to design mildly policy-rich scenarios and take the learning capacity of policymakers at least somewhat into account – for instance, by 'allowing' policymakers in the narrative of the scenario to correct the most negative aspects of the scenario and 'make the most of it' within the bounds of the driving forces.

There are many other methods for futures studies apart from scenario studies (Bell 2003; Slaughter 2005; Glenn and Gordon 2006). These methods can be applied in the approaches of both forecasting and foresight. We will briefly discuss several of them.

Trend extrapolation: researchers set out values on a timeline and extrapolate these historic trends into the future. The extrapolation can be linear or more dynamic, and often, a variety of deviations from the trends are also projected. This creates a 'channel' in which the trend will probably move but also leaves room for variation.

Modeling: researchers construct a model of a real-world social system in which the different variables that are considered typical for the system are related to each other. Variables respond to each other, and the models can be highly sophisticated; some even argue that is nearly possible to build models that actually represent the reality of complex systems, but this remains contested. Models usually work in 'rounds' that represent fixed time periods; by running multiple rounds, the future of a system can be simulated. Different types of interactions of actors and factors can be simulated to see the variety of options a system can produce. This can be done deliberately to explore certain directions, but also in a Monte Carlo–type random selection. The model provides the researchers with a range of possible outcomes of the actual social system in a greater level of detail.

Scanning: The researcher analyses a large pile of possible sources to identify possible patterns. Sources may vary greatly, from mainstream news media such as newspapers, magazines or television programs to obscure blogs and Twitter messages. Researchers can also look for more scientific sources, including expert websites, publications and academic research programs that reflect the development in expert fields.

Emerging issues: This type of analysis somewhat resembles 'scanning' but deliberately sets out to look beyond the current lines of reporting. The idea is to look beyond the current discourse to notice possible disturbances or signs of new developments early on. In hindsight, most unexpected 'path-breaking' developments had already been developing for years outside the line of sight of 'normal' research. Usually, the identification of emerging issues requires looking in different places, talking to different people and looking at other types of sources. For example, some researchers look at art house movies, visit new places, read blogs or invite groups they usually would not talk to.

Signposting: This method identifies triggers, signs or thresholds of the emergence of a possible future that can act as a warning that a particular scenario is becoming reality (Walker et al. 2012, 2013; Splint and Van Wijck 2012). Signposting includes an overview of several possible futures that can be translated into pathways for which signs can be distinguished. The signs can help warn policymakers early so they can respond in a timely fashion. At the same time, naming the signs also generates awareness of the possibility – or even inevitability – of surprise.

Trends and Developments in the Fields of Futures Studies

One development in the world of forecasting is that the dramatically expanding capacity of computer power is enabling wider and 'deeper' models. Forecasters argue that this allows them to do two things: they can map more elaborate paths and become more accurate in the developments they forecast. Widening the forecast means that more variables and relations can be

entered into the model to provide more detail in the model or to model wider ground. On the issue of accuracy, forecasters point at the now-emerging ability to map more complex relations and to consider many or most – or some argue 'all' – possible options of a causal relation (Bloemen et al. 2014; Bloemen et al. 2019; Haasnoot et al. 2013, 2012; Groves and Lempert 2007).

Furthermore, if computer capacity grows even further, and transaction costs of calculation become almost nonexistent, forecasters argue that they can consider all possible dynamics in a complex system. This would mean that they can model all possible futures of a complex system and forecast all the possible consequences – through all the possible causal interactions – of an intervention. Extrapolation remains the principle of forecasting, but because the extrapolation can be done in with a limitless number of options, the extrapolation can be 'whole'. The hypothetical outcome of this development is a model that is not predictive in the sense that it 'knows' the future but that is able to map all the possibilities of a system.

It is important to note that this relates to fundamental debate about complexity; can a complex system model be modeled in full, or will emergence and reflexivity inherently produce unforeseen turns and developments in the system that render each model at some point limited and outdated?

There are also developments in the world of foresight. One of the problems of the typical two-axes scenario method is that although it opens a debate about the future, it inherently narrows it also; the method reduces the future to two so-called 'core uncertainties' that produce four very distinct directions for the future or future worlds (Van Asselt et al. 2007; Van der Duin and Van der Steen 2012). Even though this opens up the thinking about possible futures, it also lays a heavy burden on the choice for the core uncertainties (Van der Steen 2016). For most wicked policy issues, there are not two but many more 'core uncertainties'. A more fundamental version of that same critique is that it is inherently uncertain what the core uncertainties should be. Some will argue that this is beside the point of a foresight study; accuracy is not the purpose of such a process; it is the active engagement of a group with possible futures that matters. At the same time, it is evident that the conversation is guided by the choice of scenarios; that is why, in the field of foresight studies, attempts are made to find new means to systematically cover a wider range of uncertainties and ignite a broader and richer conversation about possible futures (Van der Duin and Van der Steen 2012).

Interesting also are attempts to link foresight to new technologies such as virtual reality and serious gaming but also to other modes to make scenarios experiential (e.g., Selin et al. 2015; Rijkens-Klomp 2012). Such methods allow for a deeper and more interactive 'experience' of possible futures that moves the process from an intellectual conversation about the future towards a more action-oriented one with possible futures (Van der Steen 2016; Rijkens-Klomp 2012; Wiebe et al. 2018). Examples of this are simulations in which adults can 'experience' a day in their current home but in the conditions of a seventy-year-old with minor disabilities; this is part of program to incentive adults to be more aware of financial preparations for old age and, more specifically, the benefits of building or redesigning homes in such a way that they can accommodate future modifications easily. This is an example of an issue that people understand on a cognitive level but that only becomes 'real' and consequential when people experience it for themselves and in their own home. It is not enough for them to see images of possible futures or to study a spreadsheet or text that tells them about it; they need to 'live' the future(s) in order to feel the urgency to act and to weigh options for doing so.

Also interesting are the attempts to apply the repertoire of forecasting to massive amounts of qualitative data: e.g., by using software to analyze patterns in narratives or in images about the future, in media reports, social media posts or accounts by large populations of 'ordinary' people who use self-reporting apps (e.g., the Cynefin Sensemaker App). That allows for the

development of 'big meaning', the use of qualitative data to find apparent patterns in how people see possible futures and to find weak signals or early warnings of emergent developments (Van der Steen et al. 2013). That may allow researchers to see patterns in highly complex patterns through a combination of forecasting methods and qualitative data.

An important challenge for the field of foresight is how to navigate the balance between creativity and facts in a world where post-truth, alternative facts, and fact-free thinking have become more common (Nehme et al. 2012; Rijkens-Klomp 2012; Hoppe 2010). Foresight inherently involves a combination of fact and fiction, in the sense that participants and researchers develop possible futures in a creative process that looks beyond mere facts (Nelson et al. 2008; Cairns et al. 2006). Discontinuity requires imagination, and even though that might be done in a systematic manner, it remains a problematic basis for policy study and political debate (Van der Steen and Van Twist 2013; Van der Steen et al. 2015; Van der Steen 2008; Groombridge 2006). What exactly discerns a foresights study from a politically motivated 'alternative truth'? Foresight studies cannot do without creativity and imagination but must at the same find an anchor to show for validity and methodological rigor.

A final noteworthy development in the field of forecasting is the attempt to tighten the link between possible pathways of the system and required policy interventions (Haasnoot et al. 2013, 2012; Walker et al. 2013; Bloemen et al. 2010; Bloemen 2018; Biesbroek et al. 2010; McCray et al. 2010).

The adaptive pathways approach to climate adaptation policy in the Netherlands is an example of this. Extensive forecast models have projected a set of possible paths of the climate system (in this case, in the Netherlands) and have identified signals and signposts that show on which of the paths reality is developing (Bloemen 2018; Bloemen et al. 2019). If signals show that the system is moving onto a different pathway, an 'automated' policy response is triggered that sets in motion the predefined required policies for that particular path. The idea of this concept is that not only the development of the system, but also the package of policy interventions is predesigned and optimized by using models to 'test' for its consequences (Walker et al. 2010).

This is a further extension of the use of forecasting models, beyond mere 'knowledge for policy' into the model as policy; policy, as an automated response, is designed into the model (Haasnoot et al. 2012). This brings policymaking up to par with other automated 'decisions', such as automated trading on the stock market or automated safety locks in critical systems. At the same time, this is also a problematic and highly political development since the decision-making is transferred into the forecast model.

Conclusion: Using Systemic Studies of the Future in Policy Formulation and Decision-Making

Thinking about the future is inherently done in the plural. There is not one future; there are many possible and plausible futures. The purpose of good anticipatory work is to generate a range of possible futures that are beyond the continuation of the patterns of the past and present. These patterns are important and, to some extent, will shape the future, but futures are not limited to these patterns; the future is 'open but not empty' (WRR 2010). The future is an infinite number of possibilities which are not equally likely, plausible or preferable. The keys to conducting good anticipatory work are to take discontinuities and the width of possibilities into account, to be able to prioritize and filter out the most important options and to relate these options meaningfully to the current discourse in policy formulation.

Systematically studying the future can provide important insights for policy formulation and decision-making. This can be done directly, when futures studies provide 'knowledge for policy',

but also indirectly, when the participation of policy makers in anticipatory work opens up their time horizon and makes them more inclined to take future dynamics into account. Studying the future work can help policymakers come up with better solutions for policy problems; more importantly, it helps them identify the problems, solutions and working conditions of the future.

In this chapter, we have presented a variety of methods used to systematically study unknown futures as part of the policy process. These methods are well constituted in a professional body of knowledge and practice, and some of them are described in quite strict terms. Taking these methods seriously is important for doing future studies.

However, as Bell (2003) argues, tools and methods are only as good as the person or team that is applying them. In the end, good future-oriented policy work inherently depends on the person or team doing it. Imagination, analytical capacity, leadership and listening capacity are all part of the varied skillset that is required to conduct good anticipatory work. Good anticipatory policy work needs professionals who understand both the context of futures studies and the dynamics of the policy process.

References

Andersson, J. (2010). Future studies for a new era-experiences from the Swedish institute for futures studies. In *WRR (2010). Uit zicht: toekomstverkennen met beleid*. Amsterdam: Amsterdam University Press.

Armstrong, J.S. (ed.) (2001). *Principles of forecasting: A handbook for researchers and practitioners*. New York: Springer.

Bell, W. (2003). *Foundations of futures studies*. New Brunswick, NJ: Transaction Publishers.

Biesbroek, G. Robbert, R.J. Swart, T.R. Carter, C. Cowan, T. Henrichs, H. Mela, M.D. Morecroft, & D. Rey (August 2010). Europe adapts to climate change: Comparing national adaptation strategies. *Global Environmental Change*, 20 (3), pp. 440–450. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.gloenvcha.2010.03.005.

Bloemen, P., T. Reeder, C. Zevenbergen, J. Rijke, & A. Kingsborough (2018). Lessons learned from applying adaptation pathways in flood risk management and challenges for the further development of this approach. *Mitigation and Adaptation Strategies for Global Change*, 23 (7), pp. 1083–1108. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11027-017-9773-9.

Bloemen, P.J.T.M., F. Hammer, M.J. van der Vlist, P. Grinwis, & J. van Alphen (2019). DMDU into Practice: Adaptive Delta Management in The Netherlands. In V.A.W.J. Marchau, W.E. Walker, P.J.T.M. Bloemen, and S.W. Popper (eds.), *Decision making under deep uncertainty: From theory to practice*, pp. 321–351. Cham: Springer International Publishing. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-05252-2_14.

Bressers, N., M. van Twist & E. ten Heuvelhof (2013). Exploring the temporal dimension in policy evaluation studies. *Policy Sciences*, 46 (1), pp. 23–37.

Brown, N., B. Rappert & A. Webster (eds.) (2000). *Contested futures: A sociology of prospective techno-science*. Aldershot: Ashgate.

Burt, G. & K. van der Heijden (2003). First steps: Towards purposeful activities in scenario thinking and future studies. *Futures*, 35 (10), pp. 1011–1026.

Cairns, G., G. Wright, K. van der Heijden, R. Bradfield & G. Burt (2006). Enhancing foresight between agencies: Issues in the use of scenario thinking to overcome fragmentation. *Futures*, 38 (8), pp. 1010–1025.

Chan, L. & T. Daim (2012). Exploring the impact of technology foresight studies on innovation: Case of BRIC countries. *Futures*, 44 (6), pp. 515–654.

Chermack, T. (2004). Improving decision-making with scenario planning. *Futures*, 36 (3), pp. 295–309.

Colson, A. & M. Corm (2006). Futures studies in the European Union's new member states. *Foresight*, 8 (3), pp. 55–64.

DaCosta, O., P. Warnke, C. Cagnin & F. Scapolo (2008). The impact of foresight on policymaking: Insights from the FORLEARN mutual learning process. *Technology Analysis and Strategic Management*, 20 (3).

Dammers, E. (2000). *Leren van de toekomst: over de rol van scenario's bij strategische beleidsvorming*, dissertatie. Delft: Eburon.

Fuerth, L.S. (2009). Foresight and anticipatory governance. *Foresight*, 11 (4), pp. 14–32.

Glenn, J.C. & T.J. Gordon (2006). *Futures research methodology: The Millennium Project, CD-ROM, Version 2.0*. New York: The United Nations University.

Groonbridge, B. (2006). Parliament and the future: Learning from Finland. *The Political Quarterly*, 77 (2), pp. 273–280.

Groves, D.G. & R.J. Lempert (2007). A new analytic method for finding policy-relevant scenarios. *Global Environmental Change*, 17 (2007), pp. 73–85.

Habegger, B. (2009). Strategic foresight in public policy: Reviewing the experiences of the UK, Singapore, and the Netherlands. *Futures*, 42 (1), pp. 49–58.

Hart, P. 't. & K. Tindall (eds.) (2009). *Framing the global economic downturn: Crisis rhetoric and the politics of recessions*. Canberra: ANU E-Press.

Ho, P. (2012). Governing for the future: What governments can do. Keynote Speech at the Anzsog Annual Conference 2012, 26 July, Wellington, New Zealand.

Hoppe, R. (2010). From 'knowledge use' towards 'boundary work': Sketch of an emerging new agenda for inquiry into policy-science interaction. In R.J. in 't Veld (ed.), *Knowledge democracy: Consequences for science, politics and media*. Berlin: Springer.

Inayatullah, S. (2005). Causal layered analysis: Post-structuralism as method. In R.A. Slaughter (ed.), *The knowledge base of futures studies: Professional edition*. Washington DC: Foresight International.

Janoff, S. & M. Weisbord (2006). Future search as 'real-time' action research. *Futures*, 38 (6), August, pp. 716–722.

Klomp, N.R. (2012). Barriers and levers to future exploration in practice experiences in policy-making. *Futures*, 44 (5), pp. 431–439.

Klooster, S.A. van 't & M.B.A. van Asselt (2006). Practicing the scenario-axes technique. *Futures*, 38 (1), pp. 15–30.

Könnölä, T., A. Salo, C. Cagnin, V. Carabias & E. Vilkkumaa (2012). Facing the future: Scanning, synthesizing and sense-making in horizon scanning. *Science and Public Policy*, 39 (2), pp. 222–231.

Kuosa, T. (2011). *Practicing strategic foresight in government: The cases of Finland, Singapore and European Union*. RSIS Monograph No. 19. Singapore, Booksmith: S. Rajaratnam School of International Studies of Nanyang Technological University.

Nehme, C.C., M. de Miranda Santos, L.F. Filho & G.M. Coelho (2012). Challenges in communicating the outcomes of a foresight study to advise decision-makers on policy and strategy. *Science and Public Policy*, 39 (2), pp. 245–257.

Nelson, N., A. Geltzer & S. Hilgartner (2008). Introduction: The anticipatory state: Making policy-relevant knowledge about the future. *Science and Public Policy*, 35 (8), pp. 546–550.

Noordegraaf, M., M. van der Steen & M. van Twist (2014). Fragmented or connective professionalism? Strategies for professionalizing the ambiguous work of policy strategists. *Public Administration*, 92 (1), pp. 21–38. doi: 10.1111/padm.12018.

Novaky, E. (2006). Action oriented futures studies in Hungary. *Futures*, 38 (6), August, pp. 685–695.

Ogilvy, J.A. (2002). *Creating better futures: Scenario planning as a tool for a better tomorrow*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.

Paillard, S. (2006). Futures studies and public decision in Sweden. *Futures*, 38 (1), pp. 67–73.

Riedy, C. (2009). The influence of futures work on public policy and sustainability. *Foresight*, 11 (5), pp. 40–56.

Sardar, Z. (ed.) (1999). *Rescuing all our futures: The future of futures studies*. Westport, CT: Praeger.

Schwartz, P. (1996). *The art of the long view: Planning for the future in an uncertain world*. New York: Currency Doubleday.

Selin, C. (2006). Trust and illusive force of scenarios. *Futures*, 38 (1), February, pp. 1–14.

Slaughter, R.A. (ed.) (2005). *The knowledge base of futures studies: Professional edition*. Washington, DC: Foresight International.

Slaughter, R.A. (ed.) (2007). *The state of play in the futures field: Final report, foundation for the future*. Canberra: Foresight International.

Van Asselt, M.B.A., A. Faas, F. van der Molen & S.A. Veenman (eds.) (2010). *Uit zicht. Toekomstverkennen met beleid*. Amsterdam: Amsterdam University Press.

Van Asselt, M.B.A., J. Mesman & S.A. van 't Klooster (2007). Dealing with prognostic uncertainty. *Futures*, 39 (6), pp. 669–684.

Van der Duin, P.A., J. Dirven, C. Hazeu, E. van de Linde & P. Rademaker (2010). On the use of studies of the future for organizational change in Dutch government ministries. *Foresight*, 12 (4), pp. 23–36.

Van der Duin, P.A. & Van der Steen, M. (2012). Looking back on looking forward: Introductory article to the special issue on evaluating futures research. *Futures*, 44 (5), pp. 415–514.

Van der Duin, P.A., R. van Oirschot, H. Kotey & E. Vreeling (2009). To govern is to foresee: An exploratory study into the relationship between futures research and strategy and policy processes at Dutch Ministries. *Futures*, 41 (9), pp. 607–618.

Van der Heijden, K. (2005). *Scenarios: The art of strategic conversation*. Sussex: John Wiley & Sons.

Van der Steen, M. (2008). Ageing or silvering: Political debate about ageing in the Netherlands. *Science and Public Policy*, 35 (8), pp. 575–583.

Van der Steen, M., J. Scherpenisse, M.J.W. van Twist, E. Ovaa & W. van den Boogaard (2013). *Early signals, timely strategy, the early warning system at the Dutch Rijkswaterstaat*. The Hague: NSOB.

Van der Steen, M., M.J.W. van Twist, M. van der Vlist & R. Demkes (2010). Exploring the future through creative competition: The case of the RWS2020-project. *Foresight*, 12(5), pp. 41–57.

Van der Steen, M., M.J.W. van Twist, M. van der Vlist & R. Demkes (2011). Integrating futures studies with organizational development: Design options for the scenario project 'RWS2020'. *Futures*, 43 (3), pp. 337–347.

Van Notten, P.W.F. (2005). *Writing on the wall: Scenario development in times of discontinuity*. Boca Rotan, FL.

Veenman, S. A. (2013). Futures studies and uncertainty in public policy: A case study on the ageing population in the Netherlands. *Futures*, 53, pp. 42–52.

Voros, J. (2003). A generic foresight process framework. *Foresight*, 5 (3), pp. 10–21.

Walker, W.E., M. Haasnoot & J.H. Kwakkel (2013). Adapt or perish: A review of planning approaches for adaptation under deep uncertainty. *Sustainability*, 5, pp. 955–979.

Walker, W.E., R.J. Lempert & J.H. Kwakkel (2012). *Deep uncertainty*. Delft: Delft University of Technology and RAND Santa Monica.

Wilkinson, A. & R. Kupers (2014). *The essence of scenarios: Learning from the Shell experience*. Amsterdam: Amsterdam University Press.

WRR (2010). *Uit zicht: toekomstverkennen met beleid*. Amsterdam: Amsterdam University Press.

Yoda, T. (2011). Perceptions of domain experts on impact of foresight on policy making: The case of Japan. *Technological Forecasting & Social Change*, 78 (3), pp. 431–447.

21

FORMAL PROBLEM STRUCTURING TOOLS AND MULTI-CRITERIA DECISION ANALYSIS

Mika Marttunen, Judit Lienert and Valerie Belton

Structuring problems for multi-criteria decision analysis (MCDA) has attracted increasing attention over the past 20 years from both a conceptual and a practical perspective. In this chapter, we describe a set of widely used formal problem structuring tools and how they can be applied to frame and analyze complex decision situations. The following methods are considered: cognitive and causal maps, DPSIR diagrams, scenario planning, stakeholder analysis and SWOT. We also describe how these methods can be combined with MCDA and discuss experiences and challenges related to their joint use.

Introduction

Structuring problems for multi-criteria decision analysis (MCDA) has attracted increasing attention over the past 20 years from both a conceptual and a practical perspective as a tool for aiding decision-making. This is reflected in a significant growth in the number of published applications which use a formal approach to problem structuring in combination with an analytic method for multi-criteria analysis. The combined use of problem structuring methods (PSMs) and MCDA was investigated in an extensive review by Marttunen et al. (2017) and is summarized here.

In total, 333 articles published during 2000–2015 were identified and analyzed in the article. From these, 68 articles covering all the potential PSM-MCDA combinations were selected and studied in detail. The study aimed to answer the following questions:

How common is the joint use of the methods?
How are they combined, and how is the information produced by PSMs used in MCDA?
What are the key benefits of these combinations, and what problems have been reported?
How can MCDA practices be enhanced by using PSMs?

The literature review covered in the article identified eight PSMs (cognitive and causal maps, DPSIR, scenario planning, SSM, stakeholder analysis, strategic choice approach, SODA and SWOT (see explanations in Table 21.1) and seven MCDA methods (AHP, ANP, ELECTRE, MAUT, MAVT, PROMETHEE and TOPSIS; see explanations in Marttunen et al., 2017) used or promoted as effective means to improve decision-making.

DOI: 10.4324/9781003163954-26

Table 21.1 List of Problem Structuring Methods and the References

Method/Methodology	*Description*	*Reference*
Cognitive maps (CMs) and group maps (GMs)	A CM is a graphical representation which captures how an individual perceives a particular issue in terms of key aspects of the system and perceived causal relationships between these, with the aim of improving understanding and informing decision-making. A group map is the integration of a number of individual CMs or a map created in a facilitated process involving a number of people.	Eden (1992)
DPSIR framework, PSR framework	A causal framework for describing the interactions between society and the environment. DPSIR stands for driving forces, pressures, state, impact, responses. An extension of the PSR framework used by the OECD.	OECD (1993) EEA (1995)
Scenario planning (SP)	Scenario planning, also called scenario thinking or scenario analysis, is a strategic planning method to identify and analyze plausible but not necessarily probable or desirable futures and to use these to help identify appropriately flexible long-term strategies.	Schoemaker (1995)
Soft systems methodology (SSM)	Action-oriented process of inquiry into a problematic situation using different methods to structure the discussion and enhance learning. Commonly used methods are Rich pictures, root definitions; customers, actors, transformation, worldview, environment (CATWOE); PQR (What, How, Why) and 3 *E*s (efficacy, efficiency, effectiveness).	Checkland and Scholes (1990)
Stakeholder analysis	Process of identifying the individuals or groups that are likely to affect or be affected by a proposed action. Results in specific participation strategies for each group.	Grimble and Wellard (1997)
Strategic assumptions surfacing and testing (SAST)	Aims to surface, map and evaluate underlying assumptions that managers (stakeholders) bring with them (often subconsciously) in relation to an issue of strategic concern and to examine the relationship between these assumptions and potential policies with a view to formulating more robust and potentially novel or previously unforeseen policies.	Mitroff and Emshoff (1979)
Strategic options development and analysis (SODA)	Supports a group to construct a shared graphical representation of a problematic situation as a causal map (a group map, or GM) and to use this to explore potential strategies with respect to a complex system of goals. A GM can be created by merging the CMs of a number of individuals or by using Oval mapping in a workshop environment.	Ackermann and Eden (2010)
SWOT analysis	Tool for identifying criteria of the internal (strengths, weaknesses) and external (opportunities, threats) operational environment and for determining strategies.	Sarsby (2016)

This chapter summarizes some of the main results of the review regarding five of the seven PSMs studied in the original article: namely, cognitive mapping, DPSIR, scenario planning, stakeholder analysis and SWOT (Table 21.1). Some of these PSMs are well known in OR/management science (e.g., cognitive mapping), whereas others have not received much attention (e.g., DPSIR). It should be noted that different PSMs use different terms for issues which are identified and structured; we use the term 'criterion' as a synonym for factor, variable and objective. To combine MCDA with PSMs in practice, a good understanding of the basics of MCDA is needed. We refer interested readers unfamiliar with MCDA to textbooks such as Belton and Stewart, 2002 or Eisenführ et al., 2010.

Multi-Criteria Decision Analysis Methods and Need for Problem Structuring

The first stage in any decision process is the understanding of the broader context and characteristics of the problem (Figure 21.1). This includes the identification of stakeholders and their interests, concerns and hopes. During this diverging or opening-up phase, a comprehensive representation of the problem is developed which may be presented, for example, in the form of a cognitive or causal map, a means-end network or a value tree. MCDA is appropriate for well-structured problems. It does not, per se, include any specific tools for the problem structuring phase, although nowadays, it is increasingly applied in concert with problem structuring methods (Marttunen et al., 2019).

In earlier MCDA literature, the problem structuring phase generally received less attention than the MCDA evaluation. This began to change in the late 1980s (Belton and Stewart, 2010; Franco and Montibeller, 2010). A particularly notable development which had significant impact on the field was value-focused thinking (VFT) (Keeney, 1988, 1996). VFT is a holistic approach which incorporates a systematic procedure to support the identification and structuring of the decision-makers' values and objectives as well as the creative generation and evaluation of alternatives. Another holistic methodology is structured decision-making (SDM) (Gregory et al., 2012). SDM

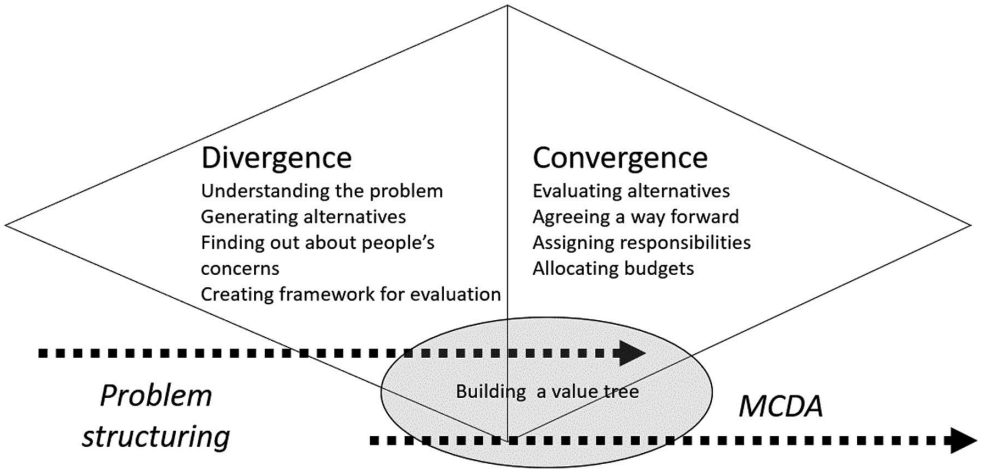


Figure 21.1 Diverging and Converging Phases of Decision-Making and Stages in Building a Value Tree

embeds several tools and practices for supporting a collaborative application of MCDA, combining methods from decision analysis and applied ecology with insights from behavioral research.

Problems Structuring Methods and MCDA

Stakeholder Analysis and MCDA

MCDA is increasingly seen as a powerful approach to support collaborative processes (e.g., Lennox et al., 2011; Marttunen et al., 2015) and the review of Marttunen et al. (2017) indicates that stakeholder involvement in MCDA is now common, particularly in environmental planning. Several MCDA approaches emphasize the importance of stakeholder participation: namely, the decision analysis interview approach (Marttunen and Hämäläinen, 1995, 2008), stakeholder multi-criteria decision aid (Banville et al., 1998) social multi-criteria evaluation (SMCE) (Munda, 2004), deliberative multi-criteria evaluation (Proctor and Drechsler, 2006) and multi-actor multi-criteria analysis (MAMCA) (Macharis et al., 2009).

In social multi-criteria evaluation (SMCE), there is a strong focus on understanding social actors' needs and their interrelationships in the problem structuring phase (Munda, 2004), and a careful stakeholder analysis is a vital part of SMCE (e.g., Gamboa, 2006; Borzoni et al., 2014). Lienert et al. (2013) combined a thorough stakeholder analysis (Grimble and Wellard, 1997) with a social network analysis (Kenis and Schneider, 1991), using the results in a participatory MCDA for water infrastructure planning (Lienert et al., 2015).

Stakeholder identification and analysis is highly relevant in MCDA because it explicitly recognizes multiple actors and their objectives (Table 21.2). MCDA methods do not explicitly incorporate any techniques for this task. It is important to be aware that engaging stakeholders always raises an ethical question related to the treatment of the different stakeholders in an MCDA process (Banville et al., 1998).

Cognitive Maps, Group Maps and MCDA

Cognitive maps (CMs) and group maps (GMs) have been applied primarily in psychology and the behavioral sciences, management, politics and economics (Kpoumié et al., 2012). They have been increasingly used to structure and help explain complex social and environmental problems and associated decision-making (Tikkanen et al., 2006). CMs are generally records of verbal accounts of issues given in interviews. They are networks of ideas linked by arrows; the network is coded from what a person says (Eden and Ackermann, 2004).

Table 21.2 The Pros and Cons of Stakeholder Analysis and Its Combination with MCDA

Pros and Cons	*How Stakeholder Analysis Benefits MCDA*	*Challenges and Issues to Be Aware of When Combining*
+ Easy to use. + Systematic if done properly. – Subject to criticism for lack of academic rigor. – Difficult if little initial knowledge of stakeholders.	Helps identify key stakeholders to be engaged in MCDA. Encourages consideration of a range of perspectives.	Decision about who should be engaged in MCDA can still be difficult.

(+ positive aspect, – negative aspect)

Table 21.3 The Pros and Cons of Cognitive Maps (CMs)/Group Maps (GMs) and Their Combination with MCDA

Pros and Cons	*How CMs/GMs Benefit MCDA*	*Challenges and Issues to Be Aware of When Combining*
+ Helps surface and structure an individual's or a group's collective ideas using people's natural language. + Helps explain different perspectives. – Skillful facilitator(s) needed in complex cases. – Specialist software needed to analyze large maps. – Merging individual cognitive maps to generate a group map is challenging.	Improved understanding of problem and different perspectives can help define the goal of MCDA, build a value tree and develop alternatives. A detailed map can serve as 'organizational memory' and support use of a simpler MCDA (e.g., smaller value tree).	Defining a value tree directly from the CM/GM can be challenging and/or laborious.

(+ positive aspect, – negative aspect)

CMs/GMs and MCDA methods have typically been deployed alone (Franco and Lord, 2011). The joint use cases identified in Marttunen et al. (2017) relate to business, environmental and social issues, covering both the public and private sector. MCDA benefits from CMs/GMs in several ways (Table 21.3): CMs/GMs stimulate participants to structure their ideas using natural language (e.g., Montibeller et al., 2008); they facilitate communication and problem structuring (Wolfslehner and Vacik, 2011); they enable people to voice their views and even to persuade others (Franco and Lord, 2011). CMs/GMs can also reduce framing biases (Hodgkinson et al., 1999, and comments by Wright and Goodwin, 2002; Hodgkinson et al., 2002).

DPSIR Framework and MCDA

The pressure-state-response (PSR) framework was firstly proposed by the OECD for analyzing environmental issues in 1970. Its extension, the driving forces-pressure-state-impact-response (DPSIR) framework was developed in the 1990s to help better structure and organize environmental criteria and environment-society interconnections to assist policymakers in an understandable way (OECD, 1993; Smeets and Weterings, 1999).

DPSIR has been increasingly used for environmental issues and research projects (Meyar-Naimi and Vaez-Zadeh, 2012; Tscherning et al., 2012). Because DPSIR simplifies complex environmental relationships, it has been subject to several criticisms (Tscherning et al., 2012; Gari et al., 2015). Subsequently, it has been modified in several ways: for instance, by adding a welfare element (Cooper, 2013; Kelble et al., 2013; O'Higgins et al., 2014). Alternatively, DPSIR has been integrated with other methods, such as system dynamic modeling (Lee and Lin, 2014).

Most identified DPSIR-MCDA cases in Marttunen et al. (2017) relate to water or wetland management; others concern forest management, urban or land use planning and environmental status assessments. DPSIR can provide a powerful framework to aid initial understanding, structuring and communication of a complex environmental issue (Table 21.4). DPSIR helps visualize cause-effects and improves communication (Wolfslehner and Vacik, 2011; Bottero and Ferretti, 2010; Johnston et al., 2013).

However, it is limited with regard to a rigorous scientific analysis, and the integration with MCDA can be challenging because the DPSIR framework as such cannot be used. If the

Table 21.4 The Pros and Cons of the DPSIR Framework and Its Combination with MCDA

Pros and Cons	*How DPSIR Benefits MCDA*	*Challenges and Issues to Be Aware of When Combining*
+ Helps identify key relationships between environment and society. – Deciding to which category a criterion belongs (e.g., state or impact) can be difficult. – Unidirectional cause-and-effect relations (no feedback loops).	Supports criteria identification. In particular, impact criteria are good candidates for a value tree. Thinking about driving forces, pressures, states and impacts supports development of alternatives. DPSIR provides a useful framework to calculate an index.	Difficult to derive criteria from DPSIR criteria. Need to be selective in using DPSIR criteria in a value tree. Uncritical use of criteria can result in double counting of criteria, which can provide wrong or misleading MCDA results when aggregating over criteria.

(+ positive aspect, – negative aspect)

whole framework is used in sustainability assessments, we suggest that the results of different DPSIR categories be presented separately and not aggregated, unless categories are thoroughly rechecked by MCDA specialists to avoid double counting.

SWOT and MCDA

SWOT (strengths, weaknesses, opportunities and threats) was originally developed to inform the generation of organizational strategies. SWOT and MCDA have been combined in many application areas, including agriculture and forestry (Shrestha et al., 2004), bioenergy (Catron et al., 2013), information technology (Kahraman et al., 2007), tourism (Akbulak and Cengiz, 2014), traffic (Bottero, 2015) and water resources management (Srdjevic et al., 2012).

Marttunen et al. (2017) identified four different ways of combining SWOT and MCDA: (1) SWOT analysis is first carried out, relevant internal and external criteria are identified and their relative importances are determined using pairwise comparisons (e.g., Duchelle et al., 2012; Catron et al., 2013); (2) SWOT criteria are prioritized and used in the development of management strategies (Öztürk, 2015); (3) SWOT framework is used to evaluate existing alternatives (Scolozzi et al., 2014; Ekmekçioglu et al., 2011); (4) alternatives derived from SWOT are evaluated using MCDA (e.g., Terrados et al., 2009; Sevkli et al., 2012).

The combination of SWOT with MCDA is mutually beneficial and provides an effective framework in strategic decision-making (Kurttila et al., 2000). SWOT can benefit MCDA in several ways. Firstly, SWOT can bring added value to stakeholder involvement, supporting the development of a common language and providing a simple method to improve communication and learning (Kurttila et al., 2000; Kajanus et al., 2004; Nikodinoska et al., 2015). Secondly, SWOT helps better explain the decision situation and its underlying structure. Thirdly, it ensures that all relevant aspects are considered through the analysis of all SWOT criteria from both an internal and an external viewpoint. Fourthly, SWOT supports developing new strategies or alternatives using a TOWS matrix (Weihrich, 1982; Dyson, 2004), which confronts the elements of internal quadrants (strengths, weaknesses) with those of external quadrants (opportunities, threats) (e.g., Terrados et al., 2009; Sevkli et al., 2012). A SWOT-MCDA combination is also useful for visualization; in the four-quadrant SWOT diagram, the x-axis refers to internal

Table 21.5 The Pros and Cons of SWOT Analysis and Its Combination with MCDA

Pros and Cons	*How SWOT Benefits MCDA*	*Challenges and Issues to Be Aware of When Combining*
+ Easy to use, widely known. + Thinking about internal and external criteria improves overall understanding of decision situation. – Provides no means to determine the relative importance of criteria, which is needed for objectives used in MCDA.	Supports criteria identification and development of alternatives (using TOWS matrix).	Can be difficult to transform SWOT criteria to be appropriate for a value tree. Need to be selective in using SWOT criteria in a value tree. May not generate all relevant criteria.

(+ positive aspect, – negative aspect)

criteria (strengths, weaknesses) and the y-axis to external criteria (opportunities, threats), which can inform the development of the MCDA model (e.g., Kurttila et al., 2000).

The SWOT-MCDA approach also has shortcomings (Table 21.5). Deciding which SWOT group a criterion belongs to can be challenging. Ghazinoory et al. (2007) found that the internal and external criteria cannot always be classified as purely positive or negative because they contain both types of effects. These shortcomings of SWOT may have implications for the following MCDA. Another challenge for MCDA is how to operate with a high number of criteria which may be identified in SWOT if criteria are used as objectives. To avoid double counting of objectives or incorporating means objectives in MCDA (see textbooks, e.g., Eisenführ et al., 2010), SWOT criteria should be further processed (e.g., using PESTLE categories (political, economic, social, technological, legal, environmental) (Srdjevic et al., 2012) or a value-focused thinking approach (Kajanus et al., 2004).

Scenario Planning and MCDA

The integrated use of scenario planning and MCDA (the combined use of scenario analysis and multi-objective assessment) has been addressed in several articles (e.g., Durbach and Stewart, 2003; Montibeller et al., 2006; Ram et al., 2011; Karvetski et al., 2011a; Karvetski and Lambert, 2012; Stewart et al., 2013; Scholten et al., 2015; Ram 2020). The two approaches are complementary (Wright and Goodwin, 1999; Montibeller et al., 2006), and there are many mutual benefits when applied jointly. For instance, MCDA does not adequately deal with the many uncertainties that arise, especially in long-term strategic decision-making contexts, which, in turn, is the strength of scenario planning (Stewart et al., 2013). Stewart (1997, 2005) presents several technical issues and a thoughtful discussion concerning this integration, and Stewart et al. (2013) give a good overview of the mutual benefits.

Most studied cases combined qualitative participatory methods with quantitative models. Mostly a 'full' MCDA was also realized, including assigning weights to the criteria and calculating overall priority values for the alternatives. However, there are large differences in the realization of these phases and in the choice of MCDA methods. Some examples include stakeholder analysis (Lienert et al., 2015), SWOT (Leskinen et al., 2006) and value-focused thinking (Montibeller et al., 2006) to support the structuring phase, and MAVT (Ram and Montibeller, 2013; Scholten et al., 2015; Montibeller et al., 2006), AHP (Leskinen et al., 2006) and PROMETHEE (Kowalski et al., 2009) to evaluate the alternatives in different scenarios.

Table 21.6 The Pros and Cons of Scenario Planning and Its Combination with MCDA

Pros and Cons	*How Scenario Planning Benefits MCDA*	*Challenges and Issues to Be Aware of When Combining*
+ Encourages thinking about different possible futures. + Challenges people's conventional thinking. – Design of scenarios can be demanding and laborious. – No 'inbuilt' tools for comparing alternatives. – Skillful facilitator needed in complex cases.	Can broaden scope of MCDA to analyze problems with long time horizons and encourage creativity in developing new alternatives. Scenarios can be used to explore the robustness of alternatives.	Interpretation and elicitation of criteria importance weights can be challenging (depends on approach).

(+ positive aspect, – negative aspect)

The integration of MCDA and scenario analysis is promising but methodologically challenging (e.g., Kowalski et al., 2009; Ram and Montibeller, 2013). The combination adds an additional dimension to the already-extensive preparation required for scenario planning (e.g., Bizikova and Krcmar, 2015) and to potentially complex MCDA analyses (e.g., Lienert et al., 2015) (See Table 21.6). Possible comparisons of the outcomes of alternatives in each scenario may be time consuming and cognitively demanding (e.g., Montibeller et al., 2006; Ram et al., 2011). One difficulty in assessing the performance of strategies in scenario planning is that often they consist of sub-options which have to be considered simultaneously (e.g., Montibeller et al., 2006). Inclusion of the different perspectives of multiple decision-makers in group negotiation can add to the challenge (Ram et al., 2011). For instance, Scholten et al. (2015) carried out 40 independent MCDA calculations, one for each of four scenarios and each of ten stakeholders. To improve the efficiency of MCDA and to reduce the cognitive load of participants, Karvetski et al. (2011a, 2011b) developed an approach which simplifies the elicitation of preference weights, as the entire value function is not totally reconstructed for each scenario.

Discussion

Different Ways to Combine PSMs With MCDA

These methodologies and methods can be combined in several ways, as discussed in the general OR/MS literature (Mingers and Brocklesby, 1997; Kotiadis and Mingers, 2006; Mingers, 2007; Belton and Stewart, 2010). The main distinctions are whether the methodologies come from the same or different paradigms, the number of methodologies/methods used, whether whole methodologies are used or parts and how they are integrated.

Typically, the PSMs and MCDA are applied sequentially or in an integrated manner. When used sequentially, one or more PSMs inform the subsequent MCDA. This is most commonly used and, we found many examples. Examples applying a single PSM with MCDA include stakeholder analysis (Nordström et al., 2010), SWOT (Kurttila et al., 2000), DPSIR (Chung and Lee, 2009) and cognitive mapping (Bana e Costa et al., 2006). In 19 articles multiple PSMs were used (e.g., Petkov et al., 2007; Bana e Costa et al., 2014; Lienert et al., 2015).

The combination of scenario analysis and MCDA moves from a more independent consideration of the two perspectives to an integrated analysis. Initially, the options and the evaluation criteria are identified using MCDA; the scenarios which anticipate potential futures are constructed using scenario analysis. In the subsequent integrated analysis, the options are evaluated in the context of each scenario, and overall performances across scenarios are compared. Several SWOT-MCDA cases also used the two methods in an integrated way (see details in Marttunen et al. 2017).

The Contribution of PSMs to Problem Structuring for MCDA

Different methods have different purposes, and therefore several methods may be needed to cover all phases of problem structuring (Table 21.7).

Defining the frame: All methods support this phase to some extent. CMs and GMs are especially useful in complex decision situations as they are specifically designed to outline the decision situation and to support the formation of a shared understanding.

Identifying stakeholders: Stakeholder analysis provides a systematic way to identify key stakeholders and to define their roles and perspectives.

Identifying criteria: Cognitive and group maps have been used to develop a comprehensive set of criteria. They can also help identify fundamental objectives (which answer the question 'Why is that important?'; see Keeney, 1996) and distinguish them from means objectives (which answer a 'How can this be achieved?' question). Likewise, SWOT and DPSIR can help identify relevant criteria in a studied system. However, these criteria have to be transformed to fundamental objectives, and means objectives need to be excluded before they can be used in a value tree.

Developing alternatives: The DPSIR framework can stimulate thinking about alternatives because responses are considered in four different levels: driving forces, pressures, states and impacts. SWOT criteria can be used in the systematic generation of alternatives through the use of SWOT quadrants. Scenario planning can encourage creativity in developing new alternatives.

Table 21.7 Level of Support Provided by PSMs to Different Aspects of Problem Structuring for MCDA

	Stakeholder Analysis	*Cognitive Map / Group Map*	*DPSIR*	*SWOT*	*Scenario Planning*
Defining the frame					
Identifying stakeholders					
Identifying criteria					
Developing alternatives					
Identifying uncertainties					

	No support
	Some support
	Moderate support
	Strong support

(Estimates are tentative and reflect the achieved synergies if PSMs are used as typically described.)

Identifying uncertainties in the external environment: External SWOT criteria (opportunities and threats) can provide insights to scenario development. Each future scenario can have its own SWOT analysis. Scenario planning is a powerful method to explore external uncertainties.

Conclusions

Different PSM tools have different purposes, and therefore several methods are needed to address all phases of problem structuring. PSMs and MCDA are complementary methods, and when applied together, there are many synergies and mutual benefits. Combining PSMs and MCDA tools produces a richer view of the decision situation and provides a methodology which can better handle the various phases of decision-making. Identifying PSM-MCDA combinations which are most effective in specific decision situations is an important research topic.

There are also some limitations and challenges in combining PSMs and MCDA, most importantly relating to building a value tree and assigning importance weights to the criteria. The potential benefits of combining PSMs and MCDA methods are not yet fully recognized among MCDA practitioners and researchers, and we encourage our colleagues to further explore this in their work.

Acknowledgements

This chapter is based on the article which was published in Marttunen, M., Lienert, J., Belton, V. 'Structuring problems for Multi-criteria decision analysis in practice: A literature review of method combinations,' *European Journal of Operational Research,* 263(1), 1–17, 2017.

References

Ackermann, F. & Eden, C. 2010. *Strategic Options Development and Analysis*, London, Springer.

Akbulak, C. & Cengiz, T. 2014. Determining ecotourism strategies using A'WOT hybrid method: Case study of Troia Historical National Park, Çanakkale, Turkey. *International Journal of Sustainable Development & World Ecology*, 21, 380–388. doi:10.1080/13504509.2014.903383.

Bana e Costa, C. A., Fernandes, T. G. & Correia, P. V. D. 2006. Prioritisation of public investments in social infra-structures using multicriteria value analysis and decision conferencing: A case-study. *International Transactions in Operational Research*, 13, 279–297.

Bana e Costa, C. A., Lourenco, J. C., Oliveira, M. D. & Bana e Costa, J. C. 2014. A socio-technical approach for group decision support in public strategic planning: The Pernambuco PPA case. *Group Decision and Negotiation*, 23, 5–29. doi:10.1007/s10726-012-9326-2.

Banville, C., Landry, M., Martel, J. M. & Boulaire, C. 1998. A stakeholder approach to MCDA. *Systems Research and Behavioral Science*, 15, 15–32. doi:10.1002/(Sici)1099-1743(199801/02)15:1<15::Aid-Sres179>3.0.Co;2-B.

Belton, V. & Stewart, T. J. 2002. *Multiple Criteria Decision Analysis: An Integrated Approach*, Boston, Kluwer.

Belton, V. & Stewart, T. J. 2010. Problem structuring and multiple criteria decision analysis. In: Ehrgott, M., Figueira, J. R. & Greco, S. (eds.) *Trends in Multiple Criteria Decision Analysis*, New York, Springer.

Bizikova, L. & Krcmar, E. 2015. Integrated Scenario planning and multi-criteria decision analysis framework with application to forest planning. *Open Journal of Forestry*, 5, 139–153. doi:10.4236/ojf.2015.52014.

Borzoni, M., Rizzi, F. & Frey, M. 2014. Geothermal power in Italy: A social multi-criteria evaluation. *Renewable Energy,* 69, 60–73. doi:10.1016/j.renene.2014.03.026.

Bottero, M. 2015. A multi-methodological approach for assessing sustainability of urban projects. *Management of Environmental Quality: An International Journal*, 26, 138–154. doi:10.1108/meq-06-2014-0088.

Bottero, M. & Ferretti, V. 2010. An analytic network process-based approach for location problems the case of a new waste incinerator plant in the Province of Torino (Italy). *Journal of Multi-Criteria Decision Analysis*, 17, 63–84. doi:10.1002/mcda.456.

Catron, J., Stainback, G. A., Dwivedi, P. & Lhotka, J. M. 2013. Bioenergy development in Kentucky: A SWOT-ANP analysis. *Forest Policy and Economics*, 28, 38–43. doi:10.1016/j.forpol.2012.12.003.

Checkland, P. & Scholes, J. 1990. *Soft Systems Methodology in Action*, New York, John Wiley.

Chung, E. S. & Lee, K. S. 2009. Prioritization of water management for sustainability using hydrologic simulation model and multicriteria decision making techniques. *Journal of Environmental Management*, 90, 1502–15011. doi:10.1016/j.jenvman.2008.10.008.

Cooper, P. 2013. Socio-ecological accounting: DPSWR, a modified DPSIR framework, and its application to marine ecosystems. *Ecological Economics*, 94, 106–115. doi:10.1016/j.ecolecon.2013.07.010.

Duchelle, A. E., Guariguata, M. R., Less, G., Albornoz, M. A., Chavez, A. & Melo, T. 2012. Evaluating the opportunities and limitations to multiple use of Brazil nuts and timber in Western Amazonia. *Forest Ecology and Management*, 268, 39–48. doi:10.1016/j.foreco.2011.05.023.

Durbach, I. & Stewart, T. J. 2003. Integrating Scenario planning and goal programming. *Journal of Multi-Criteria Decision Analysis*, 12, 261–271. doi:10.1002/mcda.362.

Dyson, R. G. 2004. Strategic development and SWOT analysis at the University of Warwick. *European Journal of Operational Research*, 152, 631–640. doi:10.1016/S0377-2217(03)00062-6.

Eden, C. 1992. On the nature of Cognitive maps. *Journal of Management Studies*, 29, 261–265.

Eden, C. & Ackermann, F. 2004. Cognitive mapping expert views for policy analysis in the public sector. *European Journal of Operational Research*, 152 (3), 615–630.

EEA 1995. *Europe's Environment: The Dobris Assessment*. Copenhagen, European Environmental Agency.

Eisenführ, F., Weber, M. & Langer, T. 2010. *Rational Decision Making*. Berlin, Springer.

Ekmekçioglu, M., Can Kutlu, A. & Kahraman, C. 2011. A Fuzzy multi-criteria SWOT analysis: An application to nuclear power plant site selection. *International Journal of Computational Intelligence Systems*, 4, 583–595. doi:10.1080/18756891.2011.9727814.

Franco, L. A. & Lord, E. 2011. Understanding multi-methodology: Evaluating the perceived impact of mixing methods for group budgetary decisions. *Omega*, 39, 362–372. doi:10.1016/j.omega.2010.06.008.

Franco, L. A. & Montibeller, G. 2010. Facilitated modelling in operational research. *European Journal of Operational Research*, 205, 489–500. doi:10.1016/j.ejor.2009.09.030.

Gamboa, G. 2006. Social multi-criteria evaluation of different development scenarios of the Aysén region, Chile. *Ecological Economics*, 59, 157–170. doi:10.1016/j.ecolecon.2005.10.014.

Gari, S. R., Newton, A. & Icely, J. D. 2015. A review of the application and evolution of the DPSIR framework with an emphasis on coastal social-ecological systems. *Ocean & Coastal Management*, 103, 63–77. doi:10.1016/j.ocecoaman.2014.11.013.

Ghazinoory, S., Esmail Zadeh, A. & Memariani, A. 2007. Fuzzy SWOT analysis. *Journal of Intelligent & Fuzzy Systems*, 18 (1), 99–108.

Goodwin, P. & Wright, G. 2001. Enhancing strategy evaluation in Scenario planning: A role for decision analysis. *Journal of Management Studies*, 38, 1–16. doi:10.1111/1467-6486.00225.

Gregory, R., Failing, L., Harstone, M., Long, G., Mcdaniels, T. & Ohlson, D. 2012. *Structured Decision Making: A Practical Guide to Environmental Management Choices*, Chichester, Wiley-Blackwell.

Grimble, R. & Wellard, K. 1997. Stakeholder methodologies in natural resource management: A review of principles, contexts, experiences and opportunities. *Agricultural Systems*, 55, 173–193. doi:10.1016/S0308-521x(97)00006-1.

Hodgkinson, G. P., Bown, N. J., Maule, A. J., Glaister, K. W. & Pearman, A. D. 1999. Breaking the frame: An analysis of strategic cognition and decision making under uncertainty. *Strategic Management Journal*, 20, 977–985. doi:10.1002/(Sici)1097-0266(199910)20:10<977::Aid-Smj58>3.0.Co;2-X.

Hodgkinson, G. P., Maule, A. J., Bown, N. J., Pearman, A. D. & Glaister, K. W. 2002. Further reflections on the elimination of framing bias in strategic decision making. *Strategic Management Journal*, 23, 1069–1076. doi:10.1002/smj.266.

Johnston, R., Cools, J., Liersch, S., Morardet, S., Murgue, C., Mahieu, M., ZSuffa, I. & Uyttendaele, G. P. 2013. WETwin: A structured approach to evaluating wetland management options in data-poor contexts. *Environmental Science & Policy*, 34, 3–17. doi:10.1016/j.envsci.2012.12.006.

Kahraman, C., Demirel, N. C. & Demirel, T. 2007. Prioritization of e-government strategies using a SWOT-AHP analysis: The case of Turkey. *European Journal of Information Systems*, 16, 284–298. doi:10.1057/palgrave.ejis.3000679.

Kajanus, M., Kangas, J. & Kurttila, M. 2004. The use of value focused thinking and the A'WOT hybrid method in tourism management. *Tourism Management*, 25, 499–506. doi:10.1016/s0261-5177(03)00120-1.

Karvetski, C. W. & Lambert, J. H. 2012. Evaluating deep uncertainties in strategic priority-setting with an application to facility energy investments. *Systems Engineering*, 15, 483–493. doi:10.1002/sys.21215.

Karvetski, C. W., Lambert, J. H., Keisler, J. M. & Linkov, I. 2011a. Integration of decision analysis and scenario planning for coastal engineering and climate change. *IEEE Transactions on Systems, Man, and Cybernetics – Part A: Systems and Humans*, 41, 63–73.

Karvetski, C. W., Lambert, J. H. & Linkov, I. 2011b. Scenario and multiple criteria decision analysis for energy and environmental security of military and industrial installations. *Integrated Environmental Assessment and Management*, 7, 228–236. doi:10.1002/ieam.137.

Keeney, R. L. 1988. Building models of values. *European Journal of Operational Research*, 37, 149–157. doi:10.1016/0377-2217(88)90324-4.

Keeney, R. L. 1996. *Value-Focused Thinking: A Path to Creative Decisionmaking*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press.

Kelble, C. R., Loomis, D. K., Lovelace, S., Nuttle, W. K., Ortner, P. B., Fletcher, P., Cook, G. S., Lorenz, J. J. & Boyer, J. N. 2013. The EBM-DPSER conceptual model: Integrating ecosystem services into the DPSIR framework. *Plos One*, 8. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0070766.

Kenis, P. & Schneider, V. 1991. Policy networks and policy analysis: Scrutinizing a new analytical toolbox. In: Martin, B. & Mayntz, R. (eds.) *Policy Networks: Empirical Evidence and Theoretical Considerations*. Boulder, CO: Westview Press.

Kotiadis, K. & Mingers, J. 2006. Combining PSMs with hard OR methods: The philosophical and practical challenges. *Journal of the Operational Research Society*, 57, 856–867. doi:10.1057/palgrave.jors.2602147.

Kowalski, K., Stagl, S., Madlener, R. & Omann, I. 2009. Sustainable energy futures: Methodological challenges in combining scenarios and participatory multi-criteria analysis. *European Journal of Operational Research*, 197, 1063–1074. doi:10.1016/j.ejor.2007.12.049.

Kpoumié, A., Damart, S. & Tsoukiàs, A. 2012. *Integrating Cognitive Mapping Analysis into Multi-Criteria Decision Aiding*. Laboratoire d 'Analyses et Modélisation de Systèmes pour l 'Aide à la Décision.

Kurttila, M., Pesonen, M., Kangas, J. & Kajanus, M. 2000. Utilizing the analytic hierarchy process AHP in SWOT. *Forest Policy and Economics*, 1, 41–52.

Lee, M.-T. & Lin, T.-F. 2014. Developing an interactive decision support system for sustainable coastal tourism of Cijin, Taiwan International Symposium on Computer, Consumer and Control. IEEE Computer Society. Taichung.

Lennox, J., Proctor, W. & Russell, S. 2011. Structuring stakeholder participation in New Zealand's water resource governance. *Ecological Economics*, 70, 1381–1394. doi:10.1016/j.ecolecon.2011.02.015.

Leskinen, L. A., Leskinen, P., Kurttila, M., Kangas, J. & Kajanus, M. 2006. Adapting modern strategic decision support tools in the participatory strategy process: A case study of a forest research station. *Forest Policy and Economics*, 8, 267–278. doi:10.1016/j.forpol.2004.06.007.

Lienert, J., Schnetzer, F. & Ingold, K. 2013. Stakeholder analysis combined with social network analysis provides fine-grained insights into water infrastructure planning processes. *Journal of Environmental Management,* 125, 134–148. doi:10.1016/j.jenvman.2013.03.052.

Lienert, J., Scholten, L., Egger, C. & Maurer, M. 2015. Structured decision-making for sustainable water infrastructure planning and four future scenarios. *EURO Journal on Decision Processes*, 3, 107–140. doi:10.1007/s40070-014-0030-0.

Macharis, C., De Witte, A. & Ampe, J. 2009. The Multi-Actor, Multi-Criteria Analysis Methodology (MAMCA) for the evaluation of transport projects: Theory and practice. *Journal of Advanced Transportation*, 43, 183–202. doi:10.1002/atr.5670430206.

Marttunen, M., Haag, F., Belton, V., Mustajoki, J. & Lienert, J. (2019). Methods to inform the development of concise objectives hierarchies in multi-criteria decision analysis. *European Journal of Operational Research*, 277(2), 604–620. doi.org/10.1016/j.ejor.2019.02.039.

Marttunen, M. & Hämäläinen, R. P. 1995. Decision analysis interviews in environmental impact assessment. *European Journal of Operational Research,* 87, 551–563. doi:10.1016/0377-2217(95)00229-4.

Marttunen, M. & Hämäläinen, R. P. 2008. The Decision Analysis Interview Approach in the collaborative management of a large regulated water course. *Environmental Management,* 42, 1026–1042. doi:10.1007/s00267-008-9200-9.

Marttunen, M., Lienert, J., & Belton, V. (2017). Structuring problems for multi-criteria decision analysis in practice: A literature review of method combinations. *European Journal of Operational Research*, 263(1), 1–17. doi.org/10.1016/j.ejor.2017.04.041.

Marttunen, M., Mustajoki, J., Dufva, M. & Karjalainen, T. 2015. How to design and realize participation of stakeholders in MCDA processes? A framework for selecting an appropriate approach. *EURO Journal on Decision Processes*, 3, 187–214. doi:10.1007/s40070-013-0016-3.

Meyar-Naimi, H. & Vaez-Zadeh, S. 2012. Sustainable development based energy policy making frameworks, a critical review. *Energy Policy*, 43, 351–361. doi:10.1016/j.enpol.2012.01.012.

Mingers, J. 2007. Operational research: The science of better? *Journal of the Operational Research Society*, 58, 683–686. doi:10.1057/palgrave.jors.2602333.

Mingers, J. & Brocklesby, J. 1997. Multimethodology: Towards a framework for mixing methodologies. *Omega-International Journal of Management Science*, 25, 489–509. doi:10.1016/S0305-0483(97)00018-2.

Mitroff, I. I. & Emshoff, J. R. 1979. On strategic assumption-making: A dialectical approach to policy and planning. *Academy of Management Review*, 4, 1–12.

Montibeller, G., Belton, V., Ackermann, F. & Ensslin, L. 2008. Reasoning maps for decision aid: An integrated approach for problem-structuring and multi-criteria evaluation. *Journal of the Operational Research Society*, 59, 575–589. doi:10.1057/palgrave.jors.2602347.

Montibeller, G., Gummer, H. & Tumidei, D. 2006. Combining scenario planning and multi-criteria decision analysis in practice. *Journal of Multi-Criteria Decision Analysis*, 14, 5–20. doi:10.1002/mcda.403.

Munda, G. 2004. *Social Multi-Criteria Evaluation for a Sustainable Economy*, Berlin, Springer.

Nikodinoska, N., Mattivi, M., Notaro, S. & Paletto, A. 2015. Stakeholders' appraisal of biomass-based energy development at local scale. *Journal of Renewable and Sustainable Energy*, 7, 023117. doi:10.1063/1.4916654.

Nordström, E.-M., Eriksson, L. O. & Öhman, K. 2010. Integrating multiple criteria decision analysis in participatory forest planning: Experience from a case study in Northern Sweden. *Forest Policy and Economics*, 12, 562–574. doi:10.1016/j.forpol.2010.07.006.

OECD 1993. *Core Set of Criteria for Environmental Performance Reviews: A Synthesis Report by the Group on the State of the Environment*, Environment Monographs, Paris, Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development.

O'Higgins, T., Farmer, A., Daskalov, G., Knudsen, S. & Mee, L. 2014. Achieving good environmental status in the Black Sea: Scale mismatches in environmental management. *Ecology and Society*, 19, 54. doi:10.5751/ES-06707-190354.

Öztürk, S. 2015. Determining management strategies for the Sarikum Nature Protection Area. *Environmental Monitoring and Assessment*, 187, 113. doi:10.1007/s10661-015-4302-3.

Petkov, D., Petkova, O., Andrew, T. & Nepal, T. 2007. Mixing multiple criteria decision making with soft systems thinking techniques for decision support in complex situations. *Decision Support Systems*, 43, 1615–1629. doi:10.1016/j.dss.2006.03.006.

Proctor, W. & Drechsler, M. 2006. Deliberative multicriteria evaluation. *Environment and Planning C-Government and Policy*, 24, 169–190. doi:10.1068/c22s.

Ram, C. (2020). Scenario presentation and scenario generation in multi-criteria assessments: An exploratory study. *Technological Forecasting and Social Change*, 151, 119850. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.techfore.2019.119850.

Ram, C., Montibeller, G. & Morton, A. 2011. Extending the use of Scenario planning and MCDA for the evaluation of strategic options. *Journal of the Operational Research Society*, 62, 817–829. doi:10.1057/jors.2010.90.

Ram, C. & Montibeller, G. 2013. Exploring the impact of evaluating strategic options in a scenario-based multi-criteria framework. *Technological Forecasting and Social Change*, 80, 657–672. doi:10.1016/j.techfore.2012.09.019.

Sarsby, A. 2016. *SWOT Analysis: A Guide to SWOT for Business Studies Students*, Oakland, UK, Leadership Library.

Schoemaker, P. J. H. 1995. Scenario planning: A tool for strategic thinking. *Sloan Management Review*, 36, 25–40.

Scholten, L., Schuwirth, N., Reichert, P. & Lienert, J. 2015. Tackling uncertainty in multi-criteria decision analysis: An application to water supply infrastructure planning. *European Journal of Operational Research*, 242, 243–260. doi:10.1016/j.ejor.2014.09.044.

Scolozzi, R., Schirpke, U., Morri, E., D'amato, D. & Santolini, R. 2014. Ecosystem services-based SWOT analysis of protected areas for conservation strategies. *Journal of Environmental Management*, 146, 543–551. doi:10.1016/j.jenvman.2014.05.040.

Sevkli, M., Oztekin, A., Uysal, O., Torlak, G., Turkyilmaz, A. & Delen, D. 2012. Development of a fuzzy ANP based SWOT analysis for the airline industry in Turkey. *Expert Systems with Applications*, 39, 14–24. doi:10.1016/j.eswa.2011.06.047.

Shrestha, R. K., Alavalapati, J. R. R. & Kalmbacher, R. S. 2004. Exploring the potential for silvopasture adoption in south-central Florida: An application of SWOT-AHP method. *Agricultural Systems*, 81, 185–199. doi:10.1016/j.agsy.2003.09.004.

Smeets, E. & Weterings, R. 1999. *Environmental Criteria: Typology and Overview*, TNO Centre for Strategy, Technology and Policy, The Netherlands, European Environment Agency.

Srdjevic, Z., Bajcetic, R. & Srdjevic, B. 2012. Identifying the criteria set for multicriteria decision making based on SWOT/PESTLE analysis: A case study of reconstructing a water intake structure. *Water Resources Management*, 26, 3379–3393. doi:10.1007/s11269-012-0077-2.

Stewart, T. J. 1997. Scenario analysis and multicriteria decision making. In: Clímaco, J. (ed.) *Multicriteria Analysis Proceedings of the XIth International Conference on MCDM, 1–6 August 1994*, Coimbra, Portugal, Berlin [etc.], Springer.

Stewart, T. J. 2005. Dealing with uncertainties in MCDA. In: Figueira, J. R., Greco, S. & Ehrgott, M. (eds.) *Multiple Criteria Decision Analysis: State of the Art Surveys*, New York, Springer.

Stewart, T. J., French, S. & Rios, J. 2013. Integrating multicriteria decision analysis and Scenario planning: Review and extension. *Omega*, 41, 679–688. doi:10.1016/j.omega.2012.09.003.

Terrados, J., Almonacid, G. & Pérez-Higueras, P. 2009. Proposal for a combined methodology for renewable energy planning: Application to a Spanish region. *Renewable and Sustainable Energy Reviews*, 13, 2022–2030. doi:10.1016/j.rser.2009.01.025.

Tikkanen, J., Isokaanta, T., Pykalainen, J. & Leskinen, P. 2006. Applying cognitive mapping approach to explore the objective-structure of forest owners in a Northern Finnish case area. *Forest Policy and Economics*, 9, 139–152. doi:10.1016/j.forpol.2005.04.001.

Tscherning, K., Helming, K., Krippner, B., Sieber, S. & Paloma, S. G. Y. 2012. Does research applying the DPSIR framework support decision making? *Land Use Policy*, 29, 102–110. doi:10.1016/j.landusepol.2011.05.009.

Weihrich, H. 1982. The tows matrix: A tool for situational analysis. *Long Range Planning*, 15, 54–66. doi:10.1016/0024-6301(82)90120-0.

Wolfslehner, B. & Vacik, H. 2011. Mapping indicator models: From intuitive problem structuring to quantified decision-making in sustainable forest management. *Ecological Indicators*, 11, 274–283. doi:10.1016/j.ecolind.2010.05.004.

Wright, G. & Goodwin, P. 1999. Future-focussed thinking: Combining scenario planning with decision analysis. *Journal of Multi-Criteria Decision Analysis*, 8, 311–321. doi:10.1002/1099-1360(199911)8:6<311::aid-mcda256>3.0.co;2-t.

Wright, G. & Goodwin, P. 2002. Eliminating a framing bias by using simple instructions to 'think harder' and respondents with managerial experience: Comment on 'breaking the frame'. *Strategic Management Journal*, 23, 1059–1067. doi:10.1002/smj.265.

22

SIMULATION MODELING AS A POLICY TOOL

Bernardo Alves Furtado

This chapter describes, justifies, presents the pros and cons of and illustrates the use of simulation modeling as a handy, cost-effective and agile tool for policymakers. Simulation modeling is flexible enough to accommodate different levels of detail, precision and time frameworks. It also serves the purpose of a concrete communication platform that facilitates scenario analysis, what-if alternatives and forward looking. We specifically define agent-based modeling within the larger simulation domain, provide a brief overview of other computation modeling methodologies and discuss the concepts of multiple models, verification, validation and calibration. The conceptual framework section closes with a discussion of advantages and disadvantages of using simulation modeling for policy at various stages of implementation. Finally, we present a panorama of actual applications of simulation modeling in policy, with an emphasis on economic analysis.

Policy as a Complex System

Policymakers face the arduous task of balancing interests, pressure, bureaucracy and evidence to foster a construed consensus of social betterment. In fact, more often than otherwise, there are disagreements about what the priorities are, which goals to seek, what methods are available and, if correctly and fully implemented, which endings will result (Gaus 2021). This description shares a number of characteristics with a complex system definition (Furtado and Sakowski 2014).

Policies and their effects thereafter are obtained from the interaction of heterogeneous agents: citizens, sub-groups, bureaucrats, interested parties, lobbyists, activists, leaders and their contextual environment. These interactions among different actors produce emerging results embedded with non-linearities that diffuse across scales in time and space with distinct levels of rigidity and friction. Moreover, those who benefit and those who suffer negative externalities react. Together, such systems evolve, adapt, change and learn.

This understanding that policymaking may involves complex systems implies that they are hard to predict (Mitchell 2011; Polhill et al. 2021). Furthermore, full understanding of a single mechanism does not guarantee the comprehension of the whole: "the whole becomes not only more but very different from the sum of its parts" (Anderson 1972, 395).

DOI: 10.4324/9781003163954-27

Considering that policymaking operates and is intrinsically entangled with a social complex system suggest that a conceptual view of the system is needed and that appropriate methodologies should be applied when handling policy interventions. Bettencourt (2015) illustrates how some policy problems may accept linear, additive solutions whereas others, classified as wicked or complex, may not. Traffic flow through an intersection is a problem that specific equations and variables that account for flow and speed might lead toward an optimal and unique solution. Urban mobility and social violence, however, are phenomena that involve multiple actors and themes for which there may be not a single solution. Instead, a pathway of possible alternatives, at times contradictory, might or might not be achieved, depending, for example, on how parties engage, react, contribute or participate.

This scenario that policymakers face makes simulation in general and agent-based modeling in particular suitable tools. Even more so when considering the growing availability of data, computational power and the need for interdisciplinary teams (Polhill et al. 2021), because simulation provides teams with a platform for communication, among other things: a common language that functions as a repository for concepts, understandings and behaviors that necessarily will have to function together to produce results. Moreover, in solving explicitly designed problems systemically, iteratively, over trial and errors, it helps foster communication among participants. Gilbert et al. (2018, 1) argue "the main benefit of designing and using a model is that it provides an understanding of the policy domain, rather than the numbers it generates".

Simulation of policy interventions provides two further advantages besides enabling a common platform for communication. Simulation focuses on prognosis, analyzing future pathways and doing so via comparison with nonexistent alternatives, the so-called counterfactuals. Not being able to use experiments hinders social sciences when compared with natural sciences. A health policy analyst cannot 'test' a vaccination policy and evaluate ex post whether the decision was positive or not. Even before policy, pilots are tried out, or randomized-control trials are applied (Gilbert et al. 2018); ethical warrants are needed to insure no harm comes to citizens or to the environment from either the policy intervention or its omission.

As simulations happen within computational environments, on top of artificial societies of their own (J. M. Epstein and Axtell 1996), they provide enough room for social scientists to experiment and test alternatives in a safe space. These experiments – these simulations – serve to evaluate possible scenarios, to explain broad consequences and to delineate the space of possibilities. As a result, simulations contribute by anticipating outcomes of policy actions.

Epstein and Axtell (1996) proposed these artificial societies along with the generative concept for social sciences. Their motto was later set as 'If you didn't grow it, you didn't explain it' (Joshua M. Epstein 2007, 8).

The context to which a simulation tool may apply is also relevant (Edmonds et al. 2019; Edmonds and Meyer 2017). Depending on the purpose of the model and the stakeholders involved, different validation expectations arise. Models that claim prediction, for instance, should provide results that match out-of-sample data: anticipating data that is unknown to the modelers and has not been used in the model itself.

Edmonds et al. (2019) suggest seven purposes for simulation models, from the more specific to the more general: prediction, explanation, description, theoretical exploration, illustration, analogy and social learning. When it comes to the most abstract, social learning, the aim of the model is solely to function as a mediator, a platform that members of a group use to share information, concepts and meaning about a common problem. Therefore, no anticipation of accurate data is demanded for the model to achieve its set goal.

In a broader context, simulations are models, abstractions of complex phenomena that modelers run to gain insights and systematic outputs. Models suffer criticism as they are based on

assumptions, theories and simplifications. However, in general, they are considered useful (Box and Draper 2007). Simulations do not demand exclusiveness on the policy phenomena analysis. Quite the contrary: there is evidence that multiple models are complimentary and may together encompass a more comprehensive understanding (Page 2012).

Besides this introduction, the next section defines agent-based modeling and section 2 presents some applications of ABM for policy.

Agent-Based Modeling (ABM) as a Policy Tool

Poledna et al. (2020) claim that Enrico Fermi made the first use of the agent-based model (ABM). In the 1930s, Fermi analyzed neuron transport by hand. Orcutt implemented an economic model in the late 1950s. However, the famous first model is considered to be the racial segregation analysis of neighborhoods made by Schelling (1969, 1972). The first attempt to make a systematic construct of concepts and inaugurate social modeling could be pinned to the seminal book by Epstein and Axtell (1996). In a similar pathway in economics, Tesfatsion and Judd (2006) coined the foundational agent-based computational economics (ACE).

A general formulation of the concept of an agent-based model used to describe an artificial society (J. M. Epstein and Axtell 1996) is:

$$A_{t+1} = \mathrm{f}(A_t, E_t)$$
$$E_{t+1} = \mathrm{g}(A_t, E_t)$$

which is a "discrete time dynamical system" (J. M. Epstein and Axtell 1996, 19) in which the states of agents and the environment in time $t+1$ depend on agents and the environment in t. How the transformations occur depend on the rules that are codified as $f(.)$ and $g(.)$. In practice, a simulation attempts to apply theoretical and tacit rules to data and "animate" (Galán et al. 2009) the agents in time and space to obtain patterns that are empirically observed.

When defined in contrast with models in which the "whole population . . . is collapsed into a single set of variables, [ABM can be defined as] computer simulations where individual elements of the social system are represented as separate elements in the simulation model" (Edmonds and Meyer 2017, 3).

These definitions of ABM encompass its most useful features and delineate where their application is fruitful. Given the emphasis on the heterogeneity of agents, phenomena that include a number of different agents interacting in a decentralized way (policy arenas, for example) may be a suitable use. Moreover, if those agents are autonomous and active, in the sense that they learn, evolve, adapt and react depending on their contextual situation, considering their intrinsic nature but also elements of the environment (policy arenas, again), then ABM may be adequate. Finally, computational simulations are fit to include space in detail (Hammond 2015). Doing the same in equation-based models would make them quickly intractable. Although using deterministic computational code, simulations need not impose monotonicity and convexity (nor equilibrium) in order to be computed.

Note that the definition of ABM and Epstein's proposed motto (2007) include a necessary condition to understand a phenomena: being able to grow it – that is, replicate the mechanisms needed for the creation of patterns – although it may not be a sufficient one. The simulated model produced is but a candidate at explanation. There might be models that are unknown to the modeler that would serve the purpose of growing recognizable patterns. Automated processes, operated via machine learning, for instance, could produce other models that are

efficient in producing predictions. ABM, however, focuses on agents' cognition and space-time descriptions that encompass reasonable parameters. "To explain a social pattern, one must show how the pattern could emerge on time scales of interest to humans in a population of cognitively plausible agents" (Joshua M. Epstein 2006, 1587).

The definition of complex adaptive systems (Holland 1992; Furtado and Sakowski 2014) intrinsically implies that there is not just a single possible future trajectory for a system. Conversely, a number of pathway alternatives may occur, depending on both the initial conditions of the system and the interactions among the system's constituent parts. Although unpredictable, reasonable near-future states probabilities are possible, constrained by the assumptions made and the current status quo knowledge of the relevant mechanisms. In practice, scenarios – which alter main inputs and mechanisms of a modeled system in a controlled manner – contribute to aiding decision-making processes that take place independent of certain comprehension of future effects (Maier et al. 2016).

Given this general conceptualization of agent-based modeling, we proceed to list some advantages and disadvantages of applying ABM to policy. Most of the advantages are bound to the definition of ABM. Agents, environment, interactions, space and time set a framework for analysis that systemically incorporate theory, data and tacit knowledge to provide computational experiments, counterfactuals and scenarios. The disadvantages depend on the specification of each one of those items, on the construction and implementation of the model and on its actual use for decision-making.

Some of the advantages come from the contrast of typical equation-based methods. ABM proposes cognitive plausible agents (Joshua M. Epstein 2007) with limited rationality (Arthur 1994), instead of working on aggregate measures (Edmonds and Meyer 2017) and agents that detain complete knowledge of the present and future in infinite lifetime style (Fagiolo and Roventini 2017). ABM uses an empirical spatially explicit environment (Taillandier et al. 2019), not one into which space is difficult to incorporate, except in a highly stylized way (Thisse et al. 2021). Note, however, that instead of opposites, ABM and equation-based methods may be complementary (Gräbner et al. 2017; Beaussier et al. 2019).

In addition to those structural advantages, ABM has been shown to be useful to compare methodologies from distant disciplines (Chattoe-Brown 2021). The need for a formal (computational) layout serves the purpose of laying the groundwork, which accepts additional modular levels and functions as a repository. Thus, ABM may help organize the multitude of inputs from different actors, interests, disciplines, methods and data. "A rise in interdisciplinary teams working together to address pressing social challenges, leveraging the explosive growth of available data and computational power" (Buyalskaya et al. 2021, 1). Actually, explicitly involving stakeholders and making them hands-on modelers "increases the likelihood that the model will be used and will be fit for purpose" (Gilbert et al. 2018, 1).

Another relevant advantage of ABM is its relative low-cost and fast in-silico implementation. Policy decision-making is necessary even in a crisis situation in which information and understanding are lacking. Quickly prototyping might help develop a general sense of the effects of radical interventions.

Disadvantages also abound when using ABM. A structural and intrinsic difficulty is to find the "appropriate level of abstraction" (Gilbert et al. 2018, 11). Complex models may include more details than necessary to describe a phenomenon and thus obscure relationships so that stakeholders and policymakers cannot pinpoint which inputs affect the outputs and by what order of magnitude. Conversely, the model may be so simple that the main mechanism associated with the problem at hand is not present, thus rendering the model useless or even hazardous (Aodha and Edmonds 2017).

Kurtz and Snowden (2003) suggest that ABM is less equipped to handle people and organizations when compared with ABM applied to the analysis of natural systems. Specifically, they mention that humans may not be contained within a single identity or role; rather, humans are themselves complex systems. Kurtz and Snowden also criticize the fact that people would follow predetermined rules as they have free will and might follow collective opinions. Finally, Kurtz and Snowden suggest that people are able to act simultaneously on local and global scales and in the entire spectrum in between.

Aodha and Edmonds (2017) present some specific recommendations when using ABM for policy analysis. Models in general, and ABM in particular, are loaded with scientists' points of view, background and disciplinary formation, and those influence modeling assumptions and constitute a limiting of theoretical spectacles. Modelers and model users should also understand the model limitations and make sure that the model has been tested and checked thoroughly (Edmonds and Gershenson 2015). When the model lands on policymakers' desks, Aodha and Edmonds (2017) suggest that it is likely that no third party has audited nor tested the model. It is common – given the complexity of the model and the tacit knowledge of its details and intricacies – that only a handful of people can properly run the model. Occasionally, not even the modeler but only the computer analyst can fully comprehend the model's computational implementation (Galán et al. 2009). Further misuse of the model for policy, according to Aodha and Edmonds (2017), includes the aforementioned confusion between a model's purpose, its goal and the context in which it was designed to be effective.

A final disadvantage we present is the lack of a standardization (Beaussier et al. 2019). The generality and flexibility of the method contribute to a relatively lack of benchmark cases with example models varying in detail, implementation, documentation and description. Since the 2010s, some of this last disadvantage has become less relevant. In economics, for example, a number of ABM practices have risen providing minimum standards for macroeconomic models (Dawid and Gatti 2018). In the social sciences, a strong community has emerged consolidating the debate on epistemological and ontological aspects of the methodology (Edmonds and Meyer 2017). In terms of communicating the models, a standard protocol was proposed in 2006 (Grimm et al. 2006), and then it was adopted by the community, extended and adapted in more recent years (Grimm et al. 2010, 2020). Hammond (2015) lists some best practices.

The conceptualization of ABM is not complete without the discussion of verification, calibration and sensitivity analysis and validation. There is not absolute consensus in the literature, especially about validation (Galán et al. 2017). Thus, we present a brief overview of each term.

Verification relates to the formal codification of the model and to errors of computation. This happens when the programmer believes the computer is calculating a precise division, for example, but given internal mechanisms of the language, what actually happens is different. That may occur also when the program has run from beginning to end, apparently without throwing an error, only because the error is not one of syntax but of interpretation: an update of a state that should have happened but did not. Galán et al. (2009) also define errors as artefacts, which is the incorrect interpretation of the model. Artefacts take place when the modeler presumes a given assumption or process is generating a specific result, when other assumptions or mechanisms are the real influence.

Calibration is the process of iteratively (and often in an automated manner) adjusting empirical data to make the model compatible with observed phenomena. Some caution is warranted: data used for calibrating a model should not be the same data used for validating the model. When doing calibration, the modeler searches for the best value for parameters so that the model replicates empirical patterns and stylized facts.

Sensitivity analysis is somewhat similar as different configuration runs of the model are compared among themselves. However, the emphasis here is that, given a calibrated, verified model, what are the effects of a change in specific parameters? At times, the analysis illuminates explanatory mechanisms and conditional scenarios (Gilbert et al. 2018). As a result, sensitivity analysis may work as a test of robustness or as an exploratory tool.

Validation – although central to the modeling process – is a concept whose definition is more ample (Ngo and See 2012; Moss 2008; van Vliet et al. 2016). Moss (2008) and Galán et al. (2017) advocate that validation be attached to the purpose of the model. Hence, a model is valid when it fulfills the goal that was originally set. Validation is also defined as the "accurate" replication of a time-series set of data (Guerini and Moneta 2017). A partial compromise is that different modeling purposes demand different validation processes (Edmonds et al. 2019). Models that aim at predicting data would need to have proved themselves to have replicated out-of-sample empirical data that has not entered in the model, either as input or as calibration. A model proposed as a participatory analogy among stakeholders, policymakers and scientists might still be valid and function as a systemic template for knowledgeable interactions and communication without necessarily replicating existing data.

Independently of which validation definition a modeler uses, the more aspects of the model that are validated the better. Thus, replicating and validating agent behaviors' via a survey while simultaneously producing aggregate validation of empirical indicators (Haldane and Turrell 2019) and a higher number of them provides more validation to the model.

Applications of ABM for Policy

Discussion

ABM was propagated as a "promising feature" for scientific and policy analysis in the 2000s and 2010s (Jovanovic et al. 2012): a possible candidate to surpass current best practices (Farmer et al. 2015) and a likely tool to integrate economic and ecological models (Lamperti et al. 2019). Mainly, the promise was to assess "the *relative* merits of alternative policy prescriptions in meeting the policy objectives" (Gilbert et al. 2018, 2, emphasis added).

The promising methodology has evolved into a varied array of examples. Lee et al. (2015) list works in ecology, economics, health care, sociology, geography, anthropology, archaeology, bioterrorism, business, education, medical research, military tactics, neuroscience, political science, urban development and land use and zoology. More discipline-specific reviews may be found in the area of geography and cities (Heppenstall et al. 2012; Batty 2018), policy (Furtado et al. 2015; Edmonds and Meyer 2017) and economics (Dawid and Gatti 2018). Here we present just a few examples that actually succeeded in the policy-applied criteria.

Our first example that tries to improve "efficacy of policy response" (Carley et al. 2006, 282) comes from a model that incorporated actions and interactions of agents within their social and professional networks. The departing point of the model is the fact that diffusion and outbreak of diseases happen amidst people as they go about, incorporating aspects at the physical, biological, social and economic environment. Carley et al. develop BioWar to assess numerically the impact of policy interventions. BioWar functions as an integrated platform in which modular models are inserted in specific time points in the simulation, generating independent parts that function sequentially. A larger scope model – the "simulator state machine" – starts the process and at a given moment calls an "agent state machine", which, in turn, eventually runs a "disease state machine". In fact, the agent model receives inputs from data but also from five other sub-models: (1) disease, (2) geography, (3) weather, (4) attack and (5) communication

and technology. The model is validated against data on absenteeism and medical information. The validation runs in an automated tool in order to handle the complexity of the model. The automation allows for both validation and gain of mechanism understanding made via specifically formulated queries.

Kerr et al. (2021) implement this same idea of using ABM to evaluate policy interventions in a pandemic state in a number of countries across the world. COVASIM implements COVID progression, from susceptible to recovery or death for each individual agent. Agents interact in contact networks at home, in their communities, and at their school or workplace. Generation of synthetic agents, households, schools and workplaces comes from population data. The authors state that they verified the model thoroughly, presenting a number of embedded tests. Calibration was used to approximate parameters of the model to real-world data, whereas validation was applied upon actual use on a policy decision. COVASIM (Kerr et al. 2021) provides an array of policy interventions, including (1) physical distancing, masks and hygiene; (2) testing and diagnosis; (3) contact tracing; (4) isolation of positives and quarantine; and (5) vaccines and treatments. Treatment tests include expected reduction of the probability of progression of the disease. Specifically, COVASIM tested mobility restrictions imposed after the run of the model. "Despite a rapid increase of cases in the preceding weeks, the model predicted counterintuitively that even these modest mobility restrictions would be sufficient to stop the rise in cases, a projection that turned out to be accurate" (Kerr et al. 2021, 24). At the same time, a counterfactual policy intervention, that of not having imposed additional restrictions – for obvious reasons – could not be tested but was predicted to have generated a three-times-higher infection rate.

Gilbert et al. (2018) provide some examples of models that have been successful in changing policy parameters and being deployed in other occasions afterwards, such as Silent Spread and Exodis-FMD, INFSO-SKIN, the abstractor behaviour model. Silent Spread was first applied in 2003 following the foot-and-mouth disease outbreak of 2001.

> The modelling was critical to the Government's decision to relax the 20-day movement control to 6 days, subject to commitments from the livestock industry. The iterative, participatory development process generated an unprecedented level of 'buy-in' to the results in an area which had previously been marked by deep controversy.
>
> *(Gilbert et al. 2018, 9)*

INFSO-SKIN model, in turn, was key to helping design a funding-guideline policy before it was actually implemented (Ahrweiler et al. 2015). The model compares a no-change-in-policy baseline with four alternatives. The modelers tested changes in scope, instrument, amount of funding and incentives to smaller groups' participation. In short, the model simulates a market in which agents of varying size and complexity try to sell innovation to other users, trying to adapt, learn, cooperate and change its performance in the process to that they can increment their knowledge base. Together, agents associate in research consortia to make proposals and seek funding from well-delineated call criteria. The baseline scenario follows empirical data obtained for the Framework Programme 7 from the European Commission, whereas the previous six frameworks were used for calibration of the model. Ahrweiler et al. (2015) tested ten specific experiments with varying degrees of recommendations. According to Gilbert et al. (2018), INFSO-SKIN results informed the next funding cycle. Paier et al. (2017) also apply ABM to knowledge creation and policy recommendations.

ABM in economics is far from consensus or mainstream (Fagiolo and Roventini 2017). However, the field has provided a benchmark of good practices (Dawid and Gatti 2018) and illustrations of models central banks use to inform decisions. Mostly, the models emphasize

macroprudential policies to reduce real estate market volatility. In a very specific context and with a heavily empirically calibrated model, stakeholders investigate the sensitivity of loan-to-value parameters to bound price volatility. A model developed and extended for Washington, DC, was applied later in the United Kingdom and evaluated in Denmark (Geanakoplos et al. 2012; Baptista et al. 2016; Goldstein 2017; Carstensen 2015).

Apart from these specific real estate market applications, Dawid and Gatti (2018) list applications on fiscal and monetary policy, financial regulation and crisis management, labor market and regional growth. The authors emphasize that applications have become more specific and detailed since 2013, comparatively to more generic recommendations that were the norm before. Moreover, validation and testing have become more rigorous with a wider array of methodological tools available.

The Bank of England (Baptista et al. 2016) and the Organization for Economic Cooperation and Development (OECD 2020) seem to have been supporting the use of integrated novel methodology such as ABM to tackle systemic challenges in the economy. A working paper produced by the New Approaches to Economic Challenges (NAEC) (Naumann-Woleske 2021) – an initiative within the OECD – produced a review of ABM models that have helped make policy recommendations including (1) innovation and industrial policy, (2) macroeconomic policy, (3) financial regulation, (4) wealth and income inequality, (5) labor market policy and automation and (6) sustainability and decarbonization.

The European Commission (EC) has also funded the Complexity Research Initiative for Systemic Instabilities (CRISIS) (Klimek et al. 2015). A recent breakthrough in validation and prediction mentioned by the OECD is the full simulation of the Austrian economy, made by Poledna et al. (2020).

Poledna, Miess and Hommes aim at a full-scale, data-rich simulation, including all sectors and accounts of the economy. In a flexible model, without imposing equilibrium and with agents who make decisions based on partial information and limited cognition, the authors make an explicit effort to compare it with typical vector autoregression (VAR) models and dynamic stochastic general equilibrium (DSGE) models. The authors claim that the model is able to compete with VAR and DSGE models with the bonus of providing a forecast of disaggregated sectoral variables and components of GDP. This responds to a need posed by Farmer and Foley (2009).

Final Considerations

This chapter describes the use of the agent-based model as a scenario tool to aid policymakers anticipate effects of policy intervention. The text frames policy as a complex system and presents the concept, advantages and limitations of ABM as a tool. We present a few applications of ABM for policy that were useful. Our take is that ABM has come from a potential and useful methodological tool in the 2000s to a real, effective one in the 2010s, albeit less so for policy analyses. "The methodological difficulty is to bridge the gap between policy practice, often expressed in qualitative and narrative terms, and the scientific realm of formal models" (Ahrweiler et al. 2015, 1).

The listings of actual use of ABM to policy intervention, although reasonable, are not overwhelming. However, ABM's contribution varies from enabling the understanding of triggers and circumstances of social unrest (Jovanovic et al. 2012) to helping the development of theoretical policy approaches (Klein 2021) or specifically indicating which epidemic intervention should be implemented and when (Kerr et al. 2021). But one must keep in mind the purposes of the model (Edmonds et al. 2019), its limitations (Aodha and Edmonds 2017) and the quality of its validation, given its context (Galán et al. 2009).

References

Ahrweiler, Petra, Michel Schilperoord, Andreas Pyka, and Nigel Gilbert. 2015. "Modelling Research Policy: Ex-Ante Evaluation of Complex Policy Instruments." *Journal of Artificial Societies and Social Simulation* 18 (4): 5.

Anderson, P. W. 1972. "More Is Different." *Science* 177 (4047): 393–396. https://doi.org/10.1126/science.177.4047.393.

Aodha, Lia ní, and Bruce Edmonds. 2017. "Some Pitfalls to Beware When Applying Models to Issues of Policy Relevance." In *Simulating Social Complexity, a Handbook*. 2nd ed., 801–822. Understanding Complex Systems. Cham, Switzerland: Springer International Publishing.

Arthur, W. Brian. 1994. "Inductive Reasoning and Bounded Rationality." *The American Economic Review* 84 (2): 406–411.

Baptista, Rafa, J. Doyne Farmer, Marc Hinterschweiger, Katie Low, Daniel Tang, and Arzu Uluc. 2016. "Macroprudential Policy in an Agent-Based Model of the UK Housing Market." Working Paper Bank of England 619.

Batty, Michael. 2018. *Inventing Future Cities*. Cambridge, MA: MIT Press.

Beaussier, Thomas, Sylvain Caurla, Véronique Bellon-Maurel, and Eleonore Loiseau. 2019. "Coupling Economic Models and Environmental Assessment Methods to Support Regional Policies: A Critical Review." *Journal of Cleaner Production* 216: 408–421.

Bettencourt, Luís M. A. 2015. "Cities as Complex Systems." In *Modeling Complex Systems for Public Policies*, edited by Bernardo Alves Furtado, Patrícia Alessandra Morita Sakowski, and Marina Haddad Tóvolli, 217–238. Brasília: Ipea.

Box, George E. P., and Norman R. Draper. 2007. *Response Surfaces, Mixtures, and Ridge Analyses*. Hoboken, NJ: John Wiley & Sons.

Buyalskaya, Anastasia, Marcos Gallo, and Colin F. Camerer. 2021. "The Golden Age of Social Science." *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences* 118 (5). https://doi.org/10.1073/pnas.2002923118.

Carley, K. M., D. B. Fridsma, E. Casman, A. Yahja, N. Altman, Li-Chiou Chen, B. Kaminsky, and D. Nave. 2006. "BioWar: Scalable Agent-Based Model of Bioattacks." *IEEE Transactions on Systems, Man, and Cybernetics – Part A: Systems and Humans* 36 (2): 252–265. https://doi.org/10.1109/TSMCA.2005.851291.

Carstensen, Christian Langholz. 2015. "An Agent-Based Model of the Housing Market." Master's Thesis, Copenhagen, Denmark: University of Copenhagen.

Chattoe-Brown, Edmund. 2021. "Why Questions Like 'Do Networks Matter?' Matter to Methodology: How Agent-Based Modelling Makes It Possible to Answer Them." *International Journal of Social Research Methodology* 24 (4): 429–442. https://doi.org/10.1080/13645579.2020.1801602.

Dawid, Herbert, and Domenico Delli Gatti. 2018. "Agent-Based Macroeconomics." In *Handbook on Computational Economics*. Vol. 4. Elsevier.

Edmonds, Bruce, and Carlos Gershenson. 2015. "Modelling Complexity for Policy: Opportunities and Challenges." In *Handbook on Complexity and Public Policy*, 205. Edward Elgar Publishing, ISBN: 9781782549529.

Edmonds, Bruce, Christophe Le Page, Mike Bithell, Edmund Chattoe, Volker Grimm, Ruth Meyer, Cristina Montañola Sales, Paul Ormerod, Hilton Root, and Flaminio Squazzoni. 2019. "Different Modelling Purposes." *Journal of Artificial Societies and Social Simulation, The*, 22 (June): 6. https://doi.org/10.18564/jasss.3993.

Edmonds, Bruce, and Ruth Meyer, eds. 2017. *Simulating Social Complexity: A Handbook*. 2nd ed. Understanding Complex Systems. Cham, Switzerland: Springer International Publishing. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-319-66948-9.

Epstein, Joshua M. 2006. "Remarks on the Foundations of Agent-Based Generative Social Science." In *Handbook of Computational Economics* 2: 1585–1604. Handbooks in Economics. Elsevier.

———. 2007. *Generative Social Science: Studies in Agent-Based Computational Modeling*. Princeton Studies in Complexity. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press.

Epstein, Joshua M., and R. Axtell. 1996. *Growing Artificial Societies: Social Science from the Bottom Up*. Cambridge, MA: Brookings/MIT Press.

Fagiolo, Giorgio, and Andrea Roventini. 2017. "Macroeconomic Policy in DSGE and Agent-Based Models Redux: New Developments and Challenges Ahead." *Journal of Artificial Societies and Social Simulation* 20 (1).

Farmer, J. Doyne, and Duncan Foley. 2009. "The Economy Needs Agent-Based Modelling." *Nature* 460 (7256): 685–686.

Farmer, J. Doyne, Cameron Hepburn, Penny Mealy, and Alexander Teytelboym. 2015. "A Third Wave in the Economics of Climate Change." *Environmental and Resource Economics* 62 (2): 329–357. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10640-015-9965-2.

Furtado, Bernardo Alves, and Patrícia Alessandra Morita Sakowski. 2014. "Complexity: A Review of the Classics." *Journal on Policy and Complex Systems* 1 (2): 4–18.

Furtado, Bernardo Alves, Patrícia Alessandra Morita Sakowski, and Marina H. Tóvolli. 2015. *Modeling Complex Systems for Public Policies*. Brasília: IPEA.

Galán, José Manuel, Luis R. Izquierdo, Segismundo S. Izquierdo, José I. Santos, Ricardo del Olmo, and Adolfo López-Paredes. 2017. "Checking Simulations: Detecting and Avoiding Errors and Artefacts." In *Simulating Social Complexity*. 2nd ed., 119–140. Understanding Complex Systems. Berlin, Heidelberg: Springer.

Galán, José Manuel, Luis R. Izquierdo, Segismundo S. Izquierdo, José Ignacio Santos, Ricardo del Olmo, Adolfo López-Paredes, and Bruce Edmonds. 2009. "Errors and Artefacts in Agent-Based Modelling." *Journal of Artificial Societies and Social Simulation* 12 (1).

Gaus, Gerald. 2021. *The Open Society and Its Complexities*. Oxford: Oxford University Press. https://global.oup.com/academic/product/the-open-society-and-its-complexities-9780190648978?cc=us&lang=en&.

Geanakoplos, John, Robert Axtell, J. Doyne Farmer, Peter Howitt, Benjamin Conlee, Jonathan Goldstein, Matthew Hendrey, Nathan M. Palmer, and Chun-Yi Yang. 2012. "Getting at Systemic Risk via an Agent-Based Model of the Housing Market." *American Economic Review* 102 (3): 53–58.

Gilbert, Nigel, Petra Ahrweiler, Pete Barbrook-Johnson, Kavin Preethi Narasimhan, and Helen Wilkinson. 2018. "Computational Modelling of Public Policy: Reflections on Practice." *Journal of Artificial Societies and Social Simulation* 21 (1): 14.

Goldstein, Jonathan. 2017. *Rethinking Housing with Agent-Based Models: Models of the Housing Bubble and Crash in Washington DC Area 1997–2009*. Doutorado, Fairfax, VA, USA: George Mason University.

Gräbner, Claudius, Catherine S. Bale, Bernardo Alves Furtado, Brais Alvarez-Pereira, James E. Gentile, Heath Henderson, and Francesca Lipari. 2017. "Getting the Best of Both Worlds? Developing Complementary Equation-Based and Agent-Based Models." *Computational Economics*, 1–20. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10614-017-9763-8.

Grimm, Volker, Uta Berger, Finn Bastiansen, Sigrunn Eliassen, Vincent Ginot, Jarl Giske, John Goss-Custard, et al. 2006. "A Standard Protocol for Describing Individual-Based and Agent-Based Models." *Ecological Modelling* 198 (1): 115–126.

Grimm, Volker, Uta Berger, Donald L. DeAngelis, J. Gary Polhill, Jarl Giske, and Steven F. Railsback. 2010. "The ODD Protocol: A Review and First Update." *Ecological Modelling* 221 (23): 2760–2768.

Grimm, Volker, Steven F. Railsback, Christian E. Vincenot, Uta Berger, Cara Gallagher, Donald L. DeAngelis, Bruce Edmonds, Jiaqi Ge, Jarl Giske, and Juergen Groeneveld. 2020. "The Odd Protocol for Describing Agent-Based and Other Simulation Models: A Second Update to Improve Clarity, Replication, and Structural Realism." *Journal of Artificial Societies and Social Simulation* 23 (2).

Guerini, Mattia, and Alessio Moneta. 2017. "A Method for Agent-Based Models Validation." *Journal of Economic Dynamics and Control* 82 (September): 125–141. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jedc.2017.06.001.

Haldane, Andrew G., and Arthur E. Turrell. 2019. "Drawing on Different Disciplines: Macroeconomic Agent-Based Models." *Journal of Evolutionary Economics* 29 (1): 39–66. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00191-018-0557-5.

Hammond, Ross A. 2015. "Considerations and Best Practices in Agent-Based Modeling to Inform Policy." In *Assessing the Use of Agent-Based Models for Tobacco Regulation*, 161–193. Washington, DC: US, National Academies Press.

Heppenstall, Alison J., Andrew T. Crooks, Linda M. See, and Michael Batty. 2012. *Agent-Based Models of Geographical Systems*. Dordrecht: Springer.

Holland, John. 1992. "Complex Adaptive Systems." *Daedalus* 121: 17–30.

Jovanovic, Aleksandar, Renn Ortwin, and Schröter Regina. 2012. *Social Unrest: OECD Reviews of Risk Management*. Paris: OECD Publishing. http://dx.doi.org/10.1787/9789264173460-en.

Kerr, Cliff C., Robyn M. Stuart, Dina Mistry, Romesh G. Abeysuriya, Katherine Rosenfeld, Gregory R. Hart, Rafael C. Núñez, et al. 2021. "Covasim: An Agent-Based Model of COVID-19 Dynamics and Interventions." *PLOS Computational Biology* 17 (7): e1009149. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pcbi.1009149.

Klein, Raphaël. 2021. *Exploring Policy Change through Agent-Based Simulation*. Lausanne, Switzerland: École Polytechnique Fédérale de Lausanne. https://doi.org/10.5075/epfl-thesis-10228.

Klimek, Peter, Sebastian Poledna, J. Doyne Farmer, and Stefan Thurner. 2015. "To Bail-Out or to Bail-In? Answers from an Agent-Based Model." *Journal of Economic Dynamics and Control, Crises and Complexity* 50 (January): 144–154. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jedc.2014.08.020.

Kurtz, C. F., and D. J. Snowden. 2003. "The New Dynamics of Strategy: Sense-Making in a Complex and Complicated World." *IBM Systems Journal* 42 (3): 462–483. https://doi.org/10.1147/sj.423.0462.

Lee, Ju-Sung, Tatiana Filatova, Arika Ligmann-Zielinska, Behrooz Hassani-Mahmooei, Forrest Stonedahl, Iris Lorscheid, Alexey Voinov, J. Gary Polhill, Zhanli Sun, and Dawn C. Parker. 2015. "The Complexities of Agent-Based Modeling Output Analysis." *Journal of Artificial Societies and Social Simulation* 18 (4): 4.

Maier, Holger R., Joseph H. A. Guillaume, Hedwig van Delden, Graeme A. Riddell, Marjolijn Haasnoot, and Jan H. Kwakkel. 2016. "An Uncertain Future, Deep Uncertainty, Scenarios, Robustness and Adaptation: How Do They Fit Together?" *Environmental Modelling & Software* 81: 154–164.

Mitchell, Melanie. 2011. *Complexity: A Guided Tour*. Oxford and New York: Oxford University Press.

Moss, Scott. 2008. "Alternative Approaches to the Empirical Validation of Agent-Based Models." *Journal of Artificial Societies and Social Simulation* 11 (1).

Naumann-Woleske, Karl. 2021. "Policy and Complexity: Recent Policy Experiments in Agent-Based Macroeconomics." Working Paper. Working Paper – OECD NAEC. Paris: OECD.

Ngo, The An, and Linda See. 2012. "Calibration and Validation of Agent-Based Models of Land Cover Change." In *Agent-Based Models of Geographical Systems*, edited by Alison J. Heppenstall, Andrew T. Crooks, Linda M. See, and Michael Batty, 181–197. Dordrecht, Netherlands: Springer. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-90-481-8927-4_10.

OECD. 2020. *Beyond Growth: Towards a New Economic Approach | En | OECD: New Approaches to Economic Challenges*. Paris, France: OECD Publishing. https://doi.org/10.1787/33a25ba3-en.

Page, Scott. 2012. "The Model Thinker." http://masi.cscs.lsa.umich.edu/~spage/ONLINECOURSE/R1Page.pdf.

Paier, Manfred, Martina Dünser, Thomas Scherngell, and Simon Martin. 2017. "Knowledge Creation and Research Policy in Science-Based Industries: An Empirical Agent-Based Model." In *Innovation Networks for Regional Development*, edited by Ben Vermeulen and Manfred Paier, 153–183. Economic Complexity and Evolution. Cham: Springer International Publishing. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-319-43940-2_7.

Poledna, Sebastian, Michael Gregor Miess, and Cars H. Hommes. 2020. "Economic Forecasting with an Agent-Based Model." SSRN Scholarly Paper ID 3484768. Rochester, NY: Social Science Research Network. https://doi.org/10.2139/ssrn.3484768.

Polhill, J. Gareth, Matthew Hare, Tom Bauermann, David Anzola, Erika Palmer, Doug Salt, and Patrycja Antosz. 2021. "Using Agent-Based Models for Prediction in Complex and Wicked Systems." *Journal of Artificial Societies and Social Simulation* 24 (3): 2.

Schelling, Thomas C. 1969. "Models of Segregation." *The American Economic Review* 488–493.

———. 1972. "A Process of Residential Segregation: Neighborhood Tipping." *Racial Discrimination in Economic Life* 157: 174.

Taillandier, Patrick, Benoit Gaudou, Arnaud Grignard, Quang-Nghi Huynh, Nicolas Marilleau, Philippe Caillou, Damien Philippon, and Alexis Drogoul. 2019. "Building, Composing and Experimenting Complex Spatial Models with the GAMA Platform." *GeoInformatica* 23 (2): 299–322. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10707-018-00339-6.

Tesfatsion, Leigh, and Kenneth L. Judd. 2006. "Agent-Based Computational Economics: A Constructive Approach to Economic Theory." In *Agent-Based Computational Economics*. Vol. 2. Elsevier.

Thisse, Jacques-François, Matthew Turner, and Philip Ushchev. 2021. "A Unified Theory of Cities." National Bureau of Economic Research.

Vliet, Jasper van, Arnold K. Bregt, Daniel G. Brown, Hedwig van Delden, Scott Heckbert, and Peter H. Verburg. 2016. "A Review of Current Calibration and Validation Practices in Land-Change Modeling." *Environmental Modelling & Software* 82 (August): 174–182. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.envsoft.2016.04.017.

23

POLICY EXPERIMENTS AND PILOTS AS TOOLS FOR DECISION-MAKING

Sreeja Nair

Following the policy formulation stage, policymakers face the task of choosing a course of action from among a few plausible policy alternatives. What tools can be deployed by policymakers to make the decision to go ahead with a particular policy? This chapter focuses on policy experiments, particularly pilots, as a policy tool to aid such decision-making. Policy pilots are commonly deployed to test policies before their full-scale rollout. Other intended uses of pilots are to encourage variation in policy responses, policy innovations and reducing policy risks, owing to their small scale and experimental nature. This chapter will focus on the ability of pilots in aiding decisions to scale up of experimental policy initiatives. Factors that impede the widespread uptake of policy experiments and pilots as a decision-making tool, despite their theoretical promise, pertain to the politics of experimentation and challenges in replication of success observed at the experimental or pilot stage on scaling up.

Piloting and Decision-Making Under Uncertainty

As policymakers move from policy formulation to decision-making, they are faced with the task of choosing a course of action from among a few plausible alternatives to address the policy issue at hand. Decision-making is a challenging activity as policymakers often make these choices under uncertainty or an incomplete understanding of the context in which the policy will be implemented and how it might change in future and impact policy performance (Swanson and Bhadwal 2009).

Policymakers face a spectrum of such uncertainty that moves from limited knowledge about the future to the deepest layer of uncertainty or total ignorance, sometimes expressed as 'unknown unknowns' (Kwakkel, Walker, and Marchau 2010). Decision-making is not only affected by imperfect information (i.e., inaccurate or no information about the future policy context) but also by ambiguity (i.e., multiple interpretations of and diverse perspectives on the available information) (Jones and Baumgartner 2005). Uncertainty can also hinder a smooth decision-making process and result in solutions that are either futile or counterproductive to the achievement of intended policy objectives (Deyle 1994).

One approach for policymakers to move ahead with decision-making despite the imminent uncertainty is to launch policies as experiments and pilots before deciding whether or not to introduce these fully (Shipan and Volden 2012). The experimental feature of these strategies lies

 DOI: 10.4324/9781003163954-28

in their endeavour to demonstrate their superiority in addressing a policy problem among other available alternative strategies under consideration (Gardner 1995). A policy experiment can be defined as "a temporary, controlled field-trial of a policy-relevant innovation that produces evidence for subsequent policy decisions" (Huitema et al. 2018). In another useful definition, policy experimentation has been characterized as an iterative process of "testing, piloting or demonstrating" specific policy designs to gauge their potential as solutions to specific policy problems (Van der Heijden 2015).

Under conditions of uncertainty, policymaking can adapt to continue staying relevant to the changing policy context over time. Preparing for futures that appear to be very different from the current context can be challenging to acknowledge and accept, and experimentation could be a channel to not only introduce but also test some alternative strategies for alternative futures. Adaptive policymaking encourages experimenting with policy alternatives to identify improved policy strategies as new conditions emerge, altering the original context in which the previous policies came about (Walters 1992; Swanson et al. 2010). When the original policy context shifts, consequent changes to status quo policies may become imperative, which could further have larger societal implications. Experiments can help in transitions to explore "a range of possible pathways for change" (Farrelly and Brown 2011).

While the terms *experiments* and *pilots* are often used interchangeably in policy literature, in practice these may not feature in any particular sequence, and pilots may or may not be preceded by an observable experimental stage. Pilots, in fact, can be considered as an advanced form of experimentation in terms of being more formalized and "visible" in the policymaking process (Nair 2021). Pilots can help test the "applicability, feasibility and acceptability of innovations" in varying new contexts and help in expanding these beyond the experimental stage (Rondinelli 1993). Pilot projects can be a mode of experimenting with new programs at a "controlled small scale" before introducing full-scale programs (Swanson and Bhadwal 2009; Weiss 1975). Compared to other evaluative methods, such as impact assessments, that are formally conducted in many countries, pilots display a higher autonomy in terms of both who uses them and for which purposes (Nair and Vreugdenhil 2020).

The value of experimentation in enabling improved policy designs is evident in calls for policies to be routinely launched as experiments and pilots (Sovacool 2012) or to be in a constant mode of piloting (Tomar and Swanson 2009). A major contribution of experimentation as a decision-making tool comes in the form of generating policy-relevant knowledge such as piloting for early assessment of impacts of new initiatives such as subsidies and incentive programmes (Stromsdorfer 1985; Martin and Sanderson 2016; Bevir 2009; Sovacool 2012). In the development sector, experiments have been routinely used to evaluate alternative strategies to allocate resources to those that emerge as most feasible (Rondinelli 1993). Experiments have also regularly found recognition as a decision-making tool by virtue of their evidence-generation ability for sectors such as education, health care, the environment and social welfare, among others (Bennion 2011; Cloutier et al. 2015; Seyfang and Smith 2007; Hoffmann 2011).

In countries with multiple levels of governance, launching policies as pilots can be a way to hedge risks that can result from one-shot full-scale implementation. Sub-national governments thus become venues for experimentation to pretest policies and also facilitate policy learning (Lee, Ma, and Zhou 2017). Piloting can also help unearth and potentially correct any operational challenges prior to national-level implementation of chosen policies (Harrar and Lee Bawden 1972). In this sense, piloting becomes an ex-ante decision-making tool to pretest future programmes and policies for their likely impacts, process of implementation and stakeholder acceptability (Nair and Vreugdenhil 2020; McFadgen 2012).

To better understand pilots as a decision-making tool, it is useful to record some efforts to classify pilots based on their intended purposes. Impact pilots, for example, evaluate the likely effects of new policies, measuring early outcomes compared to a control population. Process pilots, on the other hand, aim at assessing the delivery mechanism itself: for example, which policy strategy is cost effective (Jowell 2003). In a study from England, well known for routinely conducting policy pilots, (Ettelt, Mays, and Allen 2014) summarize four purposes of pilots. These include piloting for testing if the policy can achieve its intended objectives in cost-effective ways, with outcomes evaluated through randomized control trials.

A second form of pilot includes those that are designed to "pioneer" or be an early form of implementation of a new policy for scaling up to the national level and mainstreaming with national policies. Some pilots are also launched to demonstrate policy success in chosen pilot sites that are known to have the capacity for conducting it and be a model for replication elsewhere. Pilots can also be launched as "trailblazers" for continuous learning and development, specifically focusing on aspects of policy operationalization, understanding barriers to implementation and improving the overall implementation process when the policy is eventually introduced. (For more on policy learning, see Chapter 30.)

Similarly, (Vreugdenhil et al. 2010) identify three types of pilots based on their purposes. These include, firstly, research pilots that focus on knowledge generation, either to test innovations and improve or evaluate policies that have already been chosen to be implemented. Secondly, management pilots that can be used to initiate communication and dialogue between multiple stakeholders in a bid to solve existing policy issues when other tools are inadequate or there is no consensus on them. Thirdly, political-entrepreneurial pilots that can be used to influence policymaking for personal or strategic reasons. In another attempt to classify experiments more broadly (McFadgen and Huitema 2017) classify these into three types. Firstly, technocratic experiments, such as those focused on "fact finding" through generating knowledge while being shielded from political interference. Secondly, boundary experiments, in which policy solutions are developed considering multiple stakeholder value propositions. Thirdly, advocacy experiments for generating evidence to support policy choices that have been predetermined.

These classifications themselves give an initial glimpse into the political nature of pilots and experiments in terms of the intentionality in launching them as well as directing the knowledge generated by them and utilization of the same for improving or reaffirming policy choices that may or may not be fixed at the time of launching these experiments. Despite their theoretical promise, pilots, just like full policies, are influenced by political factors. Factors that impede the widespread uptake of policy experiments and pilots as a decision-making tool despite their theoretical promise pertain to the politics of experimentation and challenges in replication of success observed at the experimental or pilot stage on scaling up and form the focus of this chapter.

The structure of the chapter in the following sections covers the decision outcomes that experimentation and piloting could lead to and a discussion of the benefits and drawbacks of using pilots as a decision tool. The chapter concludes with recommendations for effectively using piloting as a decision-making tool and suggestions for future research in this direction.

Outcomes of Experiments and Pilots for Decision-Making

Policy experiments and pilots can provide a variety of outcomes that can aid decision-making. In some cases, the outcomes can be intentionally driven while in other instances, these could be emerge in a less-controlled organic manner in the process of experimentation. In general, the motive behind launching policies as experiments is that demonstration of success in the experimental stage can open a path for these to be considered as full policies. Policymakers can also use

this opportunity to increase the acceptability of their preferred choices among the citizens in a bid to minimize any reputational risks for themselves arising from these choices (Peters 1998). (For more on behavioural tools in public policy, see Chapter 47.)

A widely accepted outcome and indicator of success of a pilot is its geographical spread or scaling up to all target groups and beneficiaries (Hartmann and Linn 2007; Gillespie 2004). The heavy focus of policy literature on measuring the success or failure of pilots in terms of whether they scaled up or not has meant that less attention has been given to the range of types and forms of pilots that could survive in between these extremes and still continue to contribute towards improved policy designs (Nair 2021). Even without successful scaling up, pilots can generate lessons for the future and act as a foundation for systemic changes that could be social, cultural, political, institutional and behavioural (van Winden and van den Buuse 2017). This especially holds true when transitions to alternative futures are being discussed and considered in the policy arena. Even for unsuccessful pilots, lessons might be the biggest contribution (Mattingly 2008).

Scaling up can be considered as expansion, replication, adaptation and sustaining of the pilot over space and time to reach a larger number of beneficiaries (Hartmann and Linn 2007; van Doren et al. 2018; Uvin 1995). Apart from increasing in size and reach, scaling up can also be considered as increasing the impact of the pilot in terms of achieving its objectives (Bloom and Ainsworth 2010). While piloting at the micro scale has received much attention from governments and non-governmental agencies alike, piloting and scaling up pilots and experiments to benefit national-scale programmes has not received as much attention (Simmons, Fajans, and Ghiron 2007).

In a counter-process to scaling up is what Wellstead et al. (2016) term scaling down. The ambitions of experimental initiatives for scaling down are similar to those of scaling up in terms of testing processes and outputs that combine good practices, but for implementation of centrally driven policies to reach the local level with sensitivity to local conditions and broader policy learning. Like pilots launched at the small scale, those launched at the national level also face challenges in translating broad policy goals into localized policies while engaging stakeholders. This phenomenon of scaling down, while important, is less studied. For decisions pertaining to action at a national level, such as climate change and pollution control, testing of ideas that indicate a broad strategic direction and principles is needed (Wellstead et al. 2016).

Another important yet less studied outcome of pilots is in terms of their policy translation. Vreugdenhil, Taljaard, and Slinger (2012) termed this outcome a pilot's diffusion involving replication and scaling up of the pilot whereby the qualitative and quantitative nature of the problem, actors, policy components and administrative layers, scope and, thereby, complexity of the pilot changes. Considering diffusion as a spectrum, at one end, the outcome of the pilot can move from no replication to initiation of new pilot projects or management projects or scale up into an expanded pilot temporarily or management project. At the other extreme, a pilot can diffuse to be institutionalized into new or ongoing policies, an indicator of full policy translation. The empirical evidence on the design features of such pilots and the process of their diffusion is, however, lacking (Vreugdenhil et al. 2010). As the pilot scales up with the addition of more elements, the original pilot may cease to exist (van Winden and van den Buuse 2017).

Such scaling up and diffusion can be led by governments, also referred to as centralized scaling up (Appadurai et al. 2015), wherein the national (union) government is the main agent driving the process. Centre-driven pilots, especially in a federal governance structure, are important vehicles to translate broad national-level policy decisions for implementation at the sub-national levels. Similarly, the uptake of a pilot (van Buuren et al. 2018) refers to the process of embedding and implementing the results of the pilot within the current policy regime.

In the process of exploring policy alternatives to replace or supplement a current policy portfolio, policy pilots can aid the development of new policy designs or help build on earlier designs (Howlett and Rayner 2013). (For more on policy mixes, see Chapter 37.)

As a decision-making tool, while some pilots might open the possibility of radical policy change, others may be rather incremental, with their primary contribution being in suggesting marginal adjustments to existing policies and programmes (Majone 1991). Questions of how much adjustment in policy response is required to match any changes in the future policy context and how best to do so remain a challenge. In this line, Nair (2019) draws attention to the aspect of proportionality of policy response and outcome in uncertain policy contexts, using the example of climate change adaptation decision-making. Adaptation strategies to a changing climate, for example, could involve testing decisions that move from incremental to transformative policy strategies. These strategies could be tested through pilots as models of changes to status quo policy responses in dealing with different levels of change in the policy-making context: for example, changes in climatic variables.

Institutionalization brings the innovative ideas of a policy experiment or pilot to receive widespread attention and can trigger necessary resource allocations and stability in terms of support for its implementation. By entering formal decision-making and implementation, however, the pilot could lose its original flexible design and become standardized (Frantzeskaki et al. 2010). Lack of institutionalization of an experiment or pilot is also a likely outcome of the decision-making process and indicates that it has not been mainstreamed as a policy option (Vreugdenhil, Taljaard, and Slinger 2012). Even after the launch of an experiment or pilot, corrective iterations can feed back into the original experimental or pilot design continuously, especially when the experiment or pilot was found to be a failure in practice or was not institutionalized (Wilder and Howlett 2014). Lack of institutionalization, however, does not necessarily always indicate failure of the pilot. Instead, it suggests that there were other ways in which the pilot and its learning could have been assimilated into ongoing policies.

Experiments as a Decision-Making Tool: Benefits and Drawbacks

Policy experimentation and piloting are far from being straightforward technical tools to yield effective decisions. Policy experiments and pilots are not insulated from the political aspects of policymaking, just as in the case of full policies. The push and pull between the technical merit of a policy experiment or pilot and its political acceptability and feasibility determine its usefulness at the decision-making stage. Spicer et al. (2014) argue that "scaling up is a craft not a science", referring to its predominant political nature compared to its technical aspects. Despite impending uncertainty, the strategies that are selected might be those that are politically feasible rather than scientifically sound, especially for wicked problems such as climate change (Knaggård 2014). In the past decade, scholars have also considered focusing on the process of experimental policy design, including the role of various stakeholders therein, as compared to the earlier works that focused more on the content of the experiments themselves (van der Heijden 2013). During this period, the focus has also been on "experimentalist governance" as an iterative process of "provisional goal setting" for revising policy goals based on the learning from testing alternate modes of goal achievement in different contexts (Sabel and Zeitlin 2012).

For politicians and bureaucrats, piloting may also be an opportunity to initiate policy change and gain recognition through demonstration of a policy idea. For policy researchers, on the other hand, pilots provide a chance for rigorous experimentation with policy design with the intention of establishing whether the proposed policy strategy/strategies are more effective than incumbent or previous ones. These purposes can co-exist, often unknowingly, which could

cause issues in determining the aims and objectives of any evaluation of these pilots (Ettelt and Mays 2015).

Experiments and pilots can be launched with the idea of generating policy learning. In most cases, they provide direct learning outcomes after being launched purposefully by policymakers or indirect learning wherein the results of the pilots ultimately inform decisions on policy options (McFadgen and Huitema 2017). Ettelt and Mays (2015) consider policy pilots to be time-bound policies that are implemented over a limited spatial scale for the purpose of policy learning in some form. This can include piloting schemes that are intended to be "trailblazers", "demonstrators", "pioneers", "vanguards" and "early adopters" (Ettelt and Mays 2015). This coincides with the idea that policymakers have a stake in a policy direction, even while experimenting. Experiments are thus an investment of political capital, just as with any full policy (Campbell 1991).

While the contribution of experiments and pilots to decision-making is acknowledged in theory, in practice, governments might hesitate to deploy them regularly for the fear of appearing to be in a constant indecisive mode of experimentation (Peters 1998). In addition, despite their promising potential, policymakers might be hesitant to invest in experiments and pilots owing to the associated risk of failure. Additionally, to safeguard themselves from accusations of error of judgment and hesitance in acknowledging impending uncertainty about the effectiveness of chosen strategies, policy experiments can rarely be seen or accepted as a failure (Howlett 2012). The underlying motive of decision-making and searching for effective solutions to a policy problem thus involves discovering not only which actions are technically capable of solving a problem but also which among these is politically acceptable and administratively feasible (Howlett, Ramesh, and Perl 2009). Policymakers are also conscious of being accused of overlooking equity and fairness concerns by investing resources brought by experiments and pilots for certain sections of the society only (Stoker 2010). Participation and exclusion from these experiments is thus also political (Chien 2019).

As those in government are conscious of their reputations via the performance of policies during their terms in office, they tread the path of experimentation precariously, even when it is called for and especially when experiments or pilots are likely to bring a major change to the status quo policies (Majumdar and Mukand 2004). Through planned outputs from "pre-emptive policy experimentation", some policymakers could attempt to extend their influence and seek longevity for their ideas and policy decisions beyond their official terms (Callander and Hummel 2014). In the context of climate initiatives and politics around decarbonization, Bernstein and Hoffmann (2018) caution that experiments may become a reason to lock in some favourable policies. Given the transient nature of politicians and the according shifting of priorities, the results of experiments may not obtain traction and support if these appear after there are changes to the incumbent policy regime that initiated these experiments in the first place (Huitema et al. 2018).

Considering experiments and pilots as a useful decision tool is also an outcome of knowledge on a subject and a policymaker's awareness of the same. For example, even when knowledge is available on a subject, policymakers may not be aware of it; undertaking the decision-making in this case operates on an "uniformed ignorance" basis rather than informed awareness. In case knowledge on an issue is generally lacking, decision-makers may be aware of this gap and function with "prudent awareness". Or, if they are unaware of their ignorance, they could assume a "hubristic attitude" or overconfidence (Becker and Brownson 1964).

Another challenge for using experiments as an effective decision-making tool is in terms of whether these are used in a haphazard and ad hoc manner or form a conscious and routine activity on the part of governments. Governments often experiment in a trial-and-error manner

with little knowledge cumulation followed by policy improvement. This could be ascribed to the movement of bureaucrats across administrations and changes in parties in power (Pyle 1980; Peters 1998).

The outcomes of a pilot can also be tampered with or affected by political influences. For example, pilots that are designed to investigate gaps in ongoing policies cannot serve this purpose if errors or gaps identified in the pilot phase are not corrected before the decision is implemented fully (K'Akumu and Appida 2006). Piloting is typically undertaken to allow for formal policy learning through its evaluation, but in practice, not all pilots are formally evaluated (Ettelt, Mays, and Allen 2014). In another study in England, Martin and Sanderson (2016) observed that pilots were used to identify "trail-blazing local authorities" and share good practices rather than to inform policy change. In this sense, the pilots became an exercise in early implementation rather than an opportunity to review the appropriateness of the policy.

Resistance to change from the status quo, even when the results of a policy experiment or pilot call for it, can be difficult owing to the "stickiness" of policies. Policies which might be implemented wrongly are one disaster, but the chances of the impacts of these wrong decisions being significant is a bigger one (Tassey 2013). Continuation and expansion of policy pilots can also be stalled if there is widespread opposition from key stakeholders (Vreugdenhil et al. 2010). Political pressure can also hasten the process of evaluation of pilots to showcase evidentiary support for the implementation of certain decisions that were the preferred choices all along (Sanderson 2002; van Buuren and Loorbach 2009).

Concluding Insights for Policy Theory and Practice

Policy experiments and pilots can be useful decision-tools in re-evaluating or reaffirming policy choices that emerge after the policy formulation stage. However, how can policymakers strengthen their role as an effective decision-making tool while avoiding the traps that are associated with experiments and pilots, largely owing to the inherent political nature of experimentation?

Successful design, implementation and scaling up of experiments are not automatic processes (Nair 2021). Table 23.1 summarizes some of the issues that affect the use of experimentation as a tool for policymaking under uncertainty, presenting an interplay of meaning and power. While "meaning"-related issues relate to design of experiments considering how and why the future is interpreted in a certain way, issues related to "power" deal with how and why subsequent courses of action are chosen. There are issues of politics surrounding experimentation and the presence of diverse stakeholder perspectives. Thus, the launching of experiments and pilots should be accompanied by careful thought and deliberation, just as in the case of full-scale policies. While issues of "meaning" can be better addressed by enhancing the knowledge base for informed policymaking, issues of "power" need higher levels of engagement and dialogue between stakeholders to agree on suitable courses of policy action for the future, based on the insights gained from well-crafted policy experiments (Nair and Howlett 2016).

Given the political challenges attributed to scaling up and wider and sustained uptake of results from experiments and pilots, it appears that experiments are more welcome in forms that are small, exploratory and with modest aspirations and as tools to indicate the need for policy change without effecting change themselves (Huitema et al. 2018; Boeckmann 1976). The conditions that mark the freedom of a pilot to experiment and learn also become barriers to its wider uptake, geographically as well as in terms of changes in policy goals and means (van Buuren et al. 2018) (van Buuren and Loorbach 2009). An implicit risk in attempting to replicate the results of pilots to larger scale is that the key features of the pilot might be lost (Simmons,

Table 23.1 "Meaning"- and "Power"-Related Challenges for Using Experimentation as a Tool for Policymaking Under Uncertainty

Challenges	*Issues of "Meaning"*	*Issues of "Power"*
Politics of policy experiments	Where to experiment and why	Hesitation towards accepting uncertainty and risk of failure Hesitation in changing from policy status quo, especially when additional costs are involved Power struggle between central and local levels to control emergence of novel solutions via active experimentation Experiments launched to mask/delay politically unpalatable policy reforms
Evaluation of policy experiments	Difficulties in measuring and attributing causality and isolating policy outcomes that can be solely attributed to experiments How and when to conduct the evaluation	Hastening evaluation to obtain "evidential support" for predetermined policy solutions Bias towards "prototyping" versus true experimentation to try what works Some experiments have long gestational periods before results become apparent, going beyond administrative or career timelines Discounting future policies against "less-than-optimal" policies choices today
Diffusion of policy experiments	Scanty and fragmented evidence on process of diffusion of experiments and influencing factors Design and results of experiments are often heavily bound by context specificity; thus, there are limitations to exact replicability of experimental outcomes when these are scaled up	Diffusion of experiments influenced by multiple stakeholders Stakeholder attitude and support for scaling up can change over temporal and spatial scale

Source: Nair and Howlett (2016)

Fajans, and Ghiron 2007). Additionally, some features that were proven to be successful at pilot scale could get deliberately chosen over others that may be ignored as pilots scale up.

In terms of research on policy experiments and pilots as effective decision tools, studying the varied contributions that these could make to the policy process is essential, instead of viewing success as all or none. Hoffmann (2011) argues that rather than studying individual pilots with context-specific limitations, it is more valuable to look at experiments as a collective. For example, studying the combined impact of independent initiatives for climate change action by cities, provinces and states, citizen groups and corporations globally could guide climate policy development in general.

The scaling-up of policy experiments and their translation to full policies face several challenges (Stoker 2010). This is more so if the findings of the experiments and pilots challenge or do not reaffirm predetermined or preferred policy choices of the government (Ettelt and Mays 2015). The politics of experimentation could also mean a strong "intentional policy design"

with the central government governing both the content and process of experimentation at the local level, thereby stifling the rise of innovative solutions via active experimentation (Mei and Liu 2014).

It is no surprise that all experiments, just like full policies, are political. All experiments essentially face a push and pull between technical and political factors and eventually influence their outcomes. In practice, one may see sub-optimal experiments getting scaled up and optimal ones getting stalled or terminated or not chosen at the end of the decision-making process. Despite its widespread acceptance as a prescribed activity for governments, experimentation is very political. That is, governments design experiments mindful of issues of reputation, protecting and prolonging their office term, projecting confidence in their decisions and launching experiments and pilots in a rather "safe manner".

In some cases, experimentation is initiated as a conscious activity with the intention of learning from it while in others, it is a simpler effort to get it right the first time and maintain it if it is running well or is "good enough" at the minimum (Peters 1998). Making pilots work thus can involve entrepreneurship and creativity on the part of policymakers (Bailey et al. 2017). Protected spaces to allow experiments to run and for their results to emerge free from political influences could include strategic actions such as labelling a project as a pilot or demonstration (Farrelly and Brown 2011; Tassey 2013). Formal policy review also provides the space in which to pilot test policy instruments and learn lessons with regard to intended outcomes and efficient implementation (Tomar and Swanson 2009). Pilots should continue even after scaling up and diffusion as their short-time findings may or may not match their outcomes in the long term. The short-term results thus might even be misleading to base decisions on (Breckon 2015). Proper evaluation of experimental initiatives, free of political influences, is important (Hildén, Jordan, and Huitema 2017). In such an evaluation, the experimental process is subject to constant monitoring and adaptation to changing policy context, effectiveness and efficiency of the experimental design and is conducted in collaboration between those who design, implement and benefit from the experiment.

References

Appadurai, A. N., M. Chaudhury, A. Dinshaw, N. Ginoya, H. McGray, L. Rangwala, and S. Srivatsa. 2015. *Scaling success: Lessons from adaptation pilots in the rainfed regions of India*. Washington, DC: World Resources Institute.

Bailey, S., K. Checkland, D. Hodgson, A. McBride, R. Elvey, S. Parkin, K. Rothwell, and D. Pierides. 2017. "The policy work of piloting: Mobilising and managing conflict and ambiguity in the English NHS." *Social Science and Medicine* 179:210–217. doi: 10.1016/j.socscimed.2017.02.002.

Becker, Selwyn W., and Fred O. Brownson. 1964. "What price ambiguity? Or the role of ambiguity in decision-making." *Journal of Political Economy* 72 (1):62–73.

Bennion, Elizabeth A. 2011. "21st century political science: A reference handbook." In *21st century political science: A reference handbook*, edited by John T. Ishiyama and Marijke Breuning. Thousand Oaks, CA: SAGE Publications, Inc.

Bernstein, S., and M. Hoffmann. 2018. "The politics of decarbonization and the catalytic impact of subnational climate experiments." *Policy Sciences* 51 (2):189–211. doi: 10.1007/s11077-018-9314-8.

Bevir, Mark. 2009. *Key concepts in governance, SAGE key concepts*. Los Angeles; London: SAGE.

Bloom, G., and P. Ainsworth. 2010. "Beyond scaling up: Pathways to universal access to health services." STEPS Working Paper 40, STEPS Centre, Brighton.

Boeckmann, Margaret E. 1976. "Policy impacts of the New Jersey income maintenance experiment." *Policy Sciences* (7):53–76.

Breckon, Jonathan. 2015. *Better public services through experimental government*. London: Alliance for Useful Evidence.

Callander, Steven, and Patrick Hummel. 2014. "Preemptive policy experimentation." *Econometrica* 82 (4):1509–1528.

Campbell, Donald T. 1991. "Methods for the experimenting society." *Evaluation Practice* 12 (3):223–260.
Chien, Colleen V. 2019. "Rigorous policy pilots: Experimentation in the administration of the law." *Iowa Law Review* 104 (5):2313–2350.
Cloutier, Geneviève, Florent Joerin, Catherine Dubois, Martial Labarthe, Christelle Legay, and Dominique Viens. 2015. "Planning adaptation based on local actors' knowledge and participation: A climate governance experiment." *Climate Policy* 15 (4):458–474.
Deyle, Robert E. 1994. "Conflict, uncertainty, and the role of planning and analysis in public policy innovation." *Policy Studies Journal* 22 (3):457–473.
Ettelt, Stefanie, and Nicholas Mays. 2015. *Advice on commissioning external academic evaluations of policy pilots in health and social care: A discussion paper*. London: Policy Innovation Research Unit (PIRU), Department of Health Services Research & Policy, London School of Hygiene and Tropical Medicine.
Ettelt, Stefanie, Nicholas Mays, and Pauline Allen. 2014. "The multiple purposes of policy piloting and their consequences: Three examples from national health and social care policy in England." *Journal of Social Policy* 44 (2):319–337. doi: 10.1017/s0047279414000865.
Farrelly, M., and R. Brown. 2011. "Rethinking urban water management: Experimentation as a way forward?" *Global Environmental Change* 21 (2):721–732. doi: 10.1016/j.gloenvcha.2011.01.007.
Frantzeskaki, Niki, Jill Slinger, Heleen Vreugdenhil, and Els Van Daalen. 2010. "Social-ecological systems governance: From paradigm to management approach." *Nature and Culture* 5 (1):84–98.
Gardner, James A. 1995. "The states-as-laboratories metaphor in state constitutional law." *Valparaiso University Law Review* 30:475.
Gillespie, Stuart. 2004. *Scaling up community-driven development: A synthesis of experience* (No. 583-2016-39700). International Food Policy Research Institute, Washington DC.
Harrar, William S., and D. Lee Bawden. 1972. "The use of experimentation in policy formulation and evaluation." *Urban Affairs Quarterly* 7 (4):419–430.
Hartmann, Arntraud, and Johannes F. Linn. 2007. "Scaling up: A path to effective development." Twenty twenty (2020) focus brief on the world's poor and hungry people/International Food Policy Research Institute (IFPRI).
Hildén, Mikael, Andrew Jordan, and Dave Huitema. 2017. "Special issue on experimentation for climate change solutions editorial: The search for climate change and sustainability solutions: The promise and the pitfalls of experimentation." *Journal of Cleaner Production* 169:1–7. doi: 10.1016/j.jclepro.2017.09.019.
Hoffmann, Matthew J. 2011. *Climate governance at the crossroads: Experimenting with a global response after Kyoto*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
Howlett, M. 2012. "The lessons of failure: Learning and blame avoidance in public policy-making." *International Political Science Review* 33 (5):539–555.
Howlett, Michael, Michael Ramesh, and Anthony Perl. 2009. *Studying public policy: Policy cycles and policy subsystems*. Vol. 3: Oxford: Oxford University Press.
Howlett, Michael, and Jeremy Rayner. 2013. "Patching vs packaging in policy formulation: Assessing policy portfolio design." *Politics and Governance* 1 (2):170–182.
Huitema, D., A. Jordan, S. Munaretto, and M. Hilden. 2018. "Policy experimentation: Core concepts, political dynamics, governance and impacts." *Policy Sciences* 51 (2):143–159. doi: 10.1007/s11077-018-9321-9.
Jones, Bryan D., and Frank R. Baumgartner. 2005. *The politics of attention: How government prioritizes problems*. Chicago**:** University of Chicago Press.
Jowell, Roger. 2003. *Trying it out: The role of pilots in policy making: Cabinet office*. London: Strategy Unit, Government Chief Social Researcher's Office.
K'Akumu, O. A., and P. O. Appida. 2006. "Privatisation of urban water service provision: The Kenyan experiment." *Water Policy* 8 (4):313–324. doi: 10.2166/wp.2006.044.
Knaggård, Åsa. 2014. "What do policy-makers do with scientific uncertainty? The incremental character of Swedish climate change policy-making." *Policy Studies* 35 (1):22–39. doi: 10.1080/01442872.2013.804175.
Kwakkel, Jan H., Warren E. Walker, and Vincent A. W. J. Marchau. 2010. "Classifying and communicating uncertainties in model-based policy analysis." *International Journal of Technology, Policy and Management* 10 (4). doi: 10.1504/ijtpm.2010.036918.
Lee, Celia, Liang Ma, and Yishu Zhou. 2017. "The changing dynamics of policy experiment in Singapore: Does the 2011 general election make a difference?" *Asian Journal of Political Science* 25 (3):287–306. doi: 10.1080/02185377.2017.1351382.
Majone, Giandomenico. 1991. "Cross-national sources of regulatory policymaking in Europe and the United States." *Journal of Public Policy* 11 (1):79–106. doi: 10.1017/S0143814X00004943.

Majumdar, Sumon, and Sharun W. Mukand. 2004. "Policy gambles." *American Economic Review* 94 (4): 1207–1222.

Martin, Steve, and Ian Sanderson. 2016. "Evaluating public policy experiments." *Evaluation* 5 (3):245–258. doi: 10.1177/13563899922208977.

Mattingly, Michael. 2008. "PROSPECT lost: When a pilot project does not look to learn." *Public Administration and Development* 28 (2):129–137. doi: 10.1002/pad.485.

McFadgen, Belinda. 2012. "What is the value of 'twisting the Lion's tail?'." In *Evaluating the use of policy experiments in adaptation governance and how they can facilitate learning*. The Netherlands: Institute for Environmental Studies.

McFadgen, Belinda, and Dave Huitema. 2017. "Are all experiments created equal? A framework for analysis of the learning potential of policy experiments in environmental governance." *Journal of Environmental Planning and Management* 60 (10):1765–1784. doi: 10.1080/09640568.2016.1256808.

Mei, Ciqi, and Zhilin Liu. 2014. "Experiment-based policy making or conscious policy design? The case of urban housing reform in China." *Policy Sciences* 47 (3):321–337.

Nair, Sreeja. 2019. "Designing policy pilots under climate uncertainty: A conceptual framework for comparative analysis." *Journal of Comparative Policy Analysis: Research and Practice*:1–16.

Nair, Sreeja. 2021. *Rethinking policy piloting: Insights from Indian agriculture*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Nair, Sreeja, and M. Howlett. 2016. "Meaning and power in the design and development of policy experiments." *Futures* 76:67–74. doi: 10.1016/j.futures.2015.02.008.

Nair, Sreeja, and Heleen Vreugdenhil. 2020. "Policy making: Pilot projects as predictive methods." In *Encyclopedia of public administration and public policy*. 3rd ed., edited by Domonic A. Bearfield, Evan M Berman, Melvin J. Dubnick, 1–5. New York, Routledge. https://www.taylorfrancis.com/books/edit/10.1081/E-EPAP3/encyclopedia-public-administration-public-policy-third-edition-domonic-bearfield-melvin-dubnick

Peters, B. Guy. 1998. "The experimenting society and policy design." In *The experimenting society: Essays in honour of Donald T. Campbell*, 125–139. New Brunswick: Transaction Publisher.

Pyle, David F. 1980. "From pilot project to operational program in India: The problems of transition." In *Politics and policy implementation in the third world*, 123–144.

Rondinelli, Dennis A. 1993. *Development projects as policy experiments: An adaptive approach to development administration*. 2nd ed., Development and underdevelopment. London; New York: Routledge.

Sabel, Charles F., and Jonathan Zeitlin. 2012. "Experimentalist governance." *The Oxford Handbook of Governance* 1:2–4.

Sanderson, Ian. 2002. "Evaluation, policy learning and evidence-based policy making." *Public Administration* 80 (1):1–22.

Seyfang, Gill, and Adrian Smith. 2007. "Grassroots innovations for sustainable development: Towards a new research and policy agenda." *Environmental Politics* 16 (4):584–603.

Shipan, Charles R., and Craig Volden. 2012. "Policy diffusion: Seven lessons for scholars and practitioners." *Public Administration Review* 72 (6):788–796.

Simmons, Ruth, Peter Fajans, and Laura Ghiron. 2007. *Scaling up health service delivery: From pilot innovations to policies and programmes*. Geneva, Switzerland: World Health Organization.

Sovacool, Benjamin K. 2012. "Design principles for renewable energy programs in developing countries." *Energy & Environmental Science* 5 (11):9157–9162. doi: 10.1039/C2EE22468B.

Spicer, N., D. Bhattacharya, R. Dimka, F. Fanta, L. Mangham-Jefferies, J. Schellenberg, A. Tamire-Woldemariam, G. Walt, and D. Wickremasinghe. 2014. "'Scaling-up is a craft not a science': Catalysing scale-up of health innovations in Ethiopia, India and Nigeria." *Social Science and Medicine* 121:30–38. doi: 10.1016/j.socscimed.2014.09.046.

Stoker, Gerry. 2010. "Translating experiments into policy." *The ANNALS of the American Academy of Political and Social Science* 628 (1):47–58.

Stromsdorfer, Ernest W. 1985. "Social science analysis and the formulation of public policy: Illustrations of what the president "knows" and how he comes to "know" it." In *Social experimentation*, 257–282. Chicago: University of Chicago Press.

Swanson, Darren, Stephan Barg, Stephen Tyler, Henry Venema, Sanjay Tomar, Suruchi Bhadwal, Sreeja Nair, Dimple Roy, and John Drexhage. 2010. "Seven tools for creating adaptive policies." *Technological Forecasting and Social Change* 77 (6):924–939. doi: 10.1016/j.techfore.2010.04.005.

Swanson, Darren, and Suruchi Bhadwal. 2009. *Creating adaptive policies: A guide for policymaking in an uncertain world*. Ottawa: SAGE Publishers.

Tassey, G. 2013. "Innovation in innovation policy management: The experimental technology incentives program and the policy experiment." *Science and Public Policy* 41 (4):419–424. doi: 10.1093/scipol/sct060.

Tomar, Sanjay, and Darren Swanson. 2009. *Creating adaptive policies: A guide for policy-making in an uncertain world*. New Delhi: SAGE Publications India Pvt Ltd.

Uvin, Peter. 1995. "Fighting hunger at the grassroots: Paths to scaling up." *World Development* 23 (6):927–939.

van Buuren, Arwin, and Derk Loorbach. 2009. "Policy innovation in isolation?" *Public Management Review* 11 (3):375–392. doi: 10.1080/14719030902798289.

van Buuren, Arwin, Heleen Vreugdenhil, Jitske van Popering-Verkerk, Gerald Jan Ellen, Corniel van Leeuwen, and Bas Breman. 2018. "The pilot paradox." In *Innovating climate governance: Moving beyond experiments*, edited by Bruno Turnheim, Frans Berkhout, and Paula Kivimaa, 145–165. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

van der Heijden, Jeroen. 2013. "Experimentation in policy design: Insights from the building sector." *Policy Sciences* 47 (3):249–266. doi: 10.1007/s11077-013-9184-z.

Van der Heijden, Jeroen. 2015. "The role of government in voluntary environmental programmes: A fuzzy set qualitative comparative analysis." *Public Administration* 93 (3):576–592.

van Doren, Didi, Peter P. J. Driessen, Hens Runhaar, and Mendel Giezen. 2018. "Scaling-up low-carbon urban initiatives: Towards a better understanding." *Urban Studies* 55 (1):175–194.

van Winden, Willem, and Daniel van den Buuse. 2017. "Smart city pilot projects: Exploring the dimensions and conditions of scaling up." *Journal of Urban Technology* 24 (4):51–72. doi: 10.1080/10630732.2017.1348884.

Vreugdenhil, Heleen, Jill Slinger, Wil Thissen, and Philippe Ker Rault. 2010. "Pilot projects in water management." *Ecology and Society* 15 (3).

Vreugdenhil, Heleen, Susan Taljaard, and Jill H. Slinger. 2012. "Pilot projects and their diffusion: A case study of integrated coastal management in South Africa." *International Journal of Sustainable Development* 15 (1–2):148–172.

Walters, Carl J. 1992. "Perspectives on adaptive policy design in fisheries management." In *Applied population biology*, 249–262. Netherlands: Springer.

Weiss, Carol H. 1975. "Evaluation research in the political context." *Handbook of Evaluation Research* 1:13–25.

Wellstead, Adam, Michael Howlett, Sreeja Nair, and Jeremy Rayner. 2016. "Canada's regional adaptation collaboratives and adaptation platform: The importance of scaling up and scaling down climate change governance experiments." *Climate Services* 4:52.

Wilder, Matt, and Michael Howlett. 2014. "The politics of policy anomalies: Bricolage and the hermeneutics of paradigms." *Critical Policy Studies* 8 (2):183–202. doi: 10.1080/19460171.2014.901175.

PART VI

Policy Implementation Tools

24

THE ORGANIZATIONAL TOOLS OF GOVERNMENT

The "Forgotten Fundamental"

Michael Howlett

Organizational tools include a broad range of governing arrangements which rely on the government's ownership of and control over physical, fiscal and human personnel resources to produce desired goods and services to facilitate the achievement of policy goals. While a large variety of organizational tools is possible, all involve and rely on, to varying degrees, the use of government's financial and personnel resources to perform their functions.

Introduction: State Organizations as Policy Tools

While policymakers can conceive and use hundreds of specific substantive policy tools, scholars have tried to facilitate their understanding by classifying them under a few broad categories. "Carrots, sticks and sermons", for example, is a simple way to capture the essence of the substantive tool choices governments face (Bemelmans-Videc et al. 1997; Howlett et al. 2005). For the purposes of this chapter, the four-fold NATO schema proposed by Christopher Hood (1986) will suffice. This adds an organizational component to the three types of tools mentioned earlier: nodality (i.e., information or "sermons"), authority (i.e., regulations or "sticks"), treasure (i.e., economic incentives or subsidy "carrots") and organization.

All four types of tools are theoretically available to governments for executing their policy decisions, though some are more suitable for particular tasks than others. Thus, a government may choose to present information with the purpose of altering subjects' behaviour, apply regulations to require or prohibit certain actions on the part of the subjects or use positive incentives (e.g., subsidies) to encourage a desired behaviour or negative incentives (e.g., taxes) to discourage undesired behaviour. Finally, and especially important in the context of this chapter's focus, governments may also choose an organizational form – e.g., government department, state-owned enterprise, or non-profit company – to produce desired goods and services and provide them to the populace. What it produces, under what conditions and the prices at which the products and services are sold have vital impact on societal welfare.

The overall pattern in the use of policy tools over the past five decades, however, is one of the expanding reach of the market into the provision of public goods and services at all levels of society, including many which were previously supplied by government (Howlett 2011). But traditional command-and-control instruments of governance, such as regulation by government

DOI: 10.4324/9781003163954-30

or independent regulatory commissions, state-owned enterprises and direct taxation and subsidization, have continued to grow in many countries and sectors despite efforts at privatization and deregulation (Jordana and Levi-Faur 2004; Ramesh and Howlett 2006; Jayasuriya 2001, 2004; Vogel and Kagan 2002).

Types of State Organizational Tools: From Government Agencies and State-Owned Enterprises to Advisory Agencies and Administrative Tribunals

Substantive Organizational Instruments

There are many types of substantive instruments which rely for their effectiveness on the organizational resources of governments and non-governmental agencies and actors. Most involve (and rely primarily) on the use of government personnel to achieve government goals, usually operating in structures created and controlled by governments. These are "direct" government organizations but can also include "indirect" or quasi- or parastatal ones; the best-known example of which is the state-owned or "public enterprise" – which itself comes in many shapes, sizes, colours and flavours (Bernier 2011) – as well as non-state ones, such as co-production or certification (Cashore 2002; Voorberg et al. 2015).

Direct Government

The direct use of government agencies for substantive policy purposes involves the "delivery of a good or service by government employees, funded by appropriations from government treasury" (Leman 1989, 2002). This is what has sometimes been referred to as "the forgotten fundamental" (Leman 1989) within policy instrument studies as its ubiquitous nature is often ignored in studies focusing on more esoteric kinds of tools.

Within this general type of direct government organizational tool, there are several common forms or subtypes found in many jurisdictions. These include the following:

Line Departments

In most countries, government agencies undertake a wide variety of tasks on a direct basis. These include, but are certainly not limited to, those listed in Table 24.1.

These services are provided at all levels of government (central or federal, provincial, state or regional, as well as urban or local) in slightly different configurations in different countries. Unemployment, welfare and social security payments, for example, can be the task of central governments in some countries and eras and of provincial or local governments in others.

Typically, modern government agencies follow what is known in the public administration literature as a Weberian "monocratic bureaucracy" form of organization (Brubaker 1984; Beetham 1987). This is a type of organizational structure first systematically described and analyzed by the German political sociologist Max Weber in his early twentieth-century work *Economy and Society*, whereby:

- Personnel are appointed on the basis of a merit system of appointment, retention and recruitment.
- Office holders do not own the office in which they work but hold it subject to the provisions of the merit system.

- Offices tend to be organized in a hierarchical fashion with a relatively small span of control and multiple levels.
- All activities in the agency operate according to the rule of law – office holders are not above the law and must operate within its limits (including provisions for their accountability – via some form of "chain of accountability" – to representative assemblies in modern liberal democracies who actually establish and promulgate laws).

(Albrow 1970; Weber 1978)

What are commonly referred to as "line" departments (in order to distinguish them from central, headquarters or "staff" units) have this "classic" hierarchical Weberian monocratic bureaucratic form and are thoroughly embedded in legal forms of governance. Such units are typically organized in a pyramidal shape, linking offices of civil servants in various branches and sections to a single department head, such as a department of health or a department of highways. A subvariation of this is the "ministry", a form in which, typically, multiple pyramids of departments culminate in a single head (e.g., a ministry of lands, parks and housing) or an "agency", which operates separately from the policy-making level of managerial control (Verhoest et al. 2010).

These forms of government organization are the "workhorses" of publicly provided goods and service delivery in most modern states (see Table 24.2 for an example of their use in government service delivery in a modern state, Canada).

These kinds of organizations can be very large (the US Department of Defense, for example, has over two million employees, including approximately 650,000 civilians) and can be subdivided into hundreds of separate branches, bureaus, sections and agencies. They employ the

Table 24.1 Tasks Typically Undertaken by Government Agencies

Task	*Examples*
Facilitating commerce	Mint, standards of weights and measures bureaus
Managing public lands	Commissioners of public lands, ministries of lands and parks or environment or natural resources
Constructing public works	Departments of public works – airports, highways
Research, testing and statistics	National statistical agencies
Law and justice	Courts, solicitor general or attorney general offices, corrections and prisons, policing
Technical assistance, record keeping and libraries	Farm extension, ministries of agriculture, national archives, national libraries
Health care	Ministries of health – hospitals, clinics, dentists, nursing, home care
Social services	Ministries of welfare and social, family or community services
Education and training	Ministries of education, post-secondary education colleges and universities, technical and training institutes
Labour relations	Ministries of labour and labour relations
Marketing	Tourism, ministries of small business, ministries of trade and commerce
Defence	Ministries of defence, army, navy, air force, coast guard
Supplying internal government needs	Ministries of supply and services, Queen's printers
Finance	Ministries of finance and treasury boards
International affairs	Ministries of external or foreign affairs

Source: Hodgetts, J. E. 1973, *The Canadian Public Service: A Physiology of Government 1867–1970*, Toronto: University of Toronto Press

Table 24.2 Examples of Tasks Undertaken by Public Enterprises (Canada – Twentieth Century)

Task	*Example*
Housing	Canadian Mortgage and Housing Corporation
Finance	Bank of Canada, Small Business Development Bank, Caisse de Depot et Placement de Quebec
Wartime production	Canadian Arsenals
Transportation	Canadian National Railways, Via Rail, Air Canada/Trans-Canada Airlines, St. Lawrence Seaway Co., BC Ferries, Northern Transportation Company Ltd.
Strategic industries	Atomic Energy of Canada Ltd., Petro-Canada
Communications	Canadian Broadcasting Corporation, Radio-Canada
Cultural industries	Canadian Film Development Corporation, National Film Board, National Museum Corps.
Utilities	SaskTel, Hydro Quebec, Ontario Hydro, BC Hydro
Infant industries	Petrosar, Athabaska Tar Sands, Canadian Development Corporation
Sick industries	Skeena Cellulose, BCResources Investment Corporation
Property management	British Columbia Building Corporation
Regional development	Prince Rupert Coal Corporation, DEVCO, Cape Breton Development Corp.
Lotteries and vice	BC Liquor Stores, Société des Alcools de Quebec, Casino Nova Scotia, Lotto-Canada
Local utilities	Translink, Edmonton Telephones
Marketing boards	Canada Wheat Board, British Columbia Egg and Milk Marketing Board, Freshwater Fish Marketing Board

Source: Vining, A. R., and R. Botterell. 1983, "An Overview of the Origins, Growth, Size, and Functions of Provincial Crown Corporations", In *Crown Corporations: The Calculus of Instrument Choice*, ed. J. R. S. Pritchard. Toronto: Butterworths, 303–368

most personnel and deliver by far the largest percentage of state-provided goods and services in liberal-democratic, and virtually all other, forms of modern government.

The "government employees" employed in line departments are typically civil or public servants. In most liberal-democratic countries these are unionized and well-paid positions, and although this is not the case in many other countries where officials may supplement their wages illegally through various forms of corruption ("kickbacks", bribes, "service" payments, expediting "fees" and so on), in either case, the use of public servants to directly deliver public services is an expensive proposition, which in itself discourages its use. How well these officials are educated and trained and what kinds of facilities and information they have to work with also affect their capacity and perceived competence and, along with cost, can pay a significant role in their placement within a policy design (Brunsson 2006). Countries or sectors with well-resourced administrative systems regarded as highly efficient and competent by their citizenry are more likely to feature direct government service provision in their policy designs than countries with corrupt or inefficient civil services, given the advantages the former often hold for governments in terms of cost and ease of program administration.

Central Support Agencies

These are agencies which are similar in appearance to line departments but often act more like private companies, delivering services within governments rather than to external constituencies.

Some of these are very old (like government stationers and printers) while others (like government systems and information technology units) are much more recent. Many of these agencies are quite large, and since they often serve functions similar to those of private companies, they are, and have often been, primary targets for government efforts to develop market modes of governance in some sectors through contracting out or privatizing government services – that is, they are simply turned into "firms" supplying government services by severing their funding through general appropriations revenue and establishing autonomous boards of directors. Cost issues are typically a major factor influencing their inclusion in policy designs.

Savings and Wealth Funds: Social Security, Health Insurance and Pension Plans

Social and health insurance and pension schemes like those used in many countries for unemployment insurance, elderly income support and health care are other such government organization-based schemes, ones in which all individuals in certain categories are mandated to make payments with a government agency which acts, usually, as a monopoly insurance provider for that group (Katzman 1988; Moss 2002). Some of these schemes, of course, are among the largest areas of government expenditure and are virtually identical in organizational form to direct government organizational tools given their universal and mandated nature – with the main difference being that programme funds come from dedicated insurance payments rather than general tax revenue. These schemes are generally very high profile and targeted to specific kinds of outputs. They are often intended to be revenue neutral, although any short-term shortfalls in these schemes typically have to be made up by governments. They also can provide large pools of capital which governments can use to finance infrastructure and other kinds of investments. As a result, they are very popular and found throughout the world, although their configuration and extent of private sector involvement varies greatly from country to country. Countries which do not have such schemes typically cite reasons related to costs or intrusiveness in already existing private sector programmes.

Quasi-Governmental Organizational Forms

All these types of government agencies have an essentially bureaucratic organizational structure and also exist largely as Weberian forms of administration – although some, like pension and insurance funds, may be structured in a more "businesslike" fashion with fewer rules and regulations guiding their behaviour than government departments and agencies.

Other kinds of organizational tools, however, are typically less bureaucratic in nature. These include the following main types.

Public Enterprises and Other Corporate Forms

Public enterprises or "state-owned enterprises" (SOEs) come in many different forms, depending on how their share ownership is structured.

Perry and Rainey (1988) developed an exhaustive typology by examining the different types of ownership, sources of funding and mode of social control exercised over these organizations. The key feature of these organizations, however, is that they have a corporate form and are not administrative agencies. That is, they operate under separate legislation or under general corporate legal principles, and government control is exercised indirectly as a function of government share ownership, typically through voting control over appointments to the company

board of directors – who usually can be removed "at pleasure" by the government. The board of directors then hires and fires senior management so that government control is indirect and "arm's-length", unlike the management and control of direct government administrative agencies.

Some public enterprises can raise and borrow money on their own authority while others are limited in their sphere of independence and must seek funding or permission to borrow from governments. Similarly, some are free to set whatever prices they would like for their products while others must seek government permission to alter prices and may be subsidized to provide a good or service at below market value. While government share ownership can drop below 50% and still exercise control if the remainder of the shares are widely held, it is more common for a government to own 50% or more of voting shares (in fact, it is very common for them to own 100%). However, there are a growing number of "mixed" enterprises with joint public-private or multiple-government ownership.

These companies can be exceedingly large, although they can also be much smaller, in some cases limited to one or two factories or offices. Sovereign wealth funds, holding the proceeds of oil and gas or pension revenues in countries like Singapore and Dubai, for example, are among the largest firms in terms of assets and can control hundreds of billions of dollars in investments (Elson 2008) while large public hydroelectrical or petrochemical utilities in countries like Canada, Norway, Mexico, Iran and Venezuela also rank first among companies in those countries based on size of assets controlled (Laux and Molot 1988).

These efforts have been successful in sectors where competition exists, such as marketing boards, product-producing companies and property management (Savas 1987; Laux 1993) but have generally foundered in other areas where the privatized corporation has simply become a monopoly service provider. This has often been the case with large-scale utilities such as water, electricity or public transportation providers where natural monopoly conditions often exist. In these cases, they have often been re-nationalized or re-regulated through the creation of regulatory oversight agencies and mechanisms (Mees 2005; Leland and Smirnova 2009). Policy designers now very much take these contextual circumstances into account in proposing or recommending either the creation or privatization of SOEs.

Table 24.2 provides examples of the many public enterprises used in the twentieth century in Canada, a country which has not been at the forefront of the deployment of such tools, but which has also not shied away from creating them when needed to pursue national and regional objectives.

Organizational Hybrids

In recent years, numerous hybrid forms of indirect government organizations have also been developed and implemented in many jurisdictions. These have often been proposed in situations where governments would like to privatize or contract out government services but where there is not a competitive market, thereby limiting the utility of outright sale or divestment by a government (Mathur and Skelcher 2007).

Examples of these types of tools include so-called "special operating agencies" (SOAs) (Koppell 2003; Birrell 2008), which were established in many countries in the 1980s and 1990s in an effort to grant more autonomy to central service agencies and remove them from day-to-day government control. This was typically done by "outsourcing" whatever services could be secured from a competitive external marketplace while allowing agencies providing those goods and services which could not be so relocated to charge real prices to purchasers and to retain their earnings and make their own reinvestment decisions (Aucoin 2006; Flumian et al. 2007).

A second type of hybrid is the "quasi-autonomous non-governmental organization", or quango, an organizational form in which a non-governmental agency is established and given a grant of authority by a government to provide a particular good or service (Hood 1986). These can be precisely targeted and many airports, ports and harbours are run by such "independent authorities", which rely on governments for their monopoly position but which are answerable to their own boards for their activities rather than to the government itself (Kickert 2001). These agencies are usually then able to charge their own prices for the good or service they provide, retain their earnings and raise funds on capital markets for investments, removing these items from government books (Flinders and McConnel 1999; Lovink 1999; Advani and Borins 2001).

There can be serious principle-agent problems with these kinds of agencies, however, which can affect their use in fields with legal or corporatist modes of governance (Koppell 2003). Maintaining the arm's-length nature of the relationship of public enterprises and s to government is difficult, and such agencies may not have enough autonomy for governments to avoid the consequences of scandals or other problems associated with them. That is, these relationships can be either too close (day-to-day interference) or too distant (agencies become distant and aloof powers unto themselves).

Partnerships, Commissioning and Contracting Out

More recent efforts on the part of some governments to shift some sectors from legal or corporatist to market modes of governance – that is, to offload legal and financial responsibility for goods and service delivery and have existing goods and services delivered through the private or quasi-governmental sector – have evolved into several distinct forms of organization which are more private than public, with the public sector acting mainly as a purchaser of goods and services provided by private companies (Grimshaw et al. 2001; Grimsey and Lewis 2004; Greener 2006).

One typical form of such activity is "contracting out" or outsourcing, in which internal provision of some good or service is simply replaced with a source external to government (Zarco-Jasso 2005). This can be more complicated if a non-governmental provider does not exist for a particular product or service, so a government must first, or simultaneously, create a non-governmental provider (Brown et al. 2008). Outsourcing of highway and railway maintenance in many countries in the 1980s and 1990s, for example, involved government managers creating their own firms, which then bid on and received government contracts to provide maintenance services; those companies then immediately hired former government workers and, in some cases, used former government equipment to provide the same service (McDavid and Clemens 1995).

Different kinds of these partnerships exist, such as collaborative partnerships with NGOs to control hospital admissions for the disabled, operational partnerships with companies and other governments to share costs for many of the items discussed in this chapter and contributory partnerships in which governments may provide funding without necessarily controlling the use of such funds, as occurs when matching funds are provided for local or community-based environmental improvement projects (Hodge and Greve 2007).

Although popular in some countries and sectors in recent years as examples of "collaborative" or "joined-up" government, such schemes often stretch the resources of non-profit or volunteer organizations and can result in inefficient or incompetent goods and services delivery (Evans et al. 2005; Riccucci and Meyers 2008). These kinds of cost and reliability issues increasingly have affected considerations of such tools and their inclusion in policy designs.

Commissioning

Commissioning is the most recently recognized collaborative technique in which, as Taylor and Migone (2017) put it:

> Generally refers to a more strategic and dynamic approach to public service design and delivery with a clear focus on aligning resources to desired outcomes and by injecting greater diversity and competition into the public service economy. By creating public service markets, the expertise and resources of the private and not-for-profit sectors can be harnessed and leveraged through new business and delivery models.

Commissioning goes well beyond traditional procurement and outsourcing agendas with the aim of increasing service levels from both private and community partners by involving "third sector" actors such as NGOs in both service target formulation and design ("co-design") as well as service delivery ("co-management"). The provision of stable funding and ongoing interactions with government funding agencies, it is argued, allows the capacity of third sector actors to be enhanced at the same time that co-design and co-management ensure that outcomes match the expectations of clients rather than agencies. However, in practice, such efforts have also often run into challenges due to a mismatch between government and NGO capacities and resources (Bovaird et al. 2014).

Contracting

Contracting involves governments in reducing the level of direct state involvement in the provision of public services, including internal state services, through the replacement of civil servants and internal procurement processes with contractual arrangements with (usually) non-governmental organizations, primarily businesses (Ascher 1987; Vincent Jones 2006). Various forms of contracting out exist, such as public-private partnerships (PPPs), which have grown in popularity in areas involving large-scale infrastructure investments, whereby private firms absorb many investment costs and construct or rehabilitate infrastructure projects in water, highways, dams and other such areas in exchange for long-term contracts to operate and profit from them (English and Skellern 2005; Vining et al. 2005). Other less rigorous forms of contracting out exist in areas such as health care, education and prisons, in which contracts may not involve large investments and profit sharing but rather simply remove major expenditure areas, such as penitentiaries, from government books and budgets (Thadani 2014; Roehrich et al. 2014).

In the case of contracting, many supporters of the concept have noted significant limitations which can prevent contracting from functioning effectively. The 2016 Nobel Prize in Economics, for example, was awarded to two economists who specialize in detailing the significant flaws and limits of contracting in areas such as prisons and health care (Holmstrom and Milgrom 1991). Their concern was with the difficulty encountered by governments in enforcing quality control in such contracts when the nature of the service provided (i.e., its quality) was dependent on difficult-to-monitor interactions between, for example, patients and doctors or prisoners and prison guards. However, many other criticisms of public-private partnerships exist (Newman 2014) which highlight the need to carefully negotiate realistic contracts and the information asymmetries and knowledge gaps linked to this, as well as other issue such as difficulties encountered cancelling contracts or preventing contractees from simply reneging on their contracted obligations (Jensen 2017).

Non-State and Society-Based Tools: Co-production and Certification

Efforts at policy reform have been omnipresent in many developed and developing countries over the past several decades and have often featured efforts to reduce the number of state-based tools and shift their activities either towards hybrid instruments or, in some cases, away from state-based organizations altogether. Many of these efforts have featured waves of management reforms and administrative restructuring, including privatizations, deregulation and re-regulation and the like (Ramesh and Howlett 2006). "Anything but the government", for example, was a popular sentiment in public policy reform for at least two decades (Christensen and Laegreid 2008). These efforts have led to the articulation and promotion of several alternative modes of governing to more traditional "hierarchical" or state-led ones.

Many of these techniques are "market based" and constitute efforts to replace government activity with private sector actions (Savas 1987). However, others are focused less on zero-sum notions of state-market relations but rather involve more complex ideas about involving "civil society" actors more directly in "collaborative" policymaking, administration and implementation (Brudney 1987; Salamon 1989). These kinds of activities come in many forms, but two which have received a great deal of attention in recent years are "co-production" and "certification".

Certification

Certification is a term used to capture the activities of many non-state actors involved in areas such as forestry, fisheries, organic foods and other similar areas in which quality control and enforcement of standards are accomplished less directly than is the case with traditional command-and-control-regulation (Cashore et al. 2004; Cutler et al. 1999; Gulbrandsen 2010). In these cases, for a variety of reasons from cost to ideology, "certification" of standards is undertaken by civil society organizations such as the Forestry Stewardship Council or the Marine Stewardship Council which lack the formal authority to compel business and industries to abide by regulatory standards but which utilize (often negative) publicity, boycotts and other actions to encourage compliance (Cashore 2002; Pérez-Ramírez 2012).

These tools are often referred to as non-state market-based (NSMD) tools (Cashore 2002) since they do not rely on state authority for their power and legitimacy to regulate private sector activity, but rather do so through market activities such as product labelling and producer certifications, affecting consumer behaviour and preferences for, for example, organic produce or sustainably harvested timber, fish or coffee, among others.

Such schemes rely heavily on the reputation of the certifier for honesty, accuracy and precision. In the case of certification, legitimacy and trust are key aspects of the certifying organizations and predictors of the success of voluntary certification arrangements (Bernstein and Cashore 2007). Certification only functions effectively if trust exists between the public and certifiers and between the certifiers and certified companies and governments. Concerns about second-class regulation or corrupt standards can easily undermine years of work building up a certified brand. Similarly, competing or duelling certifiers can also undermine existing schemes and lead to their ineffectiveness (Zelli et al. 2017). If their reputation is damaged, as has happened from time to time with products such as wine or olives in which additives were added or cheaper products substituted for expected ones, such schemes can collapse and require either substantial reform or government takeover, revealing their dependence on government, ultimately, to serve as the guarantor of quality.

Co-production

Co-production is a shorthand term for a variety of governance arrangements which involve citizens in the production and delivery of public services. First set out by Elinor Ostrom (Parks et al. 1981) in her work on community policing in the 1960s, the term has been expanded and popularized by Victor Pestoff and Taco Brandsen in their many books and writings in the years since (Brandsen and Pestoff 2006; Pestoff et al. 2012). In the US, these ideas generated interest among public administration scholars in the 1970s and the 1980s and experienced a revival in the decades after the turn of the century (Pestoff et al. 2012). The idea has since been picked up and studied by some scholars around the world.

Originally, co-production was narrowly defined as the "involvement of citizens, clients, consumers, volunteers and/or community organizations in producing public services as well as consuming or otherwise benefiting from them" (Alford 1998:128). Drawing on the experience of countries in Scandinavia in areas such as parent-teaching associations, Brandsen and Pestoff have highlighted the extent to which many governance arrangements, even those thought to be purely hierarchical, such as public schooling, in fact combine aspects of hierarchical or state-based governance with elements of civil society mobilization (Pestoff 2006).

In early studies of activities such as parent-teacher interactions, this involvement in co-production activity was typically voluntary, meaning it existed as a positive externality reducing production and delivery costs of public services. This made it very attractive to governments seeking cost reductions in public service delivery, especially ones favourable to notions of "social enterprise" and enhanced community participation since as an end or good in itself (Parks et al. 1981; Salamon 1981, 1987).

Like all other collaborative tools, co-production also has a downside as a policy tool. In the case of co-production, it has long been recognized that expectations of free labour from co-producers may not materialize (Sorrentino 2015; Brudney and England 1983), and schemes to incentivize co-producers through payments are susceptible to all the usual harms of public expenditures, including corruption, clientelism and goals displacement, amongst others (Howlett 2017).

Procedural Organizational Instruments

Substantive tools, of course, are only half of the uses towards which government and non-governmental organizational resources can be put. The second use is procedural. This involves the use of the organizational resources such as personnel, staffing, institutionalization and internal procedures to alter or affect policy processes in order to better achieve general government aims or specific programme activities.

It bears repeating that these tools do not involve direct or indirect goods and service delivery mechanisms, as do their substantive counterparts, but rather affect procedural activities, generally efforts aimed at creating or restructuring policy community structure and/or behaviour through government leadership or "network management" efforts.

According to Agranoff and McGuire (1999:21), this latter activity involves "network managers" in "selecting appropriate actors and resources, shaping the operating context of the network and developing ways to cope with strategic and operational complexity". The key dimensions or tasks involved in these kinds of network management activities include the identification of potentially compatible network actors, given the issue at hand; limiting potential conflicts that would hinder flexibility; recognizing legal requirements; balancing political objectives/conflicts with policy objectives; and assigning costs in implementation.

In any policy process, policy managers need to work with the structure and operation of any network which already exists in the area, recognize potential new actors, limit the role of ineffective actors, balance their time and resource commitments (money, technology, expertise etc.), maintain the focus of the network in achieving goals and build trust between actors/reduce possible conflicts (Mandell 1994, 2000). In order to achieve these ends, various kinds of organizational network management tools can be used. Several of the most common of these are set out next.

Public Sector Network Management Tools

There are many different types of procedural tools linked with the use of specific government organizational resources which can affect various aspects of policy subsystem behaviour in policy processes. Interest in these tools has grown as many governments have moved in the direction of more overt network management in some sectors in recent years.

In general, these agencies undertake tasks such as

1. Vertical and horizontal agency coordination
2. Overcome institutional blockages like federalism and divisions of power
3. "Mainstreaming"
4. Building commitments
5. Building legitimacy/developing visions and agreement on alternatives
6. Building coalitions
7. Structuring NGO activity, e.g., lobbying activities

(Mandell 2000, 185–210)

A fairly commonly used procedural organizational tool is establishing new government agencies or reforming existing institutions in order to focus or refocus state and societal activities on specific problems or issue areas (Goetz 2007; Durant 2008). Setting up a new government ministry for technology or a new research council to promote advanced technologies like biotechnology, e-technologies or other high-technology sectors, for example, is a common action on the part of governments wanting to target a new area of activity for further development (Hood 2004; Lindquist 2006; van Thiel 2008). However, such actions are highly visible and, if repeated too often, quite costly. They are also quite intrusive and, as a result, are proposed and used only infrequently. Nevertheless, these tools are employed by all governments. They include the following typical sorts.

Staff or Central (Executive) Agencies

This is an old form of government organization, one in which a small, coordinating government agency, rather than one which directly delivers services to the public, is created to centralize agency initiatives in some area. Such "staff or "central" agencies are generally created as a means to control other administrative agencies and are often linked very closely to the political executive (Bernier et al. 2005). In Westminster-style parliamentary systems, for example, older examples include privy council offices and treasury board secretariats while newer ones include presidential, premiers' and prime ministers' offices; ministries of state; communication units; intergovernmental secretariats; and various kinds of implementation units (Chenier 1985; Savoie 1999; Lindquist 2006). They have seen much growth in recent years as political executives have

sought to re-establish control over far-flung administrative apparatuses (Campbell and Szablowski 1979; Rhodes and Weller 2001; Bevir et al. 2003; Bernier et al. 2005).

Unlike line departments, these staff or central agencies are less or non-hierarchical, flatter organizations typically staffed by political appointees, although others also employ permanent officials as well. Key officials are chiefs of staff, principle secretaries and specialized positions such as a clerk of the privy council or cabinet secretary. These agencies play a major and increasing role in designing and coordinating policies and policymaking, ensuring accountability to legislatures and controlling the budgets, activities and plans of line departments and ministries. Their small cost is a major design consideration, although this is often offset by their high visibility and high level of intrusiveness in the affairs of the government agencies they control or coordinate.

Tribunals and Other Quasi-judicial Bodies

These are created by statute and perform many administrative functions, hearing appeals concerning licencing (e.g., of pesticides), certification (of personnel or programmes) and permits (e.g., for disposal of effluents). Appointed by government, they usually represent, or purport to represent, some diversity of interests and expertise.

Administrative hearings are conducted by tribunals in a quasi-judicial fashion, often in order to aid tribunals in their activities. These hearings are bound by rules of natural justice, and procedures may also be dictated by statutory provisions. The decisions of tribunals are designed to be binding on the ministry in question but may be subject to various political, administrative and judicial appeals. Public hearings may be statutorily defined as a component of the administrative process.

In the framework of administration, tribunals are directed toward securing compliance with administrative edicts and the achievement of identified standards of behaviour by both governmental and non-governmental actors. They may act as a mechanism with which to appeal administrative decisions, but in most cases, proceedings are held at the discretion of a decision-making authority, and public hearings are often "after the fact" public information sessions rather than being true consultative devices (Grima 1985; Stewart and Sinclair 2007).

Analytical Units

Some governments have also set up internal think tanks or research institutes in order to provide policy advice to governments (Dobuzinskis et al. 2007; Marchildon 2007). Many government departments and agencies also have established specialized policy units designed to generate studies and reports which can influence or help persuade both government officials and non-governmental actors of the merits of government plans. These agencies also often employ outside consultants to bring additional expertise and knowledge to policy formation, implementation and evaluation (Schwartz 1997; Perl 2002; Speers 2007). The knowledge they generate is used to inform internal policy-making processes and also to garner support for government positions from outside groups (Whiteman 1985, 1995).

New analytical units such as those policy shops created in many jurisdictions in the 1970s and 1980s in order to promote formal policy analysis and what is now referred to as "knowledge-based" or "evidence-based" policymaking are good examples of procedural organizational tools (Prince 1979; Prince and Chenier 1980; Chenier 1985; Hollander and Prince 1993; Lindquist 2006).

Establishing Government Reviews, Ad Hoc Task Forces, Commissions, Inquiries and Public Hearings

A sixth common procedural organizational tool used by governments is the establishment of a government review. These range from formal, mandated, periodic reviews of legislation and government activity by congressional or parliamentary committees and internal administrative bodies to "ad hoc" processes such as task forces or inquiries designed to activate or mobilize network actors to support government initiatives (Gilmore and Krantz 1991; Bellehumeur 1997; Marchildon 2007; Sulitzeanu-Kenan 2007, 2010; Rowe and McAllister 2006).

Ad hoc task forces and inquiries are typically temporary bodies, much shorter term and often more issue related than institutionalized advisory committees. Ad hoc commissions are also created as instruments to consult a variety of interests with regard to economic and other areas of planning activity. These range from presidential or royal commissions to those created at the departmental level. Presidential and royal commissions are the most formal and arm's length, and, therefore, are the most difficult for governments to control and predict and, therefore are used less often (Clokie and Robinson 1969; Chapman 1973; Flitner 1986; Salter 1990).

The subject matter of an ad hoc commission is typically urgent, of concern to more than one ministry and level of government, and the subject of some controversy (Resodihardjo 2006; Sulitzeanu-Kenan 2010). It is invoked at the discretion of government and is subject to political, economic and social pressures. Indeed, the very initiation of the commission is likely to be the product of pressure by public interest groups. But, as Chapman (1973:184) noted, "Commissions may also play a significant political role and are often used as a method for postponing to an indefinite future decision on questions which appear to be embarrassing but not urgent". Employment of these instruments for this purpose can result in serious legitimation problems for governments utilizing these policy tools, however, given their high level of visibility (Heinrichs 2005; Hendriks and Carson 2008; Stutz 2008; Marier 2009).

Public participation through hearings is the most common type of public or network consultation in many sectors (Rowe and Frewer 2005). Hearings vary by degree of formalization and when they occur in a policy process. The most effective and influential are often flexible processes that are geared towards policy formulation, such as project reviews or environmental assessments, but the most common are rigid processes that take place in or after the implementation stage of a process, such as a formal policy evaluation exercise (Dion 1973; Baetz and Tanguay 1998; Edelenbos and Klijn 2005). Public hearings are often mandated by legislation and most often occur after a decision has been taken – that is, purely as information and/or legitimation devices. Actual instances of open, truly empowered public hearing processes are very rare (Riedel 1972; Grima 1985; Torgerson 1986).

Legislative and Executive Oversight Agencies

This category of organizational tools also includes specialized agencies with very different policy-making functions, like arm's-length independent auditor generals or access to information commissioners, which are units typically attached to legislatures, providing some oversight or control over executive branch activities (Campbell-Smith 2008). Many principle-agent problems can also be overcome through administrative procedures mandating oversight agency reviews of government actions (McCubbins and Lupia 1994; McCubbins et al. 1987), especially if these are linked to funding and budgetary issues (Hall 2008). These latter units are usually fairly small, inexpensive and highly visible, and there has been a proliferation of such units in recent years dealing with areas such as corruption, human rights and the promotion

of ethnic and gender equality (Malloy 2003). They often represent an effort to promote legal governance in sectors typically configured in other modes.

Conclusion: Organizational Tools – The Forgotten Fundamental in Policy Design Studies

In recent years, for a variety of reasons, a strong preference for shifts towards non-hierarchical forms of governance coupled with discontent with the results of market-based reforms in the 1970s to 1990s led to increasing attention being paid to different kinds of more civil-society or networked forms of governance, often referred to by the shorthand term "collaborative governance" (Meuleman 2009). Many of the recent innovations in organizational forms, from special operating agencies to quangos, public-private partnerships and various kinds of hybrid organizations, have emerged largely in the effort to reduce the size of existing organizations and transform some sectoral activities from legal and corporatist to market modes of governance (Hardiman and Scott 2010). This is done in the name of improving the efficiency of service delivery or in order to try to reduce the resource burden large public service delivery agencies place on budgets and taxpayer loads (Verhoest et al. 2007; O'Toole and Meier 2010).

Often lost in the identification of alternative forms of collaboration followed by governments around the world in a variety of sectors, however, has been the observation that all collaborative modes are vulnerable to specific kinds of failures due to these inherent vulnerabilities. When governments reform or try to shift from one mode to the other modes, they need to understand not only the nature of the problem they are trying to address and the skills and resources they have at their disposal to address it, but also, especially, the innate features of each potential governances mode and the capabilities and competences each requires in order to operate at a high level of performance.

If these critical capacity deficits are not taken into account, then any short-term gain enjoyed by deploying a hybrid collaborative governance technique is likely to be cancelled out later when the consequences of policy failures and poor institutional design due to its governance limitations become apparent (Hood 2010; Weaver 1986).

Traditional organization-based implementation tools such as government agencies and public enterprises, on the other hand, are generally costly and high visibility because they rely on government personnel funded by appropriations from general revenue raised through taxes or royalties, although some are also funded from market revenue stemming from the sale of goods or services. But they are reliable and remain "the workhorses" of government. Despite their real or perceived cost, and in spite of many efforts to create or replace them with other forms of service and goods delivery, however, direct delivery of goods and services by public agencies remains what Christopher Leman (1989) has called "the forgotten fundamental" of policy tools and designs.

References

Advani, A., and S. Borins. "Managing Airports: A Test of the New Public Management." *International Public Management Journal* 4 (2001): 91–2007.

Agranoff, R., and M. McGuire. "Managing in Network Settings." *Policy Studies Review* 16, no. 1 (1999): 18–41.

Albrow, Martin. *Bureaucracy*. New York: Praeger Publishers, 1970.

Alford, John. "A Public Management Road Less Travelled: Clients as Co-Producers of Public Services." *Australian Journal of Public Administration* 57, no. 4 (December 1, 1998): 128–137.

Ascher, K. *The Politics of Privatisation: Contracting Out Public Services*. Basingstoke: Macmillan, 1987.

Aucoin, Peter, Tom Christensen, and Per Laegreid. "Accountability and Coordination with Independent Foundations: A Canadian Case of Autonomization." In *Autonomy and Regulation: Coping with Agencies in the Modern State*, 110–133. Cheltenham: Edward Elgar, 2006.

Baetz, M. C., and A. B. Tanguay. "'Damned If You Do, Damned If You Don't': Government and the Conundrum of Consultation in the Environmental Sector." *Canadian Public Administration* 41, no. 3 (1998): 395–418.

Beetham, D. *Bureaucracy*. Milton Keynes: Open University Press★Own copy, 1987.

Bellehumeur, R. "Review: An Instrument of Change." *Optimum* 27, no. 1 (1997): 37–42.

Bemelmans-Videc, M. L., R. C. Rist, and E. Vedung, eds. *Carrots, Sticks and Sermons: Policy Instruments and Their Evaluation*. New Brunswick: Transaction Publishers, 1997.

Bernier, Luc. "The Future of Public Enterprises: Perspectives from the Canadian Experience." *Annals of Public and Cooperative Economics* 82, no. 4 (December 1, 2011): 399–419.

Bernier, Luc, Keith Brownsey, and Michael Howlett, eds. *Executive Styles in Canada: Cabinet Structures and Leadership Practices in Canadian Government*. 1st ed. Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 2005.

Bernstein, Steven, and Benjamin Cashore. "Can Non-State Global Governance Be Legitimate? An Analytical Framework." *Regulation & Governance* 1 (2007): 347–371.

Bevir, M., R. A. W. Rhodes, and P. Weller. "Traditions of Governance: Interpreting the Changing Role of the Public Sector." *Public Administration* 81, no. 1 (2003): 1–17.

Birrell, Derek. "Devolution and Quangos in the United Kingdom: The Implementation of Principles and Policies for Rationaliisation and Democratisation." *Policy Studies* 29, no. 1 (2008): 35–49.

Bovaird, Tony, Ian Briggs, and Martin Willis. "Strategic Commissioning in the UK: Service Improvement Cycle or Just Going Round in Circles?" *Local Government Studies* 40, no. 4 (July 4, 2014): 533–559.

Brandsen, Taco, and Victor Pestoff. "Co-Production, the Third Sector and the Delivery of Public Services." *Public Management Review* 8 (December 2006): 493–501.

Brown, Trevor L., Matthew Potoski, and David M. Ven Syke. "Changing Modes of Service Delivery: How Past Choices Structure Future Choices." *Environment and Planning C: Government and Policy* 26 (2008): 127–143.

Brubaker, Rogers. *The Limits of Rationality*. New York: Taylor & Francis, 1984.

Brudney, Jeffrey L. "Coproduction and Privatization: Exploring the Relationship and Its Implications." *Nonprofit and Voluntary Sector Quarterly* 16, no. 3 (January 7, 1987): 11–21.

Brudney, Jeffrey L., and Robert E. England. "Toward a Definition of the Coproduction Concept." *Public Administration Review* 43, no. 1 (1983): 59–65.

Brunsson, Nils. *Mechanisms of Hope: Maintaining the Dream of the Rational Organization*. Copenhagen: Copenhagen Business School Press, 2006.

Campbell, C., and G. J. Szablowski. *The Superbureaucrats: Structure and Behaviour in Central Agencies*. Toronto: Macmillan, 1979.

Campbell-Smith, Duncan. *Follow the Money: The Audit Commission, Public Money and the Management of Public Services, 1983–2008*. London: Allen Lane, 2008.

Cashore, Benjamin. "Legitimacy and the Privatization of Environmental Governance: How Non-State Market-Driven (NSMD) Governance Systems Gain Rule-Making Authority." *Governance* 15, no. 4 (2002): 503–529.

Cashore, Benjamin, Graeme Auld, and Deanna Newsom. *Governing Through Markets: Forest Certification and the Emergence of Non-State Authority*. 1 ed. New Haven, CT: Yale University Press, 2004.

Chapman, R. A. *The Role of Commissions in Policy-Making*. London: George Allen and Unwin, 1973.

Chenier, J. A. "Ministers of State to Assist: Weighing the Costs and the Benefits." *Canadian Public Administration* 28, no. 3 (1985): 397–412.

Christensen, Tom, and Per Lægreid. "NPM and Beyond – Structure, Culture and Demography." *International Review of Administrative Sciences* 74, no. 1 (January 3, 2008): 7–23. https://doi.org/10.1177/0020852307085730.

Clokie, H. M., and J. W. Robinson. *Royal Commissions of Inquiry: The Significance of Investigations in British Politics*. New York: Octagon Books, 1969.

Cutler, A. C., V. Haufler, and T. Porter. "The Contours and Significance of Private Authority in International Affairs." In *Private Authority and International Affairs*, edited by A. C. Cutler, V. Haufler, and T. Porter, 333–376. Albany: State University of New York, 1999.

Dion, L. "The Politics of Consultation." *Government and Opposition* 8, no. 3 (1973): 332–353.

Dobuzinskis, Laurent, Michael Howlett, and David Laycock, eds. *Policy Analysis in Canada: The State of the Art*. Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 2007.

Durant, Robert F. "Sharpening a Knife Cleverly: Organizational Change, Policy Paradox, and the 'Weaponizing' of Administrative Reform." *Public Administration Review* 68, no. 2 (2008): 282–294.

Edelenbos, Jurian, and E. H. Klijn. "Managing Stakeholder Involvement in DecisionMaking: A Comparative Analysis of Six Interactive Processes in the Netherlands." *Journal of Public Administration Research and Theory* 16, no. 3 (2005): 417–446.

Elson, Anthony. "The Sovereign Wealth Funds of Singapore." *World Economics* 9, no. 3 (2008): 73–96.

English, Linda M., and Matthew Skellern. "Public-Private Partnerships and Public Sector Management Reform; A Comparative Analysis." *International Journal of Public Policy* 1, no. 1/2 (2005): 1–21.

Evans, B., T. Richmond, and J. Shields. "Structuring Neoliberal Governance: The Nonprofit Sector, Emerging New Modes of Control and the Marketisation of Service Delivery." *Policy and Society* 24, no. 1 (2005): 73–97.

Flinders, Matthew V., and Hugh McConnel. "Diversity and Complexity: The Quango-Continuum." In *Quangos, Accountability and Reform: The Politics of Quasi-Government*, edited by Martin J. Smith, 17–39. Sheffield: Political Economy Research Centre, 1999.

Flitner, D. *The Politics of Presidential Commissions*. New York: Transnational Publishers, 1986.

Flumian, Maryantonett, Amanda Coe, and Kenneth Kernaghan. "Transforming Service to Canadians: The Service Canada Model." *International Review of Administrative Sciences* 73, no. 4 (2007): 557–568.

Gilmore, T. N., and J. Krantz. "Innovation in the Public Sector: Dilemmas in the Use of Ad Hoc Processes." *Journal of Policy Analysis and Management* 10, no. 3 (1991): 455–468.

Goetz, Anne Marie. "Manouevring Past Clientelism: Institutions and Incentives to Generate Constituencies in Support of Governance Reforms." *Commonwealth and Comparative Politics* 45, no. 4 (2007): 403–424.

Greener, Ian. "Markets in the Public Sector: When Do They Work, and What Do We Do When They Don't." *Policy & Politics* 36, no. 1 (2006): 93–108.

Grima, A. P., J. B. R. Whitney, and V. W. Maclaren. "Participatory Rites: Integrating Public Involvement in Environmental Impact Assessment." In *Environmental Impact Assessment: The Canadian Experience*, 33–51. Toronto: University of Toronto Institute for Environmental Studies, 1985.

Grimsey, D., and M. K. Lewis. *Public Private Partnerships: The Worldwide Revolution in Infrastructure Provision and Project Finance*. Cheltenham: Edward Elgar, 2004.

Grimshaw, D., S. Vincent, and H. Willmott. "New Control Modes and Emergent Organizational Forms: Private-Public Contracting in Public Administration." *Administrative Theory and Practice* 23, no. 3 (2001): 407–430.

Gulbrandsen, Lars H. *Transnational Environmental Governance: The Emergence and Effects of the Certification of Forests and Fisheries*. Cheltenham: Edward Elgar Publishing, 2010.

Hall, Thad. "Steering Agencies with Short-Term Authorizations." *Public Administration Review* 68, no. 2 (2008): 366–379.

Hardiman, Niamh, and Colin Scott. "Governance as Polity: An Institutional Approach to the Evolution of State Functions in Ireland." *Public Administration* 88, no. 1 (March 2010): 170–189.

Heinrichs, H. "Advisory Systems in Pluralistic Knowledge Societies: A Criteria-Based Typology to Assess and Optimize Environmental Policy Advice." In *Democratization of Expertise? Exploring Novel Forms of Scientific Advice in Political Decision-Making*, edited by S. Maasen and P. Weingart, 41–61. Dordrecht: Springer, 2005.

Hendriks, Carolyn, and Lyn Carson. "Can the Market Help the Forum? Negotiating the Commercialization of Deliberative Democracy." *Policy Sciences* 41, no. 4 (December 1, 2008): 293–313. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11077-008-9069-8.

Hodge, Graeme A., and Carsten Greve. "Public-Private Partnerships: An International Performance Review." *Public Administration Review*, no. May/June (2007): 545–558.

Hodgetts, J. E. *The Canadian Public Service: A Physiology of Government 1867–1970*. Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1973.

Hollander, M. J., and M. J. Prince. "Analytical Units in Federal and Provincial Governments: Origins, Functions and Suggestions for Effectiveness." *Canadian Public Administration* 36, no. 2 (1993): 190–224.

Holmstrom, Bengt, and Paul Milgrom. "Multitask Principal–Agent Analyses: Incentive Contracts, Asset Ownership, and Job Design." *The Journal of Law, Economics, and Organization* 7, no. special issue (January 1, 1991): 24–52. https://doi.org/10.1093/jleo/7.special_issue.24.

Hood, C. "Can We? Administrative Limits Revisited." *Public Administration Review* 70, no. 4 (2010): 527–534.

Hood, Christopher. *The Tools of Government*. Chatham: Chatham House Publishers, 1986.

Hood, Christopher, O. James, B. G. Peter, and C. Scott. "Controlling Public Services and Government: Towards a Cross-National Perspective." In *Controlling Modern Government: Variety, Commonality and Change*, 3–21. Cheltenham: Edward Elgar, 2004.

Howlett, Michael. *Designing Public Policies: Principles and Instruments*. New York: Routledge, 2011.

Howlett, Michael. "Policy Tools and Their Role in Policy Formulation Dealing with Procedural and Substantive Policy Instruments." In *Handbook of Policy Formulation*, edited by Michael Howlett and Ishani Mukherjee, 96–111. Cheltanham: Edward Elgar, 2017.

Howlett, Michael, Margaret Hill, and P. Eliadis. "Introduction: From Policy Tools to Governance Strategies." In *Designing Government: From Instruments to Governance*, edited by Michael Howlett, Margaret Hill, and P. Eliadis, 2005. Montreal: McGill-Queen's University Press.

Jayasuriya, K. "Globalization and the Changing Architecture of the State: The Regulatory State and the Politics of Negative Co-Ordination." *Journal of European Public Policy* 8, no. 1 (2001): 101–123.

Jayasuriya, K. "The New Regulatory State and Relational Capacity." *Policy and Politics* 32, no. 4 (2004): 487–501.

Jensen, Olivia. "Public: Private Partnerships for Water in Asia: A Review of Two Decades of Experience." *International Journal of Water Resources Development* 33, no. 1 (January 2, 2017): 4–30.

Jordana, J., and D. Levi-Faur, eds. *The Politics of Regulation: Institutions and Regulatory Reforms for the Age of Governance*. Cheltenham: Edward Elgar, 2004.

Katzman, M. T. "Societal Risk Management Through the Insurance Market." In *Market-Based Public Policy*, edited by R. C. Hula, 21–42. London: Macmillan, 1988.

Kickert, Walter J. M. "Public Management of Hybrid Organizations: Governance of Quasi-Autonomous Executive Agencies." *International Public Management Journal* 4 (2001): 135–150.

Koppell, Jonathan G. S. *The Politics of Quasi-Government: Hybrid Organizations and the Dynamics of Bureaucratic Control*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 2003.

Laux, J. K. "How Private Is Privatization." *Canadian Public Policy* 19, no. 4 (1993): 398–411.

Laux, J. K., and M. A. Molot. *State Capitalism: Public Enterprise in Canada*. Ithaca, NY: Cornell University Press, 1988.

Leland, Suzanne, and Olga Smirnova. "Reassessing Privatization Strategies 25 Years Later: Revisiting Perry and Babitsky's Comparative Performance Study of Urban Bus Transit Services." *Public Administration Review* 69, no. 5 (2009): 855–867.

Leman, C. K. "Direct Government." In *The Tools of Government: A Guide to the New Governance*, edited by L. M. Salamon, 48–79. New York: Oxford University Press, 2002.

Leman, C. K. "The Forgotten Fundamental: Successes and Excesses of Direct Government." In *Beyond Privatization: The Tools of Government Action*, edited by L. M. Salamon, 51–92. Washington, DC: Urban Institute, 1989.

Lindquist, E. "Organizing for Policy Implementation: The Emergence and Role of Implementation Units in Policy Design and Oversight." *Journal of Comparative Policy Analysis: Research and Practice* 8, no. 4 (2006): 311–324.

Lovink, J. A. A. "Choosing the Right Autonomy for Operators of Privatized Government Services: The Case of NavCanada." *Canadian Public Administration* 42, no. 3 (1999): 371–386.

Malloy, J. *Between Colliding Worlds: The Ambiguous Existence of Government Agencies for Aboriginal and Women's Policy*. Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 2003.

Mandell, M. P. "Managing Interdependencies through Program Structures: A Revised Paradigm." *The American Review of Public Administration* 25, no. 1 (1994): 99–121.

Mandell, M. P. "A Revised Look at Management in Network Structures." *International Journal of Organizational Theory and Behavior* 3, no. 1/2 (2000): 185–210.

Marchildon, Gregory F. "Royal Commissions and the Policy Cycle in Canada: The Case of Health Care." In *Political Leadership and Representation in Canada*, edited by Hans J. Michelmann, Donald C. Story, and Jeffreu S. Steeves. Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 2007.

Marier, Patrik. "The Power of Institutionalized Learning: The Uses and Practices of Commissions to Generate Policy Change." *Journal of European Public Policy* 16, no. 8 (2009): 1204–1223.

Mathur, Navdeep, and Chris Skelcher. "Evaluating Democratic Performance Methodologies for Assessing the Relationship between Network Governance and Citizens." *Public Administration Review* 67, no. 2 (2007): 228–237.

McCubbins, M. D., and A. Lupia. "Learning from Oversight: Fire Alarms and Police Patrols Reconstructed." *Journal of Law, Economics and Organization* 10, no. 1 (1994): 96–125.

McCubbins, M. D., R. G. Noll, and B. R. Weingast. "Administrative Procedures as Instruments of Political Control." *Journal of Law, Economics, and Organization* 3, no. 2 (1987): 243–277.

McDavid, J. C., and E. G. Clemens. "Contracting Out Local Government Services: The BC Experience." *Canadian Public Administration* 38, no. 2 (1995): 177–193.

Mees, Paul. "Privatization of Rail and Tram Services in Melbourne: What Went Wrong?" *Transport Reviews* 25, no. 4 (2005): 433–449.

Meuleman, Louis. *Metagoverning Governance Styles: Increasing the Public Manager's Toolbox*. Postdam: ECPR General Conference, 2009.

Moss, David A. *When All Else Fails: Government as the Ultimate Risk Manager*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press, 2002.

Newman, Joshua. "Revisiting The 'Two Communities' Metaphor of Research Utilisation." *International Journal of Public Sector Management* 27, no. 7 (October 7, 2014): 614–627.

O'Toole, Laurence J., and Kenneth J. Meier. "In Defense of Bureaucracy: Public Managerial Capacity, Slack and the Dampening of Environmental Shocks." *Public Management Review* 12, no. 3 (2010): 341.

Parks, Roger B., Paula C. Baker, Larry Kiser, Ronald Oakerson, Elinor Ostrom, Vincent Ostrom, Stephen L. Percy, Martha B. Vandivort, Gordon P. Whitaker, and Rick Wilson. "Consumers as Coproducers of Public Services: Some Economic and Institutional Considerations." *Policy Studies Journal* 9, no. 7 (June 1, 1981): 1001–1011.

Pérez-Ramírez, Mónica, Germán Ponce-Díaz, and Salvador Lluch-Cota. "The Role of MSC Certification in the Empowerment of Fishing Cooperatives in Mexico: The Case of Red Rock Lobster Co-Managed Fishery." *Ocean & Coastal Management* 63 (July 2012): 24–29.

Perl, Anthony, and Donald J. White. "The Changing Role of Consultants in Canadian Policy Analysis." *Policy & Society* 21, no. 1 (2002): 49–73.

Perry, James L., and Hal G. Rainey. "The Public-Private Distinction in Organization Theory: A Critique and Research Strategy." *Academy of Management Review* 13, no. 2 (1988): 182–201.

Pestoff, Victor. "Citizens and Co-Production of Welfare Services." *Public Management Review* 8 (December 2006): 503–519.

Pestoff, Victor Alexis, Taco Brandsen, and Bram Verschuere. *New Public Governance, the Third Sector and Co-Production*. New York: Routledge, 2012.

Prince, M. J. "Policy Advisory Groups in Government Departments." In *Public Policy in Canada: Organization, Process, Management*, edited by G. B. Doern and P. Aucoin, 275–300. Toronto: Gage, 1979.

Prince, M. J., and J. Chenier. "The Rise and Fall of Policy Planning and Research Units." *Canadian Public Administration* 22, no. 4 (1980): 536–550.

Ramesh, M., and M. Howlett. *Deregulation and Its Discontents: Rewriting the Rules in Asia*. Aldershot: Edward Elgar, 2006.

Resodihardjo, S. L. "Wielding a Double-Edged Sword: The Use of Inquiries at Times of Crisis." *Journal of Contingencies and Crisis Management* 14, no. 4 (2006): 199–206.

Rhodes, R. A. W., and P. Weller. *The Changing World of Top Officials*. Buckingham: Open University Press, 2001.

Riccucci, Norma M., and Marcia K. Meyers. "Comparing Welfare Service Delivery among Public, Nonprofit and For-Profit Work Agencies." *International Journal of Public Administration* 31 (2008): 1441–1454.

Riedel, J. A. "Citizen Participation: Myths and Realities." *Public Administration Review* May-June (1972): 211–220.

Roehrich, Jens K., Michael A. Lewis, and Gerard George. "Are Public-Private Partnerships a Healthy Option? A Systematic Literature Review of 'Constructive' Partnerships between Public and Private Actors." *Social Science & Medicine* 113 (2014): 110–119.

Rowe, Gene, and Lynn J. Frewer. "A Typology of Public Engagement Mechanisms." *Science, Technology & Human Values* 30, no. 2 (January 4, 2005): 251–290.

Rowe, Mike, and Laura McAllister. "The Roles of Commissions of Inquiry in the Policy Process." *Public Policy and Administration* 21, no. 4 (December 1, 2006): 99–115. https://doi.org/10.1177/095207670602100408.

Salamon, L. M. *Beyond Privatization: The Tools of Government Action*. Washington, DC: Urban Institute, 1989.

Salamon, L. M. "Of Market Failure, Voluntary Failure, and Third-Party Government: Toward a Theory of Government-Nonprofit Relations in the Modern Welfare State." *Journal of Voluntary Action Research* 16, no. 1/2 (1987): 29–49.

Salamon, L. M. "Rethinking Public Management: Third-Party Government and the Changing Forms of Government Action." *Public Policy* 29, no. 3 (1981): 255–275.

Salter, L., A. P. Pross, I. Christie, and J. A. Yogis. "The Two Contradiction in Public Inquiries." In *Commissions of Inquiry*, 175–195. Toronto: Carswell, 1990.

Savas, E. S. *Privatization: The Key to Better Government*. Chatham: Chatham House Publishers, 1987.
Savoie, D. J. *Governing from the Centre: The Concentration of Power in Canadian Politics*. Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1999.
Schwartz, B. "Public Inquiries." *Canadian Public Administration* 40, no. 1 (1997): 72–85.
Sorrentino, Maddalena, Chiara Guglielmetti, Silvia Gilardi, and Marta Marsilio. "Health Care Services and the Coproduction Puzzle: Filling in the Blanks." *Administration & Society* 49, no. 10 (November 1, 2017): 1424–1449.
Speers, Kimberly. "The Invisible Public Service: Consultants and Public Policy in Canada." In *Policy Analysis in Canada: The State of the Art*, edited by L. Dobuzinskis, M. Howlett, and D. Laycock, 220–231. Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 2007.
Stewart, Jennifer, and A. John Sinclair. "Meaningful Public Participation in Environmental Assessment: Perspectives from Canadian Participants, Proponents, and Government." *Journal of Environmental Assessment Policy and Management* 9, no. 2 (2007): 161–183.
Stutz, Jeffrey R. "What Gets Done and Why: Implementing the Recommendations of Public Inquiries." *Canadian Public Administration* 51, no. 3 (2008): 502–521.
Sulitzeanu-Kenan, Raanan. "Reflection in the Shadow of Blame: When Do Politicians Appoint Commissions of Inquiry?" *British Journal of Political Science* 40, no. 3 (2010): 613–634.
Sulitzeanu-Kenan, Raanan. "Scything the Grass: Agenda-Setting Consequences of Appointing Public Inquiries in the UK, a Longitudinal Analysiis." *Policy and Politics* 35, no. 4 (2007): 629–650.
Taylor, Robert, and Andrea Migone. "From Procurement to the Commissioning of Public Services." Presented at the IPAC, Charlottetown, 2017.
Thadani, Khushbu B. "Public Private Partnership in the Health Sector: Boon or Bane." *Procedia: Social and Behavioral Sciences*, International Relations Conference on India and Development Partnerships in Asia and Africa: Towards a New Paradigm, 157 (November 27, 2014): 307–316.
Torgerson, D. "Between Knowledge and Politics: Three Faces of Policy Analysis." *Policy Sciences* 19 (1986): 33–59.
van Thiel, Sandra. "The 'Empty Nest' Syndrome: Dutch Ministries after the Separation of Policy and Administration." Presented at the Paper Presented to the IRSPM Conference, Brisbane Australia, 2008.
Verhoest, Koen, Paul G. Roness, Bram Verschuere, Kristin Rubecksen, and Muiris MacCarthaigh. *Autonomy and Control of State Agencies: Comparing States and Agencies*. London: Palgrave Macmillan, 2010.
Verhoest, Koen, Bram Verschuere, and Geert Bouckaert. "Pressure, Legitimacy, and Innovative Behavior by Public Organizations." *Governance* 20, no. 3 (2007): 469–497.
Vincent-Jones, Peter. *The New Public Contracting: Regulation, Responsiveness, Relationality*. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2006.
Vining, A. R., A. E. Boardman, and F. Poschmann. "Public-Private Partnerships in the US and Canada: 'There Are No Free Lunches'." *Journal of Comparative Policy Analysis* 7, no. 3 (2005): 199–220.
Vogel, David, and Robert A. Kagan, eds. *Dynamics of Regulatory Change*. Vancouver: UBC Press, 2002.
Voorberg, W. H., V. J. J. M. Bekkers, and L. G. Tummers. "A Systematic Review of Co-Creation and Co-Production: Embarking on the Social Innovation Journey." *Public Management Review* 17, no. 9 (October 21, 2015): 1333–1357.
Weaver, R. K. "The Politics of Blame Avoidance." *Journal of Public Policy* 6, no. 4 (1986): 371–398.
Weber, M. *Economy and Society: An Outline of Interpretive Sociology*. Berkeley: University of California Press, 1978.
Whiteman, David. *Communication in Congress: Members, Staff and the Search for Information*. Lawrence: University Press of Kansas, 1995.
Whiteman, David. "The Fate of Policy Analysis in Congressional Decision Making: Three Types of Use in Committees." *Western Political Quarterly* 38, no. 2 (1985): 294–311.
Zarco-Jasso, Hugo. "Public-Private Partnerships: A Multidimensional Model for Contracting." *International Journal of Public Policy* 1, no. 1/2 (2005): 22–40.
Zelli, Fariborz, Ina Möller, and Harro van Asselt. "Institutional Complexity and Private Authority in Global Climate Governance: The Cases of Climate Engineering, REDD+ and Short-Lived Climate Pollutants." *Environmental Politics* 26, no. 4 (July 4, 2017): 669–693.

25

IMPLEMENTING REGULATORY POLICY

Regulatory Tools and the Use of Authority

Eric Windholz

Regulatory implementation, simply put, is the carrying out of regulatory policy. However, regulatory implementation is far from simple. Traditional conceptions of regulatory implementation that rely solely on the coercive authority of the state to command and control are out of favour. Today's concept of regulation is far more expansive. It includes a wide range of regulatory tools and instruments ranging from the compulsory to the voluntary, from the legal to the behavioural. It also recognises that the state is not the sole locus of regulation and that regulation is increasingly polycentric, networked and collaborative. This chapter explores the different types of regulatory tools that have evolved to implement public policy and the different and nuanced regulatory strategies and regimes through which they are implemented.

Introduction

This chapter is about implementing regulatory policy. But what is 'regulatory policy'? Lowi, in his seminal 1972 article 'Four Systems of Policy, Politics, and Choice', defined it as policies that employ regulatory techniques to modify individual or collective behaviour to achieve a specific purpose (the other policy types being distributive, redistributive and constituent) (Lowi 1972).

While this definition has withstood the test of time (see, e.g., Black 2002; Koop and Lodge 2017), many of the 'regulatory techniques' of today would barely be recognisable to Lowi. What constitutes regulation has been 'rethought' over the past 50 years (Hodge 2021). Traditional state-centric, rule-based conceptions of regulation have given way to a more expansive, pluralistic and collaborative concept of regulation.

With this rethinking have come new regulatory tools, strategies and regimes that extend beyond the state and the law. Government regulation has evolved from traditional 'command and control' models comprising prescriptive rules coercively enforced by the state to regulatory models variably described as 'responsive' and 'smart', employing tools designed to persuade, assist, incentivise and even nudge compliance with standards that are increasingly performance based and outcome orientated (Windholz 2018). Nor is government the sole locus of regulatory activity. Regulation today is increasingly polycentric, networked and collaborative (Black 2008; Klijn 2008; Talias 2021), shaped and co-produced through interactions between government and non-government actors, recognition that both industry and civil society regulate in addition

 DOI: 10.4324/9781003163954-31

to government (Grabosky 1995, 2013; Scott 2001; Abbott et al. 2017). This chapter explores this evolution in regulatory theory and practice. The chapter first explains and examines the new regulatory tools, strategies and regimes to which the rethinking of regulation has given birth.[1] The chapter then asks what this says about the use of authority in the modern state.

Regulatory Tools

As our understanding of regulation has evolved and expanded, so, too, have the regulatory tools and mechanisms at the modern regulator's disposal. Over time, different systems for classifying these tools and mechanisms have been developed. Many are instrumental in nature. Freiberg (2010), for example, identifies six sets of regulatory tools: legislation, economic, transactional, authorization, informational and structural. However, given that our conception of regulation focuses on behaviour modification, categorising regulatory tools by reference to the mechanisms through which they seek to trigger behavioural responses (rather than their form) is more instructive.

Five key behaviour modification mechanisms can be distilled from the literature (see, e.g., Schneider and Ingram 1990; Daintith 1994; Vedung 1998; Morgan and Yeung 2007). They are coercion, incentives (and disincentives), persuasion, assistance and nudges. Few regulatory tools are one dimensional, however. Most tools can be thought of as a hydra, simultaneously triggering more than one behavioural response to effect the desired regulatory change. Nevertheless, it is instructive to examine them individually to better understand their nature and key characteristics.

Coercion

Coercion is the behaviour change mechanism most commonly associated with regulation. Coercive mechanisms generally have three elements: (1) rules defining standards that must be met, (2) mechanisms to detect non-compliance with those rules and standards and (3) sanctions that attach to those non-compliances. Some rules are consensual and accepted voluntarily. Examples include contracts and industry codes of conduct. The sanctions that attach to breaches of these come in the form of contractual, social and market penalties. However, coercion is most commonly associated with state-made and imposed rules. The sanctions that most commonly attach to non-compliance generally fall into one of two categories: criminal (e.g., imprisonment, fines, community service, probationary and supervisory orders and the like) and civil or administrative (e.g., fines and other monetary penalties; infringement; improvement and prohibition notices; and licence conditions, suspensions or revocations).

Coercive mechanisms have a number of advantages. Compared to other behaviour change mechanisms, coercive mechanisms are more straightforward to formulate and serve a strong expressive role. They communicate that certain behaviour is considered unacceptable and, in the case of state-imposed rules, do so with the authority of the state. Coercive mechanisms also can be designed to operate with immediate effect, thereby enabling governments to position themselves as strong and decisive protectors of the public (Baldwin et al. 2012: 107). Coercive mechanisms also have disadvantages. They frequently are criticized for being blunt and over-inclusive and for imposing unnecessarily high compliance costs on those subject to them.

Coercive mechanisms also can be expensive to administer and enforce. They require systems to detect and correct instances of non-compliance. Generally, these come in the form of inspectorates, audits and other methods of policing the conduct of regulatees and administrative and

judicial mechanisms to correct and sanction non-compliance. These systems can become adversarial and legalistic, resulting in increasingly formal, expensive and lengthy processes. This, in turn, can undermine constructive regulator-regulatee relationships and the beneficial cooperation they can produce or, worse, breed defiance and resistance that can lead to non-compliance.

The advantages and disadvantages of coercive mechanisms combine to suggest they are best applied to issues of higher risk, impact and/or significance with respect to which the community expects strong and decisive state action. For issues that do not meet these criteria, more flexible and facilitative mechanisms may be appropriate. It is to these mechanisms that we now turn.

Incentives (and Disincentives)

Incentives (and disincentives) assume individuals make rational benefit-cost decisions on whether to comply with regulatory standards. They then operate to influence those decisions by increasing the benefits and/or decreasing the costs of compliant behaviours (through incentives) or reducing the benefits and/or increasing the costs of non-compliant behaviours (through disincentives). Incentives and disincentives can be direct and indirect. Examples of direct incentives and disincentives include tax credits, differential tax rates, rebates, bounties, grants, subsidies and levies that confer a direct financial benefit or detriment on the regulatee. Examples of indirect incentives include awards and certification systems that can be used by regulatees to differentiate themselves positively in the marketplace. Government contracts also can operate as an indirect incentive by making compliance with certain standards a prerequisite to doing business with government.

Establishing incentives tends to be more complex and challenging than establishing a coercive regime. Incentives need to be carefully targeted at the right actors and at the right level to incentivise desired behaviours while avoiding gaming and rorts that can doom regulation to failure. This careful targeting often finds its way into detailed, complex and sometimes prescriptive rules and standards which generally require sophisticated audit and compliance mechanisms to ensure non-compliance is detected, and manipulation and rorting of the system are prevented. The need for these mechanisms can result in incentive mechanisms coming to resemble coercive mechanisms. As Braithwaite (1982: 595) observes, the use of incentives 'does not eliminate the need for government inspectors; it merely replaces inspections by technical experts with inspections by experts in financial deception'.

Once established, however, many incentive mechanisms are largely self-executing, the tailoring of the incentive to individual circumstances having been done at the design stage. This can make them cheaper to administer. They also allow for greater flexibility and innovation on the part of regulatees – incentivizing them to go beyond compliance with standards that might only be met under a more coercive and prescriptive regime. This assumes, of course, an economically rational regulatee. Compared to coercive mechanisms, incentives are less likely to operate on the irrational, irresponsible and ill informed who arguably are in the most need of having their behaviour modified. Nor are they likely to operate with the same immediate effect as coercive mechanisms. Understanding the nature of an incentive and how best to modify operations to take advantage of it can take time. Finally, incentives can lack the expressive clarity of coercive mechanisms, especially when directed at the producers of socially harmful activities such as pollution. Whereas coercive mechanisms unambiguously communicate the unacceptability of the activities they prohibit or restrict, incentives can appear counterintuitive by financially supporting the very activity that is sought to be eliminated or reduced.

Incentives operate to modify behaviour through the provision of tangible benefits and costs that appeal to regulatees' hip pockets. But there are other motivational forces to be triggered.

Persuasion

Regulation can seek to persuade persons and entities to change their behaviour by appealing to their interests, values, beliefs and preferences. Persuasive mechanisms seek to influence behaviour without recourse to coercive or incentive-driven interventions. Rather, persuasion works by cajoling, exhorting and/or convincing the regulatee to act in a manner consistent with the regulatory objective (Yeung 2005: 369–371). This requires regulators to understand different regulatees' different motivational drivers and behavioural triggers. Depending on the regulatee and its motivation to comply, this might involve an appeal to the regulatee's self-interest (e.g., by providing new information that alters the way the regulatee perceives, weighs and balances the benefits and costs of alternative courses of action). In other cases, it might involve an appeal to the regulatee's altruism or sense of community (e.g., by appealing to intangible values such as justice, equality, fairness or morality or to important societal concerns such as safety and security). And in others still, it may be an appeal to the regulatee's instincts to comply with (or exceed) societal norms. Studies have shown that providing people with data that compares their performance with the norm encourages those people to change their behaviour to improve their performance (see, e.g., Schultz et al. 2007).

Persuasion, targeted properly and executed well, can be effective to change behaviour or, at least, to motivate people to consider changing their behaviour. But on its own, it is unlikely to lead to widespread and sustained change. Persuasion works best when coupled with other behaviour change mechanisms, whether that be the reinforcing deterrent effect of coercive mechanisms or the benefits of an incentive.

Coercion, incentives and persuasion all assume the regulatee needs to be imposed upon, incentivised or convinced in some way to behave in accordance with regulatory standards. In some instances, however, the regulatee wants to comply but does not have the knowledge, skills or resources to do so. In this situation, what they require is assistance.

Assistance

Assisting regulatees to understand and comply with regulatory standards is an integral part of modern regulatory regimes. Like other behaviour change mechanisms, assistance can come in many forms. The most common forms are information and advice, training and education and resources and infrastructure.

Assistance mechanisms have an important advantage over other behaviour change mechanisms: they are practical and direct. Whereas coercive mechanisms tell regulatees what to do and incentives and persuasion encourage them to do it, assistance mechanisms help them do it. Of course, to be effective, assistance mechanisms need to be well targeted and effectively implemented. Information and advice and training and education need to be carefully prepared to ensure they are relevant and intelligible to those to whom they are directed. This, in turn, requires those communicating the information understanding their (different) audiences' existing levels of understanding, knowledge and needs. Information also needs to be provided to people cognisant that, for some, their ability to process and absorb it is limited. Providing people with too much information, or information that is too complex, can overwhelm, intimidate and cause people to disregard the information or, worse, to disengage from the regulatory process (Weil et al. 2006).

Assistance mechanisms assume regulatees are motivated to comply, whether by coercion, incentives or persuasion. Assistance mechanisms also assume regulatees will comply if properly informed, skilled and resourced. This is a rational assessment based on regulatees acting

rationally. But not all decisions are rational. Our rationality is bounded, and we act under various cognitive biases. This is where nudge techniques come in.

Nudge

What actually constitutes a 'nudge' is a question of some controversy. Although born out of the resurgent interest in behavioural economics as a basis of regulation, nudges are more than traditional regulatory tools behaviourally informed (although arguably, all regulatory tools should be behaviourally informed). The most frequently cited definition of a 'nudge' comes from Thaler and Sunstein (2009: 6), whose book *Nudge: Improving Decisions about Health, Wealth, and Happiness* made nudges the regulatory technique du jour. Their definition provides that a nudge

> is any aspect of the choice architecture that alters people's behavior in a predictable way without forbidding any options or significantly changing their economic incentives. To count as a mere nudge, the intervention must be cheap and easy to avoid. Nudges are not mandates.

Three features are important in this definition. First, nudges focus on altering the 'choice architecture' – the context and environment in which decisions are made. Second, nudges alter people' behaviour in predictable ways. They do this by dispensing with the neoclassical fiction that human beings are rational self-utility maximisers and replacing it with the empirical reality that our rationality is bounded by our habits, engrained heuristics and cognitive biases that result in systematic deviations from standards of rational decision-making (Simon 1945; Kahneman et al. 1982; Kahneman 2011). Important cognitive biases identified by behavioural economists include present or current moment bias (the tendency for people to have a stronger preference for more immediate payoffs relative to later payoffs), status quo bias (the tendency of people to like things to stay the same), inertia bias (the tendency of people when given a choice to act or to do nothing, to do nothing) and omission bias (the tendency to judge harmful actions as worse and more morally reprehensible than equally harmful omissions) (see also Baron 2007; Ariely 2008). And third, nudges respect the autonomy of the individual by leaving them free to choose a different – 'not right' – path. Examples of successful architecture-changing nudges include increasing the number of people choosing to consume healthy food by placing it at eye level and in easy reach (e.g., at the cash register desk) (Kroese et al. 2016), increasing the proportion of people agreeing to donate their organs by redesigning organ donation forms from opt in to opt out (Johnson and Goldstein 2003) and eliciting more honest disclosures on official forms by positioning the declaration and signature box at the start of a form rather than at the end (Shu et al. 2012).

Nudge techniques (and the field of behavioural economics on which they are based) have found favour with many governments in recent years. Behavioural insights (or economics) teams have been established in the White House Office of Information and Regulatory Affairs (to which Sunstein was appointed administrator), the United Kingdom's Cabinet Office (to which Thaler acts in an advisory capacity), the Australian government's Department of Prime Minister and Cabinet, and the European Commission's Behavioural Studies for European Policies Program (Kosters and Van der Heijden 2015: 277).

Nudge techniques promise governments effective outcomes with comparatively little cost and bureaucracy and without overt restrictions on individual liberty. Nudge techniques are not without their critics, however (see, e.g., Hausman and Welch 2010; Rebonato 2012; White 2013). Many nudge techniques rely for their effectiveness on their covert nature. Why? Because

drawing people's attention to the fact that the context in which they are making decisions is being altered to influence them to make a choice other than that which they might otherwise have made can lead to rebellious and counterproductive behaviour. Their covert nature, however, raises issues of transparency, accountability and ultimately, legitimacy. There is a fine line between nudge and shove.

Regulatory Strategies

Listing regulatory tools tells us little about how they are (or should be) be used. Are they employed with a 'heavy' or 'light' hand, proactively or reactively, rigidly or flexibly? The answer to these questions resides in the regulatory strategy adopted by the regulator. A regulator's choice of strategy is a powerful statement to regulatees and other actors about how they can expect the regulator to interact with them.

Deterrent and Facilitative Approaches

Early regulatory strategies – consistent with then-dominant state-centric 'command and control' paradigms – adopted deterrent approaches which, as the name suggests, focus on government efforts to deter non-compliance. Deterrence models posit that persons and entities are primarily motivated to comply by the fear of sanctions (legal, social and/or economic) that attach to non-compliance, with the deterrent effect being a function of the perceived severity, certainty and celerity of the sanction. The emphasis on perception here is important. As Freiberg (2010: 213) observes, modern deterrence is not an objective quality but depends on regulatees understanding the standards with which they must comply and the regulatory practices through which they will be enforced. This means that for maximum impact, coercive mechanisms should be coupled with persuasion, education and information that reinforces the importance of complying with the regulatory standards, the breadth and effectiveness of the mechanisms in place to detect non-compliance and the severity and celerity of the sanctions that attach to non-compliance. Indeed, today's reality is that pure command-and-control regimes are unlikely to exist. Even modern police forces employ non-coercive methods to educate and encourage persons to comply with the law.

This brings us to facilitative approaches. Facilitative approaches recognise that fear of sanctions is not the only factor motivating compliance. There is a rich body of research that emphasises that compliance is a plural, dynamic and interactive process involving, in addition to classic deterrence theory, social, economic and normative dimensions. Social responsibility, reputation management, ethics, an internalized sense of duty and general law abidingness can all play an important role (Feldman 2011; Parker and Nielsen 2017). A facilitative implementation style, as its name suggests, focuses on persuading, encouraging and assisting regulatees to comply with their regulatory obligations.

Early regulatory literature tended to present deterrent and facilitative approaches as distinct models from which regulators must choose. A one-dimensional one-act play. This changed when Ayres and Braithwaite (1992) put forward their model of 'responsive regulation'.

Responsive and Smart Approaches

Responsive regulation provides for both deterrence and facilitative approaches in the one regulatory regime. As Ayres and Braithwaite (1992: 25) explain: 'The trick of successful regulation is to establish a synergy between punishment and persuasion'. Responsive regulation seeks to

achieve this synergy by matching the regulator's response to the regulatee's willingness and capability to comply, reflected in its compliance behaviour. To guide the matching of responses to motivations, Ayres and Braithwaite (1992: 35) developed the 'enforcement pyramid' with facilitative tools at the bottom, followed by progressively more coercive tools as one moves up the pyramid. According to Ayres and Braithwaite, regulation should start at the bottom of the pyramid and from the presumption that regulatees are virtuous and will respond to facilitative strategies such as persuasion and assistance. After this starting point, regulation becomes a dialogic exercise. Regulatees who cooperate and behave as desired remain at the bottom of the pyramid. However, regulatees who do not cooperate and who fail to behave as desired are met with an escalation of enforcement activity. Escalation continues up the enforcement pyramid until compliance is achieved, at which point a consistent demonstration from that regulatee that it is now inclined to comply and behave as desired may be responded to by a de-escalation of regulatory activity down the pyramid and a less punitive approach. Ayres and Braithwaite refer to this as 'tit-for-tat' enforcement.

But responsive regulation went further than just 'tit-for-tat' regulation of business by government. It also argued that governments could and should delegate regulatory tasks to business and provided a pyramid of enforcement strategies to guide the delegation process, with industry self-regulation at the bottom, government command-and-control regulation at the top and co-regulation in between (described as 'enforced self-regulation') (Ayres and Braithwaite 1992: 39). However, Ayres and Braithwaite also were alert to the risks of capture and corruption that can attach to bilateral relationships that involve only regulator and regulatee. To guard against this, responsive regulation introduced the concepts of 'tripartism', in which the government regulator, those being regulated and persons representing those for whose benefit the regulatory regime exists cooperate in the development, administration and/or enforcement of the regulatory regime, and 'meta-regulation', in which those third parties act as a countervailing force to the risk of regulatory capture and a check on the bilateral regulator-regulatee relationship. Examples include workplace health and safety regulatory regimes that include both employer and worker representatives and environmental regulatory regimes that include both industry and environmental public interest groups (Ayres and Braithwaite 1992: Ch 3).

Responsive regulation represented a breakthrough in regulatory thinking and soon became 'one of the "canonical" texts that helped constitute the very field of which it is part' (Parker 2013: 2). One of the first significant attempts to build upon responsive regulation's foundations was Gunningham and Grabosky's *Smart Regulation* (1998). Smart regulation calls for an 'imaginative, flexible, and pluralistic approach' to regulation (Gunningham and Grabosky 1998: 4). It builds upon responsive regulation in two important respects. First, smart regulation conceives of regulation beyond the state, recognising the role played by both professional bodies and industry associations as self-regulators and commercial and non-commercial third parties as quasi-or surrogate regulators. Second, smart regulation calls on all three sets of actors to regulate responsively and reconceives Ayres and Braithwaite's two-dimensional enforcement pyramid into a three-sided pyramid, with escalation possible up each 'face' of the pyramid – the government face, the self-regulatory face and the third-party quasi-regulatory face – with each using different but complimentary regulatory tools. In so doing, smart regulation extols the virtues of using a mix of instruments over single-instrument approaches and argues for the use of complementary and sequenced combinations of regulatory instruments tailored to the causes and context of the specific issue.

The logics underpinning responsive and smart regulation are difficult to refute. Complementary combinations of tools should be more effective than single tools; involving the regulatee and third-party actors should be more effective than government acting alone; and tailoring

those tools and actors to the causes and context of each issue should be more effective than a one-size-fits-all approach. They also promise flexibility in enforcement approach, targeted use of limited resources and, when used transparently, a degree of procedural fairness and equity in application. However, the strength of their logic is matched by their difficulty to implement. Responsive and smart regulation ask a lot of regulators: that they have the time, capability and skills to interpret different regulatees' compliance behaviour and to tailor complementary combinations of interventions accordingly. Moreover, the ongoing dialectic relationship between regulator and regulatee on which they are based may not be appropriate in cases of immediate and catastrophic risk that demand immediate and decisive action (e.g., terrorism), often does not exist (e.g., because regulatees are many and dispersed), or can be compromised by enforcement action that makes de-escalation down the pyramid problematic (Windholz 2018: 233–236). And while the presence of non-state actors qua regulators can make implementation more effective and efficient, many moving parts must align to achieve their desired results (van de Heijden and Hodge 2021: 748). Nor are the risks of capture and corruption entirely eliminated, and issues of transparency and accountability are introduced.

Notwithstanding these limitations, both responsive and smart regulation have been widely adopted by regulators around the world (Ivec and Braithwaite 2015; Gunningham and Sinclair 2017: 143–146). They have been followed by other strategic approaches that seek to expand on the virtues of responsiveness, tripartism and the use of smart (complementary, tailored and sequential) mixes of tools and actors. Examples include really responsive regulation that argues regulators should be responsive to (in addition to regulatees' willingness and capability to comply) the broader institutional environment, the logics of the tools at its disposal, its own performance and changes in the regulatory space in which it operates (Baldwin and Black 2008); really responsive risk-based regulation that combines really responsive regulation's broader framework with the concept of risk-based regulation (Black and Baldwin 2010); regulatory arrangement approaches that seek to structure smart regulation's regulatory options by reference to its institutional environment (van Gossum et al. 2010); and behavioural responsive regulation that seeks to synthesize responsive regulation with behavioural economics (Barak-Cohen and Kariv-Teitelbaum 2021).

Regulatory Regimes

Two concepts are central to responsive and smart regulation and the various strategies that have built upon them. First is the need for regulators to understand the motivations and capabilities of those whom they regulate and to choose a synergistic combinations of tools and strategies tailored to the context and needs of the particular situation. Second is to enlist and co-opt into the regulatory endeavour other actors who possess relevant resources. These resources could include information and knowledge, people and money, organisational capacities and networks and institutional credibility and political influence. Conceiving of regulation involving these other actors and their resources encourages us to think in terms of regulatory regimes. A regulatory regime refers to the network of actors involved in regulating an issue; the regulatory tools employed by them to modify the behaviour of the target audience; and the norms, principles, rules and decision-making processes according to and through which those actors and tools are coordinated (Windholz 2018: 74).

Over time, the nature, form and shape of regulatory regimes have evolved in conjunction with our evolving concept of regulation and with the complexity of issues with which societies must deal. Numerous labels have been coined and theories developed to describe and explain these regimes, with regimes today variably described as co-regulatory, polycentric, networked,

nodal and collaborative. These regimes are discussed next, starting with the traditional regime paradigms of government and self- and co-regulation. But before doing so, a word of caution for the uninitiated. Regime design is an area fraught with numerous taxonomies and differences in terminology. Some differences are subtle; many are not necessarily meaningful. The same term can be used to refer to different regime models and different terms to refer to the same regime model. It is an area in which it is essential to move beyond labels to understand the essence of the regime to which the label is being attached.

Government, Self- and Co-regulation

Government regulation is where government is solely responsible for making the rules; facilitating, monitoring and enforcing compliance with the rules; and sanctioning non-compliance with them. Self-regulation, on the other hand, is when the regulatees themselves are responsible for developing and implementing the regulatory regime. Self-regulation can exist as an enterprise level, at which each entity regulates its own affairs, or at a collective level, at which enterprises voluntarily submit to regulation by a trade or industry association, such as in the form of a code of conduct (Sethi 2011).

Government regulation often is criticized for being expensive to administer and costly to enforce; for imposing high and unnecessary compliance burdens on regulatees; for being complex, inflexible, stifling and unnecessarily broad; and for being prone to capture. Self-regulation is said to address many of these problems. However, it, too, has its disadvantages. It is criticised for operating in the private interests of those who develop and implement it, that it is misused to erect barriers to entry and facilitate anti-competitive conduct, that it is frequently a paper tiger; and that it lacks transparency and accountability (Bartle and Vass 2005; Priest 1998).

Co-regulation – in which government and regulatees cooperate in the development and implementation of the regulatory regime – promises the best of both government and self-regulation. By empowering regulatees and co-opting their expertise and infrastructure, co-regulation promises regulation that is better targeted, more flexible, less burdensome and more effective than government regulation, with the protection that government involvement provides against the system being captured, compromised or manipulated by regulatee self-interest.

The variety of co-regulatory regimes are too many to catalogue. For present purposes, a few examples will suffice, starting with what Ayres and Braithwaite referred to as enforced self-regulation but which equally could be called enforced co-regulation. This is when government establishes the legislative framework and sets outcome-orientated standards, the regulatee develops and puts in place systems to comply with those standards and the regulator then oversees and audits those systems to ensure they are appropriate and functioning effectively and sanctions non-compliance when they are not. Examples of enforced co-regulation are the safety case management systems increasingly being required of major hazard facilities and the food industry's hazard analysis and critical control points (HACCP) system (Mortimore and Wallace 2015; Gunningham 2007). In other co-regulatory regimes, government establishes the legislative framework but delegates the standard-setting function to the regulatees. Regulation of professionals such as medical practitioners, lawyers and architects are examples of this type of model, in which governments appoint a professional body to be the standard-making institution and makes compliance with its standards a prerequisite for market entry. Bartle and Vass (2005: 63) refer to this as devolved co-regulation. Closely associated to devolved co-regulation is delegated co-regulation. This is when government delegates standard setting and enforcement to a private body but retains an audit and appellate role to ensure the regime operates effectively and in the public interest. Stock market regulation is an example of delegated co-regulation.

Most stock market regulation is undertaken by privately run stock markets or exchanges that govern their members contractually but do so under the supervision of a government regulator with powers (that vary from jurisdiction to jurisdiction) to approve (and disapprove) exchange rules, to undertake inquiries into their operations and to hear appeals from their decisions (Priest 1998: 259–261).

Co-regulatory regimes have grown in number and prominence, partly in response to calls for more flexible and less prescriptive modes of regulation and partly in response to an increase in issues that are too complex and complicated for governments to regulate on their own. This complexity is also leading governments to think beyond traditional regulatory paradigms – which brings us to the next set of regulatory regime models.

Polycentric, Networked and Other Collaborative Regulatory Regimes

Polycentric, networked and collaborative modes of regulation look beyond government and those being regulated to include other actors in the regulatory domain. The simplest collaborative model is tripartism which is when, it will be recalled, the government regulator, those being regulated and persons representing those for whose benefit the regulatory regime exists cooperate in the development, administration and/or enforcement of the regulatory regime. From simple tripartite models have been built polycentric and networked regimes of various complexities, comprising multiple actors performing a variety of regulatory roles. In these polycentric and networked regimes, regulation takes place through different actors (centres or nodes) that coordinate (or at least communicate) their activities through networks. In some cases, governments outsource specific regulatory functions to non-state actors (whom, it will be recalled, Gunningham and Grabosky described as surrogate or quasi-regulators). Examples of this are third-party certification schemes, such as private sector mechanics testing and certifying vehicle roadworthiness and private building inspectors verifying and certifying compliance with government-mandated building and construction standards (McAllister 2012; Grabosky 2013). In other cases, the role is less formal, such as when governments engage intermediaries (persons with strategic influence over the regulatee) to influence (incentivise, assist, persuade or nudge) the regulatee to modify its behaviour in accordance with the regulatory objective (Abbott et al. 2017). An example of this is the use of medical and health professionals to communicate public health messages (Windholz 2018: 167). And in other cases still, regulatory responsibilities are assumed by non-government actors in the absence of government action, to which governments are later enlisted or co-opted. Examples of this are schemes for the verification and certification of environmental standards for forestry products and organic foods and labour standards for apparel (Bartley 2003; Grabosky 2013).

The result is that regulation today is shaped and co-produced through interactions between government and non-government actors, and it is more likely to resemble a web than a linear two-way interaction between regulator and regulatee (Grabosky 1995, 2013; Scott 2001). An excellent example of such a web is Australia's tobacco control regulatory regime. The primary regulatory targets – the regulatees – are smokers and persons contemplating smoking. The goal is to modify their behaviour so that they choose not to smoke. The regulatory regime comprises government actors employing regulatory tools directly targeting these persons such as coercive restrictions on where they can smoke, (dis)incentives in the form of price-increasing taxes and persuasion and assistance in the form of public health information and smoking cessation services. But there also are a vast array of non-government actors engaged in the regulatory endeavour. Some of these other actors are incentivised to participate by government assistance in the form of information and funding (e.g., public health groups and medical professionals); some

are persuaded by public health information to act as agents of influence (e.g., role models, family and friends); others are coerced and compelled by government restrictions and requirements (e.g., tobacco manufacturers, retailers and hospitality venues); and others still act independently of government motivated by their own self-interest and the opportunities created by the regulatory environment (e.g., insurance companies and plaintiff lawyers). Coordination of the regime actors and tools is achieved through the National Tobacco Strategy (network) developed by federal, state and territory governments in partnership with supportive non-state actors (Intergovernmental Committee on Drugs 2012). This dynamic is illustrated in Figure 25.1 (Windholz 2018: 71–75, 167; author's original). A picture paints a thousand words. The 'web of influence' is clearly visible.

The advantages of collaborative, polycentric regulatory regimes are many. First, they can be more effective and efficient than more narrowly conceived regimes. More effective because they enable greater resources, knowledge and skills to be applied to achieving the regulatory objective and more efficient because those resources are not paid for by the state, freeing up state resources to be applied to those aspects of the regulatory endeavour that only government can (or should) perform (Gunningham and Grabosky 1998: 408–409). Including multiple actors also guards against the regulatory endeavour being captured by or unduly influenced by any one interest group. Their inclusion enables them to act as fire alarms should they detect regulatory drift, inefficiency, incompetence or self-serving behaviours on the part of the government regulator (McCubbins et al. 1987). Thought of in this way, the participation of non-state actors is a form of what has come to be known as meta-regulation – the external oversight of regulatory decision-making. 'Meta-regulation' is another term to which different meanings are ascribed. Some

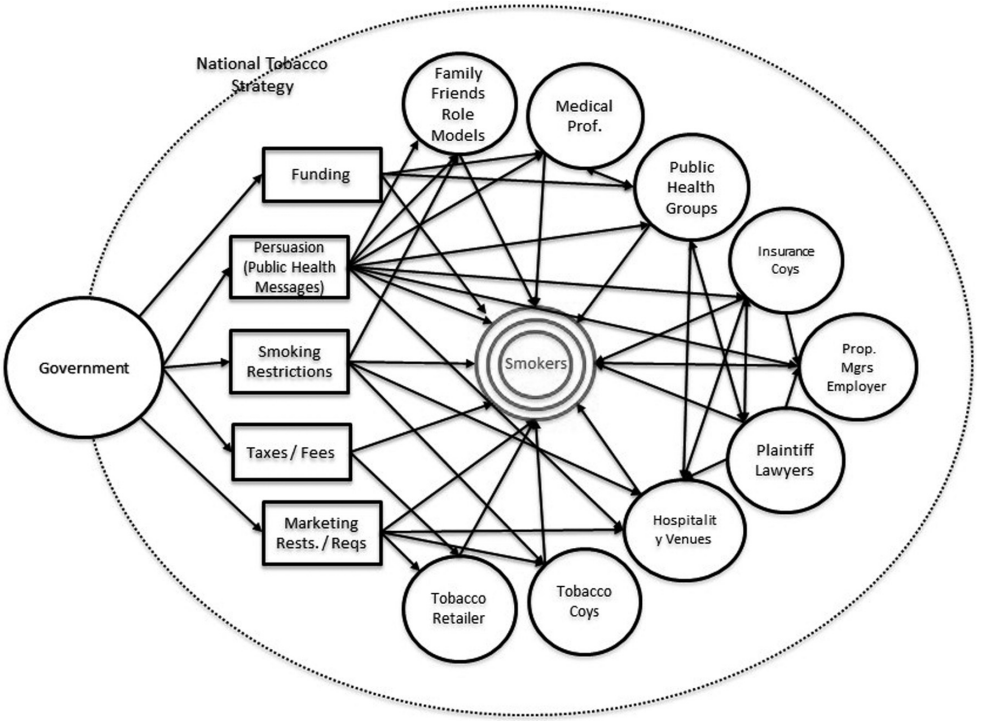


Figure 25.1 Australia's Tobacco Control Regulatory Regime

confine it to government oversight of government regulation. Others (including this author) use it more broadly to refer to any oversight of regulatory decision-making – be it by government, business or civil society (see generally Grabosky 2017).

Including third parties as surrogate or quasi-regulators also can enhance regime legitimacy, especially if those third parties are perceived to be more credible and acceptable than government. In tobacco control regulatory regimes, for example, doctors may be perceived as more acceptable and credible anti-smoking messengers than governments addicted to the taxes smokers pay.

Of course, these advantages come at a cost and with risk. Most obvious are the risks of capture and corruption: that these actors will use their involvement in the regime to advance their private interests and not the public interest. (Although, as we have observed, the presence of multiple actors guards against this risk.) These additional relationships also can make it more complex for regulators, those involved and the community to obtain a clear understanding of the performance of the regulatory regime and of the contribution of each actor to that performance. This can undermine accountability and transparency – what Thompson (1980) refers to as the 'problem of many hands'. There also are administrative costs and risks. The more actors co-opted into the regulatory regime, the greater the complexity and the greater the costs of building and maintaining systems to coordinate their contributions in a manner that is consistent and synergistic. And with multiple actors comes risks of duplication, overlap and inconsistency if those systems do not function well. Polycentric regimes work best when those co-opted into the regime have convergent interests in achieving the regulatory objective. Absent convergent interests, third parties can become irritants and counterproductive.

The Use of Authority

Our examination of regulatory implementation has revealed that it has evolved from rules promulgated and enforced by a sovereign state to a mix of innovative tools shaped and co-produced through interactions between government and non-government actors. In this section, we distil some observations about the implications of this evolution for the use of authority in the modern state.

First, the polycentric and networked regulatory regimes to which this evolution has given rise reflect that much regulation today is the product of government and non-government actors working collaboratively and horizontally, rather than the state operating hierarchically and vertically. This challenges the traditional assumption that the state is the primary locus for articulating community goals and values (Morgan and Yeung 2007). It also is recognized that state authority is not the only source of power within a regulated domain and that authority and power are frequently dispersed between a number of actors, public and private (Scott 2001: 330). Black (2008) goes further and suggests that governments compete with non-state actors for regulatory authority, legitimacy and influence. This theme is inherent in the literature on regulatory space or the 'public policy arena' (Hancher and Moran 1989). Parker (2000, 532), for example, refers to regulatory space as 'a metaphor that emphasizes that the state must always compete with other regulatory actors for social control in any particular circumstances'. Morgan and Yeung (2007: 76) similarly refer to authority and power within a regulatory space being exercised both horizontally and vertically and by both state and non-state actors, thereby creating 'a reflexive process of influence and change within [the] regulatory space'. Thus, in the tobacco control regulatory space, actors delivering the regulatory regime (Figure 25.1) also are seeking to modify the behaviour of (that is, regulate) government and each other to obtain policies favourable to their interests.

The sharing of regulatory power and influence amongst sometimes competing actors can have important consequences. A growing body of research has established that a regulator's legitimacy (credibility and acceptability) is important to its ability to discharge its regulatory responsibilities and that regulatory compliance can depend significantly on people's perception of the legitimacy of the regulatory regime and the regulators within it (Tyler 1990; Braithwaite, Murphy and Reinhart 2007; Murphy et al. 2009; Majone 1996: 11) goes so far as to suggest that legitimacy has replaced coercive power as the essential resource of policymakers. Yet as Levi-Faur et al. (2021: 6) observe, the legitimacy of regimes 'is not necessarily rooted in state authority'. Legitimacy is multidimensional and also has normative, pragmatic and cognitive dimensions (Suchman 1995; Black 2008; Windholz 2016). Legitimacy can be enhanced by co-opting third parties with credibility and institutional trust that governments may lack, but equally can be undermined by unhealthy competition and poor coordination among regime actors.

Another important observation is that the authority inherent in a regulatory regime is implemented by individuals. When regulatory strategies refer to 'the regulator', they are not referring solely to the organisational entity. They also are referring to the persons who make the decisions required by that strategy. We have seen that implementing regulatory policy is not a matter of robotically applying automated or standardized responses. Regime activities are the product of the exercise by individuals of judgment and discretion. This discretion can be broad. Scott, for example, observes that many of the facilitative tools employed by regulators are not legislatively bestowed – they are the product of the creativity of policy and regulatory entrepreneurs (Scott 2017: 271). This makes having processes, procedures and reward systems in place that variably coerce, incentivise, persuade, assist and even nudge regulatory staff to implement consistently with the regime's strategy and objectives critically important. Regulation within government also needs to be responsive, smart and meta-regulatory.

Evident in our discussion of the evolution of regulation is that the role of the state itself has transformed. Gunningham (2017: 139) refers to the role of government transforming to that of 'catalyst or facilitator', creating the necessary preconditions for other actors to assume a regulatory role. Others liken it to the conductor of a regulatory orchestra (Abbott and Snidal 2009). And while, in the public policy context, the state variably steers and directs such that regulatory policy remains under its auspices, it is not always under its control. In a world of polycentric and networked regulatory regimes in which all actors regulate responsively, government can find itself regulator in one context (and with respect to one set of actors) and regulatee in another (and with respect to another set of actors).

Conclusion

Regulatory implementation, simply put, is the carrying out of regulatory policy. However, as we have seen, regulatory implementation is far from simple. This chapter began by observing that over the past few decades, regulation has been rethought – that the traditional state-centric, law-based command-and-control conception of regulation has been replaced with one that is focused on 'behaviour modification' and in respect of which the state is not the sole locus of regulatory activity. This modern conception of regulation has taken hold among regulatory scholars and practitioners, with profound implications. We have seen that it opened up a world of possibilities with respect to tool, strategy and regime design. The regulatory 'toolbox' is indeed rich – testament to the creativity, ingenuity and entrepreneurship of policy designers and regulatory practitioners. Of Lowi's four systems of policy referred to in the introduction (regulatory, distributive, redistributive and constituent), regulation has grown in prominence and importance. For Braithwaite, Coglianese, and Levi-Faur (2007), regulation is the expanding part

of governance; for Hodge (2021: 727), it has become the policy preference of governments the world over. This makes better understanding of regulatory implementation critically important.

Note

1 Sections of this chapter draw from Windholz (2018).

References

Abbott, K. W., D. Levi-Faur and D. Snidal. 2017. "Introducing Regulatory Intermediaries." *Annals of the American Academy of Political and Social Sciences* 670, no. 1: 6–13.

Abbott, K. W. and D. Snidal. 2009. "Strengthening International Regulation through Transnational New Governance: Overcoming the Orchestration Deficit." *Vanderbilt Journal of Transnational Law* 42, no. 2: 501–578.

Ariely, Dan. 2008. *Predictably Irrational: The Hidden Forces That Shape Our Decisions*. New York: Harper Collins.

Ayres Ian and John Braithwaite. 1992. *Responsive Regulation: Transcending the Deregulation Debate*. New York: Oxford University Press.

Baldwin, Robert and J. Black. 2008. "Really Responsive Regulation." *Modern Law Review* 71, no. 1: 59–94.

Baldwin, Robert, Martin Cave and Martin Lodge. 2012. *Understanding Regulation: Theory, Strategy and Practice*. 2nd ed. Oxford: Oxford University Press.

Barak-Cohen, N. and Y. Kariv-Teitelbaum. 2021. "Behavioural Responsive Regulation: Bringing Together Responsive Regulation and Behavioral Public Policy." *Regulation & Governance*. https://doi.org/10.1111/rego.12429.

Baron, Jonathan. 2007. *Thinking and Deciding*. 4th ed. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Bartle, Ian and Peter Vass. 2005. "Self-Regulation and the Regulatory State: A Survey of Policy and Practice." Research Report No 17, Centre for the Study of Regulated Industries. Bath: University of Bath.

Bartley, T. 2003. "Certifying Forests and Factories: States, Social Movements and the Rise of Private Regulation in the Apparel and Forest Product Fields." *Politics and Society* 31, no. 3: 433–464.

Black, J. 2002. "Critical Reflection on Regulation." *Australian Journal of Legal Philosophy* 27, no. 3: 1–35.

Black, J. 2008. "Constructing and Contesting Legitimacy and Accountability in Polycentric Regulatory Regimes." *Regulation & Governance* 2, no. 2: 137–164.

Black, J. and R. Baldwin. 2010. "Really Responsive Risk-Based Regulation." *Law & Policy* 32, no. 2: 181–213.

Braithwaite, J. 1982. "The Limits of Economism in Controlling Harmful Corporate Conduct." *Law and Society Review* 16, no. 3: 481–504.

Braithwaite, J., C. Coglianese and D. Levi-Faur. 2007. "Can Regulation and Governance Make a Difference?" *Regulation & Governance* 1, no. 1: 1–7.

Braithwaite, V., K. Murphy and M. Reinhart. 2007. "Taxation Threat, Motivational Postures, and Responsive Regulation." *Law and Policy* 29, no. 1: 137–158.

Daintith, Terence. 1994. "The Techniques of Government." In *The Changing Constitution*, edited by Jeffrey Jowell and Dawn Oliver, 209–236. 3rd ed. Oxford: Clarendon Press.

Feldman, Yuval. 2011. "Five Models of Regulatory Compliance Motivation: Empirical Findings and Normative Implications." In *Handbook on the Politics of Regulation*, edited by David Levi-Faur, 335–346. Cheltenham: Edward Elgar Publishing.

Freiberg, Arie. 2010. *The Tools of Regulation*. Sydney: The Federation Press.

Grabosky, Peter. 1995. "Using Non-Governmental Resources to Foster Regulatory Compliance." *Governance* 8, no. 4: 527–550.

Grabosky, Peter. 2013. "Beyond Responsive Regulation: The Expanding Role of Non-State Actors in the Regulatory Process." *Regulation & Governance* 7, no. 1: 114–123.

Grabosky, Peter. 2017. "Meta-Regulation." In *Regulatory Theory: Foundations and Applications*, edited by Peter Drahos, 181–196. Canberra: ANU Press.

Gunningham, Neil. 2007. "Designing OSH Standards: Process, Safety Case and Best Practice." *Policy and Practice in Health and Safety* 5, no. 2: 3–24.

Gunningham, Neil and Peter Grabosky. 1998. *Smart Regulation: Designing Environmental Policy*. Oxford: Clarendon Press.

Gunningham, Neil and Darren Sinclair. 2017. "Smart Regulation." In *Regulatory Theory: Foundations and Applications*, edited by Peter Drahos, 133–148. Canberra: ANU Press.

Hancher, Leigh and Michael Moran. 1989. "Organizing Regulatory Space." In *Capitalism, Culture and Economic Regulation*, edited by Leigh Hancher and Michael Moran, 271–299. New York: Oxford University Press.

Hausman, Daniel M. and Brynn Welch. 2010. "Debate: To Nudge or Not to Nudge." *The Journal of Political Philosophy* 18, no. 1: 123–136.

Hodge, Graeme. 2021. "What Should Every Public Servant Know about Regulation?" In *The Palgrave Handbook of the Public Servant*, edited by Helen Sullivan, Helen Dickinson and Hayley Henderson, 721–740. Basingstoke: Palgrave Macmillan.

Intergovernmental Committee on Drugs. 2012. *National Tobacco Strategy 2012–2018*. Canberra: Parliament of Australia.

Ivec, Mary and Valerie Braithwaite. 2015. "Applications of Responsive Regulatory Theory in Australia and Overseas: Update." Occasional Paper 23. Regulatory Institutions Network. Canberra: Australian National University.

Johnson, E. J. and D. Goldstein. 2003. "Do Defaults Save Lives?" *Science* 302, no. 5649 (November 21): 1338–1339.

Kahneman, Daniel. 2011. *Thinking, Fast and Slow*. New York: Farrar, Straus and Giroux.

Kahneman, Daniel, Paul Slovic and Amos Tversky. 1982. *Judgment under Uncertainty: Heuristics and Biases*. New York: Cambridge University Press.

Klijn, E. 2008. "Governance and Governance Networks in Europe: An Assessment of Ten Years of Research on the Theme." *Public Management Review* 10, no. 4: 505–525.

Koop, C. and M. Lodge. 2017. "What Is Regulation? An Interdisciplinary Concept Analysis." *Regulation & Governance* 11, no. 1: 95–108.

Kosters, M., and J. Van der Heijden. 2015. "From Mechanism to Virtue." *Evaluation* 21, no. 3: 276–291.

Kroese, F. M., D. R. Marchiori and D. T. D. de Ridder. 2016. "Nudging Healthy Food Choices: A Field Assessment at the Train Station." *Journal of Public Health* 38, no. 2: e133–137.

Levi-Faur, David, Yael Kariv-Teitelbaum and Rotem Medzini. 2021. "Regulatory Governance: History, Theories, Strategies, and Challenges." *Oxford Research Encyclopaedias, Politics*. https://doi.org/10.1093/acrefore/9780190228637.013.1430.

Lowi, T. J. 1972. "Four Systems of Policy, Politics and Choice." *Public Administration Review* 32, no. 4 (July–August): 298–310.

Majone, Giandomenico. 1996. "Regulation and its Modes." In *Regulating Europe*, edited by Giandomenico Majone, 6–26. London: Routledge.

McAllister, L. K. 2012. "Regulation by Third Party Verification." *Boston College Law Review* 53: 1–64.

McCubbins, M., R. Noll and B. Weingast. 1987. "Administrative Procedures as Instruments of Political Control." *Journal of Law, Economics, and Organization* 3, no. 2: 243–277.

Morgan, Bronwen and Karen Yeung. 2007. *An Introduction to Law and Regulation: Text and Materials*. New York: Cambridge University Press.

Mortimore, Sara E. and Carol A. Wallace. 2015. *HACCP: A Food Industry Briefing*. 2nd ed. Chichester: Wiley Blackwell.

Murphy, K., T. R. Tyler and A. Curtis. 2009. "Nurturing Regulatory Compliance: Is Procedural Justice Effective When People Question the Legitimacy of the Law?" *Regulation & Governance* 3, no. 1: 1–26.

Parker, Christine. 2000. "Reinventing Regulation within the Corporation." *Administration and Society* 32, no. 5: 529–565.

Parker, Christine. 2013. "Twenty Years of Responsive Regulation: An Appreciation and Appraisal." *Regulation & Governance* 7, no. 2: 2–13.

Parker, Christine and Vibeke Lehmann Nielsen. 2017. "Compliance: 14 Questions." In *Regulatory Theory: Foundations and Applications*, edited by Peter Drahos, 217–232. Canberra: ANU Press.

Priest, M. 1998. "The Privatization of Regulation: Five Models of Self-Regulation." *Ottawa Law Review* 29, no. 2: 233–302.

Rebonato, Riccardo. 2012. *Taking Liberties: A Critical Examination of Libertarian Paternalism*. Basingstoke: Palgrave Macmillan.

Schneider, A. and H. Ingram. 1990. "Behavioral Assumptions of Policy Tools." *Journal of Politics* 52, no. 2 (May): 510–529.

Schultz, P. W., J. M. Nolan, R. B. Caldini, N. J. Goldstein and V. Griskevicius. 2007. "The Constructive, Destructive and Reconstructive Power of Social Norms." *Psychological Science* 18, no. 5: 429–434.

Scott, Colin. 2001. "Analysing Regulatory Space: Fragmented Resources and Institutional Design." *Public Law* (Summer): 329–353.

Scott, Colin. 2017. "The Regulatory State and Beyond." In *Regulatory Theory: Foundations and Applications*, edited by Peter Drahos, 265–287. Canberra: ANU Press.

Sethi, S. Prakesh. 2011. *Globalization and Self-Regulation: The Crucial Role that Corporate Codes of Conduct Play in Global Business*. New York: Palgrave Macmillan.

Shu, L. S., N. Mazar, F. Gino, D. Ariely and M. H. Bazerman. 2012. "Signing at the Beginning Makes Ethics Salient and Decreases Dishonest Self-Reports in Comparison with Signing at the End." *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences* 109, no. 38: 15197–15200.

Simon, Herbert A. 1945. *Administrative behavior: A Study of Decision-Making Processes in Administrative Organization*. New York: Macmillan.

Suchman, M. C. 1995. "Managing Legitimacy: Strategic and Institutional Approaches." *Academy of Management Review* 30, no. 3: 571–610.

Talias, M. 2021. "Collaborative Regulation: Collaborative Governance in Regulation." In *Collaborative Governance*, edited Neta Sher-Hadar, Lihi Lahat and Itzhak Galnoor, 165–189. New York: Palgrave Macmillan.

Thaler, Richard H. and Cass R. Sunstein. 2009. *Nudge: Improving Decisions about Health, Wealth, and Happiness*. New York: Penguin Books.

Thompson, D. 1980. "The Moral Responsibility of Public Officials: The Problem of Many Hands." *American Political Science Review* 74, no. 4: 905–916.

Tyler, Tom R. 1990. *Why People Obey the Law: Procedural Justice, Legitimacy and Compliance*. New Haven, CT: Yale University Press.

van der Heijden, Jeroen and Graeme Hodge. 2021. "Ten Global Tends in Regulation: A Future Outlook." In *The Palgrave Handbook of the Public Servant*, edited by Helen Sullivan, Helen Dickinson and Hayley Henderson, 741–759. Basingstoke: Palgrave Macmillan.

van Gossum, P., B. Arts and K. Verheyen, K. 2010. "From 'Smart Regulation' to 'Regulatory Arrangements'." *Policy Science* 43: 245–261.

Vedung, Evert. 1998. "Policy Instruments: Typologies and Theories." In *Carrots, Stick and Sermons: Policy Instruments and Their Evaluation*, edited by Mari-Louise L. Benemmans-Videc, Ray C. Rist and Evert Vedung, 21–58. London: Transaction Publishers.

Weil, D., A. Fung, M. Graham and E. Fagotto. 2006. "The Effectiveness of Regulatory Disclosure Policies." *Journal of Policy Analysis and Management* 25, no. 1 (Winter): 155–181.

White, Mark D. 2013. *The Manipulation of Choice: Ethics and Libertarian Paternalism*. New York: Palgrave Macmillan.

Windholz, Eric L. 2016. "The Evolution of a Modern (and More Legitimate) Regulator: A Case Study of the Victorian Environment Protection Authority." *Australian Journal of Environmental Law* 3: 17–43.

Windholz, Eric L. 2018. *Governing through Regulation: Public Policy, Regulation and the Law*. New York: Routledge.

Yeung, K. 2005. "Government by Publicity Management: Sunlight or Spin." *Public Law* (Summer): 360–383.

26
TREASURE TOOLS
Using Public Funds to Achieve Policy Objectives

Bronwyn McIlroy-Young, Daniel Henstra and Jason Thistlethwaite

The public treasury can be used in many ways to implement public policy. In addition to direct spending on public goods and services, governments can use public funds to induce target groups to adopt policy-preferred behaviors or to impose costs on target groups to discourage undesirable behaviors. This chapter identifies different types of treasure tools and illustrates how they are used by governments to achieve policy objectives, drawing examples from different fields.

Introduction

Governments have access to a diverse array of policy instruments – tools they can use to implement their policy objectives. These tools typically involve deploying authority and resources in different ways to influence the behavior of target groups, including individuals, organizations, and other governments. The public treasury – the funds collected through taxes, fees, and other revenue streams that are at the command of the political executive – is one of the key governing resources that can be harnessed for policy implementation. Treasure-based (i.e., economic) tools generally involve the use of public funds to produce and maintain public goods and services, to induce targets to adopt policy-preferred behaviors, and to impose costs on targets to discourage undesirable behavior (Howlett 2011, 101).

This chapter focuses on economic instruments that governments use to implement public policy. It begins by discussing the general nature of economic policy tools and their inherent assumptions about the behavioral motivations of target groups. It then presents six specific types of economic policy tools, explains their underlying objectives, and provides examples to illustrate their use in practice. Each of the tools is also evaluated against criteria such as resource efficiency, coerciveness, and political risks. The third section discusses the use of economic policy tools in combination with other instruments to illuminate their potential in enhancing instrument mixes. The final section discusses the barriers to and limitations of economic policy tools, including some assumptions made about behavioral mechanisms and inequity.

Treasure as a Policy Implementation Tool

Achieving most public policy objectives requires enabling, convincing, or compelling people to do things they otherwise would not do (Schneider and Ingram 1990). Governments have

 DOI: 10.4324/9781003163954-32

many tools to influence the behavior of target groups, and scholars have typically divided them into categories, such as information-based (e.g., public education, exhortation), authoritative (e.g., law, regulation), economic (e.g., tax, subsidy), and organizational instruments (e.g., coordination, facilitation) (Hood 1983; Howlett 2011). These tools are technically substitutable – instruments from any category could be employed to achieve the same policy objective – but they differ from one another in several different ways, including their underlying behavioral assumptions, how precisely they can target specific behaviors, the resources required to deploy them, and the political risks associated with their use (Landry and Varone 2005; Schneider and Ingram 1990).

Economic policy tools are rooted in the state's legitimate authority to tax citizens and spend the collective treasury in the public interest. This instrument category includes direct government spending on assets, programs, and services but also captures a range of discrete tools that aim to influence the behavior of target groups by creating financial incentives and disincentives (Henstra 2016). The latter set of economic tools, which are the primary focus of this chapter, are underpinned by a basic logic that targets will adjust their behavior to achieve financial gains or avoid financial losses. The use of these tools assumes that because targets are motivated by economic interests, their behavior can be influenced by attaching positive financial payoffs to socially desirable behaviors and imposing financial costs on undesirable behaviors (Olejniczak, Śliwowski, and Leeuw 2020).

Grounded in this assumption, governments often employ grants, loans, and subsidies to entice target groups to engage in policy-preferred behaviors, the cost of which might be beyond their willingness or capacity to pay. Similarly, policy targets who align their actions with the government's stated policy objectives are often offered reduced or waived financial obligations, such as fees and taxes, in exchange for their compliance. Conversely, achieving policy objectives often involves constraining behaviors deemed contrary to the public interest, so governments impose fees, tariffs, and taxes to attach costs to these behaviors, in hopes of altering the decision calculus of actors who might engage in them.

Economic policy tools are favored by governments because of their targeting precision. Grants and subsidies, for instance, are typically deployed at an individual level, include reporting requirements, and are often paid out only after the target has made an initial expenditure, so the costs of deployment are relatively easy to track, and the impacts can be measured fairly accurately. Similarly, since they are used to discourage known undesirable behaviors, taxes and fees can be imposed selectively to capture only those actors who engage in these behaviors.

Economic tools therefore offer policymakers a flexible arsenal of instruments that can be finely tuned and calibrated to achieve policy objectives. These tools can also be deployed with one another or alongside other categories of policy tools to meet the needs of different stakeholders simultaneously and provide more robust solutions to policy problems. However, since mounting any of these economic tools imposes costs on the public treasury, their use is constrained by governments' fiscal capacity and ideological resistance to public spending.

Treasure Tools

This section analyzes a selection of treasure instruments that governments commonly use. Specifically, it discusses direct program spending, grants and subsidies, loans, government insurance, fees and corrective taxes, and tax expenditures. For each tool, we evaluate its level of coerciveness and resource efficiency, as well as the political risks and support involved in its implementation. Also considered for each instrument are the specific mechanisms and calibrations that governments can use to focus their targeting or overcome administrative constraints.

Direct Program Spending

Direct program spending involves the use of public funds to produce and maintain public goods. By designing and implementing programs, governments rely on their own capacity to accomplish policy objectives, rather than acting through intermediaries to influence the behavior of others (Hood and Margetts 2007, 6). Public programs can take many forms. To support adaptation to a changing climate, for example, governments have implemented large spending programs to replace and rehabilitate infrastructure and to improve heating and cooling in buildings (Henstra 2016).

General program spending is fundamental to governance as a direct mechanism to implement policy objectives and to set the stage for other activities in a policy field. When well designed, executed, and monitored, government programs are generally effective, in that they can produce more reliable outcomes than other types of treasure instruments that attempt to influence the behavior of external actors by providing incentives. However, government programs are resource intensive because they rely on public servants for implementation, and they carry a significant political risk because of their high visibility and cost to the public treasury.

Grants and Subsidies

Grants and subsidies are payments made from governments to individuals, companies, or other governments to achieve a public policy objective. Grants are direct payments that cover some or all of the costs of undertaking an activity, and they are among the most commonly used policy tools. They may be conditional, meaning that the funds are awarded on a competitive basis and can only be used for specific purposes, or unconditional, meaning that the funds can be used for any purpose desired by the grantee. Grants are intended to be "stimulative and temporary", in that they enable or encourage an activity in hopes that the recipient of the payments will continue to provide it after the gifted funds are cut off (Beam and Conlan 2002, 341). They are a popular vehicle for national governments to implement their policy objectives by influencing the decisions and actions of other levels of government without overstepping their legal authority. Grants are also a mechanism for bridging the funding gap by providing fiscal support to lower levels of government that lack the capacity to meet their needs through taxation.

Subsidies are payments to individuals and organizations that are intended to reduce the cost of policy-preferred behaviors or activities in hopes of increasing uptake among target groups. Unlike grants, subsidies are always conditional, in that they require performance of specified requirements and cover only a portion of the cost. Subsidies are often explicit, such as a city program to subsidize the installation of basement flood prevention devices, but can also be covert, such as a crop insurance program in which the premiums are set lower than the expected claims, effectively delivering a hidden subsidy to farmers. The latter exemplifies how grants and subsidies can serve redistributive goals.

Both grants and subsidies can also be used to correct market failures by reducing the costs of activities that are considered socially beneficial to governments but are not sufficiently lucrative for firms (Steenblik 2018). For example, the PeakSmart program in Queensland, Australia, subsidizes the purchase of air conditioners that are designed to reduce electricity network stress during periods of peak demand, such as a heat wave (Australia 2021). While the societal benefits of increased network efficiency are significant, the subsidy is needed to increase the marketability of PeakSmart units because their benefit to individual consumers is indirect.

Grants and subsidies are non-coercive because they provide economic incentives but rely wholly on voluntary uptake. These instruments are moderately resource efficient because they

are designed to achieve policy objectives by relying on individuals, organizations, or other governments to carry out actions (Beam and Conlan 2002). Grants tend to attract strong political support from vertical coalitions that include grant recipients, officials from the administering governments, and other stakeholders who believe in the need for ongoing support for their specific program. Similarly, subsidies are more politically palatable than unconditional transfers because they put some of the financial liability on policy targets (Steenblik 2018).

Despite these advantages, grants can be quite inefficient when they require administration by multiple levels of government (Beam and Conlan 2002). Canada's Municipalities for Climate Innovation Program, for instance, provides funding to hire climate change adaptation and mitigation staff. It is funded by the government of Canada, delivered by the Federation of Canadian Municipalities, and implemented by municipal governments. A multi-tier implementation structure of this sort is vulnerable to inefficiency and redundancy arising from numerous smaller programs with overlapping functions. Subsidies present additional efficiency concerns specifically related to economic distortion, which occurs when subsidies warp natural market incentives, resulting in a diversion of economic resources from more productive to less productive uses (Steenblik 2018).

Loans

Loans are an economic instrument through which governments extend credit to fund borrowers in performing policy-preferred activities (Howard 2002). Government loans provide liquidity and direct access to capital for activities that are considered socially or economically valuable, such as the growth of small businesses or obtaining an undergraduate degree. They can be extended directly by the government or issued through a private bank with a government backstop. The latter, known as a guaranteed loan, involves a contractual agreement with the private lender whereby the government pledges to repay the loan to the private lender if the borrower defaults.

The rationales for and effectiveness of loan programs are variable. Loans can be used to correct capital market imperfections or to pioneer new credit markets (Howard 2002). For example, many European countries offer loans as an incentive to scale up energy efficiency measures that have high upfront costs (Economidou et al. 2019). The private loan market is underdeveloped in this area, and so governments intervene to offer public debt financing options.

Loans have a low level of coerciveness in that signing on is voluntary. Once a loan has been extended, however, highly coercive actions may be taken to police delinquency or default (Howard 2002). The resource intensity of a loan program depends on whether it is implemented directly – and therefore requires government staff to administer – or through a private firm. Keeping a loan program solvent, rather than an open-ended, money-losing enterprise, is no small task. Effective loan programs require sophisticated information management systems and highly trained staff. Further, because of the long time horizons for many prepayment schemes, it may take decades to realize that lending was imprudent, and public funds have been distributed injudiciously. As a policy instrument, loans attract general political support because the government is perceived to be acting like a business, though private lenders generally prefer loan guarantees over direct lending because they can introduce new customers to their services. In either case, constituencies may be wary of new loan programs because of their potential to disrupt existing markets. These same constituencies, once adjusted to public lending in a new market, can also be a source of inertia for ending or modifying loan programs.

There are ways in which the administration and targeting of loan programs may be calibrated to efficiently meet policy objectives. Policymakers must decide the terms of the loan, including

who is eligible, whether to provide a form of subsidy (e.g., through a low interest rate), the size of the loan, the time for repayment, and the conditions of default. Effective government loan programs walk the line between "doing well" by targeting people who will not default and "doing good" by targeting people who will not be offered the credit they need from a private bank (Howard 2002, 399). A very significant calibration decision, as discussed earlier, is whether a loan will be offered directly by the government or through a private firm. While the latter is less resource intensive, it also carries a greater risk of adverse selection because banks face less severe consequences for lending imprudently.

Government Insurance

Government insurance is an economic tool by which the risk of suffering a financial loss is transferred from an individual, organization, or firm to a government agency. In exchange, those who transfer the risk (the insured) make small, regular payments called premiums to the government agency that takes on the risk (the insurer). If and when the financially damaging event occurs, the insured submits a claim to the insurer to cover the loss. The insurer takes on the risk of financial losses and receives premium payments from many insured clients at the same time. In this way, the risks of the group of insured clients are pooled, and the costs of adverse events are effectively distributed across all members of the pool.

Public insurance programs differ from private insurance schemes in two significant ways. First, government insurance covers the kinds of risks that private insurers are often unwilling to cover, or coverage is offered to segments of the public who may not be accepted into private programs (Feldman 2002). Second, the goal of government insurance programs is not to earn a profit, but rather to achieve social and economic policy objectives.

Government insurance is a low to moderately coercive instrument. Some programs are voluntary, in which targets are enticed to participate by the prospect of having large financial liabilities underwritten by another party, whereas other programs are mandatory for everyone who meets certain criteria. Government insurance programs can also coerce targets to engage in activities that reduce their risk of making a claim.

In the United States, for example, flood insurance is sold by the Federal Emergency Management Agency under the National Flood Insurance Program (NFIP). Its purchase is compulsory for property owners in designated flood areas who have a federally backed mortgage but is voluntary for all others. Premiums are broadly affordable, but only because they are deeply discounted, and the resulting loss of premium revenue has contributed to the NFIP's debt to the US Treasury of more than $24 billion (Horn and Webel 2021). Federal flood insurance through the NFIP is available only to properties in communities that have adopted minimum floodplain management regulations that aim to limit development in flood hazard areas.

The resource efficiency of government insurance programs depends on whether they are operated directly by the government or indirectly through a private firm. The latter design is less resource intensive because the skilled labor, sophisticated tracking systems, and data collection (all prerequisites for running solvent insurance programs) are not the purview of the government. Government insurance programs receive political support because they have the appearance of being self-financing, which is an attractive feature in neoliberal governance. This instrument also carries less political risk because it has low budgetary visibility. Premium income is documented in plain sight, whereas governments' financial exposure is not.

There are several critical calibrations that must be considered for designing government insurance programs. The first is the premium rate. Premiums can be set to cover program costs but can also be calibrated to convey a hidden subsidy to targets, as noted earlier. A second

design consideration concerns eligibility requirements and whether or not participation will be mandatory. Compelling participation is a significant advantage of public programs over private insurance because it allows for a large pool, which reduces adverse selection (whereby only those at significant risk opt for coverage) and achieves mutuality (i.e., a broad and diverse pool across which losses can be spread).

A final calibration choice relates to whether participants should be compelled to undertake actions that reduce their chances of filing a claim. This can decrease the risk of moral hazard, meaning the perverse incentive to take risks knowing coverage is available, but can also impose inequitable costs on lower-income groups. Notably, achieving the optimal calibration for a government insurance program requires huge amounts of data, sophisticated tracking systems, and the ability to react quickly to changing conditions – all of which are challenging for government providers.

Fees and Corrective Taxes

Fees and corrective taxes differ from the treasure tools discussed earlier in that they rely on negative economic incentives to induce behavioral change. These instruments are often posited as an alternative to social regulation. Instead of compelling firms or individuals to stop a socially harmful activity by instating a ban, fees and taxes attach a financial penalty to the activity and allow targets to choose for themselves whether their continued participation is worth the additional cost.

Fees are often imposed simply to raise additional revenue to pay for services, such as when there is a price for admission to public facilities. In other cases, however, costs are imposed to penalize socially undesirable behavior or attach a negative price signal to actions that undermine a government's policy objectives. Special levies on products like cigarettes and alcohol – often referred to colloquially as "sin taxes" – are an example. Another example is corrective taxes, which aim to impose costs on specific target groups whose behavior contributes to social ills, such as higher property tax rates for homes located in risky areas that require more expensive protection from governments. There are few examples of such "risk-based" taxes in practice, presumably because they are vociferously opposed by those targeted by them.

Fees and corrective taxes are moderately coercive (Cordes 2002). They impose financial penalties on undesirable activities but still leave individuals or firms the choice to either refrain from the activity or accept the cost. The resource efficiency of these tools is also moderate because the revenue they raise offsets some of the cost of their administration. Implementing fees and corrective taxes, however, involves a degree of political risk because they engender resistance among their targets.

Fees and corrective taxes can be calibrated to suit the governance context and policy objectives. These instruments can be targeted reasonably precisely toward specific behaviors and actors. One essential calibration choice is the level at which the tax or fee is set. The rate must be high enough to deter the target behavior while not being overly suppressive. From a purely economic standpoint, the rate of the tax should be commensurate with the social costs of the activity; however, this is effectively impossible to calculate because of the volume and complexity of data that would be required (Cordes 2002). Some might also take issue with this calculation entirely, arguing that there is no optimal level of a socially harmful activity.

Tax Expenditures

Tax expenditures encourage targets to engage in certain behaviors by reducing their tax obligation. Its basic mechanism diverges from that of other instruments: instead of spending the tax

dollars it collects, the government forgoes revenue that it would otherwise be owed by individuals or organizations. Tax expenditures are primarily discussed in reference to deductions from individual or corporate income tax bills, but tax expenditures can also be introduced for other classes of taxation, such as an estate or gift tax. A typical use of tax expenditure to promote climate change mitigation is write-offs for household energy efficiency transitions, such as the Crédit d'Impôt Transition Energétique (CITE) in France (France 2021). Owners or occupants of a dwelling receive a tax credit for a percentage of what they spend on materials and equipment to limit the greenhouse gas emissions from their home.

The tax expenditure instrument is low in coerciveness (Howard 2002). Targets are enticed, but not compelled, to engage in policy-preferred activities. Tax expenditure is a highly attractive instrument for policymakers because of its perceived resource efficiency: new tax credits and deductions can simply be added onto the existing tax system. However, the ease of administration for this instrument tends to be overstated. Complex tax codes are intricate, subjective, and constantly changing, which causes immense frustration for both revenue agency employees and the public. Political support for tax expenditures is generally strong and bipartisan because it can be seen as both an extension and a contraction of government power. The tool is palatable to conservatives who are usually in favor of reduced taxes and is considered a reasonable compromise by progressives who appreciate its ease of administration as compared to more direct instruments.

When implementing the tax expenditure instrument, policymakers can decide between two forms. Tax deductions are amounts subtracted from the target's total taxable income. Tax credits are amounts subtracted from the target's tax liability. For tax deductions, the dollar value of a particular write-off is higher for people with greater amounts of taxable income, whereas for tax credits, the amount saved is the same regardless of income level. Another important calibration is the extent of targeting. More narrowly targeted programs are less likely to waste revenue but are more difficult to determine eligibility for. A weakness of the tax expenditure instrument is that programs are liable to grow as conditions shift and more people meet the eligibility requirements. Such expansion often occurs without any explicit decision-making and can result in costly and ill-targeted programs. This problem is exacerbated by the fact that the mechanism lacks transparency, since tax expenditures are often difficult to see in the budget.

Economic Instrument Mixes

Policy instruments are rarely implemented in isolation. Rather, policy objectives are typically addressed using a combination of different instruments, called an instrument mix. Instruments can be mixed horizontally, whereby different tools are deployed by different administrative units of the same government, or vertically, when different levels of government, each with their own set of instruments, work cooperatively towards a shared policy objective. Mixes may be used to address different factors that contribute to the same problem, to support other tools in the mix, or to involve different governments in addressing the same overarching policy objective (del Río 2014).

Instrument Mixes

Instrument mixes can be described and assessed based on a variety of different criteria (Glaus 2020). The first is the number of instruments in the mix. Older schools of thought in policy studies have argued for parsimony when applying tools to objectives, purporting that the ideal ratio of instrument to goal is 1:1. This approach has a certain aesthetic appeal and would

theoretically minimize administrative costs, but this result is rarely borne out in the complicated realities of governance and decision-making.

A second assessment criterion is the coerciveness and behavioral mechanics of the instruments in a mix. Economic instruments may be combined with one another or with instruments from other classes. There is some support for strategically combining more coercive instruments, such as corrective taxes and regulations, with less coercive instruments that encourage the desired behavior, such as subsidies and grants (van der Doelan 1998). The former, some scholars argue, are more capable of effectuating change but tend to generate resistance among their targets, which limits their usability. Resistance may be reduced by combining these tools with legitimating instruments that provide economic stimulus and reduce resistance toward the overall policy objective. These instruments may not be as directly impactful but are useful to lubricate the bargaining process with policy targets.

A third feature of an instrument mix is its coverage of all theoretical points of application for the policy problem it addresses (Weber, Driessen, and Runhaar 2014). Any given policy problem is likely to have many different contributing factors or market failures, each of which provides a distinct opportunity to apply policy and effectuate behavioral change to achieve the policy objective. For example, the problem of the increased rate of sudden deaths during intense heat waves has numerous possible solutions. Cooling neighborhoods by planting trees, subsidizing the purchase of air conditioners and fans, increasing the capacity of the health-care system to deal with acute heat during periods of high stress, and opening public cooling centers are all measures that could reduce the number of lives lost from extreme heat.

Instrument Interactions

A defining feature of an instrument mix is the interaction between its elements. A combination of two or more instruments may be 'complementary', wherein the instruments build linearly on one another toward accomplishment of the policy objective (Persson 2006). In 'conflicting' mixes, by contrast, instruments work against one another, potentially by invoking contradicting responses in the target, and they result in a smaller net impact than if only one tool had been used. The best designed mixes may even be 'synergistic', in which the instrument combinations enhance or legitimate one another, magnifying their overall impact. Instrument mix interactions can also occur on a broader level – mix 'coherence' occurs when there is integration of policy objectives and the specific goals of all instruments within a mix.

Avoiding conflicts and achieving complementary, synergistic, and coherent mixes are, in part, a matter of design. More thoughtfully assembled mixes, built with strong coordination across the different governments or administrative units involved, may, for example, prevent the imposition of conflicting criteria on a target. As an example, during some periods of the COVID-19 pandemic, national and provincial governments in Canada each legislated quarantine requirements for people who tested positive for the virus. In some cases, the requirements put forth by different levels of government contradicted one another, stipulating different durations of or restrictions on behavior. This resulted in confusion and reduced confidence in both sets of regulations (Ross 2021).

Some tool conflict is inherent, because certain instruments simply have conflicting goals or involve a trade-off (del Río 2014). In other cases, the success of an instrument is determined by the boundaries of the system for which it is assessed and will therefore look different when evaluated by different levels of government with nested jurisdictions. Scholars have suggested using a multi-criteria framework to make explicit the trade-offs and congruences between different instruments in a mix. While not necessarily eliminating tensions between tools, this approach

allows for more deliberate and informed decision-making about the combination of instruments to be employed (Howlett and del Rio 2015).

Deployment Over Time

Instrument mixes are also characterized by their evolution and development over time. An often-cited principle of mix design is the scale of coercion in sequential instrument choices (Howlett 2019). Under the assumption that tools are technically substitutable, this maxim holds that governments will strive to first address a policy problem with the least coercive instrument available and reach for more coercive tools if and when they are necessary to overcome targets' resistance to change. Following this principle, policymakers would first strive to achieve their goals through informing or educating the public before considering economic tools. If an economic instrument is ultimately deployed and it, too, fails to sway behavior, governments will only then resort to more authoritative tools, such as regulation.

The reasons for this are described to be both programmatic and ideological: governments prefer tools that are inexpensive to implement and generate the least possible pushback among targets (Howlett and Rayner 2013, 173). The principle of increasing coercion has retained significant support, but there are many exceptions. The full possible sequence of instruments to be applied to a policy problem over years or decades is often not thought out in advance. Governments may sometimes prefer to initiate pursuit of a policy objective with a strong-handed instrument to show their seriousness about tackling the issue. Then, once the initial hurdle is cleared, they are able to use less coercive instruments intended to sustain changes over time.

Mix Design in Practice

Implementation is critical to the success of any policy objective. No matter how well thought through a design may be, if the instrument mix is weakly implemented, the policy will fail (Rist 1998). Effective policy designs must take into account the actual resources and capabilities of the implementing agents and strive for "goodness of fit" between the policy mix and the governance context (Howlett and Rayner 2013, 9). Different implementing organizations will have their own ways of understanding and classifying the policy problem and modes of interfacing with the target population (Rist 1998). The goal of the implementing organization is also an important consideration. In some cases, the objectives or functions of an instrument may be misaligned with the agency that administers it, creating conflicting incentives. For example, tax expenditures are implemented by the revenue agency: a tool that functions by forgoing owed tax dollars is administered by the agency whose defining purpose is to collect revenue for the government (Howard 2002). This internal tension can complicate implementation of tax credits and deductions.

Another key implementation consideration is the degree of freedom that policymakers have to develop new designs. The principles for instrument mixes described earlier imply that policy designers start from a blank canvas on which they are free to sketch their vision of an ideal tool combination. In reality, this is rarely the case. Decision-making about instrument mixes is almost always constrained by pre-existing policy agendas and tool portfolios (Howlett and Rayner 2013). As a result, design decisions about policy mixes more typically consist of incremental shifts that shape the function and objectives of a policy over time. This could consist of adding new instruments to a mix, deliberately retaining the elements of a mix despite changes to the policy context, or redeploying tools to serve different policy goals (Howlett and Rayner 2013).

Considering the many constraints on decision-making, some have questioned whether policies and instrument mixes can be meaningfully 'designed' at all (del Río 2014). Policies are often driven more by opportunism and situational logics than by the principles described here. Additionally, the data supporting the various theories about instrument mixes is sparse. There is limited evidence demonstrating either the descriptive accuracy or the normative utility of these concepts for formulating policies in a complex governance environment. Consequently, literature on policy design is, perhaps, best framed as generating principles and frameworks that policymakers can orient toward. While many aspects are not applied to their full extent, academic insight may support policymakers in deliberately designing the incremental changes that fall within the scope of their decision-making (Howlett and Rayner 2013).

Limitations of Treasure Instruments

Treasure-based instruments offer a diverse array of options for achieving policy objectives. Tools that employ financial incentives are less resource intensive than direct programming and can be precisely calibrated to promote change and leverage market efficiencies. These tools, however, also have limitations. Most importantly, the assumed mechanism for behavioral change implicit within economic instruments rests on a set of baseline conditions. Economic policy tools will successfully motivate change only if targets are driven by payoffs (Olejniczak, Śliwowski, and Leeuw 2020). This requires them to have the information and capacity to accurately calculate the costs and benefits of the target behavior. It also requires that this calculation is not distorted by the nature of the benefits being indirect or occurring in the too-distant future. For targets who do respond rationally to the incentives introduced by economic instruments, there are still hurdles to overcome before they adopt the policy-preferred behavior. Firms or individuals must also have the capacity (resources, knowledge, skills) and the opportunity (infrastructure, feedback, social cues) to make changes (Olejniczak, Śliwowski, and Leeuw 2020).

The policy design process is often criticized for holding unrealistic assumptions about human behavior and how it can be manipulated. The motivation, capacity, and opportunity for adopting policy-preferred actions vary widely across target groups. "Target dependency" refers to how the effectiveness of economic instruments will depend on their targets' financial need and receptivity to government funding (Howlett 2018, 129). For example, a crop insurance program that protects farmers from yield loss as a result of increased weather variability may appeal to wealthier farmers but have limited uptake among smaller operations that struggle to balance the books each season. Policy instruments may target individuals, households, or institutions. The behavior in focus may be a one-off, such as encouraging farmers to change their livestock to an indigenous breed that is better able to cope with variability in the local ecosystem, or repeated, such as changing the time interval for feeding one's livestock to increase feed-use efficiency. In each case, different tools or calibrations may be required to effect the desired change.

Inequity is another limitation shared by many economic policy instruments. Grants and subsidies perform poorly in terms of horizontal equity (Beam and Conlan 2002). The competitive application process for grants means that funds are not distributed according to need but are rather disproportionately allocated to those most apt at navigating the application process. Similarly, most subsidy benefits accrue to a minority of targets who are best able to situate themselves to take advantage.

These instruments also present equity issues across time. Subsidies tend to provide the most benefit to those who take them up soonest, whereas those who enter the field after the subsidy ends lose out (Steenblik 2018). Government loans perform poorly in terms of vertical equity because they service only a narrow segment of the population in terms of socio-economic class

(those who are ineligible for private programs but still sufficiently creditworthy in the eyes of the government). Tax expenditures face a similar vertical equity issue as loans – the types of actions incentivized by these instruments tend to be achievable only for higher-income individuals. As a result, the majority of the benefits accrue to less needy segments of the population. Tax deductions are also not equitable across populations of similar income levels. This is because write-off amounts are not based on need but on whether a person meets particular criteria or has purchased a particular product or service that can be deducted.

Finally, many economic policy instruments can have unintended effects on behavior or confer benefits on targets in a manner that does not further policy objectives. Windfall benefits occur when a policy target receives money for behaviors that they would have participated in regardless. The funds are not an incentive for change but are rather an unexpected gift. Subsidies, tax expenditures, and loans are all instruments that have the potential to waste public funds by providing windfall benefits. Relatedly, too-small economic incentives may have no effect whatsoever on their targets, making them highly inefficient (Rode, Gómez-Baggethun, and Krause 2015).

Flawed assumptions about the mechanisms of behavioral change can result in responses to economic policy instruments that hinder achievement of the policy objective. For example, stormwater charges are intended to incentivize households to make landscaping changes to their property that will allow for more water to be absorbed into the earth and reduce flood risk. However, some property owners may perceive fee payment itself as "doing their part" to manage stormwater risks and crowd out pro-social motivation that may otherwise have been leveraged to incentivize policy-preferred behavior (Driver 2019). Worse still is the moral hazard associated with implementing government insurance. In each case, the behavioral response to the instrument works directly against the policy objective.

Conclusion

Treasure tools are a key governing resource for implementing policy objectives. Instruments that provide fiscal incentives and disincentives are more forceful than information-based policy tools, less coercive than social regulation, and involve fewer resources and less political exposure than direct programming. They can be precisely calibrated to meet policy objectives and, for some instruments, designed to leverage market forces for improved efficiency. Economic instruments are rooted in a conventional view of behavioral change: people will respond to stimuli rationally and in a manner that furthers their self-interest.

However, as with any policy device, their actual implementation tends to complicate well-reasoned notions about efficiency and impact. Strong assumptions about the behavioral response and poor equity are common shortfalls of instruments in this category. These issues may be mitigated by harnessing multiple kinds of instruments towards the achievement of a policy objective. Most economic tools also face some of degree of resistance rooted in the neoliberal aversion to public spending. Despite their risks and limitations, grants, insurance, loans, tax expenditure, and fees have been relied on to advance a broad array of policy objectives and remain an integral tool of governance.

References

Australia Department of Industry, Science, Energy and Resources. 2021. *Energy-Efficient Air Conditioning Incentive – Energex*. www.energy.gov.au/rebates/energy-efficient-air-conditioning-incentive-energex. Accessed September 2, 2021.

Beam, David R., and Timothy J. Conlan. 2002. "Chapter 11: Grants." In *The Tools of Government: A Guide to the New Governance*, edited by Lester M. Salamon, 340–380. New York: Oxford University Press.

Cordes, Joseph J. 2002. "Corrective Taxes, Charges, and Tradable Permits." In *The Tools of Government: A Guide to the New Governance*, edited by Lester M. Salamon, 255–281. New York: Oxford University Press.

del Río, Pablo. 2014. "On Evaluating Success in Complex Policy Mixes: The Case of Renewable Energy Support Schemes." *Policy Sciences* 47, no. 3 (October): 267–287.

Doelan, Frans C. J. van der. 1998. "The 'Give-and-Take' Packaging of Policy Instruments: Optimizing Legitimacy and Effectiveness." In *Carrots, Sticks & Sermons: Policy Instruments & Their Evaluation*, edited by Marie-Louise Bemelmans-Vidac, Ray C. Rist, and Vedung Evert, 1st ed., 129–152. New York: Routledge.

Driver, Tia Rebecca. 2019. "Assessing the Suitability of Economic Policy Instruments for Urban Flood Risk Management." MA Thesis, University of Waterloo, Waterloo, ON.

Economidou, Marina, Valeria Todeschi, Paolo Bertoldi, and Joint Research Centre. 2019. *Accelerating Energy Renovation Investments in Buildings: Financial and Fiscal Instruments across the EU*. Luxembourg: European Commission.

Feldman, Ron J. 2002. "Government Insurance." In *The Tools of Government: A Guide to the New Governance*, edited by Lester M. Salamon, 186–216. New York: Oxford University Press.

France. 2021. "Energy Transition Tax Credit." Paris: General Directorate of Public Finances. https://bofip.impots.gouv.fr/bofip/3883-PGP.html/identifiant%3DBOI-IR-RICI-280-20190621. Accessed September 15, 2021.

Glaus, Anik. 2020. "Policy Design in Flood Risk Management: Studying Policy Preferences in Three Sub-Catchment Areas in Switzerland." *WIT Transactions on the Built Environment* 194: 35–47.

Henstra, Daniel. 2016. "The Tools of Climate Adaptation Policy: Analysing Instruments and Instrument Selection." *Climate Policy* 16, no. 4 (March): 496–521.

Hood, Christopher C. 1983. *The Tools of Government*. London: Macmillan Press.

Hood, Christopher C., and Helen Z. Margetts. 2007. "Exploring Government's Toolshed." In *The Tools of Government in the Digital Age*, 2nd ed., 1–19. Basingstoke, UK: Palgrave Macmillan.

Horn, Diane P., and Baird Webel. 2021. *Introduction to the National Flood Insurance Program*. Washington, DC: Congressional Research Service. https://fas.org/sgp/crs/homesec/R44593.pdf. Accessed January 2021.

Howard, Christopher. 2002. "Tax Expenditures." In *The Tools of Government: A Guide to the New Governance*, edited by Lester M. Salamon, 410–444. New York: Oxford University Press.

Howlett, Michael. 2011. *Designing Public Policies: Principles and Instruments*. New York: Routledge.

Howlett, Michael. 2018. "Aligning Policy Tools and Their Targets: Nudging and Utility Maximization in Policy Design." In *Routledge Handbook of Policy Design*, 124–140. New York, NY: Taylor & Francis.

Howlett, Michael. 2019. "Procedural Policy Tools and the Temporal Dimensions of Policy Design: Resilience, Robustness and the Sequencing of Policy Mixes." *International Review of Public Policy* 1, no. 1: 27–45.

Howlett, Michael, and Jeremy Rayner. 2013. "Patching vs. Packaging in Policy Formulation: Assessing Policy Portfolio Design." *Politics and Governance* 1, no. 2 (October): 170–182.

Howlett, Michael, and Pablo del Rio. 2015. "The Parameters of Policy Portfolios: Verticality and Horizontality in Design Spaces and Their Consequences for Policy Mix Formulation." *Environment and Planning C: Government and Policy* 33, no. 5 (October): 1233–1245.

Landry, Réjean, and Frédéric Varone. 2005. "Choice of Policy Instruments: Confronting the Deductive and Interactive Approaches." In *Designing Government: From Instruments to Governance*, edited by Pearl Eliadis, Margaret M. Hill, and Michael Howlett, 106–131. Kingston, ON: McGill-Queen's University Press.

Olejniczak, Karol, Paweł Śliwowski, and Frans Leeuw. 2020. "Comparing Behavioral Assumptions of Policy Tools: Framework for Policy Designers." *Journal of Comparative Policy Analysis: Research and Practice* 22, no. 6 (October): 498–520.

Persson, Åsa. 2006. "Characterizing the Policy Instrument Mixes for Municipal Waste in Sweden and England." *Environmental Policy and Governance* 16, no. 4 (July): 213–231.

Rist, Ray C. 1998. "Choosing the Right Instrument at the Right Time: The Contextual Challenges of Selection and Implementation." In *Carrots, Sticks & Sermons: Policy Instruments & Their Evaluation*, edited by Marie-Louise Bemelmans-Vidac, Ray C. Rist, and Evert Vedung, 129–152. New York: Routledge.

Rode, Julian, Erik Gómez-Baggethun, and Torsten Krause. 2015. "Motivation Crowding by Economic Incentives in Conservation Policy: A Review of the Empirical Evidence." *Ecological Economics* 117 (September): 270–282.

Ross, Andrea. 2021. "Conflicting Quarantine Rules Cause Confusion for Some British Columbians." *CBC News*. February 13. www.cbc.ca/news/canada/british-columbia/bc-quarantine-rules-confusion-1.5912544. Accessed September 21, 2021.

Schneider, Anne, and Helen Ingram. 1990. "Behavioral Assumptions of Policy Tools." *The Journal of Politics* 52, no. 2 (May): 510–529.

Steenblik, Ronald. 2018. "Treasure Tools: A Primer on Subsidies." In *Routledge Handbook of Policy Design*, edited by Michael Howlett and Ishani Mukherjee, 278–290. New York and London: Routledge Taylor & Francis Group.

Weber, Miriam, Peter P. J. Driessen, and Hens A. C. Runhaar. 2014. "Evaluating Environmental Policy Instruments Mixes: A Methodology Illustrated by Noise Policy in the Netherlands." *Journal of Environmental Planning and Management* 57, no. 9 (July): 1381–1397.

27

INFORMATION AS A POLICY TOOL

The Role of Government Communication

Michael Howlett

Government communication is now a large growth industry in many countries. Exactly what is meant by the term, however, varies from author to author. In this chapter, government communication is conceived as a policy tool or instrument: that is, as a means to give effect to policy goals. Three key policy-relevant aspects of the term are examined: (1) the link between government communications and the 'nodality' or information resource set out by Hood in his study of policy instruments; (2) the role of government communications in the 'front-end' of the public policy and production processes related to agenda-setting, policy formulation and producer activities as opposed to the 'back-end' of policy implementation, policy evaluation, consumption and distribution; and (3) the general aims of network management and overcoming information asymmetries which help explain the range of procedural and substantive policy tools used in government communication efforts. A model of four basic types of government communications is developed and examples provided of each general category. The implications of this analysis for cross-national comparative policy analyses of government communication activities and the evaluation of accountability and policy efficacy in contemporary governance are then discussed.

Introduction

Current governance modes have been shifting increasingly towards a pro-consultation mode which has led to the internalization and mandating of new communication practices in many jurisdictions (Feldman and Khademian 2007). These include the development and use of instruments which promote citizen empowerment such as freedom of information legislation, the use of public performance measures, various forms of e-government and the increased use of government surveys and advertising, among others. As a result, government communications is now a large growth industry in many countries and the subject of increasing attention from both practitioners and theorists.

DOI: 10.4324/9781003163954-33

Government communications are typically thought of as the 'sermons' in a 'carrots, sticks and sermons' formulation of basic policy instrument types (Vedung and van der Doelen 1998). Vedung, for example, has defined a 'sermon' as:

> Efforts to use the knowledge and data available to governments to influence consumer and producer behaviour in a direction consistent with government aims and wishes" and/or "gather information in order to further their aims and ambitions.
>
> *(Vedung and van der Doelen 1998)*

The disparate nature of these government communication activities and the fact that many post–9/11 security-inspired government actions have also prevented information release, however, are indicative of the need to be more precise in what is meant by the term 'government communication'. Moves in the direction of increased consultation and information release are fraught, since moves in this direction involve trade-offs between some rights such as the public's 'right to know' and state security issues or an individual's right to privacy. Any general diminishment of state power can be reversed in times of war or crisis, as has been the case in many countries in the post–9/11 environment of the US-led 'war on terror', in which concerns with state and collective security in times of war or terrorism have led to a renewed emphasis on restricting information disclosure, as we have seen recently in many countries.

Different foci make assessments and generalizations about trends and patterns of use exceedingly difficult (Ledingham 2003). Nevertheless. classifying and analyzing the wide range of activities and tasks that fall into the category of 'government communication' is an essential prerequisite for such assessments, which, in turn, are required if the contours and implications of new communications activity in areas such as the media and elections are to be understood.

Defining Government Communication as a Policy Tool

Exactly what is meant by the term *government communication* currently varies dramatically from author to author, ranging from its association with all forms of political activity (Deutsch 1963; Bang 2003) to a very specific focus on one limited type of activity, like political advertising (Firestone 1970; Young 2007). Needless to say, the consequences of the definition adopted greatly affect the conclusions reached pertaining to the growth and spread of communications activity and its impact.

Thinking about such activities as 'policy tools', however, helps sort out the different goals and purposes of government communication, a first step towards establishing a typology of such activities, itself the first step towards effective empirical analysis and theory construction. That is, 'government communication' can be thought of as a generic name for a wide variety of a specific type or category of governing instruments, ones which typically draw upon what Christopher Hood (1986) called 'nodality', or the use of government informational resources to influence and direct policy actions through the provision or withholding of 'information' or 'knowledge' from societal actors.

As is well known, Hood (1983, 1986, Hood and Margetts 2007) argued that governments have essentially four resources at their disposal – nodality, authority, treasure and organizational (or 'NATO' in Hood's terminology) – which they use to monitor society and alter its behaviour. In Hood's scheme, instruments are grouped together according to (1) which of these resources they primarily rely on for their effectiveness and (2) whether the instrument is designed to effect or detect changes in a policy environment (Hood 1986; Anderson 1977). This formulation is useful in providing four clearly differentiated categories of policy instruments. While each tool,

to a certain extent, relies on all four resources (for example, a tax is a treasure tool but is also administered by an organization and relies on government authority to be collected and on the provision of information to taxpayers about its existence), in this scheme, each tool may be classified according to the primary resource it involves (in the case of a tax, this is 'treasure'). However, for our purposes, this second distinction is less significant since communication is commonly two way, allowing a simpler taxonomy of basic governing tools and resources to be set out (see Table 27.1).

Thus, in Hood's taxonomy, most government communication activities can be seen to primarily involve the use of information-based policy tools, which function as they do because of the nodal position governments occupy in public policy systems and subsystems. This insight allows us to better describe and classify the various different techniques practiced by governments in this area, to uncover patterns in their use and to begin to understand why these patterns exist. However, specifying the basic resource used by this tool is only the first step in the identification of specific subtypes which differ in terms of how they control or manipulate knowledge and for what purpose(s).

Distinguishing Between Different Types of Government Communication Tools

Vedung's definition is useful in this regard as it sets out two general dimensions of information tool use and the general purposes to which they can be put: influencing consumer and producer behaviour in economic transactions and controlling or collecting information for politico-administrative ones. That is, a primary distinction can be made between whether the communication activities are intended to serve as devices primarily oriented towards the manipulation of policy actors and policy processes (Saward 1992; Edelman 1988) or social and economic ones involved in the production of goods and services (Hornik 1989; Jahn et al. 2005): that is, between their procedural and substantive use (Howlett 2000).

Substantive instruments are used to alter some aspect of the production, distribution and delivery of goods and services in society, broadly conceived to include mundane goods and services (like school lunches) as well as a range of vices and virtues, ranging from crude vices (such as gambling or illicit drug use) to more common individual virtues (such as charitable giving or volunteer work with the physically challenged) to the attainment of sublime collective goals (like peace and security, sustainability and well-being). We can thus define substantive

Table 27.1 Examples of Policy Instruments, Classified by Principal Governing Resource Used

Nodality/Information	*Authority*	*Treasure*	*Organization*
Information collection and release	Command and control regulation	Grants and loans	Direct provision of goods and services and public enterprises
Advice and exhortation	Self-regulation	User charges	Use of family, community, and voluntary organizations
Advertising	Standard setting and delegated regulation	Taxes and tax expenditures	Market creation
Commissions and inquiries	Advisory committees and consultations	Interest group creation and funding	Government reorganization

Source: Hood (1986)

government communication policy instruments as those policy techniques or mechanisms which rely on the use of information to directly or indirectly affect the behaviour of those involved in the production, consumption and distribution of different kinds of goods and services in society.

Procedural tools, on the other hand, affect production, consumption and distribution processes only indirectly, instead affecting more directly the behaviour of actors involved in policymaking. These actors are arrayed in policy networks which are comprised of very simple arrangements of nodes (actors) and links (relationships) but can result in very complex structures and interaction patterns. Policy networks include sets of formal institutional and informal relational linkages between governmental and other policy actors which are typically structured around shared beliefs and interests in public policymaking and implementation. In order to pursue their preferred policy initiatives, governments must interact with other state and non-state actors who might possess diverging interests (Leik 1992). They use procedural communicative tools based on government information resources in order to attempt to alter the behaviour of policy network members involved in policy-making processes. They are only tangentially related to productive or consumptive behaviour, if at all.

Distinguishing Between the Use of Government Communication Instruments at Different Stages of the Policy and Production Processes

Making a distinction between procedural and substantive communication tools is a good first step in arriving at a reasonable taxonomy of such instruments which can inform empirical analysis and theory building. However, there is a second dimension which also requires elaboration: the stage of the production process or policy cycle upon which different communication tools focus (Howlett 2009). The different stages of the production process are well known and do not require further elaboration here. However the same cannot be said of the policy process. While different models of policy processes exist, historically, one of the most popular means for analyzing public policymaking has been to think of it as a set of interrelated stages through which policy issues and deliberations flow in a more or less sequential fashion from 'inputs' (problems) to 'outputs' (policies). The resulting sequence of stages is often referred to as the '*policy cycle*' (Jann and Wegrich 2007). In this model, *agenda-setting* refers to the process by which problems come to the attention of governments; *policy formulation* refers to how policy options are formulated within government; *decision-making* is the process by which governments adopt a particular course of action or non-action; *policy implementation* relates to how governments put policies into effect; and *policy evaluation* refers to the processes by which the results of policies are monitored by both state and societal actors, the outcome of which may be reconceptualization of policy problems and solutions.

Many studies of procedural information tool use, for example, focus on the role of government communications as part of the agenda-setting process in government (Mikenberg 2001; Sulitzeanu-Kenan 2007) or on its role in policy implementation (Salmon 1989a, 1989b). In the case of production processes, the focus has also been upon specific stages of production processes, such as the effort to affect consumption activities and actors or those involved in productive or distributive activities. These are all quite different roles, however, and they also should be carefully distinguished from each other in order to understand the links that exist between government communication strategies and activities and policy outcomes such as accountability and policy efficacy.

In general, substantive communication tools can be focused primarily either at the 'front end' or production stage of the provision of goods and services or at the 'back end' or consumption

and distribution stages. Similarly, procedural tools can also be focused on different stages of the policy process, as depicted in Table 27.2.

Government communications typically do not affect decision-making per se, but they are directed at all other stages of the policy process.

The Four Basic Types of Government Communication Tools

This discussion suggests that government communications tools can be thought of as falling into four general types (see Table 27.3). As Hood (1986) noted, all policy tools can be targeted at different levels of society. In the case of information-based tools, Adler and Pittle (1984) have suggested a division along the lines of targeting individuals, groups and populations as a whole.

The most high-profile and thus most commonly observed and chronicled type of tool is the substantive, back-end tool focused on the effort to alter consumer behaviour: the government information campaign. This includes various campaigns waged by governments to encourage

Table 27.2 Five Stages of the Policy Cycle and Their Relationship to Applied Problem Solving

Applied Problem Solving	*Stages in Policy Cycle*
1. Problem Recognition	1. Agenda-Setting
2. Proposal of Solution	2. Policy Formulation
3. Choice of Solution	3. Decision-Making
4. Putting Solution into Effect	4. Policy Implementation
5. Monitoring Results	5. Policy Evaluation

Table 27.3 Four Categories of Government Communicative Tools

		Policy Purpose	
		Substantive	*Procedural*
Stage of Policy Cycle/ Production Process Primarily Targeted	Front end (agenda-setting and policy formulation/ goods and service production)	Notification instruments/ moral suasion (e.g., consumer product labelling, prospectus disclosure laws, government e-health and e-government portals, appeals to producers with or without the threat of regulation)	General information disclosure or prevention (e.g., freedom of information and privacy laws, performance measures, censorship)
	Back-end (policy implementation and policy evaluation/goods and service distribution and consumption)	Exhortation and information campaigns (e.g., moral suasion and government advertising)	Data collection and release (e.g., censuses, compulsory reporting, press releases, media relations, government websites)

citizens to, for example, eat well, engage in fewer vices and otherwise behave responsibly. However, 'front-end' communication activities aimed at altering producer behaviour through provision of product and process information to customers ('product information') are also very prominent. Most product-related labelling and other such activities fall into this category, as do most government e-services which are designed to encourage producers to be better aware of laws and regulations or to produce particular types of goods and services and not others.

The most commonly observed and chronicled category of procedural tool is the front-end procedural category which focuses on the use of general information prevention or disclosure laws and other tools – such as access to information laws – in order to provide policy network actors with the knowledge required to effectively filter and focus their demands on government for new policy measures or reforms to older ones. However, governments are also very much involved in the use of communications to promote efficient policy implementation and positive policy evaluations, through the use of data collection and release tools such as media releases, data collection, surveys and, increasingly, government websites (Gandy 1982; Hood and Margetts 2007) to provide additional information to policy network members in specific sectoral or issue areas.

Each of these four general categories of communications tools is discussed next and some examples of their use in Canada provided.

Substantive Producer-Directed Tools: Notification Instruments and 'Moral Suasion'

Adler and Pittle (1984) describe this tool as 'notification instruments' which

> convey factual information to the intelligent target. Implicit in the notification approach is the belief that the target, once apprised of the facts, will make the appropriate decision.

Some notification tools attempt to be purely factual, ongoing and passive in nature, such as nutritional labelling on foodstuffs or health warnings on cigarettes (Padberg 1992; Baksi and Bose 2007). They are usually enacted in regulations (i.e., disclosure is mandatory) and are aimed at providing information to consumers allowing them make better decisions or overcome information asymmetries (Jahn et al. 2005) between producers and consumers, with the expectation that they will change their behaviour in some way consistent with government goals – for example, reducing smoking or eating nutritional foods. All these activities are intended to have an effect on producers and production decisions: for example, manufacturing fewer tobacco products or producing healthier foods.

Similarly Stanbury and Fulton (1984) describe 'moral suasion' as a more direct plea from governments to producers 'whereby voluntary action is urged under threat of coercion if refused'. Many countries administer important aspects of their financial systems in this fashion: for example, asking banks, taxpayers and other financial institutions to act in a certain way (e.g., keep interest rates low or allow certain groups to borrow funds) with the implicit or explicit threat of direct government regulation if requests are ignored or go unfulfilled (Bardach 1989).

Substantive Consumer-Directed Tools: Exhortation and Persuasion Instruments

Adler and Pittle (1984) provide a definition of substantive, information-based, 'back-end' tools directed at consumers as 'persuasion instruments' which entail 'persuasion schemes [which]

convey messages which may or may not contain factual information which overtly seek to motivate target audiences to modify their behaviour' (Adler and Pittle 1984).

These are probably the best-known government communication tools. The most prominent type is the appeal from political leaders to various social actors, urging them to follow a government's lead in some area of social or economic life (Cobb and Elder 1972). Stanbury and Fulton (1984) describe 'exhortation' as 'pure political leadership such as appeals for calm, better behaviour, and high principles'.

Mass media and targeted information campaigns are also highly visible examples of tools in this category by definition and tend to be aimed less at producers than at consumers. Some of these information campaigns are more active and less factual but have the same intent: that is, providing social actors with more information about aspects of their behaviour and its advantageous or deleterious quality, urging enhancement of the former and a diminishment of the latter. Such campaigns are often conducted at the mass level and use a variety of mass-media delivery mechanisms (commercials, broadcasts, newspaper advertisements and the like). High-profile campaigns in many countries to prevent drinking and driving or encourage the purchase of victory bonds during wartime are good examples of this kind of instrument.

Mass campaigns began with the emergence of mass media and are now common in most countries. The information often transmitted through information instruments is not always so factual, however, but can be used to 'sell' a government's policies in the same way that other products are marketed. Many national governments are now the largest purchasers of advertising in their countries and far outstrip national brands well known for their advertising overkill, such as alcoholic beverage and soft drink companies, as well as fast food chains.

The federal government of Canada, for example, has been the largest advertiser in country since 1976 (Stanbury et al. 1983), with the larger provincial governments in the top ten as well. Ryan (1995) noted that federal advertising expanded from $3.4 million in 1968 to $106.5M in 1992, a 3000% increase. Even inflation adjusted, this amounted to a 665% increase in 25 years.

Specific national issue campaigns can be very costly. Alasdair Roberts and Jonathan Rose (1995), for example, conducted an in-depth study of a mass media campaign conducted by the federal government of Canada to introduce a new goods and services tax in 1989–1990. They found the federal Department of Finance to have spent $11.6 million on public education in a combined print/radio/TV campaign, $5 million on direct mail materials and $5 million on a call centre; Revenue Canada (Customs) to have spent $10.6 million on advertising and $9.2 million on instructional material; and Revenue Canada (taxation) to have spent a further $28 million advertising a GST credit while a specially created GST Consumer Info Office spent $7.4 million on advertising and $6.9 million on production, The total for this one campaign was $85 million. This was more than the largest private sector advertisers spent in all of 1989. For example, Proctor and Gamble, with its hundreds of consumer products, had a total advertising budget of $56.7 million.

Procedural Tools Affecting Agenda-Setting and Policy Formulation: General Information Disclosure and Concealment

Stanbury and Fulton (1984) describe common 'front-end' procedural policy tools as monitoring and information disclosure instruments (for example, environmental audits, ombudsmen, prices and incomes commissions, as well as freedom of information and privacy laws). All these tools can involve information bans or release prevention as well as information disclosure; they can be general or specific in nature, can be focused on individuals or the public and can be mandatory or optional in nature.

Freedom of information legislation allows access to individual's own records and those of others with numerous exemptions – again many benign (to protect other individuals from unnecessary disclosure) – and access to information, allowing access to documents and records of others with numerous exemptions – again, many benign (to protect individuals from unnecessary disclosure, privacy rights). These legislative arrangements were a feature of the Scandinavian system of ombudsmen for administrative control and were introduced in many countries in the 1970s and 1980s (Relyea 1977; Bennett 1988, 1990, 1991, 1992; Bennett and Raab 2003; Bennett and Bayley 1999; Howe and Johnson 2000). Whistleblower acts are an extreme example of the use of communication tools focused at the individual level. They are bills intended to protect people who speak out about problems in the government's bureaucracy. Through such legislation, bureaucrats are often offered legal protection against reprisals for reporting government wrongdoing.

There is also a wide range of these tools designed to protect certain kinds of information on government activities or in government files from entering the public realm or to suppress certain knowledge or information considered undesirable. These include protecting not only information collected by governments but also that which comes into their possession (for example, from foreign government or via documents filed in court cases etc.). These range from wartime (and peacetime – e.g., the Ontario Film Censors Board) censorship and bans on political parties and speech (e.g., hate crimes legislation etc.) to Official Secrets Acts (as in the UK), with various levels of confidentiality and penalties imposed for publicizing or releasing government secrets.

Censorship has occurred in many countries during wartime but also in peacetime (e.g., film and theatre censorship). This latter use has been slowly whittled away as individual rights in democratic states have been ruled to trump government or collective ones (Qualter 1985). However, Official Secrets Acts are the most important statute relating to national security in many countries and are designed to prohibit and control access to and disclosure of sensitive government information (Pasquier and Villeneuve 2007). Offences tends to cover espionage and leakage of government information. The meaning of the term *official secrets* varies dramatically from country to country but broadly allows governments to classify documents and prohibit release of different categories for sometimes very long periods of time (e.g., 50 to 75 years).

Procedural Tools for Policy Implementation and Evaluation: Data Collection and Release

Stanbury and Fulton (1984) also discuss several tools in which affected parties are given information on government plans, like public hearings or the discreet use of confidential information such as planned leaks to press or planned public disclosure of government intentions as well as government media relations and communications strategies intended to legitimize government actions and pre-empt criticism and dissent.

Some of these tools are used to generate information, such as inquiries, surveys and polling. Government information requests can be very focused and can be quite secretive (for example, in the immediate aftermath of the 9/11 airline hijackings, when the US government urged credit card companies to provide records of suspicious activities by suspected hijackers). Benchmarking and performance indicators are more visible but similar tools involving the use and publication of indicators of government and non-governmental performance designed to collect and release information on specified activities of organizations against set written standards (Benjamin 2008; Sharma and Wanna 2005). Of course, there are problems in both the private and the public sector in terms of agreeing what to measure and how to do so (for example, whether to measure inputs or outputs) which have limited their spread (Papaioannou and Bassant 2006; Johnsen

2005; Adcroft and Willis 2005; de Lancer and Holzer 2001; Van Dooren 2004; Cohen and Santhakumar 2007). Many recent government efforts at e-communications (websites, mail lists, wikis, Twitter and the like) also fall into this category.

Tools in this category can also be used to prevent specific types of information from circulating. Privacy acts, for example, exist in many jurisdictions as a counterpoint to access to information laws in which specified information is excluded from such acts. Some jurisdictions have specific legislation devoted to this subject, usually with a focus on protecting personal information in areas such as health, financial and tax matters and with respect to criminal proceedings.

Conclusion: General Comments and Patterns of Use

As has been set out in this chapter, there are many different kinds of government communication activities, and the lack of an effective taxonomy or framework for their analysis has made generalizing about their impact and patterns of use quite difficult. Conceiving of such activities as information-based policy tools helps highlight the similarities and differences between different instruments and helps develop a relatively parsimonious taxonomy of their major types, which can facilitate national and cross-national studies of their use and impact.

Distinguishing between information tools that are procedural and substantive in nature is a first step in the development of this taxonomy. The second step is to distinguish between those procedural and substantive instruments that focus on the front-end of policy and production processes and those which focus on the back-end. Taken together, these two criteria reveal four distinct types of communication instruments: product information, consumer information campaigns, general disclosure tools and data collection and release tools.

Classifying communications instruments in this way is the first step towards the development of empirical assessments of the rationale for their use and uncovering any patterns of their employment, both spatially (cross-nationally) and temporally (historically). Hypotheses suggested in the literature, for example, include the arguments that information instruments will tend to be used only in situations in which:

1. 100% compliance is not required for a policy to be effective.
2. Government and public interests coincide (e.g., on health awareness) so that government appeals are likely to be favourably received.
3 The crisis situation is relatively short-term (Rose 1993), when other tools may require too much lead time to be effective.
4. It is otherwise difficult to impose sanctions.
5. The issue in question is not very complex (technological or legal) in nature but can be reduced to the level of advertising slogans (Romans 1966; Vedung and van der Doelen 1998).

References

Adcroft, A. and R. Willis (2005). "The (Un)Intended Outcome of Public Sector Performance Measurement." *International Journal of Public Sector Management* 18, no. 5: 386–400.

Adler, R. S. and R. D. Pittle (1984). "Cajolry or Command: Are Education Campaigns an Adequate Substitute for Regulation?" *Yale Journal on Regulation* 1(2): 159–193.

Anderson, C. W. (1977). *Statecraft: An Introduction to Political Choice and Judgement*. New York: John Wiley and Sons.

Baksi, S. and P. Bose (2007). "Credence Goods, Efficient Labeling Policies, and Regulatory Enforcement." *Environmental and Resource Economics* 37: 411–430.

Bang, H. P. (2003). *Governance as Social and Political Communication*. Manchester: Manchester University Press.

Bardach, E. (1989). "Moral Suasion and Taxpayer Compliance." *Law and Policy* 11(1): 49–69.

Benjamin, Lehn M. (2008). "Bearing More Risk for Results: Performance Accountability and Nonprofit Relational Work." *Administration and Society* 39, no. 8: 959–983.

Bennett, C. J. (1988). "Different Processes, One Result: The Convergence of Data Protection Policy in Europe and the United States." *Governance* 4(1): 415–441.

Bennett, C. J. (1990). "The Formation of a Canadian Privacy Policy: The Art and Craft of Lesson-Drawing." *Canadian Public Administration* 33(4): 551–570.

Bennett, C. J. (1991). "How States Utilize Foreign Evidence." *Journal of Public Policy* 11(1): 31–54.

Bennett, C. J. (1992). *Regulating Privacy: Data Protection and Public Policy in Europe and the United States*. Ithaca, NY: Cornell University Press.

Bennett, C. J. and R. Bayley (1999). "The New Public Administration: Canadian Approaches to Access and Privacy." In M. W. Westmacott and H. P. Mellon, eds., *Public Administration and Policy: Governing in Challenging Times*. Scarborough: Prentice Hall Allyn and Bacon, 189–201.

Bennett, C. J. and C. D. Raab (2003). *The Governance of Privacy: Policy Instruments in Global Perspective*. Aldershot: Ashgate.

Cobb, Roger W. and Charles D. Elder (1972). *Participation in American Politics: The Dynamics of Agenda-Building*. Boston: Allyn and Bacon.

Cohen, Mark A. and V. Santhakumar (2007). "Information Disclosure as Environmental Regulation: A Theoretical Analysis." *Environmental and Resource Economics* 37: 599–620.

de Lancer Julnes, P., and M. Holzer (2001). "Promoting the Utilization of Performance Measures in Public Organizations: An Empirical Study of Factors Affecting Adoption and Implementation." *Public Administration Review* 61, no. 6: 693–708.

Deutsch, K. W. (1963). *The Nerves of Government: Models of Political Communication and Control*. New York: Free Press.

Edelman, Murray J. (1988). *Constructing the Political Spectacle*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 12–13.

Feldman, M. S. and A. M. Khademian (2007). "The Role of the Public Manager in Inclusion: Creating Communities of Participation." *Governance* 20, no. 2: 305–324.

Firestone, O. J. (1970). *The Public Persuader: Government Advertising*. Toronto: Methuen.

Gandy, O. H. (1982). *Beyond Agenda Setting: Information Subsidies and Public Policy*. Norwood: Ablex.

Hood, C. (1983). "Using Bureaucracy Sparingly." *Public Administration* 61, no. 2: 197–208.

Hood, C. (1986). *The Tools of Government*. Chatham: Chatham House Publishers.

Hood, C. and H. Margetts (2007). *The Tools of Government in the Digital Age*. Basingstoke: Palgrave Macmillan.

Hornik, R. (1989). "The Knowledge-Behavior Gap in Public Information Campaigns." In C. Salmon, ed., *Information Campaigns: Managing the Process of Social Change*. Newberry Park: Sage.

Howe, R. B. and D. Johnson (2000). *Restraining Equality: Human Rights Commissions in Canada*. Toronto: University of Toronto Press.

Howlett, Michael (2000). "Managing the 'Hollow State': Procedural Policy Instruments and Modern Governance." *Canadian Public Administration* 43(4): 412–431.

Howlett, Michael (2009, forthcoming). "Governance Modes, Policy Regimes and Operational Plans: A Multi-Level Nested Model of Policy Instrument Choice and Policy Design." *Policy Sciences*.

Jahn, G., M. Schramm, and A. Spiller (2005). "The Reliability of Certification: Quality Labels as a Consumer Policy Tool." *Journal of Consumer Policy* 28: 53–73.

Jann, W. and K. Wegrich (2007). "Theories of the Policy Cycle." In F. Fischer, G. J. Miller and M. S. Sidney, eds., *Handbook of Public Policy Analysis: Theory, Politics and Methods*. Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press, 43–62.

Johnsen, A. (2005). "What Does 25 Years of Experience Tell Us about the State of Performance Measurement in Public Policy and Management?" *Public Money & Management* 25, no. 1: 9–17.

Ledingham, J. A. (2003). "Explicating Relationship Management as a General Theory of Public Relations." *Journal of Public Relations Research* 15, no. 2: 181–198.

Mikenberg, M. (2001). "The Radical Right in Public Office: Agenda-Setting and Policy Effects." *West European Politics* 24, no. 4: 1–21.

Padberg, D. I. (1992). "Nutritional Labeling as a Policy Instrument." *American Journal of Agricultural Economics* 74, no. 5: 1208–1213.

Papaioannou, H. Rush, and J. Bassant (2006). "Performance Management: Benchmarking as a Policy-Making Tool: From the Private to the Public Sector." *Science and Public Policy* 33, no. 2: 91–102.

Pasquier, M. and J.-P. Villeneuve (2007). "Organizational Barriers to Transparency: A Typology and Analysis of Organizational Behaviour Tending to Prevent of Restrict Access to Information." *International Review of Administrative Sciences* 73, no. 1: 147–162.

Qualter, T. H. (1985). *Opinion Control in the Democracies*. London: Macmillan.

Relyea, H. C. (1977). "The Provision of Government Information: The Freedom of Information Act Experience." *Canadian Public Administration* 20, no. 2: 317–341.

Roberts, A. and J. Rose (1995). "Selling the Goods and Services Tax: Government Advertising and Public Discourse in Canada." *Canadian Journal of Political Science* 28, no. 2: 311–330.

Romans, J. T. (1966). "Moral Suasion as an Instrument of Economic Policy." *The American Economic Review* 56, no. 5: 1220–1226.

Rose, J. (1993). "Government Advertising in a Crisis: The Quebec Referendum Precedent." *Canadian Journal of Communication* 18: 173–196.

Ryan, P. (1995). "Miniature Mila and Flying Geese: Government Advertising and Canadian Democracy." In S. D. Phillips, ed., *How Ottawa Spends 1995–96: Mid-Life Crises*. Ottawa: Carleton University Press, 263–286.

Salmon, C. (1989a). "Campaigns for Social Improvement: An Overview of Values, Rationales, and Impacts." In C. Salmon, ed., *Information Campaigns: Managing the Process of Social Change*. Newberry Park: Sage, 1–32.

Salmon, C. (1989b). *Information Campaigns: Managing the Process of Social Change*. Newberry Park: Sage.

Saward, M. (1992). *Co-Optive Politics and State Legitimacy*. Aldershot: Dartmouth.

Sharma, Bishnu and John Wanna (2005). "Performance Measures, Measurement and Reporting in Government Organisations." *International Journal of Business Performance Management* 7, no. 3: 320–333.

Stanbury, W. T. and J. Fulton (1984). "Suasion as a Governing Instrument." In A. Maslove, ed., *How Ottawa Spends 1984: The New Agenda*. Toronto: Lorimer, 282–324.

Stanbury, W. T., G. J. Gorn, et al. (1983). "Federal Advertising Expenditures." In G. B. Doern, ed., *How Ottawa Spends: The Liberals, the Opposition and Federal Priorities*. Toronto: James Lorimer and Company, 133–172.

Sulitzeanu-Kenan, Raanan (2007). "Scything the Grass: Agenda-Setting Consequences of Appointing Public Inquiries in the UK: A Longitudinal Analysis." *Policy & Politics* 35, no. 4: 629–650.

van Dooren, W. (2004). "Supply and Demand of Policy Indicators: A Cross-Sectoral Comparison." *Public Management Review* 6, no. 4: 511–530.

Vedung, E. and F. C. J. van der Doelen (1998). "The Sermon: Information Programs in the Public Policy Process – Choice, Effects and Evaluation." In M. L. Bemelmans-Videc and R. C. Rist, eds., *Carrots, Sticks and Sermons: Policy Instruments and Their Evaluation*. New Brunswick, NJ: Transaction Publishers, 103–128.

Young, Sally (2007). "The Regulation of Government Advertising in Australia: The Politicisation of a Public Policy Issue." *The Australian Journal of Public Administration* 66, no. 4: 438–452.

28

NON-STATE MARKET-DRIVEN TOOLS

Capacity Challenges in Non-State Governance Contexts

Benjamin Cashore

After a quarter century of design tinkering and impacts, students and practitioners of "non-state market-driven" NSMD policy tools face two related empirical conundrums: first, most of the problems for which they were offered as more effective and efficient tools have become more, not less, acute, and second, these tools continue to proliferate among global and private governance arenas. We argue that reversing course requires three related steps. First, NSMD policy tools must be designed based on the features of a specific problem at hand. This requires both an understanding of the features of the problem – be it climate or species loss – and interrogation of expected inverse effects on other problems. Second, careful assessment of the way in which these tools have been used as a political devise to change problem definitions or minimize regulatory constraints must be incorporated into the design. This requires incorporating analytical capacity more consciously into the design, rather than relying solely on policy and management capacity that may miss these dynamics. Third, policy designers must focus not only on evolutionary pathways through which NSMD tools might be designed to travel but also on their ability to indirectly diffuse to improve the effects of public policy processes.

Introduction: Non-State Market-Based (NSMB) Policy Tools

Non-state market-based tools are third-party certification tools which emerged a generation ago to address particular policy problems, such as deforestation, fisheries depletion, land degradation, and climate emissions. These tools create a set of standards or criteria for product or production processes – such as to sustainably harvest aquaculture or mariculture products or not to harvest old-growth timber – and a third-party organization which issues a certificate or stamp of approval to particular products or producers for adhering to these standards. These certificates can then be important determinants of further supply-chain issues, such as when a hardware or grocery store agrees only to stock and sell certified timber or salmon, as the case may be.

The origins of the first full-fledged NSMD governance system can be traced to the concerns of stakeholders around global forest degradation in the 1980s. Environmental groups, social activists, and even likeminded businesses were frustrated with the array of governmental,

 DOI: 10.4324/9781003163954-34

intergovernmental, and non-governmental initiatives that were designed to address deforestation and degradation and promote sustainable forest management. Environmental groups were concerned that the International Tropical Timber Organization's (ITTO) approach to promoting forest management practices and trade in the tropics (Dauvergne 2001; Gale 1998) simply created a "logging charter" and were disappointed that the 1992 Rio Earth Summit (UNCED) (Bernstein and Cashore 2004; Humphreys 1996) failed to achieve a binding global forest convention. While many saw potential in tropical timber boycott campaigns, there was a recognition that these were short lived and blunt and often fostered conversion to less scrutinized crops.

The Forest Stewardship Council's (FSC) solution was to develop a broad mission to improve the management of the world's forests (Synnott 2005), which would house and simultaneously promote a range of social and environmental objectives. As a result, the broad coalition of environmental groups, social activists, and business supporting FSC championed different issues, including tropical forest loss and degradation, indigenous and forest dwellers' rights, and sustainable forest management generally (Rametsteiner and Simula 2003; Siry, Cubbage and Ahmed 2005). FSC's governance arrangements soon adopted a tripartite model that established three evenly weighted voting chambers: social, economic interests, and environmental. Votes in each chamber are weighted evenly between developing and developed countries. FSC mandates the establishment of national or regional initiatives, which are charged with drafting locally appropriate standards consistent with FSC's global Principles and Criteria (P&C).

The FSC approach sparked a myriad of non-state market-driven certification programs designed to address a range of problems from fisheries depletion to climate emissions, mining impacts, agriculture, coffee, and tourism (Auld 2014; Auld, Balboa, Bartley et al. 2006; Auld, Balboa, Bernstein et al. 2009; Auld and Cashore 2012a, 2012b; Auld, Renckens and Cashore 2015; Bozzi, Cashore, levin et al. 2012; Kanie, Haas, Andresen et al. 2013; see also Vince, Chapter 8 in this volume). Cashore (2002a) identified (Table 28.1) five key features of NSMD certification systems that have been modified over the last two decades by Cashore, Auld and Newsom (2004a), Bernstein and Cashore (2007a), and Auld and Cashore (2012a).

This review highlights that the most significant capacity challenges for realizing their problem-solving potential is the ability to reflect on and theorize about forward-thinking strategies and collaborations. Such a reorientation, as Bernstein et al. (2000) argued over a decade ago, challenges most empirical social science focused on explaining empirically measurable

Table 28.1 NSMD Governance: Key Features

National/Global Dimensions	Policy standards (settings/specifications) must be consistent with global criteria (objectives) and principles (goals)
Collaborative Governance	Government actors excluded (deemed ineffective as governing arena)
	Business limited (must share equally with environmental and social interests)
Practice: Rules	Emphasis on clear "on the ground" prescriptive requirements about specified problems
Practice: Policy Scope	Tend to be broad
	Labor
	Indigenous rights
	Wide-ranging environmental impact
Authority:	Emergence phase: consequentialist (market incentives for those being certified)
	Entrenchment phase: appropriateness (political legitimacy)

Source: Adapted from Cashore (2002a) and Auld and Cashore (2012a, 2012b)

phenomena that have already occurred to also focus on theorizing about the contingent empirical pathways on which we are embarked and through which strategic interventions shape and influence pathways.

Capacity Challenges in NSMD Tool Use

NSMD tools are a form of "co-production" in which producers, wholesalers, retailers, and others work together with certifiers to create, monitor, and enforce standards. Although often built on the threat of further government regulation, they are "non-state" in the sense that rules and standards are generally not codified in law – although they may be referenced by them – and public officials also generally are not involved in enforcement activity related to them. However, it is certainly the case that governments can promote or discourage the creation of NSMD-type certification regimes, sometimes successfully and sometimes not.

Just as with more traditional state-based policy tools, NSMD do require certain competences and capabilities on the part of companies and third-party certifiers if they are to survive and/or work effectively, but also require competent and capable public officials if they are to remain legitimate and "authoritative" and, for example, are not to be replaced by more traditions forms of state-based standards and sanctions.

Capacity Challenges in Policymaking

One of the most important issues for students of public policy and management in the global era is to identify critical capacity gaps through which government officials might foster collaborative processes that help uncover complex instrument mixes for furthering, rather than exacerbating, identified policy goals. Drawing on Howlett and Ramesh (2016), three overall capacity requirements can be identified which are generally relevant to collaborative policymaking, the importance of which varies across different kinds of collaborative arrangements.

Political acumen capacity refers to individuals who are aware that a "keen nose for politics not only within an organization but also the broader environment is essential for policy actors to be able to play an effective role in the policy process" (Howlett and Ramesh 2016: 306). This requires individual policy actors to develop a sound "understanding of the key stakeholders, their key interests, and their strategies and resources" (ibid.).

Policy analytical capacity focuses on the "skills [policy actors] possess for diagnosing problems and developing appropriate strategies for addressing them," including the ability to (1) "acquire and use internal and external knowledge"; (2) "access and apply technical and scientific knowledge and analytical techniques"; and 3) "absorb and process information or evidence in recognizing, formulating, deciding, implementing, and evaluating policy" (Howlett and Ramesh 2016: 305).

Managerial expertise capacity emphasizes "the ability to perform key managerial functions – such as planning, staffing, budgeting, and directing." These technical skills are given much attention in management curricula and include "communication skills; leadership; teamwork; budgeting and financial management; decision making and problem solving; and ethics and integrity" (ibid.). Howlett and Ramesh emphasize leadership skills, as "especially critical if groups are to assume new challenges and devise new strategies for meeting them" as well as those involving "budgeting, accounting, and human resource management" (ibid.).

These capacity challenges are key for realizing the potential of a range of collaborative governance approaches including consultative in-house delivery, contracting out, commissioning, co-management, and co-production, each of which has its own "Achilles heel" capacity challenge. (See Kekez et al. 2020. See also Howlett and Ramesh 2016).

Arguably, however, no public collaborative mode requires more careful attention to these capacity deficits and pathways through which collaborative governance mechanisms must navigate than do multi-stakeholder certification systems.

This is because, as modes of non-state market-driven (NSMD) governance, policy actors are presented with an additional hurdle from other collaborative forms: i.e., how to help build, rather than maintain, legitimacy and authority to govern (which requires political acumen capacity) and, related, an ability to assess what types of problems and associated historical processes are best addressed and unleashed through NSMD governance (which requires both political acumen and policy analytical capacity).

These skills are important because, as we show next, they permit government officials to develop strategies that can help institutionalize legitimacy and authority which, once achieved, will change impacts and problem-solving potential of the instrument or mix in question. Traveling such pathways requires that government officials undertake deliberate theoretical and conceptual thinking in which a number of possible futures are envisioned, rather than relying solely on backward-looking evidence that biases analysts to (often poorly conceived) experiments "already run".

This is important since, as we review here, application of political acumen and policy analytical capacity reveals not one, but four "problem-solving" pathways (Cashore 2016; Cashore, Matas and others 2012) through which certification systems might have influence. We argue that while the ability of government officials to travel any one of the four pathways requires political acumen and policy analytical capabilities, specific types of managerial capacities will vary somewhat depending on which pathway is chosen.

Recognition of this leads us to modify Howlett and Ramesh's (2016) "Achilles heel" argument by positing a hierarchical pecking order through which the three policy capacities must be applied if NSMD certification as collaborative governance is to realize its potential. Political acumen must be first exercised; policy analytic must be second; and managerial, while fundamental, must be applied subsequently. While this order is plausible based on historical evidence, we argue that the vast majority of skills held by government officials and non-governmental organizations seeking certification systems are not consistent with this pecking order. That is, managerial capacity has been prioritized, which has undermined the analysis of historical trajectories and much more complex arrangements, through which government officials can help nurture and navigate certification systems. This, in turn, has at times led government and NSMD officials to overly rely on them to address too many public policy challenges which has, ironically, led to them underperforming (van der Ven and Cashore 2018). While lessons from this review can be applied to organizational and system levels (Howlett and Ramesh 2016: 304), we focus our attention on the types of political, policy, and managerial capacities and capabilities required of individual government officials.

We elaborate these arguments in the following steps. First, we earlier identified the key features of global certification systems that structure how collaborative governance pathways are to be discovered and collectively traveled. Second, we review how political acumen and policy analytic capacity are key for government officials if they are to uncover and influence not one, but four potential pathways though which influence on public problem solving might occur. Third, we review the managerial capacities that government officials would need from the application of these higher-level capacity challenges, revealing how some are required regardless of the pathway, while others are unique to specific ones. We conclude by reflecting on how to fill and prioritize political and policy capacities gaps such that government managers can help nurture, rather than undermine, potential problem-solving pathways. For clarity, we focus our collaborative certification example on efforts to regulate forestry as the most advanced case of NSMD globally.

Direct and Indirect Evolutionary Pathways: Political Acumen and Policy Analytic Capacities

The first task facing government officials who seek to draw on collaborative governance to address problems, usually the domain of government actors, is to identify how to improve support in the marketplace for certification systems – be it in the form of consumer "willingness to pay" to decisions by firms along global value chains, often owing to NGO targeting campaigns – to reward and provide benefits to producers who agree to abide by the private regulations. Such exercises require a high degree of political acumen capacity because officials must be able to assess the broader context in which certification as collaborative governance has emerged. This includes an ability to understand the historical role of different stakeholders, power dynamics, and problem definitions they seek to nurture, from environmental challenges such as endangered species and biodiversity conservation to the economic role of forests for improving the plight of impoverished peoples. Political acumen capacity is also key for understanding not just geo-politics, but the contribution of different explanatory frameworks for observed support and opposition as they are key for identifying future courses of action (Bernstein, Lebow, Stein et al. 2000), including triggering shifts in motivations over time.

At the same time, policy analytic capacity is fundamental since collaborative certification systems do not just build new global institutions governing through the marketplace; they also attempt to address specified problems that expand on traditional regulatory approaches (Auld 2014) (Auld, Balboa, Bernstein et al. 2009; Auld, Cashore and Renckens 2014) by assessing how standards might nurture, rather than straightjacket (Greening and Gray 1994), collaborative governance potential. Policy analytic capacity is also required for reflecting on how technical/managerial decisions can be linked to, rather than undermine, the broader project of building legitimacy and authority (Auld, Cashore, Balboa et al. 2010) (see Table 28.2).

Looking over 25 years of research and practice, the role of political acumen and policy analytic capacity was fundamental in uncovering pathways in which norms and preferences changed in response to strategic interventions. These capacities were key in conceptualizing not one, but four evolutionary pathways through which impact might occur. Where these capacities were absent, government officials and strategists often undertook well-intended efforts that stymied their potential. Hence, policy actors capable of intervening and reflecting on future impacts tend to have the political acumen capacity that comes from training in historical institutionalism (Thelen 2003) and comparative historical sociology (Mahoney 2008) in ways that complement, rather than being subordinated by, those fields that emphasize backward-looking

Table 28.2 Individual Policy Capacity Requirements for Identifying and Traveling Causal Pathways: Cross Cutting

Type	*Training*
Political Acumen	Sophisticated social science training in international relations, economics, sociology, organizational and institutional analysis that emphasizes norm change, historical trajectories, and transformative triggers
Policy Analytical	Domestic, comparative, and international policy process, policy sciences, stakeholder coalition building including role of policy learning mechanisms, internal and external perturbations
Managerial	Excellent communications, budgeting, leadership and team building skills, cost benefit analysis

'evidence-based' (Sanderson 2002) and 'data-driven' analysis that, taken in isolation, ironically reinforced the priority of managerial capacity.

Direct Pathway

The direct pathway is the one that the vast majority of scholarly and practitioner work on NSMD political acumen and policy analytic attention has been placed. Scholars who emphasize an evolutionary approach, including my own collaborative work, have posited that if NSMD systems gain authority to directly create policy to which most businesses adhere, strategists must confront a conundrum inherent in the design of the system: the higher the standards initially, the lower the support, and only modest impacts could be expected; conversely, the lower the standards, the higher the support, but only modest impacts would accrue (Cashore, Auld, Bernstein et al. 2007a) (see Table 28.3).

In other words, practitioners with these types of capacity skills have spent a great deal of time, as have researchers, on identifying these 'causal influence logics' that might help foster coherent choices by businesses, environmental groups, and social activists – and even governments – and might, through nurturing collaborative governance arrangements, ultimately achieve "high support, high standards and high impacts" (Bernstein and Cashore 2007a).

The strategic implications that emerge from the application of policy analytic capacity are profound: supporters must develop certification standards that are high enough to be meaningful for addressing an "on the ground challenge", but at a level that rewards existing "top producers", who are often practicing at a high level owing to government regulations. Application of this lens has practical significance in understanding historical efforts that both applied and did not apply these policy acumen insights.

For example, a generation ago, well-intended environmental activists worked to increase FSC standards in British Columbia, Canada (Cashore, Auld and Newsom 2004b), following widespread interest on the part of most industrial players to support FSC. However, these activists failed to analyze carefully why firms were supporting FSC – which was largely owing to increases in government-initiated regulations. Therefore, the change logic was that not support for the FSC would enhance domestic forest practices in highly regulated jurisdictions, but rather, in drawing on support from firms operating in these settings, greater market signals might be generated to target the behavior of firms operating in less regulated jurisdictions.

However, lack of capacity to apply this type of thinking resulted in most BC firms vacating their original support and turning to the much less prescriptive industry standard. Similar results also occurred in the Canadian Maritimes (Cashore and Lawson 2003) and Finland (Cashore, Egan, Auld et al. 2007) FSC standard-setting processes. Following these institutional and policy failures, FSC and its supporters began to fill political acumen and policy analytical capacity gaps, which led to strategies to foster standard-setting processes elsewhere in Canada in the boreal

Table 28.3 The Dilemma of High and Low Certification Requirements, Time 1

	Requirements of Certification Systems	
	High	*Low*
Level of Firm Support	Low	High
Impacts on Sustainability	Low	Low

Source: Cashore, Auld, Bernstein et al. (2007b)

Table 28.4 NSMD Direct Pathway

Causal Influence Logic	*Strategic Implications*
Must achieve strong support among purchasers along transnational supply chains	Strategists must gain support from most producers to be effective Standards should be set to reward, not punish, firms that are already highly regulated Increases in standards must follow, not precede, enhanced market uptake

forests (Auld 2006), more consistent with the governmental regulation "as spark" trajectory. During these unfolding historical processes, public managers with policy and analytic capacity were best positioned to nurture collaborative certification systems that fostered public agendas. For instance, those seeking to draw on certification to foster domestic sustainable forest management goals could envision the efficiency and international credibility gains for supporting these efforts, such as certification-friendly procurement policies, to providing resources for fostering collaborative certification dialogues (Cashore 2002b: 510), rather than viewing them solely as a threat to state sovereignty.

Application of this type of political and policy acumen capacity led a number of scholars and practitioners to reflect on the ways in which collaborative governance that includes highly different motivations among business, environmental and social activists, might shift eventually toward collective norms about the appropriateness of the institutional arena (Bernstein and Cashore 2007a). These efforts have taken up by integrating Bernstein and Cashore's work on international pathways with a focus on policy learning regarding strategy and institutional formation (Cashore, Leipold, Cerutti et al. 2016; Cashore, Visseren-Hamakers, Torres et al. 2016; Humphreys, Cashore, Visseren-Hamakers et al. 2017) (see Table 28.4).

For all these reasons, it is clear that if government officials are to draw on and help nurture collaborative certification governance to address public policy problems, they need political acumen skills that emerge from training in political science, sociology, anthropology, history, or related disciplines that emphasized deep conceptual and theoretical analytical skills on questions of power, legitimacy, authority, and political legitimacy. Likewise, policy analytic capacity is required to help shape strategic choices capable of understanding why low standard eco-labeling competitors emerge and implications for "ratcheting up" standards over time. These skills must include an ability to respond in ways that incorporate differences across certification systems without alienating most stakeholders.

Superseding Pathway

The superseding pathway was identified through political and policy analytic capacities by identifying the role of collaborative certification in creating a "learning laboratory" in the hopes that, through diffusion and isomorphism, governments and other actors may decide to adopt these practices. Unlike the direct pathway, this indirect one requires significant attention and support from government officials since they will ultimately be developing the (diffused) regulations. Scholars and practitioners have envisioned this role as potentially the most effective for such NSMD systems as LEED Green Building certification, which tend to obtain direct support from a narrow set of institutional building owners rather than everyday homeowners. Hence, the process for broader impact is the diffusion of these standards into municipal building codes and related regulations (see Table 28.5).

Table 28.5 Superseding = Creating a Learning Laboratory

Causal Influence Logic	*Strategic Implications*
Governments adopt NSMD standards for mimetic, normative, or learning processes	Only attract top producers to trigger diffusion to government regulations Certification standards should be maintained at the highest of levels

The strategic implications for this "superseding" pathway that aims to gradually inform policy are different from the direct approach. In particular, strategists should attempt to generate and maintain "high standards" because it is through diffusion to government policies that the biggest impact can be achieved. Unlike direct pathways, decisions to lower standards to gain increased membership are misplaced – because it is learning about best practices, rather than generating wide spread support, that leads to indirect influence through impacts on public policies. In addition, officials from key government regulatory agencies play a key role and must constantly maintain open channels of communication with officials from certification programs while maintaining institutional autonomy.

Key individual policy capacity requirement dynamics include political acumen skills capable of understanding and promoting policy diffusion from private governance institutions to traditional governmental processes. This requires an ability to understand existing norms within policy subsystem dynamics, but also how, by engaging governmental arenas through policy diffusion processes, norms and discourses might change over time (Dobbin, Simmons and Garrett 2007). Likewise, policy analytic capacity is key, as this requires understanding and managing diverse stakeholders on the one hand, as well as the nuances of public policy process on the other hand. Policy analytic skills must also include an ability to master nuances of a specific and complicated policy field that incorporates knowledge from a range of social, biological, and physical sciences.

Symbiotic Pathway

A third pathway captures cases in which NSMD systems emerge to address a gap in international agreements or public policies (see Table 28.6). For example, when environmental and social activists were concerned that the Kyoto Protocol's "Clean Development Mechanism" (CDM) downplayed non-carbon concerns, such as equity and biodiversity, they did not want to "open up" hard-won deliberations for fear they might reduce, rather than increasing, existing protections. As a result, some activists turned and championed the CDM "gold standard" certification program as a way to fill gaps, encouraging those engaging in CDM activities (Levin 2009). In these cases, government officials must have the capacity to recognize that public regulation and the NSMD certification system are symbiotic, each reinforcing the other. This means that government officials can, quite innovatively, draw on certification systems to fill gaps in public policy, rather than seeking changes in their own hard-fought efforts, which could cause duplication and undermine support.

To do this well, policy analytical skills are also required, including intensive training in international relations and global governance, especially those bodies of research that are targeted towards understanding why states cooperate and implications for compliance and effectiveness. These skills are usually taught in departments of international relations and global affairs.

Table 28.6 Symbiotic Pathway for Addressing Gaps in International Agreements

Causal Influence Logic	*Strategic Implications*
NSMD system fills gap in public policy approach, reinforcing legitimacy of each other	Government officials can draw on NSMD standards to fill gaps in existing public policy instruments Government and certification officials should avoid duplication with the other

Hybrid Pathway

A fourth pathway that emerges from an application of political acumen and policy analytic capacities fits under the broad category of "hybrid" governance (see Table 28.7). This category most closely conforms to the collaborative governance discussion in Kekez, Howlett, and Ramesh's introductory chapter in that it also focuses, ultimately, on how certification might help foster changes in both private and public policy by emphasizing policy mixes that might provide innovative solutions. These mixes, and the different levels of policy interventions, have been disentangled by Cashore and Howlett (2004; Howlett 2009), building on Hall (1993) and Sabatier and Jenkins-Smith (1993) and others who, advancing policy analytic capacity, identify six different policy cells that officials might draw on to nurture influence. The ability to identify whether private or public policy is best for each cell and the potential of developing mixes across the cells for shaping impacts over time require the integration of political acumen and policy analytic capacity skills.

To be sure, application of these skills to advance certification through hybrid interactions with public policy can yield literally thousands of possibilities, each with its own "causal influence logic" for addressing public policy problems. This means that the only way to identify specific skills that would be required of individuals is to "work backward" from a specific innovation. To illustrate the potential of hybrid governance and the priority of political acumen and policy analytic capacity, we reflect on our work on the case of legal verification of global value chains (Cashore, Leipold, Cerutti et al. 2016; Cashore and Stone 2014; Cashore and Stone 2012), to which so many policy actors and scholars have devoted so much attention in the last ten years.

Conceptualizing Legality Verification (LV)

The idea of verifying whether production and manufacturing of consumer goods have followed the laws of the countries of origin has gained increasing interest from those championing improved apparel manufacturing facilities and extractive processes within mining, fisheries, and oil and gas production. Within forestry, such an interest has coalesced by those seeking to combat "illegal logging": i.e., failure to comply with laws and regulations developed by government officials such as illegal conversion of forests to other agriculture crops (deforestation) and logging that ignores environmental and social regulations.

Like NSMD systems, LV's mechanism for weeding out illegal logging is to track legal wood along global supply chains that cut across multiple jurisdictions. Likewise, third-party auditing, rather than relying on traditional enforcement agencies, is emerging as a key mechanism to assure legal compliance. However, unlike certification, these efforts seek to improve government capacity to enforce their own laws (Hyde 2009; see Table 28.8).

For these reasons, it is imperative that government officials have the political and analytic skills to distinguish LV from certification since the former can help governments through collaborative

Table 28.7 Hybrid Pathway for Reinforcing Compliance With Government Standards

Causal Influence Logic	*Strategic Implications*
Influence depends on the specific hybrid in question. NSMD "look-alikes" have emerged that reinforce government policies, rather than private standards	Government officials must draw on transnational LV to "weed out the worst", rather than rewarding the top Government officials must first focus on collaborative governance around supply chain tracking Government officials must identify a plan for Phase II in order to maintain multi-stakeholder collaborative governance beyond business interests

Table 28.8 Key Features of Legality Verification as TBG

Role of Governments	Sovereignty reinforced, not challenged
Policy Scope	Relatively modest
Assurance	Third-party verification
Role of Markets	Tracking along product supply chains

Source: Cashore and Stone (2012), drawing on Cashore, Auld and Newsom (2002); Cashore, Auld and Newsom (2004a) and Bernstein and Cashore (2007b)

governance in ways that reward, rather than constrain, legal producers. It is precisely for these reasons that so many government officials in developing and developed countries are supporting the removal of illegal products along global value chains to improve domestic governing capacity.

Theorizing LV's Emergence and Evolution: Strategic Implications

Just how to research and assess a dynamic policy instrument such as LV that operates across multiple levels of governance requires applying both political acumen and policy analytic capacity such that theoretical and empirical analysis can be integrated to uncover plausible "causal influence logics". Drawing on a range of empirical case studies in Brazil, the United States, the European Union, China, Malaysia, Cameroon, and Indonesia and theoretical work reviewed earlier, scholars applying political acumen and policy analytic skills have conceptualized two phases, with distinct "causal influence logics" through which policy actors might nurture and entrench LV (Bernstein and Cashore 2007b; Cashore 2012, 2014; Cashore, Auld and Newsom 2002).

During Phase I, support occurs only when a range of government, business, and environmental groups all come to recognize some type of strategic organizational interest in supporting efforts to "weed out" illegal logging from supply chains. Drawing on policy acumen capacity, they theorize that law-abiding businesses will support LV as a policy instrument when they evaluate current or potential economic rents associated with weeding out illegal supply (which should drive up prices, at least in the short term) and market access as being higher than the costs of support (that they incur through standards, auditing processes, and supply chain tracking of legal wood). Hence, policy analytic capacity is fundamental for identifying and building supply chain tracking systems capable of weeding out illegal wood as fundament for Phase I, requiring that government officials focus attention on developing stakeholder engagement that maintains coalitions of businesses and environmental groups. They theorize that a second phase of LV, with different logics, allows for regulatory expansion once LV of the entire supply chain

is institutionalized such that shirking among consumers and/or producers is considered normatively unacceptable. In this case, government officials must have the conceptual skills to identify Phase II, since it can only be measured after their efforts are unleashed, and the managerial skills/training from economics to know that when such conditions exist, increases in regulations will impose costs on consumers, rather than firms (Cashore and Stone 2012).

Application of a high degree of political acumen and policy analytic capacity among government officials in China, the US, and Indonesia helps explain why there was a flip from lukewarm or nonexistent support in the early 2000s to strong support by the late 2000s (Cashore and Stone 2014). Likewise, these skills allow policy actors to disentangle the type of policy problems LV could address, such as promoting responsible extractive practices, from more thorny policy problems, such as conserving biodiversity over extractive interests.

Direct and Indirect Evolutionary Pathways: Managerial Capacity Requirements

Given our review has identified critical political acumen and policy analytic capacity that cut across and help the identification of four distinct causal pathways, what then are the managerial requirements of policy actors who seek to influence them?

We can identify skills, drawing on Howlett and Ramesh (2016), which, like political acumen and policy analytic capacities, cut across all four pathways: excellent communication, budgeting, leadership, and team-building skills and the ability to conduct a range of cost-benefit analysis calculations, from optimization efforts to multi-goal policy analysis. These skills are taught in public administration and public policy schools. In addition, as NSMD systems follow business principles as much as government bureaucracies, managers ought to be aware of and trained in management techniques discovered and applied by key business management scholars such as Peter Drucker (Drucker 2001), who teaches how a "knowledge worker" leader can generate learning by empowering employees to realize organizational objectives through decentralized arrangements and collaborative learning (Senge 1990). Mintzberg and McHugh's (Mintzberg and McHugh 1985) findings about the way in which leaders can foster organizational coherence allows leadership "at the top" to foster innovation across all levels of the organization (Bushe and Marshak 2016) and the types of organizational forms that might nurture adaptive management (Laloux 2014).

These are clearly cross-cutting managerial capacities that any policy actor should master to effectively engage with colleagues and employees within the NSMD system and relevant government and intergovernmental arenas. However, whereas these skills are agnostic about particular organizational goals, NSMD certification systems were designed to address particular problems. This means that managerial skills must always be adjudicated for their ability to address these goals, rather than, as can inadvertently occur, maintaining the existence or growth of the system itself becoming the goal. When managerial and employee identities become focused on organizational reproduction rather than problem solving – such as direct and hybrid pathways being stuck in Phase I – the entire NSMD project is threatened, which will serve to undermine legitimacy and authority and stakeholder support. As abilities to make these distinctions are the functions of political acumen and policy analytic capacity, it follows that these managerial functions must always be applied third in the sequence.

At the same time, we can also inductively identify "Achilles' heel micro-level" management techniques that are different according to the pathway in question. For example, the direct pathway requires that managers to understand and conduct sophisticated supply chain management techniques that are taught in business schools and that take into account a range of technological

Table 28.9 Dominant "Achilles' Heel" Individual Managerial Skills for Traveling NSMD Influence Pathways

Pathways	*Training*
Direct	Supply chain management: technological innovations for tracking (GIS, remote sensing, data sharing)
Superseding	Legal: knowledge of relevant countries' legal practices and procedures, public policy legacies, and compliance and reporting requirements
Symbiotic	International compliance: knowledge of treaty obligations, standard operating procedures in relevant convention
Hybrid (Legality Verification)	All of the above

innovations for creating efficient systems. Conversely, superseding pathways require strong managerial training in relevant domestic countries' legal requirements, often taught in law schools, through which diffusion must occur while symbiotic requires knowledge of international treaty mechanisms and compliance management challenges, usually the domain of schools of global affairs and international relations. Given its complexity, it is unsurprising that the only pathway that does not have an Achilles' heel micro-management capacity building challenge is the Hybrid LV approach, in which all three micro capacities are key (see Table 28.9).

Conclusion

This analysis has focused on the individual-level capacity requirements. We recommend that future efforts apply the framework to identifying relevant organizational and system-wide capacities as well. One finding is clear: emphasis on managerial capacities at the expense of political acumen and policy analytic capacities leads not only to a limited ability to anticipate collaborative governance failures but also to the inability to anticipate fully successful pathways and strategies for traveling them.

References

Auld, Graeme. 2006. "Choosing How to Be Green: An Examination of Domtar Inc.'s Approach to Forest Certification." *Journal of Strategic Management Education* no. 3:37–92.

Auld, Graeme. 2014. *Constructing Private Governance: The Rise and Evolution of Forest, Coffee, and Fisheries Certification*. New Haven, CT: Yale University Press.

Auld, Graeme, Cristina Balboa, Tim Bartley, Steven Bernstein, Benjamin Cashore, and Kelly Levin. 2006. "The Emergence of Non-State Market Driven (NSMD) Governance Systems across Sectors." 47th Convention of the International Studies Association. San Diego, CA.

Auld, Graeme, Cristina Balboa, Steven Bernstein, and Benjamin Cashore. 2009. "The Emergence of Non-State market Driven (NSMD) Governance Systems Across Sectors." In *Governing the Environment: Interdisciplinary Perspectives*, edited by Magali Delmas and Oran Young. London: Cambridge University Press.

Auld, Graeme, and Benjamin Cashore. 2012a. "The Forest Stewardship Council." In *Business Regulation and Non-State Actors: Whose Standards? Whose Development?*, edited by Ananya Mukherjee-Reed, Darryl Reed and Peter Utting. London, United Kingdom: Routledge.

Auld, Graeme, and Benjamin Cashore. 2012b. "Forestry Review." In *Resolve*, edited by Assessment Steering Committee. Appendix F.

Auld, Graeme, Benjamin Cashore, Cristina Balboa, Laura Bozzi, and Stefan Renckens. 2010. "Can Technological Innovations Improve Private Regulation in the Global Economy?" *Business and Politics* no. 12 (3, October):1–39. https://doi.org/10.2202/1469-3569.1323.

Auld, Graeme, Benjamin Cashore, and Stefan Renckens. 2014. "Governance Components in Private Regulation: Implications for Legitimacy, Authority and Effectiveness." In *Improving Global Environmental Governance: Best Practices for Architecture and Agency*, edited by Norichika Kanie, Steinar Andresen and Peter M. Haas, 152–174. London/New York, NY: Routledge.

Auld, Graeme, Stefan Renckens, and Benjamin Cashore. 2015. "Transnational Private Regulation between the Logics of Empowerment and Control." *Regulation and Governance* no. 9 (2):108–124. https://doi.org/10.1111/rego.12075.

Bernstein, Steven, and Benjamin Cashore. 2004. "Non-State Global Governance: Is Forest Certification a Legitimate Alternative to a Global Forest Convention?" In *Hard Choices, Soft Law: Combining Trade, Environment, and Social Cohesion in Global Governance*, edited by John Kirton and Michael Trebilcock. Aldershot: Ashgate Press.

Bernstein, Steven, and Benjamin Cashore. 2007a. "Can Non-State Global Governance Be Legitimate? An Analytical Framework." *Regulation and Governance* no. 1 (3) (August):347–371. doi: 10.1111/j.1748-5991.2007.00021.x.

Bernstein, Steven, and Benjamin Cashore. 2007b. "Can Non-State Global Governance Be Legitimate? An Analytical Framework." *Regulation & Governance* no. 1 (4):347–371.

Bernstein, Steven, Richard Ned Lebow, Janice Gross Stein, and Steven Weber. 2000. "God Gave Physics the Easy Problems: Adapting Social Science to an Unpredictable World." *European Journal of International Relations* no. 66 (1):43–76.

Bozzi, Laura, Benjamin Cashore, Kelly levin, and Constance McDermott. 2012. "The Role of Private Voluntary Climate Programs Affecting Forests: Assessing Their Direct and Intersecting Effects." In *Business and Climate Policy: The Potentials and Pitfalls of Private Voluntary Programs*, edited by Karsten Ronit. New York: United Nations University Press.

Bushe, Gervase R., and Robert J. Marshak. 2016. "The Dialogic Mindset: Leading Emergent Change in a Complex World." *Organization Development Journal* no. Spring.

Cashore, Benjamin. 2002a. "Legitimacy and the Privatization of Environmental Governance: How Non State Market-Driven (NSMD) Governance Systems Gain Rule Making Authority." *Governance* no. 15 (4 (October)):503–529.

Cashore, Benjamin. 2002b. "Legitimacy and the Privatization of Environmental Governance: How Non, ÄìState Market, ÄìDriven (NSMD) Governance Systems Gain Rule, ÄìMaking Authority." *Governance* no. 15 (4):N.

Cashore, Benjamin. 2016. "Cross-Sector Partnerships for NSMD Global Governance: Change Pathways & Strategic Implications." *Annual Review of Social Partnerships* (11):84–88.

Cashore, Benjamin, Graeme Auld, Steven F. Bernstein, and Constance McDermott. 2007a. "Can Non-State Governance 'Ratchet Up' Global Environmental Standards?" *RECIEL* no. 16 (2).

Cashore, Benjamin, Graeme Auld, Steven Bernstein, and Constance McDermott. 2007b. "Can Non-State Governance 'Ratchet Up' Global Environmental Standards? Lessons from the Forest Sector." *Review of European Community & International Environmental Law* no. 16 (2):158–172.

Cashore, Benjamin, Graeme Auld, and Deanna Newsom. 2002. "Politics within Markets: Regulating Forestry through Non-State Environmental Governance." *Global Institute for Sustainable Forest Management*. New Haven, CT: Yale University.

Cashore, Benjamin, Graeme Auld, and Deanna Newsom. 2004a. *Governing Through Markets: Forest Certification and the Emergence of Non-State Authority*, 1st edition. New Haven, CT: Yale University Press.

Cashore, Benjamin, Elizabeth Egan, Graeme Auld, and Deanna Newsom. 2007. "Revisiting Theories of Non-State Market Driven (NSMD) Governance: Lessons from the Finnish Forest Certification Experience." *Global Environmental Politics* no. 7 (1):1–44.

Cashore, Benjamin, and Michael Howlett. 2004. *Punctuating What Equilibrium? Institutional Rigidities and Thermostatic Properties in Pacific Northwest Forest Policy Dynamics*. New Haven: Yale School of Forestry and Environmental Studies.

Cashore, Benjamin, and James Lawson. 2003. "Private Policy Networks and Sustainable Forestry Policy: Comparing Forest Certification Experiences in the US Northeast and the Canadian Maritimes." *Canadian American Public Policy*.

Cashore, Benjamin, Sina Leipold, Paolo Omar Cerutti, Gabriela Bueno, Sophia Carodenuto, Xiaoqian Chen, Wil de Jong, Audrey Denvir, Christian Hansen, David Humphreys, Kathleen McGinley, Iben Nathan, Christine Overdevest, Rafael Jacques Rodrigues, Metodi Sotirov, Michael W. Stone, Yitagesu Tekle Tegegne, Ingrid Visseren-Hamakers, Georg Winkel, Valentin Yemelin, and Jonathan Zeitlin. 2016. "Global Governance Approaches to Addressing Illegal Logging: Uptake and Lessons Learnt."

In *Illegal Logging and Related Timber Trade – Dimensions, Drivers, Impacts and Responses a Global Scientific Rapid Response Assessment Report*, edited by Daniela Kleinschmit, Stephanie Mansourian, Christoph Wildburger and Andre Purret. Geneva: International Union of Forest Research Organizations.

Cashore, Benjamin, Kira Matas, and others. 2012. "Pathways to Impact: Synergies with Other Approaches." In *Toward Sustainability: The Roles and Limitations of Certification*, edited by Steering Committee on the State-of-Knowledge Assessment of Standards and Certification. Washington, DC: Resolve.

Cashore, Benjamin, and Michael Stone. 2012. "Can Legality Verification Rescue Global Forest Governance?: Analyzing the Potential of Public and Private Policy Intersection to Ameliorate Forest Challenges in Southeast Asia." *Forest Policy and Economics* no. 18:13–22. doi: 10.1016/j.forpol.2011.12.005.

Cashore, Benjamin, and Michael Stone. 2014. "Does California Need Delaware? Explaining Indonesian, Chinese, and United States Support for Legality Compliance of Internationally Traded Products." *Regulation and Governance* no. 8 (Special Issue: Transnational Business Governance Interactions):49–73. doi: 10.1111/rego.12053.

Cashore, Benjamin, Ingrid Visseren-Hamakers, Paloma Caro Torres, Wil de Jong, Audrey Denvir, David Humphreys, Kathleen McGinley, Graeme Auld, Sarah Lupberger, Constance McDermott, Sarah Sax, and Daphne Yin. 2016. *Can Legality Verification Enhance Local Rights to Forest Resources? Piloting the Policy Learning Protocol in the Peruvian Forest Context*. New Haven: Yale University GEM Initiative in collaboration with IUFRO.

Cashore, Benjamin William, Graeme Auld, and Deanna Newsom. 2004b. *Governing Through Markets: Forest Certification and the Emergence of Non-State Authority*. New Haven, CT: Yale University Press.

Dauvergne, Peter. 2001. *Loggers and Degradation in the Asia Pacific: Corporations and Environmental Management*. Cambridge Asia-Pacific Studies. Cambridge; New York: Cambridge University Press.

Dobbin, Frank, Beth Simmons, and Geoffrey Garrett. 2007. "The Global Diffusion of Public Policies: Social Construction, Coercion, Competition, or Learning?" *Annual Review of Sociology* no. 33 (1):449–472. doi: 10.1146/annurev.soc.33.090106.142507.

Drucker, Peter F. 2001. *The Essential Drucker: Selections from the Management Works of Peter F. Drucker*. New York: Harper Business.

Gale, Fred P. 1998. *The Tropical Timber Trade Regime*. International Political Economy Series. New York: St. Martin's Press.

Greening, Daniel W., and Barbara Gray. 1994. "Testing a Model of Organizational Response to Social and Political Issues." *Academy of Management Journal* no. 37 (3):457–498.

Hall, Peter. 1993. "Policy Paradigms, Social Learning, and the State: The Case of Economic Policymaking in Britain." *Comparative Politics* no. 25 (3 (April)):275–296.

Howlett, Michael and B. Cashore. 2009. "The Dependent Variable Problem in the Study of Policy Change: Understanding Policy Change as a Methodological Problem." *Journal of Comparative Policy Analysis* no. 11 (1):29–42. doi: 10.1080/13876980802648144.

Howlett, Michael, and M. Ramesh. 2016. "Achilles' Heels of Governance: Critical Capacity Deficits and Their Role in Governance Failures." *Regulation & Governance* no. 10 (4): 301–313. doi: 10.1111/rego.12091.

Humphreys, David. 1996. *Forest Politics: The Evolution of International Cooperation*. London: Earthscan.

Humphreys, David, Benjamin Cashore, Ingrid J. Visseren-Hamakers, Wil de Jong, Kathleen McGinley, Audrey Denvir, Paloma Caro Torres, and Sarah Lupberger. 2017. "Towards Durable Multistakeholder-Generated Solutions: The Pilot Application of a Problem-Oriented Policy Learning Protocol to Legality Verification and Community Rights in Peru." *International Forestry Review* no. 19 (3, September 1):278–293. https://doi.org/10.1505/146554817821865018

Hyde, Susan D. 2009. *The Pseudo-Democrat's Dilemma: Why Election Monitoring Became an International Norm*. New Haven, CT: Yale University.

Kanie, Norichika, Peter M. Haas, Steinar Andresen, Graeme Auld, Benjamin Cashore, Pamela S. Chasek, Jose A. Puppim de Oliverira, Stefan Renckens, Olav Schram Stokke, Casey Stevens, Stacy D. VanDeveer, and Masahiko Lguchi. 2013. "Green Pluralism: Lessons for Improved Environmental Governance in the 21st Century." *Environment Magazine* no. 55 (5):14–30.

Kekez, Anka, Michael Howlett, and M. Ramesh, eds. 2020. *Collaboration in Public Service Delivery: Promise and Pitfalls*. Cheltenham: Edward Elgar.

Laloux, Frederic. 2014. *Reinventing Organizations: A Guide to Creating Organizations Inspired by the Next Stage of Human Consciousness*. New York: Nelson Parker.

Levin, K., B. Cashore, and P. Christensen. 2009. "Bolstering Environmental Integrity and Sustainable Development Benefits of the Clean Development Mechanism (CDM): Can Non-State Certification

Systems Facilitate State-Centered Efforts?" In *The Frontiers of Global Environmental Governance Workshop*. Waterloo.

Mahoney, J. 2008. "Toward a Unified Theory of Causality." *Comparative Political Studies* no. 41 (4–5):412–436. doi: 10.1177/0010414007313115.

Mintzberg, Henry, and Alexandra McHugh. "Strategy Formation in an Adhocracy." *Administrative Science Quarterly* 30, no. 2 (1985): 160–197.

Rametsteiner, Ewald, and Markku Simula. 2003. "Forest Certification: An Instrument to Promote Sustainable Forest Management?" *Journal of Environmental Management* no. 67 (1):87–98.

Sabatier, Paul A., and Hank C. Jenkins-Smith. 1993. "The Advocacy Coalition Framework: Assessment, Revisions, and Implications for Scholars and Practitioners." In *Policy Change and Learning: An Advocacy Coalition Approach*, edited by Paul A. Sabatier and Hank C. Jenkins-Smith, 211–235. Boulder, CO: Westview Press.

Sanderson, Ian. 2002. "Evaluation, Policy Learning and Evidence-Based Policy Making." *Public Administration* no. 80 (1):1–22.

Senge, Peter. 1990. *The Fifth Discipline: The Art and Practice of the Learning Organization*. New York: Doubleday Currency.

Siry, J. P., F. W. Cubbage, and M. R. Ahmed. 2005. "Sustainable Forest Management: Global Trends and Opportunities." *Forest Policy and Economics* no. 7 (4):551–561.

Synnott, Timothy. 2005. *Some Notes on the Early Years of FSC*. Saltillo, Mexico.

Thelen, Kathleen. 2003. "How Institutions Evolve: Insights from Comparative Historical Analysis." In *Comparative Historical Analysis in the Social Sciences*, edited by James Mahoney and Dietrich Rueschemeyer, 208–240. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

van der Ven, Hamish, and Benjamin Cashore. 2018. "Forest Certification: The Challenge of Measuring Impacts." *Current Opinion in Environmental Sustainability* no. 32:104–111.

PART VII

Policy Evaluation Tools

29

THEORETICAL FRAMEWORK FOR PUBLIC POLICY EVALUATION

Investigative Designs and Outcomes in a Global Setting

Lilian Ribeiro de Oliveira and Claudia Souza Passador

Considering the conceptual, methodological and developmental relevance of the matter, the evaluation of public policies, programs or processes is pointed to in the contemporary research agenda as an essential tool for the improvement of social public policies, at all government levels and in a global scenario. Public policy assessments are, in fact, dynamic and complex, given that many policies involve multiple actors, levels of government and different perspectives. It is also worth mentioning that there is a global effort aimed at building an agenda based on integration among all international organizations, guided mainly by the achievement of the 17 Sustainable Development Goals (SDGs) of the United Nations Development Program. In this context, this chapter is characterized as a proposal for a theoretical framework, aiming to build a comprehensive and integrated analysis of public policy assessments based on the relevant literature and, moreover, to understand and propose reflections about the current model regarding the relevance of investigative designs and outcomes for each of the types of assessment. International trends are highlighted, as well as the variety and complexity of applications, methods, tools, approaches, moments and actors involved in the evaluation process. It is concluded that there is a great effort involving countries, governments and multilateral agencies to strengthen the study of evaluation, looking for best practices and theories, thereby contributing greatly to the creation of an evaluative "culture", capable of encompassing the complexity and specificities of each policy or program in question.

Introduction

The study of public policies encompasses the understanding of the forms of action taken by the state, as well as the coordination of efforts and articulations between other players in the political arena. Noted, especially in modern democracies, is that this type of analysis is gaining ever more prominence, which has contributed to the strengthening of these institutions. As a result, the search for analytical processes is a way to decrease the complexity of the object and simplify the analyses. Accordingly, the division into stages was established under the aegis of the political

DOI: 10.4324/9781003163954-36

cycle, as well as in relation to the various phases of the political process arranged in a sequential and interdependent manner (Howlett et al. 2013; Valle-Cruz et al. 2020).

Through its ample diffusion, the political cycle has become the most widely used structure for the ordering and systematization of research on public policies. However, there are limitations to the adopted scheme, such as the simplification of extremely complex facts, the lack of linearity of policies in a real context and the possibility of changes in the phases and order adopted in the political cycle (Valle-Cruz et al. 2020). For this chapter, we chose to describe the stages of the political cycle based on Howlett et al. (2013), and as this is a holistic field with several developments, this study proposes the specific analysis concerning the structuring of the stage in the political cycle denominated as evaluation, especially in a context of the large-scale production of information and possibilities that arise for real-time evaluations (Feinstein 2019). Figure 29.1 presents the stages of the political cycle in accordance with the resolution applied to the problem.

In a scenario of scarce resources and recurrent economic crises, the evaluation of public policies and programs is desirable and necessary, which contributes greatly to the identification and development of efficient mechanisms for dealing with financial, human and structural resources (Ala-Harja and Helgason 2014). Through evaluative processes, substantiation of the critical factors concerning the success of a given policy can be sought, which encourages debate and decision-making by managers and civil society, as well as promoting the constant improvement

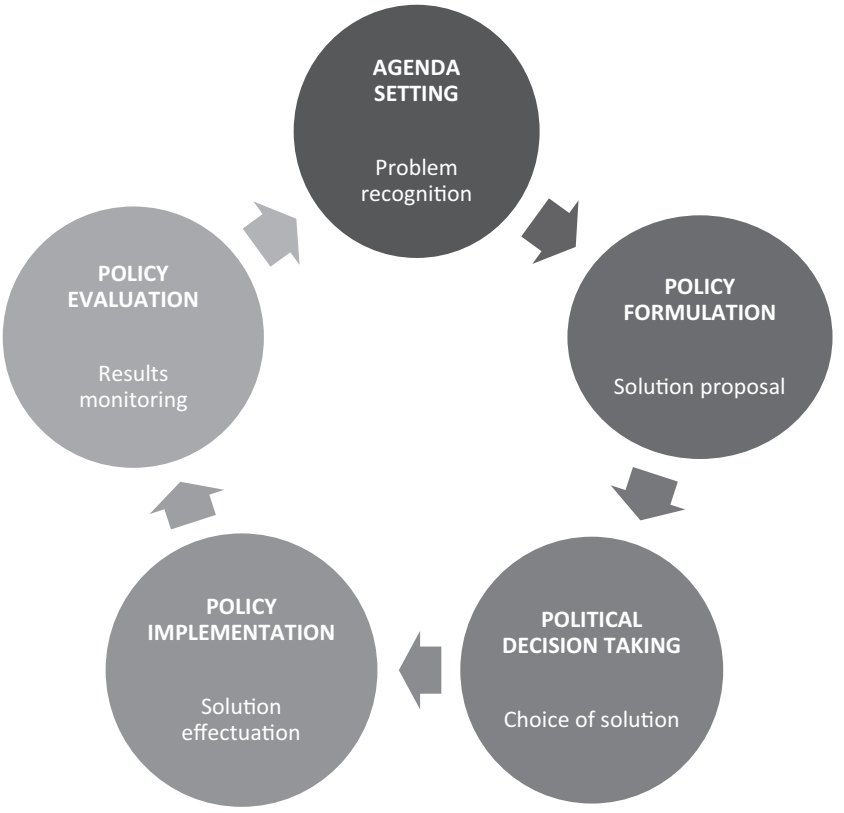


Figure 29.1 Resolution Applied to Problems and Its Relationship to the Political Cycle

Source: Elaborated by the authors based on the literature review and on Howlett et al. (2013)

of already-developed policies (Silveira et al. 2013). Even with the wide range of definitions for the evaluation of actions, there is convergence in relation to the contributions generated: knowledge for making decisions, organizational learning and improvement to the policy in question (Queiroz and Capelari 2020).

The effective use of evaluative processes can contribute to the transparency of public actions, as well as present to the public ways of controlling and following government actions, thus guaranteeing the legitimacy of policies or programs developed through such (Weiss 1999; Ala-Harja and Helgason 2014; Mokate 2002; Vedung 2009; Ramos and Schabbach 2012). However, note should be made that, due to their political nature, evaluations can contribute to the maintenance or not of a given policy, which may be linked to the proposals and strategies of the parties involved (Ramos and Schabbach 2012; Cruz 2015).

Highlighted here also is that the challenge of successful evaluations permeates social transformation in a world where the COVID-19 pandemic has brought to light the economic and social chasms between countries, groups and individuals, in addition to the urgency to improve the human-nature relationship. Through such, the importance of public policy modeling and its limitations are made evident, along with the need for evaluative, adaptive and transformational models (Picciotto 2020). To this end, evaluative practices should seek to improve their processes and constantly update their range of tools and must seek to change the focus of their actions, becoming transformative and dynamic (Feinstein 2019). Furthermore, the availability of information, big data and the use of artificial intelligence provides evaluation opportunities in very near real time, in addition to facilitating the incorporation of the evaluation across all phases of the political cycle, replacing the notion of the evaluation only at the end of the process (Feinstein 2019; Picciotto 2020; Valle-Cruz et al. 2020).

Given the summary of the presented scenario and aiming to contribute toward the debate on the evaluation of public policies, this chapter sets out the next topics for the historical review of the study on evaluation, in addition to providing details to the existing models, types and methodologies in the literature and recent international trends included in this discussion.

Studies on the Evaluation of Public Policy

The perspective from literature considers the proliferation in evaluative studies as being the end of the 1950s. According to Vedung (2010), the historical process of studies on evaluation in the global context can be divided into four waves of diffusion. Each wave is indicated for a period of time and molded according to social, political and economic questions. The construction of this metaphor refers to the constant renovation of the scenario, resulting from the repetitive movement of the waves and the constant deposit of sediments to create a base (Vedung 2010). This chapter derives from the article published in 2019 (Oliveira and Passador 2019) and advances the understanding and practices of assessment in a context of growing economic and social imbalance.

The first wave or phase of diffusion of evaluation studies dates back to the late 1950s, with consolidation occurring in the mid-1960s (Derlien 2001; Trevisan and Bellen 2008; Vedung 2010; Picciotto 2015) and is characterized as "the science guided wave" (Vedung 2010). The studies one finds within this time frame are linked to the emergence of the welfare state, mainly in those countries with reformist aspirations during that period[highlighted among such are the United States of America (USA), France, Germany, Sweden and Canada (Derlien 2001; Vedung 2010; Picciotto 2015). The second period, or second wave, described by Vedung (2010), denominated as "the dialog guided wave" was configured during the 1970s, in a context in which researchers driven by progressive ideals argued that evaluations should be more pluralistic, democratic and dialogical (Vedung 2010; Picciotto 2021). The insertion of all actors involved in

the intervention under analysis is discussed, from researchers and politicians to operators of the policy or program in question (Vedung 2010). The authors Rossi and Wright (1984) highlight the growth in the use of qualitative studies in this period, a model that converged inclusively with the thinking of that time, while justifying their use based on lower research costs on a local level and greater use and flexibility for managers. Such alternative models would provide better support to the participatory scope, as well as closer contact with reality (Rossi and Wright 1984; Vedung 2010). Synthesizing the characteristics of this wave, Vedung (2010, 270) explains that "in contrast to the wave induced through science, the wave guided through dialog rested on communicative rationality. Instead of producing truths, dialogic evaluation would generate broad agreements, consensus, political acceptability and democratic legitimacy".

On the other hand, the third wave, denominated by Vedung (2010) as the "neoliberal wave" and introduced at the beginning of the 1980s, modified once more the standard of evaluation studies. In their studies, the authors Vedung (2010) and Picciotto (2015) describe this period as a neoliberal inundation into the field of evaluative studies, with such focusing on a reduction of the state while promoting at the same time the free market and public-private partnerships. The emerging management model was the New Public Management (NPM), with greater focus on results in regards to processes. The study in Vedung (2010) complements NPM by arguing that customer orientation, decentralization, privatization and deregulation have become the new slogans of evaluation processes. Contributing further, Ala-Harja and Helgason (2014) indicate that, in this phase, the evaluation was understood as a tool able to justify policies and reallocate financial resources. In conclusion, Vedung (2010) synthesizes that the evaluation activities of the third wave, which were mainly focused on accountability, performance measurement and consumption, seek quality of services provided and comparative evaluations.

Continuing with this theme, the fourth and last wave described by Vedung (2010) is denominated as "the evidence wave: the return to experimentation". This wave of alternative studies took shape in the 1990s and 2000s, mainly in North Atlantic and Nordic countries. These are evidence-based studies, so Picciotto (2015) emphasizes that those involved in evaluation studies are "surfing" this fourth wave. Studies focused on scientific evidence aim to separate that which works from that which does not (Vedung 2010; Picciotto 2015). The author highlights that studies with experimental approaches that use randomization or quasi-experimental research have as their main objective the verification of the impacts caused by policies and public programs (Vedung 2010; Picciotto 2015). The study (Vedung 2010) classifies this movement of incessant search for scientific proof as a return to the science-based model, but under a new light.

Nevertheless, in a context of pandemic and global economic and social crises, there are signs of the emergence of a new wave of assessment or fifth wave. New opportunities were generated by the availability of information, digitization of processes and scarcity of human and financial resources, as well as the collaborative relationships between countries for the development of new practices and technologies, especially in the health sector. Adhering to social trends, this new wave presents itself with evidence-based assessment characteristics, but with a greater focus on the socio-environmental impact and on the growing participation of society.

Typologies and Approaches for Public Policy Evaluations

Starting out with the assumption that evaluations are not equal, Cohen and Franco (2008) and Ramos and Schabbach (2012) suggest the description of the different forms of evaluation according to a series of criteria, such as use, time, who performs it, to whom it is destined and the desired outcome, among others. According to Faria (2005), one can point to at least four types of use for the evaluation, those being instrumental, conceptual, persuasive and clarification.

Instrumental use refers to the importance of quality and proper dissemination of obtained results, in order that the evaluation becomes something that is tangible and of feasible implementation. The study by Weiss (1998) adds that instrumental use for evaluations can guide decision-makers as it allows for a return to the history of the analyzed program and provides feedback to assessment practitioners as well as highlighting the objectives established for the program. The second use, denominated as conceptual, is frequently applied to those that do not have direct contact with the formulation of the program (local technicians); it is, therefore, about providing information on the policy or program, presenting as such its nature and operation, as well as introducing it to the impacts and results achieved (Faria 2005). Following on, the third use, called persuasive, is described by Faria (2005, 103): "[T]his occurs when used to mobilize support for the position that decision-makers already have on necessary changes in policy or program". The evaluation, at this moment, has the function of legitimizing the desired changes and winning over new supporters to this movement. Finally, the use of clarification is proposed as a result of the accumulation of knowledge arising from several evaluations that have already been carried out (Faria 2005) and has the capacity to guide the government agenda.

Regarding the moments of the evaluation, one can consider the ex-ante evaluation and ex-post evaluation. Ex-ante evaluations are those carried out before decision-making, and one can say that it has as its goal to aid in decision-making, in terms of the implementation of policies or social programs (Cotta 2001; Cohen and Franco 2008). Furthermore, Ramos and Schabbach (2012) affirm that, in this type of evaluation, a diagnostic is generated on the observed situation, thus contributing to the suitability of the available resources to the proposed objectives (feasibility check), additionally being able to serve as a guiding tool for the maintenance and/or formulation of policies or programs. However, the classification ex post indicates that the evaluations are performed during the execution of a project or at its end. When the evaluation refers to the intermediary moment (process evaluation) denominated by Scriven (1991) as formative evaluations, the conclusions may base decisions on continuity or discontinuity of a given policy or program (Cotta 2001; Cohen and Franco 2008; Trevisan and Bellen 2008; Ramos and Schabbach 2012). However, in regards to terminal or summative evaluations (which measure impact and result, for example), the ex-post evaluations provide information concerning the experience achieved and can support future decisions on the same policy or program or even contribute to the construction of an evaluative model for another objective or similar experiences (Scriven 1991; Cotta 2001; Cohen and Franco 2008; Trevisan and Van Bellen 2008; Ramos and Schabbach 2012). Based on the literature, the inference can be reached that ex-post evaluations are more widespread both in academia and practical applications and so present more founded and sophisticated methodologies. Regarding the classification of the evaluation from the perspective of those who carry out or participate in it, it can be said that there is a consensus in the literature with regard to the four distinct types: external evaluation, internal evaluation, mixed evaluation and participatory evaluation. Table 29.1 illustrates these differences.

External evaluations add exemption to the evaluation practice; on the other hand, however, the external evaluator has greater difficulty accessing data. In addition, one can mention as an advantage the greater objectivity of external evaluators, as these do not participate in internal processes, as well as the possibility of comparison with similar programs (Cotta 1998; Cohen and Franco 2008; Ramos and Schabbach 2012). With respect to internal evaluations, the advantages presented in the literature deal with the decrease in conflicts generated by the insertion of external people or organizations, the possibility of revision and learning in terms of the processes executed in a particular policy or program and greater theoretical and technical knowledge of the evaluated specificities. However, internal evaluations risk losing objectivity and providing only partial conclusions as these are developed by those involved in the formulation and

Table 29.1 Types of Evaluation According to Who Performs/Participates

Type of Evaluation	*Producer*	*Organizer*	*User*
External – performed by agents outside the organization	External	External/internal	External/ internal
Internal – performed in the organization managing the policy or program	Internal	External/internal	External/ internal
Mixed evaluation – composed of external and internal agents, with the objective to keep advantages from both evaluations	External and internal	External and/or internal	External/ internal
Participatory evaluation – the main objective is to reduce the distance between evaluators and beneficiaries	Evaluation board (agents who are part of the policy or program, external evaluator members and beneficiaries)	Evaluation board (agents who are part of the policy or program, external evaluator members and beneficiaries)	External/ internal

Source: Elaborated by the authors based on Weiss (1998), Cohen and Franco (2008), Vedung (2009), Ramos and Schabbach (2012) and Oliveira (2018)

implementation of the analyzed program (Weiss 1998; Cotta 1998; Cohen and Franco 2008; Vedung 2009; Ramos and Schabbach 2012).

Mixed evaluations aim to join efforts and ensure synergy between the actors involved in the action. The potential of all of the models is then combined, while reducing the impacts or biases presented individually (Cohen and Franco 2008; Ramos and Schabbach 2012). Finally, the participative evaluation is presented, which holds as its main objective to decrease the distance that exists between evaluation organizers and producers and the beneficiaries of the evaluated programs. In this model, the participation of users in all phases of the political cycle is allowed, favoring opinions and meeting the specific demands of these actors (Cohen and Franco 2008; Ramos and Schabbach 2012). For Patton (1999), the participative evaluation should consider the priorities and effects while establishing the common definitions for the evaluators as well as the beneficiaries. In Spink (2001), the importance of the participative evaluation is shown and, as already highlighted, has the capacity to strengthen ties between those involved, thus collaborating with the maintenance of the practice of democratic evaluation. However, the dimension of the policy or program evaluated must be taken into account; in this regard, Ramos and Schabbach (2012) suggest that participative evaluations are adequate only in small projects or local programs. The study by Ceneviva and Farah (2012) highlights that bureaucrats should not work in an isolated fashion; contrarily, evaluation is a tool of transparency allied to public acts, where citizens can and should inform themselves and inspect the actions put forward by political players.

Evaluations can also be classified as qualitative, quantitative and mixed methods. Synthetically, Weiss (1998) classifies qualitative research as that which is presented in words and quantitative in numbers. The author complements this by affirming that quantitative evaluations collect data and transform it into numerical information, which is strongly supported by statistics as well as mathematical and econometric methods. Quantitative approaches can use sophisticated tools in data analysis that identify relationships between variables and can encompass a large sample universe in addition to providing information on the extension and distribution of a particular phenomenon (Weiss 1998). On the other hand, qualitative evaluations tend to use less structured tools, such as

interviews, observational techniques and document analysis (Weiss 1998). The authors Rossi and Wright (1984) assert that for social research, as in the case of public policy studies, the qualitative approach presents advantages as it has the capacity to generate approximation with reality and is flexible for contemplating the complexity involved in such policies.

The difference between approaches generates opportunities for contemplation, the joining of similarities and increasing synergy between the different parts (Mokate 2002). It is in this area that the mixed methods approach finds its niche, which is nothing more than the combination of qualitative and quantitative assessments. Mokate (2002, 114) argues that "in particular, the evaluation can be applied to quantitative and qualitative methods, as well as for the generation of different types of information which, together, correspond to the different questions proposed by the evaluation process". Research by Bloch et al. (2014) upholds that the use of mixed methods collaborates with the employment of the best data sources available, with the intent of providing comprehensive and robust answers. Nevertheless, the authors present as limitations to the use of mixed methods the time, resources and commitment to build the pragmatic aspects of the evaluation (Bloch et al. 2014). Following suit, Costa et al. (2013) add that quantitative research leads to the generalization of results shaped through standardized information. In contrast, qualitative research will likely provide data relating to circumstances and social environments, giving emphasis to cultural and contextual dimensions.

On the topic of the methodology applied to the evaluation, Costa and Castanhar (2003) group the evaluations into process evaluation, goal-based evaluation and impact evaluation. Evaluation, once considered the way to measure the performance of policies or programs, with such performance being the reaching of goals (Costa and Castanhar 2003) or the assessment of results (Ramos and Schabbach 2012), needs criteria to structure itself and, finally, to measure the consequence of that contracted (Costa and Castanhar 2003). Table 29.2 presents the types of evaluation according to the problem that the evaluation answers, as well as the benefits of its use.

Here, three basic dimensions prevail for measuring the obtained results (Costa and Castanhar 2003; Sano and Montenegro Filho 2013):

Efficiency: from economic origins, with the meaning to reach the program objectives, while prioritizing the standards established, with the lowest cost-benefit relationship possible. Efficiency is related to the process stage in an evaluation flowchart.

Efficacy: measures the degree to which the goals and objectives were achieved, translating in a simplified mode the obtained result.

Effectiveness: also dealt with in the literature as the measure of impact, it indicates the positive effects in relation to the target audience of the program. It is a wider dimension, as it analyzes the economic, sociocultural, environmental and institutional aspects: that is, effectiveness measures the quantity as much as the quality of the goals achieved by the program. Effectiveness is related to the transformation stage in an evaluation flowchart.

Noteworthy here also is that the importance of the investigative designs and outcomes for each one of the evaluation types – process, goals/results and impacts – according to the problem that it deals with. In light of this necessity, Table 29.3 describes, without claiming to have closed the debate on the topic, each of the designs and outcomes presented in the literature (Scriven 1991; Weiss 1998; Cotta 1998; OECD 2002; Costa and Castanhar 2003; Vedung 2009; Ramos and Schabbach 2012; Silveira et al. 2013). Therefore, the connection between the evaluative approaches and the methodology applied to the evaluation is imperative with regard to the design and outcome used; such variables are also recorded on Table 29.3.

Table 29.2 Types of Evaluation According to the Problem to Which the Evaluation Is Responding

Type	*Description*	*Moment of Evaluation*	*Benefits of Use*
Process evaluation	Objective is to identify problems or obstacles in the implementation of processes in a systematized way. Its use allows for contemplating the evolution between planning and execution.	Ex-ante Formative	The adequate use of information collected in the evaluation process permits small adjustments or change of direction to be made during implementation and execution of the policy.
Evaluation of goals or results	It is the most traditional model among evaluation methodologies. It consists of measuring the success of the program or project against previously established goals.	Ex-post Summative	The effects and consequences of a given policy are measured, determining its success or failure based on effective changes in the recipient populations.
Impact evaluation	It covers not only the results achieved in terms of efficiency, effectiveness and efficacy but also the changes that occurred in the target population as a result of the implementation of the policy or program evaluated.	Ex-post Summative	This evaluative model uses methodological frameworks that provide cause-and-effect relationships between the actions performed by the program and the effects promoted in the target community in a broader sense.

Source: Based on Scriven 1991, Costa and Castanhar 2003, Ramos and Schabbach 2012 and Oliveira 2018

Table 29.3 Connections Between Designs, Evaluative outcomes, Approaches and Types of Evaluation

Design/Outcome	*Short Description*	*Approach and Type of Evaluation*
Cost-benefit	The analysis is designed to assess the monetary benefits of an intervention, reporting both costs and benefits, in order to compare alternatives and choose the best cost-benefit ratio.	Quantitative approach Process evaluation Evaluation of goal/results
Cost-effectiveness	Comparison between alternative forms of action to select the program/project that meets the objectives with the lowest cost. In addition to supporting the cost evaluation, it also considers the consequences of one particular intervention being completed over another; it is commonly used due to it possessing both monetary and non-monetary benefits as the outcome unit.	Quantitative approach Process evaluation Evaluation of goal/results
Cost-utility	Considered a derivative of the cost-effectiveness analysis. It compares not only costs and benefits but also the perception of life quality or social impact of the target population.	Mixed methods approach Impact evaluation

Design/Outcome	*Short Description*	*Approach and Type of Evaluation*
Experimental studies	These point toward the formation of two populations: the group with the program/project (treatment) and another group without the program/project (control). The objective is to verify the changes generated by the program/project.	Quantitative approach Impact evaluation
Quasi-experimental studies	Similar to the experimental model; however, the groups are not randomly selected; it is based on a choice between those that belong to the target population and fit into one of the groups (treatment or control). The objective is also to check for changes that have occurred in these populations.	Mixed methods approach Impact evaluation
Documentary methods	Method of data collection involving the use of information for other purposes, such as statistics or data produced by the agency itself and/or other written documents.	Quantitative approach Process evaluation Evaluation of goal/results
Interrogative methods	Strategy to accumulate data through questioning people, appropriated from interviews, questionnaires and the like.	Quantitative approach Process evaluation Evaluation of goal/results Impact evaluation
Observational methods	Data collection strategy in which the investigator, through a site visit, makes on-site observations. In direct observation, participation in the process of evaluation is a pretext to allow for the collection of impartial data.	Quantitative approach Process evaluation Evaluation of goal/results Impact evaluation
Meta-evaluation	The term is used for designed evaluations that aggregate results from a series of evaluations. It can also be used to denote the assessment of an evaluation to assess its quality and/or to assess the performance of assessors.	Mixed methods approach Evaluation of goal/results Impact evaluation
Triangulation	It is the use of several different measurements or measuring instruments to obtain information about the same action, condition or thing.	Mixed methods approach Process evaluation Evaluation of goal/results Impact evaluation

Source: Elaborated by the authors

In conclusion, confronted with the variety and complexity of the applications, methods, tools, approaches, moments and players involved in the evaluation process, it is necessary to synthesize the information in order to illustrate the main divisions presented in this study, based on the consulted literature, without the intention of relating them in a temporal or hierarchical way, as shown in Figure 29.2.

The next section explores the international tendencies surrounding the evolution of evaluation studies in order to relate these through the point of view of types, methodologies and outcomes. The strengthening of evaluation practices in a context of economic, social and health crises at a global level is also highlighted; this points to a new wave of evaluation studies that we are calling the fifth wave.

Recent National and International Tendencies

In light of scenarios becoming ever more complex and turbulent, global tendencies converge toward the structuring and strengthening of actions in international evaluation, which are

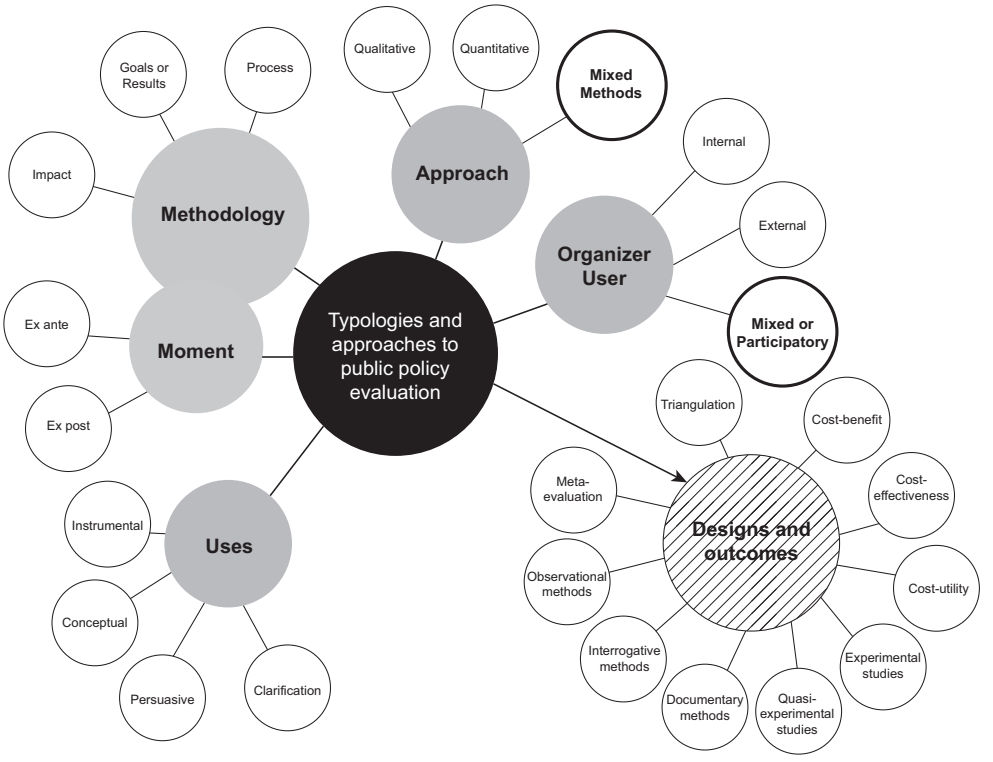


Figure 29.2 Conceptual Map of Public Policy Evaluation

Source: Elaborated by the authors

supported by government organs, independent agencies, multilateral agencies and civil society organizations. It is clear that evaluative activities are important for good governance, while also being able to contribute to the advance of public policies that are of a more effective, efficacious and efficient (Ramos and Schabbach 2012; EvalPartners 2015). As a result, this topic maps developed actions and those present actions carried out by international organizations while also leaving the topic open to further discussion.

The United Nations (UN), the World Bank, the Inter-American Development Bank (IDB), the Organization for Economic Cooperation and Development (OECD), the Economic Commission for Latin America and the Caribbean (ECLAC) and the Latin American Center for Development Administration (CLAD) emerge as protagonists in the generation of evaluative methodologies and projects (Ramos and Schabbach 2012). Noteworthy here also are actions from other agents. Picciotto (2019) points out that at the turn of the century, there were only 20 evaluation associations; however, since then the number has grown considerably. EvalPartners, formed by the International Organization for Cooperation in Evaluation (IOCE), has identified a total of 158 associations or networks, of which 135 are at the national level.

In this context, 2015 was established by EvalPartners and approved by the UN as the International Year of Evaluation. The organization, constructed on a partnership between the International Organization for Cooperation in Evaluation (IOCE) and the United Nations Children's Fund (UNICEF), sought partnership with various important organizations, with the aim of creating a worldwide network of volunteer evaluators who can contribute to public policy evaluations

in their countries (EvalPartners 2016). According to the guidelines of the organization, the incentive aims to contribute toward improving the capacities of civil society organizations (CSO), as well as involving these in a strategic and expressive fashion in the processes of national evaluation, with the intent of developing systems of evaluation while guaranteeing equity in the resulting actions (EvalPartners 2016). To this end, they developed the Global Assessment Agenda (EvalPartners 2016). The document, approved by the delegates of the Global Evaluation Forum held in Nepal in 2015, enables a roadmap of actions for the future of evaluation and the strengthening of evaluators from different countries and organizations (EvalPartners 2016).

The European Union also developed a project for evaluating structural policies of the bloc, along with the identification and use of innovative practices of evaluation methodologies, in addition to multisector involvement, with the intent to reduce poverty (Sophie Project 2012).

In the Latin American context, the Latin American and Caribbean Network of Monitoring, Evaluation and Systematization (ReLAC), in conjunction with Evaluation Capacity Development in Latin America (FOCEVAL), the Costa Rican Ministry of National Planning and Economic Policy (MIDEPLAN) and the German Institute for Development Evaluation (DEval) conducted a series of public consultations with experts and evaluation professionals during 2014 and 2015 and presented the first drafts at the IV ReLAC Conference in Peru in 2015. In August 2016, they released a document with a summary of this proposal under the title "Evaluation Guidelines for Latin America and the Caribbean", translated to Portuguese in 2019, with the objective to enrich the common framework of guidance for achieving high-quality evaluations, promoting the theoretical and practical training of assessors in the region and instigating the culture of evaluation on the continent (Bilella et al. 2016).

Noteworthy still is that there exists a global effort aimed at building an agenda based on integration among all international organizations, guided mainly by the achievement of the 17 Sustainable Development Goals (SDGs) of the United Nations Development Program (PNUD 2016). The first five years projected by EvalAgenda2020 have as their priority the creation and the strengthening of evaluation mechanisms of SDG. Table 29.4 summarizes the main actions (PNUD 2016; ONU 2016; Evalpartners 2015; OECD 2016; Sophie Project 2015; Bilella et al. 2016; IBGE 2018; FGV CLEAR 2021; CIDACS 2021).

Table 29.4 Structuring Actions of Indicators and Evaluation Developed by National and International Organizations

Organization	*Developed Action*	*Brief Description*
ONU (2015)	"Transforming Our World: Agenda 2030 for Sustainable Development"	Document that established the 17 Objectives and the 169 Goals of Sustainable Development at the UN General Assembly in 2015.
ONU (2016)	First SDG follow-up report	Inaugural report that gives an overview of the 17 SDGs, using available data to highlight some critical points and challenges.
ONU (PNUD 2016)	Follow-up on Agenda 2030	Document with initial subsidies for the identification of national indicators related to the SDGs, which hold the objective of presenting the available indices for monitoring and evaluation of the fulfillment of the established goals.

(*Continued*)

Table 29.4 (Continued)

Organization	*Developed Action*	*Brief Description*
SDG at the Brazilian Institute of Geography and Statistics (IBGE)	Digital platform SDG	Developed by teams from the Informatics Directorate of the IBGE, it provides an information system for following up the 2030 Agenda in Brazil. It constitutes a first set of global indicators, elaborated collaboratively between global institutions, with the purpose of presenting regularly produced national data, methodology and internationally established standards.
EvalPartners (2015)	EvalAgenda2020	The Global Evaluation Agenda (GEA) 2016–2020, which is the first long-term global view for evaluation, establishes priorities and offers training and forums, with the objective of creating an environment conducive to evaluations and one that will reach the goals established in the 2030 Agenda. The collaborative construction involves interested parties, including governments, parliaments and civil and academic society.
OECD (2016)	"Measuring Distance to the SDGs Targets: A Pilot Assessment of Where OECD Countries Stand"	Pilot study of the starting positions, in relation to the SDGs, of some OECD countries. It aims to help governments develop national action plans. It uses the wealth of statistical data obtained by OECD members, harmonized through the tools and processes found in the organization.
SOPHIE PROJECT (2015)	"Evaluating the Impact of Structural Policies on Health Inequalities and Their Social Determinants, and Fostering Change (SOPHIE)"	Health inequalities are strongly affected by the circumstances in which people are born, grow, live, work and age, as well as the policies that influence those circumstances. The SOPHIE Project has as its objective to generate new evidence on the impact of structural policies on the inequalities in health and develop innovative methodologies for the evaluation of these policies in Europe. It is coordinated by the Barcelona Public Health Agency and financed by the European Union Research Fund.
ReLAC	"Evaluation Guidelines for Latin America and the Caribbean"	Instrument to foster the culture of evaluation in public and private institutions, guiding the practice and training of evaluators, ensuring credibility, transparency and the integral character of the evaluation (Bilella et al. 2016). The guidelines were divided into five dimensions of analysis: (1) rigorous evaluation, (2) adequate evaluability, (3) evaluation conducted in accordance with ethical and legal principles, (4) adequate cultural understanding and (5) relevance and usefulness.

Organization	*Developed Action*	*Brief Description*
FGV Clear	Development of various projects in conjunction with government agents, private institutions, civil society and academia	FGV EESP Clear is one of the six regional centers that make up the CLEAR Initiative, a global action of various entities and countries that aims to improve policies and programs through the strengthening of capacities and monitoring and evaluation systems. The projects are aimed at formulating and/or improving the management of public policies and social programs based on results in four areas of action: (1) diagnosis; (2) monitoring: monitoring systems, building indicators; (3) evaluation: logical framework, process evaluation, cost-benefit analysis, impact assessment; and (4) institutional capacity building.
Cidacs – The Oswaldo Cruz Foundation of Bahia (Fiocruz Bahia)	Development of studies with large volumes of information, integrating national databases and providing products (databases) for research	These studies aim to assist and support decision-making in public policies for the benefit of society. Toward this end, Cidacs has multidisciplinary teams trained in different areas, such as epidemiology, collective health, statistics, economics, bioinformatics and computing. Cidacs works with the following research platforms: Cohort of 100 Million Brazilians; Zika Platform; Technologies and Innovations for the Unified Health System (SUS); Equity and Urban Sustainability; Bioinformatics and Genetic Epidemiology (Epigen) (CIDACS 2021).

Source: Elaborated by the authors

There is a clear understanding that evaluation activities are important for good governance and can contribute to the advancement of more effective, efficacious and efficient public policies (Ramos and Schabbach 2012; EvalPartners 2015). One notes that the deduction can be made that in academia as in government research organizations, when it comes to the strengthening of the study of evaluation, these seek best practices and theories, which contribute greatly to the creation of an evaluative "culture" capable of embracing complexity and the specifics of each policy or program in question (PNUD 2016).

Final Considerations

In line with the search for articulated models for the development of government strategies to fight poverty and promote citizenship, several international organizations have been developing integrative and intersectoral proposals, with the aim of improving the quality of life of the world population. Actions such as the establishment of the UNDP SDGs and comparative and shared studies among OECD countries are examples of such efforts (Oliveira and Passador 2019). It also highlights clues for the emergence of a new wave (fifth wave) that will accompany the profound changes that have occurred in a post-pandemic scenario, highly digitized,

with collaborative practices between countries and that will seek greater socio-environmental balance.

In Latin America, there is a growth in the search for evaluative actions to strengthen and improve public policies adopted in the region, mainly those related to confronting social vulnerabilities. However, the scenario demands the development of professional capacities of governments and an increase in the role of civil society in monitoring and control. The evolution and internalization of evaluation processes contribute to the development of robust and comprehensive methodologies. Since the 1980s, the search has grown for models capable of combining quantitative and qualitative information (mixed methods), with a view to improving evaluation and making it more realistic with regard to the complexity of the analyzed policies. The search for new robust and comprehensive evaluation methodologies is essential for the development and evolution of evaluation activities, providing managers with concrete, real and applicable data. The search for transparency and effectiveness in the management of projects and programs minimizes the misuse of public money and helps in the fight against systemic corruption. In a scenario of freezing public resources and changing epidemiological profiles of the population, the systematic use of evaluation of public policies and programs can contribute to the rational use of human, financial and material resources by improving and strengthening the practices carried out at all levels of government. Therefore, the aim is to use innovative methodologies while providing professional and scientific training, which can go on to support decision-makers in relation to social public policies – especially those in health and education.

References

Ala-Harja, Marjukka e Sigurdur Helgason. 2014. "Em direção às melhores práticas de avaliação". *Revista do Serviço Público* v. 51 n. 4, pp. 5–60. https://doi.org/10.21874/rsp.v51i4.334.

Bilella, Pablo, D. Rodriguez, et al. 2016. "Diretrizes para avaliação para a América Latina e o Caribe". *Buenos Aires*. <www.deval.org/fileadmin/Redaktion/Bilder/2016_FINAL_ESTANDARES_DIGITAL_PORTUGUES.pdf>.

Bloch, Carter, et al. 2014. "Developing a methodology to assess the impact of research grant funding: A mixed methods approach". *Evaluation and Program Planning* v. 43, pp. 105–117. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.evalprogplan.2013.12.005.

Ceneviva, Ricardo e Marta Ferreira Santos Farah. 2012. "Avaliação, informação e responsabilização no Setor Público". *Revista de Administração Pública* v. 46 n. 4. Rio de Janeiro, RJ:993–1016. <https://bibliotecadigital.fgv.br/ojs/index.php/rap/article/view/7121>.

CIDACS. 2021. "Centro de Integração de Dados e Conhecimentos para Saúde". *Quem somos*. Disponível em: <https://cidacs.bahia.fiocruz.br/sobre/quem-somos/>.

Cohen, Ernesto e Rolando Franco. 2008. *Avaliação de projetos sociais*. 8. ed. Rio de Janeiro: Vozes.

Costa, António Firmino da, et al. 2013. "Mixed-methods evaluation in complex programmes: The national reading plan in Portugal". *Evaluation and Program Planning* v. 39, pp. 1–9. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.evalprogplan.2013.02.001.

Costa, Frederico Lustosa da e José Cezar Castanhar. 2003. "Avaliação De Programas Públicos: Desafios Conceituais E metodológicos". *Revista De Administração Pública* v. 37, n. 5. Rio de Janeiro, RJ, pp. 969–992. <https://bibliotecadigital.fgv.br/ojs/index.php/rap/article/view/6509>.

Cotta, Tereza Cristina. 1998. "Metodologias de avaliação de Programas e Projetos Sociais: Análise de Resultados e de Impacto". *Revista do Serviço Público* v. 49, n. 2, pp. 103–124. https://doi.org/10.21874/rsp.v49i2.368.

Cotta, Tereza Cristina. 2001. "Avaliação Educacional e políticas Públicas: A Experiência do Sistema Nacional de Avaliação da Educação Básica (Saeb)". *Revista do Serviço Público* v. 52, n. 4, pp. 89–111. https://doi.org/10.21874/rsp.v52i4.316.

Cruz, Marly. M. 2015. "Avaliação de políticas e programas de saúde: contribuições para o debate". In *Caminhos para análise das políticas de saúde* edited by Ruben Araujo de Mattos e Tatiana Wargas de Faria Baptista. Porto Alegre: Rede Unida, pp. 285–317.

Derlien, Hans-Ulrich. 2001. "Una comparación Internacional De La evaluación De Las políticas Públicas". *Revista do Serviço Público* v. 52, n. 1, pp. 105–123. https://doi.org/10.21874/rsp.v52i1.302.

EVALPARTNERS. 2015. Global Evaluation Agenda 2016–2020. <www.evalpartners.org/sites/default/files/documents/EvalAgenda2020.pdf>.

EVALPARTNERS. 2016. Global evaluation agenda. <www.evalpartners.org/global-evaluation-agenda>.

Faria, Carlos Aurélio P. 2005. "A política da avaliação de políticas públicas". *Revista Brasileira de Ciências Sociais* v. 20, n. 59, pp. 97–109. https://doi.org/10.1590/S0102-69092005000300007.

Feinstein, Osvaldo. 2019. "Dynamic evaluation for transformational change". In *Evaluation For Transformational Change* edited by Rob D. van den Berg, Cristina Magro e Silvia Salinas Mulder, pp. 17–31. Exeter, United Kingdom: International Development Evaluation Association (IDEAS).

FGV CLEAR. 2021. Centro de Aprendizagem em Avaliação e Resultados para o Brasil e a África Lusófona (FGV EAESP Clear). <http://fgvclear.org/pt/sobre-o-fgv-clear/>.

Howlett, Michael, M. Ramesh e A. Perl. 2013. *Política pública – seus ciclos e subsistemas: uma abordagem integral*. Rio de Janeiro: Elsevier.

Instituto Brasileiro de Geografia e Estatística – IBGE. 2018. Indicadores ODS <https://ods.ibge.gov.br>.

Mokate, Karen Marrie. 2002. "Convirtiendo el 'monstruo' en aliado: la evaluación como herramienta de la gerencia social". *Revista do Serviço Público* v. 53, n. 1, pp. 89–134. <https://repositorio.enap.gov.br/handle/1/1964>.

Oliveira, Lilian Ribeiro de. 2018. Políticas públicas sociais: avaliação e integração entre assistência social e saúde pública no estado de São Paulo [tese]. Ribeirão Preto: Faculdade de Economia, Administração e Contabilidade de Ribeirão Preto da Universidade de São Paulo. Doi:10.11606/T.96.2019.tde-08042019-093527.

Oliveira, Lilian Ribeiro de e Claudia Souza Passador. 2019. "Theoretical essay on public policy evaluations". *Cadernos EBAPE. BR* v. 17, pp. 324–337. https://doi.org/10.1590/1679-395169657.

Organisation for Economic Co-Operation and Development – OECD. 2002. *Glossary of key terms in evaluation and results-based management*. Paris: OECD.

Organisation for Economic Co-Operation and Development – OECD. 2016. Measuring distance to the SDGs targets: A pilot assessment of where OECD countries stand. <www.oecd.org/std/oecd-measuring-distance-to-the%20sdgs-target-pilot-study-web.pdf>.

Organização das Nações Unidas – ONU. 2015. Transformando nosso mundo: a agenda 2030 para o desenvolvimento sustentável. <https://nacoesunidas.org/pos2015/agenda2030/>.

Organização das Nações Unidas – ONU. 2016. Global Evaluation Agenda: Eval2016–2020. [s.l]: EvalPartners.

Patton, Michael Quinn. 1999. Utilization-focused evaluation in Africa. <http://gametlibrary.worldbank.org/FILES/284_Utilisation%20Focused%20evaluation%20in%20Africa.pdf>.

Picciotto, Robert. 2015. "Democratic evaluation for the 21st century". *Evaluation* v. 21, n. 2, pp. 150–166. https://doi.org/10.1177%2F1356389015577511.

Picciotto, Robert. 2019. "Is evaluation obsolete in a post-truth world?". *Evaluation and Program Planning* v. 73, pp. 88–96. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.evalprogplan.2018.12.006.

Picciotto, Robert. 2020. "Towards a complexity framework for transformative evaluation". *Journal of MultiDisciplinary Evaluation* v. 16, n. 35, pp. 54–76. <https://journals.sfu.ca/jmde/index.php/jmde_1/article/view/643>.

Picciotto, Robert. 2021. "Evaluation as a social practice: Disenchantment, rationalities and ethics". *Evaluation and Program Planning* v. 87, p. 101927. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.evalprogplan.2021.101927.

Programa das Nações Unidas para o Desenvolvimento – PNUD. 2016. Objetivos de desenvolvimento sustentável. <www.pnud.org.br/ods.aspx>.

Queiroz, Lucia de Fatima Nascimento de e Mauro Guilherme Maidana Capelari. 2020. "Condições para avaliação de resultados em políticas públicas: um debate sobre o papel da institucionalidade". *Revista de Administração Pública* v. 54, n. 3, pp. 433–447. <https://bibliotecadigital.fgv.br/ojs/index.php/rap/article/view/81261>.

Ramos, Marília P. e Letícia M. Schabbach. 2012. "O estado da arte da avaliação de políticas públicas: conceituação e exemplos de avaliação no Brasil". *Revista de Administração Pública, Rio de Janeiro* v. 46, n. 5, pp. 1271–1294. https://doi.org/10.1590/S0034-76122012000500005.

Rossi, Peter H. e James D. Wright. 1984. "Evaluation research: An assessment". *Annual Review of Sociology* v. 10, pp. 331–352. https://doi.org/10.1146/annurev.so.10.080184.001555.

Sano, Hironobu e Mário Jorge França Montenegro Filho. 2013. "As técnicas de avaliação da Eficiência, eficácia e Efetividade na gestão Pública e sua relevância para o Desenvolvimento Social e das ações públicas". *Desenvolvimento Em Questão* v. 11, n. 22, pp. 35–61. https://doi.org/10.21527/2237-6453.2013.22.35-61.

Scriven, Michael. 1991. *Evaluation thesaurus*. 4. ed. Newbury Park, CA: Sage.

Silveira, S. F. R., et al. 2013. "Políticas públicas: monitorar e avaliar para quê?" In *Políticas públicas, gestão e sociedade* edited by M. A. M. Ferreira and L. A. Abrantes. Viçosa: Triunfal, pp. 301–327.

Sophie Project. 2012. Evaluating the impact of structural policies on health inequalities and their social determinants, and fostering change (SOPHIE). <www.sophie-project.eu/project.htm>.

Sophie Project. 2015. Conclusions. <www.sophie-project.eu/pdf/conclusions.pdf>.

Spink, Peter. 2001. "Avaliação democrática: propostas e prática". *Fundamentos de Avaliação* n. 3, pp. 7–25. <www.abiaids.org.br/_img/media/colecao%20fundamentos%20avaliacao%20N3.pdf>.

Trevisan, Andrei Pittol e Hans Michael Van Bellen. 2008. "Avaliação de políticas públicas: uma revisão teórica de um campo em construção". *Revista de Administração Pública* v. 42, n. 3, pp. 529–550. https://doi.org/10.1590/S0034-76122008000300005.

Valle-Cruz, David, et al. 2020. "Assessing the public policy-cycle framework in the age of artificial intelligence: From agenda-setting to policy evaluation". *Government Information Quarterly* v. 37, n. 4, pp. 101509–101520. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.giq.2020.101509.

Vedung, Evert. 2009. *Public policy and program evaluation*. New Brunswick, NJ: Transaction.

Vedung, Evert. 2010. "Four waves of evaluation diffusion". *Evaluation* v. 16, n. 3, pp. 263–277. https://doi.org/10.1177%2F1356389010372452.

Weiss, Carol H. 1998. "Have we learned anything new about the use of evaluation?" *American Journal of Evaluation* v. 19, n. 1, pp. 21–33. https://doi.org/10.1016/S1098-2140(99)80178-7.

Weiss, Carol H. 1999. "The interface between evaluation and public policy". *Evaluation* v. 5, n. 4, pp. 468–486. https://doi.org/10.1177%2F135638909900500408

30

POLICY EVALUATION INSTRUMENTS

Tools for Learning

Antje Witting

This chapter encapsulates current thinking on the kinds of tools that can be deployed in order to enhance learning and evidence use in a policy-making context. It starts with an overview of the key concepts before introducing contemporary theories on policy learning that utilize them. Crucial here are the questions What tools are available? and How do you know which to use when? Underlying these questions is the assumption of policy-oriented learning. In other words, it is being assumed that an average person, not a super human being, actively searches for information to better understand a policy issue and possible solutions. However, the theories and tools that are being reviewed for this chapter do pay attention to the fact that not all human beings share the same training, experiences or cognitive capacity and that their capacity to use these resources also depends on contextual factors, such as the nature of the issue. Metaphorical examples that outline the tools' potential uses at the different stages of the policy process are used to explore answers to the questions stated in this chapter.

Introduction

As we have seen in earlier chapters, policy formulation and implementation rely heavily on public officials who evaluate the success or failure of a specific policy design (the content and structural logic of public policy) to integrate these insights at a practical and political level. To ensure their findings are actually incorporated at a political and practical level, evaluators need to understand who wants the results and for what purpose. Evaluators also need to know whether the evaluation procedures are practical (given the time, resources and expertise available), if the evaluation is being conducted in a fair and ethical way and whether approaches at each step are accurate, given stakeholder needs and evaluation purpose. In addition, evaluators also rely on their skills to verify the scientific quality of their research and integrate their insights at the political and practical level. Studies show that policy-relevant advice can dominate a policy choice if it is salient (or relevant), credible and legitimate (Cash & Belloy 2020; Cash et al. 2003).

The notion "policy capacity" can be used to conceptualise this interplay of analytical, managerial and political knowledge and skills of individuals engaged in the policy process, such as the public officials evaluating a policy design, and organisational and system level capacities, such as effective inter- and intra-organisational communication (Painter & Pierre 2010). Whether an increase in policy capacity ultimately also increases the likelihood that these individuals learn

DOI: 10.4324/9781003163954-37

about policy failures and success stands to debate. The contribution presented here explores this question at an individual level. First, it elaborates on the definition of policy capacity at an individual level. Second, it explores the notion that the learning tools associated with collaborative settings drive the development of policy capacity at an individual level.

Learning About Policy Failures and Successes

At the policy evaluation stage, public officials search and adapt to information about the success or failure of a policy design (Howlett et al. 2009). This search takes many shapes, as de Oliveira and Passador elaborate on in their chapter. Generally speaking, individuals engaged in an evaluation usually pursue scientific and technical knowledge about shortcomings in the content and structural logic of public policy. Scholars observe that this is hardly ever a linear process. Definitions of complex policy issues and potential political solutions are constantly renegotiated. Public officials are assumed to be rational in their pursuit of knowledge but are limited in their ability to acquire and use new insights (Sabatier 1988).

Over time, public officials are expected to develop analytical capacity: that is, the knowledge and skills needed to conduct and communicate policy analyses and evaluations, such as environmental scanning, trends analysis and forecasting methods, theoretical research, statistics, applied research and modelling and evaluation of the means of meeting targets or goals (Wu et al. 2017). Furthermore, public officials need to hone their political capacities to understand their fundamentally political environment (Peters 2015; Goodsell 2011), including insights about positions, interests, resources and strategies of key players involved in the formulation and implementation of the policy and the practical implications of proposed policy changes (Wu et al. 2010). Finally, officials need to ensure that proposals can be implemented in practice through effective planning, staffing, budgeting, delegating, directing and coordinating. A lack of such managerial capacity may result in policy recommendations and eventually decisions that are sound in theory or principle but fall apart in practice (Wu et al. 2015).

To avoid ineffective or inappropriate policy monitoring and/or feedback processes and structures, public officials must develop sufficient analytical, managerial and political capacities (Howlett 2009). In addition, they must also develop the interpersonal relationships needed to communicate their insights and the intended course of action horizontally, within and across policy domains; to understand the requirements for a specific policy and its effects from different perspectives; to reduce duplication; and to identify possible unknowns. In particular, non-elected officials are expected to ensure that policy and political expertise concerning the formulation, implementation and evaluation of a policy design filters from the top level through to the "street" level of the organisation and vice versa. This requires vertical communication (Torfing et al. 2012). In addition, it requires outward communication, as public officials seek support in their political battles (Goodsell 2011). Policy analysts tend to define the emerging systems as policy subsystems (Sabatier 1988). Policy subsystems usually involve a broad set of individuals, such as officials and politicians within government managing the policy in question, a policy-research community supporting them and members of the public with an interest in a government's policy record (Peters 2015). Policy subsystems form at earlier stages of the policy cycle and constitute the context in which individuals acquire, make sense of and disseminate information at the policy evaluation stage (Sabatier 1988). The political nature of judgments about policy success and failure also implies that such assessments are rarely unanimous (Howlett 2009).

Scholars in the field of public policy analysis observe that individuals in a policy subsystem who share a similar perception of an issue and preference for a specific solution cluster into advocacy

coalitions (Jenkins-Smith et al. 2014). Regular and trust-based interactions in an advocacy coalition bias judgments as to the nature of the problem and the effectiveness and beneficiaries of specific solutions and subsequently help rationalise prior steps in the policy process (Weible et al. 2010). These biases may manifest as self-interested, corrupt or clientelistic behaviour (see Capano & Howlett 2020) or "placebo policies" (McConnell 2020, p. 965). Mukherjee et al. (2021) argue that the difference in their policy capacity determines whether policy officials can rationally assess the risks of policy failure or perverse outcomes. The available evidence base highlights the importance of developing policy capacity at an individual but also organisational and system level.

Policy Capacity at an Individual Level

More specifically, policy analysts observe that individuals in a policy subsystem develop deeply rooted cognitive filters that help them effectively address policy issues in familiar situations by using heuristic processing (Jenkins-Smith et al. 2014). Policy analysts also observe that individuals with high analytical capacity are more actively engaged in the search for information (Weible et al. 2011), not accounting for factors that impact the actual access and means to analyse information (see, e.g., Wu et al. 2017). Witting (2017) proposes that four categories of learners can be distinguished along these two cognitive dimensions (see Figure 30.1): novices who utilise basic logical reasoning skills but generally lack specialised knowledge to solve task-related problems effectively by using heuristic processing; specialists with basic logical reasoning skills, who engage in routinised tasks and have specialised knowledge applicable only within a particular environment; advisors with advanced logical reasoning skills who accumulate specialised knowledge applicable only within a particular environment; and scientists with extremely potent abstract reasoning skills and working memory (possessing academic abilities that are considered general knowledge in most cultures, such as historic knowledge, literacy and numeracy). This predisposition increases the potential that they can use reasoning to identify optimal solutions.

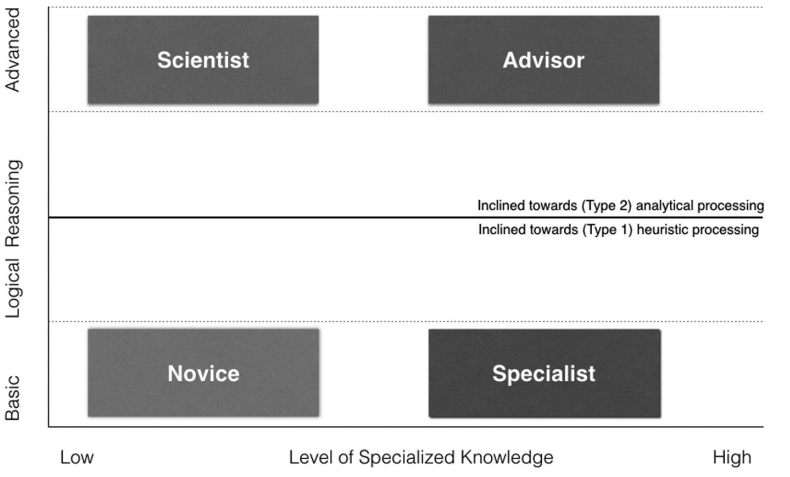


Figure 30.1 Learner Types

Source: Witting 2017 (reprinted with permission)

Looking Beyond a Person's Analytical Capacity

The issues for which subsystem members with different analytical capacities seek optimal solutions are often too complex to be fully comprehended by one individual alone. They reach out and connect with one another. When confronted with an ambiguous evidence base, individuals tend to connect to others who advocate a similar approach or perspective. For example, a study comparing the flow of information during a post-flood evaluation finds that the engaged individuals do not rely excessively on one person to distribute information between departments or private sector partners (Witting et al. 2019, 2020). Depending on their analytical and managerial skills, individuals take different positions in a policy subsystem. This affects their political capacities. Theoretically, several positions can be distinguished using measures of betweenness (Howlett et al. 2017). For simplicity, this discussion focuses on three commonly cited positions.

Entrepreneurial position at a coalition's core: Individuals with specialised knowledge may find themselves in an entrepreneurial position at the core of an advocacy coalition when they are invested in the process long term, and their expertise is recognised by their peers (Weible et al. 2004). Policy entrepreneurs are expected to favour knowledge that supports their argument as they seek to attract sufficient support to ensure their preferred outcome. From this, it can be deduced that the learning space of an entrepreneur constitutes the most densely connected and homogenous clusters within a policy subsystem, which can also be defined as the core of an advocacy coalition (Weible 2008). Knowledge circulates within this group. Ingold (2011) finds that this group includes representatives of government agencies or powerful interest groups. Crow (2010) observes entrepreneurs to be the most effective when they have accumulated more technical or managerial expertise over time. Not all entrepreneurs are interested in changing the status quo (Mintrom & Norman 2009). Christopoulos (2006) distinguishes incremental from opportunistic strategies. Incrementalists use their capacity and social capital to build a consensus around the status quo and further institutionalise their advisory position. Opportunists have to first draw attention to their expertise, and they exploit windows of opportunity to do so. Both strategies are at play in policy-making contexts.

Brokerage positions at a subsystem's core: In contrast to entrepreneurs, policy brokers' principle concern is to provide cues for analytical reasoning and to mediate conflict between competing coalitions (Sabatier 1988, p. 133). They are assumed to trigger "new ideas concerning, e.g., causal relationships and policy instruments" (Sabatier 1988, p. 159). Scientists, journalists and civil servants tend to occupy this position at the periphery of each coalition (Ingold & Varone 2012). They engage in dialogue and deliberation with individuals in opposing coalitions (Ingold 2011). They are central members in the network but are only intermittently involved, or involved for a short period, and they do not regularly engage in coalition-related activities (Weible 2008). Thus, brokers play a less integrative role within a coalition but drive collaborations on a subsystem level. This evidence supports the argument that scientists and journalists who interfere in a specific discussion can, for a short period, create bridges via which individuals in opposing coalitions can then send and receive cues for analytical reasoning (Sabatier 1988).

Periphery of a coalition: To borrow a definition found in Mintrom and Norman (2009), "an advocate is an individual who is comfortable working within established institutional arrangements" (ibid. 650). They hold authority or potential for authority to enforce and monitor policy design and implementation, but they are not interested in upsetting the status quo. Advocates may not be central to a coalition's core (like entrepreneurs) or the subsystem as a whole (like brokers), but they are nevertheless skillful leaders with the legal authority, financial means, social capital or knowledge to impact individual and social learning. Montpetit (2011) argues that this can include scientists who share their expertise with policy

entrepreneurs. They are targeted by policy entrepreneurs who seek sufficient support to gain subsystem supremacy. Members of the group who receive cues for analytical reasoning from their exogenous environment may approach brokerage positions as they seek to make sense of their observations (Weible 2008). It is thus expected that advocates constitute the loosely connected periphery of a coalition.

Drivers and Barriers of Evaluative Judgments at an Individual Level

Based on the type of learner and their position in the policy subsystem, we can draw conclusions about their capacity to detect biases in their evaluative judgments (see Table 30.1).

Scientists take on brokerage roles within a specific network, but rarely engage in one particular process for a long period of time. Consequently, they do not have the political skills or enough history in common with other network members for strong relationships to manifest and to ensure that their perspective is heard. One communication barrier is that their analytical reasoning process is slow in comparison to that of advisors, whose specialist knowledge of the issue domain enables them to engage in heuristic reasoning, much like specialists.

Advisors and scientists have a similar academic background, but the advisor acquires more specialist knowledge through experience than the scientist. In contrast to specialists, advisors are trained in critical thinking. Like specialists, they rely on their innate belief structure to quickly arrive at satisfying outcomes. This can result in analytical biases (heuristic processing) as they are involved in the policy subsystem for longer periods of time. This increases the likelihood of judgmental biases forming and makes it less likely for them to inhabit a brokerage position. Unlike specialists, advisors find it easier to detect cognitive conflicts, using their advanced logical reasoning skills, and to adapt their routinised decision behaviour.

Compared to novices, specialists acquire – through experience – sufficient knowledge about specific issues and tools to satisfactorily address such issues. Like novices, they lack advanced training in logical reasoning and are likely to rationalise their judgmental errors. Removing specialists from their domain of expertise or radically changing attributes of the domain would render them equal to a novice. As long as the characteristics of the new domain are similar, cues that link the situations can be used to optimise their response. It is thus not surprising to find specialists at a coalition's core, given their specialist knowledge and social capital for a particular policy context. However, it is expected that specialists are no more than novice advocates when confronted with novel problems and tasks. Specialists use information to rationalise their belief bias. Hence, a direct link between scientists in brokerage positions and specialists in entrepreneurial positions is not beneficial. The latter has to be able to think on their feet and lacks the time to review scientific reports, while the former is less invested in a particular cause and more invested in producing verifiable and generalisable material that describes the bigger picture.

Novices are the slowest learners of them all, due to a lack of specific knowledge and novel problem-solving ability – assuming they just recently joined the policy subsystem. Since they lack the expertise to successfully engage in heuristic reasoning, they are more inclined to process information analytically. Given their basic academic training and lack of specialist knowledge, they are the most likely to inhabit the position of an advocate. Depending on their position in a policy subsystem, novices will be more likely to acquire domain-specific or generalisable knowledge. In other words, depending on their education and contact with scientist brokers or specialist entrepreneurs, novice advocates develop a narrow or broad understanding of the policy problem. However, keep in mind that they may have policy capacities that suit another policy context and thus can take a brokerage position between policy subsystems.

Table 30.1 Capacities of the Different Learner Types

	Analytical Capacities	*Managerial Capacities*	*Political Capacities*
Novice	Basic logical reasoning skills, lacks subsystem-specific knowledge	Highest when person occupies an entrepreneurial position in another subsystem	Capacities to attract advocates from another policy subsystem to an advocacy coalition
Specialist	Specialised knowledge, lacks advanced training in logical reasoning	Highest when person occupies an entrepreneurial position in an advocacy coalition	Capacities to attract advocates to an advocacy coalition
Advisors	Advanced logical reasoning skills and specialised knowledge	Highest when person occupies an entrepreneurial position in an advocacy coalition	Capacities to attract advocates to an advocacy coalition
Scientist	Advanced logical reasoning skills, lacks subsystem-specific knowledge	Highest when person occupies a brokerage position in a policy subsystem	Capacities to mediate conflicts between advocacy coalitions

In sum, managerial and political skills can enforce judgmental errors when the individuals lack the analytical skills necessary to detect biases in their thinking. More specifically, the discussion implies that individuals in entrepreneurial positions would be using their capacity and social capital to build a consensus around the status quo and further institutionalise their advisory position. Resulting, for example, in an evaluative judgment that overestimates a point of view that is overly present in their everyday communications. More importantly, individuals in an entrepreneurial position would have the managerial and political skills to activate sufficient support for what they judge to be the right way forward, even if it is not reflecting a rational assessment of the evaluated phenomenon. The more important are tools with which to support the development of a person's analytical capacity at an organisational and system level, in particular if said person has sufficient analytical and political capacities to bias policy evaluations.

Tools to Develop an Individual's Capacity

If organisations or systems are to build an individual's, and subsequently their capacity for, learning through building individual policy capacity, they rely on all the individuals to be able to send and receive feedback that challenges their evaluative judgments (Ansell & Gash 2008). In other words, to avoid evaluative judgments, they need institutional settings that guide individuals into brokerage positions where they are exposed to different ideas and can weigh the pros and the cons as well as consider the practicalities and political relevance of these ideas.

Scholars specifically observe in their empirical studies that policy-relevant knowledge typically grows from interdisciplinary collaborations, as collaborations can reduce the transaction costs of communication between individuals with divergent mind-sets (Beck 2012, Cash et al. 2003; Cash & Belloy 2020) or at different centres of decision-making (Andersson & Ostrom 2008). Wood and Gray (1991) define a collaboration as a group of autonomous members of a policy subsystem, who, in an interactive process, act or decide on issues related to that domain, following agreed-upon procedures (Wood & Gray 1991, p. 146). Ansell and Gash (2008) adopt a narrower definition. They define a collaboration as a governing arrangement in which one or more public

agencies directly engage non-state stakeholders in a collective decision-making process that is formal, consensus oriented, and deliberative and that aims to make or implement public policy or manage public programs or assets. Their definition describes arrangements which are initiated by public agencies or institutions and include non-state actors. Participants engage directly in decision-making and are not merely "consulted" by public agencies. The forum is formally organised and meets collectively. The forum aims to make decisions by consensus (even if consensus is not achieved in practice), and the focus of collaboration is on public policy or public management. Collaborative structures, such as the one described by Ansell and Gash (2008), are often nested within vertical bureaucracies, if not coordinated by them (Emerson & Nabatchi 2015a). While the types of participants in collaborations may vary from definition to definition, collaborative settings exhibit common design features, introduced next under the headings Diversity in Representation, Balanced Power, Interactive Dialogue and Transparent Procedures.

Diversity in Representation

Diversity of the represented expertise and interests ensures that all stakeholders who can impact an outcome are aware of the issue (Cash et al. 2003). Diversity is seen as boosting learning by providing for different points of view and knowledge types (Heikkila & Gerlak 2015). This is by far a new notion. Public officials in Germany started as early as in the nineteenth century to enhance their policy capacity by inviting scientific expertise to determine the objectives and indicators of a successful policy design. Out of this rationale, the first departmental research institutes (RFEs) emerged in Germany (WR 2004). For example, the growing need of (central) governmental for disease control led to the establishment of the Königlich preußisches Institut für Infektionskrankheiten in 1891, which is today known as Robert Koch Institute (RKI) – a key player in combating the current SARS-CoV-2 pandemic.

RFEs are nowadays publicly funded institutes that either design and initiate policy evaluations themselves or reward universities, research institutions, expert organisations or private enterprises with contracts or grants to do so, following a public tender. More specifically, RFE advisors occupy an entrepreneurial position. They systematically enable the integration of scientific policy advice in the policy process in three steps. In the first step, this contribution is made through integrated work at the research level. RFEs implement interdisciplinary research that is geared to practical problems in a policy field, either through RFE advisors or through commissioning scientists. In the second step, departmental research institutions, through their advisors, integrate the diverse requirements of practice with the options for action of the various scientific disciplines. In this context, they promote a practice-oriented formulation of research questions through integrated work on the one hand, and on the other hand, they filter scientific research results according to their relevance for the practice. In a final step, departmental research institutions exploit scientific findings via formats tailored to target groups, such as advisory in the department. Each of these steps tends to be led by a specialist unit in which RFE advisors cooperate on a day-to-day basis (Böcher & Krott 2010). The divisional organisation of the work, according to the sectoral principle, favours subject specialisation (e.g., better understanding of practical problems and subject expertise in the policy field).

Subject specialisation lowers the transaction costs of communication between representatives of science and policy praxis in a policy subsystem, thus increasing the likelihood that new insights are translated into policy (Böcher 2012). However, in 1997 and 2005, the Science Council (WR) evaluated the scientific quality of RKI research and criticised a lack of diversity (WR 1997, 2005). The WR encouraged the RKI to focus and develop its specialised expertise and keep abreast of the latest scientific developments in order to fulfil its official tasks properly.

In other words, it nudged the institute toward scientists at a brokerage position in a policy subsystem – a nudge commonly found in WR evaluation reports of departmental research institutes (WR 2007, 2010, 2013). As a result of the WR evaluations, the Scientific Advisory Board at the RKI was established in agreement with the Federal Ministry of Health. The members of the Scientific Advisory Board are appointed by the president of the RKI in consultation with the Federal Ministry of Health for four years at a time and are to accompany the RKI in carrying out its professional work at an internationally competitive level. The Scientific Advisory Board regularly meets at least twice a year and also in ad hoc meetings as required. The Advisory Board regularly comments on the professional and scientific performance of the RKI, participates in an advisory capacity in the development of medium- and long-term research goals, promotes trans- and interdisciplinary cooperation and provides expert advice on request. Furthermore, it was agreed that the Scientific Advisory Board would appoint international expert panels to regularly evaluate the scientific work at the RKI on specific topics and to make recommendations for development. All in all, these changes are a blueprint for RFEs that also received the WR nudge as a result of their evaluation.

Balanced Power

Whether these regular meetings alone are sufficient to combat tendencies to underestimate or even ignore the input or expectations of individuals or groups and arrive at faulty evaluative judgments has yet to be established. At first glance, interim feedback that the WR published in 2021 on the institute's performance during the SARS-CoV-2 pandemic suggests this to be the case. While we await the next evaluation report from the WR, first lessons can be extracted from the literature on participatory and collaborative procedures. In their review of this literature, Ansell and Gash (2008) observe that procedural fairness correlates highly with the levels of interpersonal trust among individuals and with the amount of learning and social capital generated within a collaboration. Facilitative leadership may be needed to reach consensus on the procedures of a policy evaluation – in particular when multiple parties with conflicting epistemological and ontological views come together to decide on the research questions, study methods and scientists and analysts who will implement the research. The aim is to design procedures that increase transparency, which can build public trust in authorities and their administrative procedures – a point that Kovač and Nihit approach from different perspectives in their chapters.

The point made in this chapter is that successful leadership can ensure that all the involved parties consider the agreed-on processes and responsibilities to be fair. Leadership can also use moderation techniques to balances the power distribution in an arrangement. For example, ensure that all parties are heard. An equal power distribution increases the incentive to participate – a critical variable in the success or failure of a collaboration. Other critical variables are the development of a shared understanding of what they can collectively achieve and small wins that assure everyone involved that they are heading in the agreed-upon direction (Ansell & Gash 2008).

Presence and commitment are also relevant. Collaborations in which all stakeholders who could be affected by or have a vested interest in the issue are fairly represented increase the legitimacy of their decisions (Emerson & Nabatchi 2015b). For example, Jasanoff (2010) observes that recommendations that emerge from collaborations between a narrow elite of experts who share the commitment to follow scientific rules and norms fail to convince a wider public. Through interactive dialogue and communication, trust can be built, mutual learning and orientation towards the common good can emerge and mutual gains can be identified; all of these factors are assumed to lead to effective decision-making (Cash & Belloy 2020).

Interactive Dialogue

These dynamics are supposed to intensify over time, requiring an interaction of stakeholders that goes well beyond a one-time experience (Emerson & Nabatchi 2015b). Direct dialogue is necessary for stakeholders to identify opportunities for mutual gain and build trust (Ansell & Gash 2008). Renn (2006) argues that collaborations must design mechanisms that go beyond intention and actually enable the incorporation of expertise, as well as different interests and values. In other words, a one-day workshop is not sufficient a collaboration to build policy capacity. Pita et al. (2010) also highlights variations in the perceived levels of participation, ranging from passive (informed) participation to functional participation (stakeholders are actually involved). In theory, successful collaborations also actively employ measures to empower disadvantaged stakeholders and subsequently ensure that all the interests are sufficiently represented in the interactive process (Ansell & Gash 2008). To accomplish this, power imbalances need to be avoided during the deliberation when information is shared amongst the diverse stakeholders (Heikkila & Gerlak 2015). If (some) stakeholders do not have the capacity, organisation, status or resources to participate or to participate on an equal footing with other stakeholders, collaborative efforts will be prone to manipulation by stronger actors (Ansell & Gash 2008). For example, advisors in an entrepreneurial position can dominate novice advocates who may be in a position to transfer impulses from another policy subsystem. This power imbalance subsequently increases the risk that the judgmental biases of a few lay the foundation of policy failure that affects all.

Limits of Developing an Individual's Policy Capacity in a Collaborative Setting

Scholars also caution that the management of collaborations is resource intensive, which doesn't always result in positive outcomes (Matczak et al. 2018). The limits of collaborative policy designs for developing policy capacity at an individual level can be illustrated with several examples.

The first example is drawn from an observation of a temporary post-crisis collaboration. Witting et al. (2021) deduce from studies of collaborative, participatory governance arrangements strategies to systematically identify and evaluate the properties of an individual's learning space that are indicative of a collaborative setting. In a related study of individuals in a collaboration that evaluated a devastating flash flood in South-West Germany, Witting et al. (2020) observe, by overlaying individual networks, that scientists occupied a fringe position in the otherwise well-integrated network of specialists. Furthermore, the evidence presented in this study highlights the time associated with deliberative bridging activities between specialists, such as regular inter- und transdisciplinary workshops to monitor the progress of different design aspects. The surveyed specialists explained this pattern with a lack of time; in particular after the flash-flood event, they faced immense public pressure to deliver an risk assessment and unintentionally opted against the integration of new scientific expertise in their communication flow. However, they did consider the evidence when the pressure decreased. The evidence also shows that specialists were willing but overwhelmed by the task of coordinating their plans and actions across administrative levels over a prolonged period of time. Finally, the study finds that this collaboration profited from an already-existing culture of collaboration in the policy field in which these individuals operated (Witting et al. 2019).

The role of departmental research institutes (RFEs) in assessing the risks of the COVID-19 pandemic for the German government is an example to illustrate the advantages and shortcomings of an institutionalised collaborative design. The experiences from the current SARS-CoV-2 pandemic show the enormous importance of RFEs. In particular, the RKI and the RFE for

vaccination and biometrics (Paul Ehrlich Institute) comprehensively engaged at the policy evaluation stage since the beginning of the crisis and are significantly involved in all relevant crisis teams. The prompt transfer of knowledge from scientists to advisors in both RFEs to specialists in their respective departments, facilitated through additional resources for collaborative crisis management, are essential for the German government's ability to quickly assess the usefulness of specific policy designs. In its position paper "Impulses from the COVID 19 crisis for the further development of the science system in Germany" from January 2021, the WR acknowledges this fact. However, the WR also observes a lack of subsystem-spanning structures that would help all RFEs coordinate their contributions with another more intensively to ensure that all crisis-related issues are equally recognised (WR 2021).

Two lessons can be taken away from these two examples for the next crisis ahead. First, specialists cannot humanly comply with the task of deliberating evaluative procedures and actions across policy subsystems over a prolonged period of time without supportive tools. Second, the challenge ahead is to create structures that facilitate cross-subsystem interaction in a crisis while also supporting high levels of specialised knowledge transfer and quality assurance within each subsystem.

Conclusion: Evaluating Changes in Policy Capacity

As stated at the outset of this chapter, the discussion is motivated by the question of whether an increase in policy capacity ultimately also increases the likelihood that individuals learn about policy failures and success at the evaluation stage. The first part of the chapter elaborated on the literature conceptualising the interplay of analytical, managerial and political knowledge and skills of individuals engaged in the policy process. It highlights different learner types. The second part reflects on the notion that the learning tools associated with collaborative settings drive the development of policy capacity at an individual level. It refers to two examples showing that collaborations can establish and mediate communication between specialists at the political level and the community of scientists but still lack the capacity needed to rationally scrutinise and further develop their insights through external quality assurance.

The more important are attempts to evaluate the effect of these tools on the development of an individual's policy capacity. Hence, this discussion concludes with some thoughts on recent methodological developments in the field that allow us to do just that. The majority of the empirical examples cited here rely on a metaphorical approach to describing policy capacity at the different levels. Metaphorical approaches tend to capture data (for example, through stakeholder interviews or a document analysis) concerning what individuals are involved in decision-making and the interdependence of a given group without seeking to describe these connections in more detail (see, e.g., Cash & Belloy 2020; Beck 2012). As we have seen, these studies do not necessarily identify the type of relationship under consideration (e.g., information exchange, formal reporting structure). Researchers often fail to capture details about who exactly interacts with whom (via whom), the frequency of these interactions and the specific direction or purpose (content) of a given relationship. In contrast, comparatively few of the cited studies employ social network analysis to describe governance arrangements (see, e.g., Howlett 2017). It seems that network surveys are particularly useful for studying changes in the properties of policy subsystems, such as changes of individuals in the bridging positions that mediate between otherwise disconnected pockets of communication, and their influence on policy development. This level of detail is needed to understand why some advice dominates the other in the policy process. However, evaluations of policy subsystems as a whole are time consuming and cannot always be justified on the grounds of the utility and feasibility of these

types of appraisals. Hence, some scholars focus on parts of these structures, such as an individual's immediate social environment (Witting et al. 2019, 2020).

The challenge ahead is to intelligently combine the available analytical approaches to study the knowledge and skills of individuals in the policy process and the factors that drive or hinder their efforts to integrate new insights at a practical or political level. This way, we can gradually expand the available evidence base of the effects of the different learning tools on an individual's policy capacity. Ideally, these evaluative practices will be used to evaluate the effect of these tools on the development of an individual's policy capacity.

References

Andersson KP, Ostrom E (2008) Analyzing decentralized resource regimes from a polycentric perspective. *Policy Sciences*, 41(1): 71–93.

Ansell C, Gash A (2008) Collaborative governance in theory and practice. *Journal of Public Administration Research and Theory*, 18(4): 543–571.

Beck S (2012) From truth to trust: Lessons learned from "Climategate". In: Hogl K, Kvarda E, Nordbeck R, Pregernig M (eds) *Environmental governance: The challenge of legitimacy and effectiveness*. Cheltenham: Edward Elgar, pp. 220–241.

Böcher M (2012) Wissenschaftsbasierte Politikberatung auf Abruf: Zur Rolle von Ressortforschungseinrichtungen für Ministerien am Beispiel der Politikberatung des Umweltbundesamtes. *dms*, 5(2): 459–480.

Böcher M, Krott M (2010) Umsetzung des Konzepts einer Modernen Ressortforschung im Geschäftsbereich des BMU. *Umweltbundesamt*, 39.

Capano G, Howlett, M (2020) The knowns and unknowns of policy instrument analysis: Policy tools and the current research agenda on policy mixes. *Sage OPEN*, January–March: 1–13.

Cash DW, Belloy PC (2020) Salience, credibility and legitimacy in a rapidly shifting world of knowledge and action. *Sustainability*, 12(7376).

Cash DW, Clark WC, Alcock F, Dicksin NM, Ecklex N, Jäger J (2003) Salience, credibility, legitimacy and boundaries: Linking research, assessment and decision making. KSG Working Papers Series.

Christopoulos DC (2006) Relational attributes of political entrepreneurs: A network perspective. *Journal of European Public Policy*, 13(5): 757–778.

Crow DA (2010) Policy entrepreneurs, issue experts, and water rights policy change in Colorado. *Rev Policy Res*, 27(3): 299–315.

Emerson K, Nabatchi T (2015a). Collaborative governance and collaborative governance regimes. In Emerson K, Nabatchi T (eds) *Collaborative governance regimes*. Washington, DC: Georgetown University Press (Public management and change series), pp. 14–36.

Emerson K, Nabatchi T (2015b). Initiating collaborative governance: The system context, drivers, and regime formation. In Emerson K, Nabatchi T (eds) *Collaborative governance regimes*. Washington, DC: Georgetown University Press (Public management and change series), pp. 39–56.

Goodsell CT (2011) *Mission mystique: Belief systems in public agencies*. Washington, DC: CQ Press.

Heikkila T, Gerlak A. (2015) Collaboration dynamics: Principled engagement, shared motivation, and the capacity for joint action. In Emerson K, Nabatchi T (eds) *Collaborative governance regimes*. Washington, DC: Georgetown University Press (Public management and change series), pp. 57–80.

Howlett M (2009) Policy analytical capacity and evidence-based policy making: Lessons from Canada. *Can Public Adm*, 52(2): 153–175.

Howlett M, Mukherjee I, Koppenjan J (2017) Policy learning and policy networks in theory and practice: The role of policy brokers in the Indonesian biodiesel policy network. *Policy and Society*, 36(2): 233–250.

Ingold K (2011) Network structures within policy power, and brokerage in Swiss climate policy. *Policy Stud J*, 39(3): 435–459.

Ingold K, Varone F (2012) Treating policy brokers seriously: Evidence from the climate policy. *J Public Adm Res Theory*, 22(2): 319–346.

Jasanoff S (2010) *Climate science: The world is its jury*. Prepared for 2010 Global Corruption Report, Transparency International. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press.

Jenkins-Smith HC, Silva CL, Gupta K, Ripberger JT (2014) Belief system continuity and change in policy advocacy coalitions: Using cultural theory to specify belief systems, coalitions, and sources of change. *Policy Stud J* 42(4): 484–508.

Matczak P, LewAndowski J, Choryn ski A, Szwed M, Kundzewicz ZW (2018) Doing more while remaining the same? Stability and change in polish flood risk governance. *Journal of Flood Risk Management*, 11(3): 239–249.

McConnell A (2020) The use of placebo policies to escape from policy traps. *Journal of European Public Policy*, 27(7): 957–976.

Mintrom M, Norman P (2009) Policy entrepreneurship and policy change. *Policy Stud J* 37(4): 649–667.

Montpetit É (2011) Scientific credibility, disagreement, and error costs in 17 bio-technology policy subsystems. *Policy Stud J* 39(3): 513–533.

Mukherjee I, Coban MK, Bali AZ (2021) Policy capacities and effective policy design: Review. *Policy Sciences*, 54: 243–268.

Painter M, Pierre J (2010) *Unpacking policy capacity: Themes and issues*. Basingstoke: Macmillan.

Peters BG (2015) Policy capacity in public administration. *Policy and Society*, 34(3–4): 219–228.

Pita C, Pierce GJ, Theodossiou I (2010) Stakeholders' participation in the fisheries management decision-making process: Fishers' perceptions of participation. *Marine Policy*, 34(5): S. 1093–1102.

Renn O (2006) Participatory processes for designing environmental policies. *Land Use Policy*, 23(1): 34–43.

Sabatier PA (1988) An advocacy coalition framework of policy change and the role of policy-oriented learning therein. *Policy Sci*, 21: 129–168.

Torfing J, Peters BG, Pierre J, Sørensen E (2012) *Interactive governance: Advancing the paradigm*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.

Weible CM (2008) Expert-based information and policy subsystems: A review and synthesis. *Policy Stud J* 36(4): 615–636.

Weible CM, Elgin DJ, Pattison A (2011) Political analytical capacity and policy activities. *Assoc Public Policy Anal Manag* 6(1): 1–30.

Weible CM, Pattison A, Sabatier PA (2010) Harnessing expert-based information for learning and the sustainable management of complex socio-ecological systems. *Environ Sci Policy* 13(6): 522–534.

Weible CM, Sabatier PA, Lubell M (2004) A comparison of a collaborative and topdown approach to the use of science in policy: Establishing marine protected areas in California. *Policy Stud J* 32(2): 187–207.

Witting A (2017) Insights from 'policy learning' on how to enhance the use of evidence by policymakers. *Palgrave Communications* 49.

Witting A, Brandenstein F, Kochskämper E (2021) Evaluating learning spaces in flood risk management in Germany: Lessons for governance research. *J Flood Risk Management* 14(2): e12682, Online.

Witting A, BrAndenstein F, Lucía-Vela A, Zarfl C (2019) Throwing sticks and stones at a window of opportunity: Scientific scrutiny and flood risk governance changes in Baden Württemberg after the 2016 shock. Research Paper 3, Konstanz, Germany.

Witting A, Brandenstein F, Shato K (2020) Hidden knowledge brokers and their informants: Introducing an egocentric and respondence driven analysis in a public service context. *Environ. Policy Gov.*, 20: 1–13.

Wood DJ, Gray B (1991) Toward a comprehensive theory of collaboration. *Journal of Applied Behavioral Science*, 27(2): 139–162.

WR (1997) Stellungnahme zum Robert Koch-Institut (RKI), Berlin (Drs. 3226–97), November.

WR (2004) Empfehlungen zur Entwicklung der Rahmenbedingungen der Forschung in Ressortforschungseinrichtungen: am Beispiel der Forschungsanstalten in der Zuständigkeit es Bundesministeriums für Verbraucherschutz, Ernährung und Landwirtschaft (BMVEL), Berlin (Drs.5910-04), January.

WR (2005) Stellungnahme zum Robert Koch-Institut (RKI), Berlin (Drs. 6870–05), November.

WR (2007) Empfehlungen zur Rolle und künftigen Entwicklung der Bundeseinrichtungen mit FuE-Aufgaben, Drs. 7702–07, Berlin, Januar.

WR (2010) Empfehlungen zur Profilierung der Einrichtungen mit Ressortforschungsaufgaben des Bundes, Lübeck (Drs. 10295–10), November.

WR (2013) Kriterien des Evaluationsausschusses für die Begutachtung von Einrichtungen mit Ressortforschungsaufgaben des Bundes, Drs. 3078–13 Köln, Juli.

WR (2021) Impulse aus der COVID-19-Krise für die Weiterentwicklung des Wissenschaftssystems in Deutschland: Positionspapier, Drs.8834-21, January.

Wu X, Howlett M, Ramesh M (2015). Blending skill and resources across multiple levels of activity: Competences, capabilities and the policy capacities of government. *Policy and Society*, 34(3–4): 173–182.

Wu, X, Howlett M, Ramesh M (2017) *Policy capacity and governance: Assessing governmental competences and capabilities in theory and practice*. Cham, Switzerland: Springer Nature.

Wu X, RaMesh M, Howlett M, Fritzen S (2010). *The public policy primer: Managing public policy*. London: Routledge.

31

TOOLS IN INTERNAL AND EXTERNAL EVALUATIONS

Nihit Goyal and Michael Howlett

One way of classifying evaluations is based on the location of the evaluation, i.e., external evaluation, internal evaluation, or hybrid evaluation. This chapter examines whether and how the difference in the location of evaluators influences the choice of approaches, tools, and procedural issues in policy evaluation. Subsequently, it illustrates the differences in these dimensions of evaluation through a discussion of external and internal evaluation in the case of the Asian Development Bank and multilateral development aid.

Introduction

The research on procedural policy tools has shown that a variety of tools help governments organize and steer the policy process. These types of tools can be used at all stages of the policy process, including agenda-setting, decision-making, implementation, and evaluation. Other chapters in this book highlight the use of some of these tools during policy evaluation. These include behavioral tools and those that encourage public participation in evaluation, for example. This chapter continues this discussion.

It must be noted at the outset, of course, that evaluations can be of many different types. For instance, they could be administrative, judicial, or political. Further, they can be done by the public – based on the policy record of the incumbent or the policy proposal of another political party – in the form of elections. Another useful way of classifying an evaluation is based less on who carries it out and more on what is evaluated. In this manner, they can be grouped into categories depending on whether they evaluate inputs, processes, or outcomes, for example. Evaluations also differ in what time period they cover. Illustratively, life cycle assessments, which are used mainly in the case of environmental decision-making or impact, consider the complete biophysical cycle in the evaluation. The different stages might include extraction of resources, processing, manufacturing, distribution, use, recycling (if any), and disposal (Lee, Benavides, & Wang, 2020). Life cycle assessment has been used, for example, to evaluate the impact of wastewater treatment; however, what is excluded or included in the analysis is not standardized and may vary significantly based on the evaluator (Yoshida, Christensen, & Scheutz, 2013).

Another way of thinking about evaluations that is common in the literature is based on the location of the evaluators: internal or external. Fundamentally, an evaluation can be conducted internally, externally, or through a hybrid design (Hildén, Jordan, & Rayner, 2014; Schoenefeld

DOI: 10.4324/9781003163954-38

& Jordan, 2017; Weiss, 1993). An inside, government-driven, or formal evaluation is conducted by evaluators 'internal' to the government; in contrast, an outside, society-driven, or informal evaluation is conducted by evaluators 'external' to the government (Mathison, 1991; Vedung, 2006). Meanwhile, a hybrid design enables both internal and external evaluators to directly or indirectly work together in evaluating the policy or program.

This chapter examines how this difference in the location of the evaluator influences the choice of evaluative policy tools. We explore this distinction in some detail to help explain the approaches and tools involved in policy or program evaluation and how they vary in subject matter and effectiveness, among other aspects.

Internal and External Evaluation

As noted earlier, key questions concerning program or policy evaluation have always been 'who should exercise the evaluation and how should it be organized?' (Vedung, 2006). While this can refer to which branch of government or civil society carries out the evaluation, it has proven useful in the field to distinguish between these two groups in terms of whether or not an evaluation is carried out 'internally' – that is, organized and conducted by the same body or agency or government that creates, decides, or implements policy – or 'externally' by some more 'arms-length' individual or body.

This is a useful distinction to make when considering policy evaluation as a 'policy tool': that is, a creation of government used to accomplish some end or goal. In this sense, the choice of the location of the evaluator can be seen to be closely linked to the objectives or purpose of the evaluation.

Generally speaking, an external evaluation is perceived as being more objective than an internal one (Barrington, 2005) due to its independence from the agency or institution that creates both the policy and its evaluative rubric and processes. It is believed that external evaluators are more likely to be forthright in their judgments as to the merits and demerits of a policy as they have no or little direct relationship with the subject of the evaluation (Barrington, 2005). On the other hand, internal evaluators are thought to be more likely to be constrained by financial incentives or professional ties within the creating and evaluating organization (Christie, 2008; Sonnighsen, 2000). Thus, they are perceived to be more likely to be subjective in conducting the evaluation and/or reporting its findings (Love, 2005). Thus, external evaluation might be favored when the primary purpose is accountability.

As with all policy tools, external evaluations, too, have strengths and weaknesses. External evaluators may have a broader perspective and independence, but internal evaluators may have higher-information processing capacity and access to specialized information and records, which external evaluators may not. External evaluators may also lack tacit knowledge about the program or policy in question and be overly reliant on formal structures and processes in setting the parameters of their investigations and carrying them out (Barrington, 2005; Levin-Rozalis, 2010). An in-depth understanding of the relevant context, processes, and programs also enables internal evaluators to tailor the evaluation to meet the needs of the organization (Love, 2005). Thus, internal evaluation might be favored when the primary purpose is learning and improvement (Mutch, 2012).

As a result of these differences, the specific kinds of tools used in different types of evaluations also tend to vary.

Approaches in Evaluation

That is, a variety of choices and approaches exist for evaluation in public policy. At the outset, as mentioned earlier, one can distinguish between input-based, process-based, and outcome-based

evaluation, all of which involve different kinds of information and assessment tools when they are carried out (Pal, 2005). While an input-based evaluation focuses on the effective use of resources to achieve policy objectives, an outcome-based evaluation aims to understand the outcomes or impacts created by a program or policy, analyze the extent to which they meet stated goals, contrast them with the likely outcomes in the absence of a program or policy, or assess the extent to which they are beneficial for different stakeholders (Schalock, 2001). In contrast to these first two types, process-based evaluation delves into the manner in which the program or policy was formulated, adopted, or implemented and the role of stakeholders therein.

Arguably, the most common approaches or techniques used in external policy evaluation are cost-benefit analysis, multi-criteria decision analysis, life cycle assessment, and causal impact evaluation. These may also be used in internal evaluations, but they often supplement formal analytical techniques with more participatory or collaborative ones involving stakeholder groups or the public. While these are not mutually exclusive, the objectives of the evaluation and the effort required for operationalizing these approaches could require more attention to one than to another. Cost-benefit analysis, for example, involves an appraisal and comparison of the costs and the benefits in monetary terms in order to understand the societal value of a program or policy and inform resource allocation (Boardman, Greenberg, Vining, & Weimer, 2017). However, such detailed cost information may not always be readily available or accessible.

Increasingly, scholars have also extended this basic technique to incorporate broader societal objectives such as equity and environmental sustainability within the framework (Thomas & Chindarkar, 2019). For instance, in the case of ecosystem services, Wegner and Pascual (2011) recommend situating cost-benefit analysis within a broader approach to utility to incorporate human well-being more holistically in the assessment. The results of such expanded analyses, however, are sensitive to the weighting of non-monetary costs or benefits in the assessment and result in prioritization of some public values over others, a process which can undermine the otherwise 'technical' application of this tool (Eliasson & Lundberg, 2012).

Multi-criteria decision analysis has also gained popularity as an approach for assessing outcomes (or even input- and process-based criteria) that are difficult to quantify within a utilitarian paradigm. This technique can be used as a decision aid (see chapters in that section of the book) or as an evaluative one. Illustratively, Lucas, Brooks, Darnton, and Jones (2008) use the technique to evaluate policies encouraging pro-environmental behavior in the United Kingdom based on multiple criteria such as cost, unintended consequences, impact on competitiveness, additionality/deadweight, distribution, and uncertainty.

Several techniques have been developed to help conduct such multi-criteria evaluations. Analytic hierarchy process, for instance, provides a framework for capturing various criteria, weighting their relative importance, and assessing a policy (or a policy alternative when applied to formulation or decision-making) based on those results. In an application of this particular technique, Feng and Zhang (2014) evaluate health service system integration policy in China with the aim of facilitating policy learning and improvement. Similarly, on the simpler end of the analytical spectrum, a 'scorecard' is an oft-used technique to evaluate multiple criteria simultaneously. In an example of its use, the Cambridge Conservation Forum develop a popular scorecard to assess the success of conservation initiatives, and many similar applications exist across a wide range of issue areas (Kapos et al., 2008). While analytic hierarchy process, like cost-benefit analysis, requires some skill and training in application, scorecards allow non-experts to render their judgments about policy success and failure.

As many of these examples show, while typically considered as an ex-post activity, program or policy evaluation has been increasingly 'conducted' ex-ante to indicate the likely performance of a policy and assist in decision-making. The advancements in modeling and simulation noted

in other sections of this book have contributed significantly to this development. Goumas, Lygerou, and Papayannakis (1999), for example, use Monte Carlo simulation to estimate the probability distribution of net present value of geothermal energy projects under uncertainty. Similarly, Fernandes, Cunha, and Ferreira (2011) employ real options analysis to examine the feasibility of investments in energy under risk and uncertainty.

More broadly, Mundaca, Neij, Worrell, and McNeil (2010) review bottom-up economy-energy models that help anticipate the effect of policy alternatives on energy decisions made by various actors in the system. In an application from a different policy area, Brown, Tullos, Tilt, Magee, and Wolf (2009) propose an integrated dam assessment modeling (IDAM) tool to simultaneously analyze and visualize numerous biophysical, geopolitical, and socio-economic consequences of dam construction.

Although these approaches are generic and can be used internally, externally, or in a hybrid setup, the analytical expertise and experience necessary for them might not be available. Thus, complex designs with high information processing requirements are more likely to be favored in internal evaluations than in external or hybrid evaluations.

Tools for Causal Attribution

Impact evaluation is primarily concerned with causal attribution of changes in outcomes to the program or policy. This approach has witnessed rapid growth in recent decades, and its use has also diversified across policy areas and geographies (Sabet & Brown, 2018). Econometrics or statistics is a common approach for impact assessment, especially among external evaluators in academe and specialized research institutes. Developments in these fields that permit relaxation of assumptions concerning the functional form and the distribution of variables have further increased its utility for policy evaluation (Imbens & Wooldridge, 2009).

The key development in impact assessment, though, has been a shift in focus from analytical techniques toward research design. Experiments or randomized control trials – which strengthen attribution of outcomes to specific interventions – have emerged as the gold standard for policy evaluation. As an example, Ferraro and Miranda (2013) randomize the implementation of a water conservation information campaign in order to evaluate its effect on household behavior and inform program design. Such experiments usually entail a hybrid setup as those on the inside have a better understanding of the requirements and the constraints while those on the outside possess analytical expertise in research design, randomization, and econometrics. The Abdul Latif Jameel Poverty Action Lab (J-PAL), for instance, comprises a network of over 250 research scholars working closely with governments to conduct randomized impact evaluation of interventions to alleviate poverty (J-PAL, 2021).

If the rollout of the intervention is not randomized, natural or quasi-experiments may permit evaluation 'as if' it were random. A regression discontinuity design, for example, is a quasi-experimental setup that facilitates determination of causal effect based on a comparison of observations close to a 'cutoff' or 'threshold' that determines eligibility for policy intervention. Illustratively, Cerqua and Pellegrini (2014) use a regression discontinuity design to evaluate the effect of a regional policy in Italy that subsidized private firms based on a multiple ranking system on employment, investment, productivity, and turnover. An instrument variable regression is another technique that is used for causal estimation when an experiment is not feasible or not successfully administered. Angrist, Imbens, and Rubin (1996), for example, propose the use of this technique for impact assessment under specific assumptions and demonstrate its application to examine the effect of veteran status on mortality in the Vietnam era.

While internal evaluators might be more interested in specific cases, external evaluators often use such techniques to generalize across cases. Illustratively, Urge-Vorsatz, Koeppel, and Mirasgedis (2007) synthesize evidence on the effectiveness of policy instruments in reducing buildings' greenhouse gas emissions from 60 ex-post evaluation reports across 30 countries. More replicable techniques such as systematic reviews and meta-analyses are increasingly used for this purpose, especially in health policy.

Further, a program or policy might have 'heterogeneous' effects that vary across policy targets. In an illustration of an evaluation addressing this issue, Higgins and Kanaroglou (2016) use latent class clustering to account for the diversity of station areas in the case of transit-oriented development in the Toronto region. While the specific techniques might differ, tools to assess such heterogeneous effects could be employed in internal evaluations too: for example, to develop an accurate understanding of impact, facilitate contextual lesson drawing, or consider implications for equity.

A recurring critique of traditional impact evaluation is that it sheds little light on the program or policy mechanism through which change occurs (or does not occur). Theory-based evaluation has been mooted as a solution to this. The idea in a theory-based evaluation is to develop and test hypotheses that connect the policy intervention and its outcomes through explicit causal mechanism(s). Illustratively, Martin Persson and Alpízar (2013) posit that pre-program compliance and selection bias influence the success of conditional cash transfer schemes and payment for ecosystem services; subsequently, they combine a multi-agent model with econometric analysis to show that selection bias can significantly reduce the desired impact. Similarly, Ssengooba, McPake, and Palmer (2012) combine a theory-based approach with a prospective case study design to assess a complex health system intervention in Uganda.

In principle, the techniques and tools discussed here are available to any evaluator. However, given their almost exclusive focus on causality and their methodological sophistication, they are more likely to be employed in external or hybrid evaluation by academics specifically trained in these techniques rather than in internal evaluations often conducted by generalists and oriented toward practice and program improvement.

Procedural Issues in Evaluation

Thus, many of the more rigorous techniques, tool, and approaches discussed here might lend accuracy and credibility to an evaluation, but they do not necessarily translate into policy learning and redesign. For the latter, relevant background information, the perceived expertise of the evaluator, and the consistency of the findings with prevalent beliefs within the organization also play a role (Yusa, Hynie, & Mitchell, 2016). Consequently, procedural instruments that influence these also require consideration (especially in the case of a hybrid or internal evaluation).

It is also the case that an internal evaluation can occur over a long time frame, something external evaluators find difficult to fund. In case of the United States Environmental Protection Agency Superfund community involvement program, for example, the assessment was conducted in four phases over eight years (Charnley & Engelbert, 2005). The evaluation team focused on the role of public participation and the ability of the program to meet the participants' objectives by combining focus group discussions, telephone interviews, and written mail surveys. In such situations, institutionalizing contextual knowledge about the program or policy is a key requirement for the evaluation team.

Governments can use procedural policy instruments to draw on external expertise for an 'internal' evaluation. This might be accomplished, for example, by requiring audit committees to include an 'independent' member. The Canadian Federal Accountability Act of 2006,

illustratively, mandated the creation of audit committees consisting of members of the public sector, academia, and the private sector (Shepherd, 2011). An alternative is the establishment of advisory commissions, in which well-known experts are enrolled to inform policymaking. The use of the findings of such commissions and audits, however, is dependent on the economic and political situation, the eventual rapport between the commission and the commissioning agency, and public mood (Clark & Trick, 2006).

Further, meta-evaluation can also be a tool to support (evaluation) capacity development. Illustratively, Cousins et al. (2008) conduct a survey of internal evaluators in Canada to better understand organizational capacity, evaluation activity, and learning. Seppänen-Järvelä (2005) also highlights the importance of managerial, analytical, and political capacity to conduct process-oriented evaluation and use it for organizational development. The use of an evaluation capacity needs assessment tool to identify the organization's strengths and weaknesses has also been proposed (El Hassar, Poth, Gokiert, & Bulut, 2021).

Finally, the politics of evaluation can also influence its design and, consequently, the choice of technique deployed. Illustratively, this is highlighted by a study of an internal evaluation of an innovation policy framework in Ontario. In that study, Sharaput (2012) notes that the evaluation team selected simple indicators to demonstrate policy success rather than more sophisticated measures that might have shed light on whether the program had any effect and, if so, what. Apart from the absence of tools for causal attribution, a key challenge here was the normative context in which the agency had access to protected data of the policy target only during the course of the intervention.

Application to the Case of Aid Effectiveness

In this section, we illustrate the workings of the different aspects of external and internal evaluations mentioned earlier and their strengths and weaknesses using the case of the Asian Development Bank (ADB) and the evaluation of its multibillion-dollar multilateral development aid programs.

The ADB is a multilateral financial institution that aims to catalyze socio-economic development in the Asia Pacific. Its projects and programs involve providing grants, loans, or technical assistance to more than 40 countries in the region in the following areas: agriculture, natural resources, and rural development; education; energy; finance; health; industry and trade; information and communication technology; public sector management; transport; and water and other urban infrastructure services (ADB, 2014, 2017a). It has a long track record of efforts to evaluate its efforts and has deployed many techniques to do so over the course of its history.

As a large financial donor, the ADB is frequently scrutinized for its performance and practices. To establish credibility and promote learning, the bank conducts various types of evaluations at the institutional level (for example, the Annual Evaluation Review and the Annual Report on Portfolio Performance), the strategy level (for example, the Country Assistance Performance Evaluation and the Country Partnership Strategy Final Review), and the project or program level (for example, the Project/Program Completion Reports [PCR] and the Technical Assistance Completion Report [TCR]).

Internal Evaluations of the Asian Development Bank

For projects and programs, the ADB has instituted two levels of internal evaluation: a self-evaluation by the respective project or program team and an evaluation by the Independent Evaluation Department (ADB, 2021). For example, every grant or loan project and program

is evaluated by the team responsible for project or program execution in its PCR. Similarly, every technical assistance project and program is evaluated by the responsible team in a TCR. Subsequently, a project or program may be evaluated by the Independent Evaluation Department. In the case of a grant or loan, this can take the form of a short Validation of Project/Program Completion Report (PVR) or a more detailed Project/Program Performance Evaluation Report (PPER). Meanwhile, in the case of technical assistance, this would be documented in a Technical Assistance Performance Evaluation (TPER).

The evaluation itself is based on four criteria that span input, process, and output: effectiveness, efficiency, relevance, and sustainability. While effectiveness, efficiency, and sustainability evaluate the implementation of an intervention, relevance pertains to its design. An intervention is evaluated on a scale of 0 to 3 on each criterion, with 0 indicating lack of success and 3 indicating success. Based on its performance on these criteria, it receives an overall rating: 'unsuccessful', 'partly/less than successful', 'successful/generally successful', or 'highly successful' (ADB, 2006). For simplicity, a generally or highly successful project or program is considered successful by the institution (ADB, 2017b).

Apart from the overall rating, the evaluation team also draws lessons from the experience. These lessons cover different aspects of the project or program, such as management, financing, approaches or methodologies, capacity development, policy reform, sector-specific issues, and cross-cutting issues. In principle, the lessons are expected to promote organizational learning and inform the design and implementation of future projects or programs.

Using computational text analysis of nearly 1,000 project or program completion reports of the ADB, Goyal and Howlett (2019) examine the lessons mentioned in internal evaluations of the ADB. The authors find that these evaluations focused primarily on micro-level issues in the project or program, such as selection and scope, planning and execution, supervision, and the responsible team. Some meso-level issues, such as policy environment and sub-national and sub-sectoral determinants of project success, were also highlighted. In contrast, internal evaluations said little about macro-level issues – such as form of governance, macroeconomic policy, general standard of living – that might also affect project or program success.

External Evaluation of Multilateral Development Aid

Much of the early research on aid effectiveness was outcome based, focusing on its effect on variables related to development, such as economic growth. These evaluations resulted in mixed findings as some scholars showed that aid had a positive impact while others found that it had zero or a negative impact. Based on the recognition that context was important when interpreting such differing evidence, more recent literature on aid effectiveness – and international development – has prioritized creating 'micro-level' evidence on what works and what does not.

The case of multilateral development aid is no different. Increasingly, studies have 'evaluated' projects or programs of development banks to explain the causes of their success or failure rather than studying their long-term impact(s). However, as mentioned earlier, 'external' evaluators may not have access to the internal data of the organization. Consequently, such studies invariably use only publicly available data from internal evaluations – such as the economic rate of return or the success rating of the project or program – to shed light on project or program performance.

Most of these studies rely on econometric techniques for deductive, hypothesis-driven research for such evaluation. Illustratively, in an early study on the topic, Isham and Kaufmann (1999) use projects' ex-post economic rate of return, a measure of investment productivity, as an output to evaluate aid effectiveness at the World Bank through statistical analysis. They find that absence

of 'distortion' in exchange rate, macroeconomic pricing, and trade policies was associated with higher economic rates of return. Focusing on more immediate characteristics, Kilby (2000) uses econometric modeling to examine the effect of early project supervision, measured as time spent on the activity, on project performance. The author finds that more supervision was associated with higher likelihood of success, independent of the country or sector of operation.

In the case of the African Development Bank, Mubila, Lufumpa, and Kayizzi-Mugerwa (2000) find that both micro-level characteristics – such as project size and sector – and macro-level characteristics – such as the rate of economic growth, inflation, and per capita income – determined project success. Denizer, Kaufmann, and Kraay (2013) evaluate micro- and macro-determinants of project and program success for over 6,000 projects or programs of the World Bank. The authors find that while institutional and policy environment was a key macro-level variable influencing project success, variation within the country was higher than variation between countries (indicating that micro- and meso-level characteristics played an important role). In their analysis, these micro-level characteristics included project size, project length, preparation, and project manager quality. In a comparison of the ADB and the World Bank, Bulman, Kolkma, and Kraay (2017) find that characteristics influencing aid effectiveness were largely similar between the two.

As mentioned earlier, causal attribution is a key issue in external evaluations. To address this, Dollar and Levin (2005) employ the instrument variable technique in their econometric assessment. Using data from internal evaluations by the Operations Evaluation Department of the World Bank, the authors find that institutions – specifically, the presence of civil liberties and the rule of law – influenced project success on the whole, although their effect varied based on sector of operation. Feeny and Vuong (2017), too, employ the instrument variable technique in their analysis of project or program success at the ADB. The authors find that while at the macro-level, the rate of per capita economic growth and (low) level of democracy were related to project or program success, at the micro-level, the size of the intervention, the difference between anticipated and received funding, and the nature of the intervention (project or program) influenced outcomes.

Using a different research design and method, Saguin (2017) evaluates the influence of critical capacities on the success of administrative reform based on data from internal evaluations at the ADB. The author examines 20 PVRs on 'public sector management' using qualitative content analysis and complete-linkage clustering to find that the relationships among context-driven planning, coordination risk assessment, institutional support, instrumental political support, and multi-stakeholder ownership influenced the success of administrative reform.

Earlier, we identified theory-driven evaluation as one approach for identifying the mechanisms of the program or policy. In an example of such an approach in the case of aid effectiveness, Wane (2004) hypothesizes that the accountability and capacity of the recipient government were important in shaping project or program outcomes as they influenced their choice of project or program. Specifically, the author shows that governments with high accountability and high capacity were more likely to accept only well-designed aid projects than governments with low accountability or capacity. Such an evaluation can shed light on the likely causal mechanism at play and enable lesson drawing for enhancing effectiveness.

Further, the turn toward ex-ante evaluation is also observed in the case of external evaluations of aid effectiveness. Geli, Kraay, and Nobakht (2014), for example, examine the predictive performance of various models of project success using data from the World Bank. Arguing that their model is more accurate at predicting success than self-evaluations during implementation by the project team, the authors use their predictive analysis for ex-ante evaluation of ongoing projects or programs of the World Bank.

While most studies focus on output- or outcome-based assessment, process-based evaluation has also been conducted. In one type of process evaluation, Buntaine (2011) examines whether and how prior environmental performance of a borrower influences aid allocation decisions of the ADB. The author used a binary regression model to analyze the relationship of aid allocation – based on data from the ADB – to an indicator of environmental performance, constructed with a Bayesian updating model.

In their comparison of these external evaluations with internal evaluations of the ADB, Goyal and Howlett (2019) find that external evaluations complemented internal evaluations by highlighting more meso- and macro-level characteristics associated with program success. At the meso-level, for example, external evaluations indicated that sub-sectoral and sub-national variation in program success might be related to the features of the institutional and policy environment, such as civil liberties and the rule of law. Similarly, at the macro level, external evaluations found a strong association of program success with variables such as the rate of economic growth, civil liberties, and political freedom.

Conclusion

In this chapter, we showed how the approaches, tools, and procedural issues in evaluation vary depending on the location of the evaluator (i.e., internal or external to the organization being evaluated). The common approaches for policy evaluation include cost-benefit analysis, multi-criteria decision analysis, life cycle assessment, and impact evaluation. Increasingly, the first three are also used for ex-ante assessment as well as ex post in order to help select among alternatives and inform policy design. Impact evaluation, while also used ex ante, has witnessed methodological advances and practical interest especially for ex-post causal attribution in the recent past, for instance, as seen by the growing trend of experimental research in the social sciences. Apart from the selection of relevant approaches and appropriate tools, evaluations also involve procedural issues, such as its institutionalization, a plausible tension between the use of external expertise and the incorporation of the findings, the assessment and development of evaluation capacity, and the politics of evaluation.

Although these choices could influence both internal and external evaluators equally, in practice, the response is likely to vary depending on the type of evaluator (and evaluation). External evaluators such as academics typically possess higher analytical sophistication and more autonomy in designing the evaluation than do internal evaluators. Yet they are also often constrained by data availability and lack of tacit knowledge about the program. Consequently, they are more likely to opt for a sophisticated design and advanced methodological toolkit but a comparatively narrow focus that permits generalizability. In contrast, internal evaluators usually have more information and contextual knowledge about the intervention but stronger financial or professional ties with the organization, lesser analytical capacity, and more concern regarding the use of the findings and the politics of evaluation. Therefore, they are likely to prefer more holistic designs, simpler methods, and an institutionalized approach but with less attention to aspects such as causal attribution.

These differences between internal and external evaluations were illustrated in the case of the evaluation of aid effectiveness. Here, we observed that the ADB has a standardized approach that combines self-evaluation by the project team with evaluation by an independent department for their projects and programs, regardless of whether they are grant based, loan based, or based on technical assistance. Further, the institution adopts broad criteria to measure performance – spanning input, process, and output – and emphasizes drawing lessons about different aspects of the intervention. Internal evaluations, however, tend to focus on micro- and meso-level

issues and not more macro- or meta-institutional ones. External evaluations of interventions by the ADB or other multilateral development institutions, on the other hand, usually combine 'internal' data with other socio-economic or political variables to analyze the more macro-level determinants on program success through more methods that allow generalization across several sectors, countries, and even institutions. As a result, internal and external evaluations in practice can be seen as often complementing each other: as internal evaluations shed light on micro- and meso-level characteristics of program success while external evaluations create insights regarding more meso- and macro-level characteristics.

Hybrid, or multi-level, evaluation has thus been proposed as an approach that can combine the strengths of internal and external evaluations while overcoming their limitations. Seen from the perspective of tools of governance, this is akin to adopting a policy mixes approach to the design of evaluation, which could be promising so long as the tools in the mix are synergistic and complement one another, as would be the case for any other such combination or mix of tools.

References

ADB. (2006). Guidelines for Preparing Performance Evaluation Reports for Public Sector Operations. Retrieved from www.adb.org/sites/default/files/institutional-document/32516/guidelines-pper-pso.pdf

ADB. (2014). Project Classification System: Final Report. Retrieved from www.adb.org/sites/default/files/institutional-document/42823/files/project-classification-system-final-report.pdf

ADB. (2017a). ADB History. Retrieved from www.adb.org/about/history

ADB. (2017b). Portfolio Performance. Retrieved from www.adb.org/site/evaluation/portfolio-performance

ADB. (2021). Overview: Independent Evaluation. Retrieved from www.adb.org/site/evaluation/overview

Angrist, J. D., Imbens, G. W., & Rubin, D. B. (1996). Identification of Causal Effects Using Instrumental Variables. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 91(434), 444–455. doi:10.1080/01621459.1996.10476902

Barrington, G. V. (2005). Encyclopedia of Evaluation. doi:10.4135/9781412950558

Boardman, A. E., Greenberg, D. H., Vining, A. R., & Weimer, D. L. (2017). *Cost-Benefit Analysis: Concepts and Practice*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Brown, P. H., Tullos, D., Tilt, B., Magee, D., & Wolf, A. T. (2009). Modeling the Costs and Benefits of Dam Construction from a Multidisciplinary Perspective. *Journal of Environmental Management*, 90, S303–S311. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jenvman.2008.07.025

Bulman, D., Kolkma, W., & Kraay, A. (2017). Good Countries or Good Projects? Comparing Macro and Micro Correlates of World Bank and Asian Development Bank Project Performance. *The Review of International Organizations*, 12(3), 335–363. doi:10.1007/s11558-016–9256-x

Buntaine, M. T. (2011). Does the Asian Development Bank Respond to Past Environmental Performance When Allocating Environmentally Risky Financing? *World Development*, 39(3), 336–350. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.worlddev.2010.07.001

Cerqua, A., & Pellegrini, G. (2014). Do Subsidies to Private Capital Boost Firms' Growth? A Multiple Regression Discontinuity Design Approach. *Journal of Public Economics*, 109, 114–126. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jpubeco.2013.11.005

Charnley, S., & Engelbert, B. (2005). Evaluating Public Participation in Environmental Decision-Making: EPA's Superfund Community Involvement Program. *Journal of Environmental Management*, 77(3), 165–182. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jenvman.2005.04.002

Christie, C. A. (2008). Interview with Eric Barela. *American Journal of Evaluation*, 29(4), 534–546. doi:10.1177/1098214008328409

Clark, I. D., & Trick, D. (2006). Advising for Impact: Lessons from the Rae Review on the Use of Special-Purpose Advisory Commissions. *Canadian Public Administration*, 49(2), 180–195.

Cousins, J. B., Elliott, C., Amo, C., Bourgeois, I., Chouinard, J. A., Goh, S. C., & Lahey, R. (2008). Organizational Capacity to Do and Use Evaluation: Results of a Pan-Canadian Survey of Evaluators. *The Canadian Journal of Program Evaluation*, 23, 1–35.

Denizer, C., Kaufmann, D., & Kraay, A. (2013). Good Countries or Good Projects? Macro and Micro Correlates of World Bank Project Performance. *Journal of Development Economics*, 105(C), 288–302. Retrieved from https://EconPapers.repec.org/RePEc:eee:deveco:v:105:y:2013:i:c:p:288-302

Dollar, D., & Levin, V. (2005). Sowing and Reaping: Institutional Quality and Project Outcomes in Developing Countries. Retrieved from https://elibrary.worldbank.org/doi/pdf/10.1596/1813-9450-3524

El Hassar, B., Poth, C., Gokiert, R., & Bulut, O. (2021). Toward an Evidence-Based Approach to Building Evaluation Capacity. *Canadian Journal of Program Evaluation*, 36(1).

Eliasson, J., & Lundberg, M. (2012). Do Cost: Benefit Analyses Influence Transport Investment Decisions? Experiences from the Swedish Transport Investment Plan 2010–21. *Transport Reviews*, 32(1), 29–48. doi :10.1080/01441647.2011.582541

Feeny, S., & Vuong, V. (2017). Explaining Aid Project and Program Success: Findings from Asian Development Bank Interventions. *World Development*, 90(C), 329–343. Retrieved from https://EconPapers.repec.org/RePEc:eee:wdevel:v:90:y:2017:i:c:p:329-343

Feng, D., & Zhang, L. (2014, Mar 15–16). Objective Analysis to China's Township and Village Health Services Integration Management Policy. Paper presented at the International Conference on Social Science and Management (ICSSM), Chicago, IL.

Fernandes, B., Cunha, J., & Ferreira, P. (2011). The Use of Real Options Approach in Energy Sector Investments. *Renewable and Sustainable Energy Reviews*, 15(9), 4491–4497. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.rser.2011.07.102

Ferraro, P. J., & Miranda, J. J. (2013). Heterogeneous Treatment Effects and Mechanisms in Information-Based Environmental Policies: Evidence from a Large-Scale Field Experiment. *Resource and Energy Economics*, 35(3), 356–379. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.reseneeco.2013.04.001

Geli, P., Kraay, A., & Nobakht, H. (2014). Predicting World Bank Project Outcome Ratings. Retrieved from http://documents.worldbank.org/curated/en/878191468163759728/pdf/WPS7001.pdf

Goumas, M. G., Lygerou, V. A., & Papayannakis, L. E. (1999). Computational Methods for Planning and Evaluating Geothermal Energy Projects. *Energy Policy*, 27(3), 147–154. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0301-4215(99)00007-5

Goyal, N., & Howlett, M. (2019). Combining Internal and External Evaluations within a Multilevel Evaluation Framework: Computational Text Analysis of Lessons from the Asian Development Bank. *Evaluation*, 25(3), 366–380. doi:10.1177/1356389019827035

Higgins, C. D., & Kanaroglou, P. S. (2016). A Latent Class Method for Classifying and Evaluating the Performance of Station Area Transit-Oriented Development in the Toronto Region. *Journal of Transport Geography*, 52, 61–72. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jtrangeo.2016.02.012

Hildén, M., Jordan, A., & Rayner, T. (2014). Climate Policy Innovation: Developing an Evaluation Perspective. *Environmental Politics*, 23(5), 884–905. doi:10.1080/09644016.2014.924205

Imbens, G. W., & Wooldridge, J. M. (2009). Recent Developments in the Econometrics of Program Evaluation. *Journal of Economic Literature*, 47(1), 5–86. doi:10.1257/jel.47.1.5

Isham, J., & Kaufmann, D. (1999). The Forgotten Rationale for Policy Reform: The Productivity of Investment Projects. *The Quarterly Journal of Economics*, 114(1), 149–184. Retrieved from www.jstor.org.libproxy1.nus.edu.sg/stable/2586950

J-PAL. (2021). The Abdul Lateef Jameel Poverty Action Lab. MIT, Retrieved 10 November 2021 from https://www.povertyactionlab.org/

Kapos, V., Balmford, A., Aveling, R., Bubb, P., Carey, P., Entwistle, A., . . . Manica, A. (2008). Calibrating Conservation: New Tools for Measuring Success. *Conservation Letters*, 1(4), 155–164. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1755-263X.2008.00025.x

Kilby, C. (2000). Supervision and Performance: The Case of World Bank Projects. *Journal of Development Economics*, 62(1), 233–259. doi:10.1016/S0304-3878(00)00082-1

Lee, U., Benavides, P. T., & Wang, M. (2020). Life Cycle Analysis of Waste-to-Energy Pathways. In J. Ren (Ed.), *Waste-to-Energy* (pp. 213–233). Cambridge, Massachusetts: Academic Press.

Levin-Rozalis, M. (2010). Cybernetics: A Possible Solution for the "Knowledge Gap" between "External" and "Internal" in Evaluation Processes. *Evaluation and Program Planning*, 33(4), 333–342. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.evalprogplan.2009.12.007

Love, A. (2005). Encyclopedia of Evaluation. doi:10.4135/9781412950558

Lucas, K., Brooks, M., Darnton, A., & Jones, J. E. (2008). Promoting Pro-Environmental Behaviour: Existing Evidence and Policy Implications. *Environmental Science & Policy*, 11(5), 456–466. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.envsci.2008.03.001

Martin Persson, U., & Alpízar, F. (2013). Conditional Cash Transfers and Payments for Environmental Services: A Conceptual Framework for Explaining and Judging Differences in Outcomes. *World Development*, 43, 124–137. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.worlddev.2012.10.006

Mathison, S. (1991). What do we know about internal evaluation? *Evaluation and Program Planning*, 14(3), 159–165. https://doi.org/10.1016/0149-7189(91)90051-H

Mubila, M. M., Lufumpa, C. L., & Kayizzi-Mugerwa, S. (2000). A Statistical Analysis of Determinants of Project Success: Examples from the African Development Bank. Working Paper, African Development Bank, Abidjan, Côte d'Ivoire, 18 December.

Mundaca, L., Neij, L., Worrell, E., & McNeil, M. (2010). Evaluating Energy Efficiency Policies with Energy-Economy Models. *Annual Review of Environment and Resources*, 35(1), 305–344. doi:10.1146/annurev-environ-052810-164840

Mutch, C. (2012). Complementary Evaluation: The Development of a Conceptual Framework to Integrate External and Internal Evaluation in the New Zealand School Context. *Policy Futures in Education*, 10(5), 569–586. doi:10.2304/pfie.2012.10.5.569

Pal, L. A. (2005). *Beyond Policy Analysis: Public Issue Management in Turbulent Times*. Nashville, Tennessee: Thomson Nelson.

Sabet, S. M., & Brown, A. N. (2018). Is Impact Evaluation Still on the Rise? The New Trends in 2010–2015. *Journal of Development Effectiveness*, 10(3), 291–304. doi:10.1080/19439342.2018.1483414

Saguin, K. (2017). Administrative Reforms and Policy Capacity in Asia: An Analysis of ADB's Public Sector Management Projects. *ASR: CMU Journal of Social Sciences and Humanities*, (2016), 3.

Schalock, R. L. (2001). *Outcome-Based Evaluation*. Berlin, Germany: Springer Science & Business Media.

Schoenefeld, J., & Jordan, A. (2017). Governing Policy Evaluation? Towards a New Typology. *Evaluation*, 23(3), 274–293. doi:10.1177/1356389017715366

Seppänen-Järvelä, R. (2005). Internal Evaluation of a Management-Development Initiative: A Public-Sector Case. *Journal of Management Development*, 24(1), 45–56. doi:10.1108/02621710510572344

Sharaput, M. (2012). The Limits of Learning: Policy Evaluation and the Ontario Ministry of Research and Innovation. *Canadian Public Administration*, 55(2), 247–268. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1754-7121.2012.00216.x

Shepherd, R. (2011). Departmental Audit Committees and Governance: Making Management and Accountability the Priority from the Top Down. *Canadian Public Administration/Administration Publique du Canada*, 54(2).

Sonnighsen, R. (2000). High Impact Internal Evaluation: A Practitioner's Guide to Evaluating and Consulting Inside Organizations. doi:10.4135/9781483328485

Ssengooba, F., McPake, B., & Palmer, N. (2012). Why Performance-Based Contracting Failed in Uganda: An "Open-Box" Evaluation of a Complex Health System Intervention. *Social Science & Medicine*, 75(2), 377–383. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.socscimed.2012.02.050

Thomas, V., & Chindarkar, N. (2019). *Economic Evaluation of Sustainable Development*. Singapore: Springer Nature.

Urge-Vorsatz, D., Koeppel, S., & Mirasgedis, S. (2007). Appraisal of Policy Instruments for Reducing Buildings' CO2 Emissions. *Building Research and Information*, 35(4), 458–477. doi:10.1080/09613210701327384

Vedung, E. (2006). Handbook of Public Policy. doi:10.4135/9781848608054

Wane, W. (2004). The Quality of Foreign Aid: Country Selectivity or Donors Incentives? Retrieved from https://openknowledge.worldbank.org/bitstream/handle/10986/14001/wps3325.pdf

Wegner, G., & Pascual, U. (2011). Cost-Benefit Analysis in the Context of Ecosystem Services for Human Well-Being: A Multidisciplinary Critique. *Global Environmental Change*, 21(2), 492–504. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.gloenvcha.2010.12.008

Weiss, C. H. (1993). Where Politics and Evaluation Research Meet. *Evaluation Practice*, 14(1), 93–106. doi:10.1177/109821409301400119

Yoshida, H., Christensen, T. H., & Scheutz, C. (2013). Life Cycle Assessment of Sewage Sludge Management: A Review. *Waste Management & Research*, 31(11), 1083–1101. doi:10.1177/0734242X13504446

Yusa, A., Hynie, M., & Mitchell, S. (2016). Utilization of Internal Evaluation Results by Community Mental Health Organizations: Credibility in Different Forms. *Evaluation and Program Planning*, 54, 11–18. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.evalprogplan.2015.09.006

32

ADMINISTRATIVE PROCEDURE AS A TOOL FOR PARTICIPATORY AND EFFICIENT PUBLIC GOVERNANCE

Polonca Kovač

Administrative procedures and their outcome-oriented codification and consistent implementation are among the most salient aspects of sound public governance. Most public policies are legally determined in policy- or rule-making and single-case decision-making procedures that comply with fundamental principles, such as the rule of law, accountability, transparency, inclusion, and effective public service. This chapter addresses administrative procedures as a dialogue and evaluation tool of democratic public affairs, regardless of the prevailing governance model – e.g., (neo-) Weberian or (post-)New Public Management – and irrespective of their codification mode. As regards the latter, some countries have adopted a general statute (an APA) while others prefer detailed sector-specific laws or codes of conduct. The analysis shows that a systemic approach to administrative procedures can contribute to a more agile public administration, particularly through the proportional protection of the public interest and citizens' rights under various types of administrative acts. Thus, worldwide, procedures are becoming an increasingly important part of efficient and participatory public administration.

Introduction

The function of administrative procedure as an evaluation tool in public policymaking is also important, be it in the issuance of administrative regulations or single-case decisions (Hofmann et al. 2014; Kovač 2017). If public policymaking is understood as a system for analyzing the situation in society, designing and selecting alternatives to improve the situation, implementing the selected solutions, and again analyzing the situation, one can see that administrative processes are the key components of the plan-do-act-check loop. For administrative regulations, this applies in the stage between the selection of the goals pursued by parliaments and governments and their operationalization, which falls within the domain of the public administration as the de facto legislature, and drafting laws and acts for their implementation.

Administrative rule-making, therefore, entails institutional public governance, which should include, inter alia, ex-ante regulatory impact analysis (RIA) and public consultation while single-case administrative acts or procedures can be considered instrumental public governance: i.e., the implementation of the regulations in practice. The latter procedures reflect – through the

DOI: 10.4324/9781003163954-39

disputability of relations with legal remedies and their necessary enforcement – whether the objectives set in the laws and implementing regulations are properly implemented. If not, at the aggregate level, these single-case issues point to the need to launch a new regulatory cycle and adopt better regulations. Therefore, single-case administrative procedures in particular are important to complete the regulatory feedback loop as they – intentionally or unintentionally – imply the ex-post evaluation of public policies.

The term *administrative procedure* can cover different phenomena or relations, largely depending on the administrative and legal system in place. The differences rest on the general social, political, and economic development of the individual country or administrative tradition, as well as on the specific relations between the branches of power as public policymakers and the types of procedures and acts resulting therefrom. However, public relations strive for good public governance that encompasses various social and legal interests and takes them into account in the formulation and implementation of effective public policies while pursuing the public interest (see Venice Commission 2011; Bevir 2011; Bouckaert and Jann 2020).

This chapter addresses different types of administrative procedures, depending on the powers attributed to the public administration as part of the executive branch of power. It distinguishes in particular between two types of procedures: (1) administrative procedures in sensu lato, resulting in the creation of implementing regulations – mainly government decrees or ministerial rules – specifying in more detail the enforcement of legal rights and obligations relating to public policies and (2) administrative procedures as applied by most national systems: i.e., single-case administrative decision-making to determine rights and obligations in relations between authorities and individuals. The latter cover a multitude of administrative matters, from collecting taxes and granting social benefits to inspections and issuing building permits, public documents, visas, etc. (cf. Hofmann et al. 2014; Auby 2014; Harlow and Rawlings 2014).

There are many differences in national or regional practices as regards the principles and rules governing such procedures. However, thanks to the transfer of good practices, even relatively opposite traditions – such as the American and German ones, and even more so in Europe – seem to converge over time (Künnecke 2007; Kovač and Sever 2014). Convergence is thus observed in the codification of administrative procedures with efforts to regulate the administrative relations between authorities and individuals holistically. Proof thereof is some new, hybrid procedures that cannot be classified into the two basic types (general and single-case procedures and acts). It is even more important to understand that administrative procedure – with its traditional codification of general principles – represents only one or several stages of the public policy or regulatory cycle, as administrative rule-making operationalizes institutionally determined public policy objectives. Single-case decision-making – as instrumental public governance – also reflects whether and to what extent laws and parliamentary policies are effective in practice (see Kovač 2017). Moreover, convergence presents an advantage over the otherwise different systems in place in individual countries. As administrative procedures also regulate cross-border situations, the common values and principles of public governance are likely to produce comparable rights and restrictions for the parties. In such regard, an important role is also played by global organizations such as the OECD and the Council of Europe, which promote good or sound public governance as an element of sustainable social development (OECD 2011, 2017; Venice Commission 2011).

In view of these common baselines and differences, the research question is which system (of codification) of administrative procedure best serves to ensure good public governance, considering the established instruments for the operationalization of its principles. Another question is whether it is possible to establish common principles and instruments for all types of procedures in public administration that would harmonize the work of the administration regardless

of whether the result of the administrative procedure is administrative regulations, single-case administrative acts (decisions), or hybrid acts (e.g., administrative contracts, single-case guarantee acts for future situations), considering that they all authoritatively address citizens and companies. The principles guiding the procedure are, in fact, the result of its functions while procedure – as an institution – embodies the status quo of public law at any moment. Consequently, (any) administrative procedure reflects the given understanding of the citizen-state relation (Barnes in Rose-Ackerman and Lindseth 2010: 337). In terms of participation, for example, the minimum common procedural standards are the involvement and familiarization of the directly affected parties with the decision. Therefore, participation must take precedence over efficiency in the narrow sense (Kovač 2018). In this respect, democratic procedures are not only a political instrument legitimizing the conduct of people's representatives and thus, indirectly, of public administration but also an element of direct decision-making or at least citizens' participation in public affairs.

The present chapter first defines the concept, models, and principles of good governance and the role of administrative procedures. This is followed by an analysis of the main types of administrative procedures and their specific rules. The analysis is upgraded with a discussion of which system is more optimal, considering the existing state of the instruments of good governance (GG) and how administrative procedures should therefore be (generally) codified in the future. In such regard, I draw from the multifunctionality of administrative procedure as a tool of dialogue between public authorities and private parties that should result in the proportional recognition of public and private legal benefits and a regulatory feedback loop for the formulation and implementation of public policies. In this sense, administrative procedures or various other processes serve as an instrument to balance social values and interests while also representing an evaluation tool mirroring the (in)efficiency of public policies and regulations in real-life events. This is especially important in times of global crises, such as financial and migration crises or pandemics, which require public administration to be agile, efficient, and still democratic.

Administrative Procedures and Their Codification Within Public Governance

Traditionally, there are some key differences among individual societies. These relate, for example, to the type of government and bearers of administrative and other authority or to the relations between them (for more, see Karpen and Xanthaki 2017; Raadschelders 2011; Schuppert 2000). This leads to widely varying organizational structures of administrative bodies: e.g., single, two-tier, or multiple-tier authorities at the national, regional, and local levels. Multi-level governance – e.g., in the European Union (EU) or federal states – and the disciplinary understanding of administrative procedures also play an important role. In the Central European context, administrative law is deemed to be a part of the domain of public law relations, in which the administrative body is *per definitionem* superior to the party, while in Anglo-Saxon systems, individual relations and disputes with authorities are, in principle, regulated more flexibly and amicably, even in adapted litigation proceedings. Moreover, the differences between systems may be due to the democratic tradition, with new democracies – such as those in Eastern Europe – presenting an implementation gap between strategies/regulations and practice (Kovač and Bileišis 2017: 11ff). Other factors of differentiation include the scope and content of administrative regulation, the hierarchy of acts, and regulatory density (i.e., the scope and detailedness of regulations) (Karpen and Xanthaki 2020: 8ff).

However, despite their differences, most countries feature a more or less systemic codification in the form of a (General) Administrative Procedure Act (APA) (see Ziller in Peters and Pierre

2005: 260ff; Auby 2014: 4) aiming at equality and lawfulness and the legal determination of authoritative interferences with the rights and obligations of individuals. Spain, for example, adopted its APA as early as 1889, Austria in 1925, the United States in 1946, Germany in 1976, Japan in 1993, Slovenia in 1999, Estonia in 2001, Finland in 2003, and France in 2015. Some APAs provide common rules for different types of administrative procedures and acts while most of them – especially in the European context – only cover single-case decision-making. Furthermore, some APAs set out common principles for all administrative procedures regardless of the specific field – e.g., taxes, the environment and construction, and home and social affairs – which sector-specific regulations may openly regulate otherwise. In other cases, this issue is subject to special requirements for the equal protection of rights, with deviations only in the event of reasonable grounds for differentiation or even with no differentiation at all. The latter applies in most European countries for specific constitutional guarantees (Hoffmann-Riem et al. 2012: 510ff; cf. McCubbins in Coglianese and Kagan 2007: 19). These are required, for example, by the rights of defense such as access to one's own files and the right to be heard, devolution and the suspensive nature of an appeal, and the judicial review of the legality of administrative acts for effective legal protection against the administration. Another difference concerns the level of detailedness or the definition of principles and fundamental rights, as well as the basic or detailed operational rules. Therefore, certain APAs have just over 10 articles (e.g., the US APA only 16), some have between 30 and 100 articles, while others comprise well over 300 articles and numerous additional specific and implementing rules.

In any case, from the viewpoint of political science, as is characteristic in US theory (see Craig in Peters and Pierre 2005; Coglianese and Kagan 2007; Kovač and Sever 2014), administrative procedures are examined as a consequence of or a tool for exercising state authority. This is the case both in terms of adopting general rules at the level of the administration and in terms of single-case decisions or administrative procedures as key components of administrative reforms. On the other hand, most European systems are more conservative and understand administrative procedures in a narrower sense (Auby 2014: 3ff).

Two groups of procedures and their respective codifications are usually distinguished: (1) rule-making or the issuance of administrative regulations as policy-based decisions with general effect or procedural arrangements (i.e., the public policy cycle) (German: *Gestaltungsverfahren*) and (2) the issuance of individual and, as a rule, concrete administrative acts (i.e., single-case decision-making) (German: *Verwaltungsverfahren*) (cf. Hofmann et al. 2014). In view of this, the regulation of administrative procedure is indeed important for enforcing the goals of the party in power. In fact, politics is also conducted by defining the procedural rules: e.g., a priori excluding the holders of certain interests and thus consciously steering social interactions to match the values of those in power. The regulation of administrative procedure is therefore necessarily bound with politics. The 1946 US APA (see McCubbins in Coglianese and Kagan 2007: 3ff), for example, aims at "fairness in administrative operation" and "the effectuation of the declared policies of the Congress." Therefore, the role of administrative procedure is defined and changes depending on the role of the state in the society, the tasks of the authorities, the consequent understanding of the principle of the separation of powers between the legislature and the executive, and the constitutional arrangements determined thereby. The latter also depends on the selected governance model, which influences the definition of administrative procedures or their basic principles in either specific or general matters.

In order to assess which solutions are better, it is necessary to further analyze the basic models of public governance as different administrative systems different principles and codifications of administrative procedure come to the fore, depending on the administrative tradition. Some systems favor a more legally defined approach, as is typical of the continental European *Rechtsstaat*

or Napoleonic tradition, while the Anglo-Saxon tradition relies on principle-based regulation and flexible tools, albeit with a public interest orientation. Certain systems are more authoritative (e.g., the German system) while others are participatory and transparent (e.g., the Scandinavian systems). Compensating for the (otherwise) superiority of the public interest inherent in administrative relations are the party's right to be heard and, generally, participation in public policymaking. However, in administrative relations, equality between participants still implies an a priori asymmetry compared to civil proceedings in terms of both the possession of information and decision-making power. Authorities may indeed foster dialogue with the parties and strive to give them a say in the final decision, but this may well be just "window-dressing" (Pitschas and Walther 2008: 99ff). Such an approach to initiating and conducting administrative procedures reduces the need for inquisitorialness (Künnecke 2007: 46; Auby 2014: 14) and leads to better-enforced public policies (Tyler 2006: 5).

Among the models influenced by the understanding of administrative procedures, three main models are worth highlighting (cf. the Venice Commission 2011; Mathis 2014; Raadschelders and Vigoda-Gadot 2015; Bouckaert and Jann 2020). When determining their public governance through rules and holders of authority, countries gather into clusters leaning toward one of the three models, although there is no ideal or pure approach in practice. That is why new, mixed concepts are being developed, such as the New Weberian State, New Public Governance, and Digital Era Governance.

For the purpose of this chapter, we will limit ourselves to only presenting the basic three models. They are listed in chronological order:

- Neo-Weberian administration with a rather formal understanding of the rule of law and the superiority of administrators in relation to citizens, as within the *Rechtsstaat* tradition; administrative procedures are only perceived as single-case unilateral decision-making;
- (Post-) New Public Management, which advocates public administration as a service similar to private services, supports the involvement of citizens in administrative procedures as equal counterparts to the authorities, and strives for alternative dispute resolution (ADR), agreement, and a reduction in the administrative burden; and
- Good (public) governance, encompassing several fundamental principles at all levels of public administration, from lawfulness, participation, and accountability to responsiveness, transparency, and efficiency; what is important for the codification of administrative procedures is a holistic view and a uniform and more abstract regulation by which different principles are applied at different stages and in different degrees, depending on the conflict of interests.

Clearly, in terms of integrity and principled orientation, the most comprehensive and advanced is the third approach. This can also be attributed to the weaknesses of the other two – e.g., the Weberian formalism of administrative decision-making or managerial politicization – or the erosion of public interest protection should participation and efficiency prevail over legality (Mathis 2014; Kovač and Bileišis 2017: 471ff). Dysfunctions also arise from GG (e.g., an outflow of democratic accountability due to intensively emphasized networking), but there seem to be fewer of these as a systemic context is key to the implementation of GG principles (OECD 2011; Bevir 2011).

Modern public governance has, in fact, recognized the need for inclusive approaches that take into account several stakeholders. Accordingly, in the 1980s, traditional closed-ended governance models based on Weber's theoretical assumptions were gradually replaced by alternative governance models designed to make better use of the administration's potential and to better meet the challenges of modern society – such as New Public Management – although there

seems to be some disregard for the participation of stakeholders as active citizens. Such development stems from the demands for a reduction in public expenditure and the greater involvement of external recipients of public services and civil servants, but only on a declarative level. The countries of continental Europe have therefore developed in particular the neo-Weberian model and other models of governance, with each new model presenting an improvement over the previous ones. With regard to such, systemic holism is becoming increasingly noticeable, mainly expressed in the participation of a wide range of stakeholders.

Furthermore, one should not ignore the doctrine of good administration (GA) developed within GG (see Venice Commission 2011; Harlow and Rawlings 2014: 87ff; Galetta et al. 2015). GA comprises a set of fundamental principles and rights that – given the superiority of administrative authority in administrative matters due to the a priori protection of the public interest – are crucial for the democratic protection of the rights of individual parties in administrative procedures. These are principles that are more or less enforceable than individual rights, such as legitimate expectations, equal treatment, the duty of care, a fair hearing, access to information, data protection, timeliness, and an effective remedy (for more, see Hofmann and Mihaescu 2013).

What is key in such regard is the general codification of administrative procedure typical of most countries in the world and of the EU (see Auby 2014; Harlow and Rawlings 2014) as it introduces common fundamental principles and relevant rights, regardless of the fragmentation of administrative areas and specific procedures. It is important that GA, as a part of GG, defines the main value guidelines in the relation between the authority and the addressees of authoritative acts. In doing so, the concept seeks to find a balance between public and private interests, taking into account the stage of the procedure or the definiteness of the legal status of the parties, the degree of conflict, the scope of validity, and thus the extent of the persons affected.

Despite the different political and legal systems, all social systems globally present similar or even convergently evolving principles and rules of administrative procedures and relations (Galetta et al. 2015; Künnecke 2007). Globalization, digitalization, delegation, and similar processes have contributed to the study and improvement of good and bad national or regional practices and their transfer from one system to another. In this sense, there is at least convergence, if not harmonization, in the field of administrative procedure, as shown in particular in the EU with the drafting of a single regulation as a "European APA." This act is a collection of good national practices and the realization of the concept of good administration (Hofmann et al. 2014). It was initially intended to serve as an umbrella framework for all administrative procedures regardless of the type or holder of authority in the EU and Member States but was later limited to European institutions in single-case administrative decision-making (Harlow and Rawlings 2014: 332ff). But despite the positive expert assessments of the two resolutions adopted by the European Parliament in 2013 and 2016 and the public support expressed in public consultations, there are still reservations on the part of, for example, the European Commission. The fact that the resolution of June 9, 2016, for an open, efficient, and independent European Union administration (2016/2610(RSP); European Parliament 2016) is still in its draft stage clearly shows that there is a long way to go from theoretically conceived ideals to an actually adopted and implemented regulation in practice.

The Multi-Functionality of Various Administrative Procedures and GG Principles

Traditionally, administrative procedure has served as a tool for balancing collisions between the public interest and the rights of parties. In such context, considering the significance of the

protection of the constitutional safeguards of parties against authorities, procedural and constitutional law consider certain de jure procedural rights to be a constituent part of the subject matter of procedure. The key function of administrative procedural rules is therefore the balanced protection of an individual party in the procedure – the public interest must indeed prevail, but not absolutely. This also applies when administrative procedure is understood more broadly: i.e., including the issuance of administrative regulations. As their scope is greater, there is also a greater need to balance several interests. Administrative procedure can thus serve as a basic tool to ensure lawfulness and democracy (Peters and Pierre 2005: 261ff).

Procedure or process could thus also be defined as a structured process of choosing between several possible alternatives based on the acquisition and processing of information (Hofmann et al. 2014). This definition essentially applies to the adoption of both administrative regulations and single-case administrative procedures, which some authors express through the distinction between the broader process and narrower – especially single-case – procedures (see Pitschas and Walther 2008; Harlow and Rawlings 2014: 2ff, specifically on administrative regulations in the EU, ibidem: 93–118). In a broader sense, this could also include courts. Given the intensity with which they oversee administrative activities, courts in Central Europe can act as an active formalist body ensuring judicialized administration. In contrast, Anglo-Saxon courts and judges present a high degree of activism and low degree of formalism, thus acting as drivers of fairness redefined (according to Harlow and Rawlings 1997: 516; Ziller in Peters and Pierre 2005: 173). Thus, in managing public affairs in the modern state, one must take into account the correlation of all the functions of administration as one of the branches of power, as well as the globalization or externalization of administrative matters across national borders and the efficiency and rationality of pursuing the common good as a "patchwork" of area-specific public interests (Pitschas and Walther 2008: 11–31).

When a procedure is initiated, its objective is not yet clearly defined. In fact, it is steered throughout the procedure by a number of unpredictable interactions between the participants and consequent procedural actions (Schuppert 2000: 772ff; Hoffmann-Riem et al. 2012: 523ff). The purpose of the procedure is therefore to reduce uncertainty as to its objective, whereby a certain degree of uncertainty in the procedure is unavoidable, considering the creative contribution of an official in applying a general norm or rule to a specific factual situation. When, however, a procedure is perceived even as only single-case decision-making, its formal lawfulness ensures predictability and thus legal certainty, the transparency of public tasks, and the sensitivity of authorities to legitimate expectations, drawing from the concept of personal dignity (Harlow and Rawlings 1997: 497; cf. Tyler 2006).

Procedural rules thus ensure substantively correct or lawful decisions while protecting certain fundamental human rights. This applies in particular to procedural institutions related to the rights of participation and defense (e.g., the right to be heard or to the issuance of a decision without undue delay). These procedural rules also express other functions of the procedure (e.g., the expression of authority, the acceptability of decisions, the counterbalance of judicial protection, economic and investment development, political efficiency, and the stability of democracy in public governance. According to some authors, only the procedural elaboration of a substantive right enables its implementation, legal remedies included (Schuppert 2000: 810; cf. Hofmann and Mihaescu 2013).

(Administrative) procedure thus serves the objective it pursues, in the sense of the realization of a substantive right as the subject of the procedure. At the same time, it is understood not only as a tool but also as a goal of the procedure per se. Thus, as public administration evolves, the role of administrative processes and their legal regulation increases over time, especially in the framework of GG (OECD 2017). Likewise, the importance of procedural rules grows, particularly

when the subject matter of public policies is hard to determine given the increasingly complex relations in society or the technical nature of the subject of regulation (Peters and Pierre 2005: 284; Rose-Ackerman and Lindseth 2010: 342).

Procedure is the fundamental framework for pursuing justice by balancing legitimate interests, be they in the Anglo-Saxon, German, Francophone, or any other tradition. However, given the presence of authoritative interventions, such procedure must be at least partially regulated by law as procedural rules often determine its substantive outcome. The codification of administrative procedures or administrative procedural law is therefore considered to be the core of administrative relations. Of course, this applies as long as procedures and, in particular, their implementation under administrative procedural law are efficient. Yet efficiency must be understood as the right ratio between the necessary measures to protect the public interest and the rights of the parties. Care must be taken so that the importance of the procedure and especially its legal regulation do not reach the other extreme where form becomes an end in itself. The degree of legal regulation of administrative relations and the authoritativeness of the cogent law therefore depends on the conflictuality of the relations and the severity of the interference with the legal position of the parties. Equally detailed regulation in all cases is thus neither necessary nor useful (Harlow and Rawlings 1997: 504; Künnecke 2007: 46ff; Kovač 2018).

Not all principles and procedural guarantees have the same weight. The importance of administrative procedural institutions is inevitably related to the right that is the subject of the procedure (for more, see Hoffmann-Riem et al. 2012, who, for example, highlight situation-based rules or composite or staged procedures: e.g., in relation to public information or asylum matters). Depending on the nature of the case, procedures differ also in terms of the manner of their regulation and not just in terms of the content or type of the rights. Thus, as a rule, the procedure for issuing general acts is less defined while the procedure for issuing single-case administrative acts is determined in more detail and in an objective, politically neutral manner. Therefore, it is first necessary to define the type of the relation to be regulated by law in order to be able to determine the type of procedure to be applied to pursue legally protected interests in a particular relation.

The main difference concerning the types of administrative processes lies in the level of the determination of the interests involved and, consequently, the tangibility of the rights, which increases with greater determination of the participants in the procedure. The procedures in which administrators issue general and individual legal acts in any case comprise a considerable scope of administration competences, especially in more Weberian- and *Rechtsstaat*-oriented countries. However, the two functions are attributed theoretically to a "lower" level of public governance (rowing, instrumentalism) as opposed to "higher" general decision-making (steering, institutionalism) while, in practice, administrators most often have a more influential say (Kovač 2017; cf. Raadschelders and Vigoda-Gadot 2015).

Due to the redefinition or expansion of the concept of administrative procedure through the GG doctrine – which in ever more countries (no longer) entails only authoritative decision-making on the individual rights, legal interests, and obligations of the parties based on general rules and concrete facts – the essential functions of procedure are changing. In this context, partnerships are established even between participants in traditionally authoritative administrative relations, such as in Central Europe (see Schuppert in Bevir 2011; Künnecke 2007; Kovač 2018). A participatory administration is one of the key building blocks of modern society, enabling citizens, companies, non-governmental organizations, and other parties to access information and to amicably reconcile their interests. This derives from the simultaneous instrumental significance of the procedure for the realization of the goal of the procedure – i.e., the exercise of a substantive right or legal benefit or the performance of an obligation in the light of the public

interest – and from the role of procedural institutions recognizing the parties as subjects and not merely as the objects of procedure. With growing transparency and, consequently, participation in regulatory decisions, the credibility of regulatory responses and the level of public trust in the authorities also increase (Schuppert 2000: 790; Tyler 2006: 16; Karpen and Xanthaki 2020: 73).

Discussion and Recommendations Regarding Future General Procedural Codification

A comparison of current regulations suggests that there are several political and legal instruments in both rule-making and single-case administrative procedures aimed at ensuring their multifunctionality at different stages, in accordance with the principles of GG. However, it can also be observed that some procedural stages are not covered, although there are mechanisms in place for that very stage and principle. This means that a systemic approach to "transplanting" or extending these methods to all administrative processes could significantly increase the efficiency of public administration (see, for example, Hofmann et al. 2014; and Kovač 2017).

What is particularly interesting in such regard is that a larger number of well-developed institutions can be detected in single-case administrative decision-making than in the issuance of administrative regulations. This is a rather unique paradox, as the latter address more people, have a wider scope, and are thus more important for the exercise of authority. There are multiple reasons for such, mostly stemming from the tradition of the development of administrative processes and the gradual transfer of legislative functions to the executive level. The delegation of rule-making to ministries or other administrative bodies is a result of the complexity and technical standardization of modern society (Barnes in Rose-Ackerman and Lindseth 2010: 336ff; Karpen and Xanthaki 2020: 237). The latter requires noticeably faster responses to real-life situations (e.g., in crises such as the COVID-19 pandemic), to which legislative procedures in parliament are not adapted. This, however, does not speak against transposing the positive mechanisms of traditional single-case administrative procedures into rule-making.

Looking at some examples of GG instruments, one can see that in rule-making, the principle of the rule of law and thus the accountability of decision-makers are reflected in the necessary compliance of lower acts with higher ones, especially laws. This is usually checked by national constitutional courts in years-long procedures, whereas accountability is more political than legal. In single-case decision-making, on the other hand, material (substantive) and formal (procedural) legality are defined in more detail and enforced more rapidly and more easily, thanks to legal remedies (especially administrative appeals) and judicial review, along with responsibility for, for example, compensation or even the criminal liability of the authorities breaking the rules (Auby 2014: 24ff; cf. Hofmann et al. 2014).

The principles of equity and inclusion, consensus orientation, and, in particular, participation are expressed in rule-making through public consultation and engagement mechanisms while in single-case procedures, they are expressed through the right to be heard. In single-case procedures, the latter is again defined in much more detail and thus enforceable already in administrative appeal and further court proceedings (for both the German and Anglo-Saxon systems, see Künnecke 2007; Bevir 2011; Hofmann and Mihaescu 2013; Kovač and Sever 2014), based on the provisions of national APAs on the entitlement to such right, on the manner and time of its enforcement, and on violations thereof as substantial procedural errors and a direct reason for legal protection and the reopening of proceedings (Künnecke 2007: 138). However, a distinction must be made between the participation of the parties (German: *Beteiligung*) in single-case administrative matters and broader participation (German: *Partizipation*) as co-decision-making with the rule-maker (Hoffmann-Riem et al. 2012: 699ff).

In different legal systems, the principles of transparency and responsiveness, and partly even participation, are enforced in rule-making mainly through a notice-and-comment mechanism, more by guidelines than actual rules (e.g., the deadline for comments on regulations is "as a rule" 30 days, with numerous exceptions and no legal consequences for a violation). In single-case decision-making, these principles are expressed through individual types of procedural actions and both substantive and procedural rights ensuring public control and subject to judicial review, such as public hearings, access to files, access to public information (for more, by country profile, see Auby et al. 2014 and, for the EU, Harlow and Rawlings 2014; Galetta et al. 2015).

Finally, the principles of effectiveness and efficiency are expressed in rule-making – in particular in RIA – as an ex-ante analysis of the anticipated impact of regulations that is intended to provide evidence-based decision-making and evaluation in the regulatory feedback loop (Naundorf and Radaelli in Karpen and Xanthaki 2017: 187ff). At this stage, concern for reducing red tape is also important (Kovač 2017). In most systems, however, only the notice-and-comment procedure applies in rule-making while in single-case decision-making, decisions are made in compliance with APAs and the institutions determined thereby. These are, for example, rules on the deadlines and duration of the procedure or the consequences of administrative silence, as well as more modern approaches to reconciling interests, such as ADR (Dragos et al. 2014, 2020; Pitschas and Walther 2008).

Nevertheless, if any of the fundamental GG principles are not or are only partially implemented, at least the directly related principles – e.g., responsiveness and transparency – are undermined and, along with them, also accountability, lawfulness, and people's trust in the authorities. Therefore, the problem must be solved holistically. In view thereof, third-generation administrative procedures are evolving that apply the administrative method to the policy cycle and thus emphasize the dialogue between (administrative) authorities and individual parties (Barnes in Rose-Ackerman and Lindseth 2010: 350ff). But in most administrative systems around the world, rule-making and single-case decision-making are still perceived as separate procedures, both theoretically and in terms of legal protection, despite sharing the same principles of democratic authority (McCubbins in Coglianese and Kagan 2007: 19; more in Bouckaert and Jann 2020). In such context, particular attention should be paid to the growing importance and scope of administrative relations. Administrative regulations, which in many countries number more than 20 times the number of laws (namely, 95% of all regulations are administrative and only 5% are parliamentary laws) directly affect the lives of everyone in society, which increases the importance of meta-regulation, especially for the legitimacy of the modern state (Karpen and Xanthaki 2017, 2020). Participatory governance in this sense bridges the democratic deficit typical of bureaucracy, which is not a democratically elected structure of authority. Modern society thus strives to include legitimacy within (administrative) lawfulness through the connection of administrative authorities and citizens or companies as addressees of administrative decisions.

In adopting administrative regulations and issuing administrative decisions, in addition to formal principles and mechanisms common to both types of acts, participatory governance should apply to the pre-stage or informal part of administrative rule-making and single-case decision-making. Formulating and expressing opinions and preferences as to possible alternatives should be based on a system that is able to identify the best decisions based on the aggregation or (highest) coefficient of the consent of the participants. For the time being, however, only few systems see participation as a bridge between formal lawfulness and the prevalence of the public interest and administrative efficiency and consider it so important that they include it in their APAs (such as in the USA; see Kovač and Sever 2014). Thus, for example, most European countries as well as the EU still have reservations as regards involving the public, or they allow only the partial

participation thereof (e.g., in the Aarhus Convention in relation to the environment) and only based on recommendations (for more, see Karpen and Xanthaki 2020).

Participation is not an end in itself, but it creates better conditions for decision-making and – by involving the addressees of rules and acts – significantly increases the level of the acceptance and implementation of public policies. The purpose of the principle of participation in administrative relations is twofold: to protect the administratively defined rights and interests of stakeholders and to establish the true and objective factual situation relevant for a decision (evidence-based governance) (see OECD 2011). Public participation in administrative relations is even more important due to the party's otherwise subordinate position to the – at least potentially – opposite public interest. Stakeholder participation in administrative relations is therefore a counterweight to the (otherwise) superiority of the public interest. After all, the importance of "procedural justice," for example in the USA and more so in Central Europe, shows the prevalence thereof over distributive justice or substantive outcomes (Tyler 2006: 5, 73ff). As long as people trust the procedural guarantees and the institutions that provide them, they are willing to subject themselves to the authorities, albeit to their own detriment, as fact-finding and evidence-taking procedures allow them to indirectly monitor and manage the outcome of the procedure.

Administrative relations are necessarily conditioned by balanced respect for the public interest, based on the social values pursued by the legislature when adopting systemic and sector-specific laws: i.e., the level of institutional public governance. In implementing laws, public administration is bound by this framework (for more, see Raadschelders 2011; Coglianese and Kagan 2007; Peters and Pierre 2005). This means that when including the will of the citizens and social stakeholders (e.g., companies, non-governmental organizations), it must always assess which solutions are optimal for the (enacted) public interest. For the decisions to be legitimate, the administration must therefore consider both the results of the participatory processes and their placement in the legally defined public interest. However, research shows that procedures are flawed and the existing rules – e.g., governmental rules of procedure or resolutions – are misunderstood, not complied with, or excessively rigid (see Karpen and Xanthaki 2020). When the state, as a sovereign regulatory entity, makes binding decisions that are not complied with or are unilaterally conditioned, the effect on society is disruptive (Schuppert 2000: 777; Tyler 2006: 163ff). These problems, therefore, need to be solved as insisting on obsolete administrative procedural solutions leads to a deterioration of the situation, competitiveness, and a lower degree of democracy and efficiency of public governance. At the same time, there are good practices (for more on ADR, see Dragos and Neamtu 2014) that, after careful analysis of where and to what extent they are applicable to a particular regulation or type of procedure, could be adopted as a suitable regulatory framework.

In order to achieve common principles and avoid any irregularities, the future codification of administrative procedure should be approached in two steps. First, it is necessary to determine the values and thus the minimum standards of all administrative procedures applicable to regulatory, single-case, or any other acts. Then, the specifics of each type of procedure or relation to be determined thereby should be defined, with a clear distinction between general and individual or hybrid matters and between authoritarian (e.g., inspection) and service-oriented (e.g., education or health care) administrative activities. Such general codification or "administrative code" should contain:

> [C]ommon administrative principles, regardless of the type of administrative activity, including, in particular, participation, transparency, and administrative efficiency in the sense of achieving the set objectives of the sector-specific public policies;

principles and rules for different types of administrative processes, in particular for the adoption of administrative rules and single-case administrative decision-making, weighing between the inevitable formal legality and yet necessary responsiveness;

basic rules on the judicial review of public administration, standardized for various administrative acts, in order to establish the rule of law and accountability; and

evaluation mechanisms for assessing the consistency of the objectives of the regulations and their implementation in administrative areas, which strive for efficiency and accountability.

Any APA should thus comprise more sound governance and less government and administration with a formalistic explanation of the rules governing administrative relations. A holistic approach with a broader and GG-oriented regulation in the APA can indeed go beyond that, both in individual countries and globally.

Conclusion

It can be concluded that the development of common principles and fundamental rights, together with a systemic approach to the general codification of all administrative processes, would contribute significantly to effective public governance and to democratic and efficient public administration. Given the lack of a holistic approach to fostering participation, for example, the currently applicable guidelines and regulations lack the capacity to ensure a consensus between the authorities and stakeholders and lead to a clear implementation gap. By including elements of participation, administrative procedure becomes more than a framework for protecting the public interest and the rights of parties, as participation enables the wider flow of information and the institutionalization of advocating for socially relevant although not (yet) legally existing interests. In this context, the systemic codification of administrative procedures would also play a role in the efficient evaluation and development of administrative reforms and future public policies.

References

Auby, Jean-Bernard, ed. 2014. *Codification of Administrative Procedure*. Brussels: Bruylant.

Bevir, Mark, ed. 2011. *The SAGE Handbook of Governance*. Los Angeles: SAGE.

Bouckaert, Geert, and Werner Jann. 2020. *European Perspectives for Public Administration*. Leuven: LUP.

Coglianese, Cary, and Robert A. Kagan, eds. 2007. *Regulation and Regulatory Processes*. Aldershot: Ashgate.

Dragos, Dacian C., Polonca Kovač, and Hanna Tolsma, eds. 2020. *The Sound of Silence in European Administrative Law*. Cham: Palgrave Macmillan.

Dragos, Dacian C., and Bogdana Neamtu, eds. 2014. *Alternative Dispute Resolution in EU Administrative Law*. Heidelberg: Springer.

European Parliament. 2016. Resolution of 9 June 2016 for an Open, Efficient and Independent European Union Administration (2016/2610(RSP)). www.europarl.europa.eu/sides/getDoc.do?pubRef=-//EP//TEXT+TA+P8-TA-2016-0279+0+DOC+XML+V0//EN.

Galetta, Diana-Urania., Herwig C.H. Hofmann, Oriol M. Puigpelat, and Jacques Ziller. 2015. *The General Principles of EU Administrative Procedural Law*. Brussels: European Parliament.

Harlow, Carol, and Richard Rawlings. 1997. *Law and Administration*. London, Edinburgh, Dublin: Butterworths.

Harlow, Carol, and Richard Rawlings. 2014. *Process and Procedures in EU Administration*. Oxford, Portland: Hart.

Hoffmann-Riem, Wolfgang, Eberhard Schmidt-Assmann, and Andreas Vosskuhle, eds. 2012. *Grundlagen des Verwaltungsrechts* (Vol. II), 495–937. Munich: Beck.

Hofmann, Herwig C.H., and B.C. Mihaescu. 2013. "The Relation between the Charter's Fundamental Rights and the Unwritten General Principles of EU Law: Good Administration as the Test Case." *European Constitutional Law Review* 9: 73–101.

Hofmann, Herwig C.H., Jens-Peter Schneider, and Jacques Ziller, eds. 2014. The ReNEUAL Model Rules. *ReNEUAL*. www.reneual.eu.

Karpen, Ulrich, and Helen Xanthaki, eds. 2017. *Legislation in Europe*. Oxford, Portland: Hart.

Karpen, Ulrich, and Helen Xanthaki, eds. 2020. *Legislation in Europe: A Country by Country Guide*. Oxford, Portland: Hart.

Kovač, Polonca. 2017. "Between Theoretical Principles and Practice in Slovene Regulatory Impact Assessment Procedures." *Review of Central and East European Law* 42, no. 2/3: 215–250.

Kovač, Polonca. 2018. "Potentials of Administrative Procedures as a Participatory Tool within Governance Models in Central and Eastern Europe." *Danube* 9, no. 4: 227–244.

Kovač, Polonca, and Mantas Bileišis, eds. 2017. *Public Administration Reforms in the Eastern European Union MS: Post-Accession Convergences and Divergences*. Vilnius, Ljubljana: Mykolas Romeris University, Faculty of Public Administration.

Kovač, Polonca, and Tina Sever. 2014. "Participatory Administrative Procedure." In: Bohne, Eberhard, ed. *Public Administration and the Modern State: Assessing Trends and Impact*. Basingstoke, New York: Palgrave Macmillan, 144–160.

Künnecke, Martina. 2007. *Tradition and Change in Administrative Law: An Anglo-German Comparison*. Berlin, New York: Springer.

Mathis, Klaus. 2014. "Cultures of Administrative Law in Europe: From Weberian Bureaucracy to 'Law and Economics'." In: Helleringer, Genevieve, and Kai Purnhagen, eds. *Towards a European Legal Culture*. London: Beck, Hart, Nomos, 139–162.

OECD. 2011. *Regulatory Policy and Governance: Supporting Economic Growth and Serving the Public Interest*. Paris: OECD.

OECD. 2017. *Principles of Public Administration*. Paris: OECD.

Peters, B. Guy, and Jon Pierre, eds. 2005. *Handbook of Public Administration*. Los Angeles, London, New Delhi: SAGE.

Pitschas, Rainer, and Harald Walther, eds. 2008. *Mediation im Verwaltungsverfahren und Verwaltungsprozess*. Frankfurt am Main: Peter Lang.

Raadschelders, Jos C.N. 2011. *Public Administration: The Interdisciplinary Study of Government*. Oxford: OUP.

Raadschelders, Jos C.N., and Eran Vigoda-Gadot. 2015. *Global Dimensions of Public Administration and Governance: A Comparative Voyage*. Hoboken, NJ: Jossey-Bass, John Wiley & Sons.

Rose-Ackerman, Susan, and Peter Lindseth, eds. 2010. *Comparative Administrative Law*. Cheltenham, Northampton: Edward Elgar.

Schuppert, Gunnar Folke. 2000. *Verwaltungswissenschaft (Verwaltung, Verwaltungsrecht, Verwaltungslehre)*. Baden-Baden: Nomos.

Tyler, Tom R. 2006. *Why People Obey the Law*. Princeton and Oxford: Princeton University Press.

Venice Commission, European Commission for Democracy through Law. 2011. Stocktaking on the Notions of "Good Governance" and "Good Administration." Study no. 470/2008, CDL-AD(2001)009.

33

THE TRANSFORMATIVE POTENTIAL OF EVALUATION AS A POLICY TOOL

Jill Anne Chouinard and Tamara Krawchenko

As an applied domain of inquiry, evaluation is very much grounded in the current moment, shaped and influenced by a diversity of external circumstances and conditions in which conflicting interests, perspectives and voices often compete for attention. In the 1970s, evaluation was considered one of the new and promising technologies of government designed to provide bureaucratic accountability and to assist policymakers in determining program success and failure. While the field of evaluation has certainly become more methodologically diverse over the past 50 years, and collaborative and participatory approaches are now considered credible, its modernist legacy continues to influence the possibilities and parameters of practice. In this chapter, the authors situate the practice of evaluation within the current Canadian public policy environment and explore the reception and use of more democratic approaches to evaluation as a likely policy instrument today.

"An open society becomes a closed society when only the officials know what is going on" (Cronbach and Associates, 1980, p. 95).

Introduction

Modern program evaluation emerged in the 1970s as a promising new "scientific" approach to research designed to provide bureaucratic accountability and to help American policymakers determine program success and failure (Fischer, 2003). While evaluation has never quite lived up to its modernist ideal, it has continued to play a technocratic role in public sector institutions, remaining a key player in current public management and accountability systems, becoming what Dahler-Larsen (2012) calls an "institution" in society. Our understanding of evaluation, particularly within public sector contexts, remains centred on evidence about "what works" (Richardson, 2013) and enmeshed with the bureaucratic ideals of good governance. Thus, while the field of evaluation has evolved over the past 50 years to now encompass diverse methodological options, its modernist legacy continues to hold sway across much of the public sector.

In a recent online discussion, Michael Quinn Patton portrayed evaluation as a "kaleidoscope," stating

> You look at it one way and the pattern reveals a profession, another turn and it is a discipline, then turn again and a transdisciplinary image emerges, and yet another turn

 DOI: 10.4324/9781003163954-40

> and it takes on the pattern of an applied social science, then the pattern shifts with another turn and it becomes imagined as a technology, then an art, and still turning the kaleidoscope again, evaluation is science. In essence, evaluation is a many-splendored thing and in keeping with intersectional identity framing these days, evaluation has multiple identities and diverse brands. It's all in how you look at particular patterns in particular light. It isn't one thing, it is many things.
>
> *(EvalTalk, October 9, 2019)*

These "multiple identities" means that evaluation is called upon to play a number of different roles, depending upon the program sponsor, the context, and whether its intended use is to render judgment, aid program improvement, generate knowledge, facilitate decision making, enable learning and capacity building, assist program development or provide accountability or ongoing monitoring. Its kaleidoscopic nature also means that methodologically, evaluation can serve a technocratic function for accountability purposes or fulfil a learning function with aspirations tied to social democratic aims (Hanberger, 2006; Schwandt, 2002). These visions of evaluation, characterized by MacDonald (1974) as bureaucratic, autocratic and democratic, represent quite distinct paradigms, each defined by its own context of practice, epistemological and theoretical foundation, rationale, utility, audience, evaluator role and stakeholder interest.

Despite the methodological breadth of the field, the prevalent vision of evaluation still favours a technocratic approach based on the promise of impartiality, evidence, objectivity and accountability. Evaluation, by this definition, is valued for its perceived scientific and technical authority (House, 1993) and used as a way to legitimize government activities, ensure cost effectiveness and enhance managerial decision-making. Democratic approaches to evaluation, on the other hand, are designed to foster dialogue and promote active inclusion among a diversity of program stakeholders, with rationales linked to local ownership, empowerment, organizational and individual learning and program improvement (Cousins and Chouinard, 2012). This characterization is purposefully stark. In the current public policy context, what many consider a context over reliant on a technocratic, empiricist approach to knowledge (Danziger, 1995; deLeon, 1994; Fischer, 2003; Stone, 2002), the reception and use of more democratic approaches to evaluation as a policy instrument remain an ongoing and persistent challenge (Fischer, 2003). While there is a significant body of research in the policy sciences dedicated to the inclusion of participatory and more democratic practices, the tension between the technocratic moorings of the field and its participatory potential remains distant (Fischer, 2000; Torgerson, 1986, 2003).

In this chapter, we look critically at the challenges of introducing democratic approaches to evaluation as a policy instrument within the current public sector context. Our critique is focused on the instrumental role evaluation plays in supporting the current accountability function within public sector institutions. Specifically, we look at the apparatus of "good governance," as defined by our characterization of three "technologies" of evaluation and public policy related to technocratic approaches to knowledge construction and the use of indicators, targets, benchmarks, checklists and log frames, the overreliance on a positivist methodology, the increasing need for "experts." We begin with a brief description of the current public policy environment, focusing on the dynamics and evolution of policy instrument design, selection and use. We then turn to a discussion of the three "technologies" that represent the evaluation-public policy nexus, with a focus on their epistemological, relational and political implications. We then shift to a discussion of collaborative approaches to evaluation, reflecting on its promise and potential in the current policy context.

Policy Paradigms: The Persistence of the Standard Model of Policymaking

The diverse literature on policymaking agrees on one thing – policymaking today is complex. There are multiple and competing policy paradigms at play and, an ever-growing literature tries to make sense of how policies arise, persist and change and seeks to understand how ideas, institutions and interests shape them (Hogan and Howlett, 2015). In this multi-layered environment, the seemingly simple model of the policy-making cycle first conceived by Lasswell (1956) has had a lasting impact. It introduced the concept of the policy cycle with discrete stages flowing from agenda-setting, policy formulation, decision-making, implementation and finally to evaluation, in a feedback loop. Over six decades since its inception, the policy cycle approach has come under a weight of critique and, at the same time, has been elaborated, extended and reinvented, revealing its endurance as a useful way to think about policymaking. Its positivist orientations have been relaxed, and the discrete elements of the cycle have formed a heuristic to delve deeper into elements of the policy process, with many books organized along these elements – including this one.

This model of the "policy sciences" has three main features: (1) it is consciously framed as problem-oriented; (2) it is necessarily multidisciplinary in order to address complex problems; and (3) it is deliberately normative or value oriented (rejecting behaviourism in the social sciences) (summarized from deLeon and Vogenbeck, 2007, p. 4). This last point requires elaboration – while Lasswell was a stated positivist, he embraced the ultimately political nature of problem definition and agenda-setting while maintaining the importance of scientific and empirical objectivity in other elements of the policy cycle (Lasswell, 1970). One of the reasons for the endurance of the standard model is that it conforms to the dichotomy of politics/administration post WWII whereby agenda-setting and policy formulation fall into the political arena and the remaining aspects to that of the bureaucracy (Jann and Wegrich, 2007).

The field of public administration has long grappled with tensions between rationalist empiricism and the value-laden nature of the policy process. The policy sciences have been critiqued for an overreliance on instrumental rationality and technocratic orientations (Deleon, 1994). Postmodernist critical policy studies have emphasised the need for policy analysts to embrace debate and to "subject moral and political issues to serious discussion, so that eventually, even if temporarily, the better arguments will prevail, providing us with our most reliable guides to action" (Danziger, 1995, p. 448). It has placed a lens on how power is constructed and upheld in the policy process, urging practitioners to "demystify" professional expertise and think about whose voices are privileged in the process (Schön, 2017). There has been a deliberative and participatory turn in public policy and administration, yet at the same time, rationalist models remain and are often reinforced by administrative protocols and accountability requirements. Reflexive and deliberative practices may be valued, but in day-to-day public administration, pragmatism often prevails. It can be simply too time consuming and complex to work in this way – easier to implement at the local scale than at a regional or national one (Bua and Escobar, 2018).

The literature on policy tools and policy mixes has brought nuance to the "black box" of policymaking, urging us to think about how choices about what to do and how to do it are made alongside understanding how the "thick" environment of existing policy tools interacts, complements, supplements and sometimes undermines policy goals and outcomes. What does it mean to think of evaluation as a "tool" within this process? Capano and Howlett (2020) have noted that the policy tools literature has focused on how tool choices are made from two perspectives: (1) an "input" lens that focuses on actors and interactions in the policy process

(instrument constituencies) and (2) an "output" lens that analyzes the content of adopted decisions and, specifically, whether the deployed instrument has achieved its stated goals. Evaluation has a role to play in both these approaches; however, as will be discussed, the methods that are used fundamentally structure the transformative potential of evaluation as a policy tool.

The Evaluation-Public Policy Nexus

The call for more democratic approaches to public policy evaluation dates back to the 1940s and the early days of the policy sciences field. Despite a few promising shifts towards a more pluralistic system over the years (deLeon, 1994), there remains what Torgerson (2017) refers to as a "conspicuous inattention to democracy" (p. 342) in current public policy circles. Instead, critics point towards an overreliance on a technocratic, empiricist approach to knowledge that, even today, seeks a value-free approach to public policymaking positioned outside the political arena (see Danziger, 1995; deLeon, 1994; Fischer, 2003).

The challenges of democratizing the policy sciences are thus well documented (Richardson, 2013), with some focused on identifying the conflict between technocracy and democracy (Gilley, 2017; Ryan, 2018) and others noting the methodological and epistemological challenges such a democratic shift might entail (Fischer, 2000).

In this section, we describe three "technologies" of the bureaucratic state, all of which involve evaluation for legitimacy, accountability, methodological expertise and reporting. These three "technologies" are (1) technocratic approaches to knowledge construction (e.g., through the use of indicators, targets, benchmarks, checklists and log frames), (2) positivist methodological modes of inquiry and (3) methodological expertise. Although there is significant overlap and interconnection among these three mutually supportive "technologies," our focus is on exploring the epistemological, relational and political implications of each as, we will argue, they ultimately limit the potential for more democratic approaches to evaluation and to public policy-making process more broadly.

A Technocratic Approach to Knowledge and Knowledge Construction

There is a robust and critical scholarship documenting the neo-liberal effects on governance and epistemology (see Espeland and Sauder, 2007; Merry, 2011; Shore and Wright, 2000, 2015). While evaluation does not always play a leading role, the "technologies" of evaluation are essential to its success. Of note is the persistent reliance and faith in the value of numbers, as articulated and expressed in the form of indicators, targets, benchmarks and checklists: what Merry (2016) refers to as "indicator culture," with quite distinct assumptions about what knowledge is and how it is constructed (Gildersleeve, 2017). While indicators give the impression of added simplicity, by reducing complex social phenomena to easily definable and measurable pieces, they ultimately create a distorted, depoliticized and decontextualized version of the world, essentially reconstructing an image or a concept of the world they are designed to measure (Dahler-Larsen, 2012; Merry, 2016). Dahler-Larsen (2012, 2014) uses the term *constitutive effects* to describe how indicators function as a way of orienting action, discourse and attention to preselected evaluative indicators and criteria, and, in so doing, they create a particular socio-political version of reality that determines not only what can and should be counted but also how and by whom.

As Dahler-Larsen (2014) explains, "[T]he indicator is embedded in a larger world view, a network of interpretations, in which its definition of activity makes sense" (p. 977). As Franklin (1990) argues, the tools have redefined the problem. Thus, while indicators, as codified metrics

of social and economic phenomena, purport to stand outside the fray of politics as a policy-making instrument and a vital "technology" of evaluation, their construction, orientation and use have critical epistemological, ontological, political and democratic consequences.

As a formalized accounting system, these evaluation "technologies" are in widespread use for decision-making, monitoring, standard setting, improvement, reporting and controlling of almost all program activities and expenditures within public sector institutions. Whether locally or more globally, indicators have now become essential to evaluation and performance measurement as a model of public sector governance. This almost singular focus on performance measurement metrics narrows program and community understanding to predetermined measures of program success, confines program quality to measurable outcomes, reinforces ways of knowing that already exist and that have been predefined and predetermined, circumscribes method selection to primarily quantitative methods and curtails stakeholder input and public dialogue. We live in a culture of compliance (Franklin, 1990) as, over time, we have become less willing to question the orthodoxy surrounding these metrics, less willing to question the implicit theories that underlie and frame their program logic.

Despite its technological and rational façade, its apolitical cast, the current evaluation and performance management architecture (the "indicator culture"), it is not neutral, and its representation extends far beyond providing technical solutions. As Merry (2016) argues, "[R]ather than revealing truth, indicators create it. However, the result is not simply a fiction but a particular way of dividing up and making known one reality among many possibilities" (p. 5). By paying closer attention to the way indicators are constructed and measured, evaluators become more aware of the reality about which they are making judgments, as well as the implications of those judgments.

Positivist Methodological Approaches

In evaluation, "what works" defines the gold standard and dictates methods used. In a recent global study of evaluator education from 1997 to 2017, LaVelle (2020) noted that the majority of programs (identified as advanced degrees, diplomas or certificates in evaluation) had a quantitative focus, with a number of courses in experimental/quasi-experimental methods or statistics. Courses in qualitative studies were rare. It is no surprise, then, that despite the plethora of factors involved in designing an evaluation, the methodology of choice is most often quantitative, with experimental or quasi-experimental design considered the gold standard. This focus on quantitative measures comes at the expense of other important, relevant and perhaps more local criteria as the complexity of context is reduced to a narrow range of observable, measurable and recordable parameters, what Gordon et al. (1990) call a form of "methodological hegemony." While quantification may give the illusion of scientific authority, lurking behind its seemingly apolitical cast is a profound transformation in how individuals, organizations and even countries relate and how they are managed and governed (Shore and Wright, 2015). Numbers (and associated indicators of performance) are seductive (Merry, 2016) as they create a false sense of security and belief that everything relevant can be managed, controlled and measured; nothing is left to chance.

The focus on quantitative measures and indicators of success also frames our understanding of public programs in terms of how they are defined, how they work, and how they can be made more effective and efficient, and, in so doing, they ultimately shape the parameters of public expectation, dialogue and discourse in ways that give the illusion of democracy (Schwandt, 2009). Relationships in the field are thus structured around satisfying the plethora of accountability demands rather than in working collectively and collaboratively with colleagues and

other stakeholders, a fundamentally antidemocratic admission when we consider the diversity of voices and perspectives that will remain unheard. The privileging of quantitative measures – what Stone (2002) frames as a "rationality project" – while purportedly unrelated to any political agenda reshapes our relationships, it prevents the inclusion of local experiences and perspectives, ultimately encouraging the further dominance of an "expert" elite (Fischer, 2009), further exacerbating the divide between experts and citizens (Torgerson, 1986).

Reliance on Expertise

Concern with a growing class of professional experts is not new. As early as the 1920s, John Dewey worried that the need for expertise would lead to a further separation between the expert class and the public, making it increasingly difficult for citizens to participate in democratic life. Today, with ever-increasing technical sophistication and socio-political complexity in issues of public concern, we are witnessing a significant rise in the role of experts in the decision-making process, what Fischer (2009) calls the "age of expertise." The field of evaluation is not immune to this discussion as the institutionalization of evaluation has led to calls for professionalization, credentialing, competencies and evaluator certification, all of which remain quite contentious, given the methodological breadth of the field. Of primary concern is that the current debate is centred primarily on the selection of competencies and an agreed-upon knowledge base, rather than on what professionalism means in evaluation and what evaluation's role in society ought to be (Schwandt, 2018). Missing are questions about the purpose of evaluation, the role of evaluators, the values and principles of practice, the nature and limitations of the inquiry process etc. This lack of debate pushes the field further into the terrain of evaluator as technical expert, where the focus is on core knowledge, skills and competencies, thus narrowing and reducing the potential and practice of evaluation even further.

Diminishing the role of the evaluator to "methodological technocrat" (Kuntz, 2015, p. 33) and the role of evaluation to serving a technocratic and legitimizing function within government, positions evaluation as fundamentally undemocratic. Specialized knowledge lies at the heart of professional practice. Access to this specialized knowledge (through training and education) will be restricted to only a privileged few, and, as a result, many other perspectives and voices will be excluded in evaluation. The fortunate few with technical skills will thus be further distanced from the majority of non-experts, further entrenching the division among people based on privilege, power, access and authority. This "expertocracy" (Fischer, 2009) restructures social relationships as it carries over into a hierarchy among "knowers" (Maguire, 1987). While "experts" represent only a small fraction of citizens, they become the "knowers" of the world, and all others the "nonknowers" (Hall and Tandon, 2017). Where one is positioned in the hierarchy of knowers is thus epistemologically, politically and democratically significant (Frank, 2013) as these obstacles to inclusion can deny citizens the opportunity to participate simply based on who they, where they come from and whether they have the language skills or knowledge to engage in the policy-making process. The emphasis on epistemic privilege in the form of codified and specialized knowledge and in the promotion of "experts" constructs a hierarchy of knowers, ultimately creating what is potentially a further epistemic divide between evaluators and research participants – ultimately, a profoundly undemocratic act.

Situating Collaborative Approach to Evaluation: A Brief Overview

Participatory and collaborative approaches to research and evaluation have been around for decades, emerging in large part as a challenge to traditional and objectivist approaches to research

in the social sciences (Hall, 2005). In collaborative research, the goal is not to discover universal and generalizable principles, but rather to engage in active partnership with participants while working collaboratively to co-construct local narratives. The value of such an approach lies in its relational, dialogic and highly particularistic view of research and in the value and priority given to pluralist conceptions. It is precisely its highly engaged, relational stance that sets participatory and collaborative evaluations apart from other approaches, as well as the active involvement of multiple and often diverse stakeholders, in the engaged positioning of the evaluator and in the relationships that are created between evaluators and stakeholders. From a participatory perspective, evaluators and stakeholders are inextricably linked in what Heron and Reason (1997) describes as "intersubjective space" that sees evaluators and stakeholders as active co-constructors in the creation of evaluative knowledge.

Its roots can be traced to the early theoretical work of Paolo Freire, Antonio Gramsci and Jurgen Habermas, who were all in one way or another working to promote social justice and ameliorate historical injustice among the world's most vulnerable populations. Although there is significant variation among collaborative approaches, they all go beyond traditional empiricist approaches to social inquiry and share epistemological roots in social constructivism and critical theory (Heron and Reason, 1997), highlighting the importance of context, the value-laden nature of inquiry practice and the challenges of including multiple stakeholders in the co-construction of knowledge.

A defining feature of participatory approaches to evaluation is the relationship or partnership between trained evaluators and program community members and stakeholders, all of whom work together in the production of evaluative knowledge. Depending on program and community contexts and evaluation purpose, approaches can vary with respect to the balance of control between evaluators and stakeholders in terms of decision-making, the level of diversity among stakeholders selected for participation and the level of stakeholder involvement in evaluation planning, instrument development, data collection, data analysis and reporting (see Cousins and Chouinard, 2012; Cousins and Whitmore, 1998). The key point here is that stakeholders play an active decision-making role throughout the process of evaluation, moving beyond the role of data provider to become active partners and collaborators in producing evaluative knowledge. By way of illustration, Arnstein's (1969) ladder of participation depicts eight different types of participation across a broad spectrum, from nonparticipation and manipulation to informing and consulting, all the way up to partnership and citizen power and control.

Over the years (see Cousins and Whitmore, 1998), consideration has been given to differentiating between evaluation and research, leading to questions about the goals of the inquiry, whose information needs and interests would be met and perhaps most importantly, whose interests are to be served (Cousins and Chouinard, 2012). These inquiries led to questions about the rationale or justification for adopting a collaborative approach, ultimately leading to a further distinction among three primary yet interconnected justifications. A political rationale is rooted in the ideals of social justice and based on a moral and normative sense of obligation involving the democratic inclusion, empowerment and emancipation of those who have traditionally been left out of the process of social and political change.

Through participation in the evaluation, these stakeholders (often from systemically marginalized populations) and other program community members learn to appreciate their circumstances from a different perspective and to recognize oppressive forces at play. In Freirean terms, it is through such recognition that subsequent ameliorative action may be precipitated (Freire, 1970). A philosophical motivation is based on principles of social constructivism, in which the centrality of context and the inclusion of multiple stakeholders in the production of knowledge are given priority. Through evaluators working hand in hand with program community

members, the co-construction of knowledge is grounded in historical, socio-political, cultural, economic and educational context, and as a result of this deeper epistemological interconnection, deeper meaning of evaluative evidence and knowledge is achieved.

A pragmatic justification is practical in orientation and based on the belief that increased participation will lead to the use of results to support program and organizational decision-making (Patton, 1997) and enhance organizational learning. The focus is on instrumental use of findings for discrete decisions, conceptual uses of evaluation findings for their educative function and, to a limited extent, the symbolic or persuasive use of findings to legitimize outcomes. As noted, these three rationales are not mutually exclusive, and emphasis on one or more justification will depend upon information needs, stakeholders, contextual and cultural exigencies and circumstances. Despite the myriad rationales for selecting a participatory approach, its predominant use in the evaluation of programs is in culturally diverse communities, in Indigenous program and community contexts, and in evaluations conducted in international development settings (Chouinard and Cousins, 2009, 2015). In the next section, we turn to a discussion of the tensions between collaborative and technocratic approaches in public policy contexts.

Discussion

The foregoing discussion of the policy-making process highlights the complexity of social, political and institutional forces involved in knowledge and policy construction, as well as the role of diverse actors and systems implicated in producing knowledge for the public good. As Weiss (1999) has made clear, the creation, construction and adoption of policy are never straightforward, particularly given the sheer number of different and often competing agendas and political interests and players involved.

While evaluation has the potential to provide a diverse range of methodological possibilities, from serving an instrumental function to one that broadens public participation, within the public sector context evaluation is valued for its perceived scientific and technical authority (House, 1993) and used primarily as a management tool designed for accountability and decision-making purposes. Despite the multiple and diverse methodologies available, we see the widespread adoption and use of evaluation "technologies" as formal mechanisms for decision-making, monitoring, standard setting, improvement, reporting and controlling of program activities and expenditures within public sector institutions. As an institutionalized and formalized activity, evaluation processes and practices provide an organizational legitimacy that is taken for granted, despite the significant epistemological, methodological and democratic consequences. As a way to highlight the challenges of adopting collaborative approaches in a policy-making context, in the following, we explore the differences (and tensions) between a collaborative approach and a technocratic approach to evaluation.

As Table 33.1 illustrates, collaborative and technocratic approaches to evaluation are notably distinct, with contrasting historical roots, purposes, role of the evaluator, values and contexts of practice. With such divergent visions and practices, the questions then become "Who is evaluation in service to?" and "What is its purpose?"

As a "tool" within the policy process, collaborative approaches have the potential to disrupt instrument constituencies, fundamentally reorienting the policy process to a broader range of policy instrument considerations. Unlike technocratic evaluation, collaborative approaches do not seek to preserve and maintain the status quo but to challenge established norms and practices and broaden the policy conversation to include the perspectives and voices of relevant (and often historically marginalized) communities who, in a democratic society, ought to be engaged in the conversation.

Consider the Canadian Truth and Reconciliation Commission's (TRC) Call to Action in the context of the Canadian federal government's reparations to Indigenous peoples, a commitment that foregrounds the need for collaboration in assessing the implementation and impact of the 94 Call to Action interventions. As Prime Minister Trudeau has stated, it is a time for renewed "nation-to-nation relationship, based on recognition of rights, respect, co-operation, and partnership" (Government of Canada, 2018). A relational approach to evaluation that values inclusion, voice, understanding and engagement would be salient in such program and policy contexts as the need to dismantle and disrupt past practice and build new relationships is essential for future planning and for measuring progress. In this context, social inquiry serves more than a technocratic accounting function.

Further concerns about intergenerational equity, rising rates of poverty and the climate crisis also highlight the need for broader engagement and deliberation with relevant and affected constituencies in actively informing and shaping evaluation designs, processes and practices. The perspective of evaluation as a technology (Kushner, 2017) provides policymakers with a standardized, prescriptive means of achieving putatively predictable outcomes. The legibility of the social world is read through numbers, statistics and indicators that represent the essence of social programs and processes. This is the vision of evaluator as technician. Technocratic approaches thus have profound epistemological and governance implications (Merry, 2016).

Through engagement with a broader constituency, collaborative approaches can mobilize diverse perspectives, stories and histories and help provide critical questions and challenge current policy processes and outcomes. From a collaborative perspective, inclusion, engagement, voice and relationship represent how knowledge is constructed, by whom and for what purposes. This approach supports a vision of evaluation that is contextual, culturally and socially representative and fundamentally democratic. Technocratic approaches use the authority of science, objectivity and expert judgment to validate policy and remain in service to the bureaucratic ideals of good governance. While this discussion is framed around the technical merits of experimental, quasi-experimental or quantitative methods versus other inquiry approaches, the fundamental issue has less to do with technical quality than with what Schwandt (2009) terms "epistemological politics" (the privileging of some knowledge and some knowers over others). While calls for more democratic approaches to policy are not new (deLeon, 1994; Fischer,

Table 33.1 Differences Between Collaborative and Technocratic Approaches to Evaluation

	Collaborative	*Technocratic*
Historical roots	Political, response to modernist approaches	Rationalist, response to government services
Purpose	Understanding, learning, empowerment, relationships	Explanation, prediction, confirmation, central control
Nature of Knowledge	Transformational, subjective, relational, constructivist, contextual/embedded	Technical, instrumental, realist, pre-determined, extractive
Values	Included, formative, local	Excluded, denied; gold standard
Stakeholder Involvement	Direct, lived experience	Indirect, detached
Role of Evaluator	Engaged, responsive	Independent, objective, observer
Method	Mixed: qualitative and quantitative	Quantitative
Use	Conceptual, learning/educative, transformative	Instrumental (measure of effectiveness, efficiency, impact), symbolic use for accountability
Context	Local, micro/macro influences	Universal standards

2003), failure to recognize the political dimension of policy analysis contributes to the use of evaluation as a technocratic instrument (Fischer, 2019). As a result, the democratic potential of evaluation as a policy-making instrument may never be realized.

Conclusion

In this chapter, we focused on the use of evaluation as a technocratic instrument in public sector contexts, focusing on the governance architecture supporting this vision of evaluation: the use of and reliance on predefined indicators, the use of quantitative methods as the gold standard for measures of performance and the need for technical expertise to translate complex metrics. The architecture supporting a technocratic approach to evaluation is embedded in the culture, politics and governance approaches in federal institutions. As Segerholm (2002) describes, "[E]valuation practice is part of larger political and managerial moods in today's society and functions not only as a source of information to the public but as part of a larger web of different controlling, monitoring, and governing practices" (p. 98).

From a technocratic perspective, evaluation is a key part of what it means to manage public policy and financial expenditures and a key part of accountability as it is currently understood. What is becoming ever more apparent is the explicit role evaluation now plays in the state's system of governance (Ryan and Feller, 2009; Schwandt, 2009), not merely as passive bystander or reluctant companion but as an active partner with performance management in framing our expectations of government programs, policies and public services. Consequently, the possibility of widespread use of collaborative approaches to evaluation as a policy instrument seems remote.

Nevertheless, examples such as the recent Call to Action in Canada around Indigenous rights cited earlier, which asks for regular monitoring and evaluation, highlights the potential use of collaborative approaches to evaluation that are actively inclusive of Indigenous perspectives and voices and hold out hope for more effective and significant collaborative processes.

As Bremner (2019) states, when it comes to evaluating the impact of the TRC Call to Action, we need to ask, "What stories need to be told and who will tell them? How will these stories speak to truth and reconciliation? How can we ensure that these stories will be heard?" In the current public policy context, there can be no stronger rationale for the use of collaborative approaches to evaluation.

References

Arnstein, S. R. (1969). A ladder of citizen inquiry. *Journal of the American Institute of Planners*, 35(4), 216–224.

Bremner, L. (2019). Creating new stories: The role of evaluation in truth and reconciliation. *Canadian Journal of Program Evaluation*, 34(2), 331–342.

Bua, A., & Escobar, O. (2018). Participatory-deliberative processes and public policy agendas: Lessons for policy and practice. *Policy Design and Practice*, 1(2), 126–140. https://doi.org/10.1080/25741292.2018.1469242

Capano, G., & Howlett, M. (2020). The knowns and unknowns of policy instrument analysis: Policy tools and the current research agenda on policy mixes. *Sage Open*, 10(1). https://doi.org/10.1177/2158244019900568

Chouinard, J. A., & Cousins, J. B. (2009). A review and synthesis of current research on cross-cultural evaluation. *American Journal of Evaluation*, 30(4), 457–494.

Chouinard, J. A., & Cousins, J. B. (2015). The journey from rhetoric to reality: Participatory evaluation in a development context. *Educational Assessment, Evaluation and Accountability*, 27(1), 5–39.

Cousins, J. B., & Chouinard, J. A. (2012). *Participatory evaluation up close: A review and integration of the research base*. Greenwich, CT: Information Age Publishing Inc.

Cousins, J. B., & Whitmore, E. (1998). Framing participatory evaluation. In E. Whitmore (Ed.), *Understanding and practicing participatory evaluation: New directions in evaluation*, no. 80 (pp. 3–23). San Francisco, CA: Jossey-Bass.

Cronbach, L. J., Ambron, S. W., Dornbusch, S. M., Hess, R. D., Hornik, R. C., Phillips, D. C., Walker, D. F., & Weiner, S. S. (1980). *Toward a reform of program evaluation*. San Francisco, CA: Jossey-Bass.

Dahler-Larsen, P. (2012). *The evaluation society*. Stanford, CA: Stanford University Press.

Dahler-Larsen, P. (2014). Constitutive effects of performance indicators: Getting beyond unintended consequences. *Public Management Review*, 16, 969–986. doi:10.1080/14719037.2013.770058

Danziger, M. (1995). Policy analysis postmodernized. *Policy Studies Journal*, 23(3), 435–450. https://doi.org/10.1111/J.1541-0072.1995.TB00522.X

deLeon, P. (1994). Reinventing the policy sciences: Three steps back to the future. *Policy Sciences*, 27, 77–95.

deLeon, P., & Vogenbeck, D. (2007). The policy sciences at a crossroads. In F. Fischer & G. Miller (Eds.), *Handbook of public policy analysis: Theory, politics, and methods*. Retrieved from https://books.google.ca/books?hl=en&lr=&id=oh03DwAAQBAJ&oi=fnd&pg=PT21&dq=%22policy+sciences+at+a+cross+roads&ots=_x3GCgQelW&sig=v9xoJcsF_aH31-NNgNOgIo4YUFU&redir_esc=y#v=onepage&q=%22policy sciences at a cross roads&f=false

Espeland, W., & Sauder, M. (2007). Rankings and reactivity: How public measures recreate social worlds. *American Journal of Sociology*, 113(1), 1–40.

Fischer, F. (2000). *Citizens, experts, and the environment: The politics of local knowledge*. Durham, NC: Duke University Press.

Fischer, F. (2003). *Reframing public policy: Discursive politics and deliberative practices*. Oxford: Oxford Press.

Fischer, F. (2009). *Democracy and expertise: Reorienting policy inquiry*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.

Fischer, F. (2019). *Politics, values, and public policy: The problem of methodology*. London: Routledge.

Frank, J. (2013). Mitigating against epistemic injustice in educational research. *Educational Researcher*, 42(7), 363–370.

Franklin, U. (1990). *The real world of technology*. Toronto, ON: CBC Enterprises.

Freire, P. (1970). *Pedagogy of the oppressed*. New York: Seabury Press.

Gildersleeve, R. E. (2017). The neoliberal academy of the Anthropocene and the retaliation of the lazy academic. *Cultural Studies-Critical Methodologies*, 17(3), 286–293.

Gilley, B. (2017). Technocracy and democracy as spheres of justice in public policy. *Policy Sciences*, 50, 9–22.

Gordon, E. W., Miller, F., & Rollock, D. (1990). Coping with communicentric bias in knowledge production in the social sciences. *Educational Researcher*, 19, 14–19.

Government of Canada (2018). Retrieved November 1, 2021, from https://pm.gc.ca/en/news/news-releases/2018/02/14/government-canada-create-recognition-and-implementation-rights

Hall, B. (2005). In from the cold: Reflections on participatory research from 1970–2006. *Convergence*, xxxviii (1), 5–24.

Hall, B. & Tandon, R. (2017). Decolonization of knowledge, epistemicide, participatory research and higher education. *Research for All*, 1 (1), 6–19.

Hanberger, A. (2006). Evaluation of and for democracy. *Evaluation*, 12(1), 17–37.

Heron, J. & Reason, P. (1997). A participatory inquiry paradigm. *Qualitative Inquiry*, 3(3), 274–294.

Hogan, J., & Howlett, M. (2015). Reflections on our understanding of policy paradigms and policy change. *Policy Paradigms in Theory and Practice*, 3–18. https://doi.org/10.1057/9781137434043_1

House, E. R. (1993). *Professional evaluation: Social impact and political consequences*. Thousand Oaks, CA: Sage.

Howlett, M., & Ramesh, M. (2003). *Studying public policy: Policy cycles and policy subsystems*. Toronto: Oxford University Press.

Jann, W., & Wegrich, K. (2007). Theories of the policy cycle. In F. Fischer, G. Killer, & M. Sidney (Eds.), *Handbook of public policy analysis: Theory, politics, and methods* (pp. 69–88). https://doi.org/10.4324/9781315093192-12

Knoepfel, Peter, Corinne Laure, Frederic Varone, & Michael Hill. (2007). *Public policy analysis*. Bristol: Policy Press.

Kuntz, A. M. (2015). *The responsible methodologist*. Walnut Creek, CA: Left Coast Press.

Kushner, S. (2017). *Evaluative research methods: Managing the complexities of judgment in the field*. Charlotte, NC: Information Age Publishing.

Lasswell, H. D. (1956). The decision process: Seven categories of functional analysis. Bureau of Governmental Research. Retrieved from https://books.google.ca/books/about/The_Decision_Process.html?id=RKgdAAAAMAAJ&redir_esc=y

Lasswell, H. D. (1970). The emerging conception of the policy sciences. Retrieved October 26, 2021, from Policy Sciences website: www.jstor.org/stable/4531369?seq=1#metadata_info_tab_contents

LaVelle, J. M. (2020). Educating evaluators 1976–2017: An expanded analysis of university-based evaluation education programs. *American Journal of Evaluation*, 41(4), 494–509.

MacDonald, B. (1974). Evaluation and the control of education. In B. MacDonald & R. Walker (Eds.), *Innovation, evaluation, research and the problem of control (SAFARI)* (pp. 37–48). Norwich, UK: Centre for Applied Research in Education, University of East Anglia.

Maguire, P. (1987). Considering more feminist participatory research: What's congruency got to do with it? *Qualitative Inquiry*, 2(1), 106–118.

Merry, S. E. (2011). Measuring the world: Indicators, human rights, and global governance. *Current Anthropology*, 52(3), S83–S95.

Merry, S. E. (2016). *The seductions of quantification: Measuring human rights, gender violence, and sex trafficking*. Chicago: The University of Chicago Press.

Patton, M. Q. (1997). *Utilization-focused evaluation: A new century text* (3rd ed.). Thousand Oaks, CA: Sage.

Patton, M. Q. (2019, October 9). *EvalTalk*. Retrieved from https://mail.google.com/mail/u/1/#inbox/WhctKJVZqWgMNcVZNGqzvpdJQvCdNjgpTsHWhxDhVcrJtbXlzTjjlxPcwPHPzNfXSSrcMVg

Richardson, L. (2013). Putting the research boot on the policymakers' foot: Can participatory approaches change the relationship between policymakers and evaluation? *Social Policy & Administration*, 47(4), 483–500.

Ryan, K. E., & Feller, I. (2009). Education, accountability, and performance measurement in national education systems: Trends, methods, and issues. In K. E. Ryan & J. B. Cousins, (Eds.), *The Sage handbook of educational evaluation* (pp. 171–189). Thousand Oaks, CA: Sage.

Ryan, P. (2018). "Technocracy," democracy . . . and corruption and trust. *Policy Science*, 51, 131–139.

Schön, D. A. (2017). *The reflective practitioner: How professionals think in action: The reflective practitioner: How professionals think in action* (pp. 1–374). New York: Basic Books, Inc. https://doi.org/10.4324/9781315237473

Schwandt, T. A. (2002). *Evaluation practice reconsidered*. New York: Peter Lang.

Schwandt, T. A. (2009). Globalizing influences in the western evaluation imaginary. In K. E. Ryan & J. B. Cousins (Eds.), *The Sage handbook of educational evaluation* (pp. 19–36). Thousand Oaks, CA: Sage.

Schwandt, T. A. (2018). Acting together in determining value: A professional ethical responsibility of evaluators. *Evaluation*, 24(3), 306317.

Segerholm, C. (2002). Evaluation as responsibility, conscience, and conviction. In K. E. Ryan & T. A. Schwandt (Eds.), *Exploring evaluator role and identity* (pp. 87–102). Greenwich, CT: Information Age Publishing Inc.

Shore, C., & Wright, S. (2000). Coercive accountability: The rise of audit culture in higher education. In M. Strathern (Ed.), *Audit cultures: Anthropological studies in accountability, ethics and the academy* (pp. 57–89). London: Routledge.

Shore, C. & Wright, S. (2015). Audit culture revisited: Rankings, ratings, and the reassembling of society. *Current Anthropology*, 56(3), 421–444.

Stone, D. (2002) *Policy paradox: The art of political decision making*. New York: WW Norton & Company.

Torgerson, D. (1986). Between knowledge and politics: Three faces of policy analysis. *Policy Sciences*, 19, 33–59.

Torgerson, D. (2003). Democracy through policy discourse. In M. A. Hajer & H. Wagenaar (Eds.), *Deliberative policy analysis* (pp. 113–138). Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Torgerson, D. (2017). Policy sciences and democracy: A reexamination. *Policy Sciences*, 50, 339–350.

van Nispen, F. K. M., & A. B. Ringeling. (1998). On instruments and instrumentality: A critical assessment. In B. G. Peters & F. K. M. van Nispen (Eds.), *Public policy instruments: Evaluating the tools of public administration* (pp. 204–217). New York: Edward Elgar.

Weiss, C. H. (1999). The interface between evaluation and public policy. *Evaluation*, 5(4), 468–486. http://dx.doi.org/10.1177/135638909900500408

PART VIII

Selecting and Mixing Tools

34

POLICY TOOLS AND (NEW) GOVERNANCE ARRANGEMENTS

Policy Mixes and Their Effectiveness

Michael Howlett and Jeremy Rayner

"New" Governance Arrangements (NGAs) are a kind of policy mix which has emerged as a lively topic in comparative policy studies and is often proposed as a solution to complex policy problems like environmental or health protection. However, assessing the merits and demerits of particular arrangements or instrument mixes is difficult. The chapter proposes a variety of tools to tackle the often-overlooked problem of identifying and inventorying the instruments found in instrument mixes and assessing their likelihood to produce optimal results. A framework is developed for evaluating the likelihood of successful implementation of NGAs that exploits the fact that new policy development is almost always constrained by previous policy choices which have become institutionalized. The degree to which this institutionalization has occurred is seen as variable and the implementation to depend on a number of well-understood processes such as increasing returns and other kinds of positive feedback, sunk costs, and incremental policy learning. The applicability of the framework is demonstrated in the context of NGAs found in the natural resource sector.

Introduction

An interesting quandary for comparative public policy analysis arises from the observation that the theoretical promise of a new policy instrument – such as, recently, emissions trading or environmental taxation – is rarely fully realized in practice (Vos 2007). While there are many reasons for this disappointing outcome, analysts have become increasingly aware that the real potential of a new policy instrument to improve policy outcomes lies not in its isolated application, but in the contribution it makes to an existing policy mix (Ganghof 2006; Chapman 2003; OECD 2007; Keast et al. 2006).

That is, most existing policy arrangements or regimes have developed incrementally in an ad hoc fashion over a relatively long period of time and contain a wide mix of policy instruments (Wilson 2000; Evers 2005; Gunningham and Sinclair 1999). These regimes sometimes contain a unifying overall logic but more often are the result of policy instruments and programmes being stacked on top of each other in a process which Thelen (2003) and Hacker (2005) have described as "policy drift" or "layering". The results are arrangements of policy instruments that are both complex and costly to administer, often contain counterproductive instrument

DOI: 10.4324/9781003163954-42

mixes, and are difficult to change since key elements confer benefits on well-entrenched interests (Beland 2007; Grabosky 1995; Pierson 1993).

For these reasons, governments around the world grappling with new policy problems have become increasingly interested in crafting and adopting more carefully designed arrangements of instrument mixes or what are sometimes referred to as "New Governance Arrangements" (NGAs) (Howlett and Rayner 2006a, 2006b). New environmental policy initiatives dealing with issues ranging from pollution control to resource management, for example, are increasingly attempting to redesign entire policy regimes and avoid problems associated with layering and policy drift (Jordan et al. 2003, 2005).

While NGAs mark a welcome departure from both incrementalism and entrenched preferences for one kind of instrument to the exclusion of all the others (Howlett 2005), NGAs are also not without problems of their own. Some of these problems are political and relate to implementation difficulties, such as weaning key actors off subsidies or re-regulating critical sets of social and economic activities against opposition from those actors benefiting from the status quo. Others, however, are analytical, most notably those connected with the identification of optimal policy designs and the avoidance of sub-optimal outcomes. Policy analysts have often been remarkably cavalier in their descriptions of the nature and limits of particular policy regimes and in their identification of the different policy instruments in a regime. In what follows, we discuss both these issues in the design of integrated policy strategies (Meijers and Stead 2004; Stead et al. 2004).

Policy Instrument Mixes

Policy instruments are techniques of governance which, one way or another, involve the utilization of state resources, or their conscious limitation, in order to achieve policy goals. They are the "tools of government", the mechanisms and techniques used to implement or give effect to public policies (Salamon 2002). Analysis of the connection between policy regime effectiveness and instrument choice has a reasonably long history, but the focus of attention has changed at least three times.

"First generation" scholars studying the tools of government were concerned largely with the analysis of business-government relations and with the effects of state regulation and economic policy formation on business efficiency. Although internecine debates between neo-classical and welfare economists over the concept were sharp, first generation instrument choice economists concentrated their efforts on identifying the market failures which would justify government intervention in market exchange and the possible governance techniques which could "correct" those failures (Bator 1958; Zerbe and McCurdy 1999; Breyer 1979; Zeckhauser and Schaefer 1968). Other scholars, however, credited political rationales – such as ideological propensities, partisan electoral calculations, credit-claiming and blame-avoidance behaviour, and others – as the main explanation of instrument selection and regime effectiveness (Lowi 1966; Wilson 1974; Trebilcock and Hartle 1982; Salamon 1981; Weaver 1986; Majone 1989). Public policymakers were not generally thought to be driven by questions of theoretical purity but rather by a more overt political calculus.

The first generation of early instrument analyses suffered from three main problems. First, studies tended to promote a misleading view of either the purely technical or purely political nature of instrument choices. Second, they tended to portray instrument choices in stark, "good and evil" terms, embracing, for example, "good" pro-market choices and "evil" non-market ones (Woodside 1986). And third, they contributed to a growing gap between complex administrative practices on the ground and overly simplistic theoretical discussions and inquiries.

Not all early studies shared these characteristics, of course, and some analysts presented more complex and nuanced models and analyses of instruments and instrument choices (see, for example, Bressers and Klok 1988; Hood 1986). Building on the base of case studies and insights developed in these works, second generation students of instrument choice attempted to develop more policy-relevant models of instrument selection processes examining, for example, the role played by policy networks in instrument deliberations and choices (van Nispen and Ringeling 1998; de Bruijn and Hufen 1998; Bressers and O'Toole 1998). Although it was acknowledged that, in some circumstances, governments might well choose particular instruments based on their technical efficiency and theoretical appropriateness, it was argued that this was likely to occur only in very specific circumstances – such as take place occasionally in areas such as fiscal and monetary policymaking where technical experts can prevail in policy deliberations (Markoff and Montecinos 1993).

These second generation studies were a great improvement on first generation work but also featured some significant limitations of their own. First, they tended to focus on either those instruments designed to affect goods and service production and delivery in society – "substantive instruments" – or those instruments designed to alter policy processes – "procedural" instruments – and ignored their interrelationships (Howlett 2000, 2004). And secondly, and relatedly, in almost all cases, they also focused exclusively on single, discrete instances of instrument selection, even while acknowledging that instrument choices were often made in "bundles" or accumulated into such bundles or "mixes" over time (Hood 2007).

This led to a "third generation" of work on instruments which attempted to overcome these limitations and apply the models developed by first and second generation theorists to the question of policy instrument mixes and especially to the potential to develop optimal policy instrument designs in complex multi-instrument settings (Grabosky 1994; Gunningham and Young 1997). This latter work represents an effort to correct many of the flaws of first and second generation thinking and addresses the disjuncture between administrative practice and instrument analysis which was a recurring feature of earlier work on the subject (Eliadis et al. 2005).

Third generation work on instrument choice is especially germane to the analysis of many so-called "New Governance Arrangements", since NGAs represent efforts at integrated policy design and implementation revolving around the construction of policy mixes expected to optimize governments goals. NGAs, that is, are policy mixes designed as integrated strategies and are specifically intended to address the perceived shortcomings of previous, more ad hoc policy regimes.

Design Principles for Policy Mixes

What, then, are the principles upon which policy mixes – and thus NGAs – can be designed to ensure integration and optimality? Some basic principles were proposed by proponents of "smart regulation" in the late 1990s, such as Neil Gunningham and his colleagues. They suggested policymakers should:

1. Consider the full range of policy instruments available,
2. Employ a mix of policy instruments carefully chosen to create positive interactions with each other and to respond to particular, context-dependent features of the policy sector,
3. In the context of continuing pressures on governments to do more with less, consider incentive-based instruments, various forms of self-regulation by industry, and policies that can employ commercial and non-commercial third parties to achieve compliance, and

4. Not overlook procedural policy instruments such as information instruments and the various techniques of network management.

(Gunningham et al. 1998)

While helpful, these suggestions are heavily influenced by Gunningham's specific interest in environmental regulation and are more like maxims or "rules of thumb" than generalizable principles which could allow policy planners and managers to design optimal arrangements in a variety of different contexts. Appropriate policy design requires (1) specifying what kinds of tools are available to be mixed and (2) understanding the factors which allow us to designate any, and any particular, mix as integrated. These two questions are addressed next.

What Tools Are Available? Elements of a Policy Mix

As the chapters in the introductory section of this book have set out, first generation efforts to systematically study policy instruments produced several useful taxonomies of policy instruments (Tupper and Doern 1981; Vedung 1997) whose employment helped shed light on the reasons behind discrete instrument choices (e.g., Linder and Peters 1989, 1990, 1992). The taxonomies were especially effective in identifying shifts in patterns of instrument choices, such as those associated with the waves of privatization and deregulation which characterized the 1980s and 1990s (Howlett and Ramesh 2003).

Taxonomies, such as the one first developed by Christopher Hood (1986; see also Anderson 1977) utilizing a "statecraft" rubric can also be used to identify the basic elements of any policy mix. Such taxonomies group instruments together according to which specific governing resource they rely on for their effectiveness – in Hood's case, "nodality" (or information), authority, treasure, or the organizational resources of government. Hood's schema provides an overall template for assessing the potential components of any policy instrument mix (Table 34.1).

Although policymakers are seemingly confronted with a number of choices of possible instruments in creating their strategies, the contribution of second generation instrument studies

Table 34.1 A Taxonomy of Eight Basic Policy Instrument Components of a Policy Mix

		Principal Governing	*Resource Used*	
	Nodality	*Authority*	*Treasure*	*Organization*
Substantive	Advice	Regulation	Grants	Administration
General Purpose of	Training	Self-regulation	User charges	Public enterprises
Instrument Use	Reporting	Licences	Loans	Policing
	Registration	Census taking	Tax credits	Consultants
			Polling	Record keeping
Procedural	Information provision/ withdrawal	Treaties	Interest group funding/ creation	Conferences
		Advisory committees/ commissions		Commissions of inquiry
				Government reorganizations

(Cells provide examples of instruments in each category.)

Source: Adapted from Christopher Hood, *The Tools of Government* (Chatham: Chatham House, 1986): 124–125 and Michael Howlett, "Managing the 'Hollow State': Procedural Policy Instruments and Modern Governance," *Canadian Public Administration*. 43, no. 4 (2000): 412–431

was to reveal that governments often repeatedly choose from a much more limited range of instruments from all the options. They set out a model of the eight basic types of instruments from which any policy mix is constructed. Each type is, of course, a shorthand expression for a variety of different tools and strategies, and the set may seem an unacceptable simplification of a much more complex reality.

The first and second generation work also noted a distinct tendency for governments to develop an "implementation style" in various sectors and to stick with this style for quite some time (Kagan and Axelrad 1997; Howlett 2002, 2005). These implementation styles are composed of a combination, or mix, of substantive and procedural instruments, at minimum two. Hence, for example, the well-known implementation style found in many US policy sectors, dubbed "adversarial legalism" by Robert Kagan (1997, 1991), is composed of a preferred substantive instrument (regulation) and a characteristic procedural one (Judicial review) based on widespread, easily accessible legal procedures. Similarly regulations (a substantive tool) are often accompanied by regulatory advisory boards and/or various kinds of oversight processes (both procedural tools).

The common presence of implementation styles highlights two important aspects of policy mixes that are relevant to contemporary policy instrument studies: (1) that they usually involve both substantive and procedural elements and (2) that the exact pairing of instruments has an important historical dimension linked to the kinds of governance arrangements found in a jurisdiction.

This implies, among other things, that any assessment of the adequacy, coherence, or optimality of instrument choices within an instrument mix requires that the specific features of particular mixes be identified but also how these elements have evolved over time (Howlett et al. 2006).

What Factors Influence Optimality? Coherence and Consistency as Goals of Integrated Strategies

During the 1990s, governments grappled with unfamiliar problems in a context in which they often found themselves required or called upon to do more with less. Policymakers became increasingly aware of the importance not just of expanding the range of instruments available to them but also of experimenting with new instrument mixes in many sectors, as well as with efforts to rationalize or consolidate older ones. Such "New Governance Arrangements" have been developed in contexts as diverse as health assessments, national forest programmes, integrated coastal zone management (ICZM), safety cultures, integrated water management, and others (Hippes 1988; Knoepfel 2007; Miller 1990; Bode 2006; Briassoulis 2004; Stead et al. 2004).

The result has been a new kind of institutional design, the attempt to develop "integrated strategies" (IS) whereby, in addition to the substantive policy objectives that they pursue, governments also attempt to create or reconstruct a policy domain with coherent policy goals and a consistent set of policy instruments that support each other in the achievement of the goals.

NGAs are intended to combine policy instruments and their settings in new ways so that multiple instruments support rather than undermining one another in the pursuit of policy goals. NGAs also attempt to integrate existing, and sometimes competing, policy initiatives into a cohesive strategy; to coordinate the activities of multiple agencies and actors; and, generally, to substitute a holistic approach to a problem for one that has decomposed policy into a set of multiple and apparently unrelated problems and solutions (Briassoulis 2004, 2005; Stead et al. 2004).

As discussed earlier, the analytical and practical challenges to understanding and improving NGA designs are twofold. First, the elements of old mixes must be identified and supplemented or replaced with new elements which are more coherent and consistent. Second, the reconstructive effort behind the creation of new designs demands a sophisticated analysis of policy dynamics and instrument choice which must deal not only with the technical questions of

replacing an existing set of policy instruments with a new, more integrated one but also with the political challenges of so doing.

The Dynamics of Instrument Choice and (New) Governance Arrangements

The main practical challenge facing integrated NGA designs is that they almost never begin with a clean slate. In fact, most NGA designs are conceived as a result of dissatisfaction with the incoherent goals and uncoordinated instruments that characterize an existing set of policies over two or more domains (May et al. 2005). The potential outcomes of NGA can be represented in the following way (see Table 34.2):

Table 34.2 Typology of New Governance Arrangements According to the Relationships Between Goals and Means They Embody

		Instrument Mixes Are	
		Consistent	*Inconsistent*
Multiple goals are	**coherent**	optimal	ineffective
	incoherent	misdirected	failed

The variety of possible outcomes is explained by the fact that new policy development is usually constrained by previous policy choices which have become institutionalized. The degree to which institutionalization has taken place – and hence the severity of the constraint it places on policy change – is variable and depends on a number of well-understood processes such as increasing returns and other kinds of positive feedback, sunk costs, and incremental policy learning. Following Hacker, we propose that efforts to create an optimal IS design that pursues multiple but internally coherent goals using multiple but consistent policy instruments can fail in three main ways: layering, drift, and conversion (Table 34.3).

Layering is the one possible way to try to create an NGA but difficult to accomplish as it means adding new goals and instruments without abandoning previous ones, often leading to both incoherence amongst the goals and inconsistency with respect to the instruments. Many NGAs suffered this fate; for example, efforts at integrated coastal zone management (ICZM) which failed when powerful interests accepted new policy arrangements only if they could keep favourable goals, instruments, and settings in the new design, such as unsustainable fishing quotas to support an industry (Howlett and Rayner 2006a, 2004).

Drift allows the goals of the policy to change without changing the instruments, which again is difficult to control or manage since the old tools may become inconsistent with the new goals and most likely ineffective in achieving them. Examples of this process are many, with many

Table 34.3 Typology of NGAs According to Their Relationship With Existing Policies

		Instrument Mixes Are	
		Consistent	*Inconsistent*
Multiple goals are	**coherent**	integration	drift
	incoherent	conversion	layering

analysts observing such processes at work in, for example, welfare state transitions from "welfare to workfare" in which policy goals are coherent (end welfare as we know it), but the tools used to address them are inconsistent or counterproductive (Evers 2005).

Conversion, on the other hand, is the attempt to change the instrument mix in a more tractable policy domain in order to meet new goals in a domain where change is blocked by "converting" an existing tool to a new use. Building integrated land management (ILM) out of a protected areas strategy, for example, or attempting to use school vouchers to address aspects of social welfare policy, exhibit some of the problems associated with conversion (Miller 1990).

Designing optimal integrated strategies, then, involves ensuring that sub-optimal outcomes from processes such as layering, drift, and conversion are avoided. All these outcomes and processes are apparent in a notable recent effort to develop a coherent NGA in the forest sector: the development in Europe and elsewhere of "national forest programs", or NFPs. The case study of NFP development that follows provides an example of how to address the general challenges of assessing NGAs developed in circumstances in which better policy integration is a key objective.

An NGA Case Study: The Development of National Forest Programs

The idea of providing overall coordination and monitoring of the disparate elements of forest policy through a new governance arrangement has been part of ongoing efforts to develop national forest programs in many countries. This effort first took shape during the ultimately unsuccessful attempt to negotiate a legally binding international convention on sustainable forest management in the 1990s. Although those negotiations failed to produce a convention, the UN-sponsored IPF/IFF process did result in an "action plan" towards more sustainable forest practices which, though nonbinding, proved influential. The action plan contained, among other items, a section on attaining "progress through national forest and land-use programmes" in which countries were exhorted to "[d]evelop and implement a holistic national forest programme which integrates the conservation and sustainable use of forest resources and benefits in a way that is consistent with national, sub-national and local policies and strategies" (Humphreys 2004).

There was a patchwork of responses from different governments to the NFP idea, depending on how invested they were in the existing governance arrangement they had in place and whether or not these could be changed through layering, draft, conversion, or replacement. In some cases, countries were early adopters of formal documents which they designated as an NFP but which, upon examination, largely failed to deliver on the goals of the action plan.

In other cases, countries deliberately did not adopt a formal NFP, arguing that their existing forest policies were already sufficiently well integrated. The issue rapidly became politicized as INGOs derided the former group as merely paying lip service to the NFP idea while criticizing the latter as policy laggards.

Governance Arrangements and NFPs

The two key constitutive elements of an NFP noted by European researchers which allow NFPs to be examined as examples of efforts to put into place new governance strategies different from the traditional regime of regulation and subsidy for timber production purposes are (1) mechanisms enabling participatory deliberation and conflict resolution and (2) mechanisms for intersectoral coordination and policy learning. That is, in addition to traditional industry supply and production regulation and market promotion activities, NFPs also contain procedural policy tools which allow or encourage forms of autopoietic network management.

Table 34.4 Four Main Types of NFPs

		INPUTS/PROCESS *NFP Mechanisms for Participation and Conflict Resolution*	
	NFP Mechanisms for Coordination and Policy Learning	*Formal*	*Informal*
OUTPUTS	***Substantive***	Classical or "designed" NFP	Output-oriented NFP
	Symbolic	Legitimizing or "process-oriented" NFP	Rhetorical NFP

Source: Modeled after Americo Carvalho Mendes's "Implementation Analysis of National Forest Programmes" in Peter Glueck and Johannes Voitleithner (eds.) *NFP Research: Its Retrospect and Prospect*, Publication Series of the BOKU Institute of Forest Sector Policy and Economics, vol 52, Vienna 2004, pp. 31–46

The former involve a variety of procedural instruments such as the creation of advisory committees, mediation and arbitration provisions, and interest group facilitation which can be either formal – that is, set out and established in legal and regulatory frameworks – or more informal in nature. These tools are different from many existing governance arrangements which called for closed-door bargaining or negotiation between governments and industry in determining the content and character of a forest policy regime.

The coordination and policy learning mechanisms also upset existing arrangements, involving various forms of cross-sectoral environmental or industrial planning activities, taking into account additional resource and environmental considerations and actors than traditional industry-driven governance arrangements.

Both these efforts can remain largely symbolic – that is, relegated to overall policy statements and general design principles – or can be substantive in nature – that is, involving the establishment of multi-sectoral committees and implementation agencies (Howlett and Rayner 2006a, 2006b).

Thus, as Table 34.4 shows, in addition to the "classical" NFP – the kind originally envisioned in the international negotiations, where formal consultative processes alter existing governance arrangements and produce substantive output change – there are a variety of other possibilities. One possibility is the "output-oriented NFP", in which a more informal and less holistic planning process is combined with the same substantive outputs envisioned in the original NFP idea. Other possibilities include the "legitimizing" or "process-oriented NFP", which creates new formal processes but only symbolic outputs, and the purely "rhetorical NFP", which contains neither substantive outputs nor formal processes and is an NFP in name only. In both these latter cases, traditional instrument mixes will continue largely in effect.

That is, classical NFPs are expected to be governance arrangements which result in a consistent set of instruments and coherent goals, while failed NFPs are those without either. Output-oriented NFPs, on the other hand, risk carrying over instruments from a previous policy regime, such as bilateral government-industry standard setting, which can prove inconsistent with new instruments aimed at improving stakeholder participation or transparency for consumers. NFPs with incoherent goals, such as sustainable forest management and maximizing timber production, are likely to be legitimizing at best, even if they feature relatively consistent instrument mixes.

As Glueck and Voitleithner (2004) and Howlett and Rayner (2006a) have shown, these types also correspond very closely to the development processes set out in Table 34.5.

Table 34.5 Typology of NFP New Governance Arrangements According to Their Relationship With Existing Policies

		Instrument Mixes Are	
		Consistent	*Inconsistent*
Multiple goals are	**coherent**	Classical NFP	Output-oriented NFP
	incoherent	Legitimizing NFP	Rhetorical NFP

Conclusion

Theories of policy instrument choice have gone through multiple "generations" (Goggin et al. 1990; O'Toole 2000) as theorists have moved from the analysis of individual instruments (Salamon 1981, 2002) to comparative studies of instrument selection (Howlett 1991; Bemelmans-Videc 1998; Peters and Van Nispen 1998; Varone 2000) and the development of theories of instrument choice (Trebilcock et al. 1982; Hood 1986; Linder and Peters 1989; Howlett 2004). Theorists, administrators, and politicians have expanded the menu of government choice to include both substantive and procedural instruments and a wider range of options of each and to understand the important context-based nature of instrument choices (Howlett 2000). "Third Generation" instrument choice theory moved beyond tool selection per se to address a series of concerns involved in designing and adopting optimal "mixes" of instruments in complex decision-making and implementation contexts or governance arrangements (Bressers and O'Toole 2005; Eliadis et al. 2005).

The "new" governance arrangements which resulted – such as NFPs – are contemporary examples of complex policy designs which require analysis in order to understand the modalities of their development and likelihood of success. The key to understanding the relationship between such governance arrangements and policy tools, we have argued, is a more sophisticated theory of instrument choice, one that takes into account both the manner in which current decision-making occurs within the context of rounds of previous decisions and the feasibility of the ultimate ambition to provide a mix of mutually supporting policy instruments. As our NFP example demonstrates, conversion, layering, and drift are all policy change processes which interact with existing and proposed governance arrangements and can cause major challenges to the achievement of integrated policymaking.

References

Anderson, Charles W. *Statecraft: An Introduction to Political Choice and Judgement*. New York: John Wiley and Sons, 1977.

Bator, Francis M. "The Anatomy of Market Failure." *Quarterly Journal of Economics* 72, no. 3 (1958): 351–379.

Beland, Daniel. "Ideas and Institutional Change in Social Security: Conversion, Layering and Policy Drift." *Social Science Quarterly* 88, no. 1 (2007): 20–38.

Bemelmans-Videc, Marie-Louise, Ray C. Rist, and Evert Vedung, eds. *Carrots, Sticks and Sermons: Policy Instruments and Their Evaluation*. New Brunswick, NJ: Transaction Publishers, 1998.

Bode, I. "Disorganized Welfare Mixes: Voluntary Agencies and New Governance Regimes in Western Europe." *Journal of European Social Policy* 16, no. 4 (2006): 346–359.

Bressers, Hans and Pieter-Jan Klok. "Fundamentals for a Theory of Policy Instruments." *International Journal of Social Economics* 15, no. 3/4 (1988): 22–41.

Bressers, Hans Th. A. and Laurence J. O'Toole. "Instrument Selection and Implementation in a Networked Context." In *Designing Government: From Instruments to Governance*, edited by P. Eliadis, M. Hill and M. Howlett. Montreal: McGill-Queen's University Press, 2005, 132–153.

Bressers, Hans Th. A. and Laurence J. O'Toole. "The Selection of Policy Instruments: A Network-Based Perspective." *Journal of Public Policy* 18, no. 3 (1998): 213–239.

Breyer, Stephen. "Analyzing Regulatory Failure: Mismatches, Less Restrictive Alternatives, and Reform." *Harvard Law Review* 92, no. 3 (1979): 549–609.

Briassoulis, H. "Analysis of Policy Integration: Conceptual and Methodological Consideration." *Policy Integration for Complex Environmental Problems: The Example of Mediterranean Desertification*, edited by H. Briassoulis. Aldershot: Ashgate, 2005, 50–80.

Briassoulis, H. "Policy Integration for Complex Policy Problems: What, Why and How." 2004 Berlin Conference on the Human Dimensions of Global Environmental Change: Greening of Policies – Interlinkages and Policy Integration, Berlin, 2004.

Chapman, R. "A Policy Mix for Environmentally Sustainable Development: Learning from the Dutch Experience." *New Zealand Journal of Environmental Law* 7, no. 1 (2003): 29–51.

de Bruijn, Johans A. and Hans A. M. Hufen. "The Traditional Approach to Policy Instruments." In *Public Policy Instruments: Evaluating the Tools of Public Administration*, edited by B. G. Peters and F. K. M. V. Nispen. New York: Edward Elgar, 1998, 11–32.

Eliadis, Pearl, Margaret Hill, and Michael Howlett, eds. *Designing Government: From Instruments to Governance*. Montreal: McGill-Queen's University Press, 2005.

Evers, A. "Mixed Welfare Systems and Hybrid Organizations: Changes in the Governance and Provision of Social Services." *International Journal of Public Administration* 28 (2005): 737–748.

Ganghof, S. "Tax Mixes and the Size of the Welfare State: Causal Mechanisms and Policy Implications." *Journal of European Social Policy* 16, no. 4 (2006): 360–373.

Glueck, Peter and Johannes Voitleithner, eds. *NFP Research: Its Retrospect and Prospect, Publication Series of the BOKU Institute of Forest Sector Policy and Economics*, vol. 52. Vienna, 2004.

Goggin, Malcolm L. et al. *Implementation Theory and Practice: Toward a Third Generation*. Glenview: Scott, Foresman/Little, Brown, 1990.

Grabosky, Paul N. "Counterproductive Regulation." *International Journal of the Sociology of Law* 23 (1995): 347–369.

Grabosky, Paul N. "Green Markets: Environmental Regulation by the Private Sector." *Law and Policy* 16, no. 4 (1994): 419–448.

Gunningham, Neil, Peter Grabosky, and Darren Sinclair. *Smart Regulation: Designing Environmental Policy*. Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1998.

Gunningham, Neil and Darren Sinclair. "Regulatory Pluralism: Designing Policy Mixes for Environmental Protection." *Law and Policy* 21, no. 1 (1999): 49–76.

Gunningham, Neil and Mike D. Young. "Toward Optimal Environmental Policy: The Case of Biodiversity Conservation." *Ecology Law Quarterly* 24 (1997): 243–298.

Hacker, J. S. Policy Drift: The Hidden Politics of US Welfare State Retrenchment. In *Beyond Continuity: Institutional Change in Advanced Political Economies*, edited by W. Streek and K. Thelen. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2005, 40–82.

Hippes, G. "New Instruments for Environmental Policy: A Perspective." *International Journal of Social Economics* 15, no. 3/4 (1988): 42–51.

Hood, Christopher. "Intellectual Obsolescence and Intellectual Makeovers: Reflections on the Tools of Government after Two Decades." *Governance* 20, no. 1 (2007): 127–144.

Hood, Christopher. *The Tools of Government*. Chatham: Chatham House Publishers, 1986.

Howlett, Michael. "Beyond Good and Evil in Policy Implementation: Instrument Mixes, Implementation Styles and Second Generation Theories of Policy Instrument Choice." *Policy & Society* 23, no. 2 (2004): 1–17.

Howlett, Michael. "Managing the 'Hollow State': Procedural Policy Instruments and Modern Governance." *Canadian Public Administration* 43, no. 4 (2000): 412–431.

Howlett, Michael. "Policy Development." In *The Oxford Handbook of Canadian Public Administration*, edited by C. Dunn. Toronto: Oxford University Press, 2002.

Howlett, Michael. "Policy Instruments, Policy Styles, and Policy Implementation: National Approaches to Theories of Instrument Choice." *Policy Studies Journal* 19, no. 2 (1991): 1–21.

Howlett, Michael. "What Is a Policy Instrument? Policy Tools, Policy Mixes and Policy Implementation Styles." In *Designing Government: From Instruments to Governance*, edited by P. Eliadis, M. Hill and M. Howlett, 31–50. Montreal: McGill-Queen's University Press, 2005.

Howlett, Michael, J. Kim, and P. Weaver. "Assessing Instrument Mixes through Program- and Agency-Level Data: Methodological Issues in Contemporary Implementation Research." *Review of Policy Research* 23, no. 1 (2006): 129–151.

Howlett, Michael and Jeremy Rayner. "Globalization and Governance Capacity: Explaining Divergence in National Forest Programmes as Instances of 'Next-Generation' Regulation in Canada and Europe." *Governance* 19, no. 2 (2006a): 251–275.

Howlett, Michael and Jeremy Rayner. "Convergence and Divergence in 'New Governance' Arrangements: Evidence from European Integrated Natural Resource Strategies." *Journal of Public Policy* 26, no. 2 (2006b): 167–189.

Howlett, Michael and Jeremy Rayner. "(Not So) 'Smart Regulation'? Canadian Shellfish Aquaculture Policy and the Evolution of Instrument Choice for Industrial Development." *Marine Policy* 28, no. 2 (2004): 171–184.

Humphreys, D. "Redefining the Issues: NGO Influence on International Forest Negotiations." *Global Environmental Politics* 4, no. 2 (2004): 51–74.

Jordan, A., R. K. W. Wurzel, and A. R. Zito. "'New' Instruments of Environmental Governance: Patterns and Pathways of Change." *Environmental Politics* 12, no. 1 (2003): 1–26.

Jordan, A., R. K. W. Wurzel, and A. Zito. "The Rise of 'New' Policy Instruments in Comparative Perspective: Has Governance Eclipsed Government?" *Political Studies* 53 (2005): 477–496.

Kagan, Robert A. "Adversarial Legalism and American Government." *Journal of Policy Analysis and Management* 10, no. 3 (1991): 369–406.

Kagan, Robert A. "Should Europe Worry about Adversarial Legalism?" *Oxford Journal of Legal Studies* 17, no. 2 (1997): 165–183.

Kagan, Robert A. and Lee Axelrad, "Adversarial Legalism: An International Perspective." In *Comparative Disadvantages? Social Regulations and the Global Economy*, edited by P. S. Nivola. Washington, DC: Brookings Institution, 1997, 146–202.

Keast, Robert A., M. Mandell, and K. Brown. "Mixing State, Market and Network Governance Modes: The Role of Government in 'Crowded' Policy Domains." *International Journal of Organization Theory and Behaviour* 9, no. 1 (2006): 27–50.

Linder, Stephen H. and B. Guy Peters. "Instruments of Government: Perceptions and Contexts". *Journal of Public Policy* 9, no. 1 (1989): 35–58.

Linder, Stephen H., and B. Guy Peters. "A Metatheoretic Analysis of Policy Design." In *Advances in Policy Studies since 1950*, edited by W. N. Dunn and R. M. Kelly. New Brunswick, NJ: Transaction Publishers, 1992, 201–238.

Linder, Stephen H., and B. Guy Peters. "Policy Formulation and the Challenge of Conscious Design." *Evaluation and Program Planning* 13 (1990): 303–311.

Lowi, Theodore J. "Distribution, Regulation, Redistribution: The Functions of Government." In *Public Policies and Their Politics: Techniques of Government Control*, edited by R. B. Ripley. New York: W.W. Norton, 1966, 27–40.

Majone, Giandomenico. *Evidence, Argument, and Persuasion in the Policy Process*. New Haven, CT: Yale University Press, 1989.

Markoff, John and Veronica Montecinos. "The Ubiquitous Rise of Economists." *Journal of Public Policy* 13, no. 1 (1993): 37–68.

May, Peter, et al. "Policy Coherence and Component-Driven Policymaking: Arctic Policy in Canada and the United States." *Policy Studies Journal* 33, no. 1 (2005): 37–63.

Meijers, E., and D. Stead. "Policy Integration: What Does It Mean and How Can It Be Achieved? A Multi-Disciplinary Review." Paper presented at the 2004 Berlin Conference on the Human Dimensions of Global Environmental Change: Greening of Policies – Interlinkages and Policy Integration.

Miller, S. M. "The Evolving Welfare State Mixes." In *Shifts in the Welfare Mix: Their Impact on Work, Social Services and Welfare Policies*, edited by A. Evers and H. Winterberger. Frankfurt: Campus Verlag, 1990, 371–388.

OECD. *Instrument Mixes for Environmental Policy*. Paris: OECD, 2007.

O'Toole, Laurence J. "Research on Policy Implementation: Assessment and Prospects." *Journal of Public Administration Research and Theory* 10, no. 2 (2000): 263–288.

Peters, B. Guy and F. K. M. Van Nispen, eds. *Public Policy Instruments: Evaluating the Tools of Public Administration*. New York: Edward Elgar, 1998.

Pierson, P. "When Effect Becomes Cause: Policy Feedback and Political Change." *World Politics* 45 (1993): 595–628.

Salamon, Lester M. "Rethinking Public Management: Third-Party Government and the Changing Forms of Government Action." *Public Policy* 29, no. 3 (1981): 255–275.

Salamon, Lester M., ed. *The Tools of Government: A Guide to the New Governance*. New York: Oxford University Press, 2002.

Stead, D., H. Geerlings, et al., eds. *Policy Integration in Practice: The Integration of Land Use Planning, Transport and Environmental Policy-Making in Denmark, England and Germany*. Delft: Delft University Press, 2004.

Thelen, K. "How Institutions Evolve: Insights from Comparative Historical Analysis." In *Comparative Historical Analysis in the Social Sciences*, edited by J. Mahoney and D. Rueschemeyer. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 2003, 208–240.

Trebilcock, Michael and Douglas G. Hartle. "The Choice of Governing Instrument." *International Review of Law and Economics* 2 (1982): 29–46.

Tupper, A. and G. B. Doern. "Public Corporations and Public Policy in Canada." In *Public Corporations and Public Policy in Canada*, edited by A. Tupper and G. B. Doern. Montreal: Institute for Research on Public Policy, 1981, 1–50.

Varone, Frederic. "Le Choix des Instruments de l'action Publique: Analyse Comparee des Politiques Energetiques en Europe et en Amerique du Nord." *Revue Internationale de Politique Comparee* 7, no. 1 (2000): 167–201.

Vedung, Evert. "Policy Instruments: Typologies and Theories." In *Carrots, Sticks and Sermons: Policy Instruments and Their Evaluation*, edited by Ray C. Rist and Evert Vedung Marie Louise Bemelmans-Videc. New Brunswick, NJ: Transaction Publishers, 1997, 21–58.

Vos, Jan-Peter. "Innovation Process in Governance: The Development of 'Emissions Trading' As a New Policy Instrument." *Science and Public Policy* 34, no. 5 (2007): 329–343.

Weaver, R. Kent. "The Politics of Blame Avoidance." *Journal of Public Policy* 6, no. 4 (1986): 371–398.

Wilson, C. A. "Policy Regimes and Policy Change." *Journal of Public Policy* 20, no. 3 (2000): 247–271.

Wilson, James Q. "The Politics of Regulation." In *Social Responsibility and the Business Predicament*, edited by J. W. McKie. Washington: Brookings Institute, 1974, 135–168.

Woodside, K. "Policy Instruments and the Study of Public Policy." *Canadian Journal of Political Science* 19, no. 4 (1986): 775–793.

Zeckhauser, Richard and Elmer Schaefer. "Public Policy and Normative Economic Theory." In *The Study of Policy Formation*, edited by R. A. Bauer and K. J. Gergen. New York: The Free Press, 1968, 27–102.

Zerbe, Richard O. and Howard E. McCurdy. "The Failure of Market Failure." *Journal of Policy Analysis and Management* 18, no. 4 (1999): 558–578.

35

MEASURING POLICY INSTRUMENT INTERACTIONS IN POLICY MIXES

Surveying the Conceptual and Methodological Landscape

Moshe Maor and Michael Howlett

Resolving a complex policy problem often requires a mix of policy instruments and thus the identification of the most promising instrument combination. However, the relevant terminology of instrument interactions in a policy mix has not been standardized, hindering a straightforward identification of superior instrument combinations. To address this challenge, the chapter defines the terminology necessary for detecting three different possible policy instrument interactions – namely, synergistic, counterproductive, and additive effects. It identifies two approaches to analyzing instrument mix effects: the "effect-based" and the "effort-based" methods. It then discusses the practical advantages and limitations of each approach and elaborates on key methodological issues that policy scholars and practitioners face at each step of developing a new policy mix.

Introduction

Individual policy instruments cannot solve complex policy problems. Most are beset by intrinsic limitations that restrict their maximum contribution to the realization of policy goals. This problem led policy scholars to study bundles or portfolios of policy instruments (e.g., Howlett and Rayner 2007; Capano and Howlett 2020; Feindt and Flynn 2009; Kay 2007; Larsen et al. 2006), and some have recently addressed the empirical analysis and conceptualization of policy mixes as systems of interconnected elements susceptible to simultaneous mutual or reciprocal interactions (del Río 2010; Lecuyer and Bibas 2012; Rosenow et al. 2016; Trencher and van der Heijden 2019; Attwell and Navin 2019). This chapter tries to delve deeper into what it means for policy instruments to interact.

Instrument interconnection or interactions occur in policy mixes when two or more policy tools are included in a combination that alters the way one or more of these instruments contribute to the realization of policy targets. These interactions can be multi-level (e.g., Howlett and del Río 2015; Goyal and Howlett 2021) and cross-sectoral (e.g., Mantino and Vanni 2019; Boonekamp 2006) and may result in expected and unexpected effects (e.g., feedback effects, side

DOI: 10.4324/9781003163954-43

effects) across a wide range of contexts, making their analysis and implementation challenging. Evaluating policy mix differences requires a clear understanding of the nature of each tool as well as the nature of its relationship(s) to others. Indeed, this constitutes a critical element of policy design (Howlett and Mukherjee 2018).

In order to ensure a design's success, the definitional and methodological grounds underlying the evidence gathered on these interactions must be solid so that a conclusion that one instrument mix is significantly superior to another is well founded. Unfortunately, current research features a variety of competing means and methods, as well as concepts and vocabulary developed to address these issues, and this confusion is hindering the clear exposition and understanding of the central problematic and its resolution. The overlaps and lacuna in the policy design field today are more pronounced than ever before because instrument combinations form the mainstay of current policy solutions for numerous complex policy problems, and synergistic instrument mixes are preferred in policy mixes for many policy problems. It is time to deepen our knowledge of synergistic, counterproductive, and other kinds of instrument interactions which are a feature of numerous policy mixes (e.g., del Río 2010; Fernández-i-Marín et al. 2021; Grabosky 1995; Justen et al. 2013; Leplay and Thoyer 2011; Trencher and van der Heijden 2019).

Towards this end, this chapter provides the minimal set of concepts necessary to understand and measure instrument-instrument interactions, distinguishing between three different kinds of instrument interactions and dividing the methodologies used to assess them into effect-based approaches and effort-based approaches. It thereafter discusses the respective advantages and limitations of these two approaches and elaborates on key methodological issues and challenges that policy scholars must face and overcome at each step in the analysis and design of instrument mixes.

Existing Concepts of Policy Tool Effects and Interactions

A few concepts have entered the policy lexicon to help discern the key effects of multiple instruments in a policy mix. The terms *synergy* and *counterproductive effects* are often used to justify choices concerning the number of instruments required for the efficient attainment of a policy goal or goals (Rogge et al. 2017; Trencher and van der Heijden 2019). Both figured prominently, for example, in a recent discussion around how to avoid potentially under- or over-designing a policy mix (Maor 2020).

Del Río (2010), Rosenow et al. (2016), and Lecuyer and Bibas (2012), for example, have examined whether tool combinations are complementary, neutral, conflicting, or overlapping in the areas of environment and energy. Trencher and van der Heijden (2019) have used an adaptive theory approach to identify complementarity advancing measures. And Attwell and Navin (2019) have offered a framework that emphasizes differences in mixes related to scope (which vaccines to require), sanctions (which penalty to impose), severity (how much of the penalty to impose), and selectivity (how to enforce or exempt people from vaccine mandates). Synthesized information about how these elements interact at the level of individual action could be thereafter combined to a distinct attribute – saliency – which "identifies the magnitude of the burdens the state imposes on those who are not vaccinated" (Attwell and Navin 2019: 979).

"Synergies" reflect the situation in which individual instruments combine in unexpected, nonlinear ways to enhance overall instruments mix effectiveness while "counterproductive" effects are those in which instruments combine to detract from overall instruments mix effectiveness. Among these interactions, synergy is a highly pursued goal of instruments mix development. Counterproductive effects in policy settings are less so (Trencher and van der Heijden

2019). Although, as we will elaborate on later, these effects can, at times, be desirable with regard to policy effectiveness.

These terms describe critical elements of policy mixes – especially concerning "how well the elements of the policy mix are aligned with each [other], thereby contributing to the achievement of policy objectives" (Rogge and Reichardt 2016: 1626). Individual instruments in a policy mix can be considered consistent when they work together to support a policy strategy: "They are inconsistent when they work against each other and are counter-productive" (Kern and Howlett 2009: 396). Note, however, that inconsistency does not necessarily lead to counterproductive effect; it can also have neutral effects: that is, having no strongly marked or positive effects.

In total, there are three types of interactive effects among policy instruments that are relevant. These include additive effects (Boonekamp 2006; Justen et al. 2013; Justen et al. 2013; Yi and Feiock 2012), as well as the counterproductive effects and synergies mentioned earlier (Lecuyer and Bibas 2012; Philibert 2011; Trencher and van der Heijden 2019).

There is indeed a broad consensus in the policy design literature that not all the effects of instruments in a policy mix are inherently complementary (e.g., Boonekamp 2006; del Río et al. 2011; Grabosky 1995; Gunningham and Grabosky 1998; Gunningham and Sinclair 1999; Howlett 2017; Tinbergen 1952), that some policy designs generate counterproductive responses from policy targets (e.g., Schneider and Ingram 1988, 1990a, 1990b, 1993, 1997, 2005), that some policy portfolios may be superior to others because they offer a reinforcing or supplementing effect (e.g., Hou and Brewer 2010), and that some tool combinations may be unnecessarily duplicative in one context but advantageous in another (e.g., Braathen 2005, 2007; Mantino and Vanni 2019).

Counterproductive effects are manifested, for example, when command-and-control regulation is used alongside voluntary compliance (Grabosky 1995), with each undermining the effectiveness of the other. This differs from more complementary additive effects which occur, for example, when command-and-control regulation to minimize undesirable modes of behavior is employed alongside financial incentives to promote more desirable ones by layering both incentives and disincentives together and having them both pull in the same direction (Hou and Brewer 2010).

An important element in current policy design thinking, therefore, is to try to maximize additive efforts that supplement each other while minimizing counterproductive ones, and perhaps neutralizing situations wherein instrument combinations are "developed without any sense of an overall conscious design" (Howlett and del Río 2015: 1235) and fall into disrepair or unintended contradictions (Daugbjerg 2009; Hou and Brewer 2010).

Existing Measures for Assessing the Character of Policy Mixes: Density and Intensity

Central to this analysis is the need for a clear(er) understanding of the precise kinds of interactions between the policy instruments arrayed in specific policy mixes: that is, how instruments relate to each other in specific contexts when they are combined in specific ways, and what impact this combination has on their contribution to the realization of policy goals. But what makes existing measures of policy mixes inadequate?

Two measures in particular feature in the current literature: density, or the number of policy instruments found in a mix, and intensity, or the manner in which those instruments are deployed in either a strong or a weak fashion. While density is a straightforward concept, intensity is more problematic as a wide range of intensity measures are possible, such as how many

objectives a mix is expected to achieve, the manner in which the instruments needed to reach these objectives are resourced, or the benefits and burdens affecting the target populations they entail (Bobrow 2006; Eliadis et al. 2005; Schneider and Sidney 2009).

Both measures were developed taking into account Howlett and Cashore's (2009) argument that all policies are composed of several distinct elements found at three levels of abstraction: the overall abstract goals of policies and governance preferences of enacting governments, the kinds of objectives and instruments used to achieve these goals, and the settings and calibrations in which the policies are applied. Based on Howlett and Cashore's (2009) premise that policy instruments are regarded as the core concept of policy output which can be designed, Knill et al. (2012) distinguished between the number of policy instruments deployed and the content of policy instruments, developing specific kinds of density and intensity measures.

Defined merely as the cumulative number of instruments deployed in a mix (Schaffrin et al. 2015), density is the most straightforward measure of mix complexity. However, merely arriving at a figure telling us how many instruments are deployed in a mix does not in itself tell us what the preferred level of density of a mix is. Whereas in the past, the Tinbergen maxim of one tool-one goal was often cited as an optimal density goal (Tinbergen 1952; del Río and Howlett 2013), more complex instances require us to delve into questions of tool interactions so as to better inform policy design practice, including the specification of optimal levels of policy tool density. Thus, to assess the effectiveness of a policy mix in the environmental area, for example, even if this just comprises price and quantity instruments, one must incorporate both synergistic and counterproductive tool relationships and interactions between these two tools (del Río 2010; Leplay and Thoyer 2011; Grabosky 1995) and control for procedural and spillover effects which might increase or decrease the number of tools and goals but in both cases beyond that of the Tinbergen target.

In dealing with and developing the concept of "intensity," Schaffrin et al. (2015) similarly relied on the same premise as Knill et al. (2012) regarding the need to look at both the "quality" and the "quantity" of tools used. To capture this qualitative aspect, they considered the content of the instruments deployed, focusing on their setting and calibrations. Thus, they defined policy intensity as the "organization and mobilization of resources" (Albrecht and Arts 2005: 888): that is, the amount of resources, effort, or activity invested in or allocated to a specific policy instrument. Like Hood (1983), they argued that resources are scarce and hence governments, ceteris paribus, would prefer to use "bureaucracy sparingly" so that the preferred level of intensity was that which would "get the job done" and no more.

Tosun (2013) and Knill et al. (2012) took this insight further in operationalizing the "intensity" of policy instruments related to clean air regulation as, for example, the stringency of emission limits for certain pollutants ("objectives"), the specific levels of a tax or subsidy ("calibrations"), and the size of the target group of a tax ("settings"). Schaffrin et al. (2015) likewise identified a systematic set of intensity measures – objectives, scope, integration, budget, implementation, and monitoring – which allowed them to weigh the different character or quality of a policy tool. This is similar to the analysis put forward by Attwell and Navin (2019) concerning the quality of the instruments deployed in the health sector to accomplish national vaccination programs, which, as noted earlier, focused on differences in scope, sanctions, severity, selectivity, and salience (Attwell and Navin 2019).

As with "density," however, what was an optimal level of intensity was unclear. Weighting differences in the respective "intensity" of the instruments' "calibrations" from the expectations of expert evaluations (e.g., Binder 1999; Coleman 1999; Mayhew 2005), for example, could differ widely from the preferences expressed in the media (e.g., Howell et al. 2000), reflecting

more popular beliefs about proper levels of resource use and misuse in specific policy areas from the control of crime to the provision of particular kinds of health-care services

Thus, effective policy design requires a more careful analysis of both intensity and density across policy areas and levels of government (Howlett and del Río 2015), as well as salience (Attwell and Navin 2019) than either measure has received to date. And this analysis should be undertaken beyond case- or issue-based assessments (Fernández-i-Marín et al. 2021). This is especially the case surrounding additive effects and synergistic or counterproductive interactions. A better method of evaluating instrument mixes characteristics is needed, one that distinguishes between different kinds of mixes and takes into account the three different types of interactive tool effects discussed earlier.

Assessing Additive, Synergetic, and Counterproductive Effects of Instruments in Policy Mixes

Developing such a method begins with the recognition that to quantify the degree of synergistic and counterproductive effects, one must first formulate a reference model that gauges expected policy effectiveness when there is no interaction between policy instruments.

This flows from the first principle in policy mix analysis, which concerns the additive nature of tool interactions. An additive effect is an effect that we expect to receive by simply adding together the impact of each individual policy instrument. This purposely does not include interaction effects so that these effects may be estimated in the second stage of analysis.

Simple addition is the basic interpretation of the measures put forward here – density and intensity – in which the basic nature of an instruments mix is determined by simply adding together the number of tools used in a mix and correlating this with the number of government resources utilized by each, without accounting for any other kinds of interactive effects (Oikonomou and Jepma 2008; Oikonomou et al. 2011).

This calculation generates a minimal model for an instruments mix in which four basic types of mixes exist, ranging from low density-high intensity mixes (such as Tinbergen's single tool deployment at the extreme) to the reverse situation in which many not-very-intense tools are deployed, such as in traffic control. In between, there are other possibilities such as a high density-high intensity mix deployed in important areas such as pandemic control and low density-low intensity mixes, which can be found in many areas in which mainly symbolic tools are deployed, such as in the encouragement of healthy lifestyles through infrequent and low-cost public service advertising.

Even discounting interactive effects, additive impacts are not necessarily automatic and do not necessarily occur all at once. Although one might expect that simply placing two policy instruments in a policy mix either initially or sequentially will theoretically result in additivity effects, in real-world applications, such additivity effects may not occur because, for instance, harsher policies may result in growing resistance by policy targets. A case in point is when more taxes lead to higher overall tax rates, giving rise to increased tax evasion and not necessarily the collection of more tax revenue. In other words, the relationship between the number of policy tools over a certain threshold and policy effects may be non-linear, and increasing the number of policy tools may result in lower-than-expected effects. Still, an additive measure or indicator of basic mix design is important because it provides a baseline and a measure of effort which can be used to detect and quantify synergistic or antagonistic effects. That is, any (substantial) deviation from simple additivity reveals synergistic or counterproductive effects.

Synergy is commonly described in simple terms as "1+1>2." That is, synergy occurs when the effect of two or more policy tools operating in a combination is greater than the (expected)

additive effect of the policy tools (del Río 2010; Lecuyer and Bibas 2012). Two policy tools exhibit synergy when, for example, one policy tool increases the effect of the other without any change in its original intensity. An example of synergy is the use of both taxes and information campaigns to discourage smoking. Combining the two provides a greater boost in non-smoking than simply using one or the other because the use of anti-smoking information campaigns not only reinforces the effects of tax increases on discouraging smoking among smokers but also affects non-smokers who might otherwise consider starting. Synergistic instruments mix can therefore suppress policy resistance to one of the tools in the policy mix, slow the evolution of policy resistance, and/or facilitate lower-intensity use of each policy tool, thus reducing unintended negative consequences upon being targeted with a given instruments mix. Synergism in tool-tool interaction is, therefore, more than an additive effect. It is the effect of two policy instruments working in a combination that is greater than the (expected) additive effects of these instruments. This potentially enables the attainment of a higher level of policy effectiveness while minimizing additional policy investment. Put differently, when policy instruments act synergistically, it may be possible to reduce policy investment in both instruments while still ensuring the desired level of outcome. The identification of synergistic instruments mixes, however, is challenging due to the infrequency of synergistic relationships. Still, synergies are more likely when tools have been selected in a non-political way.

The application of mixes of policy instruments may also produce lower responses. These counterproductive effects can be described in simple terms as "1+1<2" or as the opposite of synergy. A counterproductive effect occurs when the combined impact of two tools is less than their additive effect. An example of such a subtractive effect can be found in the area of tobacco control, in which excessive taxation encourages smuggling and other forms of evasion. This has the effect of providing cheaper and more readily available products, undermining both the taxation and information provision tools used in prevention efforts. A more recent example in the area of the regulation of legalized cannabis products can be found in the promotion of responsible consumption campaigns coupled with weight- or volume-based taxation on sales. In some US states like Washington, this has led to large increases in the drug's potency, offsetting or reducing the impact of responsible consumption campaigns (Barry and Glantz 2018).

Such counterproductive effects are often undesirable in policy effectiveness terms. This is rather obvious. However, it may be beneficial to have an antagonistic effect in a mixture of policy tools when these effects minimize or neutralize unwanted side effects created by one of the policy tools in a mix. In addition to making sure that other policy instruments will not get out of control, antagonistic effects may be desirable for political reasons when, for example, elected executives use a highly visible policy tool that benefits their competitor's political base alongside a less visible tool which can counteract these benefits. This can occur, for example, when increased property taxes offset education grants to schools in specific neighborhoods or regions. Such cases sit squarely within the category of deliberate disproportionate policy responses (Maor 2017, 2021).

Methodological Issues in Capturing Instruments Mix Superiority Over Individual Policy Instruments

Understanding both these more and less than additive effects is a serious issue in policy design as missed synergistic and counterproductive reactions can lead to a policy over- or under-design (Maor 2020). And the same is true of incorrectly specified additive or subtractive mixes. It is crucial to improve design practice by better understanding these constructs in order to avoid unintentional errors and correctly search out and deploy (or not) synergies and

counterproductive effects. Towards this end, several methods for evaluating instruments mix effectiveness currently exist.

In general, two approaches to assessing instrument combinations' impact on outcomes can be advised. The first involves an "effects-based" assessment strategy. In this strategy, the idea is to carefully deploy policy instruments individually and sequentially in policy mixes and gauge their impact directly, in real time, on the kinds of outputs which emerge from their implementation (Tupper and Doern 1981). This can be done on a small-scale experimental basis but is a challenging approach, given the need to control for many variables, including implementation barriers, capacity, and other resource issues in assessing policy impact, as well as a host of measurement problems associated with both tool deployment and output assessment.

The second approach utilizes input efforts as a proxy for output and can be termed the "effort-based" approach. In this approach, measures of the effort put into deploying a policy mix by a government are used as a proxy for policy effects. This strategy is much easier to accomplish. But it may fall down precisely in not being able to assess the impact of effort on effects. In addition, it is capable only of assessing known additive, counterproductive, and synergistic impacts.

Effect-Based Strategy

The effect-based methodology is complex and requires construction of a baseline of the effects of individual tool deployment on goal attainment and then comparing the effects deriving from a mix of instruments to those stemming from the individual performance of each of the instruments involved.

Three possible results facilitating a conclusion of positive, negative, or null effect are relevant here. First, the policy mix, comprised of at least two policy instruments that are individually non-effective, can produce a (statistically) significant effect greater than the effect produced by its individual components. Second, the same kind of policy mix can result in (1) an effect which is greater than, equal to, or less than the additive effect produced by its individual components and (2) a difference between the two effects which also reaches statistical significance. This provides evidence of the superiority of the policy mix compared to the deployment of its single policy instruments. Third, the effect of such a policy mix can be greater than the (expected) additive effect given by the sum of the individual effects. This approach enables us to assess synergy by comparing the observed effect of a policy mix to an (expected) effect from additivity. If the observed effect of a policy mix is lower than the effect from additivity, it can be classified as counterproductive.

These kinds of effect-based evaluations require careful and systematic analysis of policy effects over time and may not be useful in many time-delimited circumstances or when the enactment of multiple partial efforts at problem resolution are infeasible. However, it can be done in ongoing, slow-moving areas such as housing or the regulation of drug abuse, where partial measures may be introduced on an experimental or trial basis. A recent advance, in the form of an index that captures whether governments tend to reuse the same policy instruments and instrument combinations or produce policies that are tailored to the problem at hand, can assist effect-based evaluations by providing prescriptive statements about the extent to which the policies in a given sector are effective in achieving their objectives (Fernández-i-Marín et al. 2021).

Effort-Based Strategy

Alternatively, one may employ a methodology which focuses on the effort that policymakers invest in attempting to accomplish a policy's goals (Winter 2006; Howlett et al. 2009; Bauer and Knill 2014; see also Bondarouk and Mastenbroek 2018).

Here it is argued that policy instruments that are characterized by higher intensity have more effort invested in them (Schaffrin et al. 2015: 262) as are combinations that have higher density levels. The literature highlights five measures of intensity, three of which are resource related, which can be used to gauge this effort: the number of staff assigned to work on a problem (Hartlapp 2009; Tosun 2012; Bauer and Knill 2014; Schaffrin et al. 2015); the types of expertise, i.e., informational resources, employed to support policy implementation (Radaelli and De Francesco 2007; Bauer and Knill 2014; Schaffrin et al. 2015); and the financial or budgetary resources allocated to the implementation of policy goals (Bauer and Knill 2014; Schaffrin et al. 2015). The fourth aspect of effort concerns the prioritization of goals and measures within one policy (Winter 2006), with higher intensity implying more effort is invested in prioritizing some goals or measures over others with regard to the use of the policy instrument. The fifth aspect of effort is monitoring (May and Winter 1999; Howlett et al. 2009: 185; Beijen 2011: 159; Tosun 2012: 442; Bauer and Knill 2014: 34; Schaffrin et al. 2015: 264), with higher intensity implying more effort is invested in assessing the quality of policy tool performance than where such follow-up is poorly executed or nonexistent (Vedung 1998; Hartlapp 2009). It is also argued here that measuring effort may be an indication of political commitment and that effort-based strategy allows us to encompass "how" a policy tool is employed (e.g., how creatively policy-relevant information is communicated), rather than solely the amount of money invested in communication. Here, quantitative measures may play as important a role as quantitative ones.

In this effort-based approach, a policy mix comprised of two policy instruments, one with a higher level of intensity than the other, may produce the same effect as a policy mix in which the former instrument has a lower intensity than the latter. The idea here is to discover at what intensity level for specific kinds of instruments the mix of instruments produces the greatest effect. As for density, the same logic applies: more dense mixes require more effort but may not generate greater impacts than less dense ones. This method is easily understood but still requires an accurate assessment of the effects of tool deployment, which is lacking in most areas. Simply correlating effort with some outcome variable (such as employment or carbon-reductions or policy adoption) remains unsatisfactory as the correlation may be spurious.

Discussion: Conceptual and Methodological Issues in the Analysis of Instrument Combinations

Based on the analysis presented here, several lessons can be derived for instruments mix research. First, it is essential not to confuse synergy between policy tools and policy additivity. Synergistic effects must go beyond additivity, but this requires accurate baseline information on individual tool performance to determine additive expectations against which synergistic effects can be measured. In addition, deviations from additivity may be caused by measurement problems rather than interactions between policy instruments. Thus, the larger the sample used, the more likely it is that such deviations represent policy-relevant effects.

Second, it is important not to confuse synergy between policy tools and policy effectiveness. Whereas synergy is a measure of the kinds of interactions present between policy instruments, policy effectiveness is a measure of the unique result of the specific policy mix containing these instruments. This distinction highlights the possibility that the scope of synergy may shrink when one policy instrument in a mix is employed at a high intensity, and this, in turn, may result in a loss of effectiveness. Beyond a certain point, its independent effect may elicit near-maximal effectiveness, leaving little room for the other policy instrument to improve its effectiveness.

Third, there are many issues related to the measurement of synergism and interactivity which need to be addressed through careful empirical study and experimentation. This is especially

the case with the need to examine policy mixes comprising more than two policy instruments. The decision on which to engage in a specific task and at what level depends on the feasibility of assessing the contribution of each instrument.

Fourth, scholars and practitioners need to recognize that synergism is not solely a statistical issue. The idea is to gauge the possible mechanisms that underlie the observed synergy between policy instruments, as well as the key variables that enable us to predict features mediating observed or experimental synergy between policy instruments and to distinguish between weak and strong synergistic effects, as well as between weak and strong counterproductive effects (Capano et al. 2019). A data-driven approach is needed to address these questions

Fifth, there is another whole set of issues around temporality and the time-based nature of some effects. Measures and methods which may work well for single-time point impacts may deal less well with interactions that occur over time, including the sequence in which policy instruments are added to a mix (Taeihagh et al. 2013). Variation in policy feedback effects may also play a role here.

Conclusion: A Call for More and Better Analysis of Instruments Combinations

Combining policy instruments does not guarantee a priori an increase in efficacy over a single policy tool. Therefore, it is desirable to identify combinations with effects greater than what is achieved with either policy instrument alone. Policy instrument and policy design scholars are consequently interested in the interaction effects when combining a policy instrument with other instrument(s) in a policy mix (Kern et al. 2019). Understanding the interactions among policy tools is vital because combinations of policy tools could be used to target a broader range of policy problems. Such combinations could also serve as solutions against poorly specified emerging and re-emerging policy problems that are resistant to individual policy instruments. A significant challenge exists in this area as a policy mix may be composed of interacting policy instruments that synergize or cancel one another's effects (Grabosky 1995). The need to control for and plan synergistic and additive effects in policy mixes necessitates a search for the effectiveness of individual tools and their combinations: that is, assessing their contribution to the joint response of a policy mix.

In this chapter, we have emphasized the need to increase the dialogue among policy scholars dealing with instrument combinations in different domains by advancing a common vocabulary and stressing the need to follow a specific methodology if the field is to advance. We discussed the various terms surrounding interactive effects and provided a minimal set of concepts and methods for their detection. We also discussed the advantages and limitations of effects- versus effort-based methods. Of course, this does not eliminate the need to address other questions related to instrument combinations but instead suggests an order to their assessment.

There is also a great need for more comprehensive and sophisticated pre-implementation instruments mix analyses to guide the selection of policy instrument combinations suitable for implementation more successfully. Primarily, there is a need to develop methods to maximize synergetic tool interactions while minimizing their unintended negative consequences that take advantage of integrated policy development processes and their statistical and experimental analyses. Here, policy scholars and practitioners should recognize that some synergistic instrument combinations may be superior to other synergistic combinations in terms of policy effectiveness because not all synergistic effects are without cost. The search for synergistic tool interactions cannot be unconstrained because, theoretically, the scope of synergy may shrink when one policy instrument in a mix is employed at a high intensity.

Intriguingly, there is also a theoretical possibility that more antagonistic instrument combinations may slow the evolution of policy resistance, non-compliance, and gaming. This may occur in rare cases when a policy landscape is deliberately designed in a way that is difficult to comprehend, thus restricting the evolution of opposition to the policy at hand as well as gaming opportunities. For example, a policy landscape might be created by a three-instrument-combination in which each tool pair interacts antagonistically but the full emergent interaction between all the instruments in the policy mix is synergistic.

Finally, another avenue for future research is the study of the conditions leading to disproportionate policy responses – both over- and underreacting to problems (Maor 2012, 2014a; Maor et al. 2017) as well as policy bubbles (Maor 2014b, 2016, 2019) – and the role of instruments' interaction effects in the creation and correction of such disproportionate responses.

References

Albrecht, Johan, and Bas Arts. 2005. "Climate Policy Convergence in Europe: An Assessment Based on National Communications to the UNFCCC." *Journal of European Public Policy* 12 (5): 885–902.

Attwell, Katie, and Mark C. Navin. 2019. "Childhood Vaccination Mandates: Scope, Sanctions, Severity, Selectivity, and Salience." *The Milibank Quarterly* 97 (4): 978–1014.

Barry, Rachel A., and Stanton A. Glantz. 2018. "Marijuana Regulatory Frameworks in Four US States: An Analysis against a Public Health Standard." *American Journal of Public Health* 108 (7): 914–923.

Bauer, Michael W., and Christoph Knill. 2014. "A Conceptual Framework for the Comparative Analysis of Policy Change: Measurement, Explanation and Strategies of Policy Dismantling." *Journal of Comparative Policy Analysis: Research and Practice* 16 (1): 28–44.

Beijen, Barbara A. 2011. "The Implementation of European Environmental Directives: Are Problems Caused by the Quality of the Directives?" *European Energy and Environmental Law Review* 20 (4): 150–163.

Binder, Sarah A. 1999. "The Dynamics of Legislative Gridlock, 1947–96." *American Political Science Review* 93 (3): 519–533.

Bobrow, Davis. 2006. "Policy Design: Ubiquitous, Necessary and Difficult." In *Handbook of Public Policy*, eds. Guy B. Peters and Jon Pierre, 75–96. New York: SAGE.

Bondarouk, Elena, and Ellen Mastenbroek. 2018. "Reconsidering EU Compliance: Implementation Performance in the Field of Environmental Policy." *Environmental Policy and Governance* 28 (1): 15–27.

Boonekamp, Piet G. M. 2006. "Actual Interaction Effects between Policy Measures for Energy Efficiency: A Qualitative Matrix Method and Quantitative Simulation Results for Households." *Energy* 31 (14): 2848–2873.

Braathen, Nils Axel. 2005. "Environmental Agreements Used in Combination with Other Policy Instruments." In *The Handbook of Environmental Voluntary Agreements*, ed. Edoardo Croci, 335–364. Dordrecht: Springer.

Braathen, Nils Axel. 2007. "Instrument Mixes for Environmental Policy: How Many Stones Should Be Used to Kill a Bird?" *International Review of Environmental and Resource Economics* 1 (2): 185–235.

Capano, Giliberto, and Michael Howlett. 2020. "The Knowns and Unknowns of Policy Instrument Analysis: Policy Tools and the Current Research Agenda on Policy Mixes." SAGE Open, January 24.

Capano, Giliberto, Michael Howlett, M. Ramesh, and Altaf Virani (eds.). 2019. *Making Policies Work: First and Second Order Mechanisms in Policy Design*. London: Edward Elgar.

Coleman, John J. 1999. "Unified Government, Divided Government, and Party Responsiveness." *American Political Science Review* 93 (4): 821–835.

Daugbjerg, Carsten. 2009. "Sequencing in Public Policy: The Evolution of the CAP over a Decade." *Journal of European Public Policy* 16 (2): 395–411.

del Río, Pablo. 2010. "Analyzing the Interactions between Renewable Energy Promotion and Energy Efficiency Support Schemes: The Impact of Different Instruments and Design Elements." *Energy Policy* 38 (9): 4978–4989.

del Río, Pablo, and Michael P. Howlett. 2013. "Beyond the 'Tinbergen Rule' in Policy Design: Matching Tools and Goals in Policy Portfolios." *Annual Review of Policy Design* 1: 1–16.

del Río, Pablo, A. Calvo Silvosa, and G. Iglesias Gómez. 2011. "Policies and Design Elements for the Repowering of Wind Farms: A Qualitative Analysis of Different Options." *Energy Policy* 39 (4): 1897–1908.

Eliadis, Pearl F., Margareth M. Hill, and Michael Howlett. (eds.). 2005. *Designing Government: From Instruments to Governance*. Montreal: McGill-Queen's University Press.

Feindt, Peter H., and Andrew Flynn. 2009. "Policy Stretching and Institutional Layering: British Food Policy between Security, Safety, Quality, Health and Climate Change." *British Politics* 4 (3): 386–414.

Fernández-i-Marín, Xavier, Christoph Knill, and Yves Steinebach. 2021. "Studying Policy Design Quality in Comparative Perspective." *American Political Science Review* 115 (3): 931–947.

Goyal, Nihit, and Michael Howlett. 2021. "'Measuring the Mix' of Policy Responses to COVID-19: Comparative Policy Analysis Using Topic Modelling." *Journal of Comparative Policy Analysis* 23 (2): 250–261.

Grabosky, Peter. 1995. "Counterproductive Regulation." *International Journal of the Sociology of Law* 23 (4): 347–369.

Gunningham, Niel, and Peter Grabosky. 1998. *Smart Regulation: Designing Environmental Policy*. Oxford: Clarendon Press.

Gunningham, Niel, and Darren Sinclair. 1999. "Regulatory Pluralism: Designing Policy Mixes for Environmental Protection." *Law and Policy* 21 (1): 49–76.

Hartlapp, Miriam. 2009. "Implementation of EU Social Policy Directives in Belgium: What Matters in Domestic Politics?" *Journal of European Integration* 31 (4): 467–488.

Hood, Christopher. 1983. "Using Bureaucracy Sparingly." *Public Administration* 61 (2): 197–208.

Hou, Yilin, and Gene A. Brewer. 2010. "Substitution and Supplementation between Co-Functional Policy Instruments: Evidence from State Budget Stabilization Practices." *Public Administration Review* 70 (6): 914–924.

Howell, William, Scott Adler, Charles Cameron, and Charles Riemann. 2000. "Divided Government and the Legislative Productivity of Congress, 1945–94." *Legislative Studies Quarterly* 25 (2): 285–312.

Howlett, Michael. 2017. "The Criteria for Effective Policy Design: Character and Context in Policy Instrument Choice." *Journal of Asian Public Policy* 11 (3): 245–266.

Howlett, Michael and Benjamin Cashore. 2009. "The Dependent Variable Problem in the Study of Policy Change: Understanding Policy Change as a Methodological Problem." *Journal of Comparative Policy Analysis* 11 (1): 33–46.

Howlett, Michael, and Pablo del Río. 2015. "The Parameters of Policy Portfolios: Verticality and Horizontality in Design Spaces and Their Consequences for Policy Mix Formulation." *Environment and Planning C: Government and Policy* 33 (5): 1233–1245.

Howlett, Michael, and Ishani Mukherjee. 2018. "Policy Design and Non-Design: A Continuation of Formulation Modalities." In *Routledge Handbook of Policy Design*, eds. Michael Howlett and Ishani Mukherjee, 305–315. London: Taylor & Francis Group.

Howlett, Michael, M. Ramesh, and Anthony Perl. 2009. *Studying Public Policy: Policy Cycles and Policy Subsystems*. 3rd edn. Oxford: Oxford University Press.

Howlett, Michael, and Jeremy Rayner. 2007. "Design Principles for Policy Mixes: Cohesion and Coherence in New Governance Arrangements." *Policy and Society* 26 (4): 1–18.

Justen, Andreas, Nils Fearnley, Moshe Givoni, and James Macmillen. 2013. "A Process for Designing Policy Packaging: Ideals and Realities." *Transportation Research Part A: Policy and Practice* 60: 9–18.

Justen, Andreas, Jens Schippl, Barbara Lenz, and Torsten Fleischer. 2013. "Assessment of Policies and Detection of Unintended Effects: Guiding Principles for the Consideration of Methods and Tools in Policy Packaging." *Transportation Research Part A: Policy and Practice* 60: 19–30.

Kay, Adrian. 2007. "Tense Layering and Synthetic Policy Paradigms: The Politics of Health Insurance in Australia." *Australian Journal of Political Science* 42 (4): 579–591.

Kern, Florian, and Michael Howlett. 2009. "Implementing Transition Management as Policy Reforms: A Case Study of the Dutch Energy Sector." *Policy Sciences* 42 (4): 391–408.

Kern, Florian, Karoline S. Rogge, and Michael Howlett. 2019. "Policy Mixes for Sustainability Transitions: New Approaches and Insights through Bridging Innovation and Policy Studies." *Research Policy* 48 (10). https://doi.org/10.1016/j.respol.2019.103832 (accessed on 1 September, 2021).

Knill, Christoph, Kai Schulze, and Jale Tosun. 2012. "Regulatory Policy Outputs and Impacts: Exploring a Complex Relationship." *Regulation & Governance* 6 (4): 427–444.

Larsen, Trine P., Peter Taylor-Gooby, and Johannes Kananen. 2006. "New Labor's Policy Style: A Mix of Policy Approaches." *International Social Policy* 35 (4): 629–649.

Lecuyer, Oskar, and Ruben Bibas. 2012. *Combining Climate and Energy Policies: Synergies or Antagonism? Modeling Interactions with Energy Efficiency Instruments*. Rochester, NY: Social Science Research Network. http://papers.ssrn.com/abstract=1992324 (accessed on 1 September, 2021).

Leplay, Solenn, and Sophie Thoyer. 2011. "Synergy Effects of International Policy Instruments to Reduce Deforestation: A Cross-Country Panel Data Analysis." Working Paper. LAMETA, University of Montpellier. http://ideas.repec.org/p/lam/wpaper/11-01.html (accessed on 14 June, 2021).

Mantino, Francesco, and Francesco Vanni. 2019. "Policy Mixes as a Strategy to Provide More Effective Social and Environmental Benefits: Evidence from Six Rural Areas in Europe." *Sustainability* 11 (23): 6632. https://doi.org/10.3390/su11236632 (accessed on 1 September, 2021).

Maor, Moshe. 2012. "Policy Overreaction." *Journal of Public Policy* 32 (3): 231–259.

Maor, Moshe. 2014a. "Policy Persistence, Risk Estimation and Policy Underreaction." *Policy Sciences* 47: 425–443.

Maor, Moshe. 2014b. "Policy Bubbles: Policy Overreaction and Positive Feedback." *Governance* 27 (3): 469–487.

Maor, Moshe. 2016. "Emotion-Driven Negative Policy Bubbles." *Policy Sciences* 49 (2): 191–210.

Maor, Moshe. 2017. "Disproportionate Policy Response." In *Politics: Oxford Research Encyclopedias*. Oxford: Oxford University Press. 10.1093/acrefore/9780190228637.013.168 (accessed on 1 September, 2021).

Maor, Moshe. 2019. "Overreaction and Bubbles in Politics and Policy." In *Oxford Handbook on Behavioral Political Science*, eds. Alex Mintz and Lesley Terris. Oxford: Oxford Handbooks Online, Oxford University Press.

Maor, Moshe. 2020. "Policy Over- and Under-Design: An Information Quality Perspective." *Policy Sciences* 53: 395–411.

Maor, Moshe. 2021. "Deliberate Disproportionate Policy Response: Towards a Conceptual Turn." *Journal of Public Policy* 41 (1): 185–208.

Maor, Moshe, Jale Tosun, and Andrew Jordan. 2017. "Proportionate and Disproportionate Policy Responses to Climate Change: Core Concepts and Empirical Applications." *Journal of Environmental Policy & Planning* 19 (6): 599–611.

May, Peter, and Søren Winter. 1999. "Regulatory Enforcement and Compliance: Examining Danish Agro-Environmental Policy." *Journal of Policy Analysis and Management* 18 (4): 625–651.

Mayhew, David R. 2005. *Divided We Govern: Party Control, Lawmaking, and Investigations, 1946–2002*. New Haven, CT: Yale University Press.

Oikonomou, V., A. Flamos, D. Zeugolis, and S. Grafakos. 2011. "A Qualitative Assessment of EU Energy Policy Interactions." *Energy Sources, Part B: Economics, Planning, and Policy* 7 (2): 177–187.

Oikonomou, V., and C. J. Jepma. 2008. "A Framework on Interactions of Climate and Energy Policy Instruments." *Mitigation and Adaptation Strategies for Global Change* 13 (2): 131–156.

Philibert, Cédric. 2011. *Interactions of Policies for Renewable Energy and Climate (IEA Energy Paper)*. OECD Publishing. http://econpapers.repec.org/paper/oecieaaaa/2011_2f6-en.htm (accessed on 1 September, 2021).

Radaelli, Claudio M., and Fabrizio De Francesco. 2007. *Regulatory Quality in Europe: Concepts, Measures and Policy Processes*. Manchester, UK: Manchester University Press.

Rogge, Karoline S., Florian Kern, and Michael Howlett. 2017. "Conceptual and Empirical Advances in Analyzing Policy Mixes for Energy Transitions." *Energy Research & Social Science* 33 (Supplement C): 1–10.

Rogge, Karoline S., and Kristin Reichardt. 2016. "Policy Mixes for Sustainability Transitions: An Extended Concept and Framework for Analysis." *Research Policy* 45 (8): 1620–1635.

Rosenow, Jan, Tina Fawcett, Nick Eyre, and Vlasis Oikonomou. 2016. "Energy Efficiency and the Policy Mix." *Building Research & Information* 44 (5–6): 562–574.

Schaffrin, André, Sebastian Sewerin, and Sibylle Seubert. 2015. "Toward a Comparative Measure of Climate Policy Output." *Policy Studies Journal* 43 (2): 257–282.

Schneider, Anne, and Helen Ingram. 1988. "Systematically Pinching Ideas: A Comparative Approach to Policy Design." *Journal of Public Policy* 8 (1): 61–80.

Schneider, Anne, and Helen Ingram. 1990a. "Behavioral Assumptions of Policy Tools." *Journal of Politics* 52 (2): 511–529.

Schneider, Anne, and Helen Ingram 1990b. "Policy Design: Elements, Premises and Strategies." In *Policy Theory and Policy Evaluation: Concepts, Knowledge, Causes and Norms*, ed. Stuart S. Nagel, 77–102. New York: Greenwood.

Schneider, Anne, and Helen Ingram. 1993. "Social Construction of Target Populations: Implications for Politics and Policy." *American Political Science Review* 87 (2): 334–347.

Schneider, Anne, and Helen Ingram. 1997. *Policy Design for Democracy*. Lawrence: University Press of Kansas.

Schneider, Anne, and Helen Ingram. 2005. *Deserving and Entitled: Social Constructions and Public Policy*. SUNY Series in Public Policy. Albany: State University of New York.

Schneider, Anne, and Mara Sidney. 2009. "What Is Next for Policy Design and Social Construction Theory?" *Policy Studies Journal* 37 (1): 103–119.

Taeihagh, Araz, Moshe Givoni, and René Bañares-Alcántara. 2013. "Which Policy First? A Network-Centric Approach for the Analysis and Ranking of Policy Measures." *Environment and Planning B: Planning and Design* 40 (4): 595–616.

Tinbergen, Jan. 1952. *On the Theory of Economic Policy*. Dordrecht: North-Holland Pub. Co.

Tosun, Jale. 2012. "Environmental Monitoring and Enforcement in Europe: A Review of Empirical Research." *Environmental Policy and Governance* 22 (6): 437–448.

Tosun, Jale. 2013. *Environmental Policy Change in Emerging Market Democracies: Eastern Europe and Latin America Compared*. Toronto: University of Toronto Press.

Trencher, Gregory, and Jeroen van der Heijden. 2019. "Instrument Interactions and Relationships in Policy Mixes: Achieving Complementarity in Building Energy Efficiency Policies in New York, Sydney and Tokyo." *Energy Research & Social Sciences* 54: 34–45.

Tupper, Allan, and Bruce G. Doern. 1981. "Public Corporations and Public Policy in Canada." In *Public Corporations and Public Policy in Canada*, eds. Allan Tupper and Bruce G. Doern, 1–50. Montreal: Institute for Research on Public Policy.

Vedung, Evert. 1998. "Policy Instruments: Typologies and Theories." In *Carrots, Sticks, and Sermons: Policy Instruments and Their Evaluation*, eds. Marie-Louise Bemelmans-Videc, Ray C. Rist, and Evert Vedung, 21–58. New Brunswick, NJ, USA: Transaction Publishing.

Winter, Søren. 2006. "Implementation." In *Handbook of Public Policy*, eds. B. Peters Guy and Jon Pierre. London, UK: Sage Publications.

Yi, Hongtao, and Richard C. Feiock. 2012. "Policy Tool Interactions and the Adoption of State Renewable Portfolio Standards." *Review of Policy Research* 29 (2): 193–206.

36

POLICY TOOLS AND THE ATTRIBUTES OF EFFECTIVENESS

Spaces, Mixes and Instruments

M. Kerem Coban and Azad Singh Bali

What attributes engender effective policy designs? This chapter synthesises extant literature on policy tools with a focus on identifying attributes that contribute to developing effective policy designs for mixes of policy tools. These attributes are organised across three levels: the macro level (coordination, coherence, consistency, goodness of fit), meso level (contingencies, complementarity, completeness, reversibility, transition, robustness, explicitness, resilience, administrative burdens), and micro level (targeting, degrees of freedom, stickiness). It is argued that macro-level attributes engender effective design spaces, meso-level attributes effective instrument mixes, and micro-level attributes effective calibrations. The chapter concludes with potential directions for future research to enhance our understanding of effective policy mixes.

Introduction

Addressing policy problems involves a careful, purposive, and informed effort to set policy goals and means. In this respect, single instruments can hardly address the rising complexity of contemporary challenges societies face. Recognising this need, the policy design scholarship has begun to pay more attention to instrument mixes which are "bundled or combined in a principled manner into policy 'portfolios' or 'mixes' in an effort to attain policy goals" (Howlett et al. 2015). The central question this chapter engages with is "What attributes or characteristics of these policy designs engender or are associated with effective policy design?"

Design effectiveness concerns "mixing" instruments, which "can then predictably lead to desired policy outcomes" (Mukherjee et al. 2021), can be understood at three levels: design space (i.e., macro level), instrument mixes/tool portfolios (i.e., meso level), and particular types of instruments (i.e., micro level). The macro level refers to design space where actors interact with a multitude of stakeholders, and which structures the policy process out of which instrument mixes emerge. The meso level concerns effective design of instrument mixes while the micro level relates how these mixes and instruments are calibrated.

This chapter adopts a similar approach to making sense of the attributes of effective policy design: the macro level, the meso level, and micro level. In doing so, it synthesises the existing literature on the attributes of effective policy designs across three levels. Macro-level (design space) attributes are coordination, coherence, consistency, goodness of fit (i.e., congruence). Meso-level

 DOI: 10.4324/9781003163954-44

(policy mix) attributes are contingencies, complementarities, completeness, reversibility, transition, robustness, resilience, and explicitness. Micro-level (calibrations) attributes include stickiness, flexibility (i.e., degrees of freedom), targeting, and administrative burdens.

The rest of the chapter proceeds as follows: the next section proposes a three-level understanding of effective instrument mix choice. In doing so, we revisit the attributes of effective instrument mixes at micro level, meso level, and macro level. The following section concludes with a brief reflection on potential directions for future research to enhance our understanding of effective instrument mix choice.

What Are the Effective Tool Choices?

Macro-Level Attributes: Design Space and Instrument Mix Effectiveness

The macro level refers to design space where state and non-state actors interact through deliberations to tackle policy problems through appropriate and feasible instruments (Linder and Peters 1991). Within this space, effective instrument mixes arise on four attributes: coordination, coherence, consistency, and goodness of fit (congruence). These attributes interact in a manner that refers to the need of instrument mixes requiring coordination and integration, which facilitates instrument mixes being congruent with mode(s) of governance, policy regimes, and regime (policy) capacity. With this, instrument mixes can be inherently consistent and serve coherent policy goals.

Coordination

Policy problems are becoming more complex given inherent technical complexities and the cross-boundary nature of cross-field policy problems (Trein and Maggetti 2020). Addressing them necessitates policy coordination (vertical and/or horizontal, Adam et al. 2019; Peters 2015, 2018) mechanisms and capabilities within the design space (Wegrich and Stimac 2014) because a single organisation and single instruments can hardly tackle such policy problems. In this context, alignment of tasks and efforts can be achieved best when instrument mixes are congruent with the context-specific political, policy, and institutional conditions. As such, interactions between individual policy instruments across levels of governance (Goyal and Howlett 2021) and/or across policy sectors (Mantino and Vanni 2019) could be established.

Coordination serves an indispensable role for effective instrument mixes by enabling coherence and consistency, as coordination addresses "dispersed integrative capacity" concerns, in particular fragmented governance structures (Candel 2021; Ostrom 2010). Here, we know that diverging organisational cultures, mandates, ontological approaches to policy problems, and partisan politics, among many other cultural, organisational, institutional, and actor-level factors, constitute serious barriers for coordination (Peters 2018). Still, coordination is necessary (if not sufficient) to address complex, cross-boundary policy problems, which could hardly be done by individual actors on their own. Thus, it can facilitate policy integration that "bundles" distinct policy instruments and policy goals (Tosun and Lang 2017). For this, the existing research points to the attributes of conducive design space with an emphasis on shared, overlapping institutional logics across levels of governance and actors, political support to coordination, issue prioritisation for coordination, and existing coordination mechanisms along with coordination strategies (Candel 2021; Coban 2021).

Goodness of Fit (Congruence)

The instrument mix congruence is a function of system-level policy capacity, policy regime coherence, and modes of governance (Hornung 2021; Howlett and Rayner 2013; Mukherjee and Bali 2019; Peters et al. 2018; Wu et al. 2015, 2018; Woo et al. 2016). In this sense, it is broadly concerned with whether and to what extent instrument mixes are congruent with mode(s) of governance.

To begin with system-level policy capacity, policy capacity is simply "the set of skills and resources – or competences and capabilities – necessary to perform policy functions" (Wu et al. 2015, 166). Policy capacity has three dimensions (Wu et al. 2018, 12): (1) system-level operational capacity relates to coordination and policy regime coherence; (2) system-level political capacity refers to trust in government, accountability, and inclusiveness of policymaking; and (3) data collection and processing capabilities, political support for policy analysis, and existence of policy advisory systems constitute the system-level operational capacity. Arising on these dimensions, system-level capacity endows the design space for effective instrument mix choices. Otherwise, deficiencies in system-level policy capacity are likely to lead to ineffective, poor design or non-design (Howlett and Mukherjee 2014, 2018; Howlett and Rayner 2013). System-level policy capacity enables establishment and/or maintenance of coordination mechanisms among a multitude of actors and enhances coordination capacity (Wegrich and Stimac 2014), as well as policy analysis capabilities that are necessary for effective instrument mixes (Capano et al. 2015).

Furthermore, congruence addresses policy regime coherence (Jochim and May 2010; Wilson 2000). A coherent policy regime pertains to policy ideas, institutional arrangements, and policies working in tandem without contradicting each other (Howlett and Rayner 2007; Hornung 2021).

The third pillar of congruence concerns matching instrument mixes with mode(s) of governance (Howlett 2009; Howlett and Ramesh 2014, 2016). Instrument mix choices need to "take into account both the desired governance context and the actual resources available to a governmental [and/]or non-governmental actor in carrying out its appointed role" (Howlett and Rayner 2018, 395). Here, resources relate to policy capacity, as matching requires understanding of which mode(s) of governance is/are suitable for particular instrument mixes (Capano et al. 2020). Furthermore, matching instrument mixes with relevant modes of governance might serve the mode of governance by "[achieving] its declared goals, and . . . [obtaining and maintaining] necessary political consensus among the actors" (Capano et al. 2015, 15) while addressing necessary political consensus through coordination, which, in turn, can facilitate the design of coherent policy goals and consistent instrument mixes.

Coherence

Policy coherence refers to "systematic promotion of mutually reinforcing policy actions across government departments and agencies creating synergies toward achieving the defined objective" (Jones 2002, 391). Applying this understanding and building on Howlett (2017, 252), we define instrument mix coherence as the ability of multiple policy goals to reinforce each other and with instrument norms that are coordinated or integrated to achieve targeted policy objectives.

Coherent policy goals and consistent instrument mixes are two pillars of effective instrument mixes (Howlett 2018, 2019a; Howlett and Rayner 2007). For coherent policy goals, Rogge and Reichardt (2016, 1627) suggest that there are two (interlinked) mechanisms: coordination and integration (see also May et al. 2005; Giest and Mukherjee 2022; Rogge 2018). As we have noted, coordination allows for integration and addressing fragmentation within design space, which, in turn, enhances policy coherence.

Surely, coordination and integration are not a panacea for coherence concerns insofar as we consider institutional, political, and other factors that influence the design process and design as the outcome, as Rogge (2018, 45) asserts that "complete coherence" is impossible given the complexity of policy problems and systems and political economic and/or socio-cultural factors, along with fragmentation within the design space.

Consistency

Instrument mix consistency is another macro-level attribute of effective instrument mixes. Consistency relates to how effectively and frictionlessly individual instruments are bundled and how individual instruments reinforce each other towards (coherent) policy goals (Howlett 2017, 2019a, 2019b; Howlett and Rayner 2007; Kern and Howlett 2009; Rogge and Reichardt 2016).

Consistent instrument mix is a function of congruence with existing or targeted mode(s) of governance, policy regimes, and regime (policy) capacity which facilitates coordination between actors towards coherent policy goals. As congruence provides the necessary institutional and structural environment for coordination and coherent policy goals, reinforcing interactions between individual instruments become more likely, while minimising the possibility of self-undermining instrument mixes (Jacobs and Weaver 2015) as well as avoiding inconsistent instrument mixes (Candel and Biesbroek 2016, 224).

Meso-Level Attributes: Matching Tools for Effective Mixes

At meso level, we discuss matching individual instruments for effective mixes and the attributes of such matching process. These attributes include contingencies, completeness, complementarity, robustness, resilience, transition, reversibility, and explicitness.

Completeness

Policy problems are mostly addressed through multiple instruments that include procedural and/or substantive instruments (Bali et al. 2021a, 2021b; Hood 1983; Howlett 2000). Mixing procedural and substantive instruments helps in designing complete instrument mixes where completeness "means sufficient procedures supportive of the substantive goals exist in the policy mix" (Saguin 2019, 186). As a result, procedural instruments facilitate deliberation and coordination, and substantive instruments, which are informed by improvements in the policy-making procedures, can effectively target policy goals with significant policy outcomes.

One caveat in regards to the endeavour in targeting multiple dimensions of policy problems relates to policy designers falling into the over-design trap (Maor 2020) and missing the balance between instruments through duplicate or disproportionate instrument employment while aiming to address each and every dimension of policy problems (Constantini et al. 2017). In this regard, finding a balance while aiming for completeness is another concern for "optimal mixes".

Complementarity

Matching instruments for effectiveness relies on understanding complementary interactions between bundled instruments. Here, building on the literature on institutional complementarities, one strand focuses on reinforcement (i.e., supplementation), replacement (i.e., substitution), and hierarchy (Crouch 2005; see also Hou and Brewer 2010). Reinforcement refers to a positive feedback and interaction effect without contradicting individual effect. Replacement relates to

one or more instruments overriding the other(s) and thereby either dominating the overall effectiveness of the mix while negating or nullifying the role and the effect of other instrument(s). Hierarchy considers the necessary instrument(s) being initially employed in bundling. This is more closely associated with the temporal dimension of instrument mix choice and which instruments are initially necessary (Taeihagh et al. 2013).

The second strand emphasises additive effects, synergies, and counterproductive effects (Howlett 2019a; Maor and Howlett 2021). Additive effects mean that bundled instruments improve the effectiveness of the other instruments. Synergies in instrument mixes refer to more than additive effects in the form of instruments generating a greater effect than their simple combination. In short, complementarities draw our attention to interactions between instruments in various forms given the above-mentioned implications for effective instrument mix choices.

Robustness

Robustness

> is the capacity to maintain the *functions* of a system (policy, political system, organization, or institution).
>
> *(Capano and Woo 2017, 404, emphasis in original; see also Capano and Woo 2018; Howlett et al. 2018, 407; Nair and Howlett 2016, 2017)*

Robust instrument matching could be conceived as a process as well as an output of the design process, which allows for instrument mixes to endure uncertainties and shocks and deliver expected policy outcomes. Indeed, as policymakers face uncertainties and shocks, instrument mix evolves according to the impact of uncertainties and shocks. Thus, adaptability of instrument mixes against shocks and uncertainties is vital for robust instrument matching. With this, instrument mixes can withstand systemic or conjunctural perturbations and continue to perform policy functions and deliver targeted outcomes (Capano and Woo 2017, 2018; Howlett et al. 2018).

Robustness is characterised by instrument mixes being able to counter the impact of shocks and uncertainties (Capano and Woo 2017). Consequently, robust instrument matching can achieve or maintain instrument mix effectiveness, especially when instrument mix choices are agile (i.e., "responding to changing public needs in an efficient way") (Mergel et al. 2021, 162, emphasis in original); incorporate "slack" (i.e., procedural and/or substantive redundancy allowing for space for manoeuvring when parts of the mix do not function) (Capano and Woo 2018); have anticipatory (strategic) foresight (i.e., "*thinking ahead in a way that things happen according to an expected plan, or in a way that eventual unexpected events cannot damage the expected outcome*" (Bali et al. 2019, 4, emphasis in original); allow for diversity in design process and positive (or even negative) feedback mechanisms (Nair and Howlett 2016; Weaver 2010); and system-level, organisational, and individual policy capacities are built up while structural and institutional contexts allow for adaptability, room for agency, agility, and foresight, as well as precaution (Bali et al. 2019; Béland et al. 2020; Howlett et al. 2018).

Resilience

Resilient instrument matching concerns instrument mixes having the capacity to endure endogenous/exogenous shocks, responding to uncertainties and fragilities, and reaching equilibrium while continuing to target new or previous policy goals to deliver particular policy outcomes (Capano and Woo 2017, 402).

It is necessary to note that resilience and robustness are treated separately in extant research. For example, Capano and Woo (2017, 2018) assert that the latter focuses on the possibility of retaining functionality of a policy system or instrument mixes, as in our case, whereas the former is concerned with resisting shocks and uncertainties and "bouncing back" to equilibrium of various sorts. Yet the two can hardly be treated as mutually exclusive because they are closely interrelated. Resilient and robust instrument mixes are those that are "capable of maintaining the same performance in the face of any type of internal/external perturbation" (Howlett 2019a, 270) and "quickly resume critical functions that were affected by a shock to the system [in our case, instrument mix]" (Boin and Lodge 2016, 293). In this light, achieving resilience is significantly challenging. Yet similar to robustness, it could be argued that agility, flexibility, procedural and/or substantive redundancy, anticipation, and foresight are necessary, if not sufficient, conditions for resilient instrument matching.

Transition

Instrument mixes might not be designed at once, as adding or removing one or more instruments is inevitable and is perhaps desirable for policy experimentation (Huitema et al. 2018) and effective "packages" (Howlett and Rayner 2013) rather than "patches". Sequencing and changes in instrument mixes involve costs that need to be acknowledged during instrument mixing (Bali et al. 2019, 7; Howlett 2019b, 31). This is because transitions may originate for several reasons, such as unstable coalitions (Howlett and Ramesh 2002), multiple veto players (Béland et al. 2016), bureaucratic politics among antagonistic public organisations (Coban 2021), and lock-in effects of existing policies (Nair and Howlett 2016). Such factors render volatility or path dependencies in matching individual instruments, which might help effective mix design through "positive lock-in" (Howlett 2019b, 31), contributing to coherence, consistency, and congruence, as well as resilience and robustness, or cause "unintentional sequencing" through drift, replacement, or ineffective layering (Howlett 2019b, 31).

Explicitness

Explicitness relates to the behavioural dimension of matching instruments (Schneider and Ingram 1990). Solving policy problems cannot ignore of the behavioural aspect of policy design: instruments need to consider and thereby match policy target motivation, preferences, and potential future action (Howlett 2018). For this, instrument mix explicitness is fundamental. With explicitness, we refer to "*the extent to which single instruments specify a desired direction of behaviour relative to a given policy goal*" (Thomann 2018, 437, emphasis in original).

Explicitness is based on three prerequisites Thomann (2018, 438–440). First, policymakers need to conceive what the problem is, how it could be addressed, and which group(s) is/are the relevant policy target(s) (Schneider and Ingram 1993). This stage is vital for the next two aspects of explicitness, as targeting "wrong" groups might create "undeserving" winners or losers or trigger (unexpected) negative backlash, even though it is likely that most "deserving" groups do not benefit as much as they need as policymakers may pursue private gains or attempt to address policy problems through "placebo policies" that do not tackle problems in practice (Howlett 2020; McConnell 2020; Schneider and Ingram 2019). Still, matching individual instruments is crucial because different instruments may target distinct groups or may come about along with policy goals that are not easily reconcilable within an instrument mix. Furthermore, and related to framing policy goals, instrument mix choices need to take into account valence attribution, which refers to whether policy goals grab emotional attraction with which they can

have emotional attachment by raising awareness of the problem as well as why policy targets are encouraged or discouraged to comply with preferred outcomes (Olejniczak et al. 2020).

Reversibility

Matching individual instruments needs to take into consideration the extent to which the technical elements could be altered. Anticipation of such necessity is essential as contingent political, social, and/or financial liabilities could generate lock-in effects, which can amplify future costs, create risks, or generate negative feedback stemming from political backlash or various types of crises.

In this regard, matching instruments with a focus on reversibility could give policymakers space to calibrate or terminate policies once they are implemented. We know that reversing or calibrating policies could be politically and economically costly, which can be avoided through "sunset" provisions (i.e., a certain termination date) or "ceilings" – targets (i.e., an upper limit on spending) matching other procedural and/or substantive instruments.

In case instruments are not matched with a view toward the potential necessity to reverse or calibrate, political economic forces could drive incremental changes as policies accumulate and/or there are abrupt calibrations or termination (Knill and Steinebach 2022). Moreover, unless reversal or calibration is unavoidable, an orderly resolution or termination seems more desirable. With an "orderly resolution", matched instruments could be decomposed in a way that policymakers can calibrate the mix as they reverse it while policy targets construct preferences about the path the mix would follow.

Contingencies

Matching individual instruments needs to take into consideration contingencies that are related to the attached costs of instrument mixes designed at t0 which could materialise later in tn. These costs relate to political liabilities as well as financial costs the instrument mix could generate (Bali and Ramesh 2018, 336).

Anticipating future risks and costs is demanding, and "satisficing" today (Simon 1997 [1947]) could be more rewarding politically and financially than matching instruments to tackle potential risks and costs tomorrow. However, effective instrument mix choices require engagement in prospective, anticipating design thinking (Bali et al. 2019). In this regard, while it is applied to public service delivery, O'Flynn (2019) discusses how ignoring attached liabilities could be overcome through a contingency framework that guides instrument mix choices through an outlook on targeted stakeholders and the role of stakeholders in the policy process. A contingency orientation in instrument mix matching can help avoid potential political backlash and/or financial costs.

In this light, when such considerations are not included in the process of matching instruments, it is likely that instrument mixes might not be resilient, robust. This could, in turn, increase costs of calibration of instrument mixes, as policymakers might have a limited space in targeting, stickiness, and degrees of freedom and impose (un)intentional administrative burdens, which we discuss in the next section.

Micro-Level Attributes: Calibrating Mixes for Effectiveness

In this section, we discuss calibrating instrument mixes to maintain and/or enhance their effectiveness. We present targeting, degrees of freedom, stickiness, and administrative burdens in determining how policymakers can manage the temporal and spatial dimensions of instrument mix calibration for effectiveness following instrument matching and implementation.

Targeting

Targeting certain populations relates to "how precisely and selectively policy instruments target recipients of potential benefits and costs" (Landry and Varone 2005, 110). For targeting to identify potential benefits and costs while linking policy takers with instrument mixes, policymakers engage in a reflexive, socially constructed process (Schneider and Ingram 1993). At this stage, policymakers grapple with two interrelated concerns: matching individual instruments and matching instrument mixes within the context. However, given cognitive limits, type 1 or type 2 errors could dominate the decision-making process, especially when policymakers face deep uncertainty, which could impair design effectiveness (Nair and Howlett 2016, 2017). Such concerns could persist following the design stage, as calibrating instrument mixes for effectiveness in the post-implementation stage is subject the same challenges.

Here, Bali and Ramesh (2018, 335) note that the concern is not about whether and how such errors could be avoided. Calibrating mixes, while targeting addresses potential pitfalls of matching the wrong mixes with the context and/or policy takers, requires built-in mechanisms and flexibility to correct type 1 or type 2 errors and mitigate potential side effects of such errors. Furthermore, policymakers need to take into account the initial behavioural assumptions of each instrument bundled in the instrument mix, as well as the combined assumptions the mix arises upon and the expected behavioural outcomes it aims to produce (Schneider and Ingram 1990). Once policies are implemented, policy targets also make sense of the instrument mix, and they (non-)comply, which, in turn, determines policy performance. Respectively, calibrating instrument mixes for effectiveness relates closely to tailoring the mix both to correct potential cognitive errors and to (re)shape policy taker behaviour towards the expected outcomes.

Stickiness

Designing mixes that "stick" beyond the design stage and over time is a serious challenge. How can policymakers design instrument mixes so that "certain kinds of policy effect that gradually 'stick' policies into place [are crafted], but [which] are nonetheless flexible enough to cope with changing external circumstances (i.e., they are not entirely 'stuck') [over time]"? (Jordan and Matt 2014, 228). Stickiness depends on policy feedback since instrument mixes create politics as they alter the political, social, and economic context and/or processes and their sustainability over time (Baekgaard et al. 2019; Béland 2010; Jordan and Moore 2020; Patashnik and Weaver 2020; Pierson 1993). Policy feedback could be positive through increasing returns or negative due to weakening, degenerating forces. It drives policymakers toward stability or a change in instrument mixes as they adjust their preferences (Soroka and Wlezien 2009). Within this setting, policymakers need to calibrate instrument mixes to adapt to changing conditions and can remain intact even in different forms without losing their fiscal, social, or political sustainability and feasibility over time (Weaver 2010, 137). Here, it is necessary to note that stability could be desirable given the possibility of (too much) volatility in instrument mixes – even if not much is known about why and how instrument mix volatility occurs (Capano and Howlett 2020, 8), except policymaking being captured for private gains (Howlett 2020). Still, changes in instrument mixes when they are subject to careful calibration might not necessarily cause drift, conversion, or replacement since any change could relate to adaptation.

Noting this, scientific, political, and/or economic uncertainties can provoke "design traps". Yet these could be overcome through "smart patching" and "packaging" (Nair and Howlett 2016). Still, two interrelated major concerns can disconcert such efforts. The first relates to "policy bubbles" that arise upon positive feedback over a sustained period of time (Maor 2014).

Given entrenched interests over a long period of time, which increases returns, feeding into policymaker and/or policy taker expectations (Pierson 2000), policymakers can get "stuck" with certain mixes. Relatedly, the lock-in effects which refer to "a policy pathway that encumbers the implementation of policy alternatives or innovations due to high switching costs" (Popp et al. 2021, 2) can originate from strong feedback (Pierson 1993). Instrument mixes can behave like an institution (Lascoumes and Le Galès 2007) by guiding actor behaviour through the logic of appropriateness and/or consequences and, therefore, induce path dependence with limited degrees of freedom for calibration. When this occurs, instrument mix stickiness can be undesirable because stickiness can impede calibrations to improve design effectiveness (Jordan and Brendan 2020, 10).

Degrees of Freedom

Degrees of freedom determine the extent of flexibility policymakers might have. Noting this, degrees of freedom refer to policymakers' capabilities to adjust instrument mixes so that instrument mixes "stick" (Jordan and Brendan 2020). Higher degrees of freedom facilitate calibrations for effectiveness through flexible bundling of individual instruments. As Rausser et al. (2011, Ch. 22) suggest, flexible instrument (mixes) allow calibrations in settings as conditions change and planning among policy takers regarding the settings and uncertainty.

Here, it is necessary to note that Howlett (2018, 254) suggests that policymakers are conceived of having "unlimited *degrees of freedom*" (emphasis in original). However, such unlimited flexibility can rarely occur when instrument mixes are "exhausted" or "replaced". This is because instrument mixes arise in particular institutional, structural, and ideational contexts wherein policymakers design certain mixes. Within these conditions, the degree and the extent of flexibility policymakers have depend on how policy regimes evolve as well as the inherent technical difficulties arising in time. As instrument mixes create politics, to put it differently, they constitute "instrument constituencies" (Béland and Howlett 2016); degrees of freedom could be narrow given entrenched interests, ideas, and institutional arrangements (Howlett and Rayner 2018, 397).

Under these circumstances, instrument mix effectiveness relies on how policy regimes evolve and/or, as we mentioned earlier on stickiness, whether instrument mixes have built-in review, and auto-adjustment mechanisms. Yet while policy legacies, entrenched interests, ideas, and institutional arrangements define the extent and the degrees of freedom, policymakers still need to aim for coherence, congruence, and consistency (Howlett 2019a, 279). While doing so, policymakers can hardly ignore administrative burdens, as they either reduce or amplify the costs of calibration.

Administrative Burdens

Administrative burden refers broadly to "an individual's [i.e., policy targets'] experience of policy implementation as onerous" (Burden et al. 2012). They are "hidden", and policy targets "feel" them when they interact with them (Burden et al. 2012; Heinrich 2016; Herd and Moynihan 2019).

Administrative burdens are closely related to instrument mix effectiveness and instrument mix calibration (Carter et al. 2018). Arguably, policy capacity deficiencies (Howlett and Ramesh 2016) and policy non-design (Howlett and Mukherjee 2014), among other drivers, can lead to (in)formal (un)intentional administrative burdens. However, administrative burdens are politically contentious (Peeters 2020); this is mainly driven by social construction of policy targets and interest group politics (Schneider and Ingram 1993, 1997). Deliberate policy design decisions, even if informal and unintentional, could be the product of policymakers' preferences

or the involvement of powerful interest groups in the design process, which impose burdens on certain policy targets for rent seeking, restricting access to public services. Furthermore, increasing returns and positive policy feedback are likely to create entrenched interests around administrative burdens (Baekgaard et al. 2021). Thus, political and economic non-neutrality of administrative burdens means that there could be a trade-off between effectiveness and political economic concerns. For example, Peeters (2020) finds that policymakers who received social benefits before and are ideologically more pro-poor oriented are less likely to impose higher burdens. This finding resonates with an earlier study in which Moynihan et al. (2016) document that the Democratic-Republican division across states in the US is significant with respect to burdens policy targets face: in the states that are governed by Democratic governors, the Medicaid programme is less burdensome. These examples underline that besides the technical aspects of instrument mix calibration, managing administrative burdens can hardly ignore political economic concerns, as political ideologies, interest group preferences, and even personal experiences shape the extent of administrative burdens, which, in turn, determine policy target reaction that is regulated by imposed costs.

Conclusion

This chapter has examined attributes of effective designs focusing on the spaces in which tool mixes and calibrations occur. The extant literature has pointed to several attributes of good design in these areas, but these are rarely discussed through a three-level understanding. Addressing this gap, the chapter has examined the attributes across three levels: macro level, meso level, and micro level. The chapter has sought to revisit and synthesise the existing research on these attributes. In so doing, the chapter treats the attributes separately. Yet none of them could be fully isolated from other remaining attributes, either on the same level or across the three levels. Therefore, the synthesis is not conclusive: the discussion leaves a significant and large void for us to fill, which offers various fruitful paths for future research on policy design, policy instruments, and comparative public policy.

First, Capano and Howlett (2020) note that not much is known about effectiveness in mixing procedural and substantive instruments. Given constraints on space, the chapter could not adequately distinguish between or identify which types of instruments are mixed and the attributes of these mixes. Yet there are several gaps that warrant further exploration: Are we only examining mixes of substantive or procedural instruments? Or are we interested in the attributes of mixes of substantive and procedural procedures? How do instrument mixes evolve? How do the temporal dynamics influence the instrument mix choice, calibration, and effectiveness? Is there an order of mixing, and does such an order alter the effectiveness of the mix?

Second, and related to treating the attributes separately at each level, the chapter does not offer a "dynamic framework" (see Bali et al. 2021, 4). A "dynamic framework" requires teasing out the interactions between attributes on each level and/or across levels. While the literature refers to the relationship between, for example, robustness and resilience or that between degrees of freedom and reversibility, not much is known about how individual attributes interact and thereby determine instrument mix effectiveness. A remedy could be studying how micro-level and/or meso-level attributes feed into the macro level or vice versa while endogenising the temporal aspects of mixing.

Third, an implicit assumption of benign policymakers who seek to address complex, cross-boundary policy problems might not when policymakers pursue private gains or may have "hidden agendas" (Howlett 2020; McConnell 2018). More research is warranted on whether policymakers could instrumentalise the attributes of effective instrument mixes for private gain,

as instrument mixes could be effective but the distributional outcomes may favour private gains of certain groups.

Fourth, we have not discussed in-depth how policy regimes influence the way and the process by which instrument mixes are designed. More important, we need an outlook on how policy regimes influence, select, or even perhaps lead volatility in instrument mixes and their effectiveness as policy regimes evolve. Such an approach needs to examine the role of actors, ideas, and the institutional and the structural context (Haelg et al. 2020). Still, this approach could offer limited advances to our understanding about the role of policy regimes. More could be achieved with endogenising political economic drivers of the policy process (John 2018).

References

Adam, Christian et al. 2019. Introducing Vertical Policy Coordination to Comparative Policy Analysis: The Missing Link between Policy Production and Implementation. *Journal of Comparative Policy Analysis* 21(5), 499–517.

Baekgaard, Martin, Larsen, Soren K., and Mortensen, Peter B. 2019. Negative Feedback, Political Attention, and Public Policy. *Public Administration* 97(1), 210–225.

Baekgaard, Martin, Moynihan, Donald P., and Thomsen, Mette Kjaergaard. 2021. Why Do Policymakers Support Administrative Burdens? The Roles of Deservingness, Political Ideology, and Personal Experience. *Journal of Public Administration Research and Theory* 31(1), 184–200.

Bali, Azad S., Capano, Giliberto, and Ramesh, M. 2019. Anticipating and Designing for Policy Effectiveness. *Policy and Society* 38(1), 1–13.

Bali, Azad S., Howlett, Michael, Lewis, Jenny M., and Ramesh, M. 2021a. Procedural Policy Tools in Theory and Practice. *Policy and Society* 40(3), 295–311.

Bali, Azad S., Howlett, Michael, and Ramesh, M. 2021b. Unpacking Policy Portfolios: Primary and Secondary Aspects of Tool Use in Policy Mixes. *Journal of Asian Public Policy*. DOI: 10.1080/17516234.2021.1907653

Bali, Azad S., and Ramesh, M. 2018. Policy Capacity: A Design Perspective. In M. Howlett and I. Mukherjee (Eds.), *Routledge Handbook of Policy Design* (pp. 331–344). New York: Routledge.

Béland, Daniel. 2010. Reconsidering Policy Feedback: How Policies Affect Politics. *Administration & Society* 42(5), 568–590.

Béland, Daniel, Carstensen, Martin B., and Seabrooke, Leonard. 2016. Ideas, Political Power, and Public Policy. *Journal of European Public Policy* 23(3), 315–317.

Béland, Daniel, and Howlett, Michael. 2016. How Solutions Chase Problems: Instrument Constituencies in the Policy Process. *Governance* 29(3), 393–409.

Béland, Daniel et al. 2020. Designing Policy Resilience: Lessons from the Affordable Care Act. *Policy Sciences* 53(5), 269–289.

Boin, Arjen, and Lodge, Martin. 2016. Designing Resilient Institutions for Transboundary Crisis Management: A Time for Public Administration. *Public Administration* 94(2), 289–298.

Burden, Barry C. et al. 2012. The Effect of Administrative Burden on Bureaucratic Perception of Policies: Evidence from Election Administration. *Public Administration Review* 72(5), 741–751.

Candel, Jeroen J. L. 2021. The Expediency of Policy Integration. *Policy Studies* 42(4), 346–361.

Candel, Jeroen J. L., and Biesbroek, Robbert. 2016. Toward a Processual Understanding of Policy Integration. *Policy Sciences* 49(3), 211–231.

Capano, Giliberto, and Howlett, Michael. 2020. The Knowns and Unknowns of Policy Instrument Analysis: Policy Tools and the Current Research Agenda on Policy Mixes. *SAGE Open*. DOI: 10.1177/2158244019900568

Capano, Giliberto, Howlett, Michael, and Ramesh, M. 2015. Re-Thinking Governance in Public Policy: Dynamics, Strategy and Capacities. In Giliberto Capano, Michael Howlett, and M. Ramesh (eds.), *Varieties of Governance: Dynamics, Strategies, Capacities* (pp. 3–24). Basingstoke: Palgrave Macmillan.

Capano, Giliberto, Pritoni, Andrea, and Vicentini, Giulia. 2020. Do Policy Instruments Matter? Governments' Choice of Policy Mix and Higher Education Performance in Western Europe. *Journal of Public Policy* 40(3), 375–401.

Capano, Giliberto, and Woo, Jun J. 2017. Resilience and Robustness in Policy Design: A Critical Appraisal. *Policy Sciences* 50(3), 399–426.

Capano, Giliberto, and Woo, Jun J. 2018. Designing Policy Robustness: Outputs and Processes. *Policy and Society* 37(4), 422–440.

Carter, David P., Scott, Tyler A., and Mahallati, Nadia. 2018. Balancing Barriers to Entry and Administrative Burden in Voluntary Regulation. *Perspectives on Public Management and Governance* 1(3), 207–211.

Coban, M. Kerem. 2021. Coordinating Monetary Policy and Macroprudential Policy: Bureaucratic Politics, Regulatory Intermediary and Bank Lobbying. *Public Administration*. DOI: 10.1111/PADM.12744

Constantini, Valeria, Crespi, Francesco, and Palma, Alessandro. 2017. Characterizing the Policy Mix and Its Impact on Eco-Innovation: A Patent Analysis of Energy-Efficient Technologies. *Research Policy* 46(4), 799–819.

Crouch, Colin. 2005. Three Meanings of Complementarity. *Socio-Economic Review* 3(2), 359–363.

Giest, Sarah, and Mukherjee, Ishani. 2022. Evidence Integration for Coherent Nexus Policy Design: A Mediterranean Perspective on Managing Water-Energy Interactions. *Journal of Environmental Policy & Planning*. DOI: 10.1080/1523908X.2022.2049221

Goyal, Nihit, and Howlett, Michael. 2021. "Measuring the Mix" of Policy Responses to COVID-19: Comparative Policy Analysis Using Topic Modelling. *Journal of Comparative Policy Analysis* 23(2), 250–261.

Haelg, Leonore, Sewerin, Sebastian, Schmidt, Tobias S. 2020. The Role of Actors in the Policy Design Process: Introducing Design Coalitions to Explain Policy Output. *Policy Sciences* 53(2), 309–347.

Heinrich, Carolyn J. 2016. The Bite of Administrative Burden: A Theoretical and Empirical Investigation. *Journal of Public Administration Research and Theory* 26(3): 403–420.

Herd, Pamela, and Moynihan, Donald P. 2019. *Administrative Burden: Policymaking by Other Means*. New York: Sage.

Hood, Christopher. 1983. *The Tools of Government*. Berlin: Springer.

Hornung, Johanna. 2021. The (Mis)fit of Policy Programs to Political Institutions and Its Influence on Programmatic Action: How Crisis Has Differently Hit French and German Health Policy. *European Policy Analysis* 7(S1), 120–138.

Hou, Yilin, and Brewer, Gene A. 2010. Substitution and Supplementation between Co-Functional Policy Instruments: Evidence from State Budget Stabilization Forces. *Public Administration Review* 70(6), 914–924.

Howlett, Michael. 2000. Managing the "Hollow State": Procedural Policy Instruments and Modern Governance. *Canadian Public Administration* 43(4), 412–431.

Howlett, Michael. 2009. Governance Modes, Policy Regimes and Operational Plans: A Multi-Level Nested Model of Policy Instrument Choice and Policy Design. *Policy Sciences* 42(1), 73–89.

Howlett, Michael. 2018. The Criteria for Effective Policy Design: Character and Context in Policy Instrument Choice. *Journal of Asian Public Policy* 11(3), 245–266.

Howlett, Michael. 2019a. *Designing Public Policies: Principles and Instruments*. 2nd ed. New York: Routledge.

Howlett, Michael. 2019b. Procedural Policy Tools and the Temporal Dimensions of Policy Design. *International Review of Public Policy* 1(1), 27–45.

Howlett, Michael. 2020. Dealing with the Dark Side of Policy-Making: Managing Behavioural Risk and Volatility in Policy Designs. *Journal of Comparative Policy Analysis* 22(6), 612–625.

Howlett, Michael, Capano, Giliberto, and Ramesh, M. 2018. Designing for Robustness: Surprise, Agility and Improvisation in Policy Design. *Policy and Society* 37(4), 405–421.

Howlett, Michael, and Mukherjee, Ishani. 2014. Policy Design and Non-Design: Towards a Spectrum of Policy Formulation Types. *Politics and Governance* 2(2), 57–71.

Howlett, Michael, and Mukherjee, Ishani. (eds.). 2018. *Routledge Handbook of Policy Design*. London: Routledge.

Howlett, Michael, Mukherjee, Ishani, and Rayner, J. 2017. The Elements of Effective Program Design: A Two-Level Analysis. In M. Howlett and I. Mukherjee (Eds.), *Handbook of Policy Formulation* (pp. 129–144). Cheltenham: Edward Elgar Publishing.

Howlett, Michael, Mukherjee, Ishani, and Woo, Jun Jie. 2015. From Tools to Toolkits in Policy Design Studies: The New Design Orientation towards Policy Formulation Research. *Policy and Politics* 43(2), 291–311.

Howlett, Michael, and Ramesh, M. 2002. The Policy Effects of Internationalization: A Subsystem Adjustment Analysis of Policy Change. *Journal of Comparative Policy Analysis* 4(1), 31–50.

Howlett, Michael, and Ramesh, M. 2014. Two Orders of Governance Failure: Design Mismatches and Policy Capacity Issues in Modern Governance. *Policy and Society* 33(4), 317–327.

Howlett, Michael, and Ramesh, M. 2016. Achilles' Heels of Governance: Critical Capacity Deficits and Their Role in Governance Failures. *Regulation & Governance* 10(4), 301–313.

Howlett, Michael, and Rayner, Jeremy. 2007. Design Principles for Policy Mixes: Cohesion and Coherence in 'New Governance Arrangements'. *Policy and Society* 26(4), 1–18.

Howlett, Michael, and Rayner, Jeremy. 2013. Patching vs. Packaging in Policy Formulation: Assessing Policy Portfolio Design. *Politics & Governance* 1(2), 170–182.

Howlett, Michael, and Rayner, Jeremy. 2018. Coherence, Congruence and Consistency in Policy Mixes. In Michael Howlett and Ishani Mukherjee (Eds.), *Routledge Handbook of Policy Design* (pp. 389–403). London: Routledge.

Huitema, Dave et al. 2018. Policy Experimentation: Core Concepts, Political Dynamics, Governance and Impacts. *Policy Sciences* 51(2), 143–159.

Jacobs, Alan M., and Weaver, R. Kent. 2015. When Policies Undo Themselves: Self-Undermining Feedback as a Source of Policy Change. *Governance* 28(4), 441–457.

Jochim, Ashley E., and May, Peter J. 2010. Beyond Subsystems: Policy Regimes and Governance. *Policy Studies Journal* 38(2), 303–327.

John, Peter. 2018. Theories of Policy Change and Variation Reconsidered: A Prospectus for the Political Economy of Public Policy. *Policy Sciences* 51(1), 1–16.

Jones, Tom. 2002. Policy Coherence, Global Environmental Governance, and Poverty Reduction. *International Environmental Agreements* 2(4), 389–401.

Jordan, Andrew, and Matt, Elah. 2014. Designing Policies that Intentionally Stick: Policy Feedback in a Changing Climate. *Policy Sciences* 47(3), 227–247.

Jordan, Andrew, and Moore, Brendan. 2020. *Durable by Design? Policy Feedback in a Changing Climate*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Kern, Florian, and Howlett, Michael. 2009. Implementing Transition Management as Policy Reforms: A Case Study of the Dutch Energy Sector. *Policy Sciences* 42(4), 391–408.

Knill, Christoph, and Steinebach, Yves. 2022. Crises as Driver of Policy Accumulation: Regulatory Change and Ratcheting in German Asylum Policies between 1975 and 2019. *Regulation & Governance* 16(2), 603–617.

Landry, Réjean, and Varone, Frédéric. 2005. The Choice of Policy Instruments: Confronting the Deductive and Interactive Approaches. In P. Eliadis, M. M. Hill, and M. Howlett (Eds.), *Designing Government: From Instruments to Governance*. Montréal: McGill-Queen's University Press.

Lascoumes, Pierre, and Le Galès, Patrick. 2007. Introduction: Understanding Public Policy through Its Instruments-From the Nature of Instruments to the Sociology of Public Policy Instrumentation. *Governance* 20(1), 1–21.

Linder, Stephen H., and Peters, B. Guy. 1991. The Logic of Public Policy Design: Linking Policy Actors and Plausible Instruments. *Knowledge and Policy* 4(1), 125–151.

Mantino, Francesco, and Vanni, Francesco. 2019. Policy Mixes as a Strategy to Provide More Effective Social and Environmental Benefits: Evidence from Six Rural Areas in Europe. *Sustainability* 11(23), 6632.

Maor, Moshe. 2014. Policy Bubbles: Policy Overreaction and Positive Feedback. *Governance* 27(3), 469–487.

Maor, Moshe. 2020. Policy Over- and Under-Design: An Information Quality Perspective. *Policy Sciences* 53(3), 395–411.

Maor, Moshe, and Howlett, Michael. 2021. Policy Instrument Interactions in Policy Mixes: Surveying the Conceptual and Methodological Landscape. *SSRN Electronic Journal*. DOI: 10.2139/ssrn.3790007

May, Peter J. et al. 2005. Policy Coherence and Component-Driven Policymaking: Arctic Policy in Canada and the United States. *Policy Studies Journal* 33(1), 37–63.

McConnell, Alan. 2018. Hidden Agendas: Shining a Light on the Dark Side of Public Policy. *European Journal of Public Policy* 25(12), 1739–1758.

McConnell, Allan. 2020. The Use of Placebo Policies to Escape from Policy Traps. *European Journal of Public Policy* 27(7), 957–976.

Mergel, Ines, Ganapati, Sukumar, Whitford, Andrew B. 2021. Agile: A New Way of Governing. *Public Administration Review* 81(1), 161–165.

Moynihan, Donald P., Herd, Pamela, and Rigby, Elizabeth. 2016. Policymaking by Other Means: Do Governments Use Administrative Barriers to Limit Access to Welfare Policies? *Administration & Society* 48(4), 497–524.

Mukherjee, Ishani, and Bali, Azad S. 2019. Policy Effectiveness and Capacity: Two Sides of the Design Coin. *Policy Design and Practice* 2(2), 103–114.

Mukherjee, Ishani, Coban, M. Kerem, and Bali, Azad S. 2021. Policy Capacities and Effective Policy Design: A Review. *Policy Sciences* 54(2), 243–268.
Nair, Sreeja, and Howlett, Michael. 2016. From Robustness to Resilience: Avoiding Policy Traps in the Long Term. *Sustainability Science* 11(6), 909–917.
Nair, Sreeja, and Howlett, Michael. 2017. Policy Myopia as a Source of Policy Failure: Adaptation and Policy Learning under Deep Uncertainty. *Policy & Politics* 45(1), 103–118.
O'Flynn, Janine. 2019. Rethinking Relationships: Clarity, Contingency, and Capabilities. *Policy Design and Practice* 2(2), 115–136.
Olejniczak, Karol, Śliwowski, Paweł, and Leeuw, Frans. 2020. Comparing Behavioral Assumptions of Policy Tools: Framework for Policy Designers. *Journal of Comparative Policy Analysis* 22(6), 498–520.
Ostrom, Elinor. 2010. Beyond Markets and States: Polycentric Governance of Complex Economic Systems. *American Economic Review* 100(3), 641–672.
Patashnik, Eric, and Weaver, R. Kent. 2021. Policy Analysis and Political Sustainability. *Policy Studies Journal* 49(4), 1110–1134.
Peeters, Rik. 2020. The Political Economy of Administrative Burdens: A Theoretical Framework for Analyzing the Organizational Origins of Administrative Burdens. *Administration & Society* 52(4), 566–592.
Peters, B. Guy. 2015. *Pursuing Horizontal Management: The Politics of Public Sector Coordination*. Lawrence: University Press of Kansas.
Peters, B. Guy. 2018. The Challenge of Policy Coordination. *Policy Design and Practice* 1(1), 1–11.
Peters, B. Guy et al. 2018. *Designing for Policy Effectiveness: Designing and Understanding a Concept*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
Pierson, Paul. 1993. When Effect Becomes Cause: Policy Feedback and Political Change. *World Politics* 45(4), 595–628.
Pierson, Paul. 2000. Increasing Returns, Path Dependence, and the Study of Politics. *The American Political Science Review* 94(2), 251–267.
Popp, Thies R., Feindt, Peter H., and Dadlow, Katrin. 2021. Policy Feedback and Lock-in Effects of New Agricultural Policy Instruments: A Qualitative Comparative Analysis of Support for Financial Risk Management Tools in OECD Countries. *Land Use Policy* 103, 105313.
Rausser, Gordon C., Swinnen, Johan, and Zusman, Pinhas. 2011. *Political Power and Economic Policy: Theory, Analysis, and Empirical Applications*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
Rogge, Karoline S. 2018. Designing Complex Policy Mixes: Elements, Processes, and Characteristics. In Michael Howlett and Ishani Mukherjee (Eds.), *Routledge Handbook of Policy Design*, 34–58. Cheltenham: Edward Elgar.
Rogge, Karoline S., and Reichardt, K. 2016. Policy Mixes for Sustainability Transitions: An Extended Concept and Framework Analysis. *Research Policy* 45(8), 1620–1635.
Saguin, Kidjie I. 2019. Designing Effective Governance of Education. *Policy Design and Practice* 2(2), 182–197.
Schneider, Anne L., and Ingram, Helen M. 1990. Behavioural Assumptions of Policy Tools. *Journal of Politics* 52(2), 510–529.
Schneider, Anne L., and Ingram, Helen M. 1993. Social Construction of Target Populations: Implications for Politics and Policy. *American Political Science Review* 87(2), 334–347.
Schneider, Anne L., and Ingram, Helen M. 1997. *Policy Design for Democracy*. Lawrence: University of Kansas Press.
Schneider, Anne L., and Ingram, Helen M. 2019. Social Constructions, Anticipatory Feedback Strategies, and Deceptive Public Policy. *Policy Studies Journal* 47(2), 206–236.
Simon, Herbert A. 1997 [1947]. *Administrative Behavior: A Study of Decision-Making Processes in Administrative Organizations*. 4th ed. New York: Free Press.
Soroka, Stuart N., and Wlezien, Christopher. 2009. *Degrees of Democracy: Politics, Public Opinion, and Policy*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
Taeihagh, Araz, Givoni, Moshe, and Bañares-Alcántara, René. 2013. Which Policy First? A Network-Centric Approach for the Analysis and Ranking of Policy Measures. *Environment and Planning B: Planning and Design* 40(4), 595–616.
Thomann, Eva. 2018. "Donate Your Organs, Donate Life!" Explicitness in Policy Instruments. *Policy Sciences* 51(4), 433–456.
Tosun, Jale, and Lang, Achim. 2017. Policy Integration: Mapping the Different Concepts. *Policy Studies* 38(6), 553–570.
Trein, Philip, and Maggetti, Martino. 2020. Patterns of Policy Integration and Administrative Coordination Reforms: A Comparative Empirical Analysis. *Public Administration Review* 80(2), 198–208.

Weaver, Kent. 2010. Paths and Forks or Chutes and Ladders? Negative Feedbacks and Policy Regime Change. *Journal of Public Policy* 30(2), 137–162.

Wegrich, Kai, and Stimac, Vid. 2014. Coordination Capacity. In Martin Lodge and Kai Wegrich (Eds.), *The Problem-Solving Capacity of the Modern State: Governance Challenges and Administrative Capacities* (pp. 41–62). New York: Oxford University Press.

Wilson, Carter A. 2000. Policy Regimes and Policy Change. *Journal of Public Policy* 20(3), 247–274.

Woo, Jun J. et al. 2016. Dynamics of Global Financial Governance: Constraints, Opportunities, and Capacities in Asia. *Policy and Society* 35(3), 269–282.

Wu, Xun, Ramesh, M., and Michael Howlett. 2015. Policy Capacity: A Conceptual Framework for Understanding Policy Competences and Capabilities. *Policy and Society* 35(3–4): 165–171.

Wu, Xun, Ramesh, M., and Michael Howlett. 2018. Policy Capacity: Conceptual Framework and Essential Components. In Xun Wu, Michael Howlett, and M Ramesh (Eds.), *Policy Capacity and Governance: Assessing Governmental Competences and Capabilities in Theory and Practice* (pp. 1–25). New York: Springer Berlin Heidelberg.

37

CHANGING THE COMPOSITION OF POLICY MIXES

Lock-in, Path Dependency and the Sequencing of Policy Tools

Michael Howlett

In recent years, work on policy design and instrument choice has advanced towards a better understanding of the nature of policy mixes, their dimensions, and the trade-offs between choices of tools, as well as the identification of basic design criteria such as coherence, consistency and congruence among policy elements. However, most of this work has ignored the temporal dimension of mixes or has studied this only as an important contextual variable affecting instrument choices, for example, highlighting the manner in which tools and mixes often evolve in unexpected or unintended ways as they age. This ignores the important issue of the intentional sequencing of tools as part of a mix design, either in terms of controlling spillovers which emerge as implementation proceeds, ratcheting up (or down) specific tool effects like stringency of implementation and public consultation as time passes. This chapter reviews existing work on the unintentional sequencing of policy activity as well as the lessons which can be derived from the few works existing on the subject of intentional sequencing. In so doing, it helps define a research agenda on the subject with the expectation that this research can improve the resilience and robustness of policies over time.

Introduction: Intentional and Unintentional Aspects of Temporality and Sequencing in Policymaking

Policymaking is all about creating and implementing mixes of policy instruments expected to attain policy goals, no matter how loosely defined or publicly beneficial those goals might be. Given their nature, the policy tools or instruments, or the techniques used by government to implement policy goals (Howlett 2005), thus have a special place in considerations and studies of policy design (Howlett 2018, 2019a).

Each tool has its own particular 'character' and exists as a bundle of attributes utilizing one or more governing resources (Hood 1986; Salamon 2002; Howlett 2019b). Understanding this character is an important aspect of designing programmes and packages likely to attain government goals, and, not surprisingly, many past studies have focused on identifying the nature, advantages and strengths and weaknesses of the varied techniques used by governments to implement their wishes (Salamon 2002). But choosing policy tools and designing a policy

DOI: 10.4324/9781003163954-45

become more complex when, as is very common in most policy-making situations, multiple goals and multiple sectors are involved in a program (Doremus 2003; Jordan et al. 2012; Howlett et al. 2009). In such situations, instrument choices are not restricted to a single tool, but rather to a mix or portfolio of policy instruments. And in constructing such bundles, balancing the character of different types of tools within a mix is a challenge.

How to achieve 'complementarity' among mix elements, arrive at the redundancy required to ensure mixes are robust across space and resilient across time while, at the same time, avoiding excessive duplication and counterproductive relationships among tools are key questions which must be considered in this process (Grabosky 1995; Hou and Brewer 2010; Justen et al. 2014). Some combinations of tools may be purely redundant while others, even if repetitive or duplicative, may be beneficial for promoting resiliency and adaptiveness (Braathen 2005; Braathen 2007; Swanson et al. 2010; Walker et al. 2010), and erstwhile policy designers need to be able to tell the difference and choose accordingly.

Studies of policy uncertainty and policy failure, for example, have emphasized the need to design robustness into policies in order for them to be able to adapt to a variety of foreseeable futures (Moynihan 2009) and also resilience, or the ability to deal with opposition and conflict that may result post-enactment over the medium-to-long term (Walker et al. 2010; Kwakkel et al. 2010; Capano and Woo 2017). The first aspect means to design policies capable of maintaining the same performance in the face of any different operational context while the second aspect refers to the ability of the policy to adapt in the face of any type of internal/external perturbation (Capano and Woo 2017). Both are necessary in order to deal with surprises and avoid possible policy failure caused by unexpected or unknown occurrences and changing contexts which upset initial design specifications and assumptions (Howlett et al. 2015a), and both highlight the need to investigate seriously the manner in which mixes evolve over time and how their various parts are and can be sequenced.

Achieving resilience and robustness typically means duplicating some resources and adding procedural policy tools in order to deal with the possibility of unforeseen events (Howlett 2000). Studies of policy dynamics and reform (Patashnik 2008; Jordan and Matt 2014), for example, have urged the creation of 'sticky' or resilient designs in long-term policy areas such as climate change or pensions capable of withstanding major political challenges and performing well under changing circumstances (Jacobs 2008, 2011). This often means including in a policy some mechanism or procedure for monitoring and revising policies in a planned fashion in order to deal with future issues and spillovers from existing policy efforts (Lang 2019).

Importantly, such elements of a policy need not be adopted all at once but can be sequenced or adopted piecemeal as a policy evolves over time. Although, in recent years, work on policy design and instrument choice has advanced towards a better understanding of the nature of policy mixes, their dimensions, and the trade-offs between choices of tools, as well as the identification of basic design criteria such as coherence, consistency and congruence among policy elements, most of this work has ignored the temporal dimension of mixes. Most existing work, for example, has studied temporality only as an important contextual variable affecting instrument choices: for example, highlighting the manner in which tools and mixes often evolve in unexpected or unintended ways as they age (Howlett and Goetz 2014).

This ignores the important issue of the intentional sequencing of tools as part of a mix design, either in terms of controlling spillovers which are predicted or expected to emerge as implementation proceeds, ratcheting up (or down) specific tool effects like stringency of implementation and public consultation as time passes (Taeihagh et al. 2013) or establishing procedures through which a policy can be adapted to changing contexts (Bellehumeur 1997).

To fill this gap, this paper reviews existing work on the unintentional sequencing of policy activity as well as the lessons concerning robust and resilient designs which can be derived from the few studies existing on the subject of intentional sequencing. In so doing, it helps move forward our understanding of long-term policy design and the means and mechanisms through which policy resilience and robustness can be achieved.

Policy Design Issues Related to Resilience and Robustness

Of course, how and why a policy should be designed to be robust and resilient over time is not a simple question, and it is well known that ensuring that policy processes, tools and outputs line up properly over both the short and long term is not an easy task (Jacobs and Weaver 2015). Attaining continued policy success over the long term is a difficult task for a number of reasons.

As is well known, even at the best of times, there is commonly a high level of uncertainty in policymaking (Manski 2013), which makes anticipation of future timescapes fraught with challenges and uncertainties. As a result, even many otherwise well-thought-out, well-intentioned or otherwise well-designed policies fail. Governments must grapple with complex problems involving situations in which they must deal with shifting coalitions of multiple actors, ideas and interests in complex problem environments which typically evolve and change over time. This so-called 'VUCA' (volatility, uncertainty, complexity, and ambiguity) world (Bennett and Lemoine 2014) complicates policymaking in many ways and establishes a base case for thinking about how such problems can be overcome.

That is, beyond the plaints of knowledge limitations and uncertainty, governments can and do adopt policies with a high expectation of success, from developing road and air traffic systems to the creation of food and drug safety regulations, all of which deal with highly uncertain futures and constant changes in industry actors and behaviour, public attitudes and technological changes, among others. Searching for the cause of failures and the means of dealing with them thus transcends epistemological despair as governments around the world put procedures and practices into place to deal with whatever levels of uncertainty exist in particular sectors and issue areas.

Thus, for example, failures are known to occur due to issues relating to implementation and formulation practices which go beyond knowledge limits, such as a lack of resources or problems of vague goal definition and poor implementation, evaluation and other policy practices (Wu et al. 2018), not to mention the existence of corrupt or inefficient bureaucracies or other policy actors who are either incompetent or motivated by values other than the public good (Goodin 1980). The presence among both state and societal actors of powerful veto players who try to block even the best-conceived plans – such as Obamacare in the US, for example – makes the process of designing effective policies over both the short and long term difficult and complex (Beland et al. 2016; Peters et al. 2018).

These are also serious impediments to the very idea of 'design' (Turnbull 2018). But, nevertheless, the modern policy sciences were founded on the idea that accumulating and utilizing knowledge of the effects and impacts of a relatively well-known set of policy means or tools developed over many years of state-building experience can help marshal and utilize the resources and knowledge required to overcome these obstacles and lead outcomes and processes towards both short- and long-term policy success (Lasswell and Lerner 1951; Howlett and Mukherjee 2014).

That is, individual policies can be thought of as both more or less robust – that is, capable of attaining their intended effects in a variety of circumstances – and more or less resilient – or capable of remaining robust over time. The former concern is often centred on overcoming

limitations in the initial conditions when a policy is adopted while the latter addresses the issue that policy failures also commonly occur as the policy environment changes and evolves, often undermining the assumptions and expectations that went into their initial formulation (Jacobs and Weaver 2015; Nair and Howlett 2017; Howlett et al. 2015b). Thus, even when policies are designed with a clear evidentiary basis in a model formulation process so that they are robust and well suited to the issues and concerns of the contemporary era, they may still fail over time if they do not adapt to changing circumstances and concerns as policy implementation proceeds and the policy is put into action (Nair and Howlett 2017; Bennett and Lemoine 2014). Such problems affect many sectors, from health-care policies affected by long-term demographic patterns to communications and industrial policies, which are highly susceptible to technological change (Coleman and Basten 2015; Bastian and Börjesson 2015).

Redundancy, Prudence and the Precautionary Principle in Policy Design

Achieving both robustness and resilience suggests a need to be able to design and adopt policies featuring agility and flexibility in their components and processes. However, the degree to which such changes can be identified and correctly anticipated at the outset of policy adoption varies directly with the level of 'turbulence' in the policy environment (Metcalfe et al. 1978; Salmador and Florin 2013), meaning it is not always clear a priori precisely how much agility or redundancy is required.

Even in environments in which policy actors, targets and goals change only slowly and are relatively stable, there is always a degree of uncertainty about how long this situation will last, and a prudent policy, much like a bridge or a building, should always be designed within a relatively expansive set of risk parameters and with some degree of flexibility in the face of the unexpected (Capano and Woo 2017). In more turbulent circumstances, where policy ideas and actors change frequently (Howlett and Ramesh 2002), this problem is magnified. In such conditions, policies must be designed to be flexible. In practice, this mean policies and policymaking require not only additional and redundant resources but also the capability to change course as conditions change, such as built-in feedback mechanisms and procedures for automatic or semi-automatic adjustment (Soss and Moynihan 2014).

Recognition of the need for redundancy stands in strong opposition to many ideas about policymaking which equate better designs with efficiency, implying that only the minimum possible amount of resources should be allocated to a policy, which also often emphasize routinization and the replication of standard operating procedures and program elements in order to ensure consistency in program delivery (Moxey et al. 1999; Cole and Grossman 1999). It also requires clearer thinking about what exactly the sequencing of policy elements means, how it occurs in policymaking and how it can best be managed to ensure resilient and robust policies are created and remain effective.

Unintentional Sequencing: Historical Legacies, Layering and the Trajectories of Public Policies

One critical issue around the temporality of public policymaking which policy scholars have begun to study concerns the trajectories of policies and their impact on the timing of the replacement or elimination of components and elements of policy mixes (Justen et al. 2014; Jordan et al. 2013; Howlett 2009).

That is, policymaking can be viewed not as a one-off but rather as an inherently temporal process in which policy content and outcomes shift over time, leading to patterns of the

sequencing of different policy elements in a trajectory of events and activities in any specific policy area (Mahoney 2000; Daugbjerg 2009). This statement is as true of designs intended to be robust and resilient as of those in which temporal considerations may have been absent in their initial formulation.

The practical significance of this perspective on policy-making activities and precepts is clear as many older studies suggested that design and adoption occurred as processes in which policy packages were designed 'de novo' and implemented 'en bloc', with less attention paid to their evolution once in place. More recent studies, however, acknowledge that most design circumstances involve building on the foundations created in another era and working within existing arrangements of instruments and tools put in place over an extended period of time (Howlett and Rayner 2013).

Work in this area typically follows the lead of neo-institutionalists such as Thelen and Mahoney, specifying several processes such as layering, drift, replacement and conversion, through which policies have been observed to evolve (Thelen 2004; van der Heijden 2011; Béland 2007). However, it also includes some sequential policy-making activities, such as stretching and tense layering (Feindt and Flynn 2009; Kay 2007), in which subsequent events and actions on the part of policymakers result in a less-than-favourable pattern of policy changes as adaptations take place in a reactive way or fail to take place at all, introducing tensions into existing policy mixes which may not have been there when those policies were first adopted. This has happened in many sectors, such as land management, where subsequent incursions of new industries into formerly agricultural or forestry domains can result in the stretching of existing land-use policies to try to cover off the activities of the new industries, often with very poor results (Rayner et al. 2017).

While focusing on the limitations of policymaking, these works have advanced our knowledge of temporal policy-making processes and the opportunities available to design policies capable of reacting to significant alterations in existing trajectories of policies and outcomes (Howlett and Mukherjee 2014). Their lessons and findings help us better understand policy-making processes and tool mix evolution and how policy portfolios can be designed to be flexible and achieve a higher level of resilience and robustness. How policy formulators, like software designers, can issue 'patches' in order to correct flaws in existing mixes or allow them to adapt to changing circumstances, for example, has been a subject of study in this vein (Howlett and Rayner 2013, 2007), which helps identify a mechanism through which adaptations can be made to policies in changing circumstances in a self-reflexive way (Grin et al. 2010; Voss et al. 2006).

Intentional Policy Sequencing: The Role of Path Dependency and Lock-in Effects in the Creation of Robust and Resilient Designs

Beyond these advances, recent policy design studies have also established insights into the question of what makes a policy 'sticky', or more likely to remain in place over the long term (Bobrow 2006; Howlett 2011; Flanagan et al. 2011; Peters et al. 2018) and how such attributes can be designed into a policy at its outset.

Path dependency, for example, is a well-known phenomenon in social processes (Arthur 1988, 1989; David 1985, 1986; Liebowitz and Margolis 1995, 1990) and one which has been applied with effect in the policy sciences in order to understand the construction and maintenance of policy trajectories – that is, how initial policy actions remain more or less in effect over a long period of time, often being reinforced and made more difficult to change ('locked in') by the passage of time (Greener 2005). This is a common occurrence in such areas as urban housing, for example, where initial land distributions or zoning regulations can result in patterns of buildings and building uses which are very difficult to change once in place.

Mahoney has outlined three principal elements of the general path-dependent model of historical evolution which characterize these circumstances. These are (1) only early events in sequence matter or at least matter more than ones that occur later in a temporal sequence; (2) these early events are said to be contingent in the sense that they could have occurred otherwise or not at all; and (3) later events are inertial in the sense that they follow the lead of earlier events and choices (Mahoney 2000).

This view on path dependency is useful for policy design studies in two ways. First, it suggests that initial decisions made early in a trajectory are critical while, secondly, it also highlights that identifying the reasons for 'turning points' or 'conjunctures' when trajectories change is critical to anticipating, or guarding against, their appearance. Thus, in a policy context, for example, a problem in an area such as forestry around uncertain property rights which lead to overcutting, and trespass often leads to the creation of a rights regime such as the sale of public lands or long-term area-based tenures which, once in place, are very difficult to change, except around the edges (Moore 1957; List 2004). This lock-in, or path dependency, has important consequences for policy mix dynamics and the prospects for policy reform and change (Cox 2004; Dobrowolsky and Saint-Martin 2005; Deeg 2001; Kay 2005) and how they can be manipulated by policymakers and policy designs.

In economics, the reasons cited for lock-in include 'network effects', or the ability of inferior technologies to spread and block the adoption of more efficient ones; 'increasing returns', or the historical accident of the timing of the entry of new technologies into the marketplace; and (premature) 'standardization', which can also block the spread of superior technologies (Liebowitz and Margolis 1995). These are generally negative applications of the concept. In the social and political realm, however, the use of the concept of path dependency is less specific and has been applied simply as a description of historical policy-making processes in which initial conditions matter. Hence, although often thought to be a sub-optimal affair, the fact that lock-in prevents changes from occurring also applies to situations in which initial policy elements can be put in place which lock in robust relationships and practices, thereby enhancing resilience.

Positive Lock-in: Designing for Robustness and Resilience Over Time

Much work on policy design and policy mixes has focused on the manner in which various parts of a mix or portfolio may be more or less integrated or coordinated (Briassoulis 2005a, 2005b). That is, policies are said to be composed of several elements, and some correspondence across these elements is required if policies are to be robust (Cashore and Howlett 2007).

The components of a mix include policy goals and policy means at various levels of generality (Howlett 2009; Kern and Howlett 2009; Cashore and Howlett 2007), and design and instrument selection in these contexts 'are all about constrained efforts to match goals and expectations both within and across categories of policy elements' (Howlett 2009, 74). These include efforts to attain 'consistency', or the ability of multiple policy tools to reinforce rather than undermine each other in the pursuit of policy goals; 'coherence', or the ability of multiple policy goals to co-exist with each other and with instrument norms in a logical fashion; and 'congruence', or the ability of goals and instruments to work together in a unidirectional or mutually supportive fashion (Lanzalaco 2011; Howlett and Rayner 2007; Kern and Howlett 2009).

A major issue for considerations of robustness, for example, is the fact that not all the tools involved and invoked in a mix may be inherently complementary (Tinbergen 1958; Grabosky 1995; Gunningham et al. 1998; Gunningham and Sinclair 1999; del Rio et al. 2011; Boonekamp 2006), in the sense that they evoke contradictory responses from policy targets, however those targets are

defined (Schneider and Ingram 1990a, 1990b, 1993, 1994, 1997, 2005). Such problems emerge, for example, in policies which simultaneously increase gasoline prices in order to discourage consumption or reduce carbon emissions and provide subsidies to automobile or truck manufacturers or buyers in order to increase sales and employment. Consumers are thus pushed and pulled in opposite directions by elements in the same policy portfolio (Myers 1998). A key principle of current policy design thinking around robustness, therefore, is to try to better integrate policy elements, maximizing complementary or supplementary effects while minimizing counterproductive ones.

'Smart' design thus implies creating policy packages which take these precepts into account in their formulation (Gunningham et al. 1998; Gunningham and Sinclair 1999; Eliadis et al. 2005). But whether or not a mix can attain, and retain, a high degree or integration or not is not just a matter of the character of individual tools and mixes at a single point in time but also of the context in which the policy evolves, which affects how these elements continue to interact and whether or not they continue to achieve their goals (May et al. 2005; Gilabert and Lawford-Smith 2012; Majone 1975).

This attention to the ability of a policy mix to deal with changes in context is apparent in contemporary work aimed at better understanding and avoiding both 'over' and 'under' reactions, or how best to balance policy 'effort' with the severity of a problem (Haynes and Li 1993; Maor 2012). In most cases, with the exception of those symbolic instances where 'over-design' is welcomed, such as in areas such as national security or crime prevention (Maor 2014, 2017), efficient policy designs are said to be those that affect only those targets whose behaviour it is necessary to change and with only the minimum necessary levels of coercion and display. But this issue in itself varies over time as the size and type of the target can change, not least due to the impact of the policy itself, such as when policies devoted to building more public housing succeed in changing the degree of homelessness and the nature of the concerns the recently-housed homeless may have about their new accommodations.

Consequently, how to enhance or alter mixes over time through the sequencing of policy tools so that policies are able to continue to meet old goals and take on new ones is a key question. Mixes that emerge over long stretches of time as a result of earlier policy decisions and layering, for example, often face the situation in which, even when the initial logic of a mix may have been clear at the outset, it can gradually transform into a degenerative or incoherent mix over time (van der Heijden 2011; Bode 2006; Howlett and Rayner 1995; Orren and Skowronek 1998; Torenvlied and Akkerman 2004; Hacker 2005).

These kinds of 'unintentional' mixes can be contrasted with designs which deploy sets of procedural tools specifically intended to overcome or avoid the problems associated with layering. These include tools such as periodic reviews and sunset provisions, which can enhance resilience and robustness by building in opportunities to 'patch' policies and place their elements back in sync with each other (Gunningham et al. 1998; Kiss et al. 2013).

The idea, of course, is to 'lock in' resilience within an initial design. That is, adopting measures to ensure that the component parts of a policy mix relate well to each other not only when a mix is adopted but also in the future (Howlett and Rayner 2007, Grabosky 1994; Gunningham et al. 1998; del Rio 2010).

Intentionally Designing Instrument Sequences to Ensure Resilience and Robustness: Controlling Spillovers and Learning From Experience

While work on the intentional sequencing of policy elements to ensure resilience is rare, some work on this subject does exist and serves as a starting point for this analysis. In the mid-1970s

and early 1980s, for example, Bruce Doern, Richard Phidd, Seymour Wilson and others argued that a critical aspect of instrument choice centred on compliance and that the best way to deal with uncertainties around compliance involved the temporal sequencing of tools in reaction to compliance gains and losses. They argued that different policy instruments varied primarily in terms of the 'degree of government coercion' each instrument choice entailed (Doern 1981; Doern and Phidd 1983; Doern and Wilson 1974; Tupper and Doern 1981) and that tool choices should 'move up the spectrum' of coercion from minimum towards maximum if compliance issues persisted, and government goals failed to be met by lower-level tools.

Preferring 'self-regulation' as a basic default, for example, they argued that in a good design, governments should first attempt to influence overall target group performance through exhortation and then add or replace instruments as and if required in order to compel recalcitrant societal actors to abide by their wishes, eventually culminating, if necessary, in the public provision of goods and services. They illustrated this argument with examples of such developments in many countries in the air transport area, for example, where national carriers were ultimately created only after earlier efforts at government encouragement and subsidies failed to attract private sector investment in air travel (Tupper and Doern 1981). Such a vision, of course, expects governments to be able to avoid lock-in at sub-optimal compliance levels and to design a policy to be reactive to subsequent target behaviour.

Similarly, as noted earlier, more contemporary design studies have engaged in a lengthy discussion as to how to better integrate policy mixes so that multiple instruments are arranged together in sometimes very complex portfolios of policy goals and means (Gunningham et al. 1998; Doremus 2003; Briassoulis 2005a; Howlett 2011; Yi and Feiock 2012; Peters et al. 2005; Jordan et al. 2011, 2012). Work on 'smart regulation' by Gunningham et al. (1998) in the 1990s, for example, led scholars and practitioners to focus on how instruments within a policy mix, or 'portfolio', could be made to complement each other (Buckman and Diesendorf 2010; Roch et al. 2010; Barnett and Shore 2009; Blonz et al. 2008; del Río et al. 2010). But attaining such relationships requires certain tools to be deployed in a preparatory fashion and others to be deployed only after others have been put into place, as is the case, for example, with the initial establishment of regulations and subsidies in areas such as telecommunications and their subsequent revision by regulatory commissions dedicated to monitoring the environment and altering policy measures as conditions changed (McCraw 1975).

Taeihagh et al. (2009, 2013) have usefully described the relationships between tools that need to be taken into account in initial designs (see Table 37.1). As this table shows, at least two of the relationships are temporal ('precondition' and 'potential contradiction') and require procedural tools if their deployment is to be made in such a way as to anticipate change and plan for policy robustness (Schrader et al. 1993; Leung et al. 2015; Bond et al. 2015).

On a substantive level, 'robust' policies are those which incorporate some slack, allowing room for adjustments as conditions change. This is well illustrated in the case of crisis and disaster management when, in order to be able to survive crises, systems and organizations require redundancy, back-up systems and a greater use of materials than would normally be necessary for efficiency in a technical sense (Lai 2018; Cyert and March 1963). Organizations which are too lean (Radnor and Boaden 2004) may eliminate elements that could be useful when circumstances change, thus restricting the ability of the organization to respond to surprises (Lai 2012).

Resilience, on the other hand, requires the ability to alter and adapt policies spontaneously – to improvise effectively. This can involve, for example, building into a policy a range of 'automatic stabilizers' such as welfare payments or unemployment insurance payments which increase in the event of an economic downturn, maintaining some level of spending and saving despite a general economic contraction, or removing some funds from investment availability during

Table 37.1 Five Types of Relations Among Policy Measures

Relation	*Description*
Precondition (P)	Defined as a relation that is strictly required for the successful implementation of another policy measure. For instance, if policy measure B is a precondition to policy measure A, the successful implementation of policy measure A can only be achieved if policy measure B is successfully implemented beforehand. The precondition relation is a direct relation.
Facilitation (F)	In a case in which a policy measure 'will work better' if the outcome of another policy measure has been achieved, the relation is considered a facilitation relation. For instance, policy measure B facilitates policy measure A when policy measure A works better after policy measure B has been implemented; however, policy measure A could still be implemented independently of policy measure B. The facilitation relation is also a direct relation.
Synergy (S)	A special case of facilitation relation in which the 'will work better' relation is bidirectional (undirected relation). It can be argued that such a relation can be treated as a two-way facilitation; however, we believe that treating this relation as a separate type is advantageous as it suggests a higher effectiveness of both the policy measures having the synergetic relation vis-à-vis the overall policy.
Potential contradiction (PC)	A potential contradiction exists between policy measures if the policy measures produce conflicting outcomes or incentives with respect to the policy target under certain circumstances; hence the contradiction is 'potential'. This relation is undirected.
Contradiction (C)	In contrast to the conditional nature of potential contradiction, the contradiction relation is defined as being when there are 'distinctly' conflicting outcomes of incentives between policy measures. Similar to the potential contradiction relation, this relation is undirected.

Source: Taeihagh et al. (2013, 2009)

boom times (Salamon 2002; Sterner 2003). But it often requires explicitly process-related tools to be adopted in designs, such as advisory councils in the event of regulations, whose purpose is to ensure future adjustments to the policy to ensure its continuing relevance.

Policy robustness and resilience in such circumstances require the inclusion of policy-making procedures which allow responses to surprises to be improvised and implemented in an effective way as they occur (Room 2013a, 2013b). This means adding measures to existing policy portfolios that provide strategic sensitivity or the early awareness of incipient trends as they develop and evolve. This can include, for example, the adoption of procedural policy tools such as built-in policy reviews and mechanisms for outside evaluation and control, including provisions for future public hearings and information access, disclosure and dissemination, which allow significant adjustments to changing circumstances to occur (Lang 2019). This requires strategic resources or funds, people and competencies to be put into place that can be mobilized and (re)deployed quickly to sustain a policy in the face of change or, more to the point, to design policies in such a way that challenges might be defused before they begin (Doz and Kosonen 2014; Luthar and Cicchetti 2000).

Conclusion: Designing for Resilience and Robustness

In recent years, work in the policy sciences has advanced towards a better understanding of the nature of policy mixes and the dimensions and trade-offs that can be made between tools in a

superior design. A set of basic design principles has been articulated, such as the need to promote coherence, consistency and congruence between policy elements (Howlett and Rayner 2007; Rogge and Reichardt 2016; Rogge et al. 2017; Howlett 2018). Until recently, most of this work has ignored the temporal dimension of mix design, or the manner in which policies evolve over time, or has studied it only in terms of the unintentional sequencing of tools which has occurred through processes such as layering and drift (Capano 2018). However, scholars have now begun to turn their attention to the empirics of how policy mixes actually evolve post-enactment and the means by which procedural tools can aid the sequencing of policy elements and promote robustness, resilience and the continuing effectiveness of a policy (Howlett 2009; Jordan et al. 2012; Justen et al. 2014).

This work acknowledges that policymaking is an inherently temporal process and that while lock-in and path dependency exist, policy content and outcomes do shift over time through processes such as policy patching (Kern et al. 2017). These studies seek to better understand the pressures and dynamics of policy components and how policies, like other artifacts, can be designed to control for as many events – both unforeseen and predictable – as possible, including potentially highly disruptive ones such as elections that bring new actors to power who may potentially undermine existing policy regimes and paradigms in an intentional way (Jordan and Matt 2014).

These studies, along with those on policy uncertainty, crisis management, policy learning and policy capacity, have all emphasized the need to design some modicum of resilience into most policies, which means planning to revise them in time to deal with both expected and unpredictable but foreseeable future issues and spillovers from existing policy efforts (Dunlop 2010; Howlett and Ramesh 2014; Moynihan 2009). This need for designs embodying resilience is clear. Policies that were originally thought to be 'robust' can become less so over time due to, for example, demographic changes that increase the number of elderly pension earners beyond original targets or due to circumstances such as climate change–inspired insect infestations undermining projections of agricultural and forest yields. Declines in robustness also can occur due to policy drift or as a result of the actions of beleaguered policymakers trying to improve efficiencies in times of austerity, when it is hard to secure planned resource disbursements (van de Walle 2014).

This means it is essential that policymakers are able to design policies capable of maintaining the same performance not only in a number of circumstances but also in the face of internal and external perturbations over time (Capano and Woo 2017; Howlett et al. 2015b). Policy designs that contain both a substantive component – a set of alternative arrangements thought to be potentially capable of resolving or addressing some aspect of a policy problem – as well as a procedural component – a set of activities related to maintaining some level of agreement among those charged with formulating, deciding and administering a policy – are needed to enhance resilience and robustness in the long term (Capano and Woo 2017; Kwakkel et al. 2010; Nair and Howlett 2016; OECD 2011; Walker et al. 2010, 2013).

References

Arthur, W. B. (1988). Self-Reinforcing Mechanisms in Economics. In P. W. Anderson, K. Arrow, and D. Pines (eds.), *The Economy as an Evolving Complex System*. Redwood City, CA: Addison Wesley.

Arthur, W. B. (1989). Competing Technologies, Increasing Returns, and Lock-In by Historical Events. *The Economic Journal*, 99(394), 116–131.

Barnett, C. K., & Shore, B. (2009). Reinventing Program Design: Challenges in Leading Sustainable Institutional Change. *Leadership & Organization Development Journal*, 30(1), 16–35.

Bastian, A., & Börjesson, M. (2015). Peak Car? Drivers of the Recent Decline in Swedish Car Use. *Transport Policy*, 42, 94–102.

Béland, Daniel. (2007). Ideas and Institutional Change in Social Security: Conversion, Layering, and Policy Drift. *Social Science Quarterly*, 88(1), 20–38.

Beland, Daniel, Philip Rocco, & Alex Waddan. (2016). *Obamacare Wars: Federalism, State Politics, and the Affordable Care Act*, 1st ed. Lawrence, Kansas: University Press of Kansas.

Bellehumeur, R. (1997). Review: An Instrument of Change. *Optimum*, 27(1), 37–42.

Bennett, N., & Lemoine, J. (2014). What Vuca Really Means for You. *Harvard Business Review*, 92(1/2).

Blonz, J. A., Vajjhala, S. P., & Safirova, E. (2008). Growing Complexities: A Cross-Sector Review of us Biofuels Policies and Their Interactions. Rff discussion paper, n° 08–47. https://doi:10.2139/ssrn.1368419

Bobrow, D. (2006). Policy Design: Ubiquitous, Necessary and Difficult. *Handbook of Public Policy*, 75–96.

Bode, I. (2006). Disorganized Welfare Mixes: Voluntary Agencies and New Governance Regimes in Western Europe. *Journal of European Social Policy*, 16(4), 346–359.

Bond, A., Morrison-Saunders, A., Gunn, J. A., Pope, J., & Retief, F. (2015). Managing Uncertainty, Ambiguity and Ignorance in Impact Assessment by Embedding Evolutionary Resilience, Participatory Modelling and Adaptive Management. *Journal of Environmental Management*, 151, 97–104.

Boonekamp, P. G. (2006). Actual Interaction Effects between Policy Measures for Energy Efficiency: A Qualitative Matrix Method and Quantitative Simulation Results for Households. *Energy*, 31(14), 2848–2873.

Braathen, N. A. (2005). Environmental Agreements used in Combination with Other Policy Instruments. In E. Croci (ed.), *The Handbook of Environmental Voluntary Agreements*, Volume 43. Dordrecht: Springer, 335–364.

Braathen, N. A. (2007). Instrument Mixes for Environmental Policy: How Many Stones Should Be Used To Kill a Bird? *International Review of Environmental and Resource Economics*, 1(2), 185–236.

Briassoulis, H. (2005a). Analysis of Policy Integration: Conceptual and Methodological Considerations. In *Policy Integration for Complex Environmental Problems: The Example of Mediterranean Desertification*, Aldershot: Ashgate, 50–80.

Briassoulis, H. (ed.) (2005b). *Policy Integration for Complex Environmental Problems: The Example of Mediterranean Desertification*. Aldershot: Ashgate.

Buckman, G., & Diesendorf, M. (2010). Design Limitations in Australian Renewable Electricity Policies. *Energy Policy*, 38(7), 3365–3376. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.enpol.2010.02.009

Capano, G. (2018). Reconceptualizing Layering: From Mode of Institutional Change to Mode of Institutional Design: Types and Outputs. *Public Administration*, 1–15.

Capano, G., & Woo, J. J. (2017). Resilience and Robustness in Policy Design: A Critical Appraisal. *Policy Sciences*, 50(3), 399–426. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11077-016-9273-x

Cashore, B., & Howlett, M. (2007). Punctuating Which Equilibrium? Understanding Thermostatic Policy Dynamics in Pacific Northwest Forestry. *American Journal of Political Science*, 51(3), 532–551.

Cole, D. H., & Grossman, P. Z. (1999). When Is Command-and-Control Efficient? Institutions, Technology and the Comparative Efficiency of Alternative Regulatory Regimes for Environmental Protection. *Wisconsin Law Review*, 887.

Coleman, D., & Basten, S. (2015). The Death of the West: An Alternative View. *Population Studies*, 69(sup1), S107–S118.

Cox, R. (2004). The Path-Dependency of an Idea: Why Scandinavian Welfare States Remain Distinct. *Social Policy & Administration*, 38(2), 204–219.

Cyert, R. M., & March, J. G. (1963). A Behavioral Theory of the Firm. *Englewood Cliffs, NJ*, 2(4), 169–187.

Daugbjerg, C. (2009). Sequencing in Public Policy: The Evolution of the CAP Over a Decade. *Journal of European Public Policy*, 16(3), 395–411.

David, P. A. (1985). Clio and the Economics of QWERTY. *The American Economic Review*, 75(2), 332–337.

David, P. A. (1986). Understanding the Economics of QWERTY: The Necessity of History. In W. N. Parker (ed.), *Economic History and the Modern Economist*. London: Basil Blackwell, 30–49.

Deeg, R. (2001). *Institutional Change and the Uses and Limits of Path Dependency: The Case of German Finance*. Köln: Max-Planck-Inst. für Gesellschaftsforschung.

del Río, Pablo. (2010). Analysing the Interactions between Renewable Energy Promotion and Energy Efficiency Support Schemes: The impact of Different Instruments and Design Elements. *Energy Policy*, 38(9, September), 4978–4989. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.enpol.2010.04.003

del Río, P., Carrillo-Hermosilla, J., & Könnölä, T. (2010). Policy Strategies to Promote Eco-Innovation. *Journal of Industrial Ecology*, 14(4), 541–557.

del Río, Pablo, Silvosa, Anxo Calvo, & Gómez, Guillermo Iglesias. (2011). Policies and Design Elements for the Repowering of Wind Farms: A Qualitative Analysis of Different Options. *Energy Policy*, 39(4, April), 1897–1908. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.enpol.2010.12.035.

Dobrowolsky, A., & Saint-Martin, D. (2005). Agency, Actors and Change in a Child-Focused Future: 'Path Dependency' Problematised. *Commonwealth & Comparative Politics*, 43(1), 1–33.

Doern, G. B. (1981). *The Peripheral Nature of Scientific and Technological Controversy in Federal Policy Formation*. Ottawa: Science Council of Canada.

Doern, G. B., & Phidd, R. W. (1983). *Canadian Public Policy: Ideas, Structure, Process*. Toronto: Methuen.

Doern, G. B., & Wilson, V. S. (1974). Conclusions and Observations. In *Issues in Canadian Public Policy*. Toronto: Macmillan of Canada, 337–345.

Doremus, H. (2003). A Policy Portfolio Approach to Biodiversity Protection on Private Lands. *Environmental Science & Policy*, 6(3), 217–232.

Doz, Y., & Kosonen, M. (2014). Governments for the Future: Building the Strategic and Agile State. *Sitra Studies*, 80, 18.

Dunlop, C. A. (2010). The Temporal Dimension of Knowledge and the Limits of Policy Appraisal: Biofuels Policy in the UK. *Policy Sciences*, 43(4), 343–363.

Eliadis, P., Hill, M. M., & Howlett, M. (2005). *Designing Government: From Instruments to Governance*. Montreal: MQUP.

Feindt, P. H., & Flynn, A. (2009). Policy Stretching and Institutional Layering: British Food Policy between Security, Safety, Quality, Health and Climate Change. *British Politics*, 4(3), 386–414.

Flanagan, K., Uyarra, E., & Laranja, M. (2011). Reconceptualising the 'Policy Mix' for Innovation. *Research Policy*, 40(5), 702–713.

Gilabert, Pablo, & Lawford-Smith, Holly. (2012). Political Feasibility: A Conceptual Exploration. *Political Studies*, 60(4), 809–825. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1467-9248.2011.00936.x.

Goodin, R. E. (1980). *Manipulatory Politics*. New Haven, CT: Yale University Press.

Grabosky, P. N. (1994). Green Markets: Environmental Regulation by the Private Sector. *Law & Policy*, 16(4), 419–448.

Grabosky, P. N. (1995). Counterproductive Regulation. *International Journal of the Sociology of Law*, 23(4), 347–369.

Greener, I. (2005). The Potential of Path Dependence in Political Studies. *Politics*, 25(1), 62–72.

Grin, J., Rotmans, J., & Schot, J. (2010). *Transitions to Sustainable Development: New Directions in the Study of Long Term Transformative Change*. London: Routledge.

Gunningham, N., Grabosky, P., & Sinclair, D. (1998). *Smart Regulation: Designing Environmental Policy*. Oxford: Clarendon Press.

Gunningham, N., & Sinclair, D. (1999). Regulatory Pluralism: Designing Policy Mixes for Environmental Protection. *Law & Policy*, 21(1), 49–76.

Hacker Jacob, S. (2005). *Policy Drift: The Hidden Politics of US Welfare State Retrenchment*. Julkaisussa: Streeck Wolfgang, Thelen Kathleen. Beyond continuity. Institutional Change in Advanced Political Economics.

Haynes, Kingsley E., & Qiangsheng, Li. (1993). Policy Analysis and Uncertainty: Lessons from the IVHS Transportation Development Process. *Computers, Environment and Urban Systems*, 17(1, January), 1–14. https://doi.org/10.1016/0198-9715(93)90002-M.

Hood, Christopher. (1986). *The Tools of Government*. Chatham, NJ: Chatham House.

Hou, Y., & Brewer, G. A. (2010). Substitution and Supplementation between Co-Functional Policy Instruments: Evidence from State Budget Stabilization Practices. *Public Administration Review*, 70(6), 914–924.

Howlett, M. (2000). Managing the "Hollow State": Procedural Policy Instruments and Modern Governance. *Canadian Public Administration*, 43(4), 412–431.

Howlett, M. (2005). WHAT Is a Policy Instrument? Tools, Mixes, and Implementation Styles. In *Designing Government: From Instruments to Governance*. Montreal: McGill-Queen's University Press, 31–50.

Howlett, M. (2009). Governance Modes, Policy Regimes and Operational Plans: A Multi-Level Nested Model of Policy Instrument Choice and Policy Design. *Policy Sciences*, 42(1), 73–89.

Howlett, M. (2011). *Designing Public Policies: Principles and Instruments*. New York: Routledge.

Howlett, M. (2018). The Criteria for Effective Policy Design: Character and Context in Policy Instrument Choice. *Journal of Asian Public Policy*, 11(3), 245–266.

Howlett, M. (2019a). *Designing Public Policies: Principles and Instruments*. 2nd Edition. London: Routledge.

Howlett, M. (2019b). *The Policy Design Primer: Choosing the Right Tools for the Job*. New York: Routledge.

Howlett, M., & Ramesh, M. (2014). The Two Orders of Governance Failure: Design Mismatches and Policy Capacity Issues in Modern Governance. *Policy and Society, Is Governance for Everybody?* 33(4, December), 317–327. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.polsoc.2014.10.002

Howlett, M., Ramesh, M., & Perl, A. (2009). *Studying Public Policy: Policy Cycles and Policy Subsystems* (Vol. 3). Oxford: Oxford University Press.

Howlett, M., Ramesh, M., & Wu, X. (2015a). Understanding the Persistence of Policy Failures: The Role of Politics, Governance and Uncertainty. *Public Policy and Administration*, 30(3–4), 209–220.

Howlett, M. P., & Goetz, K. H. (2014). Introduction: Time, Temporality and Timescapes in Administration and Policy. *International Review of Administrative Sciences*, 80(3), 477–492.

Howlett, M. P., & Mukherjee, I. (2014). Policy Design and Non-Design: Towards a Spectrum of Policy Formulation Types. Lee Kuan Yew School of Public Policy Research Paper (14–11).

Howlett, M. P., & Ramesh, M. (2002). The Policy Effects of Internationalization: A Subsystem Adjustment Analysis of Policy Change. *Journal of Comparative Policy Analysis*, 4(1), 31–50.

Howlett, M. P., & Rayner, J. (1995). Do Ideas Matter? Policy Network Configurations and Resistance to Policy Change in the Canadian Forest Sector. *Canadian Public Administration*, 38(3), 382–410.

Howlett, M. P., & Rayner, J. (2007). Design Principles for Policy Mixes: Cohesion and Coherence in 'New Governance Arrangements'. *Policy and Society*, 26(4), 1–18.

Howlett, M. P., & Rayner, J. (2013). Patching vs Packaging in Policy Formulation: Assessing Policy Portfolio Design. *Politics and Governance*, 1(2), 170–182. https://doi.org/10.12924/pag2013.01020170

Howlett, Michael, Ishani Mukherjee, & Jeremy Rayner. (2015b). Designing Effective Programs. In James L. Perry and Robert K. Christensen (eds.), *Handbook of Public Administration*, 3rd edition. San Francisco, CA: Jossey-Bass, 180–196.

Jacobs, Alan M. (2008). The Politics of When: Redistribution, Investment and Policy Making for the Long Term. *British Journal of Political Science*, 38(2), 193–220.

Jacobs, Alan M., & Weaver, R. K. (2015). When Policies Undo Themselves: Self-Undermining Feedback as a Source of Policy Change. *Governance*, 28(4), 441–457.

Jacobs, Alan M. (2011). *Governing for the Long Term: Democracy and the Politics of Investment*. Cambridge; New York: Cambridge University Press.

Jordan, A., Bauer, M. W., & Green-Pedersen, C. (2013). Policy Dismantling. *Journal of European Public Policy*, 20(5), 795–805.

Jordan, A., Benson, D., Wurzel, R., & Zito, A. (2011). Policy Instruments in Practice. In *The Oxford Handbook of Climate Change and Society*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.

Jordan, A., Benson, D., Wurzel, R., & Zito, A. R. (2012). Environmental Policy: Governing by Multiple Policy Instruments? *Constructing a Policy State*, 104–124.

Jordan, A., & Matt, E. (2014). Designing Policies That Intentionally Stick: Policy Feedback in a Changing Climate. *Policy Sciences*, 47(3), 227–247.

Justen, Andreas, Fearnley, Nils, Givoni, M., & Macmillen, J. (2014). A Process for Designing Policy Packaging: Ideals and Realities. *Transportation Research Part A: Policy and Practice*, 60(February), 9–18. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.tra.2013.10.016.

Kay, A. (2005). A Critique of the Use of Path Dependency in Policy Studies. *Public Administration*, 83(3), 553–571.

Kay, A. (2007). Tense Layering and Synthetic Policy Paradigms: The Politics of Health Insurance in Australia. *Australian Journal of Political Science*, 42(4), 579–591.

Kern, F., & Howlett, M. (2009). Implementing Transition Management as Policy Reforms: A Case Study of the Dutch Energy Sector. *Policy Sciences*, 42(4), 391.

Kern, F., Kivimaa, P., & Martiskainen, M. (2017). Policy Packaging or Policy Patching? The Development of Complex Energy Efficiency Policy Mixes. *Energy Research & Social Science*, 23, 11–25.

Kiss, B., Manchón, C. G., & Neij, L. (2013). The Role of Policy Instruments in Supporting the Development of Mineral Wool Insulation in Germany, Sweden and the United Kingdom. *Journal of Cleaner Production*, 48, 187–199.

Kwakkel, J. H., Walker, W. E., & Marchau, V. A. (2010). Classifying and Communicating Uncertainties in Model-Based Policy Analysis. *International Journal of Technology, Policy and Management*, 10(4), 299–315.

Lai, A. Y. H. (2018). Agility Amid Uncertainties: Evidence From 2009 A/H1N1 Pandemics in SINGAPORE and Taiwan. *Policy and Society*, 37(4), 459–472. https://doi.org/10.1080/14494035.2018.1519979.

Lai, Allen Y. (2012). Organizational Collaborative Capacity in Fighting Pandemic Crises: A Literature Review from the Public Management Perspective. *Asia-Pacific Journal of Public Health* 24(1, January 1), 7–20. https://doi.org/10.1177/1010539511429592.

Lang, A. (2019). Collaborative Governance in Health and Technology Policy: The Use and Effects of Procedural Policy Instruments. *Administration & Society*, 51(2), 272–298.

Lanzalaco, L. (2011). Bringing the Olympic Rationality Back in? Coherence, Integration and Effectiveness of Public Policies. *World Political Science*, 7(1).

Lasswell, H. D., & Lerner, D. (1951). The Policy Orientation. In *The Policy Sciences: Recent Developments in Scope and Method*. Stanford, CA: Stanford University Press, 3–15.

Leung, W., Noble, B., Gunn, J., & Jaeger, J. A. (2015). A Review of Uncertainty Research in Impact Assessment. *Environmental Impact Assessment Review*, 50, 116–123.

Liebowitz, S. J., & Margolis, S. E. (1990). The Fable of the Keys. *Journal of Law and Economics* 33: 1–25.

Liebowitz, S. J., & Margolis, S. E. (1995). Policy and Path Dependence: From QWERTY to WINDOWS 95. *Regulation*, 18, 33–41.

List, C. (2004). A Model of Path-Dependence in Decisions Over Multiple Propositions. *American Political Science Review*, 98(3), 495–513.

Luthar, S. S., & Cicchetti, D. (2000). The Construct of Resilience: Implications for Interventions and Social Policies. *Development and Psychopathology*, 12(4), 857–885.

Mahoney, J. (2000). Path Dependence in Historical Sociology. *Theory and Society*, 29(4), 507–548.

Majone, G. (1975). On the Notion of Political Feasibility. *European Journal of Political Research*, 3(3), 259–274.

Manski, C. F. (2013). *Public Policy in an Uncertain World: Analysis and Decisions*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press.

Maor, M. (2012). Policy Overreaction. *Journal of Public Policy*, 32(3), 231–259.

Maor, Moshe (2014). Policy Bubbles: Policy Overreaction and Positive Feedback. *Governance*, 27(3, July 1), 469–487. https://doi.org/10.1111/gove.12048.

Maor, M. (2017). The Implications of the Emerging Disproportionate Policy Perspective for the New Policy Design Studies. *Policy Sciences*, 50(3), 383–398.

May, P. J., Jones, B. D., Beem, B. E., Neff-Sharum, E. A., & Poague, M. K. (2005). Policy Coherence and Component-Driven Policymaking: Arctic Policy in Canada and the United States. *Policy Studies Journal*, 33(1), 37–63.

McCraw, Thomas K. (1975). Regulation in America: A Review Article. *The Business History Review*, 49(2), 159–183. https://doi.org/10.2307/3113698

Metcalfe, L. (1978). Policy Making in Turbulent Environments. In K. Hanf & F. W. Scharpf (eds), *Interorganizational Policy Making: Limits to Coordination and Central Control*. London: Sage, 37–55.

Moore, A. M. (1957). *Forestry Tenures and Taxes in Canada: The Economic Effects of Taxation and the Regulating of the Crown Forests by the Provinces*. Toronto: Canadian Tax Foundation.

Moxey, A., White, B., & Ozanne, A. (1999). Efficient Contract Design for Agri-Environment Policy. *Journal of Agricultural Economics*, 50(2), 187–202.

Moynihan, D. P. (2009). From Intercrisis to Intracrisis Learning. *Journal of Contingencies and Crisis Management*, 17(3), 189–198.

Myers, N. (1998). Lifting the Veil on Perverse Subsidies. *Nature*, 392(6674), 327.

Nair, S., & Howlett, M. (2016). From Robustness to Resilience: Avoiding Policy Traps in the Long Term. *Sustainability Science*, 11(6), 909–917.

Nair, S., & Howlett, M. (2017). Policy Myopia as a Source of Policy Failure: Adaptation and Policy Learning Under Deep Uncertainty. *Policy & Politics*, 45(1), 103–118.

OECD. (2011). *International Workshop 'Strategic Agility for Strong Societies and Economies' Summary and Issues for Further Debate OECD Conference Centre, Paris*. Paris: OECD.

Orren, K., & Skowronek, S. (1998). Regimes and Regime Building in American Government: A Review of Literature on the 1940s. *Political Science Quarterly*, 113(4), 689–690.

Patashnik, E. M. (2008). *Reforms at Risk: What Happens after Major Policy Changes Are Enacted* (Princeton Studies in American Politics). Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press.

Peters, B. G. (2005). Conclusion: The Future of Instruments Research. In P. Eliadis, M. M. Hill, & M. Howlett (eds.), *Designing Government: From Instruments to Governance*. Montreal: McGill-Queen's Press-MQUP, 353–363.

Peters, B. G., Capano, G., Howlett, M., Mukherjee, I., Chou, M. H., & Ravinet, P. (2018). *Designing for Policy Effectiveness: Defining and Understanding a Concept: Elements in Public Policy*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Radnor, Z. J., & Boaden, R. (2004). Developing an Understanding of Corporate Anorexia. *International Journal of Operations & Production Management*, 24(4), 424–440. https://doi.org/10.1108/01443570410524677.

Rayner, J., Howlett, M., & Wellstead, A. (2017). Policy Mixes and Their Alignment Over Time: Patching and Stretching in the Oil Sands Reclamation Regime in Alberta, Canada. *Environmental Policy and Governance*, 27(5), 472–483.

Roch, C. H., Pitts, D. W., & Navarro, I. (2010). Representative Bureaucracy and Policy Tools: Ethnicity, Student Discipline, and Representation in Public Schools. *Administration & Society*, 42(1), 38–65.

Rogge, K. S., Kern, F., & Howlett, M. (2017). Conceptual and Empirical Advances in Analysing Policy Mixes for Energy Transitions. *Energy Research & Social Science*, 33, 1–10.

Rogge, K. S., & Reichardt, K. (2016). Policy Mixes for Sustainability Transitions: An Extended Concept and Framework for Analysis. *Research Policy*, 45(8), 1620–1635.

Room, G. (2013a). Agile Policy on Complex Terrains-Nudge Or Nuzzle? Government of Canada, Policy Horizons Canada = Gouvernement du Canada, Horizons de politiques Canada. https://horizons.gc.ca/en/2013/10/01/agile-policy-on-complex-terrains-nudge-or-nuzzle/

Room, G. (2013b). Evidence for Agile Policy Makers: The Contribution of Transformative Realism. *Evidence & Policy: A Journal of Research, Debate and Practice*, 9(2), 225–244.

Salamon, L. M., & Elliott, O. V. (2002). *The Tools of Government: A Guide to the New Governance*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.

Salmador, M. P., & Florín, J. (2013). Knowledge Creation and Competitive Advantage in Turbulent Environments: A Process Model of Organizational Learning. *Knowledge Management Research & Practice*, 11(4), 374–388.

Schneider, A. L., & Ingram, H. (1990a). Policy Design: Elements, Premises and Strategies. In S. Nagel (ed.), *Policy Theory and Policy Evaluation: Concepts, Knowledge, Causes and Norms*. New York: Greenwood, 77–102.

Schneider, A. L., & Ingram, H. (1990b). Behavioural Assumptions of Policy Tools. *Journal of Politics*, 52(2), 510–529.

Schneider, A. L., & Ingram, H. (1993). Social Construction of Target Populations: Implications for Politics and Policy. *American Political Science Review*, 87(2), 334–347.

Schneider, A. L., & Ingram, H. (1994). Social Constructions and Policy Design: Implications for Public Administration. *Research in Public Administration*, 3, 137–173.

Schneider, A. L., & Ingram, H. (1997). *Policy Design for Democracy*. Lawrence: University Press of Kansas.

Schneider, Anne L., & Ingram, Helen M., eds. (2005). *Deserving and Entitled: Social Constructions and Public Policy*. SUNY Series in Public Policy. Albany: State University of New York.

Schrader, S., Riggs, W. M., & Smith, R. P. (1993). Choice over Uncertainty and Ambiguity in Technical Problem Solving. *Journal of Engineering and Technology Management*, 10(1–2), 73–99.

Soss, J., & Moynihan, D. P. (2014). Policy Feedback and the Politics of Administration. *Public Administration Review*, 74(3), 320–332.

Sterner, Thomas. (2003). *Policy Instruments for Environmental and Natural Resource Management*. Washington, DC: Resources for the Future.

Swanson, D., Barg, S., Tyler, S., Venema, H., Tomar, S., Bhadwal, S., . . . Drexhage, J. (2010). Seven Tools for Creating Adaptive Policies. *Technological Forecasting and Social Change*, 77(6), 924–939.

Taeihagh, A., Bañares-Alcántara, R., & Wang, Z. (2009). A Novel Approach to Policy Design using Process Design Principles. In *Computer Aided Chemical Engineering* (Vol. 27). Elsevier: London, 2049–2054.

Taeihagh, A., Givoni, M., & Bañares-Alcántara, R. (2013). Which Policy First? A Network-centric Approach for the Analysis and Ranking of Policy Measures. *Environment and Planning B: Planning and Design*, 40(4), 595–616.

Thelen, K. (2004). *How Institutions Evolve: The Political Economy of Skills in Germany, Britain, the United States, and Japan*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Tinbergen, J. (1958). *The Design of Development*. Baltimore: The Johns Hopkins University Press.

Torenvlied, R., & Akkerman, A. (2004). Theory of 'Soft' Policy Implementation in Multilevel Systems with an Application to Social Partnership in the Netherlands. *Acta Politica*, 39(1), 31–58.

Tupper, A., & Doern, G. B. (1981). Public Corporations and Public Policy in Canada. In A. Tupper and G.B Doern (eds.), *Public Corporations and Public Policy in Canada*. Montreal: Institute for Research on Public Policy, 1–50.

Turnbull, N. (2018). Policy Design: Its Enduring Appeal in a Complex World and How to Think it Differently. *Public Policy and Administration*, 33(4), 357–364.

Van der Heijden, J. (2011). Institutional Layering: A Review of the Use of the Concept. *Politics*, 31(1), 9–18.

Van de Walle, S. S. (2014). Building Resilience in Public Organizations: The Role of Waste and Bricolage. *The Innovation Journal*, 19(2), 1–20.

Voss, J. P., Kemp, R., & Bauknecht, D. (2006). Reflexive Governance: A View on an Emerging Path. In J. P. Voss, R. Kemp, & D. Bauknecht (eds.), *Reflexive Governance for Sustainable Development*. Cheltenham: Edward Elgar, 419–437.

Walker, W. E., Marchau, V. A., & Swanson, D. (2010). Addressing Deep Uncertainty Using Adaptive Policies: Introduction to Section 2. *Technological Forecasting and Social Change*, 77(6), 917.

Walker, Warren E., Lempert, Robert J., & Kwakkel, Jan H. (2013). Deep Uncertainty. In Saul I. Gass and Michael C. Fu (eds.), *Encyclopedia of Operations Research and Management Science*. Boston, MA: Springer, 395–402. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-1-4419-1153-7_1140

Wu, X., Howlett, M., & Ramesh, M. (2018). *Policy Capacity and Governance: Assessing Governmental Competences and Capabilities in Theory and Practice*. Cham: Palgrave Macmillan.

Yi, H., & Feiock, R. C. (2012). Policy Tool Interactions and the Adoption of State Renewable Portfolio Standards. *Review of Policy Research*, 29(2), 193–206.

38

CHANGING POLICY TOOLS ON THE FLY

Calibrating Policy Instruments

M. Ramesh and Michael Howlett

Studies in the "new design orientation" have addressed many issues around policy tools and mixes, including how policy portfolios come to be and how they evolve, as well as the criteria for "good" policy design and a plethora of topics around policy tool use and deployment. Although generally following the ideas about policy compositions set out by Hall and others, these studies have examined the roles of policy paradigms, policy objectives, governance frames and general tool preferences, and policy measures and targets, but the nature and significance of "policy calibrations" or the "settings" of policy tools remains under-investigated and under-theorized. Despite suggestions that these calibrations may be crucial in driving forward paradigmatic change and influencing policy designs, the nature of tool calibrations has not been clearly established, with most existing work relying on a few works done by Ostrom in the first decade of this century.

Introduction: Policy Calibrations and the Study of Policy Composition

Studies of policy tools and mixes have addressed many issues, including how policy portfolios come to be and how they evolve, as well as the criteria for "good" policy design and a plethora of topics around policy tool use and deployment. Generally following the ideas about policy composition set out by Hall (1993) and Howlett and Cashore (2009), these studies have examined the roles of topics such as policy paradigms, policy objectives, governance frames and general tool preferences, and policy measures and targets on policymaking and policy dynamics. However, the nature and significance of "policy calibrations" or the "settings" of policy tools highlighted by Hall in his work remain under-investigated and under-theorized.

This is a significant gap since empirical studies suggest these calibrations are not epiphenomenal but are crucial in driving forward significant change (Cashore and Howlett 2007; Oliver and Pemberton 2004; Siddiki et al. 2015). Most existing work relies on a few works done by Ostrom in the first decade of this century (Ostrom 2003, 2011), but this framework, as is discussed next, is inadequate in capturing the significance or range of activities characteristic of calibrations.

This chapter re-examines this pioneering work in order to illustrate the need for a better understanding of policy calibrations and their impact on policy outcomes if the dynamics of policy reform are to be understood.

DOI: 10.4324/9781003163954-46

Policy Calibrations: The Missing Link in Policy Instrument and Policy Design Studies

Peter Hall's (1993) pathbreaking effort to disaggregate public policies provides the basis for both the current orthodoxy with respect to policy composition and assessments of the impact of changes in policy components for overall policy change.

Hall's work appropriately challenged the dominant view in existing scholarship that tended to conflate all the elements of a "policy" into a single dependent variable (Heclo 1974; Rose 1976), a methodological decision which lay behind many early empirical accounts which suggested policy change was generally incremental in nature but could also be characterized by periods of more substantial change.

Drawing on divergent cases of economic policy development in Great Britain and France, Hall rather argued that distinguishing between the means and ends of policymaking and between abstract and concrete policy decisions generated new and better insights into these processes of policy stability and development. As is well known, he argued that three principal elements or components of a policy apparent in these cases change at different rates (small scale, typical, incremental and larger scale, rarer, paradigmatic form) with different consequences for overall policy dynamics.

For Hall, "first order" changes occurred when the calibrations of policy instruments, such as increasing automobile safety requirements, changed. These, he argued, occurred within existing institutional and instrument confines and their impact on the character of overall policy change was minimal. "Second order" changes involved alterations to dominant types of policy instruments utilized within an existing policy regime, such as switching from self-regulated to mandatory regulations affecting automobile safety, such as seatbelt use. Such changes could be more substantial in terms of changing the means through which policies were implemented but less significant in that they continued to operate within an existing ideational framework. "Third order" changes, on the other hand, involved shifts in overall abstract policy goals, such as the idea that automobiles and traffic, generally, could be made safer than had historically been the case.

Hall linked each change process to a different specific cause agent and to a specific overall pattern of what came to be termed "punctuated equilibrium" policy dynamics. In his view, first and second order changes were typically incremental and usually the result of activities endogenous to a policy subsystem while third order changes caused paradigmatic policy alterations. Following Kuhn, Hall argued this latter process occurred as anomalies arose between expected and actual results of policy implementation, delegitimating them and allowing new ideas and actors to alter significant components of existing policy regimes. Further, the events triggering anomalies and the response to them on the part of policymakers (such as contestation within a policy community on the best course of action to pursue or the development of new ideas about policy problems and/or solutions) were commonly linked to exogenous events which affected social views and undermined epistemic consensus. This analysis suggested a causal sequence whereby significant (third order) changes in policy ideas would lead to second order changes in instruments which, in turn, would lead to first order changes in tool calibrations.

Hall's work was pathbreaking in its linking of different overall policy development processes to changes in the order or level of policy in flux and its generation of a testable set of hypotheses. Still, this initial conceptual effort at classification required some rethinking in light of its own logic, as well as that shed by the empirical evidence of policy change analyzed since his work was first published.

That is, a closer examination of the components of policies revealed a more complex set of policy components. That is, according to Hall's own emphasis on distinguishing abstract or theoretical/conceptual goals from specific programme content or objectives and operational

settings or calibrations and his distinction between the aims or "ends" of policy and its actual policy requirements ("means"), six, rather than three, policy elements exist that can undergo change (see Table 38.1).

Secondly, detailed studies of long-term policy change in areas such as forestry and others suggested that significant changes were not, in fact, always driven by third order ideational changes but could also occur through the culminative impact of second or third order changes (Cashore and Howlett 2007). Empirical studies have revealed more incidences of non-paradigmatic change than the assumption warrants (e.g., Wilder and Howlett 2015; Hogan and Howlett 2015) as well as changes driven by specifications and objectives rather than abstract goals (e.g., Cashore and Howlett 2007). Recent empirical research into environmental and technology policy change, for example, suggests an alternative model whereby some significant changes occur as a result of instrument choices – such as the decision to create a carbon tax versus an emissions-trading regime in the case of climate change – or through tool calibrations – such as providing very generous feed-in tariffs for renewable energy deployment.

These insights and findings have led to the need to reconsider some of the assumptions found in Hall's work concerning the origins and nature of policy change processes and characteristics. As is set out next, recognition of several distinct change processes, among other things, highlights the role played by policy calibrations and the need to better understand this "missing link" in policy studies.

Table 38.1 A Modified Taxonomy of Policy Components Following Hall

		Policy Content		
		High-Level Abstraction	*Programme-Level Operationalization*	*Specific On-the-Ground Measures*
Policy Focus	Policy Ends or Aims	GOALS What general types of ideas govern policy development? (e.g., environmental protection, economic development)	OBJECTIVES What does policy formally aim to address? (e.g., saving wilderness or species habitat, increasing harvesting levels to create processing jobs)	SETTINGS What are the specific on-the-ground requirements of policy (e.g., considerations about the optimal size of designated streambed riparian zones or sustainable levels of harvesting)
	Policy Means or Tools	INSTRUMENT LOGIC What general norms guide implementation preferences? (e.g., preferences for the use of coercive instruments or moral suasion)	MECHANISMS What specific types of instruments are utilized? (e.g., tax incentives, public enterprises)	CALIBRATIONS What are the specific ways in which the instrument is used? (e.g., designations of higher levels of subsidies, the use of mandatory versus voluntary regulatory guidelines or standards)

(Cells contain examples of each measure.)

Source: Modified from Cashore and Howlett (2007)

An Alternative Model of Policy Change: Three Common Trajectories, Not One

The "orthodox" model of policy change set out earlier based on Hall's work postulates that changes in goals spur changes in tool choices and tool calibrations, which follow goal changes in order effect and adapt, albeit imperfectly, to the new goals. In this model, to understand policy dynamics, researchers thus only need to pay close attention to goal formation and change, with the contents of the other remaining two policy elements, tools and instrument calibrations, simply adjusting to follow this ideational lead (Schmidt 2008, 2010, 2011; Carstensen 2011; Sabatier 1988; Sabatier and Jenkins-Smith 1993; Weible et al. 2009).

Hall's model is set out in Table 38.2.

But if the typical trajectory set by Hall is incorrect, is there another common pattern of policy development which better accords with case study evidence into the subject? Other variants are equally plausible. One includes change through tinkering or incremental adjustment (see Table 38.3), in which high-level goals change and affect instrument logics, which then, in turn, drive changes in policy tools, specifications, and measures but which end up in a circular chain of specification/calibration alterations. This is the standard "incremental" or marginal model of policy change, the "equilibrium" pattern found in the punctuated equilibrium framework of policy change (Baumgartner and Jones 1993; Lindblom 1964).

As outlined in Table 38.3, this form of policy dynamics is kicked off when, at some initial moment in the policy development process, goals are articulated along with general agreement about the nature of the means used to achieve them. In this model, "objectives" do not change but are bypassed by goal change–driven shifts in tool preferences and logics, which then lead to constant turmoil and strife around the tailoring of settings and calibrations to fit the new goals, logic, and tools.

This is the case, for example, when governments shift preferences towards less state-centric forms of policy and emphasize more market ones, such as privatizations. This can lead to shifts in tools while objectives remain the same and then drive an extended period of tinkering with on-the-ground specifications of, for example, the contractual arrangements of public-private partnerships.

Unlike Hall, however, in this formulation, the remaining aspects of policy do not simply follow the lead set an agreement on new general goals. In many cases, the translation of general goals

Table 38.2 Hall's Trajectory of Paradigmatic Change

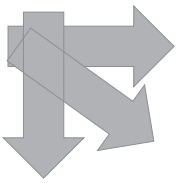
	Policy Content		
	High-Level Abstraction (Policy Level)	*Operationalization (Program Level)*	*On-the-Ground Specification (Measures Level)*
Policy Ends or Aims	GOALS	OBJECTIVES	SPECIFICATIONS
			
Policy Means or Tools	INSTRUMENT LOGIC	TOOLS/INSTRUMENTS What specific types of	CALIBRATIONS

Table 38.3 Vicious Policy Development ("Tinkering")

	Policy Content		
	High-Level Abstraction (Policy Level)	*Operationalization (Program Level)*	*On-the-Ground Specification (Measures Level)*
Policy Ends or Aims	GOALS	OBJECTIVES	SPECIFICATIONS
Policy Means or Tools	INSTRUMENT LOGIC	TOOLS/ INSTRUMENTS What specific types of	CALIBRATIONS

into programme-level objectives, suggested by Hall to follow automatically upon paradigmatic ideational change, may simply never occur.

This could be due to the existence of conflicting goals (e.g., climate mitigation and economic competitiveness in the case of renewable energy) that structure political divisions between policymakers and hinder agreement on programme-level objectives and tool choices. Instead, the choice of the means to achieve the general goals may be tainted by these unresolved conflicts, leading to only narrow shifts in acceptable means and their underlying norms, such as, in the case of renewable energy, a logic of non-intervention in the market so as not to jeopardize economic competitiveness. Based on these narrow understandings, the choice of expedient policy tools is also narrowed down.

As Oliver and Pemberton's reproduction of Hall's case study pointed out, this second pattern of change, in fact, provides a better fit for Hall's own original case study of UK economic policy transitions brought in by the Thatcher government than does a simple model of automatic second and first order changes brought about by a third order change in policy goals associated with a shift from Keynesian to Monetarism.

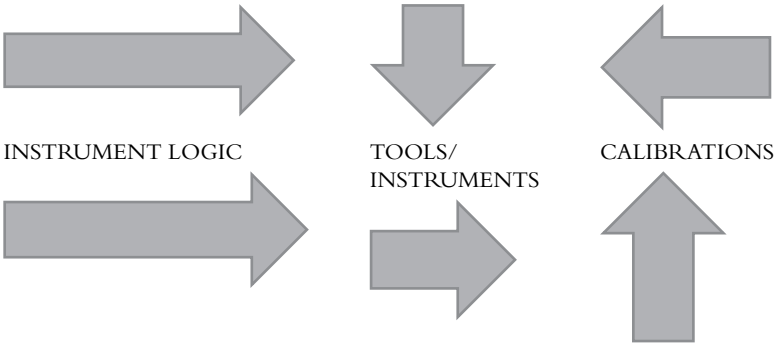
This settling for "half a loaf" or strategic decision on the part of actors to "get moving" despite disagreement on objectives also characterizes recent US health-care debate. In that case, specifications and calibrations developed to implement new goals of publicly provided health care ended up "locked in" to a vicious cycle of tinkering which proved only partially capable of instituting desired goals (Béland et al. 2020).

A third trajectory of policy development, however, also exists and is depicted in Table 38.4. This third model can be observed in cases such as sustainability transitions and the practices around them, such as the development of the UN millennium and sustainability goals. Here, processes are conceptualized whereby objectives are developed either directly at the start or through an iterated process as settings and calibrations are reformed.

Unlike the second model, in this third instance, agreement on objectives occurs but is not well linked to higher-level policy goals, and another iterative process occurs but this time involving not just changes in calibrations but between calibrations and tool choices, objectives, and

Table 38.4 Virtuous Policy Development ("Patching and Learning")

	Policy Content		
	High-Level Abstraction (Policy Level)	*Operationalization (Program Level)*	*On-the-Ground Specification (Measures Level)*
Policy Ends or Aims	GOALS	OBJECTIVES	SPECIFICATIONS
Policy Means or Tools	INSTRUMENT LOGIC	TOOLS/ INSTRUMENTS	CALIBRATIONS



policy specifications. Such an iterated process might take the form of "packaging" or "patching" (Howlett and Rayner 2013; Howlett and del Rio 2015) of single policy instruments or even of overall policy mixes. Potentially, this leads to greater agility of policy development, more robustness of policy decisions, and avoidance of policy myopia and short-termism, as well as continual fighting over goals and unnecessary policy churn (problems, e.g., discussed by Monios 2016 and Capano and Woo 2017).

Reconceptualizing the number and type of policy elements found in Hall's work has serious consequences for policy theory and practice. (For similar models based on a similar critique of Hall, see Daugbjerg 1997 and Smith 2000). In particular, three implications result. First, the links between policy components and endogenous and exogenous sources of policy change are more complex than Hall suggested (Bannink and Hoogenboom 2007). Second, existing classifications of "paradigmatic" and "incremental" policy development must be revisited so that we can better capture the complex interplay of change processes among the six different policy components (Kuhner 2007). And, thirdly, the analytical and practical lens is refocused away from goals and ideas towards objective and instrument choices and those related to specification and calibrations of those choices.

Dealing With the Missing Link: Operationalizing and Measuring Policy Calibrations

Many studies of programme-level goals and instrument choices exist (e.g., Hood, Salamon, et al.). However, much less is known about calibrations and specifications.

In 1989, Linder and Peters first described eight "attributes of instruments" which they argued affected specific micro-level tool calibration choices. These were complexity of operation, level of public visibility, adaptability across uses, level of intrusiveness, relative costliness, reliance on markets, chances of failure, and precision of targeting (1989: 56).[1] This provided some insight into what kinds of calibration of tools might be put into place but not in any systematic way

Table 38.5 Ostrom's Seven Kinds of Policy Criteria/Rules

Boundary rules that specify how actors were to be chosen to enter or leave these positions;
Position rules that specify a set of positions and how many actors hold each one;
Choice rules that specify which actions are assigned to an actor in a position;
Information rules that specify channels of communication among actors and what information must, may, or must not be shared;
Scope rules that specify the outcomes that could be affected;
Aggregation rules (such as majority or unanimity rules) that specify how the decisions of actors at a node are to be mapped to intermediate or final outcomes; and
Payoff rules that specify how benefits and costs are to be distributed to actors in positions.

Source: Elinor Ostrom, Nobel Prize Lecture 2009, "Beyond Markets and States: Polycentric Governance of Complex Economic Systems"

particularly. In her work on environmental policy design, however, the Nobel Prize–winning political scientist Eleanor Ostrom argued that most policies articulate at least seven different kinds of rules and these rules – which cover everything from who is included in a policy to who can contest it and what kinds of payoffs and penalties are levied on targets (see Table 38.5) – can be thought of as describing the range of parameters which a policy or programme requires in order to operate: that is, their specifications and calibrations.

Most of these rules, however, apply more to the settings or specifications of policy than to the calibrations of policy tools and leave open the question of what exactly constitutes such a calibration.

Conclusion

Every "policy" is a complex regime of ends and means-related goals (more abstract), objectives (less abstract), and settings (least abstract), and many are more complex than was suggested by Hall. In order not to be overwhelmed by this complexity and to facilitate better policy practice, it is necessary to more clearly disaggregate the composition of policies and present a clearer picture of policy dynamics than is usually found in the existing literature (Liefferink 2006).

Research into how policy mixes change has seen considerable progress in recent years but remains underspecified (e.g., Wood 2006; Capano 2009; Baumgartner et al. 2011; Bauer et al. 2012). Specifically, new approaches to measuring policy output have helped better conceptualize the key dependent variables in the study of policy change and advance our empirical understanding of actual policy change processes.

Some approaches – namely, those led or influenced by Ostrom – have shed light on the nature of policy specifications. It remains for these to be linked to policy change outcomes, but a significant step in that direction requires that first an equivalent study be conducted into the nature of policy calibrations.

Note

1 In his later work, however, Peters (2000) reduced this number to seven and altered their content so that they became directness, visibility, capital/labour intensity, automaticity or level of administration required, level of universality, reliance on persuasion versus enforcement, and their "forcing versus enabling" nature (39).

References

Bannink, Duco; and Hoogenboom, Marcel. (2007). Hidden Change: Disaggregation of Welfare Regimes for Greater Insight into Welfare State Change. *Journal of European Social Policy* 17 (1): 19–32.

Bauer, M. W.; Jordan, A.; Green-Pedersen, C.; and Héritier, A. (eds.) (2012). *Dismantling Public Policy: Preferences, Strategies, and Effects*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.

Baumgartner, F. R.; and Jones, B. D. (1993). *Agendas and Instability in American Politics*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press.

Baumgartner, F. R.; Jones, B. D.; and Wilkerson, J. (2011). Comparative Studies of Policy Dynamics. *Comparative Political Studies* 44 (8): 947–972.

Béland, Daniel; Howlett, Michael; Rocco, Philip; and Waddan, Alex. (2020). Designing Policy Resilience: Lessons from the Affordable Care Act. *Policy Sciences* 53 (2, June): 269–289. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11077-019-09368-w

Capano, G. (2009). Understanding Policy Change as an Epistemological and Theoretical Problem. *Journal of Comparative Policy Analysis: Research and Practice* 11 (1): 7–31.

Capano, Giliberto; and Woo, J. J. (2017). Resilience and Robustness in Policy Design: A Critical Appraisal. *Policy Sciences* January 5: 1–28.

Carstensen, Martin B. (2011). Paradigm Man Vs. the Bricoleur: Bricolage as an Alternative Vision of Agency in Ideational Change. *European Political Science Review* 3 (1): 147–167. https://doi.org/10.1017/S1755773910000342

Cashore, B. and Howlett, M. (2007). Punctuating Which Equilibrium? Understanding Thermostatic Policy Dynamics in Pacific Northwest Forestry. *American Journal of Political Science* 51 (3): 532–551.

Daugbjerg, C. (1997). Policy Networks and Agricultural Policy Reforms: Explaining Deregulation in Sweden and Re-Regulation in the European Community. *Governance* 10 (2): 123–142.

Green-Pedersen, C. (2004). The Dependent Variable Problem within the Study of Welfare State Retrenchment: Defining the Problem and Looking for Solutions. *Journal of Comparative Policy Analysis* 6 (1): 3–14.

Hall, P. A. (1993). Policy Paradigms, Social Learning, and the State: The Case of Economic Policymaking in Britain. *Comparative Politics* 25 (3): 275–296.

Heclo, H. (1974). *Modern Social Politics in Britain and Sweden: From Relief to Income Maintenance*. New Haven: Yale University Press.

Hogan, John; and Howlett, M. (2015). Reflections on Our Understanding of Policy Paradigms and Policy Change. In *Policy Paradigms in Theory and Practice*, edited by John Hogan and Michael Howlett, 3–18. Aldershot: Palgrave Macmillan.

Howlett, M.; and Cashore, B. (2009). The Dependent Variable Problem in the Study of Policy Change: Understanding Policy Change as a Methodological Problem. *Journal of Comparative Policy Analysis* 11 (1): 33–46.

Howlett, M.; and del Rio, P. (2015). The Parameters of Policy Portfolios: Verticality and Horizontality in Design Spaces and Their Consequences for Policy Mix Formulation. *Environment and Planning C: Government and Policy* 33: 1233–1245.

Howlett, M.; and Rayner, J. (2013). Patching vs Packaging in Policy Formulation: Assessing Policy Portfolio Design. *Politics and Governance* 1 (2): 170–182.

Kuhner, Stefan. (2007). Country-Level Comparisons of Welfare State Change Measures: Another Facet of the Dependent Variable Problem Within the Comparative Analysis of the Welfare State. *Journal of European Social Policy* 17 (1): 5–18.

Lindblom, C. E. (1964). Contexts for Change and Strategy: A Reply. *Public Administration Review* 24 (3): 157–158.

Linder, S. H.; and Peters, B. G. (1989). Instruments of Government: Perceptions and Contexts. *Journal of Public Policy* 9 (1): 35–58.

Monios, Jason. (2016). Policy Transfer or Policy Churn? Institutional Isomorphism and Neoliberal Convergence in the Transport Sector. *Environment and Planning A*, October 13.

Oliver, Michael J.; and Pemberton, H. (2004). Learning and Change in 20th-Century British Economic Policy. *Governance* 17 (3): 415–441. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.0952-1895.2004.00252.x.

Ostrom, E. (2003). How Types of Goods and Property Rights Jointly Affect Collective Action. *Journal of Theoretical Politics* 15 (3): 239–270.

Ostrom, E. (2011). Background on the Institutional Analysis and Development Framework. *Policy Studies Journal* 39 (1), February: 7–27. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1541-0072.2010.00394.x.

Peters, B. Guy. (2000). Policy Instruments and Public Management: Bridging the Gaps. *Journal of Public Administration Research and Theory: J-PART* 10 (1, January): 35–47.

Rose, R. (1976). *The Dynamics of Public Policy: A Comparative Analysis*. London: Sage.

Sabatier, P. A. (1988). An Advocacy Coalition Framework of Policy Change and the Role of Policy-Oriented Learning Therein. *Policy Sciences* 21 (2/3): 129–168.

Sabatier, P.; and Jenkins-Smith, H. (1993). The Advocacy Coalition Framework: Assessment, Revisions, and Implications for Scholars and Practitioners. In *Policy Change and Learning: An Advocacy Coalition Approach*, edited by P. A. Sabatier and H. C. Jenkins-Smith, 211–236. Boulder: Westview.

Schmidt, Vivien A. (2008). Discursive Institutionalism: The Explanatory Power of Ideas and Discourse. *Annual Review of Political Science* 11: 303–326.

Schmidt, Vivien A. (2010). Taking Ideas and Discourse Seriously: Explaining Change Through Discursive Institutionalism as the Fourth 'New Institutionalism'. *European Political Science Review* 2 (1): 1–25. https://doi.org/10.1017/S175577390999021X.

Schmidt, Vivien A. (2011). Speaking of Change: Why Discourse Is Key to the Dynamics of Policy Transformation. *Critical Policy Studies* 5 (July): 106–126. https://doi.org/10.1080/19460171.2011.576520.

Siddiki, Saba N.; Carboni, J. L.; Koski, C.; and Sadiq, A.-A. (2015). How Policy Rules Shape the Structure and Performance of Collaborative Governance Arrangements. *Public Administration Review* n/a-n/a. https://doi.org/10.1111/puar.12352.

Smith, A. (2000). Policy Networks and Advocacy Coalitions: Explaining Policy Change and Stability in UK Industrial Pollution Policy? *Environment and Planning C: Government and Policy* 18 (1): 95–114.

Weible, Christopher M.; Sabatier, Paul A.; and McQueen, Kelly. (2009). Themes and Variations: Taking Stock of the Advocacy Coalition Framework. *Policy Studies Journal* 37 (1, February): 121–140. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1541-0072.2008.00299.x

Wilder, Matt; and Howlett, M. (2015). Paradigm Construction and the Politics of Policy Anomalies. In *Policy Paradigms in Theory and Practice*, edited by John Hogan and Michael Howlett. Studies in the Political Economy of Public Policy. Basingstoke, UK: Palgrave Macmillan, 101–115.

Wood, R. S. (2006). The Dynamics of Incrementalism: Subsystems, Politics, and Public Lands. *Policy Studies Journal* 34 (1): 1–16.

Wurzel, R.; Zito, A.; and Jordan, A. (2013). *Environmental Governance in Europe: A Comparative Analysis of New Environmental Policy Instruments*. Cheltenham, UK: Edward Elgar.

PART IX

The Future of Policy Tools

39

THE FUTURE OF POLICY TOOLS

Past Trends and Current Directions

Sarah Giest, Ishani Mukherjee and Michael Howlett

The study of policy tools has been undertaken for several decades. It has isolated and examined many different types of tools utilized by governments over the course of history and scrutinized in detail how they are arranged into policy mixes or portfolios of tools. Recent developments in society and technology, however, have brought to the fore the possibility of using new or previously little-used tools such as platforms, co-production, and nudges, as well as data-driven techniques, such as big data and artificial intelligence. These are added to the toolbox governments have at their disposal when designing policy responses to both new and old problems. Like any other tool, however, each of these has its strengths and weaknesses. This chapter addresses the promises and pitfalls of these new tools and assesses the degree to which their deployment and effectiveness can be understood using the kinds of typologies and concepts developed to deal with more traditional policy instruments.

Introduction: The Tools Orientation in Policy Studies

Policymaking consists of matching solutions to problems, which, in a governance context, means matching policy tools to the goals governments would like to achieve while in office. Policy alternatives which policymakers consider in the process of arriving at their decisions are composed of different sets or combinations of these tools.

Policy tools are the subject of deliberation and activity at all stages of the policy-making process and affect both the agenda-setting and policy formulation processes as well as decision-making, policy implementation, and evaluation (Howlett, 2005; Howlett et al., 2020). Taken together, they comprise the contents of the toolbox from which governments must choose in building or creating public policy. Thus, as Linder and Peters (1990) noted, policy instruments are especially significant to policy design as they are the techniques or means through which states put their plans into action.

These tools generally fall into two types. Substantive implementation instruments are those used to directly affect the production, distribution, and consumption of goods and services in society. These include such well-known tools as state enterprises, regulatory agencies, and subsidies. Procedural implementation instruments, on the other hand, are aimed at and affect policy processes and deliberations (Ostrom, 1986; Howlett, 2000, 2005). These tools are an important

DOI: 10.4324/9781003163954-48

part of government activities aimed at altering policy interactions within policy subsystems, but, as Klijn et al. (1995) put it, they typically "structure . . . the game without determining its outcome" (p. 441). That is, unlike substantive tools, procedural tools affect the manner in which policymaking and implementation unfold without predetermining the results of those activities.

This distinction is apparent in common definitions of governing instruments, although its significance is sometimes overlooked. Vedung (1997), for example, defined policy instruments used in implementation activities as "the set of techniques by which governmental authorities wield their power in attempting to ensure support and effect social change" (p. 21). This definition thus includes both substantive tools – those Hood (1986) defined as attempting to "effect or detect" change in the socio-economic system – as well as procedural tools designed to "ensure support" for government actions.

Substantive instruments are expected to alter some aspects of the production, distribution, and delivery of goods and services in society. This is a large field of action since it extends not only to goods and services provided or affected by markets but also well beyond them to state or public provision and regulation, as well as those goods and services typically provided by family, community, non-profit, and voluntary means (Salamon, 1989, 2002).

The deployment of substantive instruments, for example, affects the following:

- Who produces a good or service – for example, via licensing, bureaucracy/procurement, or subsidies for new start-ups
- The types of goods and services produced – for example, through bans or limits or encouragement
- The quantity of goods or services provided – for example, via subsidies or quotas
- The quality of goods or services produced – for example, via product standards and warranties
- The methods of production – for example, via environmental standards or subsidies for modernization
- The conditions of production – for example, via health and safety standards, employment standards acts, minimum wage laws, and inspections
- The organization of production – for example, via unionization rules, antitrust or anti-combines legislation, securities legislation, or tax laws

The consumption and distribution effects are also manifold. Some examples of these are as follows:

- Prices of goods and services – such as regulated taxi fares or wartime rationing
- Actual distribution of produced goods and services – affecting the location and types of schools or hospitals and forest tenures or leases
- Level of consumer demand for specific goods – for example, through information release, nutritional and dangerous goods labelling (cigarettes), export and import taxes and bans, and similar activities
- Level of consumer demand in general – via interest rates and monetary and fiscal policies

Procedurally oriented implementation tools, on the other hand, affect production, consumption, and distribution processes only indirectly, if at all (Bingham et al., 2005). Rather, they affect the behaviour of the actors involved in formulating policies or how they are implemented. Just as substantive policy tools alter or affect the actions of citizens in the productive realm, so procedural tools affect and alter aspects of the policy-making behaviour itself (Knoke, 1993).

Some of the kinds of policy-making activities that can be affected by the use of procedural tools (Klijn et al., 1995; Goldsmith & Eggers, 2004; Klijn & Koppenjan, 2007) are as follows:

Changing actor policy positions
Setting down, defining, or refining actor positions
Adding actors to policy networks
Changing access rules for actors to governments and networks
Influencing network formation
Promoting network self-regulation
Modifying system-level policy parameters (e.g., levels of market reliance)
Changing the evaluative criteria for assessing policy outcomes, success, and failure
Influencing the payoff structure for policy actors
Influencing professional and other codes of conduct affecting policy actor behaviour
Regulating inter-actor policy conflict
Changing policy actors' interaction procedures
Certifying or sanctioning certain types of policy-relevant behaviours
Changing supervisory relations between actors

Studying Traditional Policy Tools

Many scholars have looked at various specific kinds of tools in the past and attempted to develop parsimonious ways of classifying them in order to ease the burden of their analysis and deployment. Cushman's (1941) study of regulatory agencies, for example, is often cited as one of the first efforts to systematically define the range of possible instruments which could be used in policy design.

Other efforts around the same time originated in the post–World War II planning exercises and reconstruction efforts undertaken by the United Nations and the Organization for Economic Co-operation and Development (OECD) in Europe, which looked at a wider range of tools typically used in the economic realm. Key figures in this research included Nobel Prize–winning development economists such as Jan Tinbergen and Etienne Sadi Kirschen, who published studies – including, notably, *Economic Policy in Our Times* (Kirschen et al., 1964) – dealing with the instruments for economic policy they had viewed in operation in the process of post-war European reconstruction. One of the first inventories of instruments was Kirschen's identification of well over 40 different types of implementation instruments then prevalent in European economic policy-making activities, ranging from public enterprises to various forms of government procurement, tax incentives, and subsidy schemes.

These studies were followed by many others examining the instruments prevalent in other areas such as banking and foreign policy (Hermann, 1982), adding to the list of tools, such as interest rate determination and other monetary and fiscal tools. Lowi (1966), in particular, developed the insights first put forward by scholars like Cushman (1941) that governments had only a small number of alternative choices in any given regulatory situation, depending on the amount of coercion they wished to employ in that situation, suggesting that this emphasis shifted over time as policy targets changed.

Further studies refined the idea of only a limited number of "governing resources" lying behind each tool. Hood (1986), for example, argued that governments use four resources to either effect changes in their environment or detect them: nodality, meaning the resource that existed simply by nature of the fact that governments existed at the "centre" of social and political networks but that can also be thought of as "information" or "knowledge"; authority; treasure; and organization (or "NATO" in Hood's terminology). In Hood's scheme, implementation

instruments are grouped together according to which of the NATO resources they most or primarily rely upon for their effectiveness, fully recognizing that most policies use some combination of these resources in practice (Anderson, 1977; Hood, 1986).

Hood's taxonomy proved useful in providing a limited number of clearly differentiated categories or types of instruments (see Table 39.1).

All the kinds of "traditional" substantive and procedural tools (Table 39.2) enumerated by Salamon (2002) can be placed into these categories, and many studies have examined each type of tool and why it has been utilized. These include traditional – more or less command-and-control-oriented – "substantive" policy tools, such as public enterprises, regulatory agencies, subsidies, and exhortation, and their "procedural" counterparts, such as government reorganizations, reviews and inquiries, government-NGO partnerships, and stakeholder consultations (Klijn & Teisman, 1991; Peters & Van Nispen, 1998).

New Directions in Tool Use and the Use of "New" Policy Tools

If and how government preferences among tools change over time and how new tools join the toolbox of government are two key questions in this field that bear upon any inquiry into the future of policy tools.

Patterns in the Use of Traditional Tools

In the case of substantive tools, over the past several decades, there has been a noticeable movement, in many sectors, away from the use of direct government instruments and public

Table 39.1 Hood's 1986 Taxonomy of Substantive Policy Instruments

		Governing resource			
		Nodality	*Authority*	*Treasure*	*Organization*
Principle Use	Detectors	Surveys	Licencing	Policing	Record keeping
	Effectors	Public information campaign	Regulation	Subsidies	Government agencies

Source: Adapted from Hood (1986)

Note: This analysis is easily extendable to procedural tools (Howlett, 2000).

Table 39.2 A Resource-Based Taxonomy of Procedural and Substantive Policy Instruments

		Governing Resource			
Purpose of Tool		Information	Authority	Treasure	Organization
	Substantive	Public information campaign	Independent regulatory agencies	Subsidies and grants	Public enterprises
	Procedural	Official secrets acts	Administrative advisory committees	Interest group funding	Government reorganizations

Source: Adapted from Howlett (2000), based on Hood (1986)

enterprises and towards the use of more indirect means of goods and services delivery, such as partnerships, special operating agencies, and quangos, among others. Public enterprises, for example, have grown dramatically in many countries, both in the developed world in association with war efforts and in developing countries as a function of decolonization and drives toward economic development (Howlett & Ramesh, 2020). The spread of privatization in almost every country between 1970 and 2000 undermined the use of this tool (Kamerman & Kahn, 1989; Suleiman & Waterbury, 1990).

However, this movement should not lead us to underestimate the resilience and continued presence of traditional direct government tools, especially line departments, which remain the backbone of most policy sectors (Aucoin, 1997). Thus, in the case of public enterprises, for example, it must be recalled that the term *privatization* carries at least two different, albeit related, meanings (Starr, 1989, 1990a, 1990b). In one common usage, the term is sometimes inaccurately used as a shorthand reference for general efforts made in many countries in the 1980s and 1990s to reduce the scale or scope of government. In the second sense, however, privatization refers only to those very specific efforts made by the state to replace organizational instruments based on government ownership with those based on more indirect control – like independent regulatory commissions – which are much more limited in character and effect and do not necessarily entail a shift towards a wholly new governance mode.

It is true, though, that over the same period, many regulatory activities did change in character, having been abolished or shifted from "enforcement" to "compliance" regimes in a parallel process of "deregulation" (Derthick & Quirk, 1985). With respect to authoritative substantive instruments, the traditional direct and indirect regulatory mechanisms, which were a feature of implementation in many countries, were augmented throughout the 1970s and 1980s by efforts to promote more voluntary regulatory regimes in a wide variety of issue areas, from environmental protection to transportation and food safety. This deregulatory movement was offset in many jurisdictions and sectors in more recent decades, however, by return to direct or indirect regulation through re-regulation of areas such as telecommunications, water, and energy in many countries (Majone, 1997; Ramesh & Howlett, 2006).

There have also been some interesting developments in the patterns of use found in the use of traditional treasury instruments in recent decades. In the area of financial tools, changes in policy design have been more unidirectional, with most countries seeing a cross-sectoral government-wide shift in recent years from an emphasis on the use of more visible subsidies – to alter the behaviour of firms and consumers in the marketplace – to a preference in many sectors for less visible forms of tax- and royalty-based expenditures. While most economic theories push for visible taxes and incentives in order to promote "rational" information-driven social and economic behaviour, the reality in most countries has been a trend towards more and more hidden financial tools, especially tax-based ones. These are much more difficult to trace and quantify and, hence, protect the disbursing governments from charges of favouritism or other market-distorting practices (Howard, 1993, 1997).

And it is also now very much a matter of course for information campaigns to accompany all new government initiatives. Information dissemination remains relatively low cost in terms of financial and personnel outlays, and efforts in this area are often thought to be highly cost effective and, thus, preferable to other, more expensive tools (John, 2013). But compliance with government urgings is a major issue and, as in all advertising (Pepsi, Coke, etc.), evaluating the impact of these campaigns is very uncertain. Consumers may not pay attention to information provided by, for example, nutritional or ecolabels or may become inured to messages repeated too often (Howells, 2005). Effective campaigns can also take some time to get started and evoke any behavioural responses, while frowned-upon behaviour – such as smoking or overeating – can

revert back to old habits and patterns once a campaign stops. Or, where too much information is provided ("information overload"), the target audience may stop listening, also leading to diminishing returns over time (Bougherara et al., 2007). Thus, while inexpensive, comparatively speaking, the political risks to the government in using this tool may be high (Young, 2007).

With respect to procedural instruments, there has also been substantial growth in the use of consultative forums and mechanisms in many sectors and countries over the past several decades. This extends from the increased use of public hearings to the increased creation (and regulation) of advisory committees (Brown, 1955; Smith, 1977). In many countries as well, institutionalized forms of citizen involvement in policymaking have attempted to replace agenda-setting and policy influence by only those actors intimately involved in a project or programme ("special interests") with a process in which "outsiders" as well as "insiders" could promote new and alternative perspectives on these issues (Pierre, 1998).

On the procedural financial tool front, there is not a great deal of information available from which to judge, but a pattern in many countries and sectors has been the increased use of such tools over the past 30 years in an effort to enhance and control the operation of interest articulation and aggregation systems in many sectors. Many groups receive direct funding from governments while others are funded indirectly through tax systems which allow, for example, transfer of funds to non-profit and charitable groups either directly or through foundations and other similar mechanisms (Fraussen & Halpin, 2016; Wood & Hagerman, 2010).

There are risks involved in such activities, though, since outside funding promotes oligarchy or formalization in voluntary associations and can lead to discontent both among "co-opted" group memberships as well as from groups which do not receive funding (Lowndes & Skelcher, 1998; Smith, 2005). Ideological predispositions toward "free association" in deliberative democratic practices, too, are jeopardized by government manipulation of interest articulation systems, which can lead to further difficulties for governments that engage in this practice in a substantial way. As a result, many such developments and tool deployments have been hidden in the tax system or deployed somewhat irregularly (Pal, 1995).

Finally, in the area of information-based procedural tools, not only has the propensity for governments to undertake large-scale public information campaigns accelerated, as discussed earlier, but so has their use of devices such as surveys and other techniques for monitoring populations and the effort to render policy processes more transparent through the use of freedom of information and lobbying legislation, among others. However, an earlier generation's efforts to enhance information access for the public has been somewhat curtailed by the post-9/11 environment of enhanced security and state secrecy.

The Emergence and Use of New Tools

Thus, the pattern of use of traditional substantive and procedural tools has been a mixed one, with a general tendency towards the use of less direct government interventions, a decided increase in the use of information-based tools, and a corresponding decrease in direct government instruments. The strength of such movements has often been overstated; however, governments of all types continue to deploy many kinds of tools in an effort to achieve their goals.

A key area in contemporary tools research, however, beyond monitoring how patterns in the use of traditional tools have evolved, concerns the analysis and inclusion in contemporary policy designs of new – or, at least, apparently new – kinds of tools (Hood & Margetts, 2007).

Most notable in the present era are concerns for a better understanding of the deployment, design, and operation of "digital tools" that utilize, for example, artificial intelligence (AI) as well as other kinds of "collaborative" tools and platforms such as crowdsourcing, co-production, and

social media and a new set of "behavioural" instruments, including the use of defaults and other tools derived from the insights of research in behavioural economics. The latter include a variety of tools designed to affect the automatic cognitive system in humans and "nudge" them towards behaviours that are in their "best interests" (Thaler & Sunstein, 2009; Thaler et al., 2010).

New Digital Tools

Digital policy tools can be understood in two ways: tools that are themselves of a digital nature and tools enabling or prohibiting technology use and data collection. The former category includes instruments that utilize technologies and new volumes or types of data to pursue policy goals – for example, the use of social media platforms (Liu, 2017; Taeihagh, 2017) to organize delivery of services through crowdsourcing and other "co-production" procedures (Pestoff, 2006; Pestoff et al., 2006).

This includes the digitization of the back-office work processes of bureaucrats, which is a powerful procedural tool. Street-level bureaucrats' work has changed considerably because of digitization and automation, and many tasks traditionally conducted by bureaucrats are now carried out by computers (Bovens & Zouridis, 2002). Bureaucracies are further using digital systems to make routine decisions and, at times, replace bureaucrats altogether, not just in record keeping and other kinds of clerical tasks but also in decision-making and regulation, among others (Snellen, 2002). Numerous governmental organizations have already implemented AI technologies to support their processes, for example, for anomaly detection in the context of focusing on the identification of most likely tax evaders or criminal recidivists (Bullock, 2019).

These tools can be labelled digitally enabled policy instruments (Clarke & Craft, 2017). Another way to look at digital tools is to focus on instruments that enable or prohibit certain technologies or data collection. This idea encompasses creating (or limiting) demand for various technologies through regulation and conducting and supporting R&D activities, as well as facilitating data-sharing practices (Taylor et al., 2009). This is also where we often see a complex mix or layering of instruments due to existing regulations and requirements for new or updated tools for data collection or sharing practices. Smart meters, as tools to change energy consumption behaviour, are a good example of such tools because they are usually deployed by private stakeholders (energy companies) but rely heavily on the public (data) infrastructure regulated by the government. If data regulation is not updated (in time), technology development might be delayed, limiting the nudge effect of smart meters (Giest, 2019).

Ultimately, both understandings of digital tools are linked and add to the repertoire of tools available to the government to include in policy mixes. They blend into each other when, for example, new (social media) data is used to enhance public data used for service delivery. Here, governments utilize new data to potentially sharpen existing instruments while also having to think about how data sharing practices are regulated and how to collaborate with private stakeholders.

It is often the case, however, that not entirely new instruments appear, but rather the salience of certain existing kinds of policy tools changes as new possibilities for mixes are created when more data and the possibility of enhanced collaborative efforts with private stakeholders, for example, is more prevalent (Hood & Margetts, 2007). Thus, the automatic prominence of information in the digital process changes the supply of information available to be deployed as part of policy design, and the nature of the information and data resources to be brokered and consumed by political staff, elected officials, and citizens (Craft & Howlett, 2013).

For some instruments, digital twins of "analog" instruments are created. In the citizen-interaction space, this can be seen in the differences that exist between offline and online uses

of certain tools. In the offline environment, for example, it is recognized that participatory processes are often dominated by the "'usual suspects,' people who are easily recruited, vocal, and reasonably comfortable in public arenas" (Bryson et al., 2013, p. 29). Digital participation opportunities, however, open up the playing field to the less vocal members of society since the setting is less immediate and confrontational and more easily accessible than offline participation. At the same time, research points out that "internet use increasingly reflects known social, economic, and cultural relationships present in the offline world, including inequalities" (Van Deursen & Van Dijk, 2014, p. 521) and thus, to a certain extent, at least has been trending towards a mirroring of offline consultation, albeit on a far larger scale. Thus, it is possible that online platforms will only strengthen the participation of people who are readily motivated to participate through other channels without being truly more inclusive (Clark et al., 2013; Van den Berg et al., 2020). A prominent idea in this setting is that of "government as a platform." In the policy tools context, the potential for platform-like settings is largely seen in service toolkits, in which different government departments tap into the same set of instruments without additional procurement (Ansell & Miura, 2020).

Collaborative Tools

A second set of "new" tools exists in the large number of collaborative tools and mechanisms which have emerged, including the digital ones highlighted earlier. The use of tools to promote collaboration and co-production is another growing area which has received very little treatment in the policy instruments literature until recently. These range from using disability and elderly support organizations to provide services to these populations ("co-production") as well as other activities such as the use of non-governmental "stewardship" councils to provide a basic framework of regulation ("best practices"), as occurs with groups such as the Forest Stewardship Council with respect to logging activities, the Marine Stewardship Council with respect to the fisheries, and many others (Ansell & Gash, 2008).

Co-production emerged as a concept that emphasized citizens' engagement in policy design and delivery, but its meaning has evolved to include a broader set of political-societal relations, including collaboration with civil society groups and non-profit organizations (Pestoff & Brandsen, 2009). This broader definition of co-production, which includes individual (e.g., citizens and quasi-professionals) and organizational levels (citizen groups, associations, and non-profit organizations) of collaboration with government agencies is now common, but its implications for policy design and implementation are not well understood.

Many of these "collaborative" governance arrangements have evaded detailed scrutiny from a tools perspective and are often prescribed without knowing exactly (1) what they are and (2) under what conditions they are likely to succeed or fail (Howlett & Ramesh, 2016). Although often promoted as solutions to many policy and governance challenges, an a priori preference for collaboration has little evidence of improved policy outcomes supporting it (Williams et al., 2020).

The use and abuse of such arrangements thus require better analysis. Unfortunately, poor definitions and poor theorization plague many accounts of collaboration in which otherwise dissimilar governance efforts are often clumped under the same rubric and their nuances and differences ignored. For example, Brandsen and Honingh (2016) have aimed to capture the range of distinctions within the concept of co-production by identifying "two variables along which different types of co-production can be distinguished: the extent to which citizens design services delivered to them and the proximity of co-production to the primary process" (p. 7), allowing for distinctions to be drawn based on whether communities are involved in the design

and/or implementation of policy. However, the authors highlight the immense diversity of co-production possibilities while noting that this is fundamentally driven by the diversity of governance contexts – meaning deployment of such tools and any evaluation of their impact are challenging to compare conclusively.

Behavioural Tools

A third set of tools which has received a great deal of attention of late is composed of those behavioural modifications premised on the deployment of the insights of behavioural economics and psychology. This is especially the case with the notion of "nudges," which has gained much traction within policymaking in recent times (Dolan & Galizzi, 2015), including the idea of designing better "choice architectures" (Sunstein, 2014).

Sunstein (2014) has identified ten important nudge types which combine traditional procedural and substantive tools in sometimes new ways. These include (1) default rules; (2) simplification; (3) use of social norms; (4) increase in ease and convenience; (5) disclosure; (6) warnings, graphic or otherwise; (7) pre-commitment strategies; (8) reminders; (9) eliciting implementation intentions, and (10) informing people of the nature and consequences of their own past choices.

Most of these are variations on previous efforts to alter public and individual behaviour through information provision, although with a decidedly less conscious or "rational" bent. That is, many of these efforts are geared towards the use of what has been termed "system 1" thinking, which is the less cognitive and more automatic or reflexive mode of thinking compared to the more conscious "system 2" mode (Kahneman, 2013).

Underpinning this distinction is a conception that policy targets employ heuristics or mental "shortcuts" in their decision making based on "system 1" thinking, which may not always correspond with their individual or society's welfare (e.g., in terms of road safety or better use of public transport). Instead of relying on explicit incentives or direct coercion, which appeal to "system 2" thinking, the use of behavioural insights as policy tools involves indirectly affecting the situation within which individuals make publicly relevant decisions, such that when they employ their familiar heuristics (system 1), the most visible or easiest decision option for policy targets to take is one that is more welfare promoting, whether this is realized or not. Examples include signs pointing to the stairs rather than the escalators in subways to promote exercise, or, for example, using different-coloured seats in public trains to signal commuters to relinquish them to those more in need (Moseley, 2020).

Such tools have received a great deal of attention from policy and behavioural labs and have been deployed by many governments in recent years, albeit often with less than the expected impact on target behaviour, a phenomenon which has itself become the subject of research (Reynolds et al., 2019; Schubert, 2017; Sunstein, 2017). This literature has found that nudges are rarely stand-alone instruments being implemented. Instead, they are situated in a larger implementation context that includes existing regulations as well as potentially counteracting nudges by private stakeholders (Ekhardt & Wieding, 2016).

Academics agree that more work is needed on devising supporting policy tools for nudges, which can help enhance cognitive and deliberative capacities (often called "boosts"), or rely on more reflection on the part of policy targets rather than simply responding to heuristic triggers (Hertwig, 2017). To address the complexity of nudges being implemented by third parties that potentially serve or counteract policy goals, the idea of "budging" has been increasingly prominent in the public administration and policy literature (Oliver, 2015). It captures the need to look at the regulatory and market structures that affect nudge implementation.

Conclusion: Overall Patterns and Trends in New and Old Policy Tool Use – Less Movement Than Meets the Eye?

As this discussion has shown, the patterns of tool use in contemporary policy design are much more varied than might initially be surmised. The general picture provided here, however, in terms of measures of government involvement in specific tool choices and policy designs, is of a number of discernible shifts. As Hood et al. (1999) and Majone (1997) have argued in the European case, for example, "modern states are placing more emphasis on the use of authority, rules[,] and standard-setting, partially displacing an earlier emphasis on public ownership, public subsidies, and directly provided services."

These trends, however, are much less dramatic than is often suggested, and the same is true of the deployment of the three categories of "new" policy tools cited earlier. New policy tool use must be compatible with previously existing governance modes if they are to survive the formulation process and be implemented successfully. For example, while nudging has gained the reputation of an integral new addition to modern policy toolkits, the academic discourse surrounding its contribution as a distinctly novel set of policy tools has yet to find agreement on why some nudges "work" while others do not.

Furthermore, this category of instruments relies significantly on the concurrent formulation of supporting regulatory measures and alignment with existing institutional contexts conducive to their enactment (Giest, 2020; Kuehnhanss, 2019; Lepenies & Małecka, 2015). Thus, as Moseley (2020) has noted, the current policy instrument scholarship is still rife with debate regarding the ethical dimensions of nudging, despite "flourishing research on the efficacy, public acceptability, merits[,] and limitations of this approach within public policy" (p. 21).

Similar arguments have been raised for other novel digital and collaborative categories of policy instruments. That is, in these instances, the process of formulation also remains constrained by existing policy legacies and prevalent policy styles or preferences that determine the extent of government proclivity for adopting any tool, including new ones (Howlett & Tosun, 2018).

The context within which contemporary policy instruments are formulated and implemented can greatly determine how radically different or novel they are (Mavrot et al., 2019). Thus, the literature on policy design and modern policy formulation has reiterated time and again how most policy choices linked with policy instruments take place through the incremental calibration of existing policy elements or the layering of new policy instruments on existing toolkits (Capano, 2019; Howlett & Rayner, 2007).

New and transformative trajectories for policy instruments are significantly bound and dependent on how "any new policy attempts can navigate pre-existing policies and find ways to create a productive layering of existing and new policies" (Schot & Steinmueller, 2018, p. 1563). Howlett and Rayner (2007) have further argued that the enactment of new policy programs rests heavily on governance processes linked with incremental policy learning, positive feedback mechanisms, sunk costs, and increasing returns within policy systems. This is especially the case as the potential "fit" or suitability of adding any new tools to an existing mix is dependent on maintaining coherence and consistency with active policy portfolios (Kern & Howlett, 2009).

In addition to these more contextual constraints, there are also concerns about the capacity of government to understand and properly utilize novel instruments. Deploying behavioural and digital tools, for example, requires extensive knowledge of the existing evidence on human behaviour in specific contexts and how it might be changed. Digital instrument development, in particular, requires the allocation of resources to review available processes and integrate them with new tools and techniques (Dunleavy et al., 2006; Giest & Mukherjee, 2018; Mont et al., 2014). Research increasingly shows that "governments lack the expertise to match big data to

draw on a broader foundation for designing some of these instruments in conjunction with traditional measures," a finding that has wide-ranging effects in different policy sectors, such as the development of "digital welfare systems" (Giest & Mukherjee, 2018, p. 362; Yeung, 2018).

Nevertheless, at a time of significant and visible transitions in many policy sectors, there has been a surge of interest in understanding the formulation of these new tools and how they can contribute alongside the more traditional tools in the development of innovative policy mixes to support government policies and achieve government goals during these transitions. Better understanding and designing policy portfolios to deal with these developments requires equal consideration for both the conditions that lead to effective implementation of traditional policy tools and programs, as well as more detailed knowledge of the strengths and weaknesses and advantages and disadvantages of the new ones.

References

Anderson, C. W. (1977). *Statecraft: An introduction to political choice and judgement*. New York: John Wiley & Sons.

Ansell, C., & Gash, A. (2008). Collaborative governance in theory and practice. *Journal of Public Administration Research and Theory*, 18(4), 543–571.

Ansell, C., & Miura, S. (2020). Can the power of platforms be harnessed for governance? *Public Administration*, 98(1), 261–276.

Aucoin, P. (1997). The design of public organizations for the 21st century: Why bureaucracy will survive in public management. *Canadian Public Administration*, 40(2), 290–306.

Bingham, L. B., Nabatchi, T., & O'Leary, R. (2005). The new governance: Practices and processes for stakeholder and citizen participation in the work of government. *Public Administration Review*, 65(5), 547–558.

Bougherara, D., Grolleau, G., & Mzoughi, N. (2007). Is more information always better? An analysis applied to information-based policies for environmental protection. *International Journal of Sustainable Development*, 10(3), 197–213.

Bovens, M., & Zouridis, S. (2002). From street-level to system-level bureaucracies: How information and communication technology is transforming administrative discretion and constitutional control. *Public Administration Review*, 62(2), 174–184.

Brandsen, T., & Honingh, M. (2016). Distinguishing different types of coproduction: A conceptual analysis based on the classical definitions. *Public Administration Review*, 76(3), 427–435.

Brown, D. S. (1955). The public advisory board as an instrument of government. *Public Administration Review*, 15(3), 196–204.

Bryson, J. M., Quick, K. S., Slotterback, C. S., & Crosby, B. C. (2013). Designing public participation processes. *Public Administration Review*, 73(1), 23–34.

Bullock, J. B. (2019). Artificial intelligence, discretion, and bureaucracy. *The American Review of Public Administration*, 49(7), 751–761.

Capano, G. (2019). Reconceptualizing layering: From mode of institutional change to mode of institutional design: Types and outputs. *Public Administration*, 97(3), 590–604.

Clark, B. Y., Brudney, J. L., & Jang, S. G. (2013). Coproduction of government services and the new information technology: Investigating the distributional biases. *Public Administration Review*, 73(5), 687–701.

Clarke, A., & Craft, J. (2017). The vestiges and vanguards of policy design in a digital context. *Canadian Public Administration*, 60(4), 476–497.

Craft, J., & Howlett, M. (2013). Policy advisory systems and evidence-based policy: The location and content of evidentiary policy advice. In S. P. Young (Ed.), *Evidence-based policy-making in Canada* (pp. 27–44). Toronto: University of Toronto Press.

Cushman, R. E. (1941). *The independent regulatory commissions*. New York: Oxford University Press.

Derthick, M., & Quirk, P. J. (1985). *The politics of deregulation*. Washington, DC: Brookings Institution.

Dolan, P., & Galizzi, M. M. (2015). Like ripples on a pond: Behavioral spillovers and their implications for research and policy. *Journal of Economic Psychology*, 47, 1–16.

Dunleavy, P., Margetts, H., Bastow, S., & Tinkler, J. (2006). *Digital era governance: IT corporations, the state, and e-government*. New York: Oxford University Press.

Ekhardt, F., & Wieding, J. (2016). Nudging and environmental law. In K. Mathis & A. Tor (Eds.), *Nudging: Possibilities, limitations and applications in European law and economics* (pp. 247–262). Cham: Springer.

Fraussen, B., & Halpin, D. (2016). Assessing the composition and diversity of the Australian interest group system. *Australian Journal of Public Administration*, 75(4), 476–491.

Giest, S. (2019). Making energy personal: Policy coordination challenges in UK smart meter implementation. *Journal of Public Policy*, 1–20.

Giest, S. (2020). Do nudgers need budging? A comparative analysis of European smart meter implementation. *Government Information Quarterly*, 37(4), 101498.

Giest, S., & Mukherjee, I. (2018). Behavioral instruments in renewable energy and the role of big data: A policy perspective. *Energy Policy*, 123, 360–366.

Goldsmith, S., & Eggers, W. D. (2004). *Governing by network: The new shape of the public sector*. Washington, DC: The Brookings Institution.

Hermann, C. F. (1982). Instruments of foreign policy. In P. Callahan, L. P. Brady, & M. G. Hermann (Eds.), *Describing foreign policy behaviour* (pp. 153–174). Beverly Hills, CA: Sage.

Hertwig, R. (2017). When to consider boosting: Some rules for policy-makers. *Behavioural Public Policy*, 1(2), 143–161.

Hood, C. (1986). *The tools of government*. Chatham: Chatham House Publishers.

Hood, C., & Margetts, H. (2007). *The tools of government in the digital age*. Basingstoke: Palgrave Macmillan.

Hood, C., Rothstein, H., Baldwin, R., Rees, J., & Spackman, M. (1999). Where risk society meets the regulatory state: Exploring variations in risk regulation regimes. *Risk Management*, 1(1), 21–34.

Howard, C. (1993). The hidden side of the American welfare state. *Political Science Quarterly*, 108(3), 403–436.

Howard, C. (1997). *The hidden welfare state: Tax expenditures and social policy in the United States*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press.

Howells, G. (2005). The potential and limits of consumer empowerment by information. *Journal of Law and Society*, 32(3), 349–370.

Howlett, M. (2000). Managing the "hollow state": Procedural policy instruments and modern governance. *Canadian Public Administration*, 43(4), 412–431.

Howlett, M. (2005). What is a policy instrument? Policy tools, policy mixes and policy implementation styles. In P. Eliadis, M. Hill, & M. Howlett (Eds.), *Designing government: From instruments to governance* (pp. 31–50). Montreal: McGill-Queen's University Press.

Howlett, M., & Ramesh, M. (2016). Achilles' heels of governance: Critical capacity deficits and their role in governance failures. *Regulation & Governance*, 10(4), 301–313.

Howlett, M., & Ramesh, M. (2020). State-owned enterprises as policy tools. In L. Bernier, P. Bance, & M. Florio (Eds.), *The Routledge handbook of state-owned enterprises* (pp. 553–567). New York: Routledge.

Howlett, M., Ramesh, M., & Perl, A. (2020). *Studying public policy: Principles and processes* (4th ed.). Don Mills: Oxford University Press.

Howlett, M., & Rayner, J. (2007). Design principles for policy mixes: Cohesion and coherence in "new governance arrangements". *Policy and Society*, 26(4), 1–18.

Howlett, M., & Tosun, J. (2018). *Policy styles and policy-making: Exploring the linkages*. Abingdon, UK: Routledge.

John, P. (2013). All tools are informational now: How information and persuasion define the tools of government. *Policy & Politics*, 41(4), 605–620.

Kahneman, D. (2013). *Thinking, fast and slow*. New York: Farrar, Straus and Giroux.

Kamerman, S. B., & Kahn, A. J. (Eds.). (1989). *Privatization and the welfare state*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press.

Kern, F., & Howlett, M. (2009). Implementing transition management as policy reforms: A case study of the Dutch energy sector. *Policy Sciences*, 42(4), 391–408.

Kirschen, E. S., Benard, J., Besters, H., Blackaby, F., Eckstein, O., Faaland, J., Hartog, F., Morissens, L., & Tosco, E. (1964). *Economic policy in our time*. Chicago: Rand McNally.

Klijn, E. H., & Koppenjan, J. F. M. (2007). Governing policy networks. In G. Morcol (Ed.), *Handbook of decision making* (pp. 169–187). New York: CRC Taylor and Francis.

Klijn, E. H., Koppenjan, J., & Termeer, K. (1995). Managing networks in the public sector: A theoretical study of management strategies in policy networks. *Public Administration*, 73(3), 437–454.

Klijn, E. H., & Teisman, G. R. (1991). Effective policy making in a multi-actor setting: Networks and steering. In R. J. In 't Veld, L. Schaap, C. J. A. M. Termeer, & M. J. W. Van Twist (Eds.), *Autopoiesis and configuration theory: New approaches to societal steering* (pp. 99–111). Dordrecht: Kluwer.

Knoke, D. (1993). Networks as political glue: Explaining public policy-making. In W. J. Wilson (Ed.), *Sociology and the public agenda* (pp. 164–184). Newbury Park, CA: Sage.

Kuehnhanss, C. R. (2019). The challenges of behavioural insights for effective policy design. *Policy and Society*, 38(1), 14–40.

Lepenies, R., & Małecka, M. (2015). The institutional consequences of nudging: Nudges, politics, and the law. *Review of Philosophy and Psychology*, 6(3), 427–437.

Linder, S. H., & Peters, B. G. (1990). Policy formulation and the challenge of conscious design. *Evaluation and Program Planning*, 13(3), 303–311.

Liu, H. K. (2017). Crowdsourcing government: Lessons from multiple disciplines. *Public Administration Review*, 77(5), 656–667.

Lowi, T. J. (1966). Distribution, regulation, redistribution: The functions of government. In R. B. Ripley (Ed.), *Public policies and their politics: Techniques of government control* (pp. 27–40). New York: W. W. Norton.

Lowndes, V., & Skelcher, C. (1998). The dynamics of multi-organizational partnerships: An analysis of changing modes of governance. *Public Administration*, 76(2), 313–333.

Majone, G. (1997). From the positive to the regulatory state: Causes and consequences of changes in the mode of governance. *Journal of Public Policy*, 17(2), 139–167.

Mavrot, C., Hadorn, S., & Sager, F. (2019). Mapping the mix: Linking instruments, settings and target groups in the study of policy mixes. *Research Policy*, 48(10), 103614.

Mont, O., Lehner, M., & Heiskanen, E. (2014). *Nudging: A tool for sustainable behavior?* (Report No. 6643). Stockholm: Swedish Environmental Protection Agency.

Moseley, A. (2020). Nudging in public policy. In *Oxford research encyclopedia of politics*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.

Oliver, A. (2015). Nudging, shoving, and budging: Behavioural economic-informed policy. *Public Administration*, 93(3), 700–714.

Ostrom, E. (1986). A method of institutional analysis. In F. X. Kaufmann, G. Majone, & V. Ostrom (Eds.), *Guidance, control and evaluation in the public sector* (pp. 459–475). Berlin: De Gruyter.

Pal, L. A. (1995). *Interests of state: The politics of language, multiculturalism, and feminism in Canada*. Montreal: McGill-Queen's University Press.

Pestoff, V. (2006). Citizens and co-production of welfare services. *Public Management Review*, 8(4), 503–519.

Pestoff, V., & Brandsen, T. (2009). Public governance and the third sector: Opportunities for co-production and innovation? Nijmegen: Radboud University.

Pestoff, V., Osborne, S. P., & Brandsen, T. (2006). Patterns of co-production in public services. *Public Management Review*, 8(4), 591–595.

Peters, B. G., & Van Nispen, F. K. M. (Eds.). (1998). *Public policy instruments: Evaluating the tools of public administration*. New York: Edward Elgar.

Pierre, J. (1998). Public consultation and citizen participation: Dilemmas of policy advice. In B. G. Peters & D. J. Savoie (Eds.), *Taking stock: Assessing public sector reforms* (pp. 137–163). Montreal: McGill-Queen's University Press.

Ramesh, M., & Howlett, M. (Eds.). (2006). *Deregulation and its discontents: Rewriting the rules in Asia*. Aldershot: Edward Elgar.

Reynolds, J. P., Archer, S., Pilling, M., Kenny, M., Hollands, G. J., & Marteau, T. M. (2019). Public acceptability of nudging and taxing to reduce consumption of alcohol, tobacco, and food: A population-based survey experiment. *Social Science & Medicine*, 236, 112395.

Salamon, L. M. (Ed.). (1989). *Beyond privatization: The tools of government action*. Washington, DC: Urban Institute.

Salamon, L. M. (Ed.). (2002). *The tools of government: A guide to the new governance*. New York: Oxford University Press.

Schot, J., & Steinmueller, W. E. (2018). Three frames for innovation policy: R&D, systems of innovation and transformative change. *Research Policy*, 47(9), 1554–1567.

Schubert, C. (2017). Green nudges: Do they work? Are they ethical? *Ecological Economics*, 132, 329–342.

Smith, M. (2005). Diversity and identity in the non-profit sector: Lessons from LGBT organizing in Toronto. *Social Policy & Administration*, 39(5), 463–480.

Smith, T. B. (1977). Advisory committees in the public policy process. *International Review of Administrative Sciences*, 43(2), 153–166.

Snellen, I. (2002). Electronic governance: Implications for citizens, politicians and public servants. *International Review of Administrative Sciences*, 68(2), 183–198.

Starr, P. (1989). The meaning of privatization. In S. B. Kamerman & A. J. Kahn (Eds.), *Privatization and the welfare state* (pp. 15–48). Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press.

Starr, P. (1990a). The limits of privatization. In D. J. Gayle & J. N. Goodrich (Eds.), *Privatization and deregulation in global perspective* (pp. 109–125). New York: Quorum Books.

Starr, P. (1990b). The new life of the liberal state: Privatization and the restructuring of state-society relations. In E. N. Suleiman & J. Waterbury (Eds.), *The political economy of public sector reform and privatization* (pp. 22–54). Boulder, CO: Westview Press.

Suleiman, E. N., & Waterbury, J. (Eds.). (1990). *The political economy of public sector reform and privatization*. Boulder, CO: Westview Press.

Sunstein, C. R. (2014). Nudging: A very short guide. *Journal of Consumer Policy*, 37(4), 583–588.

Sunstein, C. R. (2017). Nudges that fail. *Behavioural Public Policy*, 1(1), 4–25.

Taeihagh, A. (2017). Crowdsourcing: A new tool for policy-making? *Policy Sciences*, 50(4), 629–647.

Taylor, J. A., Lips, M., & Organ, J. (2009). Identification practices in government: Citizen surveillance and the quest for public service improvement. *Identity in the Information Society*, 1(1), 135–154.

Thaler, R. H., & Sunstein, C. R. (2009). *Nudge: Improving decisions about health, wealth, and happiness*. New York: Penguin Books.

Thaler, R. H., Sunstein, C. R., & Balz, J. P. (2010). *Choice architecture* (SSRN Scholarly Paper No. ID 1583509). Rochester, NY: Social Science Research Network.

Van den Berg, C., Howlett, M., Migone, A., Howard, M., Pemer, F., & Gunter, H. M. (2020). *Policy consultancy in comparative perspective: Patterns, nuances and implications of the contractor state*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Van Deursen, A. J., & Van Dijk, J. A. (2014). The digital divide shifts to differences in usage. *New Media & Society*, 16(3), 507–526.

Vedung, E. (1997). Policy instruments: Typologies and theories. In M. L. Bemelmans-Videc, R. C. Rist, & E. Vedung (Eds.), *Carrots, sticks and sermons: Policy instruments and their evaluation* (pp. 21–58). New Brunswick, NJ: Transaction Publishers.

Williams, O., Sarre, S., Papoulias, S. C., Knowles, S., Robert, G., Beresford, P., Rose, D., Carr, S., Kaur, M., & Palmer, V. J. (2020). Lost in the shadows: Reflections on the dark side of co-production. *Health Research Policy and Systems*, 18, 43.

Wood, D., & Hagerman, L. (2010). Mission investing and the philanthropic toolbox. *Policy and Society*, 29(3), 257–268.

Yeung, K. (2018). Algorithmic regulation: A critical interrogation. *Regulation & Governance*, 12(4), 505–523.

Young, S. (2007). The regulation of government advertising in Australia: The politicisation of a public policy issue. *Australian Journal of Public Administration*, 66(4), 438–452.

40

COLLABORATION AS THE FUTURE OF ORGANIZATIONAL TOOLS

Anka Kekez

The growing intensity and complexity of challenges facing the world today – from climate change and pandemics to widespread inequality and radicalization – have spurred reforms of policy instruments across the globe. While in the case of procedural policy tools, reforms have induced rather comprehensive changes from bureaucracy based toward various combinations of soft steering tools, transformation of substantive instruments preferences has led to the expansion of organization-based subtypes to include joint efforts of public, private, and community actors. As a result, contemporary practice of policy implementation and public service delivery is increasingly marked with the widespread reliance on co-production, co-management, relational contracting, and other organizational arrangements based on or augmented by the collaboration. By using an integrated policy and management lens, the chapter brings collaborative implementation tools into sharper focus and systematically reviews their scope and innate features as well as their capabilities and constrains to act as a solution to a wide variety of modern policy and governance challenges.

Introduction

Growing intensity and complexity of challenges facing the world today – from pandemics and climate crises to widespread inequality, extreme poverty, and migration – has spurred reforms of public policies across the globe. The need to find more effective, more inclusive but also more efficient and sustainable solutions to societal problems has been particularly pertinent with respect to policy implementation tools as they provide means which turn plans into action (Linder and Peters 1990; Howlett, Ramesh, and Perl 2020). Thus, over the past several decades, many new substantive and procedural types of tools have been created, and many of those already used were transformed or combined in new policy mixes.

In the case of procedural policy tools, ways in which they affect policy-making and implementation processes have proliferated in order to enable participation of wider sets of actors and softer steering of policy-relevant behaviour (Howlett, Mukherjee, and Giest 2020). While actors' involvement in policy process has been fostered by means of consultative forums, advisory committees, and similar participatory mechanisms, coordination of policy-related activities has been modernised through an increased use of advanced analytical or digital devices or with the application of soft management mechanisms (Lang 2019; Howlett 2019; Clarke and Craft 2017).

DOI: 10.4324/9781003163954-49

The general tendency toward application of less direct government tools has also marked development of substantive implementation tools. The arrangements in which these tools are used to directly affect production, distribution, and delivery of goods and services in the society have, thus, expanded to include joint efforts of public, private, and community actors (Howlett, Mukherjee, and Giest 2020). The movement away from primarily state-based intervention towards tools based on resources owned by public and private, non-profit, and community actors has been most strikingly vivid within the organisational types of substantive instruments. Inspired by different models of public sector reforms, in-house service delivery, public enterprises, and other traditional organisational instruments in many policy areas have been offset by tools based on diverse arrangements with external providers (Howlett, Kekez, and Poocharoen 2017)

Initially, starting from the 1980s and 1990s, the quest toward more effective and efficient solutions to social needs or a particular target group's problems involved transition from in-house provision of services toward contracted delivery by external providers, inspired by New Public Management. After the 2000s, on the other hand, solutions proposed by the New Public Governance reform model more often sought the replacement of bureaucratic and contracting arrangements with tools built around cross-sector collaboration, which involves "sharing of information, resources, activities, and capabilities by organizations in two or more sectors to jointly achieve an outcome that could not be achieved by these organizations' separately" (Bryson, Crosby, and Middleton Stone 2015:648).

More recent efforts at reform in many countries have, in fact, sought to address coordination and cooperation challenges brought by competitive market-based organisation of service delivery, often promoting adaptive arrangements based on or augmented by collaboration. As a result, contemporary theory and practice of contracted service delivery extends beyond zero-sum notions of state-market relations and rather involves focus on a long-term negotiated relationship between governmental contractors and external provider(s). The origins of such a movement lie in the recognition of the potential that collaborative forms of contracting hold when acting as an alternative to classic transactional contracts (Bovaird and Loeffler 2019; Migone 2019).

Moreover, the benefits of a collaborative relationship between actors involved in policy implementation are increasingly being recognised in those policy sectors that over last decades proved to be resilient toward the externalisation of public services. Modernisation of traditional direct government tools taking place under the umbrella of reform model recently labelled the Neo Weberian State, hence, implies incorporation of citizens' perspectives through the addition of consultative efforts to the tools' design and delivery (Pollitt and Bouckaert 2017). Provision of services by the public sector organisations and their employees is nowadays increasingly enriched through the participation and dialogue with stakeholders, users, and their associations.

As a result of these trends, contemporary practice of public service delivery and goods production is increasingly marked by a widespread reliance on arrangements based on or augmented with collaboration (Kekez, Howlett, and Ramesh 2018). Organisation of childcare, elderly care, health care, education, waste disposal, water management, and other services or goods in many developed and developing countries features an increasing range of mixed tools, such as consultative in-house service delivery, partnerships, commissioning, co-management, and co-production. Collaboration in various hybrid delivery arrangements, it is argued, enables governments to mobilise a wide range of actors and resources in a joint production of high-quality public value (Alford and O'Flynn 2012; Bovaird and Loeffler 2019; Pestoff, Brandsen, and Verschuere 2013).

By using an integrated policy and management lens, the chapter brings collaborative implementation tools into sharper focus and explores their potential to act as a solution to a wide

variety of modern policy and governance challenges. To offer a systematic overview of collaborative organisational toolbox of government, the chapter unfolds development, scope, and innate features of organisational policy tools by investigating the way in which these tools have been (re)designed the over past decades in order to include collaboration as their core or added value.

Policy Reforms and Organisational Tools: Pathways to Collaboration

The increased interconnectedness and complexity of modern challenges aligned with the fiscal and societal pressures for both more efficient and effective public services have, over the last four decades, placed policy reform efforts high on the political and academic agenda. Even though the quest to redefine the nature and the role of a public sector in many democracies in North America and Western Europe in particular has led to often ambiguous and incoherent reform paths, it sponsored three big reform models that affected the study and reality of both public policy and public management (Pollitt and Bouckaert 2017).[1]

Acting as three general reform models, New Public Management, New Public Governance, and Neo-Weberian State each induced a creation of different policy tools or different arrangements of older instruments as a mean of surmounting existing policy problems and improving policy outcomes (Kekez 2018). Aiming for different changes of structures and processes in public sector functioning, these three models have induced development of distinctive organisational and, with them aligned, procedural policy tools. Nevertheless, development of each set of tools in the last two decades has been increasingly inspired by arrangements based on or augmented by the cross-sectoral collaboration.

As summarised in Table 40.1, the chapter explores different reform pathways to the usage of collaborative policy tools by looking at the ways in which each reform model (1) aimed to

Table 40.1 Policy Tools and Reform Models: Tools' Potential for Collaboration

	New Public Management	*New Public Governance*	*Neo-Weberian State*
Aim	More effective, efficient, and better-quality public service	More legitimate, inclusive, flexible, and effective public service	Modernised state apparatus, more professional, efficient, and more responsive to citizens
Key Substantive Organisational Policy Tools	Outsourcing and contracting out, but also public-private partnerships, commissioning	Partnerships, co-management, voluntary engagement, co-production	Provision by public sector organisations, public enterprises
Dominant Procedural Tools	Competitive contracting, benchmarking, and other output-based tools	Public participation, collaboration, trust, and other management tool based on outcomes and shared values	Rules and input-based tools accompanied by orientation toward achievement of results and toward addressing citizens' needs and wishes
Tools With Collaborative Potential	Commissioning and PPPs based on relational contracting	All tools encompassed by this model	Consultative in-house service delivery

Source: Adapted from Pollitt and Bouckaert (2017), Howlett, Kekez, and Poochaoren (2017), Kekez (2019) and Kekez, Howlett, and Ramesh (2019)

produce change in a public service delivery and ways in which each has affected (re)design of (2) substantive organisational policy tools and (3) their procedural counterparts. Based on the overview of the policy toolbox related to each reform model, the chapter focuses on (4) tools with the strongest potential to act as collaborative organisational policy tools.

New Public Management: From Contracting Out to Commissioning

The reform pathway for development of contracting types of implementation tools was set by the New Public Management (NPM) thinking in the 1980s, which sponsored a shift in the study and practice of public policy away from state-based solutions toward more market-centred ones (Osborne and Gaebler 1992; Lane 2000). Serving for several decades as a comprehensive model for reform of public management and policy practices, NPM introduced the whole set of businesslike strategies and tools that were opening the public sector to more competition and choice, both within and outside the government (Hood 1991; Osborne 2010). In real-life policymaking, the competition was, to a large extent, induced with the separation of policy design and policy implementation, with the latter being steered away from public sector organisations toward entities outside the government (Pierre 2012; Alford and O'Flynn 2012).

For the organisational implementation tools, this meant offsetting the use of state-based means such as state bureaucracies, public enterprises, or direct delivery of goods and services with market-based instruments (Dunleavy and Hood 1994; Ferlie et al. 1996; Howlett, Kekez, and Poocharoen 2017). Selling public enterprises or their shares to the private sector, or even shedding a service responsibility, was hence considered as a way to reduce the size and the cost of the public sector by NPM promoters. As another way to enhance efficiency, but also as a means to improve the effectiveness of policy implementation, NPM proposed the reduction of state involvement in goods and service delivery through contractual arrangements of government organisations (principal) with mainly private or non-profit organisations or even other public sector organisations. Widely known as *outsourcing* or *contracting out*, contracted production of public services or goods by external providers (agents) was also presented as a way to enhance flexibility of policy delivery and enable access to private sector technology, production capacity, and innovation (Hartmann and Patrickson 2000; Ponomariov and Kingsley 2008; Kettl 2010; Alford and O'Flynn 2012).

Efforts toward expanding the outsourcing of public services and goods were accompanied by the variety of procedural tools needed to enable distribution of roles and to ensure that entities engaged in a contractual relation performed their roles in an useful way (Hood 1991; Savas 2000; Alford and O'Flynn 2012). Public procurement and tendering procedures, hence, enabled specification of services and goods whose provision was to be contracted, as well as the selection of vendors. In addition, often tightly specified contracts backed by incentives and penalties allowed for the identification of commitments between engaged parties while the usage of performance measurement tools allowed for monitoring providers' operative conduct and endorsing policy outputs (Brown, Potoski, and Van Slyke 2006; Dayashankar and Ramesh 2019).

By steering the implementation toward the arm's-length organisations or by moving it away from public sector organisations, NPM has stimulated the efficiency and flexibility of the public service but has, at the same time, demonstrated a number of accountability or market failures and worsened the problems of policy coordination (Petersen, Hjelmar, and Vrangbæk 2018; Bel, Fageda, and Warner 2010; Vigoda 2002). In tackling some of undesired effects, NPM evolved over time into a reform model that encompassed strategies of privatisation embedded in the regulation designed to protect public value. Moreover, since the 1990s, it has also included strategies in which a scope of contracting practices was expanded so as to create more cooperation

between engaged parties (De Bruijn and Dicke 2006; Bell and Hindmoor 2009; Sanderson et al. 2018).

A move toward cooperation was initiated with the public-private partnerships (PPP), an organisational implementation tool based on the use of private sector resources in designing, constructing, and maintaining tasks most often associated with infrastructure projects or specific services such as refuse collection or vocational training (Bovaird 2004; Alford and O'Flynn 2012). While presented in the mid-1990s as a kinder, softer alternative to privatisation, it rarely involved the sharing of resources and joint efforts by business and government in a production of a value-added outcome (Hodge and Greve 2005). One example of such collaborative partnerships is a vocational education that produces a valuable good for the business community and individual employers and, hence, relies on a synergy between the traditional classroom learning provided by the public sector and the hands-on training often organised by private sector employers (Gray 1996; Schaeffer and Loveridge 2002). In many other examples, including a variety of infrastructure projects known as private finance initiatives, PPPs involve production that is not shared but mainly performed by the private actor. The latter often takes place under a complex and long-term but still classical transactional type of contracts (Alford and O'Flynn 2012).

A more substantive move toward deeper connection between stakeholders, service beneficiaries, external providers, and public sector organisations was introduced in the 2000s with the contracting approach known as the strategic commissioning of public services (Bovaird 2016). This organisational implementation tool, particularly prominent in the UK and Australia, involves engagement of public sector organisations in an outcome-oriented acquisition of public services that may be produced by businesses, non-profits, or public organisations. Strategic orientation in commissioning implies that decisions on what is to be contracted are made upon assessment of public needs and outcomes (Sturgess 2018; Migone 2019). In tackling identified needs and reaching desired outcomes, commissioning tends to harvest the "potential that exists in engaging with the broad spectrum of providers and users" (Migone 2019:85).

Strategic and collaborative orientations of commissioning have two implications for the procedural tools government uses to govern its design and implementation. Firstly, rather than mandating activities and prescribing detailed inputs and short-term outputs, commissioners steward the public service market through identification of outcomes or high-level outputs (Migone 2019; Sturgess 2018). Secondly, and for this chapter, more importantly, unlike classic contracting-out practices that are based on a traditional transaction-based relationship between actors, commissioning favours a more active engagement of involved actors and relies on a collaboration-based scope of contracting (Migone 2019; Bovaird and Loeffler 2019). This often implies the usage of so-called relational types of contracts involving long-term negotiated contracting based on norms of reciprocity, trust, discretion, information exchange, and jointness. Performance improvement in such a contract, promoters claim, is grounded not primary in monitoring, incentives, and sanctions but mainly on joint investments in a good relationship manifested in mutual support and active engagement (Van Slyke 2009; Dehoog 1990; Alford and O'Flynn 2012)

Involvement of actors in a collaborative commissioning can include individual commissioners and providers but can also imply arrangements such as the prime contracting or joint commissioning. Prime contracting relates to examples common in public sector construction in which one commissioner transfers to a prime provider a whole set of (sub)contracting tasks and decisions on activities needed to reach the outcome. Joint commissioning, on the other hand, includes clustering local authorities or other types of public organisations and their joint engagement with a single or partnership of providers. Integration of services, with examples from the

UK health and social care system, is used to ensure "joined up" design and delivery of public service (Bovaird and Loeffler 2019; Sturgess 2018; Bovaird, Dickinson, and Allen 2012).

Relational contracts between public and private entities, prime contracting, and joint commissioning all add layers of complexity to contracting practices in public service delivery and, hence, require governments that are incentivized and capable of employing sufficient political, analytical, and managerial capacity (Bovaird and Loeffler 2019; Kekez, Howlett, and Ramesh 2019). In addition, the success of this set of emerging implementation tools relies on the ability of public managers to "balance the returns from building a cooperative relationship with a single vendor against the continued risk of opportunism and the perception that the vendor's long-term relationship stems from political favouritism" (Brown, Potoski, and Van Slyke 2006:328). Even though it carries high transaction costs in the short term, when employed with the matching of types of services and managed with adequate competences, collaborative commissioning holds the potential to serve as an implementation tool that induces innovation in public services and generates strategic benefits for engaged actors (Migone 2019).

New Public Governance: Co-managing and Co-producing Public Service

Originating in the 1990s from the network approach to policy design and management, New Public Governance (NPG) as a second reform model pushed the reform agenda toward more reciprocal and horizontal inclusion of external actors in the policy process. Aiming to make government doings more legitimate, flexible, and effective, NPG proposed the idea of working in partnerships toward producing joint results with the stress on citizens' participation in both policymaking and delivery (Koppenjan and Klijn 2004; Osborne 2010; Kekez 2019). Reliance on partnerships, it is considered, induces knowledge sharing throughout the policy process while co-production with citizens and their associations enables an injection of citizens' values and priorities in the design and delivery of public services (Ostrom 1996; Pestoff and Brandsen 2013; Kekez 2018).

For the organisation-based substantive policy tools, this implied conscious strategy toward arrangements based on cross-sectoral collaboration or enhanced engagement of citizens and their associations in goods and service delivery. In such partnering arrangements, the key role in the production of public services is often given to civil society actors: namely, non-profit organisations or community organisations (Brandsen and Pestoff 2006). In the arrangement increasingly known as co-management, civil society organisations are mandated to produce public service such as shelters for victims of domestic violence or home care services for the elderly or to govern common or public good, such as housing, arts and culture, renewable energy, or water utilities. In taking on their managing role, nevertheless, civil society organisations do not act alone, but the decisions on how service is designed, how delivery is managed, and benefits from services or goods are made in partnership with public sector organisations, businesses, and society actors who can be engaged in the implementation process (Brandsen and Hout 2006; Steurer 2013). In that sense, co-management as the organisational tool implies collaborative interaction and joint contribution of multiple actors to the provision of public services and their outcomes (Kekez, Howlett, and Ramesh 2018).

In the policy practice, co-management is very often combined with volunteer engagement, as well as with co-production, another collaborative organisational tool which involves active contribution by individual citizens to a service they personally receive (Alford 2009; Voorberg and Meerkerk 2019). Engagement of citizens in design and delivery of a professionally produced service implies that, via their inputs, citizens may not only contribute to a service which they personally receive but also perform activities complementary to the core mission

of the service-providing organisation (Brandsen and Honingh 2016). While citizens' contributions to services need to be made in close interaction with the employees providing the service, it is widely argued that when users act as experiential experts, the service has more chances to effectively tackle the real needs of individuals, and service provision has more likelihood to be accompanied by the development of user accountability (Bovaird 2007; Ostrom 1996).

Employment of co-management and co-production as organisational tools implies that delivery of services and goods is dependent on cooperation between governmental and social actors, be they individual citizens or their associations. Incentivising citizens' engagement and holding actors in collaborative forms of coordination are possible only if the implementation of co-production is based on process-oriented tools though which government enables a meaningful participation of societal actors in the service delivery process (Hill and Hupe 2014; Howlett, Kekez, and Poocharoen 2017). Those tools include recruitment of participants, creation and maintenance of network of service providers, and development of ways to govern the operational complexity that comes with collaborative service delivery (Agranoff and McGuire 2004, Kekez 2019).

To ensure intrinsic cooperation and participation, instead of the adoption of rules or specification of outputs, NPG favours trust, shared values, and other soft types of procedural tools (Hansen 2007; Hill and Hupe 2014; Klijn 2012; Agranoff 2007). While managerial reliance on trust and shared responsibility, it is argued, discourages competitiveness and hostility among participating organisations, reliance on implementation partnerships can enhance knowledge sharing and mobilise unutilised resources (Howlett, Kekez, and Poocharoen 2017; Poocharoen and Ting 2015; Sørensen 2012). Even though the design and implementation of such complex procedural tools requires a high level of managing competencies for both public managers and street-level workers, co-management and co-production are increasingly recognized as tools enabling successful provision of complex services requiring high levels of creativity.

Neo-Weberian State: In-House Delivery Modernized With Consultations

NPM and NPG are often presented as two alternative general reform models in scholarly discussions. Many country- or area-specific models originating from empirical research or theoretical innovation are often subsumed under or correlated with one of these two conceptual hubs. However, as the comparative research on reform results shows, reforms in many Northern and Central European countries can hardly be correlated with paradigms behind either of the two big models (Pollitt and Bouckaert 2017). These countries have been proven to follow a modernisation path which does not imply distancing the public sector from the bureaucratic nature of governance and the hierarchy of the traditional model of bureaucratic power. Even though continental modernisers have sometimes been qualified merely as guardians of the "status quo" or as stragglers reluctant to abandon the notion of the "old" hierarchy, Pollitt and Bouckaert (2017) see their path as a distinctive reform model and label it the Neo-Weberian State (NWS).

The label itself expresses the conciliatory nature of this model, which seeks to offer a solution to the tension between the quest for modernisation and a devotion to preserving valuable Weberian foundations of public services such as "assumptions of a positive state, a distinctive public service and particular legal order" (Pollitt and Bouckaert 2017:120). For NWS modernisers, the main task is thus to find a way to combine the traditional values of public administration with the new virtues of efficiency, responsiveness, flexibility, and adaptability. This, from a policy tools perspective, implies not just reaffirmation of the role of the public sector organisations as the driving force behind both design and delivery of public services but also the shift from rule following toward the holistic focus on addressing citizens' needs (Kekez 2019).

The primacy of the state in the organisation-based policy tools is followed by procedural reliance on inputs. Management of the service delivery, hence, remains focused on the assignment of tasks to public sector organisations. With hierarchical relations with internal providers and rules as a central procedural and management tool, management of street-level practice is focused on internalisation of operating procedures. Compliance with the rules is ensured through practices of leadership and on-the-job training (Hill and Hupe 2014). Nevertheless, and, for this chapter, more importantly, in the NWS-inspired modernization of government sector, strict reliance on rule following in direct service provision is accompanied by shift toward achievement of results and toward meeting citizens' needs (Pollitt and Bouckaert 2017; Pollitt 2008; Kekez 2019).

To incorporate citizens' perspective in state-centred policy solutions, this reform model reaches toward the addition of collaborative and participatory elements in service delivery (Pollitt and Bouckaert 2017; Pollitt 2008; Mazur and Kopycinski 2017). This, in the first place, implies the usage of consultations involving participation and dialogue with stakeholders, beneficiaries, and the public throughout the process of service design and delivery. Even though consultative efforts can operate in a largely tokenistic manner, they do have strong collaborative potential as they can be organised through collaborative empowering engagement with citizens and their associations (Johnson and Howsam 2019; Kekez, Howlett, and Ramesh 2019). In such cases, consultative in-house service delivery implies consensus-oriented decision-making and leads to actual injection of citizens' priorities in the design and delivery of public service.

Conclusion

Policy reform efforts discussed in this chapter have over the last four decades simultaneously led to both the reduction and the enhancement of the role the state plays in modern societies. On the one hand, reforms introducing the production of public services and goods by external providers have rolled back the state from the design and management of organisational policy tools. Creation of a space in which a variety of external for-profit and non-profit organisations can act as producers of public services and goods has induced the design of a broad range of indirect means of goods and services delivery.

On the other hand, with the influx of organisational policy tools, thanks to which the state became less involved in a direct production of public services and goods, its coordination role has even become bigger. The need for adaptable, strategic, and effective coordination of external actors engaged in public service provision has brought to the fore a variety of procedural tools. Moreover, the same need gradually led to the recognition of cross-sectoral collaboration as a value-added coordination mechanism, even for the organisational tools that were inherently steered either through competitive contracts or hierarchy.

With the emergence of relational contracting and a holistic version of in-house service provision, a collaboration-based policy toolbox nowadays not only includes NPG-inspired co-management and co-production as the arrangements directly coordinated via collaboration, but it also entails tools that exist at the nexus of different governing principles. Such implementation hybrids hold strong potential for public value creation but, at the same time, require careful consideration of conditions and capacities required for their success.

Note

1 Review of policy reform models and aligned policy instruments in this chapter is based on the author's doctoral dissertation completed at the Faculty of Political Science, University of Zagreb.

References

Agranoff, Robert. 2007. *Managing within Networks: Adding Value to Public Organizations*. Washington, DC: Georgetown University Press.

Agranoff, Robert, and Michael McGuire. 2004. *Collaborative Public Management: New Strategies for Local Governments*. Washington, DC: Georgetown University Press.

Alford, John. 2009. *Engaging Public Sector Clients*. London: Palgrave Macmillan UK. https://doi.org/10.1057/9780230235816.

Alford, John, and Janine O'Flynn. 2012. *Rethinking Public Service Delivery: Managing with External Providers*. Basingstoke: Palgrave Macmillan.

Bel, Germà, Xavier Fageda, and Mildred E. Warner. 2010. "Is Private Production of Public Services Cheaper Than Public Production? A Meta-Regression Analysis of Solid Waste and Water Services." *Journal of Policy Analysis and Management* 29 (3): 553–577. https://doi.org/10.1002/pam.20509.

Bell, Stephen, and Andrew Hindmoor. 2009. *Rethinking Governance: The Centrality of the State in Modern Society*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Bovaird, Tony. 2004. "Public-Private Partnerships: From Contested Concepts to Prevalent Practice." *International Review of Administrative Sciences* 70 (2): 199–215. https://doi.org/10.1177/0020852304044250.

———. 2007. "Beyond Engagement and Participation: User and Community Coproduction of Public Services." *Public Administration Review* 67 (5): 846–860.

———. 2016. "The Ins and Outs of Outsourcing and Insourcing: What Have We Learnt from the Past 30 Years?" *Public Money & Management* 36 (1): 67–74. https://doi.org/10.1080/09540962.2015.1093298.

Bovaird, Tony, Helen Dickinson, and Kerry Allen. 2012. "*Commissioning across Government: Review of Evidence*." Project Report. University of Birmingham, Birmingham.

Bovaird, Tony, and Elke Loeffler. 2019. "Outcome-Based Commissioning: Four Pathways to Achieving Public Value." In *Collaboration in Public Service Delivery*, edited by Anka Kekez, Michael Howlett, and M. Ramesh, 183–203. Cheltenham, UK and Northampton, MA, USA: Edward Elgar Publishing.

Brandsen, Taco, and Marlies Honingh. 2016. "Distinguishing Different Types of Coproduction: A Conceptual Analysis Based on the Classical Definitions." *Public Administration Review* 76 (3): 427–435. https://doi.org/10.1111/puar.12465.

Brandsen, Taco, and Eelco van Hout. 2006. "Co-Management in Public Service Networks." *Public Management Review* 8 (4): 537–549. https://doi.org/10.1080/14719030601022908.

Brandsen, Taco, and Victor Pestoff. 2006. "Co-Production, the Third Sector and the Delivery of Public Services." *Public Management Review* 8 (4): 493–501. https://doi.org/10.1080/14719030601022874.

Brown, Trevor L., Matthew Potoski, and David M. Van Slyke. 2006. "Managing Public Service Contracts: Aligning Values, Institutions, and Markets." *Public Administration Review* 66 (3): 323–331. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1540-6210.2006.00590.x.

Bryson, John M., Barbara C. Crosby, and Melissa Middleton Stone. 2015. "Designing and Implementing Cross-Sector Collaborations: Needed and Challenging." *Public Administration Review* 75 (5): 647–663.

Clarke, Amanda, and Jonathan Craft. 2017. "The Vestiges and Vanguards of Policy Design in a Digital Context." *Canadian Public Administration* 60 (4): 476–497. https://doi.org/10.1111/capa.12228.

Dayashankar, Maurya, and M. Ramesh. 2019. "Contracting Out as a Governance Mechanism: The Case of National Health Insurance in India." In *Collaboration in Public Service Delivery*, edited by Anka Kekez, Michael Howlett, and M. Ramesh, 61–77. Cheltenham, UK and Northampton, MA, USA: Edward Elgar Publishing.

De Bruijn, Hans, and Willemijn Dicke. 2006. "Strategies for Safeguarding Public Values in Liberalized Utility Sectors." *Public Administration* 84 (3): 717–735.

Dehoog, Ruth Hoogland. 1990. "Competition, Negotiation, or Cooperation: Three Models for Service Contracting." *Administration & Society* 22 (3): 317–340. https://doi.org/10.1177/009539979002200303.

Dunleavy, Patrick, and Christopher Hood. 1994. "From Old Public Administration to New Public Management." *Public Money & Management* 14 (3): 9–16. https://doi.org/10.1080/09540969409387823.

Ferlie, Ewan, Lynn Ashburner, Louise Fitzgerald, and Andrew Pettigrew. 1996. *The New Public Management in Action*. Oxford, NY: Oxford University Press.

Gray, Barbara. 1996. "Cross-Sectoral Partners: Collaborative Alliances among Business, Government and Communities." In *Creating Collaborative Advantage*, 57–79. London: SAGE Publications Ltd. https://doi.org/10.4135/9781446221600.

Hansen, Allan Dreyer. 2007. "Governance Networks and Participation." In *Theories of Democratic Network Governance*, edited by Eva Sørensen and Jacob Torfing, 247–261. Basingstoke: Palgrave Macmillan.

Hartmann, Linley, and Margaret Patrickson. 2000. "Externalizing the Workforce: Australian Trends and Issues for HRM." *International Journal of Manpower* 21 (1): 7–20. https://doi.org/10.1108/01437720010319426.

Hill, Michael, and Peter Hupe. 2014. *Implementing Public Policy: An Introduction to the Study of Operational Governance*. 3rd ed. London: Sage.

Hodge, Graeme A., and Carsten Greve. 2005. *The Challenge of Public-Private Partnerships: Learning from International Experience*. Cheltenham, UK and Northampton, MA, USA: Edward Elgar Publishing.

Hood, Christopher. 1991. "A Public Management for All Seasons." *Public Administration*, 3–19.

Howlett, Michael. 2019. "Procedural Policy Tools and the Temporal Dimensions of Policy Design: Resilience, Robustness and the Sequencing of Policy Mixes." *International Review of Public Policy* 1 (1:1): 27–45. https://doi.org/10.4000/irpp.310.

Howlett, Michael, Anka Kekez, and Ora Poocharoen. 2017. "Understanding Co-Production as a Policy Tool: Integrating New Public Governance and Comparative Policy Theory." *Journal of Comparative Policy Analysis: Research and Practice* 19 (5): 487–501. https://doi.org/10.1080/13876988.2017.1287445.

Howlett, Michael, Ishani Mukherjee, and Sarah Giest. 2020. "The Future of Policy Tools: Promises and Pitfalls." *KIPA Public Policy Review* 1 (Inaugural issue): 51–67.

Howlett, Michael, M. Ramesh, and Anthony Perl. 2020. *Studying Public Policy: Policy Cycles and Policy Subsystems*. 3rd ed. Ontario; New York: Oxford University Press.

Johnson, Genevieve Fuji, and Robert Howsam. 2019. "Consultation as Collaboration?" Collaboration in Public Service Delivery, September.

Kekez, Anka. 2018. *Influence of Institutions and Actors on the Reform of Implementation Management: A Comparative Analysis of Social Services in Croatia*. Zagreb: University of Zagreb.

Kekez, Anka. 2019. "Misusing the Reform: New Public Governance in the Service of Clientelism." In *Clientelism and Democratic Governance in Comparative Perspective*, edited by Ruth, Saskia i Maria Spirova, 197–221. Colchester and London, UK and New York, USA: ECPR Press and Rowman & Littlefield International Ltd.

Kekez, Anka, Michael Howlett, and M. Ramesh. 2018. "Varieties of Collaboration in Public Service Delivery." *Policy Design and Practice* 1 (4): 243–252.

———. 2019. "Collaboration in Public Service Delivery: What, When and How." In *Collaboration in Public Service Delivery*, edited by Anka Kekez, Michael Howlett, and M. Ramesh, 2–20. Cheltenham, UK and Northampton, MA, USA: Edward Elgar Publishing.

Kettl, Donald F. 2010. "Governance, Contract Management and Public Management." In *The New Public Governance?: Emerging Perspectives on the Theory and Practice of Public Governance*, edited by Stephen P. Osborne, 239–255. Abingdon, UK: Routledge.

Klijn, Erik-Hans. 2012. "New Public Management and Governance: A Comparison." In *The Oxford Handbook of Governance*, edited by David Levi-Faur, 201–215. Oxford: Oxford University Press.

Koppenjan, Johannes Franciscus Maria, and Erik-Hans Klijn. 2004. *Managing Uncertainties in Networks: A Network Approach to Problem Solving and Decision Making*. London and New York: Psychology Press.

Lane, Jan-Erik. 2000. *New Public Management*. London: Routledge.

Lang, Achim. 2019. "Collaborative Governance in Health and Technology Policy: The Use and Effects of Procedural Policy Instruments." *Administration & Society* 51 (2): 272–298. https://doi.org/10.1177/0095399716664163.

Linder, Stephen H., and B. Guy Peters. 1990. "Policy Formulation and the Challenge of Conscious Design." *Evaluation and Program Planning* 13 (3): 303–311. https://doi.org/10.1016/0149-7189(90)90061-Z.

Mazur, Stanislaw, and Piotr Kopycinski, eds. 2017. *Public Policy and the Neo-Weberian State*. 1st ed. London; New York, NY: Routledge.

Migone, Andrea. 2019. "From Procurement to the Commissioning of Public Services." In *Collaboration in Public Service Delivery*, edited by Anka Kekez, Michael Howlett, and M. Ramesh, 77–91. Cheltenham, UK and Northampton, MA, USA: Edward Elgar Publishing.

Osborne, David, and Ted Gaebler. 1992. *Reinventing Government: How the Entrepreneurial Spirit Is Transforming the Public Sector*. Reading, MA: Addison-Wesley Publishing Company.

Osborne, Stephen P., ed. 2010. *The New Public Governance?: Emerging Perspectives on the Theory and Practice of Public Governance*. London: Routledge.

Ostrom, Elinor. 1996. "Crossing the Great Divide: Coproduction, Synergy, and Development." *World Development* 24 (6): 1073–1087.

Pestoff, Victor, and Taco Brandsen. 2013. *Co-Production: The Third Sector and the Delivery of Public Services*. Abingdon, UK: Routledge.

Pestoff, Victor, Taco Brandsen, and Bram Verschuere. 2013. *New Public Governance, the Third Sector, and Co-Production*. Abingdon, UK: Routledge.

Petersen, Ole Helby, Ulf Hjelmar, and Karsten Vrangbæk. 2018. "Is Contracting Out of Public Services Still the Great Panacea?: Systematic Review of Studies on Economic and Quality Effects from 2000 to 2014." *Social Policy and Administration* 52 (1): 130–157. https://doi.org/10.1111/spol.12297.

Pierre, Jon. 2012. "Governance and Institutional Flexibility." In T*he Oxford Handbook of Governance*, edited by David Levi-Faur, 187–201. Oxford: Oxford University Press.

Pollitt, Christopher. 2008. "An Overview of the Papers and Propositions of the First Trans-European Dialogue (TED1)." *The NISPAcee Journal of Public Administration and Policy Special Issue: A Distinctive European Model? The Neo-Weberian State* 1 (2): 9–16.

Pollitt, Christopher, and Geert Bouckaert. 2017. *Public Management Reform: A Comparative Analysis: New Public Management, Governance, and the Neo-Weberian State*. 4th ed. Oxford: Oxford University Press.

Ponomariov, Branco, and Gordon Kingsley. 2008. "Applicability of the Normative Model of Outsourcing in the Public Sector: The Case of a State Transportation Agency." *Public Organization Review* 8 (3): 253–272. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11115-008-0059-2.

Poocharoen, Ora-orn, and Bernard Ting. 2015. "Collaboration, Co-Production, Networks: Convergence of Theories." *Public Management Review* 17 (4): 587–614. https://doi.org/10.1080/14719037.2013.866479.

Sanderson, Marie, Pauline Allen, Randeep Gill, and Emma Garnett. 2018. "New Models of Contracting in the Public Sector: A Review of Alliance Contracting, Prime Contracting and Outcome-Based Contracting Literature." *Social Policy & Administration* 52 (5): 1060–1083. https://doi.org/10.1111/spol.12322.

Savas, Emanuel S. 2000. *Privatization and Public-Private Partnerships*. New York: Chatham House.

Schaeffer, Peter V., and Scott Loveridge. 2002. "Toward an Understanding of Types of Public-Private Cooperation." *Public Performance & Management Review* 26 (2): 169–189. https://doi.org/10.1177/1530957602238261.

Sørensen, Eva. 2012. "Governance and Innovation in the Public Sector." In *The Oxford Handbook of Governance*, edited by David Levi-Faur, 215–228. Oxford: Oxford University Press.

Steurer, Reinhard. 2013. "Disentangling Governance: A Synoptic View of Regulation by Government, Business and Civil Society." *Policy Sciences* 46 (4): 387–410.

Sturgess, Gary L. 2018. "Public Service Commissioning: Origins, Influences, and Characteristics." *Policy Design and Practice* 1 (3): 155–168. https://doi.org/10.1080/25741292.2018.1473100.

Van Slyke, David M. 2009. "Collaboration and Relational Contracting." In *The Collaborative Public Manager: New Ideas for the Twenty-First Century*, edited by Rosemary O'Leary and Lisa B. Bingham, 137–156. Washington, DC: Georgetown University Press.

Vigoda, Eran. 2002. "From Responsiveness to Collaboration: Governance, Citizens, and the Next Generation of Public Administration." *Public Administration Review* 62 (5): 527–540. https://doi.org/10.1111/1540-6210.00235.

Voorberg, William, and Ingmar van Meerkerk. 2019. "Co-Production with Citizens: Demarcating the Mode of Collaboration by Looking from Outside." In *Collaboration in Public Service Delivery,* edited by Anka Kekez, Michael Howlett, and M. Ramesh, 112–130. Cheltenham, UK and Northampton, MA, USA: Edward Elgar Publishing.

41

BIG DATA, ARTIFICIAL INTELLIGENCE AND THE FUTURE OF REGULATORY TOOLS

Fernando de Barros Filgueiras

The use of digital technology tools to improve governance is not exactly new. Governments have employed information and communication technologies for some time, and they are important organizational tools to retain information and use it for policy objectives and the construction of digital public services. Digital tools represent important organizational elements, especially in the policy implementation. The expansion and reach of individuals' and companies' connections on the internet, the growing capacity for data storage, and computational capacity provided the emergence of big data methodologies that revolutionize digital tools and their applications in different policy domains.

Big data is an interdisciplinary field of knowledge involving social sciences, psychology, engineering, and computer science. The objective is to optimize the extraction of information from different behavioral aspects of individuals in their daily interactions on the internet or the information extraction in large datasets, transform them into data, and analyze them to focus on different purposes. Big data implies an extensive process of collecting, storing, analyzing, and sharing data to constitute varied applications in policies, businesses, services, and industry. The emergence of big data methodologies has led to applications and software resurgence based on artificial intelligence (AI).

AI does not have a precise definition in the literature. AI is not the automation of repetitive activities carried out through codes. Nor does AI mean the reproduction of procedures fixed in algorithms. AI involves a process of emulating human intelligence to establish a decision or solve a problem. AI foundations are connected to an abstraction of the human mind to build machines that emulate rationality and develop cognitive functions, capacity, behavior, and thought structure. There are different methodologies for building AI solutions, such as machine-learning algorithms, deep learning, facial recognition, and natural language processing. The use of these different methodologies implies machines' ability to make decisions and autonomously solve problems.

AI represents systems that make decisions based on learning, creativity, and increased performance. Applied to governments, AI represents an important tool for increasing policy outcomes. The application of big data and artificial intelligence in public policies finds several applications and has a revolutionary aspect for governments. First, big data and AI methodologies increase the decision-making capacity since machines can extract and analyze a large volume of data representing behaviors in society and provide different interventions that change the status quo.

 DOI: 10.4324/9781003163954-50

Second, the application of big data and AI can change the dynamics of interaction between citizens and public policy, observing the performance of chatbots, autonomous vehicles, facial recognition systems in urban space, IoT solutions, and blockchain applications in various transactions and businesses. Third, big data and AI expand policy simulation capabilities, providing anticipation of demands, rules enforcement, predictability, and accuracy.

Big data and artificial intelligence revolutionize policy instruments and provide the digital transformation of public policies. They optimize the discretionary and authoritative aspects of the tools, and they can extract and understand individuals' behavior in society and build interventions that alter these behaviors in the policy dynamics. Big data and AI occupy an increasing institutional place in policy design through autonomous decision systems. This chapter aims to understand the revolution of policy instruments through digital tools: understand how they change the dynamics of policy, connect outcomes to implementation, automate decisions, and imply new challenges for policy design, which is now related to the system's design. In our argument, big data and AI are policy instruments on the frontier of knowledge, demanding accurate calibration processes within the policy design.

Regulatory Tools

Policy tools are central to the regulation. Regulation is a complex and disputed concept (Koop and Lodge, 2017). Regulation comprises an expanded set of practices that aim to impose state authority on social and economic actors to comply with the rules.

There are three perspectives on regulation. First, regulation comprises enacting rules accompanied by mechanisms to monitor and promote compliance with these rules. Second, regulation is the effort of state agencies to steer the economy. Third, regulation encompasses every form of social control, including unintentional processes and non-state actors (Baldwin et al., 2012; Jordana and Levi-Faur, 2004). The regulatory governance requires policy designs that apply tools and policy mixes to achieve goals. Policy tools are "techniques of governance that, one way or another, involve the use of state authority or its conscious limitation" (Howlett, 2005, 31).

Due to the globalization process, there is a broader trend for states to shape regulatory governance. As a result, states have emphasized the use of authority, rules, standards, and guidelines, unfolding from a previous emphasis on public ownership and direct service provision (Hood et al., 1999). Regulation involves a complex set of tools which aim to promote interventions that influence the behavior of social and economic actors. Furthermore, regulation and the use of regulatory tools involve complex and diverse institutional grammars, with different types of rules that guide the use of tools (Dunlop et al., 2021). Institutional grammar reflects types of rules that define positions, boundaries, choice, aggregation, information, payoff, and scope to define the action situations that inform policy design (Ostrom, 2005). Regulation depends on the creation of regulatory agencies, on delegation processes for private organizations, or on the creation of advisory committees. For example, environmental agencies monitor CO2 emissions, deforestation, air quality, and water governance rules that support interventions aimed at sustainability. Alternatively, private organizations impose industrial product standards and monitor the industrial process to guarantee quality for international trade. Finally, advisory committees establish economic parameters according to the country's monetary and fiscal policy. In all these cases, regulation will occur through monitoring structures that generate information and support the construction of policy interventions to achieve an objective.

Tools, in general, can be framed in different ways in public policy, implying policy choices and alternatives (Howlett, 2019; Peters, 2018; Vedung, 1998; Hood and Margetts, 2007; Lascoumes and Le Gales, 2007). A helpful conception to understand regulatory tools as policy tools

is a cybernetic conception of governments. In cybernetic conception, information is essential for governments to produce knowledge, learning, and evidence to policy design. To understand the tools that governments apply, the analyst must circumscribe their adoption in the relationship between government and society, distinguishing the tools between detectors and effectors (Hood and Margetts, 2007). Detectors are all the instruments that governments use to obtain information inputs. After the information is processed, they produce effectors, which are the tools that governments use to try to have an impact on society (Hood and Margetts, 2007, 4).

Information and knowledge are essential for the choices made by policymakers to design a policy that impacts society (Ostrom, 2005). The information collected by detectors enables policymakers to make decisions, design interventions, and choose tools that aim to produce impacts on society, shaping the behavior of individuals and groups in society (Hood and Margetts, 2007). Detectors and effectors determine that policy tools are means to achieve a particular government objective. Policy design is a dynamic activity in which policymakers make decisions based on evidence, learn from the past, and relate the tools in a congruent, coherent, and consistent way (Capano, 2017; Howlett, 2014; Radaelli and Dunlop, 2013). Therefore, information is essential for the performance of the chosen tools and templates.

The role of information in the choice and use of policy tools is essential. Digital tools detect information – produce inputs – and shape interventions that aim to impact society. Digital tools are policy tools built using digital technologies (Filgueiras and Almeida, 2021). Their use extends to different policy domains and involves technical and political choices. In a regulatory state, digital tools can be understood as mediators of the state's authority to implement public policies. The emergence of big data methodology and the rediscovery of artificial intelligence (AI) increase the possibilities for using information for regulatory governance by automating detectors and effectors.

The advancement and deployment of AI technologies and the possibilities brought by big data methodologies augment and automate regulatory governance. The expansion of these digital technologies leads to a future in which the possibility of increasing governments' capacities and automating regulatory governance is real. The future of regulatory tools requires the growing application of AI solutions with the extensive use of big data methodologies. The purpose of this chapter is precisely to address this future of regulatory tools, considering the various dilemmas for regulatory governance. This future is not precisely regulations being formulated and implemented by humanoid robots but a series of dilemmas and new problems that shape the choice and use of digital tools in regulatory governance.

Augmenting and Automating Regulation – Big Data and Artificial Intelligence

Digital tools mean building capacities to deliver data-driven and digital-based regulation. Digital tools promote digital-era governance (Dunleavy and Margetts, 2013) and expand policy outcomes through digital technologies (Veale and Brass, 2019). Amid this process of expanding capacities and new governance modes, two landmarks were essential. First, the big data revolution has improved massive data collection, storage, processing, and sharing. Second, the reinvention of AI technology has expanded possibilities for application in public policy. These two technologies have provided new directions for policy formulation, implementation, and evaluation, building new forms of communication between governments and society and, in turn, new forms of policy instrumentation. Emerging digital technologies have produced disruption, altered communication and knowledge construction, and expanded the way policy interventions constitute new templates in policy design.

In addition to increasing capacities, these technologies potentially automate multiple policy domains and interventions: in particular, regulation. Automation occurs with the design and deployment of autonomous systems to make policy decisions. Thus, autonomous systems are not just about performing repetitive tasks but also about the ability of autonomous systems to make decisions and define the flow of regulatory governance without any human intervention. For example, AI has been applied to health regulation and restaurant inspection, making decisions that impact public health (Kang et al., 2013). In addition, environmental agencies monitor and collect satellite imagery data on deforestation by using AI systems to analyze diverse images and simulate environmental control decisions.

Gradually, AI and big data have become ubiquitous policy tools. They are developed to exercise authority. The policy automation assumption makes AI and big data the main tools of all regulatory tools. Moreover, AI and big data change the logic of detectors and effectors, expanding the amount of information collected and processed to define, automatically or not, policy design activities. Thus, AI and big data gradually become a meta-regulatory tool, comprising autonomous decision systems designed and employed to accomplish tasks and solve problems related to state authority and social control. For example, in China, the national AI strategy lists artificial intelligence as a tool to extend social control for broader purposes to maintain political order (Roberts et al., 2021; Dai, 2020).

As meta-regulatory tools, big data and AI comprise a series of autonomous decision-making and tasks that frame diverse regulatory interventions. Big data and AI perform functions related to information dissemination in society, allocation of resources based on predictions and simulations, alteration of various organizational aspects of governments, and regulatory efforts to achieve compliance. As meta-regulatory tools, big data and AI are detector and effector tools, enabling digital technologies to frame new regulatory governance.

The use of big data and AI as regulatory tools advances towards the definition of algorithmic regulation. As defined by Yeung (2018, 507), algorithmic regulation is the use of autonomous decision systems to regulate a domain of activities to manage risk and change behavior through knowledge generated by computer systems. Algorithms using big data techniques and AI systems detect or predict violations in real-time or pre-emptively and recommend or automate sanctions. Thus, big data and AI are detectors and effectors for regulatory tools. Big data and AI aim to produce real-time or pre-emptive monitoring to detect violations and recommend or automate sanctions, finding applications in economic regulation, social control, and ensuring compliance.

Regulatory Detectors – Big Data

Big data is the set of methodologies and technologies for collecting, storing, processing, and sharing data from various sources to create an expanded information dominance and deployment of different computational technologies (Kitchin, 2013; Mayer-Schönberger and Cukier, 2013). In general, data collection stems from three primary sources: (1) directly, through surveillance mechanisms; (2) automatically collecting transaction data on the distributed network or with social media data-scraping techniques; and (3) voluntarily, through crowdsourcing (Kitchin, 2013).

Data includes numbers, text, speech, and images that feed massive amounts of data to detect different situations in society, including the various interactions, relationships, transactions, and values in social networking. Two factors were essential for the big data revolution: first, the expansion of data storage capacity, especially with cloud computing, and second, the increase in

processing speed, enabling greater automatic collection capability. Big data, therefore, responds to societies' datafication, in which the hyper-connection of individuals on the internet, the growing offer of digitized services – public and private – and the connection in social media enable the expansion of data sources and collection possibilities. Furthermore, big data represents the opportunity to obtain information beyond administrative records, comprising data collection on digital public services transactions, social media monitoring, and data obtained with IoT, among others (Giest, 2017). Big data includes volume, speed, variety, exhaustiveness, resolution, relationality, flexibility, and scalability (Mayer-Schönberger and Cukier, 2013).

Governments have designed data-driven policies in different policy domains. Big data methodologies have been used to formulate and design policies. As a growing trend in governments, big data makes up the main feature of digital transformation (Giest, 2017; DeSouza and Jacob, 2017; Williamson, 2014). The data-driven policy requires that digital technologies collect, process, and share data (Athey, 2017). Gradually, organizations commodify information in distributed networks (Hess and Ostrom, 2007). Different digital technologies, such as machine-learning algorithms, require a vast amount of training data to produce the expected results. Data implies a logic of shared resources in a networked place, with a private and public nature. Governments use these data to develop different applications to provide services and policies through information control (Filgueiras and Almeida, 2021).

Data is a resource that can be exploited to encourage different digital technologies and design policy from a data-driven perspective. This complex set of digital technologies comprises different mechanisms that collect information and transform it into data and control. Digital technologies depend on sharing data – considered a resource – and using them to construct information and application by organizations (Frischmann and Selinger, 2018). Data must be understood as resources that enable the input of policies to deploy policy tools based on digital technologies (Filgueiras and Almeida, 2021). For example, the constitution of autonomous agents based on artificial intelligence, such as public service chatbots, image diagnostics for health care, and facial recognition systems for public safety, among others, require a vast amount of data to deliver predictive decisions. Therefore, governments must mobilize massive data in all situations that allow autonomous agents to accomplish some policy objective.

Big data reshapes detectors' tools. It represents an essential digital tool to formulate different solutions with information and knowledge. For example, big data can solve the problem of understanding citizens' political preferences when designing a policy. Big data can also be a tool to understand how transactions in public services take place and promote service regulation in governments. Moreover, big data can be a tool for co-creating policies and services, expanding society's participation in indirect ways. Big data can also gather information during implementation, enabling faster adjustment of rules and procedures, producing constant learning. When transforming detectors, big data is an essential meta-tool for creating other tools, quickly mobilizing data that constitutes expanded information in a granular and relational way.

Regulatory Effectors – Artificial Intelligence

The big data revolution has expanded data volume, granularity, and availability. It has also brought about artificial intelligence (AI) reinvention. Artificial intelligence does not have a precise concept in the specialized literature. The conceptual bases of AI are on intelligence to perform a task or solve a problem, which may vary according to the intelligence being conceived (Russell, 2019). Thus, AI is a computational technology that imitates human intelligence, but the way it works can vary depending on how intelligence is conceived. The assumption of AI development is imitation (Turing, 1950). AI is an imitation of human rationality (Simon, 1957),

cognitive function (Russell and Norvig, 2010), capability to perform different tasks (Minsky, 1985), or structured thinking (Markram, 2006). AI, therefore, can mean different things. The concept that has been established for artificial intelligence is that of a machine's ability to learn from massive data – collected, stored, and processed with big data methodologies – to predict and simulate different issues. Artificial intelligence means the constitution of agents – which perceive and act – to achieve a goal, adopting various methodologies and approaches. These agents perceive and build a stream of inputs converted into a stream of actions – outputs (Russell, 2019).

In regulatory governance, the application of AI in different domains and sectors reshapes the effector's tools. AI systems play a pivotal role in the policy process to predict policy alternatives and solve problems. AI systems act as effectors' tools. They predict individual behaviors and use the predictive ability to change expectations and introduce incentives and behavioral changes (Dunleavy, 2016; Kosters and Van der Heijden, 2015). AI algorithms have the power to alter social orders (Danaher, 2016) by exercising a technocratic authority to make or support decisions autonomously.

Several uses of regulatory tools today comprise the application of AI. First, as a meta-policy tool, AI becomes ubiquitous in different solutions, producing prediction and simulation to solve different regulatory problems. For example, the distribution of benefits or authorizations can be carried out by autonomous decision systems. Second, AI can be applied to simulate the response to different policy issues or be used in audit systems to detect fraud and corruption and ensure reliability and compliance in resource use (Lima and Delen, 2020). AI can change the performance of authority tools by creating robust regulations.

The advance of AI allows us to state that, nowadays, public policy solutions require artificial general intelligence. Artificial intelligence has a temporal and trending classification that portrays its progress. Artificial narrow intelligence (ANI) means that algorithms cannot learn and do not mold or adapt to the input data. ANI focuses on solving a single problem or performing a single task. Artificial general intelligence (AGI) develops the ability to learn, and algorithms adapt and shape solutions more flexibly, solving different problems. AGI solutions require general intelligence to achieve a variety of goals and carry out a variety of tasks. Systems are designed to operate with adaptive learning to create other systems, solve various problems, and perform different tasks (Goertzel, 2014). Finally, superintelligence is possible when machines acquire awareness and think autonomously without the imitation requirement (Bostrom et al., 2020).

Algorithms occupy a central place in the analysis of AI solutions in regulatory governance. Algorithms are sequences of instructions or steps to solve a problem or perform a task. In terms of artificial general intelligence, machine-learning algorithms have been developed to tackle complex problems through fast sorting, analysis, and pattern recognition applied to massive amounts of data beyond human capacity to analyze (Domingos, 2015). Machine-learning algorithms are a "field of study that gives computers the ability to learn without being explicitly programmed" (Samuel, 1959). Machine-learning algorithms can be supervised when a predefined dataset incorporates training examples. Machine-learning algorithms can also be unsupervised, where the algorithms build patterns and classifications related to problems without being trained. Machine-learning algorithms involve different designs based on deep learning, computer vision, rule-based systems, natural language processing, neural networks, and speech recognition.

The advance of artificial intelligence places it as a meta-policy tool endowed with ubiquity to solve different regulatory problems and produce different impacts. The fact is that AI can automate policy design as it learns from the past. It has the adaptive capacity to shape solutions, change human behavior in society, predict and simulate new problems, and change the entire

logic of the application of policy tools: in particular, those related to state authority. However, artificial intelligence also demands design processes that cover different system logic problems, scope, and objectives.

When Policy Design Meets System Design

Public policy involves complex design activities performed by specialists and experts to create templates for government interventions in society. They mobilize tools to achieve policy objectives. The policy design dynamics consider the internal institutional environment and governance modes (Peters, 2018). Design dynamics depend on the calibration of tools. Calibration involves patterns and rules defined in governance modes and design spaces that shape a relationship between the policy means and goals (Howlett and Capano, 2020).

Big data and AI are emerging meta-policy tools. They also depend on design activities, requiring calibration and proper evaluation of the tool's application to achieve policy objectives adequately. If big data and AI are the tools of the policy tools, they are also part of complex design activity, demanding calibration, context, time, and the observation of design precepts such as coherence, consistency, and congruence to produce the expected effects. The adoption of big data and AI in public policy makes policy design activities meet system design activities. This encounter requires thinking about the activities of two distinct professional fields, requiring a science of the artificial that "is concerned with how things ought to be, with devising artifacts to attain goals" (Simon, 1969, 114).

Two styles inform the design of AI solutions. On the one hand is an empirical style performed by imitation of intelligence supported by observations of biology and psychology, creating complex architectures from several different modules. The scruffy is an AI design style embedded in confusing complexity. On the other hand, there is an analytical style, supported by general and organizing principles, interested in abstract conceptions of intelligence through mathematical and logical arguments to imitation. As this second approach is named, the neat style theorizes intelligence in ivory towers, disconnected from the real world (Abelson, 1981). Scruffy and neat played a profound debate on the foundations of AI system design, considering which approach could optimize intended outcomes. It appears that today, the neats have found more adherence and success, especially with complex systems based on neural networks and building perception from data collected with big data instruments (Halevy et al., 2009).

These styles for AI design consider the construction of artifacts that mobilize massive data to build a perception stream and produce outputs. At first, data represent the essential resource through which the input detection occurs so that AI algorithms produce the expected outputs, aiming at effects optimization. The rationale that involves the design of AI systems starts from a notion of utility, in which AI systems move by the rationality of cost and benefit (Russell, 2019). However, AI systems do not represent final or watertight solutions. Instead, decisions involving the AI system design are taken in contexts of ambiguity, in which designers need to choose between different streams of problems that make AI systems solutions that look for problems (Filgueiras, 2021). Big data and AI applied as regulatory tools face several problems regarding the ambiguity and uncertainties of regulation.

AI systems are not a neutral technology as they are politically oriented (Crawford, 2021). First, due to policy detectors, data are not neutral instruments but power technology (Gitelman and Jackson, 2013). Second, classifications that drive supervised machine-learning algorithms, for example, reproduce social structures of inequality. Likewise, unsupervised algorithms will reinforce these same inequalities by relating massive data to different questions (Joyce et al.,

2021). The result of this process is that AI-based effectors will produce solutions or carry out tasks in such a way as to produce deleterious effects on society, producing ineffective policy solutions (Filgueiras, 2021). For example, algorithms in the United States health system have recommended that black patients receive less health care than white patients in the same situation (Benjamin, 2019).

Another example is how AI algorithms produce technological redlines, segregating society into spaces of exclusion (Noble, 2018). Furthermore, big data instruments exasperate surveillance systems and directly affect citizens' privacy (Sanfilippo et al., 2020). Another extreme example is the emerging use of lethal autonomous weapons systems, which allow algorithms to make life-and-death decisions in conflict situations (Taddeo and Floridi, 2018). This set of problems has highlighted the need for creating governance modes that directly impact the design activities of big data and AI systems. AI and data governance modes guide system designers' practices by changing and shaping the calibration of detectors and effectors, especially in public administration, where system design meets policy design (Filgueiras, 2021).

Working with data requires governments to support and regulate the infrastructure necessary to collect, store, process, and share data. This infrastructure can be public or private. It makes up a shared arrangement that defines data governance. Governments may be responsible for collecting, storing, processing, and sharing data, mobilizing internal capabilities to handle data resources that support data-driven policy. Alternatively, governments can enter contracts with the data brokers' industry responsible for working with data and feed government systems (Crain, 2018). Governments can also enter cloud computing contracts, modifying data storage and processing logic, impacting sovereignty (Irion, 2012). Data governance is the construction of rules and responsibilities for the organization and implementation of data policy. It strengthens decision-making and accountability concerning data, understood as organizational resources (Benfeldt et al., 2020, Weber et al., 2009). Data governance will guide the calibration of detection tools, defining organizational principles and resources to define data access rules and policies for data qualification.

Concerning effectors, there is a growing demand for AI governance. AI governance responds to ethical and regulatory challenges to guide the design and deployment of AI systems (Taeihagh, 2021). The objective of AI governance is to reconcile a consequentialist logic of optimization that guides the system design – scruffy and neat – with a logic of appropriateness, ensuring decision-making processes, with the participation of policymakers, with transparency and algorithmic accountability, data governance, and validation and explicability of AI systems (Filgueiras, 2021). AI governance aims to guide system designers and policymakers from institutional frameworks to design systems and link them as policy tools. This connection depends on the choice of policy alternatives to produce systems that make it possible to achieve goals, reducing ambiguities and uncertainties regarding AI in public policy. When designing AI systems, policymakers must calibrate policy tools along with the calibration of digital tools, aiming for instrumentation congruence, consistency, and coherence.

The emergence of big data and artificial intelligence as meta-policy tools has promoted the encounter between policy and system design. The application of digital tools requires policymakers to work with opaque technologies in contexts of ambiguities. It requires a permanent calibration and adjustment of systems to meet those policy goals and public targets. The emergence of AI as an essential policy effector for contemporary governments opens a series of new challenges. They demand adequate governance modes that accurately deploy digital technologies and drive governments to achieve their goals. The challenges posed by emerging technologies require institutional governance frameworks that improve the application and control of digital technologies during policy design processes.

Final Remarks – The Future of Regulatory Tools

Big data and artificial intelligence in public policy find several challenges, but they also provide revolutionary governments. First, big data and AI increase decision-making capacity since machines can extract and analyze a large volume of data by capturing varied social behaviors and providing different interventions that change or maintain the social order. Second, the application of big data and AI can change the interaction between citizens and public policy through the observation of the performance of chatbots, autonomous vehicles, facial recognition systems in urban space, IoT solutions, and blockchain applications in various transactions and businesses. Third, big data and AI expand policy simulation capacities, providing anticipation of demands, rules enforcement, predictability, and accuracy. Fourth, big data and artificial intelligence revolutionize regulatory tools by acting as detectors and effectors, respectively. They optimize the discretionary and authoritative aspects of the tools, and they can extract and understand situations in society and build interventions that alter target population behavior in the policy dynamics. Finally, big data and AI occupy an increasing institutional place in policy design through autonomous decision systems. Digital tools have revolutionized regulation as they change policy dynamics, connect outcomes to implementation, automate decisions, and pose new challenges for policy and system design. In our argument, big data and AI are meta-regulatory tools on the frontier of knowledge, demanding accurate calibration processes within the policy design.

As technological development advances in big data and artificial intelligence, new challenges arise when governments employ digital tools. In the current scenario, the advance of artificial general intelligence poses a series of challenges for policymakers. The main one is understanding how to calibrate and govern an artificial general intelligence that works with dynamic algorithms, which change as the data presents new trends and problems. AGI is endowed with full autonomy to make decisions and carry out tasks. If AGI is autonomous, plastic, and flexible, how to calibrate these digital tools that gradually take on the contours of agency? AI governance must target several ethical and political issues by creating institutional frameworks shaping actors' behavior in designing and deploying AI applied to public policy. A future dominated by superintelligence creates new problems with conscious and fully autonomous AI, which demands a transition to another type of society and different policy vectors (Bostrom et al., 2020).

The future of regulatory tools is that big data and AI algorithms become institutions. Algorithms gradually occupy an institutional space in societies, changing different aspects of social life, shaping collective and individual human behaviors. As institutions, algorithms work as automatic (often autonomous) decision systems that define what is allowed, hindered, facilitated, or made impossible. Also, they define positions within society's organizational structures. Moreover, algorithms gradually become the norm – formal or informal – and they require compliance by actors. In other words, the big data and AI algorithms will be regulation tools and the regulator itself, establishing a new power agency in which compliance and social control depend on algorithms that codify rules and act to enforce them.

References

Abelson, R.P. (1981). Constraint, Construal, and Cognitive Science. Third Annual Conference of the Cognitive Science Society, Berkeley: Cognitive Science Society, 1–9.

Athey, S. (2017). Beyond Prediction: Using Big Data for Policy Problems. *Science*, 355 (6324), 483–485. https://doi.org/10.1126/science.aal4321

Baldwin, R., Cave, M., Lodge, M. (2012). *Understanding Regulation: Theory, Strategy, and Practice*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.

Benfeldt, O., Persson, J.S., Madsen, S. (2020). Data Governance as a Collective Action Problem. *Information Systems Frontier*, 22 (1), 299–313. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10796-019-09923-z

Benjamin, R. (2019). Assessing Risk, Automating Racism. *Science*, 366 (6464), 421–422. https://doi.org/10.1126/science.aaz3873

Bostrom, N., Dafoe, A., Flynn, C. (2020). Public Policy and Superintelligent AI: A Vector Field Approach. In: Liao, S.M. (ed.). *Ethics of Artificial Intelligence*. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2020.

Capano, G. (2017). Policy Design Spaces in Reforming Governance in Higher Education: The Dynamics in Italy and the Netherlands. *Higher Education*, 75, 675–694. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10734-017-0158-5

Crain, M. (2018). The Limits of Transparency: Data Brokers and Commodification. *New Media & Society*, 20 (1), 88–104. https://doi.org/10.1177%2F1461444816657096

Crawford, K. (2021). *Atlas of AI: Power, Politics, and the Planetary Costs of Artificial Intelligence*. New Haven, CT: Yale University Press.

Dai, X. (2020). Enforcing Law and Norms for Good Citizens: One View of China's Social Credit System Project. *Development*, 63, 38–43. https://doi.org/10.1057/s41301-020-00244-2

Danaher, J. (2016). The Threat of Algocracy: Reality, Resistance and Accommodation. *Philosophy & Technology*, 29 (3), 245–268. https://doi.org/10.1007/s13347-015-0211-1

Desouza, K.C., Jacob, B. (2017). Big Data in the Public Sector: Lessons for Practitioners and Scholars. *Administration & Society*, 49 (7), 1043–1064. https://doi.org/10.1177/0095399714555751

Domingos, P. (2015). *The Master Algorithm: How the Quest for Ultimate Machine Learning Will Remake Our World*. New York: Basic Books.

Dunleavy, P. (2016). Big Data and Policy Learning. In: Stoker, G., Evans, M. (eds.). *Evidence-Based Policy Making in the Social Sciences: Methods That Matter*. Chicago: Policy Press.

Dunleavy, P., Margetts, H. (2013). The Second Wave of Digital-Era Governance: A Quasi-Paradigm for Government on the Web. *Philosophical Transactions of the Real Society*, 371 (1987), 1–17. https://doi.org/10.1098/rsta.2012.0382

Dunlop, C., Kamkhaji, J.C., Radaelli, C., Taffoni, G. (2021). Measuring Design Diversity: A New Application of Ostrom's Rule Types. *Policy Studies Journal*, early view, 1–21. https://doi.org/10.1111/psj.12440

Filgueiras, F. (2021). New Pythias of Public Administration: Ambiguities and Choice in AI Systems and Challenges of Governance. *AI & Society*, 36 (3), 1–14. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00146-021-01201-4

Filgueiras, F., Almeida, V. (2021). *Governance for the Digital World: Neither More State Nor More Market*. London: Palgrave.

Frischmann, B., Selinger, E. (2018). *Re-Engineering Humanity*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Giest, S. (2017). Big Data for Policymaking: Fad or FastTrack? *Policy Sciences*, 50, 367–382. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11077-017-9293-1

Gitelman, L., Jackson, V. (2013). Introduction. In: Gitelman, L. (ed.). *Raw Data Is an Oxymoron*. Cambridge, MA: MIT Press.

Goertzel, B. (2014). Artificial General Intelligence: Concept, State of the Art, and Future Prospects. *Journal of Artificial General Intelligence*, 5 (1), 1–46. https://doi.org/10.2478/jagi-2014-0001

Halevy, A., Norvig, P., Pereira, F. (2009). The Unreasonable Effectiveness of Data. *IEEE Intelligent Systems*, 24 (2), 8–12. https://doi.org/10.1109/MIS.2009.36

Hess, C., Ostrom, E. (2007). *Understanding Knowledge as a Commons*. Cambridge, MA: MIT Press.

Hood, C., Margetts, H. (2007). *The Tools of Government in the Digital Age*. London: Palgrave.

Hood, C., Rothstein, H., Baldwin, R., Rees, J., Spackman, M. (1999). Where Risk Society Meets the Regulatory State: Exploring Variations in Risk Regulation Regimes. *Risk Management*, 1(1), 21–34. https://doi.org/10.1057/palgrave.rm.8240012

Howlett, M. (2005). What Is a Policy Instrument? Tools, Mixes, and Implementation Styles. In: Eliadis, P., Hill, M.G., Howlett, M. (eds.). *Design Government: From Instruments to Governance*. Montreal: McGill-Queens' University Press, 31–50.

Howlett, M. (2014). From Old to New Policy Design: Design Thinking beyond Markets and Collaborative Governance. *Policy Sciences*, 47 (3), 197–207. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11077-014-9199-0

Howlett, M. (2019). *Designing Public Policies: Principles and Instruments*. London: Routledge.

Howlett, M., Capano, G. (2020). The Knows and Unknows of Policy Instruments Analysis: Policy Tools and the Current Research Agenda on Policy Mixes. *Sage Open*, 10 (1), 1–13. https://doi.org/10.1177/2158244019900568

Irion, K. (2012). Government Cloud Computing and National Data Sovereignty. *Policy & Internet*, 4 (3–4), 40–71. https://doi.org/10.1002/poi3.10

Jordana, J., Levi-Faur, D. (2004). The Politics of Regulation in the Age of Governance. In: Jordana, J., Levi-Faur, D. (eds.). *The Politics of Regulation*. Cheltenham: Edward-Elgar.

Joyce, K., Smith-Doerr, L., Alegria, S., Bell, B., Cruz, T., Hoffman, S.G., Noble, S.U., Shestakofsky, B. (2021). Toward a Sociology of Artificial Intelligence: A Call for Research on Inequalities and Structural Change. *Socius: Sociological Research for a Dynamic World*, 7, 1–11. https://doi.org/10.1177/2378023121999581

Kang, J.S., Kuznetsova, P., Luca, M., Choi, Y. (2013). Where Not to Eat? Improving Public Policy by Predicting Hygiene Inspections Using Online Reviews. Proceedings of the 2013 Conference on Empirical Methods in Natural Language Processing. Seattle: Association for Computational Linguistics (ACL), 1443–1448. Available at: www.aclweb.org/anthology/D13-1150/

Kitchin, R. (2013). Big Data and Human Geography: Opportunities, Challenges, and Risks. *Dialogues in Human Geography*, 3 (3), 262–267. www.doi.org/10.1177/2043820613513388

Koop, C., Lodge, M. (2017). What Is Regulation? An Interdisciplinary Concept Analysis. *Regulation & Governance*, 11 (1), 95–108. https://doi.org/10.1111/rego.12094

Kosters, M., Van der Heijden, J. (2015). From Mechanism to Virtue: Evaluating Nudge Theory. *Evaluation*, 21 (3), 276–291. https://doi.org/10.1177/1356389015590218

Lascoumes, P., Le Gales, P. (2007). Introduction: Understanding Public Policy through Its Instruments: From the Nature of Instruments to the Sociology of Public Policy Instrumentation. *Governance*, 20 (1), 1–21. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1468-0491.2007.00342.x

Lima, M.S.M., Delen, D. (2020). Predicting and Explaining Corruption across Countries: A Machine Learning Approach. *Government Information Quarterly*, 37 (1), 1–15. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.giq.2019.101407

Markram, H. (2006). The Blue Brain Project. *Nature Reviews Neuroscience*, 7 (2), 153–160.

Mayer-Schönberger, V., Cukier, K. (2013). *Big Data: A Revolution That Will Transform How We Live, Work and Think*. Boston: Eamon Dolan/Houghton Mifflin Harcourt.

Minsky, M. (1985). *The Society of Mind*. New York: Simon and Schuster.

Noble, S.U. (2018). *Algorithms of Oppression: How Search Engines Reinforce Racism*. New York: New York University Press.

Ostrom, E. (2005). *Understanding Institutional Diversity*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press.

Peters, B.G. (2018). *Policy Problems and Policy Design*. Cheltenham: Edward Elgar.

Radaelli, C.M., Dunlop, C.A. (2013). Learning in the European Union: Theoretical Lenses and Meta-Theory. *Journal of European Public Policy*, 20 (6), 923–940. https://doi.org/10.1080/13501763.2013.781832

Roberts, H., Cowls, J., Morley, J., Taddeo, M., Wang, V., Floridi, L. (2021). The Chinese Approach to Artificial Intelligence: An Analysis of Policy, Ethics, and Regulation. *AI & Society*, 36 (1), 59–77. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00146-020-00992-2

Russell, S.J. (2019). *Human Compatible: Artificial Intelligence and the Problem of Control*. New York: Viking Books.

Russell, S.J., Norvig, P. (2010). *Artificial Intelligence: A Modern Approach*. Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice-Hall.

Samuel, A. (1959). Some Studies in Machine Learning Using the Game of Checkers. *IBM Journal of Research and Development*, 44 (1.2), 210–229. https://doi.org/10.1147/rd.33.0210

Sanfilippo, M.R., Shvartzshnaider, Y., Reyes, I., Nissenbaum, H., Egelman, S. (2020). Disaster Privacy/Privacy Disaster. *Journal of the Association for Information Science and Technology*, 71 (9), 1002–1014. https://doi.org/10.1002/asi.24353

Simon, H.A. (1957). *Models of Man: Social and Rational*. New York: John Wiley.

Simon, H.A. (1969). *The Sciences of the Artificial*. Cambridge, MA: MIT Press.

Taddeo, M., Floridi, L. (2018). Regulate Artificial Intelligence to Avert Cyber Arms Race. *Nature*, 556, 296–298. https://doi.org/10.1038/d41586-018-04602-6

Taeihagh, A. (2021). Governance of Artificial Intelligence. *Policy and Society*, 40, 1–21. https://doi.org/10.1080/14494035.2021.1928377

Turing, A. (1950). Computing Machinery and Intelligence. *Mind: A Quarterly Review of Psychology and Philosophy*, 59 (236), 433–460.

Veale, M., Brass, I. (2019). Administration by Algorithm? Public Management Meets Public Sector Machine Learning. In: Yeung, K., Lodge, M. (eds.). *Algorithmic Regulation*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.

Vedung, E. (1998). Policy Instruments: Typologies and Theories. In: Bemelmans-Videc, M.L., Rist, R.C., Vedung, E. (eds.). *Carrots, Sticks, and Sermons: Policy Instruments and Their Evaluation*. Piscataway, NJ & London: Transaction Publishers, 21–58.

Weber, K., Otto, B., Oesterle, H. (2009). One Size Does Not Fit All: A Contingency Approach to Data Governance. *Journal of Data and Information Quality (JDIQ)*, 1 (1), 4–8. https://doi.org/10.1145/1515693.1515696

Williamson, B. (2014) Knowing Public Services: Cross-Sector Intermediaries and Algorithmic Governance in Public Sector Reform. *Public Policy & Administration*, 29 (4), 292–312. https://doi.org/10.1177/0952076714529139

Yeung, K. (2018). Algorithmic Regulation: A Critical Interrogation. *Regulation & Governance*, 12, 505–523. https://doi.org/10.1111/rego.12158

42

THE FUTURE OF FINANCIAL TOOLS

Will Social Impact Bonds Yield Results?

Daniel Bromberg

Social impact bonds (SIB) emerged in the early 2000s in the United Kingdom. Similar to a pay-for-performance scheme, SIBs establish a financial structure in which the service provider receives payment – and potentially performance bonuses – upon the achievement of targeted goals. They have primarily been utilized to attain long-term social goals which have not gained support through traditional political processes. Advocates of SIB argue that they can address pressing social needs through a collaborative model that spreads risk across both the public and private sectors. Ideally, they are used to offset government expenditures while simultaneously stimulating growth. The combination of these factors is what many think makes these an innovative tool. Detractors suggest they are nothing more than a performance-based contract and rarely alleviate government risk. This chapter will provide an overview of the historical use of SIBs, their growth in use throughout the world and the prospects of SIBs playing a role as a social policy tool.

Introduction and Definition

Social impact bonds (SIB) emerged in the early years following the great recession in 2008. As Neyland (2018) notes, times of "crisis and austerity became a means to give new momentum to a series of experimental ways to shape the social investment market" (p. 494). The goal of SIBs is to offer an alternative funding mechanism to address challenging social problems.

Definitions of SIBs abound, often clouding the nuts and bolts of the instrument. The OECD offers the following definition:

> A SIB is an innovative financing mechanism in which governments or commissioners enter into agreements with social service providers, such as social enterprises or non-profit organisations, and investors to pay for the delivery of pre-defined social outcomes (Social Finance, 2011; OECD, 2015). More precisely, a bond-issuing organisation raises funds from private-sector investors, charities or foundations. These funds are distributed to service providers to cover their operating costs. If the measurable outcomes agreed upfront are achieved, the government or the commissioner proceeds with payments to the bond-issuing organisation or the investors. In reality, the term

 DOI: 10.4324/9781003163954-51

> "bond" is more of a misnomer. In financial terms, SIBs are not real bonds but rather future contracts on social outcomes.
>
> *(OECD, 2016, p. 4)*

The United States Department of Labor defines them as follows:

> The Pay for Success (PFS) model is a new way of financing social services to help governments target limited dollars to achieve a positive, measurable outcome. Under the Pay for Success model, a government agency commits funds to pay for a specific outcome that is achieved within a given timeframe. The financial capital to cover the operating costs of achieving the outcome is provided by independent investors. In return for accepting the risks of funding the project, the investors may expect a return on their investment if the project is successful; however, payment of the committed funds by the government agency is contingent on the validated achievement of results.

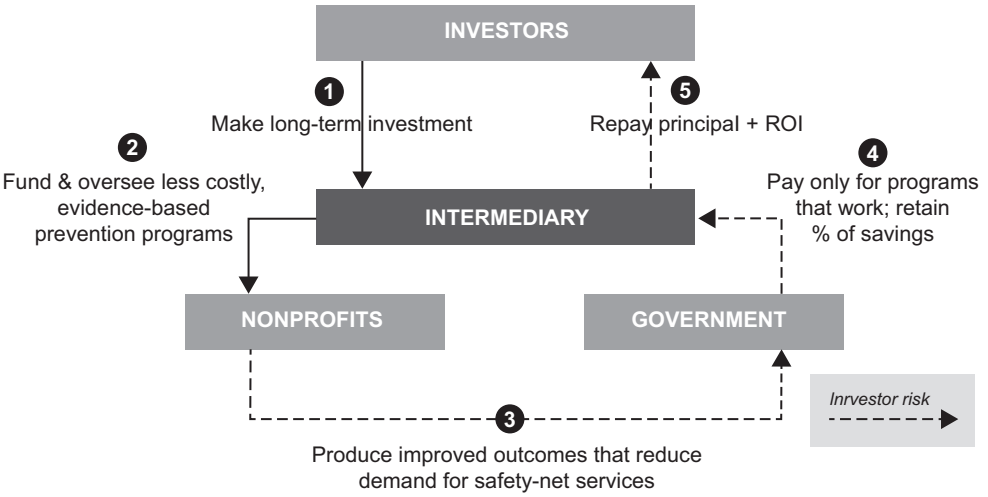
While the terms *bond* and *innovative* may imply certain conditions, an SIB is neither a bond nor necessarily innovative. An SIB is a pay-for-performance contract in which an investor, typically coupled with government and philanthropic funding, provide capital to fund a specific project. If specific performance targets are reached, the funder receives their initial investment and a return on their investment. The language attached to SIBs has caused both confusion and criticism. The confusion stems from the implication that this is a market-based financial tool. The criticism stems from those who claim SIBs further promote the financialization of government. Proponents of SIBs note that the "innovation" is what allows governments to leverage otherwise inaccessible capital to address pressing social problems.

The first SIB was launched in 2010 in the United Kingdom by Social Finance UK. The initial SIB focused on reducing offender recidivism at HMP Peterborough. Similar initiatives have emerged in the United States, termed Pay for Success (PFS), and in Australia, termed Social Benefit Bonds (Dear et al., 2016). The first US-based SIB was issued by the city of New York in 2013 to reduce recidivism at Rikers Island prison by young (16-to-18-year-old) offenders.

Tool Description

An SIB is a policy tool structured to bring several actors together. As Lester Salamon (2002) defines, a "tool, or instrument, of public action can be defined as an identifiable method through which collective action is structured to address a public problem" (p. 1642). An SIB most closely resembles a pay-for-performance (PFP) contract in which the service provider receives payments based on certain pre-established targets. The distinction between an SIB and a PFP is that an SIB is reliant on multiple actors to finance, evaluate, and provide services to the target client. The first step is for the government entity to contract with an intermediary who will help facilitate the relationship. Following this initial contract, the intermediary will initiate the remainder of the process as diagramed in Figure 42.1.

The key actors are a government, a non-profit service provider, investors, an external evaluator, and the facilitating intermediary. The process is quite simple. A service provider and an intervention are identified, capital is raised to fund the service provision and targets are identified for the service to reach. In theory, the targets identified will save the government money, creating excess capital. The excess capital is then utilized to return the initial investment with



1	An intermediary issues the SIB and raises capital from private investors.
2	The intermediary transfers the SIB proceeds to nonprofit service providers, which use the funds as working capital to scale evidence-based prevention programs. Throughout the life of the instrument, the intermediary would coordinate all SIB parties, provide operating oversight, direct cash flows, and monitor the investment.
3	By providing effective prevention programs, the nonprofits improve social outcomes and reduce demand for more expensive safety-net services.
4	An independent evaluator determines whether the target outcomes have been achieved according to the terms of the government contract. If they have, the government pays the intermediary a percentage of its savings and retains the rest. If outcomes have not been achieved, the government owes nothing.
5	If the outcomes have been achieved, investors would be repaid their principal and a rate of return. Returns may be structured on a sliding scale: the better the outcomes, the higher the return (up to an agreed cap).

Figure 42.1 Social Impact Bond Processes

Source: A New Tool for Scaling Impact: How Social Impact Bonds Can Mobilize Private Capital to Advance Social Good, Social Finance

a predetermined return based on various target thresholds. Promoters of SIBs note that by leveraging private capital, the financial risk is shifted from service providers and governments, creating an otherwise unattainable solution. As Jeffrey Liebman puts it,

> Today, most providers would be hard-pressed to come up with sufficient capital to provide services up front and only receive payments after performance targets were met. And most social service providers would be unable to absorb the risk of failing to meet performance targets. But in a social impact bond scheme, private investors provide the upfront capital and absorb most of the risk.
>
> *(p. 2)*

Size and Scope of SIBS Worldwide

The most detailed tracking of SIBs is done by Social Finance UK – the initiating organization for the first SIB developed. The Brookings Institution also tracks SIBs but offers a broader view than Social Finance UK. The organizations offer different schemes to classify SIBs; therefore, both are used to provide a comprehensive understanding of the current conditions. Social Finance UK is tracking 138 SIBs in more than 25 different countries. Most of these SIBs are in the UK (47) and the US (26), with the Netherlands (11) and Australia (10) the only other countries with a double-digit number of SIBs. All the other countries have fewer than 10, with most having 5 or fewer SIBs. According to the same Social Finance UK database, SIBs have most dominantly been used in workforce development (44). The next highest categories are housing/homelessness (23), health (22), and child and family welfare (20). Education, criminal justice, poverty, and environment round out the remainder of SIBs issued.

The Brookings Institution has been tracking and evaluating the progress of SIBs since 2010 and currently identifies 201 SIBs. Leading this project, Gustafsson-Wright (2020) reports there has been $421 million in initial investments totally, over $460 million committed in return on investment. The average investment is about $3 million, which is skewed slightly due to a handful of very large impact bonds (over $20 million). There was also steady growth in impact bonds until 2017 and 2018, when the introduction of new bonds doubled to 45 and 48, respectively (Gustafsson-Wright, 2020). Target populations of SIBs tend to be those grouped in younger age brackets with over 100 bonds reaching populations under the age of 30 (Gustafsson-Wright and Osborne, 2020). Further Gustafsson-Wright and Osborne (2020) note that over two million people have received services from SIBs with populations nearly split between high-income countries and low-income countries.

Example Cases

HMP Peterborough

In 2010, HMP Peterborough became the first SIB launched worldwide. The focus of the SIB was on a sample of 1,000 offenders sentenced to 12 months or less in Peterborough Prison (Social Finance UK). The individuals were provided with a host of services both prior to release and after release. Social Finance UK explains, "Working with offenders both pre- and post-release, it provides a holistic service including support with housing, training and employment, parenting, substance abuse, and mental health problems." The initiative had a minimum threshold of a 7.5% reduction in rates of recidivism. This was calculated based on a matched sample – matching those receiving the services at Peterborough with a like sample of those not receiving the services at a different prison.[1] This was evaluated by independent auditors on two waves of individuals. According to Anders and Dorsett (2017), the combined reduction in recidivism for the group who received the services was 9.02% – higher than the 7.5% reduction threshold –triggering a return on investment. All investors received their initial principal and a 3% return. By most accounts, HMP Peterborough can be seen as a success. Service recipients recidivated at a lesser rate than those offered other interventions. Some criticize the evaluation model, but most acknowledge the success of the effort.

Rikers Island

The first SIB launched in the US was at Rikers Island – a prison in New York City. Both the arrangement and the outcome are what detractors frequently cite about the problem with

SIBs. Like other SIBs, there was a government entity, private investors, a service provider, and an independent evaluator. However, in addition to the private investor, there was also a loan guarantee provided by a private philanthropy, reducing the risk to the investor by 80%. The intervention, unlike the Peterborough example, was cognitive behavioral therapy provided to a group of offenders. Ultimately, the Rikers Island SIB failed to reach initial thresholds of success, causing the termination of the program. According to Vera, the independent evaluator,

> The program did not lead to reductions in recidivism for participants. The change in recidivism for the eligible 16- to 18-year-olds, adjusted for external factors, was not statistically significant when compared to the matched historical comparison group. Furthermore, the 19-year-olds and the study group (16- to 18-year-olds) displayed similar trends in rates of recidivism over time, indicating that any shifts were the result of factors other than the ABLE program. The program did not reduce recidivism and therefore did not meet the pre-defined threshold of success of a 10 percent reduction in recidivism bed days.
>
> *(Vera Institute of Justice, 2015, p. 2)*

One can interpret the failure of this program as evidence that such initiatives are fraught with challenges. MDRC, the intermediary that worked on the project, noted that the challenges related to the intervention became evident early and offer some lessons for all to learn about SIBs and the Rikers SIB specifically (Berlin, 2016). They suggest that there might have been a cultural shift at Rikers which may leave a legacy. There are other lessons that organizations involved have gleaned from the experience. John Anderson, who leads Bloomberg Philanthropies Government Innovation Programs, one of the project investors, writes that the Rikers SIB created an opportunity to try an innovative approach to a persistent public problem without taxpayer dollars and "even when budgets are tight." He further notes that due to the financial support, the organizations were able to collect key data from which to learn – a luxury that is often missing from government-run programs.

The Commonwealth of Massachusetts

The Commonwealth of Massachusetts has initiated multiple social impact bonds, with the largest being a $22-million project to reduce recidivism. In addition, the Commonwealth has a workforce development project initiated for about $12 million and a project focused on housing and homelessness for $3.4 million. While the structure of each of these projects is different, each combines capital from for-profit investors alongside philanthropic contributions. In the case of the Massachusetts recidivism project, there are three investors – Goldman Sachs ($9 million – for-profit), the Kresge Foundation ($1.5 million – non-profit), and Living Cities ($1.5 million – non-profit). The structure of the agreement is in the form of a loan for which Goldman Sachs is the "senior lender" and therefore recoups their loss prior to the other lenders. In addition to the private investment, there is additional philanthropic support totaling $6 million. Lastly, this project is reliant on a US Department of Labor grant of $11.7 million. The project was supposed to end on December 31, 2019, three years after it was initiated; however, a statement by the intermediary notes that they extended to project for five more years – through 2024 – due to slow enrollment in the initial phase of the project.

Other Projects

Within the US, many states have enacted legislation to enable these arrangements to take place. Further, there have been increased funding and incentives provided by the US federal

government since 2014. According to Results for America, SIBs offer bipartisan appeal, which has led to the creation of three pieces of legislation: the Second Chance Act, the Workforce Innovation and Opportunity Act, and the Every Student Succeeds Act. Since 2014, these pieces of legislation have enabled the Corporation for National and Community Service, the Department of Labor, and the Department of Education to promote and fund SIBs across the US. In 2018, the US Congress passed the Social Impact Partnerships to Pay for Results Act (SIPPRA). As part of the act, Congress appropriated $100 million to fund social impact partnership demonstration projects.

Literature

While many ideas have emerged about SIBs, Fraser et al. (2018) identify three major themes. In an extensive review of both the academic and gray literature, they examined over 80 articles on SIBs. First, there are those that discuss the "competing public and private values." This is often framed in similar terms as discussions about New Public Management (NPM) and the utilization of businesslike techniques in government. The second emergent theme relates to results-based management and the reliance on performance metrics to manage. As there is an extensive literature on performance management in public administration, there is much to say about its reintroduction utilizing a novel tool. Lastly, Fraser et al. (2018) identify articles written about risk shifting. That is, SIBs offer an opportunity to shift the financial risk from the public to the private sector. As with any new initiative, there remains a good deal of variation, allowing for each of these themes to emerge, dependent on the particular way the tool is used.

SIBs have been adaptable to various environmental constraints, be they political or financial in nature. Therefore, they offer a degree of "strategic ambiguity" (Tan et al., 2021, p. 2), allowing them to shape shift dependent on needs. For one audience, they may be the financialization of the public sector, whereas for another, they may be a philanthropic effort aimed at solving a social ill (Tan et al., 2021). This has led others to call SIBs an "imaginative financial innovation" (Sinclair et al., 2021, p. 11), implying a sort of fantastical association with the tool. Regardless of the description, the result leaves people confused as to the nature of the tool itself.

By using the term *bond*, there is an immediate association with a financial instrument, but an SIB is, at best, a third cousin to an actual bond. As Fraser et al. (2018) write

> SIBs do not follow the financial logic of a "bond," as the return is contingent, rather like equity, on the outturn of the projects being financed. And there is yet no indication that any significant financial market for SIBs may develop between financiers, after the project is initially established.
>
> *(p. 5)*

The linguistic gymnastics that one must do to describe an SIB as a financial instrument suggests the inconsistency between the name and the mechanism. Maier and Meyer (2017) note that there are many variations in the how an SIB is structured. They write, the "investor may be philanthropic, profit-, or blended value-oriented. The investor may take on all or a part of the risk of non-performance, with or without guarantee of principal, with longer or shorter time to maturity" (p. 1). They continue to suggest that SIBs have characteristics "like a derivative," in that the value is only seen once a "particular event" takes place (p. 1). Then again, maybe it is not like a derivative because there is "up-front capital that covers" the cost of the project (Maier and Meyer, 2017, p. 1). Bromberg and Justice (2016) suggest that a close comparison might be a pension obligation bond (POB), in which bonds are issued to cover underfunded pension funds.

While this is not the optimal solution as it essentially indicates a lack of upfront funding, it does solve an immediate problem. The implication is that if these entrenched social problems were addressed initially, creating an innovative funding mechanism would not be necessary. Bromberg and Justice (2016) also note that POBs "disguise risks, conceal and inflate costs and commit future legislators and taxpayers to bear the burden of their predecessors' deferral of timely and adequate investment" (p. 195). The primary difference is that the risk in POBs has to do with the financial stability of pension plans, whereas the risk with SIBs is very squarely on the individuals receiving an experimental treatment.

By integrating "philanthropy, venture capitalism, performance management, and social program finance into an innovative new mix" (Warner, 2013, p. 304), SIBs do introduce a new mechanism to fund social programs. The mechanism, however, carries with it considerable concerns. There exist some of the typical criticisms levied at businesslike practices used in the public sector. Tan et al. (2021) note the difference in openness between financial instruments and traditional government policy tools. Whereas financial tools are built on closed exchanges, public sector tools are transparent. This creates scenarios in which accountability may be at least variable but, at its worst, untenable. There are also several considerations related to relying on specific measurement standards and targets. As Warner (2013) reminds us, there are issues related to skimming populations to ensure targets can be reached. There are also attempts to game the system by cherry-picking specific individuals (Carter, 2021). Moreover this can lead to increased "transaction costs of program design, budget liability and risk, and potential stifling of further program innovation in order to ensure continued private returns" (Warner, 2013, p. 304).

The transaction cost of an SIB is something one must carefully consider. At a minimum, there are four partners (government, investor, evaluator, service provider) involved in an SIB. More than likely, there are twice as many partners. As Demel (2012) writes, "Think about the resources expended by each of these parties, and their lawyers, in the negotiation and execution of a SIB" (p. 505). This cost is often increased in the initial phases of the SIB, both for governments and for all other parties (Giacomantonio, 2017). These increased costs have the potential to drive investors toward other instruments like basic grants, which will more than likely have lower transaction costs (Giacomantonio, 2017).

The Massachusetts recidivism SIB offers a telling example. First, there are multiple investors, multiple non-profit organizations, two evaluation organizations, and multiple government entities. The Commonwealth initially received a grant from the federal government that carries with it several initial and ongoing transaction costs. Then, once that was initiated, a few other agreements and contracts had to be established. In the first year alone, Pandey et al. (2018) conclude that transaction costs in the Massachusetts recidivism SIB reached 30% of project costs. Giacomantonio (2017) suggests most grants carry a transaction cost of 12%. What incentive exists for impact investors to use a tool that drives up transaction costs? One of the only viable answers is that governments absorb those costs, relieving private investors. Therefore Giacomantonio (2017) concludes,

> Based on the analysis in this paper, under the kinds of conditions in which one should reasonably imagine a government choosing to use a SIB, it is unlikely that SIBs could ever represent a sound investment strategy for an investor interested in generating even a modest return, unless substantial incentives or guarantees are provided by government or third parties (in which case, the financial viability of these vehicles has to be questioned, particularly to governments such as the UK's that are operating under austerity).
>
> *(p. 64)*

Unlike traditional bonds, as political risks increase, governments are less likely to offer large enough incentives to encourage proper investment. This leads to multiple reactions by both markets and governments. Rangan and Chase (2015) note two effects. First, governments may recognize high performance and high rates of return, encouraging them to look for more efficiencies. In doing so, they may heighten targets and or reduce rates of return. This would lead to decreased investment as the upside for investors would be limited. Hence, the natural tendency of governments to reduce risk may still drive behavior related to SIBs. Beyond these, there are a host of more generalized arguments like those levied at NPM initiatives. In addition, a new set of concerns arises specifically related to SIBs and the social problems they are trying to alleviate.

Mainly, there are ethical considerations which concern many. Morley (2021) suggests that the tool itself may not be unethical

> but that many SIBs are nevertheless at high risk of being unethical because they are characterized by information asymmetries, power imbalances and financial incentive structures, any of which can lead to a failure of informed consent, poor decision-making by vulnerable individuals, unfair contractual arrangements or a denial of service.
>
> *(Morley, 2021, p. 14)*

Ultimately, SIBs are experimenting on vulnerable populations. They incentivize testing techniques by leveraging private investment and leaving individuals at risk. Further, as Sinclair et al. (2021) write, these tools are transforming "service users into 'fictitious commodities'" (p. 3). While the failure of a service might mean a decreased return for an investor, the failure of that service might mean returning to prison for the client.

The logic that hinges success on the individual presents additional ethical considerations. The basic argument is that by shifting responsibility to these individuals, SIB solutions fail to address the root of the problem (Dowling, 2017; Ogman, 2019). Take, for example, the Rikers Island SIB. Behavior modification therapy was implemented "without having first shown their [offenders'] behaviors to be the cause of their incarceration in the first place" (Ogman, 2019, p. 12). Clearly, root causes of behavior have both individual and societal contexts. One may question the ethical wisdom of decontextualizing these individuals from society. This logic further destroys what many believe to be the role of governments – to build supports rather than to solely "reduce welfare dependency and foster the self-sufficiency of individuals" (Dowling, 2017, p. 17). The creation of targets aimed at individual behaviors furthers the idea that the solution can be "found at the level of its symptom" (Dowling, 2017, p. 22), rather than more broadly addressing the systematic problems. Ultimately, while many may see this as a reasonable shift toward individual responsibility, it is coupled with a more concerning broader shift in capital.

Both government and philanthropic capital have been used to secure private investment. In certain cases, such capital has provided downside protection for investors along with increased profit. Ogman (2019) suggests that this model does not create "shared value" for both public and private actors. Rather, by creating loan guarantees and paying for the high transaction costs, private investment takes on little risk. Hence, governments and non-profits are taking limited capital and securing the risk of private investment. They are furthering "(a)n entrepreneurial theory of social change" that "puts centre-stage private individuals as agents of social change. These private individuals are often high-net worth individuals who shape public agendas based on their views of how society should be organised, using their private wealth to do so" (Dowling, 2017, p. 23). Ultimately, this view suggests that not only do government and philanthropic investment continue to pay for social services but, in doing so, they relinquish their decision-making authority to choose the intervention.

SIBs are not without their supporters, and those supporters make many claims. The initial claim is that governments are unable to make appropriate investments to track performance and make decisions based on results, allowing inadequate programs to sustain over long periods of time (Liebman, 2011). SIBs, on the other hand, place evidence-based decision-making at the center, allowing outcome achievement to drive decision-making. Further, SIBs shift risk to the private sector while increasing funding to solve intractable social problems. Liebman (2011) identifies six challenges that governments traditionally face considering social problems related to timing and measurement of programs. SIBs, according to Liebma, have the potential to alleviate if not remove all these challenges. By raising private capital and using professional evaluators, SIBs increase government and non-profit service providers' willingness to take risks that they would have otherwise been unable to take. Both Liebman and others offer criteria as to when a SIB might be the best approach. Social Finance UK offers the following criteria:

> Identifiable populations with complex, cross-agency needs, who require tailored interventions, are not being served. . . .
>
> Current spending has poor or undetermined outcomes. . . .
>
> There are high financial and political costs to society and government in not addressing the social issues. . . .
>
> There is a benefit to using external investment to provide risk capital and assume innovation and implementation risk for new or evidenced-based programs. . . .
>
> There are social sector partners who can deliver effective services, but there is an element of uncertainty about what outcomes can actually be achieved.
>
> *(Dear et al., 2016, p. 13)*

Similar reasoning is offered by Results for America. In promoting SIBs, they suggest that these tools are not only a viable solution for social ills but also gain bipartisan support. RFA argues that they offer effective strategies that reduce government waste. There is some evidence that SIBs are finding success. Gustafsson-Wright et al. (2020) reports that out of 49 completed SIBs, 33 have either reached outcomes to a point at which the original investment has been paid or, in certain cases, a return has been provided. This indicates that, at least based on the initial design, SIBs are doing what the contract sets out for them to do.

Gustafsson-Wright et al. (2020) do caution that this is not necessarily evidence that the social problems are being solved. They note that even if SIBs reach their intended outcomes, there are limitations to what we might be able to say. After an extensive review of the literature, Fraser et al. (2018) write,

> To date, across all active SIBs, there has been very little rigorous counterfactual comparison of SIBs versus alternative methods of finance to deliver the same service to the same type of users, and thus a lack of evidence of costs and benefits compared with the alternative approach to procurement.
>
> *(p. 16)*

As Gustafsson-Wright et al. (2020) write,

> [I]t can be said that outcomes were achieved (or not) in these impact bonds, but not that this was the result of the impact bond per se. It is not even possible to attribute the

> majority of the outcomes achieved to the social intervention, as very few projects have conducted rigorous impact evaluations of the interventions.
>
> *(p. 20)*

Future of the Tool

The attractiveness of SIBs grows in times of austerity. As the world continues to battle a global pandemic less than a decade after emerging from one of the largest recessions in history, it would be foolish to dismiss the challenging times that lie ahead. As an OECD working paper notes, "In times of budgetary constraints combined with aggravating social challenges, SIBs have emerged as an innovative financing mechanism representing a complementary approach to traditional social policy interventions, notably in areas where there are government and market failures" (OECD, 2016, p. 22). The tool seems to be here to stay, at least in the short term. Therefore, it is incumbent upon both the practitioner and academic community to identify potential opportunities and provide sound guidance.

Research and Evaluation

There exists a contradiction in the academic literature as opposed to the narrative from the field. For example, Tan et al. (2021) write, "While SIBs expand, there is limited evidence that they produce better outcomes for service recipients, or are more cost-effective than direct public financing for public services" (p. 5). Fox and Morris (2021) note several considerations related to the evidence that SIBs produce results. First there is great variation in the type of evaluation that is done, which, most often, is determined by the evaluator and the funder. Therefore, in the US, the randomized control trial (RCT) is frequently used, whereas in the UK, the primary mechanism has been matched data sets. These data sets are typically conducted by using historical administrative data, which may not have been rigorously collected or collected with the purpose of comparison. Therefore, attribution of the intervention is impossible to determine. While an RCT may help with attribution, they are limited in what else they might be able to explain.

The paradox, however, is that SIBs are dependent on program evaluation. As Gustafsson-Wright et al. (2020) note, "Stakeholders in early social impact bond (SIB) projects cited the opportunity to promote a new culture of monitoring and evaluation in social service delivery, including improved data collection and management, as a reason for championing the model" (p. 7). Moreover, stakeholders report that this has bred a data-driven culture, and SIBs are responsible for this growth (Gustafsson-Wright et al., 2020). This creates the potential to coalesce around an idea. As Fox and Morris conclude (2021), there is a good deal of data related to effective evidence-based interactions. These are infrequently consulted in design and evaluation. Further, they note that the administrative data sets, often consulted for matched set data, are imperfect and were not intended for their new purpose. This might be convenient and cheap, but it is ineffective at giving us results.

The lack of rigorous data identified by scholars and the seeming desire for rigorous data identified by practitioners suggest a future in which developing a rigorous data-driven culture is possible for social interventions. SIBs have been good at attempting to use outcome data rather than basic outputs in their evaluation. SIBs also have the advantage of extending contracts beyond short political time frames. The presents a scenario in which real gains can be made and documented. Evaluations should use RCT alongside other methodologies to capture the

attribution of the intervention coupled with more contextual evidence, allowing both scholars and practitioners to learn how best to support our most vulnerable populations.

Emerging Economies

One of the criticisms levied at SIBs is that they divert both philanthropic and government resources away from traditional financing of social service programs. While the evidence of this is not clear, there are many who suggest that SIBs create an avenue for impact investing that otherwise would not have been available. The principal behind these activities is more about "impact-seeking rather than return seeking capital" (Rangan and Chase, 2015, p. 29). If there are returns, they are reinvested into the service activities and the interventions. To date, the bulk of the capital investment has been driven to organizations with capacity, but there are indications that shifts away from this may be emerging. Gustafsson-Wright et al. (2020) write about a health impact bond in India aimed at building capacity in an organization to comply with India's accountability requirements. Further, Muñoz and Kimmitt (2019) write about the emergence of SIBs in Chile and, more broadly, Latin America. While there are a broad range of issues related to SIBs in Latin America, more central to their argument is the how SIBs are encouraging growth of social entrepreneurs engaging in this problem solving. In many cases, governments are not central to solving these challenges.

Impact bonds are emerging, both with and without government. Development impact bonds (DIBs) offer an alternative approach in the developing world. Rather than relying on government to make payments, both philanthropic and non-governmental organizations are establishing DIBs. Thus far, according to the Brookings Institution, DIBs represent a small share of the impact bond market, but they offer a potential growth area. In certain developing countries, these alternative models are preferred to circumvent or support the lack of capacity from governments. That said, when governments are involved, enabling structures need to be created. That might be through the establishment of "outcome funds" or funds dedicated to PFP contracts or, more directly, by establishing a regulatory framework in which SIBs can flourish. The US passed the SIPPRA in 2018, not only establishing the regulatory framework but also appropriating $100 million to fund new initiatives.

Final Cautions

If the SIPPRA is any indication of how more advanced economies will approach SIBs, then we can expect continued growth of the tool. While this may spur innovation, it is bound to spur the growth of a new type of organization – the intermediary. Like the capacity needed to retain large government grants, SIBs are reliant on complex sets of partnerships that non-profits are ill equipped to establish. By design, SIBs require an intermediary to manage these relationships. There are currently a handful of organizations that dominate this market. New competition may emerge, but we will primarily see these established organizations continue to capture most of the funding, hence playing an outsize role in determining which projects are funded and which remain unfunded.

SIBs present an opportunity to steer funding toward service providers that have demonstrated successful interventions, but they do so at the risk discharging governments of their responsibilities. It is important to remember that these wicked problems that SIBs offer the potential to solve are frequently due to market failures. Masking their solutions in financial language is a red herring. The only transferred risk is political, in that politicians can shift political risk to the funder, providing cover should the intervention fail. SIBs are not a financial instrument; they

are a political smokescreen. They cater to the uncomfortable reality that many will only offer to feed a hungry person if that person's productivity exceeds the cost of the food. It sets a dangerous precedent in which evidence-based practice is conflated with financial risk assessment. Evidence-based decisions related to social interventions should be dictated by experts, such as trained public managers, social workers, or psychologists. If governments and funders are serious about employing evidence-based practice, they would be better off diversifying their portfolios and recognizing that not all evidence points to a financial return on an investment.

Note

1 See J. D. Anders and R. Dorsett, R., "HMP Peterborough Social Impact Bond-Cohort 2 and Final Cohort Impact Evaluation," *The Commonwealth of Massachusetts*, 2017, for a detailed explanation of the matching.

References

Anders, J. D., & Dorsett, R. (2017). HMP Peterborough Social Impact Bond-cohort 2 and final cohort impact evaluation.

Berlin, G. (2016). Learning from Experience a Guide to Social Impact Bond Investing. retrieved on 8/8/2021 from www.mdrc.org/sites/default/files/Learning_from_Experience_SIB.pdf

Bromberg, D. E., & Justice, J. B. (2016). Sorting out social impact bonds. In *Problem Solving with the Private Sector* (pp. 190–214). Abingdon, UK: Routledge.

Carter, E. (2021). More than marketised? Exploring the governance and accountability mechanisms at play in social impact bonds. *Journal of Economic Policy Reform*, 24(1), 78–94.

Dear, A., Helbitz, A., Khare, R., Lotan, R., Newman, J., Sims, G. C., & Zaroulis, A. (2016). *Social Impact Bonds: The Early Years*. London: Social Finance.

Demel, A. (2012). Second thoughts on social impact bonds. *NYU Journal of Law and Business*, 9, 503.

Dowling, E. (2017). In the wake of austerity: Social impact bonds and the financialisation of the welfare state in Britain. *New Political Economy*, 22(3), 294–310.

Fox, C., & Morris, S. (2021). Evaluating outcome-based payment programmes: Challenges for evidence-based policy. *Journal of Economic Policy Reform*, 24(1), 61–77.

Fraser, A., Tan, S., Lagarde, M., & Mays, N. (2018). Narratives of promise, narratives of caution: A review of the literature on social impact bonds. *Social Policy & Administration*, 52(1), 4–28.

Giacomantonio, C. (2017). Grant-maximizing but not money-making: A simple decision-tree analysis for social impact bonds. *Journal of Social Entrepreneurship*, 8(1), 47–66.

Gustafsson-Wright, E., (2020). *What Is the Size and Scope of the Impact Bonds Market?* Washington, DC: Brookings.

Gustafsson-Wright, E., Massey, M., & Osborne, S. (2020). *Are Impact Bonds Delivering Outcomes and Paying Out Returns?* Washington, DC: Brookings.

Gustafsson-Wright, E., & Osborne, S. (2020). *Are Impact Bonds Reaching the Intended Populations?* Washington, DC: Brookings.

Lester, S. M. (2002). *The Tools of Government: A Guide to the New Governance*. New York: Oxford University Press.

Liebman, J. (2011). *Social Impact Bonds: A Promising New Financing Model to Accelerate Social Innovation and Improve Government Performance*. Washington, DC: Center for American Progress.

Maier, F., & Meyer, M. (2017). Social impact bonds and the perils of aligned interests. *Administrative Sciences*, 7(3), 24.

Morley, J. (2021). The ethical status of social impact bonds. *Journal of Economic Policy Reform*, 24(1), 44–60.

Muñoz, P., & Kimmitt, J. (2019). A diagnostic framework for social impact bonds in emerging economies. *Journal of Business Venturing Insights*, 12, e00141.

Neyland, D. (2018). On the transformation of children at-risk into an investment proposition: A study of social impact bonds as an anti-market device. *The Sociological Review*, 66(3), 492–510.

OECD (2015). Social Impact Bonds-Promises and Pitfalls, Summary Report of the OECD Experts Seminar, Paris, France, retrieved on 15/04/2015 from http://www.oecd.org/cfe/leed/SIBsExpertSeminar-SummaryReport-FINAL.pdf

OECD (2016). *Social Impact Bonds: State of Play and Lessons Learnt*. Paris: OECD Publishing.

Ogman, Robert. (2019). "Ethical capitalism" in the city: Embedded economy or marketization? The case of social impact bonds. *Journal of Urban Affairs*, 42(6), 833–855. DOI: 10.1080/07352166.2019.1619460

Pandey, S., Cordes, J. J., Pandey, S. K., & Winfrey, W. F. (2018). Use of social impact bonds to address social problems: Understanding contractual risks and transaction costs. *Nonprofit Management and Leadership*, 28(4), 511–528.

Rangan, V. K., & Chase, L. A. (2015). The payoff of pay-for-success. *Stanford Social Innovation Review*, 4, 28–38.

Sinclair, S., McHugh, N., & Roy, M. J. (2021). Social innovation, financialisation and commodification: A critique of social impact bonds. *Journal of Economic Policy Reform*, 24(1), 11–27.

Social Finance (2011). A Technical Guide to Developing Social Impact Bonds, retrieved from http://www.socialfinance.org.uk/wp-content/uploads/2014/07/Technical-Guide-to-Commissioning-Social-Impact-Bonds.pdf

Tan, S., Fraser, A., McHugh, N., & Warner, M. E. (2021). Widening perspectives on social impact bonds. *Journal of Economic Policy Reform*, 24(1), 1–10.

Vera Institute of Justice (2015). Impact Evaluation of the Adolescent Behavioral Learning Experience (ABLE) Program at Rikers Island, Summary of Findings, retrieved on 8/10/2021 from www.vera.org/downloads/publications/ABLE-summary.pdf.

Warner, M. E. (2013). Private finance for public goods: Social impact bonds. *Journal of Economic Policy Reform*, 16(4), 303–319.

43

THE FUTURE OF INFORMATIONAL TOOLS WITH BIG DATA INFORMATICS

Opportunities and Challenges for Evidence-Based Policymaking

M. Jae Moon and Sabinne Lee

For the past decade, big data analytics and powerful informatics have offered compelling opportunities for evidenced-based public policy, primarily thanks to the unprecedented availability of policy-related big data, which is both quantitatively and qualitatively different from conventional data in terms of its scope, scale, structure, and impact. With growing computing power and analytical tools, big data have become increasingly important original materials that are utilized, examined, and interpreted for identifying current and future policy problems, analyzing the positions of stakeholders, assessing policy tools and alternative solutions, and evaluating policy effectiveness. As a powerful policy tool, the availability and utility of big data offer great potential for improving not only the quality of policy choices but also policy outcomes, creating an optimistic perspective on big data–based new policy sciences. However, some still remain reserved and somewhat skeptical because of continued political gaming in policy decisions and implementation processes, as well as limitations of informatics and biases often found in big data. This chapter reviews the prospect of big data–based new policy sciences as evidence-based policymaking and then examines their opportunities and challenges based on selected cases.

Introduction

Information as a policy tool has been revolutionarily changing and expanding in terms of its availability, scalability, and applicability of information and data. In particular, the technological advancement of informatics and artificial intelligence has opened new doors to the future of information tools. Once considered more subtle, indirect, and lenient than other policy tools, information tools have become more powerful, direct, and specific as policymakers pay increasing attention to the power of data analytics and the significance of evidence-based policy, particularly in the information age.

Since 2015, for example, the Department of Culture, Sports, and Tourism of Korea and Jeonju City, as well as Jeju Island, have developed a customized tourism policy by analyzing tourists' patterns of attraction sites using big mobility data. For this analysis and prediction, big

DOI: 10.4324/9781003163954-52

data were collected from various sources. For instance, mobile population data were collected from telecommunications companies, and the sales data of card companies were used to analyze the characteristics of tourists' sales patterns. In addition, Jeonju City collected data from social network services, such as Twitter and weblogs, and collected weather forecasts and oil prices to revitalize local tourism from various perspectives. Hanok Village was revealed to be crowded with tourists, especially in May and October when many festivals were held. Analysis demonstrated that transportation was needed to connect South, North, East, and West Jeonju to disperse tourists. As a result, Jeonju City announced that tourists increased by more than 50% in one year. In sum, through big data analysis, Jeonju City was able to predict tourists' demands and establish a relevant public policy that attracted them to visit Jeonju City based on these predictions. The success of this analysis is because big data technology enables fragments of related yet heterogeneous information to be matched and linked to each other quickly (Höchtl, Parycek, & Schöllhammer, 2016).

However, despite the potential of big data in public policy decision-making and prediction, big data informatics does not receive much attention from policy decision-makers and policy scientists. For instance, Gupta, Kar, Baabdullah, and Al-Khowaiter (2018) reported in their literature review analysis that, among 18 research papers published from 2013 to 2016 that deal with big data as a subject, there are no papers written from a public policy point of view. Rather, most papers are published based on cognitive computing and cognitive systems theory. In this sense, we would like to illustrate the potential and importance of adopting big data informatics into public policy decision-making. Following the traditions of policy science, we focus on the impact of big data on prediction, which is one of the key factors in making policy decisions. Additionally, to analyze how big data informatics can reduce uncertainty and complexity and change the process of decision-making as a result, we adopt Herbert Simon's decision-making process model.

This chapter is organized as follows. First, we briefly review the definition and characteristics of big data and, in the second section, introduce several cases using big data in policy decision-making worldwide. In the next section, we review Herbert Simon's decision-making process model and illustrate how big data informatics enable us to make decisions within 'less-bounded rationality' by reducing uncertainty and complexity. Lastly, we introduce several challenges we should consider and suggest future directions for implementing big data informatics in public policy decision-making.

Information Tools in the Era of Big Data

Definition and Characteristics of Big Data

In their book *The Tools of Government in the Digital Age*, Hood and Margetts (2007) argued that information is often preferred by policymakers because it is cheaper than other policy tools, such as authority (sticks or regulations), treasure (carrots or monetary incentives), and organization. With the continued advancement of computing power and data availability, governments can often easily refer to information as a strong policy tool despite data-related risks and vulnerability, such as biases, manipulation of data, hacking, and privacy violations. Governments are expected to use information as a policy tool more smartly and sharply because of the dramatic growth of available information and data in different forms and increasing competition for the quality of information.

Thanks to the advent and evolution of big data and machine-learning algorithms, many scholars expect how we work and think might be transformed greatly in the near future (Chan

& Bennett Moses, 2016), but there is no single clear definition because the type of technologies to collect and develop big data, the purpose of using big data, and the platforms big data implement vary (Chan & Bennett Moses, 2016) despite this importance.

As shown in Table 43.1, scholars have defined big data to explain various aspects of big data analytics. First, Manyika et al. (2011) focused on the size of the dataset to understand the characteristics of big data. Since the size of the big data dataset was too big, it could not be handled by a typical database. Snijders et al. (2012) also stressed the size of the big data. Dedić and Stainer (2017) argued that big data includes not only structured data but also semi-structured and even unstructured data. Even though unstructured data cause a high level of handling and trimming cost, with the developed big data dataset and software, we can draw meaningful information from various types of data. Targio Hashem et al. (2015) focused on the technique and technology that enable us to integrate and analyze diverse, complex, and massive datasets.

A more holistic, comprehensive view has also emerged. To Boyd and Crawford (2012), we need to understand various aspects, such as culture, technology, and methodology, to define big data analytics because big data analytics is a unity within which all things are combined. IBM suggested the concept of 4Vs (volume, variety, velocity, veracity) as four dimensions of big data. Volume represents the quantity of generated and stored data. It is estimated that 2.5 quintillion bytes of data are created each day (IBM, 2019). Variety means the various sources of data collection. Thanks to big data technology, we can collect tons of data from various sources – not only from classic, traditional sources but also from fast-changing internet and social network services. With the adoption of big data technology, various types of data are collected rapidly (velocity). According to IBM (2019), 216,000 Instagram posts and 204,000,000 emails sent can be collected every 60 seconds. Lastly, veracity represents the certainty of data. Although big data analytics solve the problem partially, the problem of certainty of data should be continuously addressed in the future because, as IBM (2019) pointed out, an estimated 3.1 trillion USD is spent to correct the poor data quality.

Table 43.1 Various Definitions of Big Data

Paper	*Definition and characteristics of Big Data*	*Point*
Manyika et al. (2011)	Big data is a dataset whose size is beyond the ability of typical database software tools to capture, store, manage, and analyze	Size
Boyd and Crawford (2012)	Big data is a cultural, technological, and scholarly phenomenon based on the 'interplay' of (1) technology, which represents a desire to maximize computation power and algorithm accuracy; (2) analysis that focuses on identifying patterns to make economic, social, technical, and large claims; and (3) methodology	Phenomenon
Snijders et al. (2012)	Big data includes datasets with sizes beyond the ability of commonly used software tools to capture, curate, manage, and process data within a tolerable elapsed time	Size
Dedić and Stanier (2017)	Big data includes unstructured, semi-structured, and structured data	Type of data
Targio Hashem et al. (2015)	Big data requires a set of techniques and technologies with new forms of integration to reveal insights from datasets that are diverse, complex, and of a massive scale	Technique and technology
IBM (2019)	Volume, variety, velocity, and veracity	Various aspects

Several Cases Using Big Data in Policy Decision-Making

In 2013, the *Washington Post* described President Barack Obama as the 'big data' president. According to the article, since Obama had much faith in the power of big data, he became the president who was eager to use it not only for the presidential election but also for health-care policy implementation. For instance, in the 2008 presidential election, Team Obama strategically used big data to make data-driven decisions (Scola, 2013). First, they organized a team of specialists capable of collecting and analyzing big data, such as data engineers and computer programmers. This team of engineers collected data from internet databases and social network services, such as Google, Twitter, and Facebook. They analyzed them to draw specific patterns of voter behaviors. Specifically, they ran more than 62,000 computer simulations and predicted their voting behavior (Hilbert, 2011). Based on the results of these big data simulations, Team Obama could change the voting behavior of 78% of targeted undecided voters through Facebook (Hilbert, 2011).

After reelection, Obama also stressed the importance of big data– and data-driven evidence-based public policymaking. In particular, quantitative evidence drawn from big data analysis was used to back up the controversial health-care policy of the Obama administration. In 2013, the Obama administration released a massive price list of 3,000 US hospitals in 100 different conditions to strengthen the health-care policy reform. Revealing the price list of hospitals is not the only case of using big data in health care. The US government opened healthcare.gov in 2010 to "make data discoverable and make valuable government data available to the public in the hopes of better health outcomes for all" (US Healthdata.gov, 2021).

Guerrero and Lopez (2017) suggested the importance of merged big data in labor economics. According to their argument, recently developed big data technology enables us to collect and merge macro- and microdata from employers and employees. This fact also leads to new types of interactions in the socio-economics field (Taylor, Cowls, Schroeder, & Meyer, 2014). Although economists such as Rosen (2004) and Willis (2017) were already aware of the importance of merged data through which we can track interactions between individuals and firms, this had not yet been realized due to technology limitations. However, since 1998, the consensus has been building to solidify economic theory and narrow the gap between theory and practice (Guerrero & Lopez, 2017). In this way, employers and employees can exchange labor status and information, and the government can implement evidence-based policy.

Criminology is also an example that shows that big data–driven policies can be implemented. For instance, the Korean government successfully pointed out the culprit of the Hwaseong serial killer case, which was one of the most notorious serial murder cases, going unsolved for more than 30 years. However, in 2019, the Korean government started to compare the DNA that culprits left at crime sites with the DNA information of prisoners. As a result, the Korean government was able to catch the criminal.

Policy Decision-Making Process and Bounded Rationality

Herbert Simon's Decision-Making Process Model

As Simon stated in his well-known masterpiece, *Administrative Behavior*, first published in 1945, administrative processes are decisional processes. Simon made key contributions to enhance our understanding of the decision-making process. He pioneered the field of decision support systems. According to Simon (1959) and his later work with Newell, decision making is a process

with distinct stages (Simon, 1959; Newell & Simon, 1972). He posited for the first time the decision-making model of human beings. His model of decision-making has three stages: Specifically, Simon (1997b) described the process of decisions made: (1) among a given, fixed set of alternatives, (2) with (subjectively) known probability distributions of outcomes for each, and (3) in such a way as to maximize the expected value of a given utility function (Dequech, 2001). Simon developed the decision-making process model in 1997 and suggested the three steps of the decision-making process as (1) the listing of all the alternative strategies, (2) the determination of all the consequences that follow upon each of these strategies, and (3) the comparative evaluation of these sets of consequences (Simon, 1997b, p. 77). He also noted that setting an agenda, representing the problem, and discovering and choosing alternatives as components (Simon, 1997b, p. 122) should be included in the decision-making theory and argued that the stages in the decision-making process require "agenda setting, finding alternatives, selecting them, and evaluating them" (Simon, 1997b, p. 127).

Later generations merged what Simon argued in *Administrative Behavior* and outlined the decision-making process model in a more compact way. As shown in Table 43.2, Asemi, Safari, and Zavareh (2011) categorized Simon's decision-making process model in three steps: the intelligence stage, design stage, and choice stage. In the intelligence stage, an economic man starts to search for problems and collect data to identify what the problem situation is. In the design stage, we evaluate possible decision-making alternatives by analyzing both negative and positive aspects of each alternative. We can also design possible solution outlines for the problems in this stage. The last choice stage is the selection stage. Based on the results drawn from the first and the second stages, we select the best solution to solve the problems.

The Limits of Rationality

Herbert Simon is most famous for his contribution in adopting the concept of rationality to understanding human behavior. As an economist, he tried to describe and predict several kinds of economic men (Simon, 1997a) as he believed that economics is a process of investigating economic behavior (Heukelom, 2007). To understand why economic actors make specific decisions, he stressed the importance of rationality. Although Simon himself admitted the difficulties and complexity of defining rationality (Simon, 1997a), he defined rationality as a process insofar as it selects alternatives that are conductive to the achievement of the previously selected goals (Simon, 1997b). In other words, to Simon, rationality is concerned with the selection of preferred behavior alternatives in terms of some system of values whereby the consequences of

Table 43.2 Simon's Decision-Making Process Model

Stage	*What We Do*	*Explanation*
Intelligence stage (first stage)	Search for problems	Dealing with problem identification and data collection on the problem problem searching + problem formation
Design stage (second stage)	Develop alternative solutions	Evaluating possible alternatives (negative, positive aspects) Designing solution outlines for the problems
Choice stage (third stage)	Analyze alternatives and choose one	Selecting the "best" solution from among the alternative solutions using some criterion

Source: Asemi, Safari, and Zavareh (2011) and Simon (1997b)

behavior can be evaluated (Simon, 1990). Since he thought of decisions as a bridge that links rationality and human behavior, he developed a theory about the relationship between decision-making and the concept of rationality (Barros, 2010).

Although there are several types of rationality, such as general rationality and procedural rationality, Simon focused on bounded rationality as the main subject of his argument (Barros, 2010). An economic man is assumed to collect and compare alternatives to make optimal decisions. However, as Simon argued, it is impossible for the behavior of a single, isolated individual to reach any high degree of rationality (Simon, 1972, 1990) because "the knowledge that [the individual] is rational is only a small part – almost an insignificant part – of the information that we require" (Simon, 1982, p. 214). His intention to be rational leads to particular behavior only in the context of conditions in which his behavior takes place (Simon, 1972).

Three Components of Causing Bounded Rationality

What makes it difficult for an economic man to collect and analyze information so stuck into bounded rationality? In his book *Administrative Behavior*, Simon pointed out incomplete knowledge, difficulties of anticipation, and the scope of behavior possibilities as three critical components that cause bounded rationality. As shown in the Table 43.3, the first component, incomplete knowledge, is closely related to lack of knowledge and information (Simon, 1997b). As Simon (1997b) argued, although the concept of rationality requires complete knowledge, in reality, it is difficult to have complete knowledge and information due to the limits of time and budgets. Rather, what we can have in the real world is fragmented knowledge and information (Simon, 1997b).

Second, difficulties of anticipation can also occur. According to Simon (1997a), the seriousness of actual feelings that people can have through actual experience and the indirect feelings from anticipation are drastically different, meaning the same value evaluation system cannot be applied in the two cases. Simon argued that actual experience is usually considered more serious and desirable than anticipated experience. In this sense, valuation is inevitably limited in its accuracy and consistency (Simon, 1997b).

Third, the component related to the scope of behavior possibilities is related to the physical, biological limitations of human beings. Since the number of things that human beings can remember and have front of mind is limited due to physical and biological limitations, only a very few of all possible alternatives can be considered and conceived as possible solutions.

Table 43.3 Three Components of Causing Bounded Rationality

Component	*Explanation*
Incomplete knowledge	Knowledge of consequence is always fragmentary; lack of information
Difficulties of anticipation	Difficulties in anticipating consequences that lie in the future can be only imperfectly anticipated because of lack of experience; feeling valuation is limited in accuracy and consistency by the power of individual
Scope of behavior possibilities	Only a very few of all possible alternatives ever come to mind due to the biological, physical limitations of human beings

Source: Simon (1997b, p. 93)

Potential of Big Data Informatics for Less Bounded Rationality

Intelligence Stage (First Stage)

In this section, we are going to analyze how we overcome various components of bounded rationality in each stage, using big data informatics as the future policy instrument tool. First, in the intelligence stage (first stage), where searching for and identifying the problems is the main goal, the first component that causes bounded rationality can be a problem. As we mentioned previously, since the knowledge and information we can collect is always fragmented due to time and budget limits, it is very difficult to sense the problematic issues and identify what the real problem is.

In this sense, big data informatics can be one considerable solution in overcoming incomplete knowledge. First, as we explained, volume, velocity, veracity, and variety are four critical factors in understanding the characteristics of big data informatics. These four characteristics show how we collect a massive amount of information and knowledge accurately from various sources in a very short amount of time. Based on these advantages of big data informatics, we can collect data that is necessary to sensing and searching for the problems in the intelligence stage.

For instance, in January 2020, it was reported that merchants in a nearby wet market fell ill from an unknown cause in Wuhan, China. Based on the basic information of symptoms that the Chinese government reported to the World Health Organization, the Korean government decided to monitor arrivals from China due to the reported symptoms being very similar to the SARS variant that hit Korea a few years earlier. Based on cumulated data from the past, the Korean government could sense the similarities of SARS and the COVID-19 virus and took efficient actions that determined their COVID-19 response success in 2021. This case clearly demonstrates the impact of big data informatics in sensing and responding to problems.

Design Stage (Second Stage)

In the second stage, what we mainly do is find and develop alternative solutions that enable us to solve the problems. As Simon (1997b) noted, all possible alternatives are listed and evaluated in this stage. Specifically, the determination of all possible consequences that follow each of these alternatives should be completed in the design stage. Since all the possible alternatives should be listed and the objective, accurate evaluation of values that each alternative has should be conducted in this stage, among the three critical components that cause bounded rationality, the scope of behavior possibilities and the difficulties of anticipation should be seriously concerning. Due to the limited scope of behavior possibilities, only a few of all possible alternatives can be listed and considered. Also, evaluating both positive and negative aspects of alternatives can be insufficient or even manipulated because of difficulties in anticipation that makes it difficult for people to set an objective and a clear value evaluation system.

Adopting big data informatics offers one solution to overcome these problems. First, by collecting a massive amount of data faster, big data informatics can solve the incomplete knowledge problem. Second, by constructing a problem case database that includes various strategies adopted to overcome similar problems, we can identify a list of possible alternatives easier and faster. Also, by using various big data datasets and techniques, such as a big data–based simulation, we can evaluate the consequences of possible alternatives in a more objective way.

For example, in 2020, to flatten the curve of confirmed COVID-19 cases, governments around the globe searched various policy responses and tried to evaluate the effectiveness of those restriction policies using big data–based simulation techniques. A massive amount of data

collected previously were used to anticipate and predict the various types of policy alternatives. Despite several limitations of current simulation techniques, the big data–based simulation technique is widely used and considered an effective tool in the pandemic era (Lee & Moon, forthcoming).

Choice Stage (Third Stage)

In the last stage, the choice stage, we analyze possible alternatives and choose the best solution. In this process, possible future consequences should be analyzed objectively. To do so, choose the best solutions that can bring us the most positive future consequences, and then the future impacts of those alternatives must be analyzed based on a clear, objective value evaluation system and structure using enough data and information, despite the existence of scope of behavior possibilities and difficulties in anticipation. Similar to what happens in the design stage because of the limitation of scope of behavior possibilities and difficulties in anticipation, it is hard to have all the possible alternatives in mind and evaluate the consequences that those alternatives can cause objectively.

But big data informatics provide a way to overcome bounded rationality in the choice stage. First, by collecting various cases and constructing a database that includes information about possible alternatives and their future impact, it is easy to make a list of problem solutions. Second, big data informatics enable us to select the most plausible, best solution with long-term anticipation and prediction based on techniques like big data–based simulations. By anticipating the long-term effects and consequences of possible alternatives, we can select the most relevant solutions effectively and efficiently.

Kikstra et al. (2021) simulated the future climate mitigation scenarios that predict the impact of persistent COVID-19–related energy demand changes by 2025. Specifically, Kikstra et al. (2021) categorized future scenarios into four groups and predicted what will happen in the future using cumulated data around the world. Like this example, by adopting big data informatics, we can overcome the limited scope of behavior possibilities and difficulties in anticipation and easily evaluate the future impact from long-term perspectives. We summarize the characteristics of related components of bounded rationality and strategies using big data informatics to overcome these bounded rationalities within Simon's (1997b) decision-making process model stage (see Table 43.4).

Remaining Challenges

Privacy and Ethics

Although it is hard to deny the potential of big data as a new policy tool that expands our 'bounded rationality,' some challenges still remain. The first challenge encompasses ethical, privacy-related issues. Especially among various types of big data, individual-related big data should be handled very carefully (Dunleavy, 2016). For instance, as Heitmueller et al. (2014) argued, health information is different from other types of big data because it includes sensitive information related to privacy. In particular, if a person's health information is released unintentionally, it might cause embarrassment and financial harm (Heitmueller et al., 2014). Despite the importance of protecting privacy and sensitive information, technological, normative, and legal ways to save sensitive data safely have not yet been prepared. As Boyd and Crawford (2012) noted, the fact that many data are publicly available does not mean that all the analyses are legitimate, and many users use big data without specific norms or responsibilities.

Table 43.4 Adoption of Big Data and Overcoming Bounded Rationality

Stage	*What We Do*	*Related Bounded Rationality Components*	*Overcoming Strategies Using Big Data*
Intelligence stage (first stage)	Searching for problems	Incomplete knowledge	Sensing/collecting issue cases Collecting data
Design stage (second stage)	Developing alternative solutions	Incomplete knowledge Scope of behavior possibilities Difficulties in anticipation	Collecting data Constructing a database Collecting cases Evaluating possible alternatives using anticipation and prediction data and techniques (e.g., simulation)
Choice stage (third stage)	Analyzing alternatives and choosing one Considering future consequences	Incomplete knowledge Difficulties in anticipation	Collecting data Anticipating long-term effects and consequences Future simulation Selecting the most plausible, best solution based on anticipation and prediction results

Source: The author

Additionally, defining the scope of privacy varies by culture and country. As Dunleavy (2016) pointed out, under Anglo-American democracies, taxation is a personal issue that should be protected while tax submissions are public documents in Norway (see Devos & Zackrisson, 2015). In this sense, we should consider how to protect privacy and ethics and think about to what extent we should protect privacy. Additionally, in the era of big data, people are increasingly tracked and monitored by the government and private firms (Michael & Miller, 2013). Resultingly, can we see tracking employees' every move and measuring their performance incessantly as an ethical phenomenon? As Michael and Miller (2013) argue, this phenomenon can be an ethical challenge that hurts the human spirit.

Quality of Data

Another challenge we should consider is the quality of the data. As pointed out earlier, the types and sources of big data vary. Big data can be produced intentionally and unintentionally. It can be produced by various actors from the government to giant IT conglomerates. Additionally, although text is the most popular type of big data, voice records or video can also be analyzed as such. We even analyze various types of merged data using developed big data technology. In sum, collecting raw data is not as difficult these days as it was in the past. The important thing is not how to collect and produce big data but rather how to produce well-structured data or trim and reform unstructured data to structured data efficiently.

Constructing structured data is closely related to the quality of experts, as highly-skilled experts can trim unstructured data efficiently to use them effectively. In this sense, according to Dunleavy (2016), although highly-skilled expertise is necessary for implementing big data–based policy-making, it is hard to find such staff to work for governments or universities. Additionally, since most of the major projects related to big data are done by giant IT firms such as Google,

Amazon, or Apple, the government and public organizations face difficulties finding relevant staff (Dunleavy, 2016). In order to attract highly-skilled experts, the public sector, including governments, should consider attractive intrinsic and extrinsic incentives.

Problems of Democracy and Constructing a Multilateral Structure

Since understanding and analyzing big data require a complex methodology and a high level of technological knowledge, adopting big data in policy decision-making can be the exclusive property of highly-skilled technocrats. As Lavertu (2016) argued, this can cause some very serious concerns.

One possible solution to pursue both effectiveness and democracy simultaneously is constructing a multilateral participating system. Lane (2016) suggested a 'quadruple helix' to use big data in public policy to increase the effectiveness and efficiency of big data policies. There are four actors in the quadruple data helix: state and city agencies, universities, private data providers, and federal agencies. Each actor has its own responsibility. First, state and city agencies address immediate policy issues and produce policy data. Since local governments encounter citizens at the street level, they can be proper data producers. Universities should be the third party that processes, stores, analyzes, and disseminates data. Universities must train specialists who not only collect and analyze the data but also predict and oversee the future from a macro point of view. The third actor, private data providers, should produce more structured, well-organized data that can reduce the time needed for trimming. Last, the federal or central government can provide a macro strategy based on a long-term perspective. In particular, the central government must try to produce and collect data continuously from a long-term perspective. As Maclennan and Moore (1999) reported, researchers have incessantly criticized the lack of data in predicting policy decision alternatives. In this sense, the central government must be the one who invests resources not only to researchers but also to practitioners who face the challenges related to policy decision-making.

References

Asemi, A., Safari, A., & Zavareh, A. A. (2011). The role of management information system (MIS) and decision support system (DSS) for manager's decision making process. *International Journal of Business and Management*, 6(7), 164–173.

Barros, G. (2010). Herbert A. Simon and the concept of rationality: Boundaries and procedures. *Brazilian Journal of Political Economy*, 30(3), 455–472.

Boyd, D., & Crawford, K. (2012). Critical questions for big data: Provocations for a cultural, technological, and scholarly phenomenon. *Information, Communication & Society*, 15(5), 662–679.

Chan, J., & Bennett Moses, L. (2016). Is big data challenging criminology? *Theoretical Criminology*, 20(1), 21–39.

Dedić, N., & Stanier, C. (2017). Towards differentiating business intelligence, big data, data analytics and knowledge discovery. In Innovations in enterprise information systems management and engineering (pp. 114–122). Lecture Notes in Business Information Processing. 285. Berlin; Heidelberg: Springer International Publishing. doi:10.1007/978-3-319-58801-8_10. ISBN 978-3-319-58800-1. ISSN 1865–1356. OCLC 909580101.

Dequech, D. (2001). Bounded rationality, institutions, and uncertainty. *Journal of Economic Issues*, 35(4), 911–929.

Devos, K., & Zackrisson, M. (2015). Tax compliance and the public disclosure of tax information: An Australia/Norway comparison. *eJTR*, 13, 108.

Dunleavy, P. (2016). *'Big data' and policy learning: Evidence-based policy making in the social sciences: Methods that matter*. Bristol: The Policy Press.

Guerrero, O. A., & Lopez, E. (2017). Understanding unemployment in the era of big data: Policy informed by data-driven theory. *Policy & Internet*, 9(1), 28–54.

Gupta, S., Kar, A. K., Baabdullah, A., & Al-Khowaiter, W. A. (2018). Big data with cognitive computing: A review for the future. *International Journal of Information Management*, 42, 78–89.

Heitmueller, A., Henderson, S., Warburton, W., Elmagarmid, A., Pentland, A. S., & Darzi, A. (2014). Developing public policy to advance the use of big data in health care. *Health Affairs*, 33(9), 1523–1530.

Heukelom, F. (2007). What Simon says (No. 07–005/1). Tinbergen Institute Discussion Paper.

Hilbert, M. (2011). Big data for the social sciences. *Science*, 332(6025), 60–65.

Höchtl, J., Parycek, P., & Schöllhammer, R. (2016). Big data in the policy cycle: Policy decision making in the digital era. *Journal of Organizational Computing and Electronic Commerce*, 26(1–2), 147–169.

Hood, C., & Margetts, H. (2007). *The tools of government in the digital age*. New York: Palgrave.

IBM. (2019). Extracting business value from the 4 V's of big data. Retrieved from www.ibmbigdatahub.com/infographic/extracting-business-value-4-vs-big-data.

Kikstra, J. S., Vinca, A., Lovat, F., Boza-Kiss, B., van Ruijven, B., Wilson, C., . . . & Riahi, K. (2021). Climate mitigation scenarios with persistent COVID-19-related energy demand changes. *Nature Energy*, 1–10.

Lane, J. (2016). Big data for public policy: The quadruple helix. *Journal of Policy Analysis and Management*, 35(3), 708–715.

Lavertu, S. (2016). We all need help: "Big data" and the mismeasure of public administration. *Public Administration Review*, 76(6), 864–872.

Lee, S. & Moon, M. J. (forthcoming). Managing policy risk using Big Data Analytics in the pandemic era: VUCA and Wicked policy problems. *International Journal of Public Policy*.

Maclennan, D., & Moore, A. (1999). Evidence, what evidence?: The foundations for housing policy. *Public Money and Management,* 19(1), 17–24.

Manyika, J., Chui, M., Bughin, J., Brown, B., Dobbs, R., Roxburgh, C., & Byers, A. H. (May 2011). Big data: The next frontier for innovation, competition, and productivity (PDF). McKinsey Global Institute. Retrieved 22 May 2021.

Michael, K., & Miller, K. W. (2013). Big data: New opportunities and new challenges [guest editors' introduction]. *Computer*, 46(6), 22–24.

Newell, A., & Simon, H. A. (1972). *Human problem solving*. Englewood Cliffs: Prentice-Hall.

Rosen, H. S. (2004). Public finance. In *The encyclopedia of public choice* (pp. 252–262). Boston: Springer.

Scola, N. (2013). Obama, the 'big data' president. *The Washington Post*, 14.

Simon, H. A. (1959). Theories of decision-making in economics and behavioral science. *The American Economic Review*, 49(3), 253–283.

Simon, H. A. (1972). Theories of bounded rationality. *Decision and Organization*, 1(1), 161–176.

Simon, H. A. (1990). Bounded rationality. In *Utility and probability* (pp. 15–18). London: Palgrave Macmillan.

Simon, H. S. (1982). *Models of bounded rationality: Empirically grounded economic reason*, Vol. 2. Boston: MIT Press.

Simon, H. A. (1997a). *Models of bounded rationality: Empirically grounded economic reason* (Vol. 3). Boston: MIT Press.

Simon, H. A. (1997b). *Administrative behavior*. New York: The Free Press.

Snijders, C., Matzat, U., & Reips, U.-D. (2012). 'Big data': Big gaps of knowledge in the field of Internet. *International Journal of Internet Science*, 7, 1–5.

Targio Hashem, I. A., Yaqoob, I., Anuar, B. N., Mokhtar, S., Gani, A., & Khan, S. U. (2015). The rise of 'big data' on cloud computing: Review and open research issues. *Information Systems*. 47, 98–115. doi:10.1016/j.is.2014.07.006.

Taylor, L., Cowls, J., Schroeder, R., & Meyer, E. T. (2014). Big data and positive change in the developing world. *Policy & Internet*, 6(4), 418–444.

US Healthdata.gov. (2021). About Healthdata. Retrieved from https://healthdata.gov/stories/s/About-Healthdata-gov/jw2e-4hhu/.

Willis, L. E. (2017). Finance-informed citizens, citizen-informed finance: An essay occasioned by the international handbook of financial literacy: Legal studies paper no. 2017–42. *Journal of Social Science Education*, 16(winter), 16–27.

44

THE FUTURE OF BEHAVIOURAL TOOLS IN PUBLIC POLICY

Stuti Rawat and Michael Howlett

Although there is increasing awareness and use of behaviourally informed approaches and tools in public policy, there is only limited systematic evidence on developments across the world and across sectors. Possessing knowledge about the spread and nature of behavioural policy, however, is a needed first step towards better engaging with the challenges confronting behaviourally inspired approaches and developing strategies to overcome them. This chapter identifies the key challenges associated with the adoption of behavioural policy tools and assesses how far behavioural policy has attempted to engage with these issues. Towards that end, we undertake a bibliometric analysis of the top four public policy journals between 1990 to 2016 to identify the research trajectory of behavioural studies that have been featured in them, unpacking their policy areas, content and geographic focus. We conclude by discussing future research directions for behavioural policy tools.

Introduction

Even as the increased awareness and use of behaviourally informed approaches and tools in public policy (OECD 2017a; Sanders, Snijders & Hallsworth 2018) is being challenged with criticism directed towards different facets of it (see, e.g., (Lepenies, Mackay & Quigley 2018; Kuehnhanss 2019)), there exists limited systematic evidence on how behavioural policy tools have been used around the world and across sectors. The literature that synthesizes such developments has typically been in the form of review studies, surveys or reports that have restricted their focus to certain sectors, such as health (Matjasko, Cawley, Baker-Goering & Yokum 2016; Vlaev, King, Dolan & Darzi 2016), energy and environment (Baddeley 2012; OECD 2017b), climate (Pollitt & Shaorshadze 2012; Howlett & Rawat 2019), and poverty and development (Anand & Lea 2011; Bouguen, Huang, Kremer & Miguel 2019).

Knowledge about the spread and nature of behaviourally informed policy is the first step towards assessing where it has lagged – sectorally and geographically – and what challenges it still needs to address. Thus, helping shed light on the more practical questions of where, when, how and to what extent behavioural sciences can be used in the policy process (Ewert 2020) and their future.

In order to map the prevalence of behavioural public policy, we direct our attention to the public policy literature with the underlying assumption that it reflects developments on the

 DOI: 10.4324/9781003163954-53

ground, as well as playing a role in shaping them (Bavel, Herrmann, Esposito & Proestakis 2013; Newman, Cherney & Head 2016).

Within the public policy literature, we focus on the top four journals in the discipline to identify the research trajectory of behavioural studies that have featured in them over the last three decades. We restrict our analysis to the top-ranked journals for two reasons. First, focusing on a finite number of journals allows us to benchmark behavioural studies against the total number of studies that have been published in these journals during the same period, thereby giving a sense of their relative numbers. This is in contrast to bibliometric surveys that rely on large databases such as the Web of Science or Google Scholar, which are useful in reflecting only the absolute number of publications on a certain topic (e.g., (Weible, Sabatier & McQueen 2009). Second, notwithstanding the criticism directed at journal rankings (Bornmann 2013; Larivière & Sugimoto 2019), the top journals in any discipline tend to be particularly influential within the scientific community in terms of their perceived quality (Adam 2002) and in attracting a high number of submissions (Gaston, Ounsworth, Senders, Ritchie & Jones 2020). Thus, playing an integral role in driving forward the evolution of the discipline as well as reflecting what might be crudely labelled as the mainstream view.

Based on this sample, our analysis aims to answer two research questions. First, what are the temporal, spatial and sectoral spread of behavioural studies? Second, are behavioural studies engaging with the challenges associated with the behavioural approach? The answers to these questions provide us with insights about the evolution of behavioural public policy, the research gaps that remain and its future.

In what follows, we use the terms *behavioural policy*, *behavioural approach* and *behavioural policy tools* interchangeably. This chapter unfolds in four parts: first, we discuss the seven most frequently cited challenges with respect to behavioural policy. Next, we discuss the empirics of this article, focusing on the method and data. This is followed by a discussion of our results. We end with a brief conclusion.

Seven Key Challenges to Behavioural Policy Research

Based on the larger literature, we identify seven key challenges most frequently associated with behavioural policy. The first challenge is the lack of evidence on long-term effects. Sanders et al. (2018) attribute this to the general absence of longer-term studies and projects. Goodwin (2012), however, traces this to the nature of nudges themselves. He argues that nudges overemphasize individual preference and adopt an atomistic approach to social structure, resulting in their limited ability to usher in long-lasting behavioural modifications (Mills 2013).

The second challenge is that the behavioural approach ignores cultural and national differences, and behavioural insights tend to be tailored to the Western context (Levinson & Peng 2006). It comes as no surprise that behavioural public policy as manifested through nudge units and related initiatives is found to be driven by Anglo-American countries (John 2019). Henrich, Heine and Norenzayan (2010) use the term *WEIRD* – Western, educated, industrialized, rich and developed – to describe the vast majority of those who are engaged in generating behavioural insights and their subjects. They argue that behavioural scientists need to engage with a wider pool of (non-Western) subjects if they are to generate behavioural insights that are applicable to other cultures and contexts.

A third challenge associated with the behavioural approach in public policy is the fact that policymakers are themselves behavioural agents and hence, not immune to psychological biases (Viscusi & Gayer 2015). As Sunstein puts it, '[F]or every bias identified for individuals, there is an accompanying bias in the public sphere' (Sunstein 2014a:102). For instance, 'confirmation

bias', which is the selective gathering of evidence to support previously held beliefs (Nickerson 1998), is frequently identified with the behaviour of policymakers. This 'rationality paradox' characterizes policymaking when policymakers who themselves have bounded rationality employ nudges (Lodge & Wegrich 2016).

A fourth challenge identified with behavioural policy is the possibility of behavioural spillovers and unintended consequences (Dolan & Galizzi 2015). For instance, energy efficiency interventions are associated with a rebound effect, whereby consumers end up increasing product use when their energy costs fall (Miller & Mannix 2016). Similarly, Costa and Kahn show that an energy conservation nudge (in the form of feedback on one's own and their peers' electricity usage) resulted in a boomerang effect of an increase in electricity consumption by certain target groups (Costa & Kahn 2013). Moreover, the interaction of behavioural tools with the available and often-competing policy instruments (see Howlett 2005, 2000; Öberg, Lundin & Thelander 2015) can influence the policy outcome in unintended ways (see Fonseca & Grimshaw 2017; Fanghella, Ploner & Tavoni 2021).

The fifth challenge relates to the lack of agreement about which behavioural insights should be targeted when and which insight has the strongest impact (Lunn 2013), and, at a more fundamental level, what constitutes a behavioural insight (Foster 2017). Behavioural insights comprise a wide range of different practical approaches and different normative starting points (Schubert 2017; Kuehnhanss 2019), resulting in a wide range of definitions for behavioural insights that are often potentially contradictory and too restrictive (see Lunn 2012, 2014; Hansen 2016).

The sixth challenge has to do with the fact that the behavioural approach has little to say with regard to organizations. Nudges have tended to use the individual as their unit of analysis, and so not much is known about how behavioural science can improve and complement regulation in organizations (Sanders et al. 2018), and there is limited evidence of how it can shape the environment in which organizations operate (see for instance, Frey & Eichenberger 1994; Barr, Mullainathan & Shafir 2012). An OECD background paper notes that the reliance of behavioural policy on the RCT methodology hinders its use in the context of organizational phenomena that do not always lend themselves to RCTs (Foster 2017). Thus, there are fewer cases evaluating the impact of behavioural interventions on organizations than on individuals (Shephard 2017).

The seventh challenge to the behavioural approach as embodied in nudges is on ethical grounds. Goodwin (2012) considers nudges to be manipulative as they basically exploit imperfections in human judgment. Other scholars articulate concerns regarding the risk of infantilizing and decreasing the autonomous decision-making capacity of people because of nudging (Bovens 2009; Hausman & Welch 2010). Rizzo and Whitman (2009) question the basis on which the values and preferences sought to be promoted through nudges are determined. Typically, choice architects project the values and preferences of their conceptions onto policy targets, but these projections may not even be in line with what targets actually prefer to choose (Qizilbash 2009; Selinger & Whyte 2011). Nudging, it is argued, could encourage abuse of power by technocrats (Rebonato 2012).

Data, Method and Methodological Issues

The data for this analysis came from behavioural studies published in the top four public policy journals between 1990 to 2016. These journals were identified using three commonly used ranking systems – Google Scholar Metrics (Google Scholar Metrics 2016), SCImago Journal rankings (SJR) (SJR 2016) and Web of Science rankings by Thomson Reuters (Thomson Reuters 2016) and their ranking of journals under the subject 'Public Policy' and/or 'Public

Administration'. Google Scholar listed 'Public Policy and Public Administration' as a discipline. The SCImago Journal rankings and the Web of Science rankings did not have a separate category for 'Public Policy' but instead, under the discipline of 'Public Administration', listed both public policy and public administration journals.

For every journal that appeared in the respective annual rankings of SJR and Web of Science, a mean rank was calculated (by dividing the sum of the journal's ranks by the number of years it featured in the respective ranking systems. This was not done for Google Scholar rankings as they were not available annually. At the time of data collection, Google Scholar provided a single set of ranks which was based on the activities of the last five years). By arranging these mean rank values in ascending order, a new adjusted ranking for journals was determined for both SJR and Web of Science. This allowed us to identify the top ten journals as per SJR and Web of Science, respectively. We then shortlisted the journals that featured in the top ten of our adjusted ranks for SJR and Web of Science and the top ten Google Scholar rankings.

Four public policy journals featured among the top ten for each of the three sources. These were *Journal of Public Administration Research and Theory*, *Governance*, *Public Administration*, and *Public Administration Review*. Between 1990 to 2016, these four journals together produced 4,578 articles (including research articles, commentaries and editorials but excluding book reviews and commemorative and memoriam pieces). A key word search of the title and abstract using the words 'behaviour*, experiment*, prospect, random*, nudge*' and variants of their spellings resulted in a database of 116 studies. Using a decision rule, which we will discuss shortly, we reduced the database to a shortlist of 101 behavioural studies. Establishing a decision rule brought to the fore definitional issues that characterize behavioural policy at large.

Finally, to answer the research questions, each of the 101 behavioural studies was individually examined. For establishing the geographic spread of these studies, the site of the behavioural study (and not the location of the author) was examined. In case of multiple-country studies, each country was regarded as a separate data point. For analyzing the sectoral spread of studies, following a perusal of the articles, 20 different policy areas and an additional 'miscellaneous' category for those topics which did not belong to any of these were identified. Each behavioural study was then tagged under one or more of these categories.

Definitional Issues: Ambiguity Regarding What Constitutes 'Behavioural' Policy

According to Galizzi (2014), among practitioners and researchers, there is some debate on what really is 'behavioural' policy. It is not clear whether *behavioural* refers to methods or insights or both. There is a tendency among practitioners to define a policy as behavioural because of its use of experiments (in the laboratory or field) or randomized controlled trials (see, for instance, (Haynes, Goldacre & Torgerson 2012; Bavel et al. 2013). Many researchers, however, consider such framing to be problematic (Lepenies et al. 2018).

Our decision rule adopted a wide umbrella in judging whether a study classified as behavioural. It was classified as such if it employed a behavioural insight and/or an experimental approach. We chose to include experimental methods under the behavioural category because in the policy world, these are widely included under the behavioural umbrella (see, for instance, (Haynes et al. 2012).

Roughly a fourth of the articles qualified as behavioural by focusing on a behavioural insight making use of the experimental methodology. However, half the studies qualified as behavioural based on the methodological criterion alone. The remaining fourth were classified as behavioural on the grounds of dealing with a behavioural insight.

The other definitional issue we encountered was determining how close to the conceptual core of 'behavioural insights' policy tools needed to be for them to qualify as behavioural (Selinger & Whyte 2011; Galizzi 2014). For instance, Hood (1986)'s 'NATO' taxonomy of policy tools includes nodality (or information), along with authority, treasure and the organizational resources of government. Thus, the information-based policy instrument predates the 'information' nudge (Sunstein 2014b). But does this mean that every time the government used an information-based policy tool, it was actually a behavioural nudge? Hausman and Welch (2010) think not. They use Thaler and Sunstein's example of the Ambient Org as a behavioural nudge that provides feedback on energy consumption which helped save energy (Thaler & Sunstein 2008) to argue that reminding people to think about energy use is no different from warning labels on cigarettes, educational campaigns or signs reminding people to drink more water on hot days. Selinger and Whyte (2011) argue in a similar vein that some interventions that are tagged as a 'behavioural' may not necessarily be so ('mistaken nudges'), and there may also exist borderline cases where it is not clear whether the intervention qualifies as a nudge or not ('fuzzy nudges').

To reference the 'provision of information' example to our analysis, we found ten behavioural studies that dealt with this. In cases where the authors did not explicitly employ terminology from the behavioural sciences, it became difficult to categorize which study dealt with the provision and use of information in the manner of a behavioural insight and which dealt with information as a tool like any other. Here again, we adopted a broad lens in considering the study as behavioural.

Results and Discussion

Behavioural Policy Studies Have Moved From a Cyclical Trajectory to an Ascendant Path

The database of 101 behavioural studies represented roughly 2% of all the articles that were published in the four public policy journals between 1990 to 2016. However, this figure masks the changes in the temporal trajectory taken by behavioural studies in policy literature. Between 1990 and 1999, about 1% of articles in the top policy journals were behavioural. And between 2000 and 2009, behavioural studies featured even less in this policy literature, constituting only 0.8% of all published articles. However, between 2010 and 2016, behavioural articles constituted almost 5% of articles that were published in the top public policy journals.

Breaking down these decadal averages into annual values, Figure 44.1 depicts the number and share of behavioural studies as a percentage of the total number of studies that were published in the top public policy journals for every year from 1990 onwards. The clustered bars represent the absolute number of behavioural studies every year while the dashed line depicts the relative share of these behavioural studies.

Between 1990 to 2010, we see a cyclical pattern to how behavioural articles feature in these journals, with periods of increase (such as 1990–1992) followed by periods of decrease (such as 1992–1996). However, starting from 2007 onwards, the cyclical pattern gives way to a rising trend. Post 2010, we see a discernible increase in the absolute number as well as the relative share of behavioural articles in the top policy journals. By the year 2016, behavioural studies comprised a tenth of all public policy articles. This figure is similar to that found in the three top economics journals in 2016, where behavioural studies comprised 8% of all published articles (Rawat 2019).

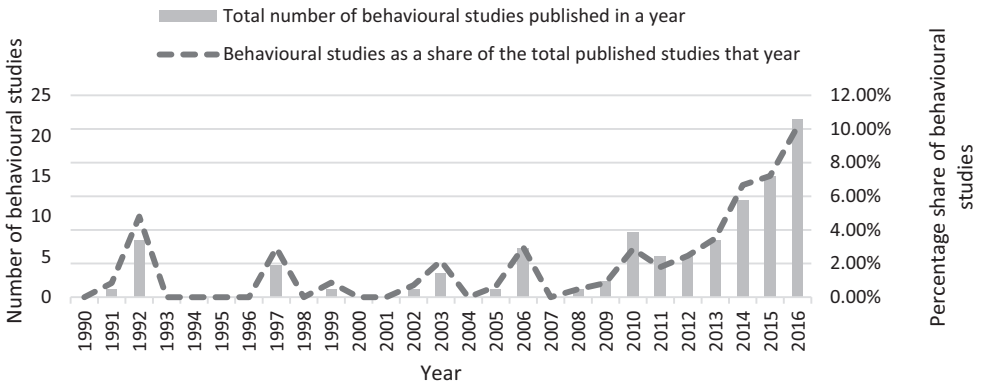


Figure 44.1 The Annual Number and Share of Behavioural Studies from 1990 to 2016 in the Top Public Policy Journals

Source: The authors' calculations

The spread of behavioural studies in the policy literature starting from the second half of the 2000s reflects the increasing awareness and acceptance of behaviourally informed insights and tools in public policymaking and the appearance of Thaler and Sunstein's pivotal work on nudges (Thaler & Sunstein 2008). The boost given by this publication, according to Oliver (2013), fell on fertile ground as the 2008 financial crisis played an instrumental role in bringing to the fore the failings of the neoclassical models (Thaler & Mullainathan 2008).

Around the same time (i.e., post 2008), Cameron, Mishra and Brown (2016) also found that in the development sector, the use of randomized controlled trials (RCTs) also took off. The fact that many of these RCTs were premised on behavioural interventions (see, for instance, (Duflo, Kremer & Robinson 2011; Kremer, Lee, Robinson & Rostapshova 2013; Drexler, Fischer & Schoar 2014) helped provide an additional boost to the use of behavioural insights in crafting policy.

A relatively restricted geographical spread: About half of all behavioural policy studies are focused on the US, although in recent years, other regions are making forays. The geographic spread of behavioural policy studies is not widespread. Figure 44.2 presents a temporal mapping of behavioural studies between 1990 and 2016 by location. Until 2009, almost all behavioural studies were set in the US. From 2010 onwards, however, behavioural studies began to cast a relatively wider net in terms of geographic location, although as a single country, the US still led with a third of all behavioural studies published between 2010 and 2016 set there.

In terms of regions, the highest proportion of behavioural studies during this time were located in Europe (47% of all behavioural studies), across Belgium, Denmark, Germany, Italy, Netherlands, Poland and the UK. Among the European nations, Denmark (18%), the UK (12%) and the Netherlands (9%) appear to have been the leaders in behavioural policy studies. Other European countries featured one or two behavioural studies during this period (representing 1% to 2% of all behavioural studies).

The remaining behavioural studies were scattered across continents. Altogether, three studies were set in South America in Colombia and Bolivia. Three studies were set in Asia, with one each located in Israel, South Korea and Taiwan (China). One study each was located in Uganda and Mexico.

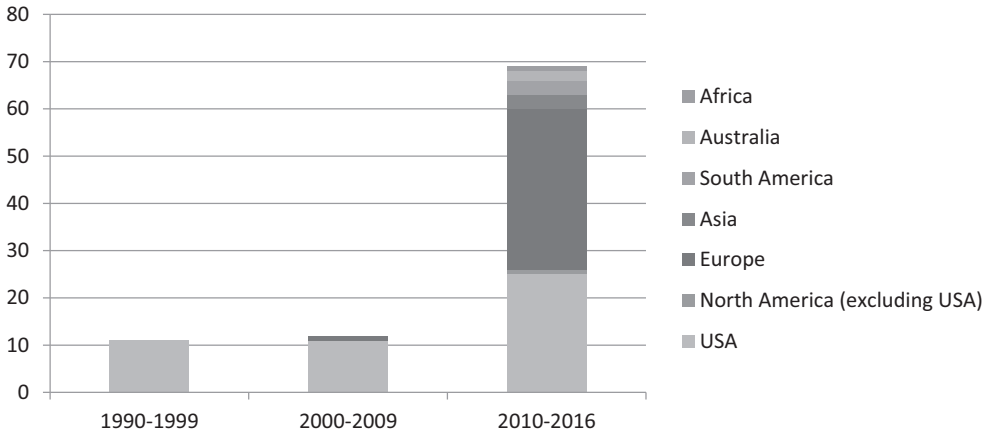


Figure 44.2 A Temporal Mapping of Behavioural Studies by Region

Source: The authors' calculations

The overwhelming representation of the US and Europe in behavioural studies may be rooted in the general tendency of the discipline of public policy to be focused on Western countries (Rawat 2019), a phenomenon which is not unsurprising given its historical development and may be tied to the home location of the top four journal examined. But the gradual geographic spread of behavioural studies post 2010 can also be linked to method. That is, while behavioural studies in public policy in the 1990s and 2000s were synonymous with laboratory experiments, post 2010, there has been an increase in the use of field experiments, quasi-experiments, natural experiments and internet-based randomized surveys (using online research panels).

This diversification in methods vis-à-vis behavioural studies in public policy may perhaps have been rooted in an osmosis from other fields such as political science (Druckman, Green, Kuklinski & Lupia 2006) and economics (Levitt & List 2009; Webber & Prouse 2018; Bouguen et al. 2019), with the growing influence of experiments in different forms allowing for more geographical dispersion than previously.

Sectoral Spread: Performance Is a Key Topic of Behavioural Policy Studies

In Figure 44.3 a word cloud is presented based on the most frequent terms found in the titles and abstracts of the behavioural studies in the four top public policy journals examined. The size of each word denotes the frequency with which it appeared. Certain words leap out from the word cloud (for example, '*performing*', '*experiments*', '*behavior*').

In terms of policy areas, performance in its myriad forms (e.g., performance management, performance motivation and so on) was a key topic of study. While behavioural studies have been used in sectors like health, education, finance, law and order, environment and natural resources, there are no studies that deal with agriculture, climate change, water, transport or energy – areas in which behavioural insights have been applied in the policy world (OECD 2017a, 2017b). However, behavioural studies in policy literature have been used to explore more abstract issues, such as those related to the decision-making processes of policymakers: issues related to trust, risk, satisfaction, attitudes, beliefs, identity and diversity. Typical public policy areas that behavioural articles have studied include public service motivation, decentralization, public service delivery and participation (including collaboration, cooperation and co-production).

Figure 44.3 Word Cloud Based on the Most Frequent Terms in the Titles and Abstracts of Behavioural Studies in the Top Public Policy Journals

Behavioural Policy Research Is Engaging With Some But Not All Challenges

The analysis presented earlier shows that behavioural studies in public policy are making forays into non-Western contexts where they are increasingly being practiced. This is evident from the studies that were set in South Korea, Uganda and Taiwan. Thus, behavioural public policy literature is making an attempt to address the challenge of cultural variation (the second challenge).

The sectoral mapping of behavioural studies revealed that there are numerous studies related to the decision-making processes of administrators, managers and politicians. Thus, behavioural studies in public policy are very cognizant of the psychological biases that policymakers exhibit and are deeply invested in exploring this issue.

Although there is still no clear sense of which nudges are most effective and which can be used when, there were examples of behavioural studies exploring different types of nudges. This engagement, even if piecemeal, can contribute towards building a better understanding of the different behavioural insights.

According to Foster (2017), behavioural approaches can be applied to organizations either by directly intervening with organizational procedures, processes and policies or by influencing individuals in the organizations. While no behavioural studies in the top policy journals dealt with organization-level behavioural interventions directly, there were limited examples of

Table 44.1 The Challenges of Behavioural Public Policy and Whether Behavioural Studies in Policy Literature Have Engaged With Them

	Challenges of Behavioural Public Policy						
	Long-Term Effects [1]	*Cultural Variation [2]*	*Biases of Policymakers [3]*	*Spillovers [4]*	*When to Use Which Nudge [5]*	*Nudging Organizations [6]*	*Ethics of Nudges [7]*
Has behavioural public policy explored this?	x	√	√	x	√	√	x

(The 'x' denotes a no, and the '√' denotes a yes.)

studies that focused on individuals in the organization, including leaders, thus shedding light on aspects of the application of the behavioural insights at the organizational level.

In contrast, no evidence was found of behavioural studies exploring the long-term impact of behavioural interventions (the first challenge), spillovers (the fourth challenge) or the ethics of nudging (the seventh challenge). These overall results are depicted in Table 44.1.

Conclusion

Despite the rising prominence of behavioural policy instruments, there has been limited systematic evidence of the research agendas and activities around them. Through a bibliometric analysis of the top ranked public policy (and/or public administration) journals, we traced the evolution of behavioural policy research over time and across regions.

We identified seven key challenges that have been associated with behavioural policy and found that the behavioural studies in our sample engaged with four of these challenges (cultural variation, biases of policymakers, which nudges work and when and organizational nudges) to varying extents. However, there were no studies exploring the remaining three challenges – spillovers, long-term impact of behavioural interventions and the ethics of nudging. Given our limited sample, these results should be interpreted with nuance in that an absence of studies actually indicates a lower level of engagement rather than a complete lack. Regardless, more research is needed on these three aspects as well as the remaining four challenges, if the barriers posed by them are to be overcome.

In recent times, some emerging concerns with the behavioural approach have come to the fore, such as the relatively modest effects of behavioural policy tools when put into practice on the ground (DellaVigna & Linos 2020) and their failure to scale up (Löschel, Rodemeier & Werthschulte 2020). Researchers argue that the average impact of a nudge in academic literature has tended to be higher because of publication bias and exacerbated by low statistical power (DellaVigna & Linos 2020), with effects often bound to the short run (Antinyan & Asatryan 2019). If behavioural policy is to continue on its ascendent path, then it will need to address this criticism while accepting that behavioural policy tools may not suffice as stand-alone policy instruments (Damgaard 2020).

We end this chapter by highlighting that scholars have noted the development of 'behavioural public policy' (which focuses on the empirical effects of behavioural insights, their categorization and other related issues) and 'behavioural public administration' (which focuses on cognitive and decision biases amongst bureaucrats and relations between bureaucrats and citizens) as

separate sub-fields that rarely speak to each other (Ewert, Loer & Thomann 2021). However, greater integration between them may be desirable as it can deepen understanding of different phases of the policy process (Gofen, Moseley, Thomann & Kent Weaver 2021) and can aid the use of behavioural policy tools alongside traditional policy instruments.

References

Adam, D. 2002. The Counting House. *Nature*. 415(6873):726–729.

Anand, P & Lea, S. 2011. The Psychology and Behavioural Economics of Poverty. *Journal of Economic Psychology*. 32(2):284–293.

Antinyan, A & Asatryan, Z. 2019. Nudging for Tax Compliance: A Meta-Analysis. ZEW-Centre for European Economic Research Discussion Paper. (19–055).

Baddeley, M. 2012. Energy, the Environment and Behaviour Change: A Survey of Insights from Behavioural Economics. Apollo – University of Cambridge Repository. (April, 6). www.repository.cam.ac.uk/handle/1810/242028 (Accessed 9 July 2019).

Barr, M, Mullainathan, S & Shafir, E. 2012. Behaviorally Informed Regulation. In *Behavioral Foundations of Public Policy*. E. Shafir, Ed. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press. 440–464. https://repository.law.umich.edu/book_chapters/84.

Bavel, R van, Herrmann, B, Esposito, G & Proestakis, A. 2013. *Applying Behavioural Sciences to EU Policy-Making*. Luxembourg: Institute for Prospective Technological Studies, European Commission.

Bornmann, L. 2013. What Is Societal Impact of Research and How Can It Be Assessed? A Literature Survey. *Journal of the American Society for Information Science and Technology*. 64(2):217–233.

Bouguen, A, Huang, Y, Kremer, M & Miguel, E. 2019. Using Randomized Controlled Trials to Estimate Long-Run Impacts in Development Economics. *Annual Review of Economics*. 11(1). www.annualreviews.org/doi/10.1146/annurev-economics-080218-030333 (Accessed 10 July 2019).

Bovens, L. 2009. The Ethics of Nudge. In *Preference Change*. T. Grüne-Yanoff & S.O. Hansson, Eds. (Theory and Decision Library no. 42). Netherlands: Springers. 207–219. http://link.springer.com/chapter/10.1007/978-90-481-2593-7_10 (Accessed 10 April 2017).

Cameron, DB, Mishra, A, & Brown, AN. 2016. The Growth of Impact Evaluation for International Development: How Much Have We Learned? *Journal of Development Effectiveness*. 8(1):1–21.

Costa, DL & Kahn, ME. 2013. Energy Conservation "Nudges" and Environmentalist Ideology: Evidence from a Randomized Residential Electricity Field Experiment. *Journal of the European Economic Association*. 11(3):680–702.

Damgaard, MT. 2020. *A Decade of Nudging: What Have we Learned?* (Economics Working Papers no. 2020–07). Aarhus BSS, Aarhus University, Department of Economics and Business Economics.

DellaVigna, S & Linos, E. 2022. RCTs to Scale: Comprehensive Evidence from Two Nudge Units. *Econometrica*. 90(1):81–116.

Dolan, P & Galizzi, MM. 2015. Like Ripples on a Pond: Behavioral Spillovers and Their Implications for Research and Policy. *Journal of Economic Psychology*. 47:1–16.

Drexler, A, Fischer, G & Schoar, A. 2014. Keeping It Simple: Financial Literacy and Rules of Thumb. *American Economic Journal: Applied Economics*. 6(2):1–31.

Druckman, JN, Green, DP, Kuklinski, JH & Lupia, A. 2006. The Growth and Development of Experimental Research in Political Science. *American Political Science Review*. 100(4):627.

Duflo, E, Kremer, M & Robinson, J. 2011. Nudging Farmers to Use Fertilizer: Theory and Experimental Evidence from Kenya. *American Economic Review*. 101(6):2350–2390.

Ewert, B. 2020. Moving beyond the Obsession with Nudging Individual Behaviour: Towards a Broader Understanding of Behavioural Public Policy. *Public Policy and Administration*. 35(3):337–360.

Ewert, B, Loer, K & Thomann, E. 2021. Beyond Nudge: Advancing the State-of-the-Art of Behavioural Public Policy and Administration. *Policy & Politics*. 49(1):3–23.

Fanghella, V, Ploner, M & Tavoni, M. 2021. Energy Saving in a Simulated Environment: An Online Experiment of the Interplay between Nudges and Financial Incentives. *Journal of Behavioral and Experimental Economics*. 93:101709.

Fonseca, MA & Grimshaw, SB. 2017. Do Behavioral Nudges in Prepopulated Tax Forms Affect Compliance? Experimental Evidence with Real Taxpayers. *Journal of Public Policy & Marketing*. 36(2):213–226.

Foster, L. 2017. *Applying Behavioural Insights to Organisations: Theoretical Underpinnings*. Paris: OCED. www.oecd.org/cfe/regional-policy/Foster_Applying-Behavioural-Insights-to-Organisations.pdf (Accessed 14 July 2019).

Frey, BS & Eichenberger, R. 1994. Economic Incentives Transform Psychological Anomalies. *Journal of Economic Behavior & Organization*. 23(2):215–234.

Galizzi, MM. 2014. What Is Really Behavioral in Behavioral Health Policy? And Does It Work? *Applied Economic Perspectives and Policy*. 36(1):25–60.

Gaston, TE, Ounsworth, F, Senders, T, Ritchie, S & Jones, E. 2020. Factors Affecting Journal Submission Numbers: Impact Factor and Peer Review Reputation. *Learned Publishing*. 33(2):154–162.

Gofen, A, Moseley, A, Thomann, E & Kent Weaver, R. 2021. Behavioural Governance in the Policy Process: Introduction to the Special Issue. *Journal of European Public Policy*. 28(5):633–657.

Goodwin, T. 2012. Why We Should Reject 'Nudge'. *Politics*. 32(2):85–92.

Google Scholar Metrics. 2016. Scholar.google.com. https://scholar.google.com/citations?view_op=top_venues (Accessed 1 April 2016).

Hansen, PG. 2016. The Definition of Nudge and Libertarian Paternalism: Does the Hand Fit the Glove? *European Journal of Risk Regulation*. 7(1):155–174.

Hausman, DM & Welch, B. 2010. Debate: To Nudge or Not to Nudge. *Journal of Political Philosophy*. 18(1):123–136.

Haynes, L, Goldacre, B & Torgerson, D. 2012. *Test, Learn, Adapt: Developing Public Policy with Randomised Controlled Trials*. UK: Cabinet Office Behavioural Insights Team. http://38r8om2xjhhl25mw24492dir.wpengine.netdna-cdn.com/wp-content/uploads/2015/07/TLA-1906126.pdf (Accessed 13 October 2015).

Henrich, J, Heine, SJ & Norenzayan, A. 2010. Most People Are Not WEIRD. *Nature*. 466:29.

Hood, C. 1986. *The Tools of Government*. Chatham: Chatham House Publishers.

Howlett, M. 2000. Managing the "Hollow State": Procedural Policy Instruments and Modern Governance. *Canadian Public Administration/Administration publique du Canada*. 43(4):412–431.

Howlett, M. 2005. Chapter 2: What Is a Policy Instrument? Tools, Mixes, and Implementation Styles. In *Designing Government: From Instruments to Governance*. 1st edition. P. Eliadis, M.M. Hill, & M. Howlett, Eds. Montreal: McGill-Queen's University Press. 31–50.

Howlett, M & Rawat, S. 2019. Behavioral Science and Climate Policy. In *Oxford Research Encyclopedia of Climate Science*. Oxford University Press. https://oxfordre.com/climatescience/view/10.1093/acrefore/9780190228620.001.0001/acrefore-9780190228620-e-624 (Accessed 5 May 2020).

John, P. 2019. The International Appeal of Behavioural Public Policy: Is Nudge an Anglo-American Phenomenon? *Journal of Chinese Governance*. 4(2):144–162.

Kremer, M, Lee, J, Robinson, J & Rostapshova, O. 2013. Behavioral Biases and Firm Behavior: Evidence from Kenyan Retail Shops. *American Economic Review*. 103(3):362–368.

Kuehnhanss, CR. 2019. The Challenges of Behavioural Insights for Effective Policy Design. *Policy and Society*. 38(1):14–40.

Larivière, V & Sugimoto, CR. 2019. The Journal Impact Factor: A Brief History, Critique, and Discussion of Adverse Effects. In *Springer Handbook of Science and Technology Indicators*. W. Glänzel, H.F. Moed, U. Schmoch, & M. Thelwall, Eds. (Springer Handbooks). Cham: Springer International Publishing. 3–24. http://link.springer.com/10.1007/978-3-030-02511-3_1 (Accessed 6 May 2020).

Lepenies, R, Mackay, K & Quigley, M. 2018. Three Challenges for Behavioural Science and Policy: The Empirical, the Normative and the Political. *Behavioural Public Policy*. 2(2):174–182.

Levinson, JD & Peng, K. 2006. *Valuing Cultural Differences in Behavioral Economics*. (SSRN Scholarly Paper ID 899688). Rochester, NY: Social Science Research Network. https://papers.ssrn.com/abstract=899688 (Accessed 25 November 2018).

Levitt, SD & List, JA. 2009. Field Experiments in Economics: The Past, the Present, and the Future. *European Economic Review*. 53(1):1–18.

Lodge, M & Wegrich, K. 2016. The Rationality Paradox of Nudge: Rational Tools of Government in a World of Bounded Rationality. *Law & Policy*. 38(3):250–267.

Löschel, A, Rodemeier, M & Werthschulte, M. 2020. When Nudges Fail to Scale: Field Experimental Evidence from Goal Setting on Mobile Phones. ZEW-Centre for European Economic Research Discussion Paper. (20–039).

Lunn, PD. 2012. Behavioural Economics and Policymaking: Learning from the Early Adopters. *The Economic and Social Review*. 43(3, Autumn):423–449.

Lunn, PD. 2013. Behavioural Economics and Policymaking: Learning from the Early Adopters. *The Economic and Social Review*. 43(3, Autumn):423–449.

Lunn, PD. 2014. *Regulatory Policy and Behavioural Economics*. Paris: Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development. www.oecd-ilibrary.org/content/book/9789264207851-en (Accessed 15 March 2017).

Matjasko, JL, Cawley, JH, Baker-Goering, MM & Yokum, DV. 2016. Applying Behavioral Economics to Public Health Policy. *American Journal of Preventive Medicine*. 50(5):S13–S19.

Miller, SE & Mannix, BF. 2016. One Standard to Rule Them All: The Disparate Impact of Energy Efficiency Regulations. In *Nudge Theory in Action*. S. Abdukadirov, Ed. Cham: Springer International Publishing. 251–287. http://link.springer.com/10.1007/978-3-319-31319-1_10 (Accessed 10 April 2017).

Mills, C. 2013. Why Nudges Matter: A Reply to Goodwin. *Politics*. 33(1):28–36.

Newman, J, Cherney, A & Head, BW. 2016. Do Policy Makers Use Academic Research? Reexamining the "Two Communities" Theory of Research Utilization. *Public Administration Review*. 76(1):24–32.

Nickerson, RS. 1998. Confirmation Bias: A Ubiquitous Phenomenon in Many Guises. *Review of General Psychology*. 2(2):175.

Öberg, P, Lundin, M & Thelander, J. 2015. Political Power and Policy Design: Why Are Policy Alternatives Constrained?: Political Power and Policy Design. *Policy Studies Journal*. 43(1):93–114.

OECD. 2017a. *Behavioural Insights and Public Policy*. OECD Publishing. www.oecd-ilibrary.org/governance/behavioural-insights-and-public-policy_9789264270480-en (Accessed 5 April 2017).

OECD. 2017b. *Tackling Environmental Problems with the Help of Behavioural Insights*. OECD Publishing. www.oecd-ilibrary.org/environment/tackling-environmental-problems-with-the-help-of-behavioural-insights_9789264273887-en (Accessed 9 January 2018).

Oliver, A. 2013. From Nudging to Budging: Using Behavioural Economics to Inform Public Sector Policy. *Journal of Social Policy*. 42(04):685–700.

Pollitt, MG & Shaorshadze, I. 2012. The Role of Behavioural Economics in Energy and Climate Policy. Apollo – University of Cambridge Repository. (April, 6). www.repository.cam.ac.uk/handle/1810/242021 (Accessed 9 July 2019).

Qizilbash, M. 2009. Well-Being, Preference Formation and the Danger of Paternalism. (Working Paper 0918). Papers on Economics and Evolution. www.econstor.eu/handle/10419/32663 (Accessed 14 July 2019).

Rawat, S. 2019. 4: A Bibliometric Analysis of Behavioural Studies in Economics and Public Policy Journals. In *Handbook of Behavioural Change and Public Policy*. H. Strassheim & S. Beck, Eds. (Handbooks of Research on Public Policy). Edward Elgar Publishing. http://search.ebscohost.com/login.aspx?direct=true&scope=site&db=nlebk&db=nlabk&AN=2142755 (Accessed 3 June 2019).

Rebonato, R. 2012. *Taking Liberties: A Critical Examination of Libertarian Paternalism*. Houndmills, Basingstoke, Hampshire; New York: Palgrave Macmillan.

Rizzo, MJ & Whitman, DG. 2009. Little Brother is Watching You: New Paternalism on the Slippery Slopes. *Arizona Law Review*. 51:685.

Sanders, M, Snijders, V & Hallsworth, M. 2018. Behavioural Science and Policy: Where Are We Now and Where Are We Going? *Behavioural Public Policy*. 2(2):144–167.

Schubert, C. 2017. Exploring the (Behavioural) Political Economy of Nudging. *Journal of Institutional Economics*. 13(3):499–522.

Selinger, E & Whyte, K. 2011. Is There a Right Way to Nudge? The Practice and Ethics of Choice Architecture: Practice and Ethics of Choice Architecture. *Sociology Compass*. 5(10):923–935.

Shephard, D. 2017. *Applying Behavioural Insights to Organisations: Global Case Studies*. Paris: OCED. www.oecd.org/cfe/regional-policy/Shepard_Applying-Behavioural-Insights-to-Organisations_Case-Studies.pdf (Accessed 14 July 2019).

SJR. 2016. Scientific Journal Rankings. www.scimagojr.com/journalrank.php (Accessed 30 March 2016).

Sunstein, CR. 2014a. *Why Nudge?* Paperback edition. New Haven, CT: Yale University Press.

Sunstein, CR. 2014b. Nudging: A Very Short Guide. *Journal of Consumer Policy*. 37(4):583–588.

Thaler, RH & Mullainathan, S. 2008. Behavioral Economics. In *The Concise Encyclopedia of Economics*. 2nd edition. www.econlib.org/library/Enc/BehavioralEconomics.html (Accessed 18 March 2017).

Thaler, RH & Sunstein, CR. 2008. *Nudge: Improving Decisions about Health, Wealth, and Happiness*. Revised & Expanded edition. New York: Penguin Books.

Thomson Reuters. 2016. Web of Science. http://thomsonreuters.com/en/products-services/scholarly-scientific-research/scholarly-search-and-discovery/web-of-science.html (Accessed 1 April 2016).

Viscusi, WK & Gayer, T. 2015. Behavioral Public Choice: The Behavioral Paradox of Government Policy. *Harvard Journal of Law & Public Policy*. 38:973.

Vlaev, I, King, D, Dolan, P & Darzi, A. 2016. The Theory and Practice of "Nudging": Changing Health Behaviors. *Public Administration Review*. 76(4):550–561.

Webber, S & Prouse, C. 2018. The New Gold Standard: The Rise of Randomized Control Trials and Experimental Development. *Economic Geography*. 94(2):166–187.

Weible, CM, Sabatier, PA & McQueen, K. 2009. Themes and Variations: Taking Stock of the Advocacy Coalition Framework. *Policy Studies Journal*. 37(1):121–140.

INDEX

academics 5, 13, 19–21, 39, 79, 150, 164, 174, 179, 190, 200–201, 208, 210, 212, 214–215, 241, 251, 260, 341, 384, 391, 393, 405, 409, 518, 525, 551, 555, 578
accountability 20, 50, 64, 106–107, 119, 127, 129, 150, 187, 193, 212–214, 225, 227, 236, 299, 308, 321, 323–324, 327, 345, 348, 376, 402, 405, 408, 413, 417, 421–422, 424, 426–430, 433–435, 468, 526, 529, 541, 552, 556
activator 61–64
actor-centered policy tools 137; *see also* tools
actors 7–10, 12–13, 20, 26–29, 30–31, 36–41, 50, 52, 54, 63–66, 69, 73–75, 77, 79, 81–82, 88, 91–92, 94–95, 100, 102–104, 107, 116–118, 121, 126, 129, 131, 133, 137–145, 150–151, 153–154, 156–157, 161, 163, 173–176, 178–179, 181–182, 185–186, 191–192, 194, 197–203, 205, 208–209, 213, 215–216, 221–223, 246–247, 249, 251, 258, 260, 271–272, 274, 285, 298, 304–309, 316, 318, 321–323, 325–328, 333–334, 337, 346–348, 350–351, 357–360, 362, 364–367, 373, 375, 378, 395, 397, 404, 428, 433, 442, 445, 448, 466–469, 474, 483–484, 488, 490, 498, 501, 503, 510–511, 514, 523–524, 527–530, 535, 542, 547, 553, 563, 567–568; *see also* international actors; policy actors
additive effects 453, 455, 457–458, 461, 470
administration 4, 7–9, 19–21, 23, 26, 28, 30–31, 37, 39, 47, 51–54, 67–68, 80, 82, 88–89, 91–92, 94–95, 106, 132–133, 137–138, 142, 150, 161–163, 165, 179, 182, 185, 192, 194, 199, 201, 209, 214–216, 221, 226, 285, 288–289, 298, 300–302, 305–310, 317, 322, 325, 327, 333, 335, 337–339, 352, 366, 382, 396–397, 401, 408, 413–424, 428, 442–444, 466–467, 472, 474–475, 503, 512, 517, 529, 538, 541, 551, 555, 562–564, 573, 578
administrative burden 132, 417, 466–467, 472, 474–475
administrative procedures 309, 396, 413–424
administrative rule-making 413–414, 422
advisory committees 30, 50, 53, 106, 151–152, 200–201, 210, 309, 347, 444, 448, 512, 514, 523, 535
advisory instruments 199, 202, 204–205; *see also* instruments
advisory tools 198, 202–205; *see also* tools
advocacy coalition 100, 391–392, 394
Africa 408, 576
agencies 4–5, 21–22, 24–25, 27, 29–30, 42, 67, 102, 104, 114, 117, 119, 126, 129–132, 142, 153, 165, 175, 181, 200–201, 210, 221, 227, 238, 285, 298–304, 307–310, 336, 338, 340, 363–364, 373, 381–382, 384, 392, 395, 402, 405–406, 445, 448–449, 468, 509, 511–513, 516, 535, 537, 542, 547, 554, 568; *see also* government agencies; oversight agencies
agenda-setting 3–5, 27, 36–38, 40, 42–43, 111, 113–121, 125–127, 129–131, 133, 137–145, 149–151, 153–157, 160, 173, 188, 203–205, 208, 211, 214, 222, 237, 241, 345, 348–349, 351, 388, 401, 428, 509, 514
agenda-setting tools 111, 113, 115, 117–119, 121, 140, 143, 145, 149; *see also* tools
agent-based modeling (ABM) 271–278
algorithms 237, 240, 534, 537–542, 560–561
ambiguity 186, 282, 290, 483, 540–541, 551, 573
analysis 4–5, 8–9, 13, 20, 22–23, 25, 29, 31, 40–43, 47, 49, 51–52, 54, 61–62, 69, 74, 76, 78, 81–82, 89–92, 105–107, 113–116, 121, 125–127, 131, 133, 154, 173–182, 189–190, 198–201, 208, 213–214, 223, 235–238, 240–241, 245–247, 248–251, 253, 257–265, 271, 272–276, 278, 308, 324, 345–346, 348,

353, 356, 358–363, 365–367, 373–374, 376, 378–380, 384–385, 389–394, 396, 398, 401, 403–409, 413, 415, 422–423, 428, 432, 435, 441–443, 445, 447–449, 453–457, 459–461, 468, 487, 498, 502, 511–512, 514, 516, 523, 528, 536, 539–540, 552, 559–562, 566, 570–572, 574, 577–578; *see also* cost-benefit analysis (CBA); cost-effectiveness analysis; data analysis; institutional analysis; multi-criteria decision analysis (MCDA); policy analysis; regulatory impact analysis (RIA); stakeholder analysis; statistical analysis; strategic options development and analysis; strengths, weaknesses, opportunities and threats (SWOT) analysis
analysts 5, 9, 107, 116, 173–176, 178–182, 235, 237–238, 272, 275, 359, 390–391, 396, 428, 441–443, 447, 536
analytical capacity 62, 248, 356, 358–359, 361, 390–392, 394, 409; *see also* capacity
analytical units 308
argumentation 116, 133–134, 142–143, 174, 201, 205, 213, 248, 353, 359, 392, 428, 456, 488, 518, 540, 553, 556, 562, 564
artificial intelligence (AI) 194, 375, 388, 488, 509, 514–515, 534–542, 559; *see also* computing
Asia 401, 406, 575–576
audits 106, 130, 192, 199, 317–318, 324, 351, 364–365, 405–406, 539
Australia 104, 119, 132, 141, 209, 216, 236, 320, 325–326, 334, 527, 547, 549, 576
authoritarianism 423
authority 3, 6–8, 24, 28–30, 38, 48–50, 52–53, 66–68, 76–80, 102, 106, 118–120, 126, 132, 137–138, 140, 142, 144, 150, 156, 161–162, 167, 180, 185–186, 191, 193–194, 212, 216, 225, 288, 297, 302–303, 305, 308, 316–317, 327–328, 332–334, 346–347, 357, 359–362, 366, 392, 396, 414–419, 421–424, 427, 430–431, 433–434, 444, 510–511, 518, 527, 535–537, 539–540, 553, 560, 574
authority-based tools 68, 80; *see also* tools

backcasting 181, 189, 245, 247, 249–251, 253
bans 6, 351–352, 510
bargaining 31, 40, 42, 53, 88, 91–92, 153, 339, 448
behaviour 3–5, 7–8, 10–11, 20, 26, 28–29, 61–67, 69, 73–82, 90, 103, 105–106, 113–114, 116–118, 121, 238, 240, 246, 248, 277, 285, 297, 301, 305–308, 316–323, 325–328, 346–351, 391, 393, 442, 471, 473–474, 483, 487–488, 510–511, 513, 515, 517–518, 523, 570–578
behavioural public policy 570–571, 577–578
benchmarking and performance indicators 187, 352, 525
big data 185–186, 194, 375, 509, 518, 534–542, 559–562, 565–568; *see also* data
boards 53, 63, 106, 165, 198, 225, 299–303, 445
boundary rules 503
boundary-spanning 47, 53, 117
bounded rationality 560, 562, 564–568, 572
branding 160–163, 165–166, 305, 351, 427
budgeting 20, 53, 103, 106, 120, 125, 127–129, 131, 133, 166, 175–177, 203, 215, 221, 225, 249, 304, 308, 310, 338, 351, 358, 360, 366, 390, 456, 550, 552, 564–565
budget reviews 125, 127–129, 131, 133
bureaucracy 6–7, 26, 41, 82, 104, 118, 130, 150–153, 177, 179, 191, 214, 271, 298, 301, 310, 320, 352, 366, 395, 422, 426–429, 434, 456, 471, 483, 510, 515, 523–524, 526, 529
bureaucrats 118, 121, 142, 144–145, 179, 199, 222, 271, 286, 288, 352, 378, 515, 578
business 39, 116, 150, 157, 166, 197, 201, 203–204, 215, 261, 276, 299–300, 304–305, 318, 322, 327, 335, 356–357, 361–362, 365–367, 442, 527–528, 534–535, 542, 568

calibration 3, 23, 26, 28, 42, 62, 68, 74–75, 80–82, 103–104, 106–107, 271, 275–277, 333, 336–338, 341, 456, 466–467, 472–475, 497–503, 518, 535, 540–542
Canada 5, 13, 131, 160, 163–169, 209–210, 214–215, 299–300, 302, 335, 339, 350–351, 361, 375, 406, 435
capacity 10, 12–13, 23, 28–29, 40–41, 50–51, 53, 61–62, 64–65, 67, 78, 80, 121, 128, 131, 153–154, 173–175, 178–182, 188, 194, 200, 204, 211–212, 248–249, 251–252, 284, 300, 304, 310, 320, 323, 333–334, 339, 341, 356–367, 377–379, 383, 385, 389–398, 402, 406–409, 424, 427, 459, 467–470, 474, 490, 517–518, 526, 528, 530, 534, 536–537, 539, 542, 556, 572; *see also* analytical capacity; managerial capacity; operational capacity; organizational capacity; political capacity; policy capacity
capacity-building 29, 51
capital 165, 227, 287, 301, 303, 335, 392–394, 396, 503, 547–548, 550–551, 553–554, 556; *see also* investments; money
capitalism 213, 552
capitalists 213–214
career-driven tools 138, 145; *see also* tools
carrots 23, 48, 55, 118, 120, 297, 346, 560; *see also* sticks
causal attribution 404, 406, 408–409
causal pathways 360, 366
census 444
central agency 165, 175, 307–308
certification 191, 298, 305, 308, 318, 325, 356–364, 366–367, 431
charitable deductions 118, 120
civil service 300

climate 11, 53, 94, 142–143, 177, 189, 214, 253, 285–287, 289–290, 334–335, 338, 356–357, 434, 482, 490, 499, 501, 523, 566, 570, 576
climate change 53, 94, 177, 285–286, 289, 335, 338, 482, 490, 499, 523, 576
co-design 52, 81, 152, 304
coercion 23, 25–26, 76–77, 80, 317, 319, 340, 350, 487–488, 511, 517
cognitive maps 258–261, 264
coherence 93–94, 103, 165, 194, 339, 366, 445, 466–469, 471, 474, 481–482, 486, 490, 518, 540–541
collaboration 51–55, 140, 156, 191, 220–227, 290, 310, 357, 392, 394–398, 434, 516, 523–525, 527–530, 576
collaborative evaluation 432; *see also* evaluations
collaborative regulatory regime 325
co-management 81, 304, 523–525, 528–529; *see also* management
command-and-control 21, 76, 161, 193, 297, 316, 321–322, 328, 455
command-and-control regulation 322, 455; *see also* regulation
commissioners 131, 212, 215–216, 299, 309, 527, 546
commissions 8, 23, 30, 36, 43, 63, 106–107, 126, 141, 150–151, 153–154, 157, 165, 179, 193, 198, 201–203, 208–216, 277–278, 298, 303–304, 309, 320, 347, 351, 358, 382, 395, 406, 414, 417–418, 434, 444, 488, 513, 524–528; *see also* regulatory commissions
commissions of inquiry 201, 208–216
committee(s) 30, 36, 43, 50, 53, 67, 106, 126–127, 130, 133, 140–141, 150–152, 156–157, 176, 200–201, 203–204, 209–210, 225, 309, 326, 347, 367, 405–406, 444, 448, 512, 514, 523, 535
communication 118–119, 140–141, 143, 150, 160–167, 185, 187–189, 191, 194, 198, 201, 261–262, 271–272, 276, 284, 300, 307, 345–353, 358, 360, 363, 366, 389–390, 393–398, 406, 460, 484, 503, 534, 536, 568
communicative tools 48, 348–349; *see also* tools
communities 7, 39, 69, 91, 100, 188, 191–194, 199, 201, 215, 277, 336, 433, 516
complementarity 28, 31, 88–89, 91–95, 103, 105, 193, 454, 466–467, 469–470, 482
compliance 11, 24, 50, 52, 61–62, 70, 73–82, 101, 153–154, 165, 168, 305, 308, 316–318, 321–325, 328, 333, 353, 363–365, 367, 405, 421–422, 430, 443, 455, 462, 488, 513, 530, 535, 537, 539, 542
compliance-deterrence logic 75–76, 82
compliance regime 74
composite indicators 187, 189, 193
computing 178, 272–275, 385, 407, 534, 537–538, 541, 559–560; *see also* artificial intelligence (AI); machine-learning
congruence 79, 93, 226, 339, 466–469, 471, 474, 481–482, 486, 490, 540–541
consistency 93, 103, 166, 405, 424, 445, 466–467, 469, 471, 474, 481–482, 484, 486, 490, 518, 540–541, 564
consultants 126, 179, 202, 308
consultations 4, 106, 114, 150–156, 198, 200, 347, 383, 418, 432, 512, 529–530
consultation tools 150–153, 155, 157; *see also* tools
contextual factors 55, 66, 225, 249, 389
contracts 104, 106, 177, 301, 303–304, 310, 317–318, 358, 395, 415, 523–528, 530, 541, 547, 552, 555–556
convergence 51, 375, 414, 418
conversion 94, 357, 364, 446–447, 449, 473, 485
co-production 53, 78, 81, 152, 227, 298, 305–306, 358, 509, 514–517, 523–525, 528–530, 576
co-regulation 322, 324; *see also* regulation
corporations 29, 39, 120, 289, 300, 302, 551
corporatism 13
cost-benefit analysis (CBA) 4, 52, 114, 177–182, 190, 366, 385, 403, 409
cost-effectiveness analysis 189, 380
counterproductive effects 194, 454–455, 457–459, 461, 470
COVID-19 128, 139, 201, 203, 277, 339, 375, 397–398, 421, 565–566
credibility 28, 67–68, 80–82, 166, 250, 323, 328, 362, 384, 405–406, 421
crises 127, 152, 208, 214, 274, 278, 346, 353, 374, 376, 381, 397–398, 415, 421, 434, 472, 488, 490, 523, 546, 575
critical juncture 41
critical theory 432
crown 300
crown corporations 300
cupidity 28, 67–68, 80–82

data 23, 53, 68, 102, 118, 131, 166, 175, 185–191, 193–194, 200, 236, 240, 247–248, 250, 252–253, 272–278, 319, 336–337, 341, 346, 350, 352–353, 361, 367, 375, 377–379, 381, 383–384, 398, 406–409, 418, 432, 461, 468, 509, 515, 518, 534–542, 550, 555, 559–563, 565–568, 571–573; *see also* big data; statistics
data analysis 378, 432, 560, 562; *see also* analysis
data collection 175, 200, 336, 350, 352–353, 381, 432, 468, 515, 536–538, 555, 561, 563, 573
decentralization 376, 576
decision-makers 19, 25, 39, 62, 104, 130, 133, 174, 179, 188, 197, 202, 213, 216, 235, 264, 287, 377, 421, 560
decision-making 3–5, 11, 27, 36–40, 42–43, 48–52, 55, 91, 107, 114–115, 120–121, 129, 153, 175, 189, 199, 202–204, 214–215, 223–224, 226–227, 233, 235–237, 239–241, 253, 257–260, 262–263, 274, 282–284,

286–288, 290, 320, 323, 326–327, 338–341, 349, 358, 374, 377, 394–396, 398, 401, 403, 413–424, 427–428, 430–433, 449, 473, 515, 517, 530, 534, 537, 541–542, 553–554, 560, 562–563, 566, 568, 572, 576–577
decision-making tools 189, 233; *see also* tools
decisions 12, 22, 29, 36–37, 39–40, 51–52, 73–74, 82, 90, 100, 103, 120–121, 127–128, 131, 154, 156, 176, 185, 187, 192, 197, 201, 221–223, 235–236, 238, 253, 277–278, 282–283, 285–288, 290, 297, 302, 308, 318, 320–321, 325, 328, 334, 340, 350, 360, 363, 375, 377, 390, 395–396, 404, 409, 413, 415–416, 419, 421–423, 429, 433, 449, 474, 486–487, 498, 502–503, 509, 515, 517, 527–528, 534–542, 554, 559–560, 562–564
deduction 118, 120, 338, 340, 342, 385
degrees of freedom 103, 340, 466–467, 472, 474–475
delegated regulation 200, 347; *see also* regulation
delegation 167, 200, 322, 324, 347, 418, 421, 535
deliberation 3, 5, 20, 22, 36, 40, 42–43, 50, 54, 114, 152, 155–156, 193, 201, 215, 227, 288, 348, 363, 392, 397, 434, 443, 447, 467, 469, 509
deliberative forum 225–226
deliberative process 435
democracy 11, 36, 130, 161–162, 177, 191, 213, 299, 373, 408, 415, 419, 423, 429–430, 525, 567–568
density 102, 226, 415, 455–457, 460
departments 11, 27, 132–133, 142, 154, 165–167, 202, 210, 236, 297–301, 308, 320, 342, 351, 363, 392, 395, 398, 406–409, 468, 513, 516, 547, 550–551, 559
deregulation 5, 12, 21, 130, 298, 305, 376, 444, 513; *see also* regulation
design 3–5, 7–8, 11–13, 19–22, 24–25, 27–31, 36, 40, 42–43, 48, 50, 52, 54–55, 61–64, 66, 73–82, 88–95, 100–103, 105–106, 114, 121, 126–127, 129–131, 139, 143, 151–152, 174–178, 180, 182, 188–190, 192, 204–205, 212, 216, 220–221, 223–225, 227, 235–237, 240–241, 247, 251, 264, 277, 283, 285–286, 288–290, 300–301, 303–304, 308, 310, 318, 324, 328, 336–337, 339–341, 356, 361, 373, 379–380, 382, 389–390, 392, 395–398, 401–402, 404–409, 427, 430, 434–435, 442–446, 448–449, 454–458, 461, 466–475, 481–490, 497–498, 503, 509, 511, 513–516, 518, 524, 526–530, 535–542, 552, 554–556, 563, 565–567; *see also* effective design; non-design; policy design; system design; under-design
design space 89–93, 95, 127, 180, 466–469, 540
dialogue 174, 185, 193–194, 222, 227, 238, 284, 288, 362, 392, 395–397, 413, 415, 417, 422, 427, 430, 461, 524, 530
digital 150, 160, 162–164, 166, 186, 240, 384, 417, 514–516, 518, 523, 534–538, 541–542, 560
digital tools 514–515, 518, 534–536, 541–542; *see also* tools
direct provision 12, 48, 200
discourse 69, 79, 100, 127, 174, 191, 248, 251, 253, 363, 429–430, 518
discussion 3, 9, 29–31, 38, 74, 78, 80, 89–90, 94, 116, 126, 130, 153–156, 164–165, 179, 193, 241, 247, 249, 258, 263–264, 271, 275, 284, 328, 349, 364, 375, 382, 392, 394, 398, 401, 405, 415, 426–428, 431, 433–434, 442, 454, 475, 488, 518, 529, 551, 571, 574
disincentives 23, 28, 66, 74, 81, 131, 317–318, 333, 342, 455; *see also* incentives
diversity 54, 137–138, 156–157, 185, 197, 205, 213, 221, 224, 227, 248, 304, 308, 360, 363, 366, 395, 405, 426–427, 431–432, 470, 517, 576
drift 94, 326, 441–442, 446–447, 449, 471, 473, 485, 490
drivers, pressures, state, impact and response (DPSIR) 257–259, 261–262, 264–265

economic instruments 24–25, 332, 339, 341–342; *see also* instruments
economic regulation 537; *see also* regulation
economy 3, 6, 9, 11–12, 20–25, 28, 66, 74–77, 81–82, 89, 95, 116, 118–120, 128, 138, 142, 145, 157, 164, 177–178, 189–190, 193, 201, 203, 213, 221, 249–250, 260, 263, 271, 273, 275–278, 290, 297, 304, 309, 317, 320–321, 323, 332–337, 339–342, 347, 351, 353, 357, 360, 365–367, 374–376, 379, 381–383, 385, 404, 406–409, 414, 419, 430, 433, 442, 448–449, 469, 472–473, 475, 486, 488, 490, 498–499, 501, 503, 510–511, 513, 515–517, 535, 537, 556, 561–564, 568, 574, 576
education 7, 9, 19–20, 29, 64, 74, 76–77, 103, 137–138, 143–145, 191, 213, 221, 227, 250, 276, 283, 299, 304, 319, 321, 333, 351, 353, 367, 393, 406, 423, 430–431, 433, 458, 524, 527, 549, 551, 574, 576
education-driven tools 137–138, 143, 145; *see also* tools
effective design 466, 475; *see also* design
effectiveness 7, 11, 22, 24–25, 30, 40, 49, 55, 61–62, 66–68, 78–82, 105, 107, 119–120, 126–127, 129, 131, 133, 153, 176, 189, 199–201, 205, 213, 225, 258, 287, 290, 298, 320–321, 335, 341, 346, 363, 379–380, 382, 391, 402, 405–409, 422, 427, 434, 441–442, 444, 454–461, 466–467, 469–475, 489–490, 509, 512, 526, 559, 565, 568
efficacy 104, 119, 175, 201, 220, 224, 227, 258, 276, 345, 348, 379–380, 461, 518

elections 20, 116, 128–129, 133, 152, 160, 165, 168, 201, 210, 215, 346, 401, 490, 562
enforcement 23, 28, 68, 76–77, 80, 304–305, 322–325, 353, 358, 364, 414, 416, 421, 503, 513, 535, 542
entrepreneurs 69, 100, 116, 143, 216, 328, 392–393, 556
environment 7, 12, 24, 40, 81, 94–95, 120, 160–163, 165, 189–190, 197, 221–222, 224, 248, 250, 258, 261–262, 271–274, 276, 283, 299, 320, 323, 326, 341, 346, 358, 367, 379, 384, 390–391, 393, 407–409, 416, 423, 426–428, 454, 469, 483–484, 488, 511, 514, 516, 540, 549, 570, 572, 576
epistemic 25, 91, 100, 133, 181, 191, 431, 498
epistemic communities 91, 100
ethics 76, 260, 272, 321, 358, 384, 389, 518, 541–542, 553, 566–567, 572, 578
Europe 11, 13, 21–22, 29, 116, 129, 132, 150, 151, 153–154, 157, 176, 179, 236, 277–278, 320, 335, 365, 383–384, 414–416, 418–420, 422–423, 447, 511, 518, 525, 529, 575–576
European Union 176, 365, 383–384, 415, 418
evaluation criteria 95, 126, 265; *see also* evaluations
evaluations 3–5, 7, 20–21, 27, 29, 36–38, 41–43, 50, 55, 77, 94–95, 114, 119, 125–133, 150, 155, 175, 178–179, 185, 187–189, 193, 198–199, 203–205, 209, 211–213, 227, 235–238, 240, 259–260, 265, 287–290, 308–309, 345, 348–350, 352, 371, 373–385, 388–398, 401–409, 413–415, 422, 424, 426–435, 449, 456, 459, 483, 489, 509, 517, 536, 540, 549, 552, 555, 563–566; *see also* collaborative evaluation; evaluation criteria; ex-ante evaluation; ex-post evaluation; external evaluation; formal evaluation; impact evaluation; internal evaluation; mixed evaluation; participatory evaluation; policy evaluation; process evaluation
evidence 40, 52, 78, 90–91, 95, 116–117, 119, 126–127, 129, 131–133, 137–138, 143, 145, 150, 166, 176, 178–179, 181, 188–189, 193, 198–199, 210, 213–214, 227, 236, 240, 250, 271, 273, 283–285, 289–290, 308, 341, 358–359, 361, 376, 384, 389, 391–392, 397, 405, 407, 422–423, 426–427, 433, 454, 459, 498, 500, 516, 518, 536, 548, 550, 554–556, 559, 562, 568, 570–572, 578
evidence-based policy-making 143, 568
ex-ante evaluation 377, 408; *see also* evaluations
ex-post evaluation 119, 377, 405, 414; *see also* evaluations
executive branch 208–210, 214, 216, 309, 414
executives 25, 152, 161–162, 176, 179, 181, 199, 208–211, 214–216, 307, 309, 332, 414, 416, 421, 458
exhaustiveness 538
exhortation 25–26, 200, 333, 347, 349–351, 488, 512
experts 24, 52–53, 91, 143, 149–157, 176, 182, 185, 189, 191, 193, 204, 209–210, 213, 215–216, 236, 249–251, 318, 383, 395–396, 403, 406, 418, 427, 431, 434, 443, 529, 540, 567–568
external evaluation 377, 401–405, 407–409; *see also* evaluations
externalities 24, 120, 271, 328

fake news 190; *see also* mass media; media; social media
families 3–4, 6, 12, 23, 69, 74, 126, 133, 200, 225, 299, 326, 347, 510, 549
federal 54, 92, 116, 120, 130, 132, 162–163, 165, 176, 210, 285, 298, 326, 336, 351, 396, 405, 415, 434–435, 550, 552, 568
federalism 213–214, 307
finance 11, 20–21, 23, 27, 48–49, 53, 67–68, 74, 77–78, 80–81, 102, 120, 127–129, 132, 140, 144–145, 161, 167, 179, 212, 215, 221, 252, 278, 297, 299–301, 303, 318, 333, 335–337, 341, 350–351, 353, 358, 374, 376, 392, 402, 406, 409, 415, 435, 455, 460, 472, 513–514, 527, 546–556, 566, 575–576
first order change 498, 501
first-order mechanism 62–64, 66, 68–69
first-order tools 63, 105; *see also* tools
focus groups 9, 150, 405
forecasting 55, 121, 174, 179, 189–190, 245, 247–248, 251–253, 278, 390, 560
foresight 118, 120–121, 245, 247–253, 470–471
formal evaluation 7, 29, 402; *see also* evaluations
framing 53, 63, 66, 76, 121, 141–142, 144–145, 174, 178, 185–190, 192, 194, 200, 212, 241, 246, 257, 261, 265, 278, 375, 405, 427, 429–431, 435, 471, 497, 537, 555, 573
France 116, 121, 338, 375, 416, 498
funding 7, 9–10, 24, 29–30, 50, 52, 66–68, 80, 106, 113, 119–120, 127–128, 133, 152, 200, 222, 236, 277, 301–304, 309, 325, 332, 334–335, 341–342, 347, 350, 382, 384, 405, 408, 444, 488–489, 512, 514, 546–548, 550–552, 554, 556; *see also* grants; loans

Germany 116, 119, 128, 132, 164, 375, 395, 397–398, 416, 575
globalization 418–419, 535
good governance 382, 385, 415, 426–427, 434; *see also* governance; public good
goodness of fit 103, 249, 340, 466–468
goods and services 5–6, 9–10, 13, 21, 29, 37, 42, 67, 80–81, 114, 117, 200, 202–203, 220, 223, 297, 300, 302–303, 310, 332, 347–348, 350–351, 488, 509–510, 513, 524, 526, 530

governance 3–4, 6, 10, 13, 20–21, 23–24, 28, 30–31, 38–39, 42–43, 48–49, 54–55, 63, 66, 77, 82, 91–92, 94, 101, 103–104, 106–107, 114–115, 117, 132, 140, 143, 150, 160–161, 176, 180, 182, 191, 193–194, 199, 201–202, 205, 209–210, 220–227, 238, 283, 285–286, 290, 297–298, 299, 301, 303, 306, 308, 310, 334, 336–337, 339–342, 345, 348, 352, 356–365, 367, 382, 385, 395, 397–398, 407, 413–420, 422–424, 426–427, 429–430, 434–435, 441–449, 456, 467–469, 497, 503, 509–510, 513, 516–518, 523–525, 528–529, 534–537, 539–542, 556; *see also* good governance; governing instruments; governance modes; multi-level governance
governance modes 4, 21, 28, 43, 66, 114–115, 345, 513, 518, 536, 540–541
governing instruments 3, 6, 23, 26, 42, 211, 346, 510; *see also* instruments
government advertising 113, 163, 201, 349
government agencies 24–25, 29, 117, 119, 126, 129–132, 298–299, 301, 307–308, 310, 392, 516; *see also* agencies
government strategies 157, 385
grants 7, 30, 67, 74, 106, 200, 216, 318, 333–335, 339, 341–342, 347, 395, 406, 444, 458, 512, 552, 556; *see also* funding; loans

healthcare 562
health services 3–4, 105, 290
hegemony 430
historical institutionalism 360
history 12–13, 19, 21, 23, 25, 27, 29, 31, 77, 81, 120, 141, 182, 189, 222, 247, 359–362, 375, 377, 393, 406, 432–434, 442, 445, 484, 486, 490, 509, 546, 550, 555, 576
horizontality 91–92

icons 4, 20, 165
ideology 142, 174, 212–214, 216, 305, 475
impact assessment 4, 43, 114–115, 283, 385, 404
impact evaluation 379–381, 403–405, 409, 555; *see also* evaluations
imperfect information 282
implementation 3–8, 13, 20–24, 27–28, 30–31, 36–38, 40–43, 47–54, 64, 66, 68, 75, 77, 79, 88, 103, 106, 113–114, 117–119, 121, 125–126, 129–132, 138–139, 141, 150, 153–154, 166, 173–177, 180–181, 189–190, 198–201, 204–205, 211–212, 220–222, 224, 227, 238, 241, 271, 274–275, 277, 283–286, 288, 290, 295, 305–310, 316, 321, 323–324, 327–328, 332–335, 340, 342, 345, 348–350, 352, 374, 377–378, 380, 389–390, 392, 395–396, 401–402, 404, 407–408, 413–415, 417, 419–420, 423–424, 428, 434, 441–443, 445, 447–449, 454, 456, 459–461, 472–474, 481–484, 489, 498–499, 501, 509–511, 513, 516–517, 523–524, 526–530, 534–536, 538, 541–542, 554, 559, 561–562; *see also* implementation research; implementation tasks; policy implementation
implementation research 20, 52
implementation tasks 40
incentives 11, 22–23, 28–29, 48, 53–54, 66, 74, 77–78, 81, 101, 175, 223, 277, 297, 317–320, 325, 333–335, 337, 340–342, 357, 402, 455, 489, 499, 511, 513, 517, 526–527, 539, 550, 552–553, 560, 568; *see also* disincentives
incremental change 341, 472
incrementalism 212, 442
indicators 52, 103, 131, 177, 179, 185–194, 276, 285, 352, 383–385, 395, 406, 409, 427, 429–430, 434–435, 457
induction 240
inflation 351, 408
informatics 384, 559–560, 565–566
information 4, 6–12, 20, 24, 27–30, 41, 48–53, 63, 66–68, 74–76, 78–81, 89, 92, 102, 106, 113–114, 118, 120–121, 129, 131, 133, 140, 142, 149, 154, 160–166, 175, 179, 185–186, 188–191, 193–194, 197–203, 205, 213, 220, 224, 241, 248, 257, 262, 272, 274, 277–278, 282, 297, 300–301, 304, 308–309, 319–321, 323, 325–326, 333, 335, 341–342, 345–353, 358, 374–381, 384–385, 388–393, 397–398, 402–406, 409, 417–420, 422, 424, 432–433, 435, 444, 454, 458, 460, 489, 503, 510–515, 517, 524, 527, 534–538, 553, 559–562, 564–566, 568, 574; *see also* big data; data; knowledge; statistics
information-based tools 78, 201, 349, 514; *see also* tools
information collection 347
information disclosure 4, 114, 346, 351
information release 6, 346, 510
information suppression 10
initiative 5, 21, 55, 62, 116–117, 120, 149, 156, 163, 166, 202, 204, 236, 238, 278, 282–283, 285, 287, 289–290, 307, 309, 348, 357, 385, 403, 442, 445, 513, 527, 547, 549–551, 553, 556, 571
innovation 48, 52–53, 55, 121, 150, 152, 156, 162, 193, 246, 277–278, 282–284, 310, 318, 335, 364, 366–367, 385, 406, 474, 526, 528–529, 547, 550–552, 554, 556, 568
innovation lab 52–53
innovative 53, 121, 128, 193, 235–236, 240–241, 286, 290, 327, 364, 383–384, 546–547, 550, 552, 555
institution 7, 29, 39, 41, 51, 53–54, 104, 115–116, 126, 143, 153, 176, 178, 191–192, 208–215, 221, 223–224, 307, 324, 341, 350, 360, 363, 373, 384–385, 395, 402, 406–409, 415,

418–423, 426–428, 430, 433, 435, 470, 474, 542, 549, 556, 568
institutional analysis 223, 360; *see also* analysis
institutionalism 212, 360, 420
instrument choice 4–5, 9–13, 21–28, 42, 65, 89–90, 95, 114, 212, 300, 340, 442–446, 449, 481–482, 488, 499, 502
instrument combinations 339, 453–455, 459–461
instrument constituencies 102, 141, 194, 429, 433, 474
instrument interactions 453–455, 457, 459, 461
instruments 3–13, 19–31, 36, 38, 42–43, 47–49, 55, 61–62, 64–67, 73–74, 76, 79, 82, 88–95, 100–105, 113–115, 117–119, 121, 126–128, 132–133, 137–139, 141, 149–150, 157, 174–175, 180–182, 186–187, 189, 193–194, 198–205, 208–209, 211–213, 216, 235, 238, 277, 290, 297–298, 300, 305–306, 309, 316, 322, 332–342, 345–351, 353, 358–359, 364–365, 381, 384, 389, 391–393, 395, 397, 404–405, 408, 414–415, 421, 426–427, 429–430, 432–433, 435, 441–449, 453–461, 466–475, 481–482, 485–488, 497–502, 509–518, 523–526, 530, 535–536, 540–541, 546–548, 551–552, 556, 565, 572, 574, 578; *see also* advisory instruments; economic instruments; governing instruments; notification instruments; policy instruments; procedural instruments; regulatory instruments
insurance 101–102, 301, 326, 333–334, 336–337, 341–342, 488
integration 47, 51, 53–55, 91, 93–94, 103, 138, 143, 160, 225, 240, 258, 261, 263–264, 339, 364, 373, 383, 395, 397, 403, 435, 443, 446–447, 456, 467–469, 487, 527, 561
interest groups 7–9, 25, 29–30, 39, 79, 113, 117, 119, 125, 137–138, 149, 152–153, 165, 174, 213, 215–216, 309, 322, 326, 347, 392, 444, 448, 474–475
interests 20, 26, 50–51, 54–55, 69, 74, 92, 101, 117, 120, 128, 140, 142, 151, 156–157, 174–175, 191, 245, 259, 271, 274, 308–309, 319, 324, 327, 333, 348, 353, 357–358, 365–366, 390, 395, 397, 414–420, 422–424, 426, 428, 432–433, 442, 446, 474–475, 483, 514–515
internal evaluation 132, 377, 401–402, 404–409; *see also* evaluations
internal evaluators 402, 405–406, 409
international actors 13, 39, 201; *see also* actors
investments 1, 155, 191, 287, 300, 304, 404, 407, 419, 458, 488, 546–550, 552–554, 556; *see also* capital
issue management 118; *see also* management
issue networks 51; *see also* networks
issues 11, 13, 20, 26–28, 31, 36, 38–39, 47–48, 51, 53–55, 66–69, 73–74, 77–78, 80–81, 88–90, 92–95, 101, 105, 113, 115–116, 118, 121, 125, 131, 133, 137–145, 149–152, 154, 156, 164, 166–167, 176, 180, 188–190, 192, 197, 199–200, 202–205, 209–216, 221, 223–225, 235, 237–238, 240–241, 246, 250–252, 258–264, 282, 284, 287–290, 301, 303–304, 306–307, 309, 318, 321–323, 325, 337, 340–342, 346, 348, 350–351, 353, 356–358, 389–396, 398, 401, 403, 405, 407–409, 414, 416, 420, 428, 431, 434, 442, 447, 453–454, 457–461, 467, 481–488, 490, 497, 513–514, 539, 542, 548, 552, 554, 556, 565–568, 570, 572–574, 576–578

judges 215, 419
judiciary 176, 213
jurisdictions 36, 38, 78, 162, 200–201, 209–211, 298, 302, 308, 325, 339, 345, 353, 361, 364, 445, 513

knowledge 5, 8, 24, 27, 29, 31, 39, 41–42, 52, 54–55, 67–68, 73, 76, 79–80, 89, 115–116, 118, 121, 129, 131, 137–138, 143, 145, 153–154, 174, 177–180, 185, 191, 198–199, 201, 203, 213, 227, 235–236, 240–241, 245, 248, 253, 260, 274–275, 277, 282–284, 287–288, 304, 308, 319, 323, 326, 341, 346–347, 350, 352, 358, 363, 366–367, 375, 377, 389–395, 398, 402, 405, 409, 427, 429, 431–434, 454, 483, 485, 511, 518, 528–529, 534–538, 542, 564–565, 567–568, 570; *see also* big data; data; information; statistics
knowledge brokers 174, 179
knowledge construction 427, 429, 536
knowledge producers 174, 179

laws 6, 19, 21, 28, 68, 74, 76–77, 80, 82, 119, 126, 130, 132, 143, 199, 215, 299, 316, 321, 328, 333, 349–351, 353, 358, 364–365, 367, 408–409, 413–415, 417, 419–424, 510, 576
layering 90, 94, 194, 441–442, 446–447, 449, 455, 471, 484–485, 487, 490, 515, 518
legislatures 119, 132, 165, 176, 202, 214, 308–309, 413, 416, 423
legitimacy 11, 25, 28, 67–68, 75–77, 80, 82, 126, 129, 149–150, 152–156, 192–193, 213–214, 221–222, 225, 305, 307, 321, 327–328, 357, 359–360, 362, 364, 366, 375–376, 396, 422, 429, 433
lessons 4–5, 21, 63, 73, 236, 285, 290, 359, 396, 398, 405, 407–409, 435, 460, 481, 483, 485, 550
liberal democracy 11, 36, 161–162, 191, 299
line department 165, 300, 308, 513
loan guarantees 335, 550, 553
loans 200, 278, 333, 335–336, 341–342, 347, 406–407, 409, 550, 553; *see also* funding; grants

lobbying 50, 92, 307, 514
lobbyists 174, 271
lock-in 69, 471–472, 474, 481, 485–486, 488, 490

machine-learning 236, 273, 534, 539–540, 560; *see also* computing
mainstreaming 284, 307
management 5, 8, 10, 13, 19–21, 30, 42, 49–50, 55, 81–82, 102–103, 114, 118, 125, 127–128, 150, 160–165, 167, 177, 186, 193, 197, 199, 203–205, 215–216, 222–224, 226–227, 241, 259–262, 278, 284–285, 290, 299–300, 302, 304–307, 310, 321, 324, 335–336, 345, 353, 356–358, 361–363, 366–367, 376, 378, 385, 389–390, 392, 394–395, 397–398, 406–408, 413, 417, 419, 426–427, 430, 433, 435, 442, 444–448, 475, 485, 488, 490, 523–526, 528–530, 551–552, 555, 568, 576; *see also* co-management; issue management; management; media management; network management; New Public Management (NPM)
managerial capacity 359, 361, 366–367, 390, 528; *see also* capacity
managers 40, 55, 224–226, 258, 303, 306–307, 359, 362, 366, 374, 376, 444, 528–529, 577
market creation 347
market failure 334, 339, 442, 449, 526, 555–556
marketing 76, 78, 81, 161, 299–300, 302
markets 6, 12, 31, 197, 204–205, 213, 303–304, 325, 335, 365, 502–503, 510, 553
mass media 351; *see also* media; social media
measures 21, 53–54, 73, 76, 92, 94–95, 103–104, 106, 127–129, 131–133, 149, 152–153, 175, 185, 187, 189–191, 193, 211, 237, 250, 274, 299, 335, 339, 345, 349–350, 379, 392, 397, 406, 420, 430–431, 435, 454–457, 459–461, 487–489, 497, 499–502, 518
media 39, 113, 117, 139, 142, 152, 155, 160–167, 176, 187–188, 197, 213, 215, 251–252, 346, 349–352, 388, 456, 515, 537–538; *see also* social media
media management 162, 164; *see also* management; media
messaging 160–161, 163, 166
methodology 238, 240–241, 248–249, 258–259, 264, 271–272, 274–276, 278, 375, 377, 379–384, 407, 427, 430, 433, 454, 459, 461, 534, 536–539, 555, 561, 568, 572–573
methods 6, 13, 121, 130, 177, 180, 186, 190, 235–236, 238, 240–241, 245, 248–249, 251–253, 257–261, 263–265, 271, 274, 283, 317, 321, 373, 378–382, 390, 396, 409, 421, 429–430, 434–435, 453–454, 459, 461, 510, 554, 568, 573, 576
mini-public 156
ministers 127, 163–166, 202–204, 210, 215, 307, 320, 434
ministries 53, 126–127, 129, 131–132, 179, 210, 299, 307–309, 383, 396, 421
mixed evaluation 377–378; *see also* evaluations
mixed tools 524; *see also* policy tools
mobilization 40, 63, 137–141, 143, 145, 152, 154, 185, 188, 306, 456
money 23, 50, 119, 127, 161, 213, 302, 307, 323, 335, 342, 460, 503, 547–548, 551; *see also* capital
monitoring 37, 50, 52, 68, 74, 80, 103, 160, 165, 187–189, 191, 199, 227, 238, 241, 290, 324, 349, 351, 374, 383, 385, 390, 427, 430, 433, 435, 447, 456, 460, 482, 488, 514, 526–527, 535, 537–538, 555
monopolies 69, 248, 301–303; *see also* natural monopoly
moral suasion 77–78, 82, 201, 349–350, 499
multi-criteria decision analysis (MCDA) 240, 257, 259–265, 403; *see also* analysis
multi-level governance 91, 176, 415; *see also* governance

national forest program (NFP) 445, 447–449
natural experiment 576
natural monopoly 302; *see also* monopolies
negotiations 40, 51, 54, 133, 199, 264, 447–448, 552
neo-institutionalism 212
Netherlands 121, 128–129, 132, 253, 549, 575
network administrative organization (NAO) 51, 226
network coordination 226
network management 10, 50, 55, 306–307, 345, 444, 447; *see also* management
networks 4, 8–10, 12–13, 24, 39, 43, 49–52, 55, 69, 102, 107, 114–115, 117–118, 140, 153, 177, 191–192, 198, 200, 202, 216, 220, 223–227, 246, 259–261, 276–277, 306–307, 309–310, 316, 323, 325–328, 334, 345, 348, 350, 382–383, 392–393, 397–398, 404, 417, 429, 443–444, 447, 486, 511, 528–529, 537–540, 560–562; *see also* policy networks
New Governance Arrangements (NGAs) 441–443, 445–447, 449
New Public Management (NPM) 127, 150, 177, 310, 376, 413, 417, 524–526, 529, 551, 553; *see also* management
news media ecosystem 162
nodality 7, 9, 24, 28, 30, 49, 66, 79, 81, 118, 140, 200, 202, 297, 345–347, 444, 511–512, 574
nodality, authority, treasure, organization (NATO) 24, 30, 66, 118–121, 126, 140, 297, 346, 511–512, 574
non-design 127, 468, 474; *see also* under-design
non-governmental organizations (NGOs) 39, 119, 150, 200, 202, 222, 238, 303–304, 307, 359–360, 420, 423, 556; *see also* organizations

non-implementation tools 27, 113; *see also* tools
non-profit sector 6, 48, 120, 163, 297, 303, 510, 514, 516, 524, 526–528, 530, 546–548, 550, 552–554, 556
non-state market-driven (NSMD) Tools 305, 356–359, 361–367; *see also* tools
normative 74, 76–77, 127, 137–138, 141, 187, 192, 248, 321, 328, 341, 363, 406, 428, 432, 566, 572
norms 4, 11, 114, 130, 138, 140–141, 153, 164, 192, 223, 246, 250, 319, 323, 360, 362–363, 396, 433, 468, 486, 499, 501, 517, 527, 566
notification instruments 349–350; *see also* instruments
nudging 76, 78, 81, 101, 316–317, 320–321, 325, 328, 396, 509, 515, 517–518, 571–575, 577–578

officials 38, 49, 118, 149–150, 152–153, 156–157, 160, 162, 167, 175, 179–180, 191, 194, 199, 201–204, 210, 287, 300, 308, 320, 335, 352, 358–360, 362–366, 389–391, 395, 419, 426, 515
Official Secrets Act 352
operational capacity 468; *see also* capacity
optimization 197–207, 366, 540–541
organizational capacity 13, 121, 406; *see also* capacity
Organization for Economic Co-Operation and Development (OECD) 22, 128, 131, 190, 258, 261, 278, 379, 382–385, 414, 417, 419, 511, 546, 555, 572
organizations 4, 6, 20–22, 24–25, 28, 31, 39–41, 47–55, 66–67, 78, 80–81, 104, 117–118, 120–121, 128–130, 132–133, 140, 152, 154, 156–157, 163–164, 176, 179–180, 187, 194, 199–202, 205, 210, 212–213, 224–226, 245, 249–250, 275, 278, 297–299, 301–308, 310, 332, 334–336, 338, 340, 347, 352, 356–359, 366, 373, 377–378, 382–385, 402, 405–407, 409, 414, 420, 423, 430, 444, 456, 470, 488, 490, 510–512, 515–516, 523–524, 535, 538, 541, 549–550, 552, 556, 560, 565, 568, 572, 577–578; *see also* non-governmental organizations (NGOs); quasi-autonomous non-governmental organizations (QUANGOs); research organizations
organization studies 20
outsourcing 142, 302–304, 525–526
oversight agencies 302, 309; *see also* agencies

paradigmatic change 140, 497, 499–500
paradigms 78, 192, 264, 321, 324–325, 403, 427–428, 490, 497, 529; *see also* policy paradigms
parliament 53, 106, 119, 126, 129, 131, 150, 163, 211, 213, 307, 309, 384, 413–414, 418, 421–422, 424
parliamentary system 307
participation 8, 29–30, 48, 50, 52, 54–55, 78, 102, 106, 149, 151–152, 154–155, 157, 181, 212, 221, 223, 225, 227, 237–238, 258, 260, 277, 287, 306, 309, 326, 337, 376, 378, 381, 397, 401, 405, 415, 417–419, 421–424, 432–433, 448, 516, 523–525, 528–530, 538, 541, 576
participatory evaluation 377, 435; *see also* evaluations
partnerships 50, 67, 80–81, 106–107, 303–304, 310, 326, 376, 382, 406, 420, 432, 434, 500, 512–513, 524–525, 527–529, 551, 556
partnership tools 106; *see also* tools
path dependency 212, 214, 471, 481, 485–486, 490
pay-for-performance 240, 546–547
performance 26, 54, 64, 100–102, 106–107, 120, 127, 129, 131, 167, 181, 186–188, 192–193, 199–200, 205, 223, 227, 240, 264–265, 277, 282, 287, 310, 316, 319, 323, 327, 334, 345, 349, 352–353, 376, 379, 381, 396, 403, 406–409, 420, 430, 435, 459–460, 471, 473, 482, 488, 490, 526–527, 534–536, 539, 542, 546–548, 551–554, 567, 576
performance indicators 131, 187, 192–193, 352
periodic reviews 119, 140, 309, 487
persuasion 25, 54, 76–77, 81, 116, 317, 319, 321–322, 325, 350, 376–377, 382, 503, 433
planning 22, 47, 51, 118, 120–121, 160–162, 164–167, 177–178, 189, 241, 257–261, 263–265, 309, 358, 380, 383, 390, 407–408, 432, 434, 448, 474, 490, 511
planning tools 160, 164; *see also* tools
pluralism 54, 200
policy actors 7–8, 28–29, 37–38, 41, 50, 65, 66, 69, 73–74, 82, 102, 116–118, 137–139, 141–145, 192, 215, 221, 347–348, 358–360, 364–366, 483–484, 511; *see also* actors
policy advice 197–205, 208–209, 211, 213, 215, 308, 395
policy advisor 19, 200
policy advisory systems 180, 198, 205, 468
policy alternatives 3, 141, 177, 235–238, 240–241, 282–283, 286, 403–404, 474, 509, 539, 541, 566
policy analysis 31, 76, 127, 173–174, 177, 179–180, 182, 199, 236, 238, 240, 275–276, 278, 308, 345, 366, 390, 435, 441, 468; *see also* analysis
policy analysts 174–176, 178–179, 181–182, 235, 390–391, 428, 442
policy appraisal 129
policy behaviour 5, 65, 69, 117, 202
policy brokers 392
policy bundle 31, 88, 95, 101
policy capacity 61, 153–154, 180–181, 359–360, 363, 389–391, 393–395, 397–398, 468, 470, 474, 490

policy change 41, 65–66, 105, 130, 138, 140, 157, 204, 210, 212, 214, 216, 246, 286, 288, 390, 446, 449, 485, 498–500, 502–503
policy choice 24–25, 50, 104, 189, 284, 288–289, 389, 441, 446, 518, 535, 559
policy communities 7, 39, 69, 306, 498
policy compliance 75
policy component 101, 104, 285, 490, 498–499, 502
policy conflict 8, 511
policy context 92, 121, 145, 282–283, 286, 290, 328, 340, 393, 427, 433–435, 486
policy coordination 95, 467, 526
policy criteria 503
policy cycle 22, 36–38, 41, 43, 47, 51, 53, 55, 113–114, 117–118, 127, 137–139, 145, 149, 154, 161, 173, 185–186, 188, 208, 211–212, 235–241, 348–349, 390, 416, 422, 428
policy design 3–5, 8, 20–22, 24–25, 28, 30–31, 36, 42–43, 54, 61–64, 73–75, 77–80, 82, 88–91, 95, 100–101, 103, 105–106, 114, 121, 126–127, 139, 175, 177–178, 204, 221, 224–225, 235–237, 240–241, 283, 285–286, 289, 300–301, 303, 310, 340–341, 389–390, 392, 395, 397–398, 409, 435, 442–444, 449, 454–458, 461, 466, 471, 474–475, 481–487, 490, 497–498, 503, 509, 511, 513–516, 518, 526, 528, 535–537, 539–542; *see also* design
policy determinants 116
policy discourse 69
policy drift 441–442, 449, 490
policy dynamic 5, 65, 101–102, 105, 181, 445, 482, 497–498, 500, 503, 535, 542
policy effectiveness 55, 455, 457–458, 460–461, 559
policy ends 104, 107, 499
policy entrepreneurs 100, 116, 143, 216, 392–393
policy evaluation 4, 27, 37–38, 41–42, 94, 114, 125–126, 211, 227, 236–237, 309, 345, 349–350, 371, 373–377, 379, 381–383, 385, 388–391, 393–398, 401–404, 409, 429; *see also* evaluations
policy experiments 282–289
policy failure 10, 310, 361, 390–391, 397–398, 482, 484
policy feedback 69, 461, 473, 475
policy formulation 5, 27, 31, 37–40, 42, 50–53, 75, 79, 90–92, 95, 106, 114, 127, 139, 150, 173–182, 185, 188–190, 193–194, 197–198, 204–205, 208, 211–212, 220, 222, 238, 245, 247, 253, 282, 288, 309, 345, 348–349, 351, 374, 389, 428, 509, 518, 536
policy formulation tools 106, 173–182, 185, 190; *see also* tools
policy framework 100, 406
policy goals 3, 19, 31, 36, 39–41, 88–90, 94, 100–101, 103–105, 137–138, 177, 180–181, 191, 203, 211, 221, 227, 235, 237, 285–286, 288, 297, 340, 345, 358, 428, 442, 445, 447, 453–455, 460, 466–471, 481, 486, 488, 498, 501–502, 515, 517, 541
policy ideas 133, 137–143, 145, 286, 468, 484, 498
policy implementation 3–5, 7, 24, 28, 31, 36–37, 40, 42, 79, 114, 117–118, 138, 153–154, 173, 189, 205, 211, 227, 238, 241, 295, 332, 345, 348–350, 352, 374, 460, 474, 484, 498, 509, 523–524, 526, 534, 562
policy implementation tools 28, 295, 523; *see also* tools
policy instruments 3–7, 9–10, 12–13, 19–25, 27, 30–31, 36, 38, 42–43, 48, 55, 61–62, 65–67, 73, 79, 82, 89, 95, 102, 104, 114–115, 117–118, 121, 126–127, 137–138, 141, 149, 180–182, 186, 189, 198–201, 203, 211, 213, 216, 290, 298, 332, 335, 341–342, 345–348, 364–365, 392, 405, 426–427, 433, 435, 441–446, 449, 453, 455–461, 467, 473, 475, 481–482, 488, 497–498, 502, 509–510, 512, 515–516, 518, 523, 530, 535, 565, 572, 574, 578; *see also* instruments
policy issues 13, 26, 39, 48, 53, 113, 131, 137, 139, 141–145, 151–152, 188, 192, 197, 200, 202, 204–205, 209, 213, 223, 252, 282, 284, 348, 389–391, 539, 568
policy layering 90
policy learning 63, 119, 215, 283–285, 287–288, 360, 362, 389, 403, 405, 441, 446–448, 490, 518, 568
policy-making 7, 19–20, 22, 27–28, 31, 37, 40, 43, 49–50, 65, 69, 88, 94, 113, 117, 126, 131, 133, 138, 143, 197–198, 202, 204, 220, 235–238, 245, 286, 299, 308–309, 348, 389, 392, 428–429, 431, 433, 435, 469, 482, 485–486, 489, 509–511, 523, 567–568
policy means 3, 10, 19, 42, 104, 107, 483, 486, 499, 540
policy measures 68, 80, 95, 103, 127–129, 131, 133, 149, 152–153, 190, 350, 488–489, 497
policy mechanisms 23, 65–66, 69, 405
policy mixes 11, 27, 48, 61, 79, 82, 88, 90–92, 94–95, 100–103, 105–107, 149, 286, 340, 364, 428, 435, 441, 443, 445, 453–455, 457, 459, 461, 466, 481–490, 502–503, 509, 515, 523, 535
policy models 104
policy myopia 502
policy networks 8, 39, 49–51, 55, 117–118, 153, 202, 216, 348, 350, 443, 511; *see also* networks
policy objectives 3, 24, 40, 47–48, 50, 53, 105, 107, 128, 154, 175, 180, 189, 191, 194, 205, 210, 220, 276, 282, 306, 332–342, 403, 414, 445, 455, 468, 497, 534, 538, 540

policy options 29, 37–39, 50, 121, 126, 131, 174–175, 178, 185, 189–190, 197, 200, 210, 237–238, 286–287, 348
policy output 5, 21–22, 50, 65–66, 69, 221, 456, 503, 526
policy paradigms 192, 428, 497; *see also* paradigms
policy patching 94–95, 473, 490, 502
policy pilots 282, 284, 286–288
policy portfolios 89–90, 92, 94–95, 101, 107, 149, 286, 455, 485, 487, 489, 497, 518; *see also* tool portfolios
policy practice 5, 8, 89, 174, 220, 278, 483, 503, 526, 528
policy problems 24, 37, 39–40, 53–54, 102, 105, 138–139, 150, 173, 175, 177, 179, 188–190, 197–199, 203, 210–213, 235, 237, 246, 249, 272, 283, 287, 333, 339–340, 348, 356, 362, 364, 366, 393, 441–442, 453–454, 461, 466–467, 469, 471, 475, 490, 498, 525, 542, 559
policy process 3–5, 8, 13, 20–21, 23, 27, 29–30, 36–38, 40–43, 47, 49–50, 55, 100, 113–115, 125–126, 133, 137–138, 140–141, 143, 145, 149–150, 153, 155–157, 173–174, 176, 188, 198–199, 201–203, 208–209, 211–212, 220–221, 223–224, 227, 247, 289, 306–307, 309, 347–349, 356, 358, 360, 363, 389, 391, 395, 398, 401, 428, 433–434, 443, 466, 472, 483, 509, 514, 523, 528, 539, 570
policy regime 22, 104, 180, 285, 287, 442–443, 448, 467–469, 474, 490, 498
policy relevance 186, 188, 190–191
policy review 125–129, 131–133, 208, 213, 290, 489
policy science 3–4, 19–21, 47, 51, 69, 75–76, 78, 82, 100, 113, 116, 139, 149, 238, 290, 360, 427–429, 483, 485, 489, 559–560
policy setting 454
policy shop 308
policy simulation 535, 542
policy specifications 502–503
policy stability 498
policy stream 116
policy studies 3, 5, 20–21, 42, 78, 100, 104, 107, 116, 140, 338, 379, 428, 441, 499, 509, 574–576
policy styles 66, 518
policy subsystems 8–9, 39, 50, 55, 69, 91, 104, 116, 182, 390, 393, 398, 510
policy success 21, 73, 106, 153–154, 284, 390, 403, 406, 483
policy takers 61, 473–474
policy targets 13, 28, 61, 67, 74, 76, 79–81, 93, 240, 333, 335, 339, 405, 453, 455, 457, 472–475, 486, 511, 517, 572
policy termination 119
policy theory 74, 212, 288, 502
policy tools 3–5, 7, 9, 11, 13, 21–22, 24–25, 27–29, 31, 36–37, 42–43, 47–55, 61–65, 66, 69, 73–75, 78–81–82, 88–89, 91, 93–95, 100–107, 113–114, 117, 119–120, 126–127, 133, 137–138, 143–145, 149–150, 174, 185–187, 189, 191–194, 197–198, 200–203, 205, 208–216, 220–221, 223–225, 227, 235, 237, 241, 245, 271, 273, 275, 277, 282, 297, 306, 309–310, 332–334, 341–342, 345–347, 349, 351, 353, 356, 358, 401–402, 426, 428–429, 435, 443, 445, 447, 449, 453–454, 456–458, 460–461, 466, 481–482, 486–487, 489, 497, 499–501, 503, 507, 509–513, 515–518, 523, 525–526, 529–530, 535–539, 540–541, 546–547, 552, 559–560, 566, 570–571, 574, 578; *see also* tools
policy trajectory 485
policy windows 116, 216
political capacity 390, 392, 394, 406, 468; *see also* capacity; policy capacity
political information cycle 163
political parties 25, 133, 140, 161, 200, 213, 288, 352, 375
political power 6, 39, 49, 51, 67, 80, 116, 119, 126, 178, 181, 213, 222, 224–225, 288–289, 305, 307, 325, 327–328, 338, 346, 360, 362, 396, 414, 416–417, 419, 428, 431, 483, 490, 510, 529
political sciences 3, 20, 31, 62, 95, 276, 290, 362, 416, 530, 576
political support 23, 131, 335–336, 338, 408, 467–468
political systems 25, 143, 153, 182, 214, 470
politicians 27, 116, 131, 142, 160–163, 166, 168–169, 174, 187, 212–213, 286–287, 376, 390, 449, 556, 577
politics 4, 22, 29, 31, 116, 133, 161, 163, 182, 193, 208, 222, 235, 260, 282, 284, 287–290, 310, 316, 358, 360, 367, 406, 409, 416, 428, 430, 434–435, 467, 471, 473–474
politics stream 116
polls and polling 7, 160, 167, 352, 444
pollution 5, 21, 24, 116, 285, 318, 442
populism 190
positivists 174, 250, 427–430
practice 3–5, 8, 11–13, 24, 26, 40, 42, 47, 74, 76–77, 88–90, 93, 102, 107, 113–114, 126–128, 131–132, 145, 150, 153, 156, 161, 173–174, 178–180, 188, 194, 198–200, 203, 220, 223–224, 227, 235–236, 238, 241, 245, 250, 257, 259–260, 273–278, 283, 285–288, 290, 304, 317, 321, 332, 337, 340, 345, 357, 360–363, 366–367, 373, 375–378, 381, 383–385, 390, 395, 405–406, 409, 413–415, 417–418, 420, 423, 426–428, 431–435, 441–443, 447, 456, 458, 471, 483–484, 486, 501–503, 512–516, 523–524, 526–528, 530, 535, 541–542, 552, 562, 578
practitioners 4, 13, 21, 31, 74, 88–89, 102, 106, 162, 177, 241, 324, 328, 345, 356,

361–362, 377, 428, 453, 461, 488, 555–556, 568, 573
praxis 395
precautionary principle 484
precision of targeting 502
Prime Minister's Office (PMO) 165
private sector 127, 175, 177, 200, 215, 261, 301, 305, 325, 351, 392, 406, 488, 526–527, 546, 551, 554
privatization 21, 116, 298, 302, 305, 376, 444, 500, 513
Privy Council Office (PCO) 165, 307–308
problem stream 116
problem structuring methods (PSMs) 174, 179, 190, 236, 238, 240, 257–261, 263, 265
problems 12, 24, 27–28, 36–41, 47–49, 51, 54–55, 74, 79, 89–90, 95, 102, 105, 113, 116, 120, 131–132, 142, 150, 157, 167, 173–175, 177, 179, 185–190, 192–194, 197–199, 203, 209–210, 212, 220–222, 235, 237, 245–246, 250, 252, 257, 259–260, 264, 272, 283, 286, 303, 307, 309, 324, 333, 348, 352, 356–360, 362, 364, 366, 374, 380, 391, 393, 395, 423, 428, 441–442, 445, 447, 453–454, 459–461, 466–467, 469, 471–4, 475, 483–484, 487, 498, 502, 509, 523–526, 534, 536–537, 539–542, 546–547, 549, 552–554, 556, 559, 563, 565, 567–568
procedural instruments 5, 7–10, 27–30, 48, 126, 138, 405, 444–445, 448–449, 469, 475, 514; *see also* instruments
procedural tools 8, 21, 27, 29–30, 47–51, 53–55, 100–101, 103, 105–107, 117, 125, 129, 133, 181, 202, 205, 307, 348–349, 445, 487–488, 490, 510–512, 514, 526–527, 529–530; *see also* tools
process 3–5, 7–8, 13, 20–25, 27, 29–30, 36–43, 47–53, 55, 61, 63, 65, 69, 79, 89–92, 94, 100–102, 104, 106–107, 113–121, 125–128, 130–131, 133, 137–141, 143, 145, 149–151, 153–157, 160–163, 165–167, 173–176, 178–179, 181, 185–189, 191–192, 197–205, 208–209, 211–214, 216, 220–221, 223–225, 227, 235–238, 240–241, 245, 247–249, 252–253, 258–260, 273–277, 282–286, 288–290, 304, 306–309, 318–319, 321–323, 327–328, 339, 341, 345, 347–350, 353, 356, 358–365, 373–377, 379–385, 389–398, 401–403, 406–407, 409, 413, 415, 418–421, 423–424, 428–429, 431–435, 441, 443, 445–449, 461, 466, 469–470, 472–473, 475, 482–486, 489–490, 498–503, 509–511, 513–516, 518, 523, 525, 528–530, 534–536, 538–542, 546–548, 559–563, 566, 568, 570, 576–577
process evaluation 377, 379–381, 385, 409; *see also* evaluations
procurement 6, 22, 304, 362, 510–511, 516, 526, 554
programmatic action framework (PAF) 137, 138–139, 141–142, 144–145
programs 20–22, 26, 31, 40–41, 51, 73–75, 82, 101, 104, 119–120, 125, 128–130, 132–133, 137–139, 141–145, 152, 165–166, 177, 199, 202, 205, 210, 213, 226–227, 240, 251–252, 275, 277, 283, 285–286, 300–301, 306, 308, 320, 333–338, 341–342, 357, 363, 373–381, 383, 385, 388, 395, 402–409, 426–427, 430–431, 432–435, 445, 447–448, 456, 475, 481–482, 484, 490, 498–503, 514, 518, 548, 550, 552, 554–556
program spending 333–334
prohibition 48, 68, 78, 80, 317
propaganda 9, 161
prototyping 274, 289
public 3–9, 11–13, 19–23, 25–26, 29–30, 36–43, 48–51, 53, 55, 67, 74–78, 81–82, 101–107, 113–117, 120–121, 126–128, 132–133, 137–140, 142, 144–145, 149–153, 155–157, 160–167, 173–175, 177–178, 180–182, 185, 187, 191, 194, 197–205, 208–216, 220–224, 227, 235–238, 240, 245, 261, 285, 290, 297–310, 316–317, 322, 324–328, 332–340, 342, 345–348, 351–353, 356, 358–359, 362–364, 366–367, 373–379, 381–385, 388–390, 394–397, 401–403, 405–406, 408, 413–424, 426–431, 433, 435, 441–442, 444, 457, 470–472, 475, 481–484, 486–489, 498–500, 502, 509–518, 523–530, 534–542, 546–547, 550–553, 555, 559–560, 562, 567–568, 570–578
public choice theory 212
public enterprise 5, 9, 11–12, 22–23, 25, 42, 67, 106, 114, 298, 300–303, 310, 347, 499, 511–513, 524, 526
public good 191, 334, 433, 483, 528
public hearings 36, 43, 150, 308–309, 352, 422, 489, 514
public information campaign 197–198, 201, 205, 514
public management 5, 8, 19, 42, 82, 114, 127, 150, 177, 203, 310, 376, 395, 413, 417, 426, 524–526, 551; *see also* management
public opinion 20, 38, 113, 139, 160, 186, 212–213, 236, 275, 378, 422
public participation 212, 221, 238, 309, 401, 405, 423, 433
public policy 3, 4, 13, 20, 40–42, 43, 75, 82, 103–104, 114, 138, 140, 150, 155–156, 160–161, 163, 165–166, 173–174, 177, 182, 199, 208–209, 215, 220–224, 227, 235–236, 240, 285, 305, 316, 327–328, 332, 334, 345, 347, 356, 358–359, 362–364, 366–367, 373–377, 379, 381–383, 385, 388–390, 395, 402, 413–417, 420, 423–424, 426–429, 433, 435, 441–442, 475, 484, 498, 509, 518, 523, 525–526, 534–536, 539–542, 559–560, 568, 570–578

public-private partnerships (PPPs) 304, 310, 376, 500, 535, 527
public servants 160–162, 164–167, 197, 201–202, 213, 215, 235, 300, 334
public service 51, 53, 74, 78, 82, 120, 132, 161, 163–165, 177, 198–201, 205, 210, 213–215, 221, 290, 299–300, 304, 306, 310, 413, 418, 435, 457, 472, 475, 523–530, 534, 538, 555, 576
public value 128, 403, 524, 526, 530
punctuated equilibrium 100, 498, 500
provinces 163, 168, 289

quasi-autonomous non-governmental organizations (QUANGOs) 303, 310, 513; *see also* organizations

randomized control trial (RCT) 284, 404, 555, 572, 575
rationality 40, 76, 138, 192, 236, 274, 320, 376, 419, 428, 431, 534, 538, 540, 560, 562–568, 572
rational model 47
redundancy 31, 88, 90, 92, 335, 470–471, 482, 484, 488
regulation 4–6, 8, 11, 19–21, 24–27, 68, 74, 76, 78, 80, 103, 113–114, 119, 126, 129–130, 132, 150, 157, 175, 179, 185, 199–200, 220–221, 238, 278, 297, 301, 305, 316–318, 320–328, 333, 336–337, 339–340, 342, 347, 349–350, 353, 358, 360–364, 366–367, 413–424, 442–445, 447, 455–456, 458–459, 483, 485, 488–489, 498, 510–517, 526, 535–540, 542, 560, 572; *see also* co-regulation; command-and-control regulation; delegated regulation; deregulation; economic regulation; self-regulation; smart regulation; social regulations
regulators 199, 317–319, 321–328, 542
regulatory commissions 23, 298, 488, 513; *see also* commissions
regulatory impact analysis (RIA) 413, 422; *see also* analysis
regulatory instruments 322; *see also* instruments
regulatory regime 66, 150, 319, 321–328, 513
research 7, 9, 19–20, 22, 28–30, 36, 39–40, 43, 47–48, 51–53, 55, 61, 69, 89, 103, 106, 121, 125–126, 129, 132, 138–142, 145, 155–157, 162, 164, 173–174, 176–179, 181–182, 190, 194, 198–199, 204–205, 211–214, 221, 223–224, 227, 236, 238–240, 245, 251, 260–261, 276–278, 284, 289, 299, 307–308, 321, 328, 360, 363, 365, 373–374, 376, 378–379, 384–385, 389–390, 395–397, 401, 404, 407–409, 414, 423, 426–427, 431–432, 435, 448, 454, 460, 466–467, 471, 475, 481, 499, 503, 511, 514–518, 529, 555, 560, 570–571, 573, 576–578
researchers 8, 29, 104, 173, 177, 199, 215–216, 241, 251, 253, 286, 361, 375–376, 398, 447, 500, 568, 573, 578
research organizations 213, 385; *see also* organizations
resiliency 129, 466–467, 469, 471, 475, 481–490, 513
resource effectiveness 67, 80
resources 7–10, 13, 20, 23–24, 26, 28, 30, 36, 40–42, 48–53, 55, 61, 63–68, 73–75, 77–82, 95, 102, 105, 113–114, 116, 118–121, 131–132, 144–145, 153, 163–164, 167, 178, 180, 187–188, 198, 200, 202–203, 205, 212, 215, 221–224, 226–227, 237–238, 248, 262, 283, 286–287, 290, 297–299, 303–304, 306–307, 310, 319, 323, 326, 328, 332–338, 340–342, 345–348, 353, 358, 362, 374, 376–377, 379, 389–390, 397–398, 401, 403, 406, 441–442, 444, 447–448, 456–457, 459–460, 468, 481–484, 489–490, 511–512, 515, 518, 524, 527, 529, 537–541, 552, 556, 568, 574, 576
reviews 4, 9, 27, 31, 54–55, 95, 106, 114, 118–119, 121, 125–133, 140, 152, 162–163, 208, 210, 213, 223, 257, 259–260, 276, 278, 288, 290, 309–310, 357, 359, 366–367, 374–375, 393, 396, 404–406, 416, 421–422, 424, 435, 445, 474, 481, 483, 487, 489, 512, 518, 523, 530, 551, 554, 559–560, 570, 573
robustness 129, 264, 276, 466–467, 469–471, 475, 481–490, 502
routinizing 152, 156

satisficing 472
scaling-up 289
scenario planning 118, 120–121, 189, 257–259, 263–265
scenario studies 249–251
scholarship 3, 125–126, 149, 192, 202, 205, 208–209, 220, 227, 429, 466, 498, 518
sciences 3–4, 19–22, 31, 47, 51, 62, 69, 75–76, 78, 82, 95, 100, 113, 116, 139, 144, 149, 178–179, 236, 238, 259–260, 272, 275–276, 286, 290, 342, 357, 360, 362–363, 375–376, 395, 398, 409, 416, 427–429, 432, 434, 449, 483, 485, 489, 530, 534, 540, 542, 559–560, 568, 570–574, 576
second order change 498
second-order mechanism 62–64
secrecy 201, 514
self-categorization theory (SCT) 142
self-regulation 8, 11, 25–26, 200, 322, 324, 443–444, 488, 511; *see also* regulation
sequencing 90, 471, 481–485, 487–488, 490
sermons 48, 55, 118, 297, 346, 449
services 3–6, 9–10, 13, 21, 24, 28–29, 37, 42–43, 48, 51, 53, 67–68, 74, 76, 78, 80–82, 103–105, 107, 114–115, 117, 120, 127, 132, 154, 161, 163–165, 177, 187, 191, 198–205, 210–211,

213–215, 220–222, 225, 240, 290, 297–304, 306–307, 310, 317, 325, 332–333, 335, 337, 341–342, 347–349, 350–351, 376, 403, 405–406, 413, 417–418, 423, 433–435, 443, 447, 457, 472, 475, 488, 509–510, 513, 515–516, 518, 523–530, 534–535, 538, 546–556, 560–562, 576
simulations 252, 272–273, 537, 562, 566
smart regulation 27, 322–323, 443, 488; *see also* regulation
social identity 137–138, 140–141, 143–145, 188
social impact bonds 546, 548, 550
socialism 12
social learning 192, 272, 392
social media 160, 162–167, 252, 515, 537–538; *see also* media
social media engagement 167
social multi-criteria evaluation (SMCE) 260
social norms *see* norms
social regulations 364; *see also* regulation
society 3, 5–6, 11, 13, 21, 26–27, 37–38, 47, 55, 117, 121, 151, 162, 164, 177, 185–186, 188, 193–194, 202–203, 209, 212–214, 246, 258, 261–262, 272–273, 287, 297–298, 305–306, 310, 316, 323, 327, 346–349, 374, 376, 382–385, 402, 413, 415–417, 420–423, 426, 431, 433, 435, 443, 466, 509–510, 516–517, 524, 528, 530, 534–542, 553–554, 568
sociology 3, 20, 62, 276, 360, 362
sovereignty 362, 365, 541
sovereign wealth fund 302
staff 160–162, 164, 166–167, 199–201, 203, 212, 215–216, 299, 307–308, 328, 335, 460, 515, 567–568
stakeholder analysis 257–260, 263–265; *see also* analysis
stakeholders 4, 40–41, 49–51, 55, 113–114, 121, 149–157, 161, 166–167, 185, 204–205, 215, 220–221, 223–224, 227, 235–238, 240–241, 249, 257–260, 262–265, 272, 274, 276, 278, 283–286, 288–289, 333, 335, 356, 358–360, 362–363, 365–366, 389, 395–398, 403, 408, 417–418, 423–424, 427, 430–433, 448, 466, 472, 512, 515, 517, 524, 527, 530, 555, 559
statecraft 28, 67, 79–80, 82, 353, 444
state-owned enterprises 298, 301, 509
statistical analysis 189, 407; *see also* analysis
statistics 52, 62, 166, 178, 186, 189–191, 193–194, 236, 299, 378, 381, 384–385, 390, 404, 407, 430, 434, 459, 461, 578; *see also* big data; data; information; knowledge
sticks 23, 48, 55, 118, 297, 346, 449, 560; *see also* carrots
strategic foresight 120–121
strategic options development and analysis 238; *see also* analysis
strategy 13, 23, 31, 39, 64, 82, 101, 119–120, 139, 143, 145, 150–152, 157, 160–162, 166–167, 193, 224, 227, 258, 262, 264, 282–284, 286–287, 316–317, 321–323, 326, 328, 348, 352, 357–359, 361–362, 367, 375, 385, 390, 392, 397, 406, 415, 442–445, 447, 459–460, 467, 517, 526, 528, 537, 542, 552, 554, 563, 565–567, 568, 570
strengths, weaknesses, opportunities and threats (SWOT) analysis 258, 257–259, 262–265; *see also* analysis
subsidies 6, 11–12, 20, 22, 25, 28, 30, 62–63, 66, 68, 74, 80, 82, 103–104, 106, 129, 164, 283, 297, 318, 333–336, 339, 341–342, 383, 442, 447, 456, 487–488, 499, 509–513, 518
substantive policy instrument 6–7, 10, 13, 24, 67, 512
substitutable 3, 11, 26, 333, 340
subsystem manipulation 9
sunset clause 118–119, 130, 140
supplementary tools 105; *see also* tools
Sweden 375
symbols 4, 20, 29, 36, 152, 168, 433–434, 447–448, 457, 487
synergies 88–91, 93–95, 103, 193–194, 265, 454–455, 458, 468, 470
system design 540–542; *see also* design
systemic 38, 40, 185–186, 192–194, 214, 240, 253, 276, 278, 285, 413, 415, 417–418, 421, 423–424, 470

target complexity 10
target groups 7, 26, 28, 54, 68, 77, 80–81, 126, 142, 145, 151, 190, 201, 285, 332–334, 337, 341, 395, 456, 488, 524, 572
targeting 61, 73, 140, 150, 318, 325, 333, 335–336, 338, 349, 360, 466–467, 469, 471–473, 502
task forces 53, 106, 193, 208–217, 309
task functions 40
tax credits 63, 318, 338, 340, 444
taxes 4, 6–7, 20, 22, 25, 63, 74–78, 80–81, 101–102, 106, 119–120, 141, 163, 200, 220, 240, 297–298, 301, 310, 318, 325, 327, 332–334, 337–339, 340, 342, 347, 351, 353, 414, 416, 441, 444, 456–458, 499, 510–511, 513–515, 567–568
tax expenditures 333, 337–338, 340, 342
tax incentives 11, 22, 74, 101, 499, 511
taxonomy 5, 7–9, 12–13, 23–24, 27–28, 30, 39, 67, 79, 91–94, 113–114, 118–121, 149, 178, 182, 198, 324, 347–348, 353, 444, 499, 512, 574
technique 3–8, 20–21, 29, 31, 36, 42, 48, 52, 78, 88, 91, 94, 104, 114, 120, 137, 177–178, 181, 190, 194, 199–200, 236, 245, 248–249, 260, 304–305, 310, 316, 320, 347–348, 358, 366, 379, 396, 403–408, 442, 444, 481, 509–510, 514, 518, 535, 537, 551, 553, 561, 565–567
technocracy 429

technocratic 174, 189, 200, 284, 426–429, 431, 433–435, 539
temporality 94, 461, 481–482, 484
think tanks 149–150, 176, 179, 200, 213, 308
third order change 498–499, 501
tool adoption 9
tool choice 11, 22, 27, 31, 54, 69, 73–74, 81–82, 88–89, 101, 220, 297, 428, 467, 488, 500–502, 518
tool functions 145
tool portfolio 94, 102, 340, 466; *see also* policy portfolio
tools 3–9, 12–13, 19–25, 27–31, 36–37, 39, 41–43, 47–55, 61–69, 73–82, 88–93, 95, 100–107, 111, 113–115, 117–121, 125–127, 129, 131, 133, 137–145, 149–157, 160–165, 167, 171, 173–182, 185, 187, 189–194, 197–205, 208–216, 220, 223, 233, 235–241, 245, 248, 257, 259–261, 263–265, 272, 278, 282, 284–286, 288–289, 295, 297–299, 301–303, 305–310, 316–317, 320–323, 325–328, 332–335, 337–342, 345–353, 356–359, 361, 363, 365, 367, 371, 373, 375, 378, 381, 384, 389–390, 393–394, 398, 401–407, 409, 417, 428–429, 435, 439, 441–449, 453, 456–458, 460–461, 466, 469, 481–483, 485–490, 497, 499–503, 507, 509–518, 523–530, 534–542, 546–547, 549, 551–555, 559–561, 563, 565, 567, 570–575, 577–578; *see also* advisory tools; agenda-setting tools; authority-based tools; career-driven tools; communicative tools; consultation tools; decision-making tools; digital tools; education-driven tools; first-order tools; information-based tools; mixed tools; non-implementation tools; non-state market-driven (NSMD) tools; partnership tools; planning tools; policy formulation tools; policy implementation tools; policy tools; procedural tools; supplementary tools; traditional tools; transparency tools; treasure-based policy tools
tools of government 3, 19, 21–22, 24, 42, 47, 297, 299, 301, 303, 305, 307, 309, 442, 444, 560
tool selection 30, 54, 95, 449
top-down 51
traditional tools 156, 512, 514; *see also* tools
transparency tools 106; *see also* tools
treasure 7, 24, 28, 30, 49–50, 52, 66–68, 79–80, 102, 118–120, 140, 200, 297, 332–335, 337, 339, 341, 346–347, 444, 511–512, 560, 574
treasure-based policy tools 80, 119; *see also* tools
treasure resources 28, 68, 80
treaties 7, 9, 29, 47, 367
tribunals 7, 29, 107, 298, 308
trust 28, 54, 67, 80–81, 121, 155, 161, 185–186, 188, 191–194, 204, 213, 222, 224–226, 305, 307, 328, 391, 396–397, 421–423, 468, 525, 527, 529, 576
turbulence 245, 484

uncertainty 28, 54, 120–121, 222, 247–250, 252, 263, 265, 282–283, 286–289, 403–404, 419, 470–471, 473–474, 482–484, 488, 490, 540–541, 554, 560, 568
under-design 93, 458; *see also* non-design
unintended consequences 403, 572
United Kingdom 116, 121, 164, 278, 403, 498, 546–547
United States 115, 119, 130, 132, 209, 210, 336, 365, 375, 405, 416, 541, 547
user charges 7, 200
utilitarianism 73–79, 81–82, 403
utility 11, 75, 78–79, 81–82, 106, 114, 208–209, 212, 240, 300, 302, 320, 341, 380, 382, 398, 403–404, 427, 528, 540, 559, 563

verticality 91–92
visibility 27, 167, 308–310, 334, 336, 502–503
volunteering 6, 9–12, 25, 76, 78, 95, 175, 200, 225, 305–306, 316, 334–336, 347, 350, 449, 455, 499, 510, 513–514, 525
volunteers 306
vouchers 64, 447

welfare 145, 221, 249–250, 261, 283, 297–299, 375, 442, 447, 449, 488, 517, 549, 553
welfare state 375, 447
wicked problems 47, 54–55, 286, 556
women 78, 81, 165, 214
World Health Organization (WHO) 201, 565